

The revision list can be viewed directly by clicking the title page. The revision list summarizes the locations of revisions and additions. Details should always be checked by referring to the relevant text.

H8S/2215 Group

User's Manual: Hardware

Renesas 16-Bit Single-Chip Microcomputer
H8S Family/H8S/2200 Series

| | |
|-----------|---|
| H8S/2215 | HD64F2215 HD64F2215U HD6432215B HD6432215C |
| H8S/2215R | HD64F2215R HD64F2215RU |
| H8S/2215T | HD64F2215T HD64F2215TU |
| H8S/2215C | HD64F2215CU |

Notice

1. All information included in this document is current as of the date this document is issued. Such information, however, is subject to change without any prior notice. Before purchasing or using any Renesas Electronics products listed herein, please confirm the latest product information with a Renesas Electronics sales office. Also, please pay regular and careful attention to additional and different information to be disclosed by Renesas Electronics such as that disclosed through our website.
2. Renesas Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.
3. You should not alter, modify, copy, or otherwise misappropriate any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part.
4. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation of these circuits, software, and information in the design of your equipment. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.
5. When exporting the products or technology described in this document, you should comply with the applicable export control laws and regulations and follow the procedures required by such laws and regulations. You should not use Renesas Electronics products or the technology described in this document for any purpose relating to military applications or use by the military, including but not limited to the development of weapons of mass destruction. Renesas Electronics products and technology may not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations.
6. Renesas Electronics has used reasonable care in preparing the information included in this document, but Renesas Electronics does not warrant that such information is error free. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred by you resulting from errors in or omissions from the information included herein.
7. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following three quality grades: "Standard", "High Quality", and "Specific". The recommended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product's quality grade, as indicated below. You must check the quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product before using it in a particular application. You may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application categorized as "Specific" without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Further, you may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application for which it is not intended without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Renesas Electronics shall not be in any way liable for any damages or losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product for an application categorized as "Specific" or for which the product is not intended where you have failed to obtain the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. The quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product is "Standard" unless otherwise expressly specified in a Renesas Electronics data sheets or data books, etc.

"Standard": Computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; and industrial robots.

"High Quality": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control systems; anti-disaster systems; anti-crime systems; safety equipment; and medical equipment not specifically designed for life support.

"Specific": Aircraft; aerospace equipment; submersible repeaters; nuclear reactor control systems; medical equipment or systems for life support (e.g. artificial life support devices or systems), surgical implantations, or healthcare intervention (e.g. excision, etc.), and any other applications or purposes that pose a direct threat to human life.
8. You should use the Renesas Electronics products described in this document within the range specified by Renesas Electronics, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas Electronics shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products beyond such specified ranges.
9. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Further, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard them against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas Electronics product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or system manufactured by you.
10. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. Please use Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.
11. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated, in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.
12. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products, or if you have any other inquiries.

(Note 1) "Renesas Electronics" as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.

(Note 2) "Renesas Electronics product(s)" means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.

General Precautions in the Handling of MPU/MCU Products

The following usage notes are applicable to all MPU/MCU products from Renesas. For detailed usage notes on the products covered by this manual, refer to the relevant sections of the manual. If the descriptions under General Precautions in the Handling of MPU/MCU Products and in the body of the manual differ from each other, the description in the body of the manual takes precedence.

1. Handling of Unused Pins

Handle unused pins in accord with the directions given under Handling of Unused Pins in the manual.

- The input pins of CMOS products are generally in the high-impedance state. In operation with an unused pin in the open-circuit state, extra electromagnetic noise is induced in the vicinity of LSI, an associated shoot-through current flows internally, and malfunctions may occur due to the false recognition of the pin state as an input signal. Unused pins should be handled as described under Handling of Unused Pins in the manual.

2. Processing at Power-on

The state of the product is undefined at the moment when power is supplied.

- The states of internal circuits in the LSI are indeterminate and the states of register settings and pins are undefined at the moment when power is supplied.
In a finished product where the reset signal is applied to the external reset pin, the states of pins are not guaranteed from the moment when power is supplied until the reset process is completed.

In a similar way, the states of pins in a product that is reset by an on-chip power-on reset function are not guaranteed from the moment when power is supplied until the power reaches the level at which resetting has been specified.

3. Prohibition of Access to Reserved Addresses

Access to reserved addresses is prohibited.

- The reserved addresses are provided for the possible future expansion of functions. Do not access these addresses; the correct operation of LSI is not guaranteed if they are accessed.

4. Clock Signals

After applying a reset, only release the reset line after the operating clock signal has become stable. When switching the clock signal during program execution, wait until the target clock signal has stabilized.

- When the clock signal is generated with an external resonator (or from an external oscillator) during a reset, ensure that the reset line is only released after full stabilization of the clock signal. Moreover, when switching to a clock signal produced with an external resonator (or by an external oscillator) while program execution is in progress, wait until the target clock signal is stable.

5. Differences between Products

Before changing from one product to another, i.e. to one with a different type number, confirm that the change will not lead to problems.

- The characteristics of MPU/MCU in the same group but having different type numbers may differ because of the differences in internal memory capacity and layout pattern. When changing to products of different type numbers, implement a system-evaluation test for each of the products.

Configuration of This Manual

This manual comprises the following items:

1. General Precautions in the Handling of MPU/MCU Products
2. Configuration of This Manual
3. Preface
4. Main Revisions for This Edition

The history of revisions is a summary of sections that have been revised and sections that have been added to earlier versions. This does not include all of the revised contents. For details, confirm by referring to the main description of this manual.

5. Contents
6. Overview
7. Table of Contents
8. Summary
9. Description of Functional Modules
 - CPU and System-Control Modules
 - On-Chip Peripheral Modules

The configuration of the functional description of each module differs according to the module. However, the generic style includes the following items:

- i) Features
- ii) I/O pins
- iii) Description of Registers
- iv) Description of Operation
- v) Usage: Points for Caution

When designing an application system that includes this LSI, take the points for caution into account. Each section includes points for caution in relation to the descriptions given, and points for caution in usage are given, as required, as the final part of each section.

10. List of Registers
11. Electrical Characteristics
12. Appendix
 - Product-type codes and external dimensions

Preface

This LSI is a high-performance microcomputer (MCU) made up of the H8S/2000 CPU with Renesas' original architecture as its core, and the peripheral functions required to configure a system.

The H8S/2000 CPU has an internal 32-bit configuration, sixteen 16-bit general registers, and a simple and optimized instruction set for high-speed operation. The H8S/2000 CPU can handle a 16-Mbyte linear address space. The instruction set of the H8S/2000 CPU maintains upward compatibility at the object level with the H8/300 and H8/300H CPUs. This allows the H8/300, H8/300L, or H8/300H user to easily utilize the H8S/2000 CPU.

This LSI is equipped with ROM, RAM, a direct memory access controller (DMAC), a bus master for a data transfer controller (DTC), a 16-bit timer pulse unit (TPU), an 8-bit timer (TMR), a watchdog timer (WDT), a universal serial bus (USB), two types of serial communication interfaces (SCIs), an A/D converter, a D/A converter, and I/O ports as on-chip peripheral modules for system configuration.

A single-power flash memory (F-ZTAT™*) version and masked ROM version are available for this LSI's ROM. The F-ZTAT version provides flexibility as it can be reprogrammed in no time to cope with all situations from the early stages of mass production to full-scale mass production. This is particularly applicable to application devices with specifications that will most probably change.

This manual describes this LSI's hardware.

Note: * F-ZTAT is a trademark of Renesas Electronics Corp.

Target Users: This manual was written for users who will be using the H8S/2215 Group in the design of application systems. Target users are expected to understand the fundamentals of electrical circuits, logical circuits, and microcomputers.

Objective: This manual was written to explain the hardware functions and electrical characteristics of the H8S/2215 Group to the target users.
Refer to the H8S/2600 Series, H8S/2000 Series Software Manual, for a detailed description of the instruction set.

Notes on reading this manual:

- In order to understand the overall functions of the chip
Read the manual according to the contents. This manual can be roughly categorized into parts on the CPU, system control functions, peripheral functions and electrical characteristics.
- In order to understand the details of the CPU's functions
Read the H8S/2600 Series, H8S/2000 Series Software Manual.
- In order to understand the details of a register when its name is known
Read the index that is the final part of the manual to find the page number of the entry on the register. The addresses, bits, and initial values of the registers are summarized in appendix A, I/O Port States in Each Processing State.

Examples: Register name: The following notation is used for cases when the same or a similar function, e.g. 16-bit timer pulse unit or serial communication, is implemented on more than one channel: XXX_N (XXX is the register name and N is the channel number)

Bit order: The MSB is on the left and the LSB is on the right.

Related Manuals: The latest versions of all related manuals are available from our web site. Please ensure you have the latest versions of all documents you require.
<http://www.renesas.com/eng/>

H8S/2215 Group Manuals:

| Document Title | Document No. |
|--|--------------|
| H8S/2215 Group Hardware Manual | This manual |
| H8S/2600 Series, H8S/2000 Series Software Manual | REJ09B0139 |

User's Manuals for Development Tools:

| Document Title | Document No. |
|---|--------------|
| H8S, H8/300 Series C/C++ Compiler, Assembler, Optimizing Linkage Editor User's Manual | REJ10J2039 |
| H8S, H8/300 Series Simulator/Debugger User's Manual | REJ10B0211 |
| High-performance Embedded Workshop User's Manual | REJ10J2169 |

Main Revisions for This Edition

| Item | Page | Revision (See Manual for Details) |
|------|------|-----------------------------------|
|------|------|-----------------------------------|

| | | |
|-------------------|----|---------------|
| 1.5 Pin Functions | 17 | Table amended |
|-------------------|----|---------------|

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|---------------|--------|------------------|------------------|-------|--|
| | | TFP-120, BP-112, | TFP-120V BP-112V | | |
| Boundary scan | TRST | 109 | B5 | Input | Reset pin for the TAP controller Perform pin processing even when the boundary scan function is not used. For details, see 14.5, Usage Notes. |

| | | |
|--|----|---------------|
| 2.6.1 Table of Instructions Classified by Function | 45 | Table amended |
|--|----|---------------|

Table 2.7 Bit Manipulation Instructions (1)

| Instruction | Size* | Function |
|-------------|-------|---|
| BAND | B | $C \wedge (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$ ANDs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. |
| BIAND | B | $C \wedge [(\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>})] \rightarrow C$ ANDs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. |
| BOR | B | $C \vee (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$ ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. |
| BIOR | B | $C \vee [(\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>})] \rightarrow C$ ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. |

| | | |
|---------------------|-----|-------------------|
| 5.7.5 IRQ Interrupt | 106 | Description added |
|---------------------|-----|-------------------|

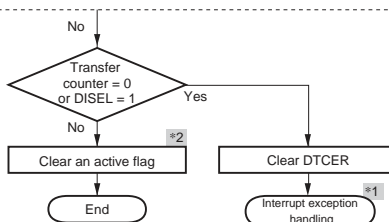
| | | |
|----------------------------------|-----|-------------------|
| 5.7.6 NMI Interrupts Usage Notes | 107 | Description added |
|----------------------------------|-----|-------------------|

| | | |
|--------------------|-----|---------------------|
| 6.6.4 Wait Control | 138 | Description amended |
|--------------------|-----|---------------------|

Pin Wait Insertion: Setting the WAITE bit in BCRL to 1 enables wait insertion by means of the WAIT pin.

| | | |
|---------------|-----|----------------|
| 8.5 Operation | 216 | Figure amended |
|---------------|-----|----------------|

Figure 8.5 Flowchart of DTC Operation



Note: *1 For details on the processing that takes place, refer to the chapter on the peripheral module in question.

*2 When IRQx is the DTC activation source and the IRQ sense control registers (ISCRH and ISCRL) are set to level sensing, the activation source flag is not cleared while IRQx is low level and DTC transfers are performed repeatedly.

Item **Page** **Revision (See Manual for Details)**

15.3.2 USB Control Register (UCTLR) 505 Table amended

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 1 | UIFRST | 1 | R/W | <p>USB Interface Software Reset</p> <p>Controls USB module internal reset. When the UIFRST bit is set to 1, the USB internal modules other than UCTLR, UIER3, and the CK48 READY bit of UIFR3 are all reset. At initialization, the UIFRST bit must be cleared to 0 after the USB operating clock stabilization time has passed following USB module stop mode cancellation.</p> <p>0: Sets the USB internal modules to the operating state (at initialization, this bit must be cleared after the USB operating clock stabilization time has passed).</p> <p>1: Sets the USB internal modules other than UCTLR, UIER3, and the CK48 READY bit of UIFR3 reset state.</p> <p>If after being cleared to 0 the UIFIRST bit is again set to 1, the UDCRST bit must also be set to 1 at the same time.</p> |

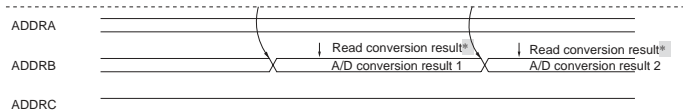
16.2 Input/Output Pins 603 Table amended

| Pin Name | Symbol | I/O | Function |
|--------------------|--------|-------|-------------------|
| Analog input pin 0 | AN0* | Input | Analog input pins |
| Analog input pin 1 | AN1* | Input | |

Note added

Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when Vcc = AVcc.

16.5.1 Single Mode Figure 16.3 A/D Conversion Timing (Single-Chip Mode, Channel 1 Selected) 609 Figure amended



16.8.3 Range of Analog Power Supply and Other Pin Settings 616 Description amended

- Relationship between AVcc, AVss and Vcc, Vss
Set AVss = Vss as the relationship between AVcc, AVss and Vcc, Vss. If the A/D converter is not used, the AVcc and AVss pins must not be left open. In addition, AN0 and AN1 can be used only when Vcc = AVcc.

24.3 DC Characteristics Table 24.2 DC Characteristics 727 Table amended

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------|------|---------------------------------------|------|-----------------|
| Input high voltage | Ports 4 ^{REG} and 9 V _{in} | V _{cc} × 0.8 | — | AV _{cc} + 0.3 ^{REG} | V | |

729 Note added

- The FWE pin is effective only in the F-ZTAT version.
- When V_{cc} < AV_{cc}, the maximum value for P40 and P41 is V_{cc} + 0.3 V.

| Item | Page | Revision (See Manual for Details) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|------|------------------------------|------|-----------------|------|------|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|---|------------------------------|---|--|
| 24.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics Table 24.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics | 749 | <p>Conditions added</p> <p>Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)</p> <p>Note added</p> <p>Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{CC} = AV_{CC}$.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25.3 DC Characteristics Table 25.2 DC Characteristics | 755 | <p>Table amended</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>Symbol</th> <th>Min.</th> <th>Typ.</th> <th>Max.</th> <th>Unit</th> <th>Test Conditions</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Input high voltage</td> <td>Ports[※] 4 and 9 V_{IH}</td> <td>$V_{CC} \times 0.8$</td> <td>—</td> <td>$AV_{CC} + 0.3$[※]</td> <td>V</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | Input high voltage | Ports [※] 4 and 9 V_{IH} | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ [※] | V | |
| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | | | | | | | | | | |
| Input high voltage | Ports [※] 4 and 9 V_{IH} | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ [※] | V | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 757 | <p>Note added</p> <p>3. $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.67\text{ (mA/(MHz x V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB halted)</p> <p>$I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.85\text{ (mA/(MHz x V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, $f = 16\text{ MHz}$: PLL 3 x multiplication)</p> <p>$I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.72\text{ (mA/(MHz x V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, $f = 24\text{ MHz}$: PLL 2 x multiplication)</p> <p>$I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.55\text{ (mA/(MHz x V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (sleep mode)</p> <p>5. The FWE pin is effective only in the F-ZTAT version.</p> <p>6. When $V_{CC} < AV_{CC}$, the maximum value for P40 and P41 is $V_{CC} + 0.3\text{ V}$.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics Table 25.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics | 778 | <p>Conditions added</p> <p>Condition A: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)</p> <p>Condition B: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)</p> <p>Note added</p> <p>Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{CC} = AV_{CC}$.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Item | Page | Revision (See Manual for Details) |
|--|------|-----------------------------------|
| 26.3 DC Characteristics Table 26.2 DC Characteristics | 784 | Table amended |

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|------|-------------------------------|------|-----------------|
| Input high voltage | Ports ¹⁾ 4 and 9 V_{IH} | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ ²⁾ | V | |

| | |
|-----|------------|
| 786 | Note added |
|-----|------------|

3. $I_{CC} (\text{max.}) = 1.0 (\text{mA}) + 0.67 (\text{mA}/(\text{MHz} \times \text{V})) \times V_{CC} \times f$
(normal operation, USB halted)

$I_{CC} (\text{max.}) = 1.0 (\text{mA}) + 0.85 (\text{mA}/(\text{MHz} \times \text{V})) \times V_{CC} \times f$
(normal operation, USB operating, $f = 16 \text{ MHz} : \text{PLL} \times 3$ multiplication)

$I_{CC} (\text{max.}) = 1.0 (\text{mA}) + 0.72 (\text{mA}/(\text{MHz} \times \text{V})) \times V_{CC} \times f$
(normal operation, USB operating, $f = 24 \text{ MHz} : \text{PLL} \times 2$ multiplication)

$I_{CC} (\text{max.}) = 1.0 (\text{mA}) + 0.55 (\text{mA}/(\text{MHz} \times \text{V})) \times V_{CC} \times f$ (sleep mode)

6. When $V_{CC} < AV_{CC}$, the maximum value for P40 and P41 is $V_{CC} + 0.3 \text{ V}$.

| | | |
|--|-----|------------------|
| 26.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics Table 26.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics | 804 | Conditions added |
|--|-----|------------------|

Conditions: $V_{CC} = \text{PLL}V_{CC} = \text{Dr}V_{CC} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 3.0 \text{ V to } AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = \text{PLL}V_{SS} = \text{Dr}V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 \text{ V}$, $\phi = 16 \text{ MHz to } 24 \text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to } +75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to } +85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

Note added

Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{CC} = AV_{CC}$.

| | | |
|--|-----|---------------|
| 27.3 DC Characteristics Table 27.2 DC Characteristics | 809 | Table amended |
|--|-----|---------------|

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|------|-------------------------------|------|-----------------|
| Input high voltage | Ports ¹⁾ 4 and 9 V_{IH} | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ ²⁾ | V | |

| Item | Page | Revision (See Manual for Details) |
|--|------|--|
| 27.3 DC Characteristics Table 27.2 DC Characteristics | 811 | <p>Note added</p> <p>3. $I_{cc} (\text{max.}) = 1.0 (\text{mA}) + 0.67 (\text{mA}/(\text{MHz} \times \text{V})) \times V_{cc} \times f$ (normal operation, USB halted)</p> <p>$I_{cc} (\text{max.}) = 1.0 (\text{mA}) + 0.85 (\text{mA}/(\text{MHz} \times \text{V})) \times V_{cc} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, $f = 16 \text{ MHz} : \text{PLL } 3 \times$ multiplication)</p> <p>$I_{cc} (\text{max.}) = 1.0 (\text{mA}) + 0.72 (\text{mA}/(\text{MHz} \times \text{V})) \times V_{cc} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, $f = 24 \text{ MHz} : \text{PLL } 2 \times$ multiplication)</p> <p>$I_{cc} (\text{max.}) = 1.0 (\text{mA}) + 0.55 (\text{mA}/(\text{MHz} \times \text{V})) \times V_{cc} \times f$ (sleep mode)</p> <p>5. The FWE pin is supported on the F-ZTAT version only.</p> <p>6. When $V_{cc} < AV_{cc}$, the maximum value for P40 and P41 is $V_{cc} + 0.3 \text{ V}$.</p> |
| 27.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics Table 27.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics | 831 | <p>Conditions added</p> <p>Conditions: $V_{cc} = \text{PLL}V_{cc} = \text{Dr}V_{cc} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}^*$, $AV_{cc} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 3.0 \text{ V to } AV_{cc}$, $V_{ss} = \text{PLL}V_{ss} = \text{Dr}V_{ss} = AV_{ss} = 0 \text{ V}$, $\phi = 16 \text{ MHz to } 24 \text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to } +75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to } +85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)</p> <p>Note added</p> <p>Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{cc} = AV_{cc}$.</p> |

All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Contents

| | | |
|-----------|---|----|
| Section 1 | Overview | 1 |
| 1.1 | Overview | 1 |
| 1.2 | Internal Block Diagram | 3 |
| 1.3 | Pin Arrangement | 4 |
| 1.4 | Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode | 6 |
| 1.5 | Pin Functions | 11 |
| Section 2 | CPU | 23 |
| 2.1 | Features | 23 |
| 2.1.1 | Differences between H8S/2600 CPU and H8S/2000 CPU | 24 |
| 2.1.2 | Differences from H8/300 CPU | 25 |
| 2.1.3 | Differences from H8/300H CPU | 25 |
| 2.2 | CPU Operating Modes | 26 |
| 2.2.1 | Normal Mode | 26 |
| 2.2.2 | Advanced Mode | 28 |
| 2.3 | Address Space | 30 |
| 2.4 | Register Configuration | 31 |
| 2.4.1 | General Registers | 32 |
| 2.4.2 | Program Counter (PC) | 33 |
| 2.4.3 | Extended Control Register (EXR) | 33 |
| 2.4.4 | Condition-Code Register (CCR) | 34 |
| 2.4.5 | Initial Register Values | 35 |
| 2.5 | Data Formats | 36 |
| 2.5.1 | General Register Data Formats | 36 |
| 2.5.2 | Memory Data Formats | 38 |
| 2.6 | Instruction Set | 39 |
| 2.6.1 | Table of Instructions Classified by Function | 40 |
| 2.6.2 | Basic Instruction Formats | 49 |
| 2.7 | Addressing Modes and Effective Address Calculation | 50 |
| 2.7.1 | Register Direct—Rn | 51 |
| 2.7.2 | Register Indirect—@ERn | 51 |
| 2.7.3 | Register Indirect with Displacement—@(d:16, ERn) or @(d:32, ERn) | 51 |
| 2.7.4 | Register Indirect with Post-Increment or Pre-Decrement—@ERn+ or @-ERn | 51 |
| 2.7.5 | Absolute Address—@aa:8, @aa:16, @aa:24, or @aa:32 | 51 |
| 2.7.6 | Immediate—#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32 | 52 |
| 2.7.7 | Program-Counter Relative—@(d:8, PC) or @(d:16, PC) | 52 |
| 2.7.8 | Memory Indirect—@@aa:8 | 53 |
| 2.7.9 | Effective Address Calculation | 54 |

| | | |
|---|--|-----------|
| 2.8 | Processing States | 56 |
| 2.9 | Usage Notes | 58 |
| 2.9.1 | Note on TAS Instruction Usage | 58 |
| 2.9.2 | STM/LTM Instruction Usage | 58 |
| 2.9.3 | Note on Bit Manipulation Instructions..... | 58 |
| 2.9.4 | Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits..... | 60 |
| Section 3 MCU Operating Modes | | 63 |
| 3.1 | Operating Mode Selection | 63 |
| 3.2 | Register Descriptions..... | 64 |
| 3.2.1 | Mode Control Register (MDCR) | 64 |
| 3.2.2 | System Control Register (SYSCR)..... | 64 |
| 3.3 | Operating Mode Descriptions..... | 66 |
| 3.3.1 | Mode 4..... | 66 |
| 3.3.2 | Mode 5..... | 66 |
| 3.3.3 | Mode 6..... | 67 |
| 3.3.4 | Mode 7..... | 67 |
| 3.3.5 | Pin Functions | 68 |
| 3.4 | Memory Map in Each Operating Mode | 69 |
| Section 4 Exception Handling | | 73 |
| 4.1 | Exception Handling Types and Priority..... | 73 |
| 4.2 | Exception Sources and Exception Vector Table..... | 73 |
| 4.3 | Reset | 75 |
| 4.3.1 | Reset Types..... | 75 |
| 4.3.2 | Reset Exception Handling..... | 76 |
| 4.3.3 | Interrupts after Reset..... | 78 |
| 4.3.4 | State of On-Chip Peripheral Modules after Reset Release | 78 |
| 4.4 | Traces..... | 79 |
| 4.5 | Interrupts..... | 79 |
| 4.6 | Trap Instruction | 80 |
| 4.7 | Stack Status after Exception Handling..... | 81 |
| 4.8 | Notes on Use of the Stack..... | 82 |
| Section 5 Interrupt Controller | | 83 |
| 5.1 | Features..... | 83 |
| 5.2 | Input/Output Pins..... | 85 |
| 5.3 | Register Descriptions..... | 86 |
| 5.3.1 | Interrupt Priority Registers A to G, I to K, M (IPRA to IPRG, IPRI to IPRK, IPRM) | 87 |

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--|-----|
| 5.3.2 | IRQ Enable Register (IER) | 88 |
| 5.3.3 | IRQ Sense Control Registers H and L (ISCRH, ISCRL)..... | 89 |
| 5.3.4 | IRQ Status Register (ISR)..... | 91 |
| 5.4 | Interrupt Sources..... | 92 |
| 5.4.1 | External Interrupts | 92 |
| 5.4.2 | Internal Interrupts..... | 93 |
| 5.5 | Interrupt Exception Handling Vector Table..... | 93 |
| 5.6 | Interrupt Control Modes and Interrupt Operation..... | 96 |
| 5.6.1 | Interrupt Control Mode 0..... | 96 |
| 5.6.2 | Interrupt Control Mode 2..... | 98 |
| 5.6.3 | Interrupt Exception Handling Sequence | 100 |
| 5.6.4 | Interrupt Response Times | 101 |
| 5.6.5 | DTC Activation by Interrupt..... | 102 |
| 5.7 | Usage Notes | 105 |
| 5.7.1 | Contention between Interrupt Generation and Disabling..... | 105 |
| 5.7.2 | Instructions that Disable Interrupts | 106 |
| 5.7.3 | Times when Interrupts Are Disabled | 106 |
| 5.7.4 | Interrupts during Execution of EEPMOV Instruction..... | 106 |
| 5.7.5 | IRQ Interrupt..... | 106 |
| 5.7.6 | NMI Interrupts Usage Notes | 107 |
| Section 6 Bus Controller | | 109 |
| 6.1 | Features..... | 109 |
| 6.2 | Input/Output Pins | 111 |
| 6.3 | Register Descriptions | 111 |
| 6.3.1 | Bus Width Control Register (ABWCR)..... | 112 |
| 6.3.2 | Access State Control Register (ASTCR) | 113 |
| 6.3.3 | Wait Control Registers H and L (WCRH, WCRL)..... | 114 |
| 6.3.4 | Bus Control Register H (BCRH) | 118 |
| 6.3.5 | Bus Control Register L (BCRL) | 119 |
| 6.3.6 | Pin Function Control Register (PFCR) | 120 |
| 6.4 | Bus Control..... | 121 |
| 6.4.1 | Area Divisions | 121 |
| 6.4.2 | Bus Specifications..... | 122 |
| 6.4.3 | Bus Interface for Each Area..... | 123 |
| 6.4.4 | Chip Select Signals | 124 |
| 6.5 | Basic Timing..... | 124 |
| 6.5.1 | On-Chip Memory (ROM, RAM) Access Timing | 125 |
| 6.5.2 | On-Chip Peripheral Module Access Timing..... | 126 |
| 6.5.3 | External Address Space Access Timing | 127 |

| | | |
|---|---|------------|
| 6.6 | Basic Bus Interface | 127 |
| 6.6.1 | Data Size and Data Alignment..... | 127 |
| 6.6.2 | Valid Strobes | 128 |
| 6.6.3 | Basic Timing..... | 129 |
| 6.6.4 | Wait Control | 138 |
| 6.7 | urst ROM Interface | 139 |
| 6.7.1 | Basic Timing..... | 140 |
| 6.7.2 | Wait Control | 141 |
| 6.8 | Idle Cycle..... | 142 |
| 6.9 | Bus Release..... | 145 |
| 6.9.1 | Notes on Bus Release | 146 |
| 6.10 | Bus Arbitration | 147 |
| 6.10.1 | Operation | 147 |
| 6.10.2 | Bus Transfer Timing..... | 147 |
| 6.10.3 | External Bus Release Usage Note..... | 148 |
| 6.11 | Resets and the Bus Controller..... | 148 |
| Section 7 DMA Controller (DMAC)..... | | 149 |
| 7.1 | Features..... | 149 |
| 7.2 | Register Configuration..... | 151 |
| 7.3 | Register Descriptions..... | 153 |
| 7.3.1 | Memory Address Registers (MAR) | 153 |
| 7.3.2 | I/O Address Register (IOAR) | 153 |
| 7.3.3 | Execute Transfer Count Register (ETCR) | 154 |
| 7.3.4 | DMA Control Register (DMACR) | 155 |
| 7.3.5 | DMA Band Control Register (DMABCR) | 162 |
| 7.3.6 | DMA Write Enable Register (DMAWER)..... | 170 |
| 7.4 | Operation | 172 |
| 7.4.1 | Transfer Modes..... | 172 |
| 7.4.2 | Sequential Mode | 173 |
| 7.4.3 | Idle Mode..... | 176 |
| 7.4.4 | Repeat Mode..... | 178 |
| 7.4.5 | Normal Mode..... | 181 |
| 7.4.6 | Block Transfer Mode..... | 184 |
| 7.4.7 | DMAC Activation Sources..... | 189 |
| 7.4.8 | Basic DMAC Bus Cycles..... | 191 |
| 7.4.9 | DMAC Bus Cycles (Dual Address Mode)..... | 192 |
| 7.4.10 | DMAC Multi-Channel Operation | 197 |
| 7.4.11 | Relation between the DMAC, External Bus Requests, and the DTC | 198 |
| 7.4.12 | NMI Interrupts and DMAC | 198 |

| | | |
|--|---|------------|
| 7.4.13 | Forced Termination of DMAC Operation..... | 199 |
| 7.4.14 | Clearing Full Address Mode | 200 |
| 7.5 | Interrupts..... | 201 |
| 7.6 | Usage Notes | 202 |
| 7.6.1 | DMAC Register Access during Operation..... | 202 |
| 7.6.2 | Module Stop..... | 203 |
| 7.6.3 | Medium-Speed Mode..... | 203 |
| 7.6.4 | Activation Source Acceptance..... | 204 |
| 7.6.5 | Internal Interrupt after End of Transfer..... | 204 |
| 7.6.6 | Channel Re-Setting | 204 |
| Section 8 Data Transfer Controller (DTC)..... | | 205 |
| 8.1 | Features..... | 205 |
| 8.2 | Register Descriptions | 207 |
| 8.2.1 | DTC Mode Register A (MRA) | 208 |
| 8.2.2 | DTC Mode Register B (MRB)..... | 209 |
| 8.2.3 | DTC Source Address Register (SAR)..... | 209 |
| 8.2.4 | DTC Destination Address Register (DAR)..... | 209 |
| 8.2.5 | DTC Transfer Count Register A (CRA) | 210 |
| 8.2.6 | DTC Transfer Count Register B (CRB)..... | 210 |
| 8.2.7 | DTC Enable Registers (DTCERA to DTCERF)..... | 210 |
| 8.2.8 | DTC Vector Register (DTVECR)..... | 211 |
| 8.3 | Activation Sources | 212 |
| 8.4 | Location of Register Information and DTC Vector Table | 213 |
| 8.5 | Operation | 216 |
| 8.5.1 | Normal Mode..... | 218 |
| 8.5.2 | Repeat Mode | 219 |
| 8.5.3 | Block Transfer Mode | 220 |
| 8.5.4 | Chain Transfer | 221 |
| 8.5.5 | Interrupts..... | 222 |
| 8.5.6 | Operation Timing..... | 222 |
| 8.5.7 | Number of DTC Execution States | 223 |
| 8.6 | Procedures for Using DTC..... | 225 |
| 8.6.1 | Activation by Interrupt..... | 225 |
| 8.6.2 | Activation by Software | 225 |
| 8.7 | Examples of Use of the DTC | 226 |
| 8.7.1 | Normal Mode..... | 226 |
| 8.7.2 | Software Activation | 226 |
| 8.8 | Usage Notes | 227 |
| 8.8.1 | Module Stop..... | 227 |

| | | |
|---------------------------|---|-----|
| 8.8.2 | On-Chip RAM | 227 |
| 8.8.3 | DTCE Bit Setting..... | 227 |
| 8.8.4 | DMAC Transfer End Interrupt..... | 227 |
| Section 9 I/O Ports | | 229 |
| 9.1 | Port 1..... | 233 |
| 9.1.1 | Port 1 Data Direction Register (P1DDR)..... | 233 |
| 9.1.2 | Port 1 Data Register (P1DR)..... | 234 |
| 9.1.3 | Port 1 Register (PORT1)..... | 234 |
| 9.1.4 | Pin Functions | 235 |
| 9.2 | Port 3..... | 238 |
| 9.2.1 | Port 3 Data Direction Register (P3DDR)..... | 238 |
| 9.2.2 | Port 3 Data Register (P3DR)..... | 239 |
| 9.2.3 | Port 3 Register (PORT3)..... | 239 |
| 9.2.4 | Port 3 Open-Drain Control Register (P3ODR) | 240 |
| 9.2.5 | Pin Functions | 240 |
| 9.3 | Port 4..... | 243 |
| 9.3.1 | Port 4 Register (PORT4)..... | 243 |
| 9.3.2 | Pin Function..... | 243 |
| 9.4 | Port 7..... | 244 |
| 9.4.1 | Port 7 Data Direction Register (P7DDR)..... | 244 |
| 9.4.2 | Port 7 Data Register (P7DR)..... | 245 |
| 9.4.3 | Port 7 Register (PORT7)..... | 245 |
| 9.4.4 | Pin Functions | 246 |
| 9.5 | Port 9..... | 247 |
| 9.5.1 | Port 9 Register (PORT9)..... | 247 |
| 9.5.2 | Pin Function..... | 247 |
| 9.6 | Port A..... | 248 |
| 9.6.1 | Port A Data Direction Register (PADDR) | 248 |
| 9.6.2 | Port A Data Register (PADR)..... | 249 |
| 9.6.3 | Port A Register (PORTA)..... | 249 |
| 9.6.4 | Port A MOS Pull-Up Control Register (PAPCR) | 250 |
| 9.6.5 | Port A Open Drain Control Register (PAODR)..... | 250 |
| 9.6.6 | Pin Functions | 251 |
| 9.6.7 | Port A Input Pull-Up MOS Function | 253 |
| 9.7 | Port B..... | 253 |
| 9.7.1 | Port B Data Direction Register (PBDDR) | 254 |
| 9.7.2 | Port B Data Register (PBDR) | 254 |
| 9.7.3 | Port B Register (PORTB) | 255 |
| 9.7.4 | Port B MOS Pull-Up Control Register (PBPCR) | 255 |

| | | |
|---|---|-----|
| 9.7.5 | Pin Functions | 256 |
| 9.7.6 | Port B Input Pull-Up MOS Function | 258 |
| 9.8 | Port C | 258 |
| 9.8.1 | Port C Data Direction Register (PCDDR) | 259 |
| 9.8.2 | Port C Data Register (PCDR) | 259 |
| 9.8.3 | Port C Register (PORTC) | 260 |
| 9.8.4 | Port C Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PCPCR)..... | 260 |
| 9.8.5 | Pin Functions | 261 |
| 9.8.6 | Port C Input Pull-Up MOS Function | 263 |
| 9.9 | Port D..... | 263 |
| 9.9.1 | Port D Data Direction Register (PDDDR) | 264 |
| 9.9.2 | Port D Data Register (PDDR) | 264 |
| 9.9.3 | Port D Register (PORTD) | 265 |
| 9.9.4 | Port D Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PDPCR) | 265 |
| 9.9.5 | Pin Functions | 266 |
| 9.9.6 | Port D Input Pull-Up MOS Function | 267 |
| 9.10 | Port E | 268 |
| 9.10.1 | Port E Data Direction Register (PEDDDR)..... | 268 |
| 9.10.2 | Port E Data Register (PEDR)..... | 269 |
| 9.10.3 | Port E Register (PORTE)..... | 269 |
| 9.10.4 | Port E Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PEPCR) | 270 |
| 9.10.5 | Pin Function..... | 270 |
| 9.10.6 | Port E Input Pull-Up MOS State..... | 273 |
| 9.11 | Port F | 274 |
| 9.11.1 | Port F Data Direction Register (PFDDR) | 274 |
| 9.11.2 | Port F Data Register (PFDR) | 275 |
| 9.11.3 | Port F Register (PORTF) | 275 |
| 9.11.4 | Pin Functions | 276 |
| 9.12 | Port G..... | 278 |
| 9.12.1 | Port G Data Direction Register (PGDDR) | 278 |
| 9.12.2 | Port G Data Register (PGDR) | 279 |
| 9.12.3 | Port G Register (PORTG) | 279 |
| 9.12.4 | Pin Functions | 280 |
| 9.13 | Handling of Unused Pins | 281 |
| Section 10 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU)..... | | 283 |
| 10.1 | Features..... | 283 |
| 10.2 | Input/Output Pins | 287 |
| 10.3 | Register Descriptions | 288 |
| 10.3.1 | Timer Control Register (TCR)..... | 289 |

| | | |
|---|---|------------|
| 10.3.2 | Timer Mode Register (TMDR)..... | 293 |
| 10.3.3 | Timer I/O Control Register (TIOR)..... | 295 |
| 10.3.4 | Timer Interrupt Enable Register (TIER)..... | 304 |
| 10.3.5 | Timer Status Register (TSR)..... | 306 |
| 10.3.6 | Timer Counter (TCNT)..... | 309 |
| 10.3.7 | Timer General Register (TGR)..... | 309 |
| 10.3.8 | Timer Start Register (TSTR)..... | 309 |
| 10.3.9 | Timer Synchro Register (TSYR)..... | 310 |
| 10.4 | Interface to Bus Master..... | 311 |
| 10.4.1 | 16-Bit Registers..... | 311 |
| 10.4.2 | 8-Bit Registers..... | 311 |
| 10.5 | Operation..... | 313 |
| 10.5.1 | Basic Functions..... | 313 |
| 10.5.2 | Synchronous Operation..... | 319 |
| 10.5.3 | Buffer Operation..... | 320 |
| 10.5.4 | PWM Modes..... | 324 |
| 10.5.5 | Phase Counting Mode..... | 328 |
| 10.6 | Interrupts..... | 333 |
| 10.6.1 | Interrupt Source and Priority..... | 333 |
| 10.6.2 | DTC Activation..... | 334 |
| 10.6.3 | DMAC Activation..... | 334 |
| 10.6.4 | A/D Converter Activation..... | 334 |
| 10.7 | Operation Timing..... | 335 |
| 10.7.1 | Input/Output Timing..... | 335 |
| 10.7.2 | Interrupt Signal Timing..... | 339 |
| 10.8 | Usage Notes..... | 342 |
| Section 11 8-Bit Timers (TMR)..... | | 349 |
| 11.1 | Features..... | 349 |
| 11.2 | Input/Output Pins..... | 351 |
| 11.3 | Register Descriptions..... | 351 |
| 11.3.1 | Timer Counters (TCNT)..... | 351 |
| 11.3.2 | Time Constant Registers A (TCORA)..... | 352 |
| 11.3.3 | Time Constant Registers B (TCORB)..... | 352 |
| 11.3.4 | Time Control Registers (TCR)..... | 353 |
| 11.3.5 | Timer Control/Status Registers (TCSR)..... | 354 |
| 11.4 | Operation..... | 356 |
| 11.4.1 | Pulse Output..... | 356 |
| 11.5 | Operation Timing..... | 357 |
| 11.5.1 | TCNT Incrementation Timing..... | 357 |

| | | |
|---|--|------------|
| 11.5.2 | Setting of Compare Match Flags CMFA and CMFB | 358 |
| 11.5.3 | Timer Output Timing..... | 358 |
| 11.5.4 | Timing of Compare Match Clear..... | 359 |
| 11.5.5 | Timing of TCNT External Reset..... | 359 |
| 11.5.6 | Timing of Overflow Flag (OVF) Setting | 360 |
| 11.6 | Operation with Cascaded Connection..... | 361 |
| 11.6.1 | 16-Bit Counter Mode..... | 361 |
| 11.6.2 | Compare Match Count Mode..... | 361 |
| 11.7 | Interrupts..... | 362 |
| 11.7.1 | Interrupt Sources and DTC Activation | 362 |
| 11.7.2 | A/D Converter Activation..... | 363 |
| 11.8 | Usage Notes | 363 |
| 11.8.1 | Contention between TCNT Write and Clear..... | 363 |
| 11.8.2 | Contention between TCNT Write and Increment | 364 |
| 11.8.3 | Contention between TCOR Write and Compare Match | 365 |
| 11.8.4 | Contention between Compare Matches A and B | 366 |
| 11.8.5 | Switching of Internal Clocks and TCNT Operation..... | 366 |
| 11.8.6 | Mode Setting with Cascaded Connection | 368 |
| 11.8.7 | Module Stop Mode Setting | 368 |
| Section 12 Watchdog Timer (WDT)..... | | 369 |
| 12.1 | Features..... | 369 |
| 12.2 | Register Descriptions | 370 |
| 12.2.1 | Timer Counter (TCNT)..... | 370 |
| 12.2.2 | Timer Control/Status Register (TCSR)..... | 370 |
| 12.2.3 | Reset Control/Status Register (RSTCSR)..... | 372 |
| 12.3 | Operation | 373 |
| 12.3.1 | Watchdog Timer Mode | 373 |
| 12.3.2 | Timing of Setting of Watchdog Timer Overflow Flag (WOVF) | 374 |
| 12.3.3 | Interval Timer Mode | 375 |
| 12.3.4 | Timing of Setting of Overflow Flag (OVF)..... | 375 |
| 12.4 | Interrupts..... | 376 |
| 12.5 | Usage Notes | 376 |
| 12.5.1 | Notes on Register Access..... | 376 |
| 12.5.2 | Contention between Timer Counter (TCNT) Write and Increment..... | 378 |
| 12.5.3 | Changing Value of CKS2 to CKS0..... | 378 |
| 12.5.4 | Switching between Watchdog Timer Mode and Interval Timer Mode..... | 378 |
| 12.5.5 | Internal Reset in Watchdog Timer Mode..... | 379 |
| 12.5.6 | OVF Flag Clearing in Interval Timer Mode | 379 |

| | | |
|------------|---|-----|
| Section 13 | Serial Communication Interface | 381 |
| 13.1 | Features..... | 381 |
| 13.1.1 | Block Diagram..... | 383 |
| 13.2 | Input/Output Pins..... | 386 |
| 13.3 | Register Descriptions..... | 386 |
| 13.3.1 | Receive Shift Register (RSR) | 387 |
| 13.3.2 | Receive Data Register (RDR)..... | 387 |
| 13.3.3 | Transmit Data Register (TDR)..... | 387 |
| 13.3.4 | Transmit Shift Register (TSR)..... | 387 |
| 13.3.5 | Serial Mode Register (SMR) | 388 |
| 13.3.6 | Serial Control Register (SCR) | 392 |
| 13.3.7 | Serial Status Register (SSR) | 396 |
| 13.3.8 | Smart Card Mode Register (SCMR)..... | 402 |
| 13.3.9 | Serial Extended Mode Register (SEMR) (Only for Channel 0 in H8S/2215) .. | 403 |
| 13.3.10 | Serial Extended Mode Register A_0 (SEMRA_0) (Only for Channel 0 in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C) | 411 |
| 13.3.11 | Serial Extended Mode Register B_0 (SEMRB_0) (Only for Channel 0 in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C) | 413 |
| 13.3.12 | Bit Rate Register (BRR) | 415 |
| 13.4 | Operation in Asynchronous Mode | 423 |
| 13.4.1 | Data Transfer Format..... | 424 |
| 13.4.2 | Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin in Asynchronous Mode..... | 425 |
| 13.4.3 | Clock..... | 426 |
| 13.4.4 | SCI Initialization (Asynchronous Mode)..... | 427 |
| 13.4.5 | Data Transmission (Asynchronous Mode)..... | 428 |
| 13.4.6 | Serial Data Reception (Asynchronous Mode)..... | 430 |
| 13.5 | Multiprocessor Communication Function | 434 |
| 13.5.1 | Multiprocessor Serial Data Transmission | 435 |
| 13.5.2 | Multiprocessor Serial Data Reception | 437 |
| 13.6 | Operation in Clocked Synchronous Mode | 440 |
| 13.6.1 | Clock..... | 440 |
| 13.6.2 | SCI Initialization (Clocked Synchronous Mode)..... | 441 |
| 13.6.3 | Serial Data Transmission (Clocked Synchronous Mode) | 441 |
| 13.6.4 | Serial Data Reception (Clocked Synchronous Mode)..... | 444 |
| 13.6.5 | Simultaneous Serial Data Transmission and Reception (Clocked Synchronous Mode) | 445 |
| 13.7 | Operation in Smart Card Interface..... | 447 |
| 13.7.1 | Pin Connection Example..... | 447 |
| 13.7.2 | Data Format (Except for Block Transfer Mode)..... | 448 |

| | | |
|--|---|-----|
| 13.7.3 | Clock..... | 449 |
| 13.7.4 | Block Transfer Mode | 449 |
| 13.7.5 | Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin..... | 450 |
| 13.7.6 | Initialization | 451 |
| 13.7.7 | Serial Data Transmission (Except for Block Transfer Mode)..... | 452 |
| 13.7.8 | Serial Data Reception (Except for Block Transfer Mode)..... | 455 |
| 13.7.9 | Clock Output Control..... | 457 |
| 13.8 | SCI Select Function | 459 |
| 13.9 | Interrupts..... | 461 |
| 13.9.1 | Interrupts in Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode..... | 461 |
| 13.9.2 | Interrupts in Smart Card Interface Mode | 463 |
| 13.10 | Usage Notes | 464 |
| 13.10.1 | Break Detection and Processing (Asynchronous Mode Only)..... | 464 |
| 13.10.2 | Mark State and Break Detection (Asynchronous Mode Only) | 464 |
| 13.10.3 | Receive Error Flags and Transmit Operations (Clocked Synchronous Mode Only)..... | 464 |
| 13.10.4 | Restrictions on Use of DMAC or DTC..... | 464 |
| 13.10.5 | Operation in Case of Mode Transition..... | 465 |
| 13.10.6 | Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function | 469 |
| 13.10.7 | Module Stop Mode Setting | 470 |
| Section 14 Boundary Scan Function..... | | 471 |
| 14.1 | Features..... | 471 |
| 14.2 | Pin Configuration..... | 473 |
| 14.3 | Register Descriptions | 474 |
| 14.3.1 | Instruction Register (INSTR)..... | 474 |
| 14.3.2 | IDCODE Register (IDCODE) | 476 |
| 14.3.3 | BYPASS Register (BYPASS) | 476 |
| 14.3.4 | Boundary Scan Register (BSCANR) | 477 |
| 14.4 | Boundary Scan Function Operation..... | 485 |
| 14.4.1 | TAP Controller | 485 |
| 14.5 | Usage Notes | 486 |
| Section 15 Universal Serial Bus Interface (USB)..... | | 489 |
| 15.1 | Features..... | 489 |
| 15.2 | Input/Output Pins | 492 |
| 15.3 | Register Descriptions | 493 |
| 15.3.1 | USB Endpoint Information Registers 00_0 to 22_4 (UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR22_4)..... | 495 |
| 15.3.2 | USB Control Register (UCTLR)..... | 502 |

| | | |
|---------|--|-----|
| 15.3.3 | USB DMAC Transfer Request Register (UDMAR)..... | 506 |
| 15.3.4 | USB Device Resume Register (UDRR)..... | 507 |
| 15.3.5 | USB Trigger Register 0 (UTRG0)..... | 508 |
| 15.3.6 | USB Trigger Register 1 (UTRG1)..... | 509 |
| 15.3.7 | USBFIFO Clear Register 0 (UFCLR0)..... | 510 |
| 15.3.8 | USBFIFO Clear Register 1 (UFCLR1)..... | 511 |
| 15.3.9 | USB Endpoint Stall Register 0 (UESTL0)..... | 512 |
| 15.3.10 | USB Endpoint Stall Register 1 (UESTL1)..... | 513 |
| 15.3.11 | USB Endpoint Data Register 0s (UEDR0s)..... | 513 |
| 15.3.12 | USB Endpoint Data Register 0i (UEDR0i)..... | 514 |
| 15.3.13 | USB Endpoint Data Register 0o (UEDR0o)..... | 514 |
| 15.3.14 | USB Endpoint Data Register 1i (UEDR1i)..... | 514 |
| 15.3.15 | USB Endpoint Data Register 2i (UEDR2i)..... | 515 |
| 15.3.16 | USB Endpoint Data Register 2o (UEDR2o)..... | 515 |
| 15.3.17 | USB Endpoint Data Register 3i (UEDR3i)..... | 515 |
| 15.3.18 | USB Endpoint Data Register 3o (UEDR3o)..... | 516 |
| 15.3.19 | USB Endpoint Data Register 4i (UEDR4i)..... | 516 |
| 15.3.20 | USB Endpoint Data Register 4o (UEDR4o)..... | 516 |
| 15.3.21 | USB Endpoint Data Register 5i (UEDR5i)..... | 517 |
| 15.3.22 | USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 0o (UESZ0o)..... | 517 |
| 15.3.23 | USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 2o (UESZ2o)..... | 517 |
| 15.3.24 | USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 3o (UESZ3o)..... | 518 |
| 15.3.25 | USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 4o (UESZ4o)..... | 518 |
| 15.3.26 | USB Interrupt Flag Register 0 (UIFR0)..... | 518 |
| 15.3.27 | USB Interrupt Flag Register 1 (UIFR1) (Only in H8S/2215)..... | 520 |
| 15.3.28 | USB Interrupt Flag Register 1 (UIFR1) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)..... | 522 |
| 15.3.29 | USB Interrupt Flag Register 2 (UIFR2) (Only in H8S/2215)..... | 524 |
| 15.3.30 | USB Interrupt Flag Register 2 (UIFR2) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)..... | 525 |
| 15.3.31 | USB Interrupt Flag Register 3 (UIFR3)..... | 527 |
| 15.3.32 | USB Interrupt Enable Register 0 (UIER0)..... | 529 |
| 15.3.33 | USB Interrupt Enable Register 1 (UIER1) (Only in H8S/2215)..... | 529 |
| 15.3.34 | USB Interrupt Enable Register 1 (UIER1) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)..... | 530 |
| 15.3.35 | USB Interrupt Enable Register 2 (UIER2)..... | 530 |
| 15.3.36 | USB Interrupt Enable Register 2 (UIER2) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)..... | 531 |
| 15.3.37 | USB Interrupt Enable Register 3 (UIER3)..... | 531 |
| 15.3.38 | USB Interrupt Select Register 0 (UISR0)..... | 532 |

| | | |
|---------|---|-----|
| 15.3.39 | USB Interrupt Select Register 1 (UISR1) (Only in H8S/2215) | 533 |
| 15.3.40 | USB Interrupt Select Register 1 (UISR1) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C) | 533 |
| 15.3.41 | USB Interrupt Select Register 2 (UISR2) (Only in H8S/2215) | 534 |
| 15.3.42 | USB Interrupt Select Register 2 (UISR2) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C) | 534 |
| 15.3.43 | USB Interrupt Select Register 3 (UISR3) | 535 |
| 15.3.44 | USB Data Status Register (UDSR) | 536 |
| 15.3.45 | USB Configuration Value Register (UCVR) | 537 |
| 15.3.46 | USB Time Stamp Registers H, L (UTSRH, UTSRL) | 538 |
| 15.3.47 | USB Test Register 0 (UTSTR0) | 539 |
| 15.3.48 | USB Test Register 1 (UTSTR1) | 541 |
| 15.3.49 | USB Test Registers 2 and A to F (UTSTR2, UTSRA to UTSRF) | 543 |
| 15.3.50 | Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB) | 543 |
| 15.4 | Interrupt Sources | 543 |
| 15.5 | Communication Operation | 547 |
| 15.5.1 | Initialization | 547 |
| 15.5.2 | USB Cable Connection/Disconnection | 548 |
| 15.5.3 | Suspend and Resume Operations | 552 |
| 15.5.4 | Control Transfer | 556 |
| 15.5.5 | Interrupt-In Transfer (EP1i Is specified as Endpoint) | 563 |
| 15.5.6 | Bulk-In Transfer (Dual FIFOs) (EP2i Is specified as Endpoint) | 564 |
| 15.5.7 | Bulk-Out Transfer (Dual FIFOs) (EP2o Is specified as Endpoint) | 566 |
| 15.5.8 | Isochronous-In Transfer (Dual-FIFO) (When EP3i Is Specified as Endpoint) | 568 |
| 15.5.9 | Isochronous-Out Transfer (Dual-FIFO) (When EP3o Is Specified as Endpoint) | 570 |
| 15.5.10 | Processing of USB Standard Commands and Class/Vendor Commands | 572 |
| 15.5.11 | Stall Operations | 573 |
| 15.6 | DMA Transfer Specifications | 577 |
| 15.6.1 | DMA Transfer by USB Request | 577 |
| 15.6.2 | DMA Transfer by Auto-Request | 580 |
| 15.7 | Endpoint Configuration Example | 582 |
| 15.8 | USB External Circuit Example | 587 |
| 15.9 | Usage Notes | 591 |
| 15.9.1 | Operating Frequency | 591 |
| 15.9.2 | Bus Interface | 591 |
| 15.9.3 | Setup Data Reception | 591 |
| 15.9.4 | FIFO Clear | 592 |
| 15.9.5 | IRQ6 Interrupt | 592 |

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|-----|
| 15.9.6 | Data Register Overread or Overwrite | 592 |
| 15.9.7 | EP3o Isochronous Transfer..... | 593 |
| 15.9.8 | Reset | 595 |
| 15.9.9 | EP0 Interrupt Assignment..... | 595 |
| 15.9.10 | Level Shifter for VBUS and $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ Pins..... | 596 |
| 15.9.11 | Read and Write to USB Endpoint Data Register | 596 |
| 15.9.12 | Restrictions for Software Standby Mode Transition..... | 596 |
| 15.9.13 | USB External Circuit Example..... | 598 |
| 15.9.14 | Pin Processing when USB Not Used | 599 |
| 15.9.15 | Notes on Emulator Usage | 599 |
| 15.9.16 | Notes on TR Interrupt..... | 599 |
| 15.9.17 | Notes on UIFRO | 600 |
| 15.9.18 | Clearing the FIFOs in DMA Transfer Mode..... | 600 |
| Section 16 A/D Converter..... | | 601 |
| 16.1 | Features..... | 601 |
| 16.2 | Input/Output Pins..... | 603 |
| 16.3 | Register Descriptions..... | 603 |
| 16.3.1 | A/D Data Registers A to D (ADDRA to ADDRD) | 604 |
| 16.3.2 | A/D Control/Status Register (ADCSR) | 604 |
| 16.3.3 | A/D Control Register (ADCR) | 606 |
| 16.4 | Interface to Bus Master..... | 607 |
| 16.5 | Operation | 608 |
| 16.5.1 | Single Mode..... | 608 |
| 16.5.2 | Scan Mode | 609 |
| 16.5.3 | Input Sampling and A/D Conversion Time | 610 |
| 16.5.4 | External Trigger Input Timing..... | 612 |
| 16.6 | Interrupts..... | 613 |
| 16.7 | A/D Conversion Precision Definitions | 613 |
| 16.8 | Usage Notes..... | 615 |
| 16.8.1 | Permissible Signal Source Impedance | 615 |
| 16.8.2 | Influences on Absolute Precision..... | 615 |
| 16.8.3 | Range of Analog Power Supply and Other Pin Settings..... | 616 |
| 16.8.4 | Notes on Board Design..... | 616 |
| 16.8.5 | Notes on Noise Countermeasures | 616 |
| 16.8.6 | Module Stop Mode Setting | 618 |
| Section 17 D/A Converter..... | | 619 |
| 17.1 | Features..... | 619 |
| 17.2 | Input/Output Pins..... | 620 |

| | | |
|--|---|-----|
| 17.3 | Register Description..... | 620 |
| 17.3.1 | D/A Data Register (DADR)..... | 620 |
| 17.3.2 | D/A Control Register (DACR) | 621 |
| 17.4 | Operation | 621 |
| 17.5 | Usage Note..... | 623 |
| 17.5.1 | Module Stop Mode Setting | 623 |
| Section 18 RAM | | 625 |
| Section 19 Flash Memory (F-ZTAT Version) | | 627 |
| 19.1 | Features..... | 627 |
| 19.2 | Mode Transitions | 629 |
| 19.3 | Block Configuration | 633 |
| 19.4 | Input/Output Pins | 634 |
| 19.5 | Register Descriptions | 634 |
| 19.5.1 | Flash Memory Control Register 1 (FLMCR1)..... | 635 |
| 19.5.2 | Flash Memory Control Register 2 (FLMCR2)..... | 636 |
| 19.5.3 | Erase Block Register 1 (EBR1) | 637 |
| 19.5.4 | Erase Block Register 2 (EBR2) | 638 |
| 19.5.5 | RAM Emulation Register (RAMER)..... | 639 |
| 19.5.6 | Serial Control Register X (SCRX)..... | 640 |
| 19.6 | On-Board Programming Modes..... | 641 |
| 19.6.1 | SCI Boot Mode (HD64F2215, HD64F2215R, and HD64F2215T) | 641 |
| 19.6.2 | USB Boot Mode (HD64F2215U, HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215TU and HD64F2215CU) | 645 |
| 19.6.3 | Programming/Erasing in User Program Mode..... | 649 |
| 19.7 | Flash Memory Emulation in RAM | 650 |
| 19.8 | Flash Memory Programming/Erasing | 652 |
| 19.8.1 | Program/Program-Verify | 652 |
| 19.8.2 | Erase/Erase-Verify | 654 |
| 19.9 | Program/Erase Protection | 656 |
| 19.9.1 | Hardware Protection | 656 |
| 19.9.2 | Software Protection..... | 656 |
| 19.9.3 | Error Protection..... | 656 |
| 19.10 | Interrupt Handling when Programming/Erasing Flash Memory | 657 |
| 19.11 | Programmer Mode | 657 |
| 19.12 | Power-Down States for Flash Memory | 658 |
| 19.13 | Flash Memory Programming and Erasing Precautions..... | 659 |
| 19.14 | Note on Switching from F-ZTAT Version to Masked ROM Version | 664 |

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| Section 20 | Masked ROM | 665 |
| 20.1 | Features | 665 |
| Section 21 | Clock Pulse Generator | 667 |
| 21.1 | Register Descriptions | 668 |
| 21.1.1 | System Clock Control Register (SCKCR) | 668 |
| 21.1.2 | Low-Power Control Register (LPWRCR) | 670 |
| 21.2 | System Clock Oscillator | 671 |
| 21.2.1 | Connecting a Crystal Resonator | 671 |
| 21.2.2 | Connecting a Ceramic Resonator (H8S/2215T) | 672 |
| 21.2.3 | Inputting an External Clock | 672 |
| 21.3 | Duty Adjustment Circuit | 674 |
| 21.4 | Medium-Speed Clock Divider | 674 |
| 21.5 | Bus Master Clock Selection Circuit | 674 |
| 21.6 | USB Operating Clock (48 MHz) | 675 |
| 21.6.1 | Connecting a Ceramic Resonator | 675 |
| 21.6.2 | Inputting an 48-MHz External Clock | 675 |
| 21.6.3 | Pin Handling when 48-MHz External Clock Is Not Needed (On-chip PLL Circuit Is Used) | 676 |
| 21.7 | PLL Circuit for USB | 677 |
| 21.8 | Usage Notes | 678 |
| 21.8.1 | Note on Crystal Resonator | 678 |
| 21.8.2 | Note on Board Design | 678 |
| 21.8.3 | Note on Switchover of External Clock | 678 |
| Section 22 | Power-Down Modes | 681 |
| 22.1 | Register Descriptions | 684 |
| 22.1.1 | Standby Control Register (SBYCR) | 684 |
| 22.1.2 | Module Stop Control Registers A to C (MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC) | 686 |
| 22.2 | Medium-Speed Mode | 688 |
| 22.3 | Sleep Mode | 689 |
| 22.3.1 | Transition to Sleep Mode | 689 |
| 22.3.2 | Exiting Sleep Mode | 689 |
| 22.4 | Software Standby Mode | 690 |
| 22.4.1 | Transition to Software Standby Mode | 690 |
| 22.4.2 | Clearing Software Standby Mode | 690 |
| 22.4.3 | Setting Oscillation Stabilization Time after Clearing Software Standby Mode | 691 |
| 22.4.4 | Software Standby Mode Application Example | 692 |

| | | |
|--|--|------------|
| 22.5 | Hardware Standby Mode | 693 |
| 22.5.1 | Transition to Hardware Standby Mode | 693 |
| 22.5.2 | Clearing Hardware Standby Mode | 693 |
| 22.5.3 | Hardware Standby Mode Timing | 694 |
| 22.5.4 | Hardware Standby Mode Timings | 695 |
| 22.6 | Module Stop Mode | 696 |
| 22.7 | ϕ Clock Output Disabling Function | 696 |
| 22.8 | Usage Notes | 697 |
| 22.8.1 | I/O Port Status | 697 |
| 22.8.2 | Current Dissipation during Oscillation Stabilization Wait Period | 697 |
| 22.8.3 | DMAC and DTC Module Stop | 697 |
| 22.8.4 | On-Chip Peripheral Module Interrupts | 697 |
| 22.8.5 | Writing to MSTPCR | 697 |
| Section 23 List of Registers | | 699 |
| 23.1 | Register Addresses (Address Order) | 699 |
| 23.2 | Register Bits | 708 |
| 23.3 | Register States in Each Operating Mode | 718 |
| Section 24 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215) | | 725 |
| 24.1 | Absolute Maximum Ratings | 725 |
| 24.2 | Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range | 726 |
| 24.3 | DC Characteristics | 727 |
| 24.4 | AC Characteristics | 730 |
| 24.4.1 | Clock Timing | 731 |
| 24.4.2 | Control Signal Timing | 733 |
| 24.4.3 | Bus Timing | 735 |
| 24.4.4 | Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules | 741 |
| 24.5 | USB Characteristics | 747 |
| 24.6 | A/D Conversion Characteristics | 749 |
| 24.7 | D/A Conversion Characteristics | 749 |
| 24.8 | Flash Memory Characteristics | 750 |
| 24.9 | Usage Note | 751 |
| Section 25 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215R) | | 753 |
| 25.1 | Absolute Maximum Ratings | 753 |
| 25.2 | Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range | 754 |
| 25.3 | DC Characteristics | 755 |
| 25.4 | AC Characteristics | 758 |
| 25.4.1 | Clock Timing | 759 |

| | | |
|--|---|------------|
| 25.4.2 | Control Signal Timing | 761 |
| 25.4.3 | Bus Timing | 763 |
| 25.4.4 | Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules..... | 770 |
| 25.5 | USB Characteristics | 776 |
| 25.6 | A/D Conversion Characteristics | 778 |
| 25.7 | D/A Conversion Characteristics | 779 |
| 25.8 | Flash Memory Characteristics | 779 |
| 25.9 | Usage Note..... | 781 |
| Section 26 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215T) | | 783 |
| 26.1 | Absolute Maximum Ratings | 783 |
| 26.2 | Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range..... | 783 |
| 26.3 | DC Characteristics | 784 |
| 26.4 | AC Characteristics | 787 |
| 26.4.1 | Clock Timing | 788 |
| 26.4.2 | Control Signal Timing | 790 |
| 26.4.3 | Bus Timing | 792 |
| 26.4.4 | Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules..... | 798 |
| 26.5 | USB Characteristics | 803 |
| 26.6 | A/D Conversion Characteristics | 804 |
| 26.7 | D/A Conversion Characteristics | 805 |
| 26.8 | Flash Memory Characteristics | 805 |
| 26.9 | Usage Note..... | 806 |
| Section 27 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215C) | | 807 |
| 27.1 | Absolute Maximum Ratings | 807 |
| 27.2 | Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range..... | 808 |
| 27.3 | DC Characteristics | 809 |
| 27.4 | AC Characteristics | 812 |
| 27.4.1 | Clock Timing..... | 813 |
| 27.4.2 | Control Signal Timing | 815 |
| 27.4.3 | Bus Timing | 817 |
| 27.4.4 | Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules..... | 823 |
| 27.5 | USB Characteristics | 829 |
| 27.6 | A/D Conversion Characteristics | 831 |
| 27.7 | D/A Conversion Characteristics | 831 |
| 27.8 | Flash Memory Characteristics | 832 |
| 27.9 | Usage Note..... | 834 |
| Appendix | | 835 |

| | | |
|----|---|-----|
| A. | I/O Port States in Each Processing State..... | 835 |
| B. | Product Model Lineup | 839 |
| C. | Package Dimensions | 840 |
| | Index | 843 |

Figures

Section 1 Overview

| | |
|---|---|
| Figure 1.1 Internal Block Diagram | 3 |
| Figure 1.2 Pin Arrangement (TFP-120, TFP-120V)..... | 4 |
| Figure 1.3 Pin Arrangement (BP-112, BP-112V)..... | 5 |

Section 2 CPU

| | |
|--|----|
| Figure 2.1 Exception Vector Table (Normal Mode)..... | 27 |
| Figure 2.2 Stack Structure in Normal Mode..... | 27 |
| Figure 2.3 Exception Vector Table (Advanced Mode)..... | 28 |
| Figure 2.4 Stack Structure in Advanced Mode..... | 29 |
| Figure 2.5 Memory Map..... | 30 |
| Figure 2.6 CPU Registers | 31 |
| Figure 2.7 Usage of General Registers | 32 |
| Figure 2.8 Stack..... | 33 |
| Figure 2.9 General Register Data Formats (1)..... | 36 |
| Figure 2.9 General Register Data Formats (2)..... | 37 |
| Figure 2.10 Memory Data Formats..... | 38 |
| Figure 2.11 Instruction Formats (Examples) | 50 |
| Figure 2.12 Branch Address Specification in Memory Indirect Mode | 53 |
| Figure 2.13 State Transitions..... | 57 |
| Figure 2.14 Flowchart of Method for Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits | 61 |

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes

| | |
|--|----|
| Figure 3.1 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD64F2215 and HD64F2215U..... | 69 |
| Figure 3.2 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD6432215B..... | 70 |
| Figure 3.3 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD6432215C..... | 71 |
| Figure 3.4 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD64F2215R, HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215T, HD64F2215TU and HD64F2215CU | 72 |

Section 4 Exception Handling

| | |
|--|----|
| Figure 4.1 Reset Sequence (Mode 4)..... | 77 |
| Figure 4.2 Reset Sequence (Modes 6, 7) | 78 |
| Figure 4.3 Stack Status after Exception Handling | 81 |
| Figure 4.4 Operation when SP Value Is Odd..... | 82 |

Section 5 Interrupt Controller

| | |
|---|----|
| Figure 5.1 Block Diagram of Interrupt Controller..... | 84 |
|---|----|

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| Figure 5.2 | Block Diagram of IRQn Interrupts..... | 92 |
| Figure 5.3 | Set Timing for IRQnF | 93 |
| Figure 5.4 | Flowchart of Procedure Up to Interrupt Acceptance in Interrupt Control Mode 0..... | 97 |
| Figure 5.5 | Flowchart of Procedure Up to Interrupt Acceptance in Interrupt Control Mode 2..... | 99 |
| Figure 5.6 | Interrupt Exception Handling..... | 100 |
| Figure 5.7 | Interrupt Control for DTC and DMAC | 103 |
| Figure 5.8 | Contention between Interrupt Generation and Disabling | 105 |

Section 6 Bus Controller

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Figure 6.1 | Block Diagram of Bus Controller..... | 110 |
| Figure 6.2 | Overview of Area Divisions..... | 121 |
| Figure 6.3 | \overline{CS}_n Signal Output Timing (n = 0 to 7)..... | 124 |
| Figure 6.4 | On-Chip Memory Access Cycle..... | 125 |
| Figure 6.5 | Pin States during On-Chip Memory Access..... | 125 |
| Figure 6.6 | On-Chip Peripheral Module Access Cycle..... | 126 |
| Figure 6.7 | Pin States during On-Chip Peripheral Module Access..... | 126 |
| Figure 6.8 | Access Sizes and Data Alignment Control (8-Bit Access Space) | 127 |
| Figure 6.9 | Access Sizes and Data Alignment Control (16-Bit Access Space) | 128 |
| Figure 6.10 | Bus Timing for 8-Bit 2-State Access Space | 129 |
| Figure 6.11 | Bus Timing for 8-Bit 3-State Access Space (Except Area 6)..... | 130 |
| Figure 6.12 | Bus Timing for Area 6..... | 131 |
| Figure 6.13 | Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (1) (Even Address Byte Access) | 132 |
| Figure 6.14 | Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (2) (Odd Address Byte Access) | 133 |
| Figure 6.15 | Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (3) (Word Access)..... | 134 |
| Figure 6.16 | Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (1) (Even Address Byte Access) | 135 |
| Figure 6.17 | Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (2) (Odd Address Byte Access) | 136 |
| Figure 6.18 | Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (3) (Word Access)..... | 137 |
| Figure 6.19 | Example of Wait State Insertion Timing..... | 139 |
| Figure 6.20 | Example of Burst ROM Access Timing (When $AST0 = BRSTS1 = 1$)..... | 140 |
| Figure 6.21 | Example of Burst ROM Access Timing (When $AST0 = BRSTS1 = 0$)..... | 141 |
| Figure 6.22 | Example of Idle Cycle Operation (1) | 142 |
| Figure 6.23 | Example of Idle Cycle Operation (2) | 143 |
| Figure 6.24 | Relationship between Chip Select (\overline{CS}) and Read (\overline{RD}) | 144 |
| Figure 6.25 | Bus-Released State Transition Timing..... | 146 |

Section 7 DMA Controller (DMAC)

| | | |
|------------|---|-----|
| Figure 7.1 | Block Diagram of DMAC | 150 |
| Figure 7.2 | Areas for Register Re-Setting by DTC (Example: Channel 0A)..... | 170 |
| Figure 7.3 | Operation in Sequential Mode..... | 174 |
| Figure 7.4 | Example of Sequential Mode Setting Procedure..... | 175 |

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Figure 7.5 | Operation in Idle Mode | 176 |
| Figure 7.6 | Example of Idle Mode Setting Procedure..... | 177 |
| Figure 7.7 | Operation in Repeat Mode..... | 179 |
| Figure 7.8 | Example of Repeat Mode Setting Procedure..... | 180 |
| Figure 7.9 | Operation in Normal Mode | 182 |
| Figure 7.10 | Example of Normal Mode Setting Procedure..... | 183 |
| Figure 7.11 | Operation in Block Transfer Mode (BLKDIR = 0)..... | 185 |
| Figure 7.12 | Operation in Block Transfer Mode (BLKDIR = 1)..... | 186 |
| Figure 7.13 | Operation Flow in Block Transfer Mode..... | 187 |
| Figure 7.14 | Example of Block Transfer Mode Setting Procedure..... | 188 |
| Figure 7.15 | Example of DMA Transfer Bus Timing..... | 191 |
| Figure 7.16 | Example of Short Address Mode Transfer | 192 |
| Figure 7.17 | Example of Full Address Mode (Cycle Steal) Transfer..... | 193 |
| Figure 7.18 | Example of Full Address Mode (Burst Mode) Transfer..... | 194 |
| Figure 7.19 | Example of Full Address Mode (Block Transfer Mode) Transfer..... | 195 |
| Figure 7.20 | Example of DREQ Level Activated Normal Mode Transfer | 196 |
| Figure 7.21 | Example of Multi-Channel Transfer..... | 197 |
| Figure 7.22 | Example of Procedure for Continuing Transfer on Channel Interrupted by NMI Interrupt..... | 199 |
| Figure 7.23 | Example of Procedure for Forcibly Terminating DMAC Operation..... | 199 |
| Figure 7.24 | Example of Procedure for Clearing Full Address Mode | 200 |
| Figure 7.25 | Block Diagram of Transfer End/Transfer Break Interrupt | 201 |
| Figure 7.26 | DMAC Register Update Timing..... | 202 |
| Figure 7.27 | Contention between DMAC Register Update and CPU Read..... | 203 |

Section 8 Data Transfer Controller (DTC)

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Figure 8.1 | Block Diagram of DTC | 206 |
| Figure 8.2 | Block Diagram of DTC Activation Source Control | 213 |
| Figure 8.3 | Correspondence between DTC Vector Address and Register Information | 214 |
| Figure 8.4 | Correspondence between DTC Vector Address and Register Information | 214 |
| Figure 8.5 | Flowchart of DTC Operation..... | 216 |
| Figure 8.6 | Memory Mapping in Normal Mode | 218 |
| Figure 8.7 | Memory Mapping in Repeat Mode | 219 |
| Figure 8.8 | Memory Mapping in Block Transfer Mode..... | 220 |
| Figure 8.9 | Chain Transfer Memory Map..... | 221 |
| Figure 8.10 | DTC Operation Timing (Example in Normal Mode or Repeat Mode)..... | 222 |
| Figure 8.11 | DTC Operation Timing (Example of Block Transfer Mode, with Block Size of 2)..... | 223 |
| Figure 8.12 | DTC Operation Timing (Example of Chain Transfer) | 223 |

Section 10 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU)

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 10.1 | Block Diagram of TPU..... | 284 |
| Figure 10.2 | 16-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCNT (16 Bits)]..... | 311 |
| Figure 10.3 | 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCR (Upper 8 Bits)]..... | 312 |
| Figure 10.4 | 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TMDR (Lower 8 Bits)] | 312 |
| Figure 10.5 | 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCR and TMDR (16 Bits)] | 312 |
| Figure 10.6 | Example of Counter Operation Setting Procedure | 313 |
| Figure 10.7 | Free-Running Counter Operation..... | 314 |
| Figure 10.8 | Periodic Counter Operation..... | 315 |
| Figure 10.9 | Example of Setting Procedure for Waveform Output by Compare Match..... | 315 |
| Figure 10.10 | Example of 0 Output/1 Output Operation | 316 |
| Figure 10.11 | Example of Toggle Output Operation | 316 |
| Figure 10.12 | Example of Input Capture Operation Setting Procedure | 317 |
| Figure 10.13 | Example of Input Capture Operation | 318 |
| Figure 10.14 | Example of Synchronous Operation Setting Procedure | 319 |
| Figure 10.15 | Example of Synchronous Operation..... | 320 |
| Figure 10.16 | Compare Match Buffer Operation..... | 321 |
| Figure 10.17 | Input Capture Buffer Operation..... | 321 |
| Figure 10.18 | Example of Buffer Operation Setting Procedure..... | 321 |
| Figure 10.19 | Example of Buffer Operation (1) | 322 |
| Figure 10.20 | Example of Buffer Operation (2) | 323 |
| Figure 10.21 | Example of PWM Mode Setting Procedure | 325 |
| Figure 10.22 | Example of PWM Mode Operation (1)..... | 325 |
| Figure 10.23 | Example of PWM Mode Operation (2)..... | 326 |
| Figure 10.24 | Example of PWM Mode Operation (3)..... | 327 |
| Figure 10.25 | Example of Phase Counting Mode Setting Procedure..... | 328 |
| Figure 10.26 | Example of Phase Counting Mode 1 Operation | 329 |
| Figure 10.27 | Example of Phase Counting Mode 2 Operation | 330 |
| Figure 10.28 | Example of Phase Counting Mode 3 Operation | 331 |
| Figure 10.29 | Example of Phase Counting Mode 4 Operation | 332 |
| Figure 10.30 | Count Timing in Internal Clock Operation..... | 335 |
| Figure 10.31 | Count Timing in External Clock Operation | 335 |
| Figure 10.32 | Output Compare Output Timing | 336 |
| Figure 10.33 | Input Capture Input Signal Timing..... | 336 |
| Figure 10.34 | Counter Clear Timing (Compare Match) | 337 |
| Figure 10.35 | Counter Clear Timing (Input Capture)..... | 337 |
| Figure 10.36 | Buffer Operation Timing (Compare Match) | 338 |
| Figure 10.37 | Buffer Operation Timing (Input Capture) | 338 |
| Figure 10.38 | TGI Interrupt Timing (Compare Match) | 339 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 10.39 | TGI Interrupt Timing (Input Capture) | 339 |
| Figure 10.40 | TCIV Interrupt Setting Timing | 340 |
| Figure 10.41 | TCIU Interrupt Setting Timing | 340 |
| Figure 10.42 | Timing for Status Flag Clearing by CPU | 341 |
| Figure 10.43 | Timing for Status Flag Clearing by DTC or DMAC Activation | 341 |
| Figure 10.44 | Phase Difference, Overlap, and Pulse Width in Phase Counting Mode | 342 |
| Figure 10.45 | Contention between TCNT Write and Clear Operations | 343 |
| Figure 10.46 | Contention between TCNT Write and Increment Operations | 343 |
| Figure 10.47 | Contention between TGR Write and Compare Match | 344 |
| Figure 10.48 | Contention between Buffer Register Write and Compare Match | 345 |
| Figure 10.49 | Contention between TGR Read and Input Capture | 345 |
| Figure 10.50 | Contention between TGR Write and Input Capture | 346 |
| Figure 10.51 | Contention between Buffer Register Write and Input Capture | 347 |
| Figure 10.52 | Contention between Overflow and Counter Clearing | 347 |
| Figure 10.53 | Contention between TCNT Write and Overflow | 348 |

Section 11 8-Bit Timers (TMR)

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 11.1 | Block Diagram of 8-Bit Timer | 350 |
| Figure 11.2 | Example of Pulse Output | 356 |
| Figure 11.3 | Count Timing for Internal Clock Input | 357 |
| Figure 11.4 | Count Timing for External Clock Input | 357 |
| Figure 11.5 | Timing of CMF Setting | 358 |
| Figure 11.6 | Timing of Timer Output | 358 |
| Figure 11.7 | Timing of Compare Match Clear | 359 |
| Figure 11.8 | Timing of Clearance by External Reset | 359 |
| Figure 11.9 | Timing of OVF Setting | 360 |
| Figure 11.10 | Contention between TCNT Write and Clear | 363 |
| Figure 11.11 | Contention between TCNT Write and Increment | 364 |
| Figure 11.12 | Contention between TCOR Write and Compare Match | 365 |

Section 12 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Figure 12.1 | Block Diagram of WDT | 369 |
| Figure 12.2 | Operation in Watchdog Timer Mode | 373 |
| Figure 12.3 | Timing of WOVF Setting | 374 |
| Figure 12.4 | Operation in Interval Timer Mode | 375 |
| Figure 12.5 | Timing of OVF Setting | 375 |
| Figure 12.6 | Format of Data Written to TCNT and TCSR | 376 |
| Figure 12.7 | Format of Data Written to RSTCSR (Example of WDT0) | 377 |
| Figure 12.8 | Contention between TCNT Write and Increment | 378 |

Section 13 Serial Communication Interface

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 13.1 | Block Diagram of SCI_0 (H8S/2215) | 383 |
| Figure 13.2 | Block Diagram of SCI_0 (H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)..... | 384 |
| Figure 13.3 | Block Diagram of SCI_1 and SCI_2 | 385 |
| Figure 13.4 | Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate Is Selected (1)..... | 405 |
| Figure 13.4 | Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate Is Selected (2)..... | 406 |
| Figure 13.5 | Example of Average Transfer Rate Setting when TPU Clock Is Input (1) | 407 |
| Figure 13.5 | Example of Average Transfer Rate Setting when TPU Clock Is Input (2) | 408 |
| Figure 13.5 | Example of Average Transfer Rate Setting when TPU Clock Is Input (3) | 409 |
| Figure 13.5 | Example of Average Transfer Rate Setting when TPU Clock Is Input (4) | 410 |
| Figure 13.6 | Data Format in Asynchronous Communication (Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, Two Stop Bits)..... | 423 |
| Figure 13.7 | Receive Data Sampling Timing in Asynchronous Mode | 426 |
| Figure 13.8 | Relationship between Output Clock and Transfer Data Phase (Asynchronous Mode)..... | 426 |
| Figure 13.9 | Sample SCI Initialization Flowchart | 427 |
| Figure 13.10 | Example of Operation in Transmission in Asynchronous Mode (Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, One Stop Bit)..... | 428 |
| Figure 13.11 | Sample Serial Transmission Data Flowchart..... | 429 |
| Figure 13.12 | Example of SCI Operation in Reception (Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, One Stop Bit)..... | 430 |
| Figure 13.13 | Sample Serial Reception Data Flowchart (1) | 432 |
| Figure 13.13 | Sample Serial Reception Data Flowchart (2) | 433 |
| Figure 13.14 | Example of Communication Using Multiprocessor Format (Transmission of Data H'AA to Receiving Station A)..... | 435 |
| Figure 13.15 | Sample Multiprocessor Serial Transmission Flowchart | 436 |
| Figure 13.16 | Example of SCI Operation in Reception (Example with 8-Bit Data, Multiprocessor Bit, One Stop Bit) | 437 |
| Figure 13.17 | Sample Multiprocessor Serial Reception Flowchart (1)..... | 438 |
| Figure 13.17 | Sample Multiprocessor Serial Reception Flowchart (2)..... | 439 |
| Figure 13.18 | Data Format in Synchronous Communication (For LSB-First) | 440 |
| Figure 13.19 | Sample SCI Initialization Flowchart | 441 |
| Figure 13.20 | Sample SCI Transmission Operation in Clocked Synchronous Mode | 442 |
| Figure 13.21 | Sample Serial Transmission Data Flowchart..... | 443 |
| Figure 13.22 | Example of SCI Operation in Reception | 444 |
| Figure 13.23 | Sample Serial Reception Flowchart | 445 |
| Figure 13.24 | Sample Flowchart of Simultaneous Serial Transmit and Receive Operations | 446 |
| Figure 13.25 | Schematic Diagram of Smart Card Interface Pin Connections..... | 447 |
| Figure 13.26 | Normal Smart Card Interface Data Format | 448 |
| Figure 13.27 | Direct Convention (SDIR = SIN \bar{V} = O/ \bar{E} = 0) | 448 |

| | | |
|--------------|--|-----|
| Figure 13.28 | Inverse Convention ($SDIR = SINV = O/\bar{E} = 1$)..... | 449 |
| Figure 13.29 | Receive Data Sampling Timing in Smart Card Mode (Using Clock of 372 Times the Transfer Rate) | 450 |
| Figure 13.30 | Retransfer Operation in SCI Transmit Mode..... | 453 |
| Figure 13.31 | TEND Flag Generation Timing in Transmission Operation..... | 453 |
| Figure 13.32 | Example of Transmission Processing Flow..... | 454 |
| Figure 13.33 | Retransfer Operation in SCI Receive Mode | 456 |
| Figure 13.34 | Example of Reception Processing Flow | 456 |
| Figure 13.35 | Timing for Fixing Clock Output Level..... | 457 |
| Figure 13.36 | Clock Halt and Restart Procedure | 458 |
| Figure 13.37 | Example of Communication Using the SCI Select Function..... | 459 |
| Figure 13.38 | Example of Communication Using the SCI Select Function..... | 460 |
| Figure 13.39 | Example of Clocked Synchronous Transmission by DMAC or DTC | 465 |
| Figure 13.40 | Sample Flowchart for Mode Transition during Transmission..... | 466 |
| Figure 13.41 | Port Pin State of Asynchronous Transmission Using Internal Clock | 466 |
| Figure 13.42 | Port Pin State of Synchronous Transmission Using Internal Clock | 467 |
| Figure 13.43 | Sample Flowchart for Mode Transition during Reception | 468 |
| Figure 13.44 | Operation when Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function | 469 |
| Figure 13.45 | Operation when Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function (Example of Preventing Low-Level Output)..... | 470 |

Section 14 Boundary Scan Function

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Figure 14.1 | Block Diagram of Boundary Scan Function..... | 472 |
| Figure 14.2 | Boundary Scan Register Configuration | 477 |
| Figure 14.3 | TAP Controller Status Transition | 485 |
| Figure 14.4 | Recommended Reset Signal Design..... | 486 |
| Figure 14.5 | Serial Data Input/Output..... | 486 |

Section 15 Universal Serial Bus Interface (USB)

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Figure 15.1 | Block Diagram of USB | 491 |
| Figure 15.2 | Example of Endpoint Configuration based on Bluetooth Standard..... | 499 |
| Figure 15.3 | USB Initialization..... | 547 |
| Figure 15.4 | USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Not Used)..... | 548 |
| Figure 15.5 | USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Used) . | 549 |
| Figure 15.6 | USB Cable Disconnection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Not Used)..... | 550 |
| Figure 15.7 | USB Cable Disconnection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Used)..... | 551 |
| Figure 15.8 | Example Flowchart of Suspend and Resume Operations..... | 552 |

| | | |
|--------------|--|-----|
| Figure 15.9 | Example Flowchart of Suspend and Resume Interrupt Processing | 553 |
| Figure 15.10 | Example Flowchart of Suspend and Remote-Wakeup Operations..... | 554 |
| Figure 15.11 | Example Flowchart of Remote-Wakeup Interrupt Processing | 555 |
| Figure 15.12 | Control Transfer Stage Configuration | 556 |
| Figure 15.13 | Setup Stage Operation | 557 |
| Figure 15.14 | Data Stage Operation (Control-In) | 559 |
| Figure 15.15 | Data Stage Operation (Control-Out)..... | 560 |
| Figure 15.16 | Status Stage Operation (Control-In)..... | 561 |
| Figure 15.17 | Status Stage Operation (Control-Out) | 562 |
| Figure 15.18 | EP1i Interrupt-In Transfer Operation | 563 |
| Figure 15.19 | EP2i Bulk-In Transfer Operation | 565 |
| Figure 15.20 | EP2o Bulk-Out Transfer Operation..... | 567 |
| Figure 15.21 | EP3i Isochronous-In Transfer Operation..... | 569 |
| Figure 15.22 | EP3o Isochronous-Out Transfer Operation | 571 |
| Figure 15.23 | Forcible Stall by Firmware..... | 574 |
| Figure 15.24 | Automatic Stall by USB Function Module..... | 576 |
| Figure 15.25 | EP2iPKTE Operation in UTRG0 | 578 |
| Figure 15.26 | EP2oRDFN Operation in UTRG0..... | 579 |
| Figure 15.27 | EP2iPKTE Operation in UTRG0 (Auto-Request)..... | 581 |
| Figure 15.28 | EP2oRDFN Operation in UTRG0 (Auto-Request) | 581 |
| Figure 15.29 | Endpoint Configuration Example..... | 582 |
| Figure 15.30 | USB External Circuit in Bus-Powered Mode (When On-Chip Transceiver Is Used)..... | 587 |
| Figure 15.31 | USB External Circuit in Self-Powered Mode (When On-Chip Transceiver Is Used)..... | 588 |
| Figure 15.32 | USB External Circuit in Bus-Powered Mode (When External Transceiver Is Used) | 589 |
| Figure 15.33 | USB External Circuit in Self-Powered Mode (When External Transceiver Is Used) | 590 |
| Figure 15.34 | 10-Byte Data Reception | 593 |
| Figure 15.35 | EP3o Data Reception..... | 594 |
| Figure 15.36 | Transition to and from Software Standby Mode | 597 |
| Figure 15.37 | USB Software Standby Mode Transition Timing | 598 |
| Figure 15.38 | TR Interrupt Flag Set Timing..... | 599 |

Section 16 A/D Converter

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Figure 16.1 | Block Diagram of A/D Converter | 602 |
| Figure 16.2 | Access to ADDR (When Reading H'AA40)..... | 607 |
| Figure 16.3 | A/D Conversion Timing (Single-Chip Mode, Channel 1 Selected) | 609 |
| Figure 16.4 | A/D Conversion Timing (Scan Mode, Channels AN0 to AN3 Selected)..... | 610 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 16.5 | A/D Conversion Timing | 611 |
| Figure 16.6 | External Trigger Input Timing | 612 |
| Figure 16.7 | A/D Conversion Precision Definitions (1) | 614 |
| Figure 16.8 | A/D Conversion Precision Definitions (2) | 614 |
| Figure 16.9 | Example of Analog Input Circuit | 615 |
| Figure 16.10 | Example of Analog Input Protection Circuit..... | 617 |
| Figure 16.11 | Analog Input Pin Equivalent Circuit | 617 |

Section 17 D/A Converter

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Figure 17.1 | Block Diagram of D/A Converter | 619 |
| Figure 17.2 | Example of D/A Converter Operation..... | 622 |

Section 19 Flash Memory (F-ZTAT Version)

| | | |
|--------------|--|-----|
| Figure 19.1 | Block Diagram of Flash Memory..... | 628 |
| Figure 19.2 | Flash Memory State Transitions..... | 629 |
| Figure 19.3 | Boot Mode (Sample) | 631 |
| Figure 19.4 | User Program Mode (Sample)..... | 632 |
| Figure 19.5 | Flash Memory Block Configuration..... | 633 |
| Figure 19.6 | System Configuration in SCI Boot Mode..... | 642 |
| Figure 19.7 | System Configuration Diagram when Using USB Boot Mode | 646 |
| Figure 19.8 | Programming/Erasing Flowchart Example in User Program Mode | 649 |
| Figure 19.9 | Flowchart for Flash Memory Emulation in RAM | 650 |
| Figure 19.10 | Example of RAM Overlap Operation..... | 651 |
| Figure 19.11 | Program/Program-Verify Flowchart..... | 653 |
| Figure 19.12 | Erase/Erase-Verify Flowchart | 655 |
| Figure 19.13 | Memory Map in Programmer Mode..... | 658 |
| Figure 19.14 | Power-On/Off Timing (Boot Mode)..... | 661 |
| Figure 19.15 | Power-On/Off Timing (User Program Mode) | 662 |
| Figure 19.16 | Mode Transition Timing (Example: Boot Mode → User Mode ↔ User Program Mode) | 663 |

Section 20 Masked ROM

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Figure 20.1 | Block Diagram of On-Chip Masked ROM (256 kbytes)..... | 665 |
|-------------|---|-----|

Section 21 Clock Pulse Generator

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Figure 21.1 | Block Diagram of Clock Pulse Generator | 667 |
| Figure 21.2 | Connection of Crystal Resonator (Example)..... | 671 |
| Figure 21.3 | Crystal Resonator Equivalent Circuit..... | 672 |
| Figure 21.4 | Example Wiring Diagram for Connecting a Ceramic Resonator | 672 |
| Figure 21.5 | External Clock Input (Examples) | 673 |

| | | |
|--------------|--|-----|
| Figure 21.6 | External Clock Input Timing..... | 674 |
| Figure 21.7 | Connection of Ceramic Resonator..... | 675 |
| Figure 21.8 | Connection of Ceramic Resonator..... | 675 |
| Figure 21.9 | 48-MHz External Clock Input Timing | 676 |
| Figure 21.10 | Pin Handling when 48-MHz External Clock Is Not Used..... | 676 |
| Figure 21.11 | Example of PLL Circuit | 677 |
| Figure 21.12 | Note on Board Design of Oscillator Circuit | 678 |
| Figure 21.13 | Example of External Clock Switching Circuit | 679 |
| Figure 21.14 | Example of External Clock Switchover Timing..... | 679 |

Section 22 Power-Down Modes

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Figure 22.1 | Mode Transition Diagram | 683 |
| Figure 22.2 | Medium-Speed Mode Transition and Clearance Timing | 689 |
| Figure 22.3 | Software Standby Mode Application Example | 692 |
| Figure 22.4 | Hardware Standby Mode Timing (Example) | 694 |
| Figure 22.5 | Timing of Transition to Hardware Standby Mode | 695 |
| Figure 22.6 | Timing of Recovery from Hardware Standby Mode..... | 695 |

Section 24 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215)

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 24.1 | Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges | 726 |
| Figure 24.2 | Output Load Circuit | 730 |
| Figure 24.3 | System Clock Timing..... | 732 |
| Figure 24.4 | Oscillation Stabilization Timing..... | 732 |
| Figure 24.5 | Reset Input Timing..... | 733 |
| Figure 24.6 | Interrupt Input Timing..... | 734 |
| Figure 24.7 | Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)..... | 736 |
| Figure 24.8 | Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)..... | 737 |
| Figure 24.9 | Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State) | 738 |
| Figure 24.10 | Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)..... | 739 |
| Figure 24.11 | External Bus Release Timing | 740 |
| Figure 24.12 | I/O Port Input/Output Timing..... | 743 |
| Figure 24.13 | TPU Input/Output Timing | 743 |
| Figure 24.14 | TPU Clock Input Timing..... | 743 |
| Figure 24.15 | 8-bit Timer Output Timing..... | 744 |
| Figure 24.16 | 8-bit Timer Clock Input Timing | 744 |
| Figure 24.17 | 8-bit Timer Reset Input Timing..... | 744 |
| Figure 24.18 | SCK Clock Input Timing | 744 |
| Figure 24.19 | SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode) | 745 |
| Figure 24.20 | A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing..... | 745 |
| Figure 24.21 | Boundary Scan TCK Input Timing | 745 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 24.22 | Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold) | 745 |
| Figure 24.23 | Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing | 746 |
| Figure 24.24 | Data Signal Timing | 748 |
| Figure 24.25 | Test Load Circuit | 748 |

Section 25 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215R)

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 25.1 | Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges..... | 754 |
| Figure 25.2 | Output Load Circuit..... | 758 |
| Figure 25.3 | System Clock Timing..... | 760 |
| Figure 25.4 | Oscillation Stabilization Timing..... | 760 |
| Figure 25.5 | Reset Input Timing..... | 762 |
| Figure 25.6 | Interrupt Input Timing..... | 762 |
| Figure 25.7 | Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)..... | 765 |
| Figure 25.8 | Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)..... | 766 |
| Figure 25.9 | Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State) | 767 |
| Figure 25.10 | Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)..... | 768 |
| Figure 25.11 | External Bus Release Timing | 769 |
| Figure 25.12 | I/O Port Input/Output Timing..... | 772 |
| Figure 25.13 | TPU Input/Output Timing | 772 |
| Figure 25.14 | TPU Clock Input Timing..... | 772 |
| Figure 25.15 | 8-bit Timer Output Timing..... | 773 |
| Figure 25.16 | 8-bit Timer Clock Input Timing..... | 773 |
| Figure 25.17 | 8-bit Timer Reset Input Timing..... | 773 |
| Figure 25.18 | SCK Clock Input Timing..... | 773 |
| Figure 25.19 | SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode) | 774 |
| Figure 25.20 | A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing..... | 774 |
| Figure 25.21 | Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TCK}}$ Input Timing | 774 |
| Figure 25.22 | Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold) | 774 |
| Figure 25.23 | Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing..... | 775 |
| Figure 25.24 | Data Signal Timing | 777 |
| Figure 25.25 | Test Load Circuit..... | 777 |

Section 26 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215T)

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Figure 26.1 | Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges..... | 783 |
| Figure 26.2 | Output Load Circuit..... | 787 |
| Figure 26.3 | System Clock Timing..... | 789 |
| Figure 26.4 | Oscillation Stabilization Timing..... | 789 |
| Figure 26.5 | Reset Input Timing..... | 790 |
| Figure 26.6 | Interrupt Input Timing..... | 791 |
| Figure 26.7 | Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)..... | 793 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 26.8 | Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)..... | 794 |
| Figure 26.9 | Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State) | 795 |
| Figure 26.10 | Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)..... | 796 |
| Figure 26.11 | External Bus Release Timing | 797 |
| Figure 26.12 | I/O Port Input/Output Timing..... | 799 |
| Figure 26.13 | TPU Input/Output Timing..... | 800 |
| Figure 26.14 | TPU Clock Input Timing..... | 800 |
| Figure 26.15 | 8-bit Timer Output Timing..... | 800 |
| Figure 26.16 | 8-bit Timer Clock Input Timing | 800 |
| Figure 26.17 | 8-bit Timer Reset Input Timing..... | 801 |
| Figure 26.18 | SCK Clock Input Timing | 801 |
| Figure 26.19 | SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode) | 801 |
| Figure 26.20 | A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing..... | 801 |
| Figure 26.21 | Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TCK}}$ Input Timing | 802 |
| Figure 26.22 | Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold) | 802 |
| Figure 26.23 | Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing..... | 802 |
| Figure 26.24 | Data Signal Timing | 804 |
| Figure 26.25 | Test Load Circuit..... | 804 |

Section 27 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215C)

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 27.1 | Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges | 808 |
| Figure 27.2 | Output Load Circuit | 812 |
| Figure 27.3 | System Clock Timing..... | 814 |
| Figure 27.4 | Oscillation Stabilization Timing..... | 814 |
| Figure 27.5 | Reset Input Timing..... | 816 |
| Figure 27.6 | Interrupt Input Timing..... | 816 |
| Figure 27.7 | Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)..... | 818 |
| Figure 27.8 | Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)..... | 819 |
| Figure 27.9 | Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State) | 820 |
| Figure 27.10 | Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)..... | 821 |
| Figure 27.11 | External Bus Release Timing | 822 |
| Figure 27.12 | I/O Port Input/Output Timing..... | 825 |
| Figure 27.13 | TPU Input/Output Timing..... | 825 |
| Figure 27.14 | TPU Clock Input Timing..... | 825 |
| Figure 27.15 | 8-bit Timer Output Timing..... | 826 |
| Figure 27.16 | 8-bit Timer Clock Input Timing | 826 |
| Figure 27.17 | 8-bit Timer Reset Input Timing..... | 826 |
| Figure 27.18 | SCK Clock Input Timing | 826 |
| Figure 27.19 | SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode) | 827 |
| Figure 27.20 | A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing..... | 827 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 27.21 | Boundary Scan TCK Input Timing | 827 |
| Figure 27.22 | Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold) | 827 |
| Figure 27.23 | Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing | 828 |
| Figure 27.24 | Data Signal Timing | 830 |
| Figure 27.25 | Test Load Circuit..... | 830 |

Appendix

| | | |
|------------|---|-----|
| Figure C.1 | TFP-120, TFP-120V Package Dimension | 840 |
| Figure C.2 | BP-112, BP-112V Package Dimension | 841 |

Tables

Section 2 CPU

| | | |
|------------|---|----|
| Table 2.1 | Instruction Classification..... | 39 |
| Table 2.2 | Operation Notation..... | 40 |
| Table 2.3 | Data Transfer Instructions..... | 41 |
| Table 2.4 | Arithmetic Operations Instructions (1)..... | 42 |
| Table 2.4 | Arithmetic Operations Instructions (2)..... | 43 |
| Table 2.5 | Logic Operations Instructions..... | 44 |
| Table 2.6 | Shift Instructions..... | 44 |
| Table 2.7 | Bit Manipulation Instructions (1)..... | 45 |
| Table 2.7 | Bit Manipulation Instructions (2)..... | 46 |
| Table 2.8 | Branch Instructions..... | 47 |
| Table 2.9 | System Control Instruction..... | 48 |
| Table 2.10 | Block Data Transfer Instruction..... | 49 |
| Table 2.11 | Addressing Modes..... | 50 |
| Table 2.12 | Absolute Address Access Ranges..... | 52 |
| Table 2.13 | Effective Address Calculation (1)..... | 54 |
| Table 2.13 | Effective Address Calculation (2)..... | 55 |

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes

| | | |
|-----------|---|----|
| Table 3.1 | MCU Operating Mode Selection..... | 63 |
| Table 3.2 | USB Support in Mode 7..... | 67 |
| Table 3.3 | Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode..... | 68 |

Section 4 Exception Handling

| | | |
|-----------|--|----|
| Table 4.1 | Exception Types and Priority..... | 73 |
| Table 4.2 | Exception Handling Vector Table..... | 74 |
| Table 4.3 | Reset Types..... | 75 |
| Table 4.4 | Status of CCR and EXR after Trace Exception Handling..... | 79 |
| Table 4.5 | Status of CCR and EXR after Trap Instruction Exception Handling..... | 80 |

Section 5 Interrupt Controller

| | | |
|-----------|--|-----|
| Table 5.1 | Pin Configuration..... | 85 |
| Table 5.2 | Interrupt Sources, Vector Addresses, and Interrupt Priorities..... | 94 |
| Table 5.3 | Interrupt Control Modes..... | 96 |
| Table 5.4 | Interrupt Response Times..... | 101 |
| Table 5.5 | Number of States in Interrupt Handling Routine Execution Statuses..... | 102 |
| Table 5.6 | Interrupt Source Selection and Clearing Control..... | 104 |

Section 6 Bus Controller

| | | |
|-----------|---|-----|
| Table 6.1 | Pin Configuration..... | 111 |
| Table 6.2 | Bus Specifications for Each Area (Basic Bus Interface)..... | 123 |
| Table 6.3 | Data Buses Used and Valid Strobes..... | 128 |
| Table 6.4 | Pin States in Idle Cycle..... | 144 |
| Table 6.5 | Pin States in Bus Released State..... | 145 |

Section 7 DMA Controller (DMAC)

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| Table 7.1 | Short Address Mode and Full Address Mode (For 1 Channel: Example of Channel 0)..... | 152 |
| Table 7.2 | DMAC Transfer Modes..... | 172 |
| Table 7.3 | Register Functions in Sequential Mode..... | 173 |
| Table 7.4 | Register Functions in Idle Mode..... | 176 |
| Table 7.5 | Register Functions in Repeat Mode..... | 178 |
| Table 7.6 | Register Functions in Normal Mode..... | 181 |
| Table 7.7 | Register Functions in Block Transfer Mode..... | 184 |
| Table 7.8 | DMAC Activation Sources..... | 189 |
| Table 7.9 | DMAC Channel Priority Order..... | 197 |
| Table 7.10 | Interrupt Source Priority Order..... | 201 |

Section 8 Data Transfer Controller (DTC)

| | | |
|-----------|--|-----|
| Table 8.1 | Activation Source and DTCER Clearance..... | 212 |
| Table 8.2 | Interrupt Sources, DTC Vector Addresses, and Corresponding DTCE..... | 215 |
| Table 8.3 | Overview of DTC Functions..... | 217 |
| Table 8.4 | Register Information in Normal Mode..... | 218 |
| Table 8.5 | Register Information in Repeat Mode..... | 219 |
| Table 8.6 | Register Information in Block Transfer Mode..... | 220 |
| Table 8.7 | DTC Execution Status..... | 224 |
| Table 8.8 | Number of States Required for Each Execution Status..... | 224 |

Section 9 I/O Ports

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------------|-----|
| Table 9.1 | Port Functions (1)..... | 229 |
| Table 9.1 | Port Functions (2)..... | 230 |
| Table 9.1 | Port Functions (3)..... | 231 |
| Table 9.1 | Port Functions (4)..... | 232 |
| Table 9.2 | P17 Pin Function..... | 235 |
| Table 9.3 | P16 Pin Function..... | 235 |
| Table 9.4 | P15 Pin Function..... | 236 |
| Table 9.5 | P14 Pin Function..... | 236 |
| Table 9.6 | P13 Pin Function..... | 236 |

| | | |
|------------|---|-----|
| Table 9.7 | P12 Pin Function | 237 |
| Table 9.8 | P11 Pin Function | 237 |
| Table 9.9 | P10 Pin Function | 237 |
| Table 9.10 | P36 Pin Function | 240 |
| Table 9.11 | P35 Pin Function | 241 |
| Table 9.12 | P34 Pin Function | 241 |
| Table 9.13 | P33 Pin Function | 241 |
| Table 9.14 | P32 Pin Function | 242 |
| Table 9.15 | P31 Pin Function | 242 |
| Table 9.16 | P30 Pin Function | 242 |
| Table 9.17 | P74 Pin Function | 246 |
| Table 9.18 | P73 Pin Function | 246 |
| Table 9.19 | P72 Pin Function | 246 |
| Table 9.20 | P71 Pin Function | 246 |
| Table 9.21 | P70 Pin Function | 247 |
| Table 9.22 | PA3 Pin Function | 251 |
| Table 9.23 | PA2 Pin Function | 252 |
| Table 9.24 | PA1 Pin Function | 252 |
| Table 9.25 | PA0 Pin Function | 252 |
| Table 9.26 | Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port A) | 253 |
| Table 9.27 | PB7 Pin Function | 256 |
| Table 9.28 | PB6 Pin Function | 256 |
| Table 9.29 | PB5 Pin Function | 256 |
| Table 9.30 | PB4 Pin Function | 256 |
| Table 9.31 | PB3 Pin Function | 257 |
| Table 9.32 | PB2 Pin Function | 257 |
| Table 9.33 | PB1 Pin Function | 257 |
| Table 9.34 | PB0 Pin Function | 257 |
| Table 9.35 | Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port B)..... | 258 |
| Table 9.36 | PC7 Pin Function | 261 |
| Table 9.37 | PC6 Pin Function | 261 |
| Table 9.38 | PC5 Pin Function | 261 |
| Table 9.39 | PC4 Pin Function | 261 |
| Table 9.40 | PC3 Pin Function | 261 |
| Table 9.41 | PC2 Pin Function | 262 |
| Table 9.42 | PC1 Pin Function | 262 |
| Table 9.43 | PC0 Pin Function | 262 |
| Table 9.44 | Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port C)..... | 263 |
| Table 9.45 | PD7 Pin Function | 266 |
| Table 9.46 | PD6 Pin Function | 266 |

| | | |
|------------|---|-----|
| Table 9.47 | PD5 Pin Function | 266 |
| Table 9.48 | PD4 Pin Function | 266 |
| Table 9.49 | PD3 Pin Function | 266 |
| Table 9.50 | PD2 Pin Function | 267 |
| Table 9.51 | PD1 Pin Function | 267 |
| Table 9.52 | PD0 Pin Function | 267 |
| Table 9.53 | Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port D) | 267 |
| Table 9.54 | PE7 Pin Function..... | 270 |
| Table 9.55 | PE6 Pin Function..... | 270 |
| Table 9.56 | PE5 Pin Function..... | 271 |
| Table 9.57 | PE4 Pin Function..... | 271 |
| Table 9.58 | PE3 Pin Function..... | 271 |
| Table 9.59 | PE2 Pin Function..... | 271 |
| Table 9.60 | PE1 Pin Function..... | 272 |
| Table 9.61 | PE0 Pin Function..... | 272 |
| Table 9.62 | Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port E)..... | 273 |
| Table 9.63 | PF7 Pin Function..... | 276 |
| Table 9.64 | PF6 Pin Function..... | 276 |
| Table 9.65 | PF5 Pin Function..... | 276 |
| Table 9.66 | PF4 Pin Function..... | 276 |
| Table 9.67 | PF3 Pin Function..... | 277 |
| Table 9.68 | PF2 Pin Function..... | 277 |
| Table 9.69 | PF1 Pin Function..... | 277 |
| Table 9.70 | PF0 Pin Function..... | 277 |
| Table 9.71 | PG4 Pin Function | 280 |
| Table 9.72 | PG3 Pin Function | 280 |
| Table 9.73 | PG2 Pin Function | 280 |
| Table 9.74 | PG1 Pin Function | 280 |
| Table 9.75 | PG0 Pin Function | 280 |
| Table 9.76 | Examples of Ways to Handle Unused Input Pins..... | 281 |

Section 10 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU)

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| Table 10.1 | TPU Functions | 285 |
| Table 10.2 | Pin Configuration..... | 287 |
| Table 10.3 | CCLR2 to CCLR0 (channel 0)..... | 290 |
| Table 10.4 | CCLR2 to CCLR0 (channels 1 and 2)..... | 290 |
| Table 10.5 | TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 0)..... | 291 |
| Table 10.6 | TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 1)..... | 291 |
| Table 10.7 | TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 2)..... | 292 |
| Table 10.8 | MD3 to MD0..... | 294 |

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Table 10.9 | TIORH_0 (channel 0)..... | 296 |
| Table 10.10 | TIORH_0 (channel 0)..... | 297 |
| Table 10.11 | TIORL_0 (channel 0)..... | 298 |
| Table 10.12 | TIORL_0 (channel 0)..... | 299 |
| Table 10.13 | TIOR_1 (channel 1) | 300 |
| Table 10.14 | TIOR_1 (channel 1) | 301 |
| Table 10.15 | TIOR_2 (channel 2) | 302 |
| Table 10.16 | TIOR_2 (channel 2) | 303 |
| Table 10.17 | Register Combinations in Buffer Operation..... | 320 |
| Table 10.18 | PWM Output Registers and Output Pins..... | 324 |
| Table 10.19 | Phase Counting Mode Clock Input Pins..... | 328 |
| Table 10.20 | Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 1 | 329 |
| Table 10.21 | Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 2 | 330 |
| Table 10.22 | Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 3 | 331 |
| Table 10.23 | Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 4 | 332 |
| Table 10.24 | TPU Interrupts..... | 333 |

Section 11 8-Bit Timers (TMR)

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| Table 11.1 | Pin Configuration | 351 |
| Table 11.2 | Clock Input to TCNT and Count Condition | 354 |
| Table 11.3 | 8-Bit Timer Interrupt Sources | 362 |
| Table 11.4 | Timer Output Priorities | 366 |
| Table 11.5 | Switching of Internal Clock and TCNT Operation | 367 |

Section 12 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------|-----|
| Table 12.1 | WDT Interrupt Source..... | 376 |
|------------|---------------------------|-----|

Section 13 Serial Communication Interface

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Table 13.1 | Pin Configuration | 386 |
| Table 13.2 | Relationships between the N Setting in BRR and Bit Rate B | 415 |
| Table 13.3 | BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Asynchronous Mode) | 416 |
| Table 13.4 | Maximum Bit Rate for Each Frequency (Asynchronous Mode)..... | 420 |
| Table 13.5 | Maximum Bit Rate with External Clock Input (Asynchronous Mode)..... | 420 |
| Table 13.6 | BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Clocked Synchronous Mode) | 421 |
| Table 13.7 | Maximum Bit Rate with External Clock Input (Clocked Synchronous Mode)..... | 421 |
| Table 13.8 | BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Smart Card Interface Mode, when n = 0 and S = 372)..... | 422 |
| Table 13.9 | Maximum Bit Rate at Various Frequencies (Smart Card Interface Mode) | 422 |
| Table 13.10 | Serial Transfer Formats (Asynchronous Mode) | 424 |
| Table 13.11 | SSR Status Flags and Receive Data Handling..... | 431 |

| | | |
|--|---|-----|
| Table 13.12 | SCI Interrupt Sources | 462 |
| Table 13.13 | Interrupt Sources in Smart Card Interface Mode | 463 |
| | | |
| Section 14 Boundary Scan Function | | |
| Table 14.1 | Pin Configuration..... | 473 |
| Table 14.2 | Instruction configuration | 474 |
| Table 14.3 | IDCODE Register Configuration | 476 |
| Table 14.4 | Correspondence between LSI Pins and Boundary Scan Register | 478 |
| | | |
| Section 15 Universal Serial Bus Interface (USB) | | |
| Table 15.1 | Pin Configuration..... | 492 |
| Table 15.2 | EPINFO Data Settings | 500 |
| Table 15.3 | Relationship between the UTSTR0 Setting and Pin Outputs | 540 |
| Table 15.4 | Relationship between the UTSTR1 Settings and Pin Inputs | 542 |
| Table 15.5 | SCI Interrupt Sources | 544 |
| Table 15.6 | Command Decoding on Firmware | 572 |
| Table 15.7 | Register Name Modification List..... | 583 |
| Table 15.8 | Bit Name Modification List | 584 |
| Table 15.9 | EPINFO Data Settings | 585 |
| | | |
| Section 16 A/D Converter | | |
| Table 16.1 | Pin Configuration..... | 603 |
| Table 16.2 | Analog Input Channels and Corresponding ADDR Registers | 604 |
| Table 16.3 | A/D Conversion Time (Single Mode)..... | 611 |
| Table 16.4 | A/D Conversion Time (Scan Mode) | 612 |
| Table 16.5 | A/D Converter Interrupt Source | 613 |
| Table 16.6 | Analog Pin Specifications | 617 |
| | | |
| Section 17 D/A Converter | | |
| Table 17.1 | Pin Configuration..... | 620 |
| | | |
| Section 19 Flash Memory (F-ZTAT Version) | | |
| Table 19.1 | Differences between Boot Mode and User Program Mode..... | 630 |
| Table 19.2 | Pin Configuration..... | 634 |
| Table 19.3 | Setting On-Board Programming Modes..... | 641 |
| Table 19.4 | SCI Boot Mode Operation..... | 644 |
| Table 19.5 | System Clock Frequencies for Which Automatic Adjustment of LSI Bit Rate Is Possible | 644 |
| Table 19.6 | Enumeration Information | 645 |
| Table 19.7 | USB Boot Mode Operation..... | 648 |

| | | |
|--|--|-----|
| Table 19.8 | Flash Memory Operating States | 658 |
| Table 19.9 | Registers Present in F-ZTAT Version but Absent in Masked ROM Version | 664 |
| Section 21 Clock Pulse Generator | | |
| Table 21.1 | List of Suitable Resonators..... | 671 |
| Table 21.2 | Damping Resistance Value | 671 |
| Table 21.3 | Crystal Resonator Characteristics | 672 |
| Table 21.4 | External Clock Input Conditions..... | 673 |
| Table 21.5 | External Clock Input Conditions when Duty Adjustment Circuit Is Not Used..... | 674 |
| Table 21.6 | External Clock Input Conditions when Duty Adjustment Circuit Is Not Used..... | 676 |
| Section 22 Power-Down Modes | | |
| Table 22.1 | LSI Internal States in Each Mode..... | 682 |
| Table 22.2 | Low Power Dissipation Mode Transition Conditions | 683 |
| Table 22.3 | Oscillation Stabilization Time Settings | 691 |
| Table 22.4 | ϕ Pin State in Each Processing State | 696 |
| Section 24 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215) | | |
| Table 24.1 | Absolute Maximum Ratings..... | 725 |
| Table 24.2 | DC Characteristics..... | 727 |
| Table 24.3 | Permissible Output Currents | 730 |
| Table 24.4 | Clock Timing | 731 |
| Table 24.5 | Control Signal Timing..... | 733 |
| Table 24.6 | Bus Timing..... | 735 |
| Table 24.7 | Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules | 741 |
| Table 24.8 | USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used | 747 |
| Table 24.9 | A/D Conversion Characteristics..... | 749 |
| Table 24.10 | D/A Conversion Characteristics | 749 |
| Table 24.11 | Flash Memory Characteristics..... | 750 |
| Section 25 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215R) | | |
| Table 25.1 | Absolute Maximum Ratings..... | 753 |
| Table 25.2 | DC Characteristics..... | 755 |
| Table 25.3 | Permissible Output Currents | 758 |
| Table 25.4 | Clock Timing | 759 |
| Table 25.5 | Control Signal Timing..... | 761 |
| Table 25.6 | Bus Timing..... | 763 |
| Table 25.7 | Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules | 770 |

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Table 25.8 | USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used | 776 |
| Table 25.9 | A/D Conversion Characteristics | 778 |
| Table 25.10 | D/A Conversion Characteristics | 779 |
| Table 25.11 | Flash Memory Characteristics..... | 779 |

Section 26 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215T)

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Table 26.1 | Absolute Maximum Ratings..... | 783 |
| Table 26.2 | DC Characteristics | 784 |
| Table 26.3 | Permissible Output Currents | 787 |
| Table 26.4 | Clock Timing | 788 |
| Table 26.5 | Control Signal Timing..... | 790 |
| Table 26.6 | Bus Timing..... | 792 |
| Table 26.7 | Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules | 798 |
| Table 26.8 | USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used | 803 |
| Table 26.9 | A/D Conversion Characteristics | 804 |
| Table 26.10 | D/A Conversion Characteristics | 805 |
| Table 26.11 | Flash Memory Characteristics..... | 805 |

Section 27 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215C)

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Table 27.1 | Absolute Maximum Ratings..... | 807 |
| Table 27.2 | DC Characteristics | 809 |
| Table 27.3 | Permissible Output Currents | 812 |
| Table 27.4 | Clock Timing | 813 |
| Table 27.5 | Control Signal Timing..... | 815 |
| Table 27.6 | Bus Timing..... | 817 |
| Table 27.7 | Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules | 823 |
| Table 27.8 | USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used | 829 |
| Table 27.9 | A/D Conversion Characteristics | 831 |
| Table 27.10 | D/A Conversion Characteristics | 831 |
| Table 27.11 | Flash Memory Characteristics..... | 832 |

Section 1 Overview

1.1 Overview

- High-speed H8S/2000 central processing unit with 16-bit architecture
 - Upward-compatible with H8/300 and H8/300H CPUs on an object level
 - Sixteen 16-bit general registers
 - 65 basic instructions
 - Various peripheral functions
 - DMA controller (DMAC)
 - Data transfer controller (DTC)
 - 16-bit timer-pulse unit (TPU)
 - 8-bit timer (TMR)
 - Watchdog timer (WDT)
 - Asynchronous or clocked synchronous serial communication interface (SCI)
 - Boundary scan
 - Universal serial bus (USB)
 - 10-bit A/D converter
 - 8-bit D/A converter
 - User debug interface (H-UDI)*
 - Clock pulse generator
- Note: * Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

- On-chip memory

| ROM | Part No. | ROM | RAM | Remarks |
|--------------------|-------------|------------|-----------|------------------|
| F-ZTAT Version | HD64F2215 | 256 kbytes | 16 kbytes | SCI boot version |
| | HD64F2215U | 256 kbytes | 16 kbytes | USB boot version |
| | HD64F2215CU | 256 kbytes | 20 kbytes | USB boot version |
| | HD64F2215T | 256 kbytes | 20 kbytes | SCI boot version |
| | HD64F2215TU | 256 kbytes | 20 kbytes | USB boot version |
| | HD64F2215R | 256 kbytes | 20 kbytes | SCI boot version |
| | HD64F2215RU | 256 kbytes | 20 kbytes | USB boot version |
| Masked ROM Version | HD6432215B | 128 kbytes | 16 kbytes | — |
| | HD6432215C | 64 kbytes | 8 kbytes | — |

- General I/O ports

| | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7 |
|--------------------|---------------|--------|--------|
| — I/O pins: | 41 | 41 | 68 |
| — Input-only pins: | 15 | 23 | 7 |
- Supports various power-down states
- Compact package

| Package | (Code) | Body Size | Pin Pitch | Remarks |
|-------------|--------------------|----------------|-----------|---------|
| TQFP-120 | TFP-120, TFP-120V* | 14.0 × 14.0 mm | 0.4 mm | — |
| P-LFBGA-112 | BP-112, BP-112V* | 10.0 × 10.0 mm | 0.8 mm | — |

Note: * TFP-120V and BP-120V only for H8S/2215C.

1.2 Internal Block Diagram

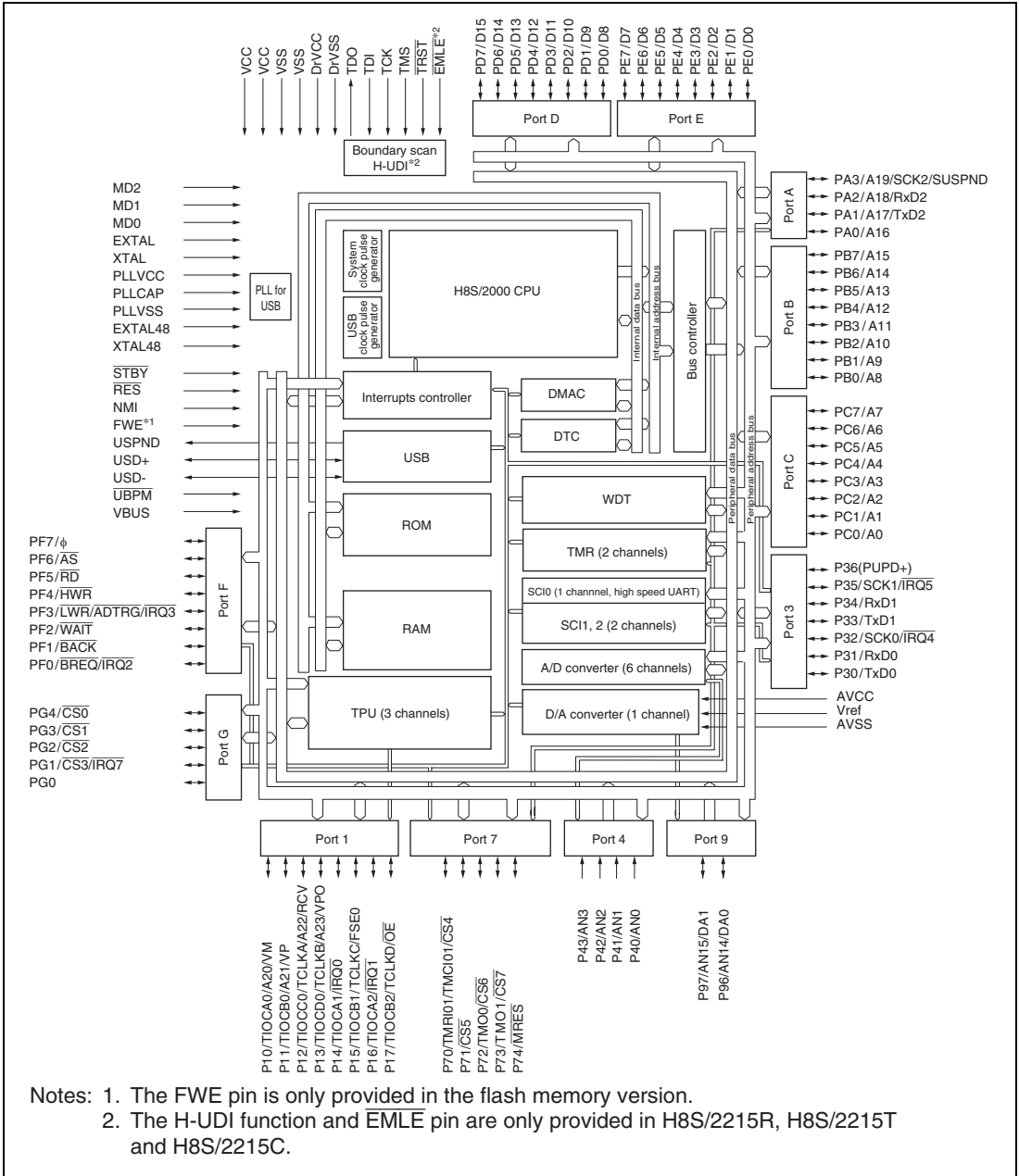


Figure 1.1 Internal Block Diagram

1.3 Pin Arrangement

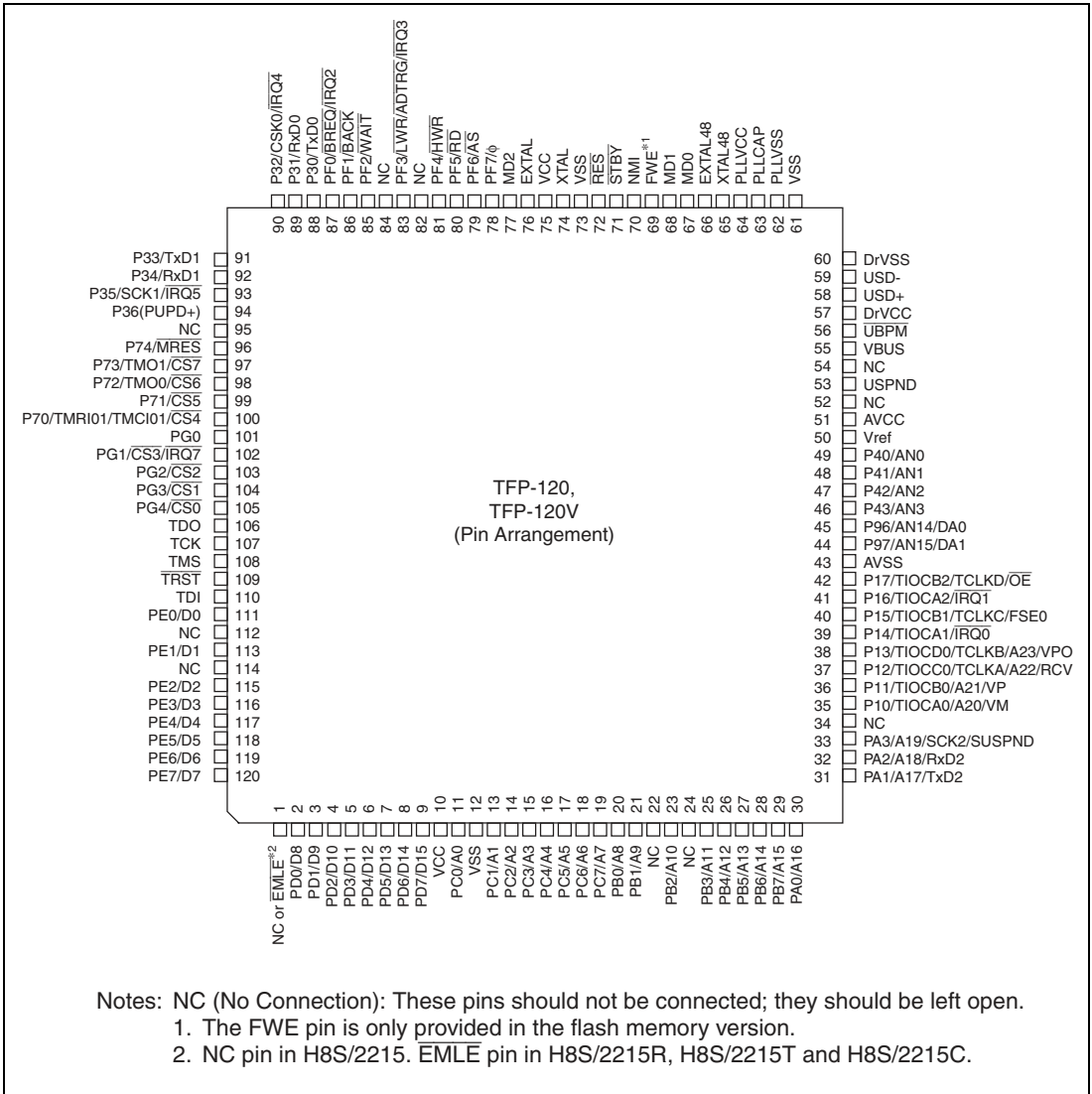


Figure 1.2 Pin Arrangement (TFP-120, TFP-120V)

| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|--------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| 11 | NC | P31/RxD0 | PF1/BACK | PF4/HWR | PF7/φ | VCC | $\overline{\text{RES}}$ | FWE ^{*1} | EXTAL48 | PLLCAP | NC | |
| 10 | P34/RxD1 | P33/TxD1 | P30/TxD0 | PF2/WAIT | PF6/AS | EXTAL | VSS | MD1 | XTAL48 | PLLVSS | USD- | |
| 9 | P74/ MRES | P36 (PUPD+) | P32/ SCK0/ IRQ4 | PF0/ BREQ/ IRQ2 | PF5/RD | XTAL | $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ | MD0 | DrVSS | USD+ | $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ | |
| 8 | P71/ $\overline{\text{CS5}}$ | P72/ TMO0/ CS6 | P73/ TMO1/ CS7 | P35/ SCK1/ IRQ5 | PF3/ LWR/ ADTRG/ IRQ3 | MD2 | NMI | PLLVCC | DrVCC | VBUS | AVCC | |
| 7 | PG1/ CS3/IRQ7 | PG2/ $\overline{\text{CS2}}$ | PG0 | P70/ TMRI01/ TMCI01/ CS4 | BP-112, BP-112V (Top view) | | | USPND | Vref | P40/AN0 | P41/AN1 | |
| 6 | PG4/ $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ | TDO | PG3/ $\overline{\text{CS1}}$ | TCK | | | | P42/AN2 | P97/ AN15/DA1 | P43/AN3 | P96/ AN14/ DA0 | |
| 5 | TMS | $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ | TDI | PE1/D1 | | | | P15/ TIOCB1/ TCLKC/ FSE0 | P16/TIO CA2/IRQ1 | AVSS | P17/ TIOCB2/ TCLKD/OE | |
| 4 | PE0/D0 | PE2/D2 | PE4/D4 | PD2/D10 | VCC | PC5/A5 | PB2/A10 | PA3/ A19/ SCK2/ SUSPND | P12/ TIOCC0/ TCLKA/ A22/RV | P13/ TIOCD0/ TCLKB/ A23/VPO | P14/ TIOCA1/ IRQ0 | |
| 3 | PE3/D3 | PE5/D5 | PE7/D7 | PD5/D13 | PC0/A0 | PC2/A2 | PB0/A8 | PB5/A13 | PA0/A16 | P10/ TIOCA0/ A20/VM | P11/ TIOCB0/ A21/VP | |
| 2 | PE6/D6 | PD0/D8 | PD3/D11 | PD6/D14 | PC1/A1 | PC4/A4 | PC7/A7 | PB3/A11 | PB6/A14 | PA1/ A17/TxD2 | PA2/ A18/RxD2 | |
| 1 | NC ^{*2} or EMLE | PD1/D9 | PD4/D12 | PD7/D15 | VSS | PC3/A3 | PC6/A6 | PB1/A9 | PB4/A12 | PB7/A15 | NC | |
| | | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | J | K | L |

INDEX ↗

Notes: NC (No Connection): These pins should not be connected; they should be left open.

1. The FWE pin is only provided in the flash memory version.

2. NC in H8S/2215. EMLE pin in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

Figure 1.3 Pin Arrangement (BP-112, BP-112V)

1.4 Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode

| Pin No. | | Pin Name | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| TFP-120, BP-112, TFP-120V | BP-112V | Mode 4 | Mode 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7 ^{*1} | PROM Mode |
| 1 | A1 | NC or EMLE ^{*2} | NC or EMLE ^{*2} | NC or EMLE ^{*2} | NC or EMLE ^{*2} | NC |
| 2 | B2 | D8 | D8 | D8 | PD0 | D0 |
| 3 | B1 | D9 | D9 | D9 | PD1 | D1 |
| 4 | D4 | D10 | D10 | D10 | PD2 | D2 |
| 5 | C2 | D11 | D11 | D11 | PD3 | D3 |
| 6 | C1 | D12 | D12 | D12 | PD4 | D4 |
| 7 | D3 | D13 | D13 | D13 | PD5 | D5 |
| 8 | D2 | D14 | D14 | D14 | PD6 | D6 |
| 9 | D1 | D15 | D15 | D15 | PD7 | D7 |
| 10 | E4 | VCC | VCC | VCC | VCC | VCC |
| 11 | E3 | A0 | A0 | PC1/A0 | PC0 | A0 |
| 12 | E1 | VSS | VSS | VSS | VSS | VSS |
| 13 | E2 | A1 | A1 | PC1/A1 | PC1 | A1 |
| 14 | F3 | A2 | A2 | PC2/A2 | PC2 | A2 |
| 15 | F1 | A3 | A3 | PC3/A3 | PC3 | A3 |
| 16 | F2 | A4 | A4 | PC4/A4 | PC4 | A4 |
| 17 | F4 | A5 | A5 | PC5/A5 | PC5 | A5 |
| 18 | G1 | A6 | A6 | PC6/A6 | PC6 | A6 |
| 19 | G2 | A7 | A7 | PC7/A7 | PC7 | A7 |
| 20 | G3 | PB0/A8 | PB0/A8 | PB0/A8 | PB0 | A8 |
| 21 | H1 | PB1/A9 | PB1/A9 | PB1/A9 | PB1 | A9 |
| 22 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 23 | G4 | PB2/A10 | PB2/A10 | PB2/A10 | PB2 | A10 |
| 24 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 25 | H2 | PB3/A11 | PB3/A11 | PB3/A11 | PB3 | A11 |
| 26 | J1 | PB4/A12 | PB4/A12 | PB4/A12 | PB4 | A12 |
| 27 | H3 | PB5/A13 | PB5/A13 | PB5/A13 | PB5 | A13 |
| 28 | J2 | PB6/A14 | PB6/A14 | PB6/A14 | PB6 | A14 |
| 29 | K1 | PB7/A15 | PB7/A15 | PB7/A15 | PB7 | A15 |

| Pin No. | | Pin Name | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | Mode 4 | Mode 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7*1 | PROM Mode |
| 30 | J3 | PA0/A16 | PA0/A16 | PA0/A16 | PA0 | A16 |
| 31 | K2 | PA1/A17/TxD2 | PA1/A17/TxD2 | PA1/A17/TxD2 | PA1/TxD2 | A17 |
| 32 | L2 | PA2/A18/RxD2 | PA2/A18/RxD2 | PA2/A18/RxD2 | PA2/RxD2 | A18 |
| 33 | H4 | PA3/A19/SCK2/ SUSPND | PA3/A19/SCK2/ SUSPND | PA3/A19/SCK2/ SUSPND | PA3/SCK2 | NC |
| 34 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 35 | K3 | P10/TIOCA0/ A20/VM | P10/TIOCA0/ A20/VM | P10/TIOCA0/ A20/VM | P10/TIOCA0 | NC |
| 36 | L3 | P11/TIOCB0/ A21/VP | P11/TIOCB0/ A21/VP | P11/TIOCB0/ A21/VP | P11/TIOCB0 | NC |
| 37 | J4 | P12/TIOCC0/ TCLKA/A22/ RCV | P12/TIOCC0/ TCLKA/A22/ RCV | P12/TIOCC0/ TCLKA/A22/ RCV | P12/TIOCC0/ TCLKA | NC |
| 38 | K4 | P13/TIOCD0/ TCLKB/A23/ VPO | P13/TIOCD0/ TCLKB/A23/ VPO | P13/TIOCD0/ TCLKB/A23/ VPO | P13/TIOCD0/ TCLKB | NC |
| 39 | L4 | P14/TIOCA1/ IRQ0 | P14/TIOCA1/ IRQ0 | P14/TIOCA1/ IRQ0 | P14/TIOCA1/ IRQ0 | VSS |
| 40 | H5 | P15/TIOCB1/ TCLKC/FSE0 | P15/TIOCB1/ TCLKC/FSE0 | P15/TIOCB1/ TCLKC/FSE0 | P15/TIOCB1/ TCLKC | NC |
| 41 | J5 | P16/TIOCA2/ IRQ1 | P16/TIOCA2/ IRQ1 | P16/TIOCA2/ IRQ1 | P16/TIOCA2/ IRQ1 | VSS |
| 42 | L5 | P17/TIOCB2/ TCLKD/OE | P17/TIOCB2/ TCLKD/OE | P17/TIOCB2/ TCLKD/OE | P17/TIOCB2/ TCLKD/OE | NC |
| 43 | K5 | AVSS | AVSS | AVSS | AVSS | VSS |
| 44 | J6 | P97/AN15/DA1 | P97/AN15/DA1 | P97/AN15/DA1 | P97/AN15/DA1 | NC |
| 45 | L6 | P96/AN14/DA0 | P96/AN14/DA0 | P96/AN14/DA0 | P96/AN14/DA0 | NC |
| 46 | K6 | P43/AN3 | P43/AN3 | P43/AN3 | P43/AN3 | NC |
| 47 | H6 | P42/AN2 | P42/AN2 | P42/AN2 | P42/AN2 | NC |
| 48 | L7 | P41/AN1 | P41/AN1 | P41/AN1 | P41/AN1 | NC |
| 49 | K7 | P40/AN0 | P40/AN0 | P40/AN0 | P40/AN0 | NC |
| 50 | J7 | Vref | Vref | Vref | Vref | VCC |
| 51 | L8 | AVCC | AVCC | AVCC | AVCC | VCC |
| 52 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |

| Pin No. | | Pin Name | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| TFP-120, BP-112, TFP-120V BP-112V | | Mode 4 | Mode 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7 ^{*1} | PROM Mode |
| 53 | H7 | USPND | USPND | USPND | — | NC |
| 54 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 55 | K8 | VBUS | VBUS | VBUS | VSS | VSS |
| 56 | L9 | $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ | $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ | $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ | VSS | VSS |
| 57 | J8 | DrVCC | DrVCC | DrVCC | VSS | VCC |
| 58 | K9 | USD+ | USD+ | USD+ | — | NC |
| 59 | L10 | USD- | USD- | USD- | — | NC |
| 60 | J9 | DrVSS | DrVSS | DrVSS | — | VSS |
| 61 | — | VSS | VSS | VSS | VSS | VSS |
| 62 | K10 | PLLVSS | PLLVSS | PLLVSS | — | VSS |
| 63 | K11 | PLLCAP | PLLCAP | PLLCAP | NC | NC |
| 64 | H8 | PLLVCC | PLLVCC | PLLVCC | — | VCC |
| 65 | J10 | XTAL48 | XTAL48 | XTAL48 | — | NC |
| 66 | J11 | EXTAL48 | EXTAL48 | EXTAL48 | — | VCC |
| 67 | H9 | MD0 | MD0 | MD0 | MD0 | VSS |
| 68 | H10 | MD1 | MD1 | MD1 | MD1 | VSS |
| 69 | H11 | FWE | FWE | FWE | FWE | FWE |
| 70 | G8 | NMI | NMI | NMI | NMI | VCC |
| 71 | G9 | STBY | STBY | STBY | STBY | VCC |
| 72 | G11 | RES | RES | RES | RES | RES |
| 73 | G10 | VSS | VSS | VSS | VSS | VSS |
| 74 | F9 | XTAL | XTAL | XTAL | XTAL | XTAL |
| 75 | F11 | VCC | VCC | VCC | VCC | VCC |
| 76 | F10 | EXTAL | EXTAL | EXTAL | EXTAL | EXTAL |
| 77 | F8 | MD2 | MD2 | MD2 | MD2 | VSS |
| 78 | E11 | PF7/ ϕ | PF7/ ϕ | PF7/ ϕ | PF7/ ϕ | NC |
| 79 | E10 | $\overline{\text{AS}}$ | $\overline{\text{AS}}$ | $\overline{\text{AS}}$ | PF6 | NC |
| 80 | E9 | $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | PF5 | NC |
| 81 | D11 | $\overline{\text{HWR}}$ | $\overline{\text{HWR}}$ | $\overline{\text{HWR}}$ | PF4 | NC |
| 82 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |

| Pin No. | | Pin Name | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | Mode 4 | Mode 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7*1 | PROM Mode |
| 83 | E8 | PF3/LWR/ ADTRG/IRQ3 | PF3/LWR/ ADTRG/IRQ3 | PF3/LWR/ ADTRG/IRQ3 | PF3/ADTRG/ IRQ3 | VCC |
| 84 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 85 | D10 | PF2/WAIT | PF2/WAIT | PF2/WAIT | PF2 | NC |
| 86 | C11 | PF1/BACK | PF1/BACK | PF1/BACK | PF1 | NC |
| 87 | D9 | PF0/BREQ/ IRQ2 | PF0/BREQ/ IRQ2 | PF0/BREQ/ IRQ2 | PF0/IRQ2 | VCC |
| 88 | C10 | P30/TxD0 | P30/TxD0 | P30/TxD0 | P30/TxD0 | NC |
| 89 | B11 | P31/RxD0 | P31/RxD0 | P31/RxD0 | P31/RxD0 | NC |
| 90 | C9 | P32/SCK0/IRQ4 | P32/SCK0/IRQ4 | P32/SCK0/IRQ4 | P32/SCK0/IRQ4 | NC |
| 91 | B10 | P33/TxD1 | P33/TxD1 | P33/TxD1 | P33/TxD1 | NC |
| 92 | A10 | P34/RxD1 | P34/RxD1 | P34/RxD1 | P34/RxD1 | NC |
| 93 | D8 | P35/SCK1/IRQ5 | P35/SCK1/IRQ5 | P35/SCK1/IRQ5 | P35/SCK1/IRQ5 | NC |
| 94 | B9 | P36 (PUPD+) | P36 (PUPD+) | P36 (PUPD+) | P36 (PUPD+)*3 | NC |
| 95 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 96 | A9 | P74/MRES | P74/MRES | P74/MRES | P74/MRES | NC |
| 97 | C8 | P73/TMO1/CS7 | P73/TMO1/CS7 | P73/TMO1/CS7 | P73/TMO1 | NC |
| 98 | B8 | P72/TMO0/CS6 | P72/TMO0/CS6 | P72/TMO0/CS6 | P72/TMO0 | NC |
| 99 | A8 | P71/CS5 | P71/CS5 | P71/CS5 | P71 | NC |
| 100 | D7 | P70/TMRI01/ TMCi01/CS4 | P70/TMRI01/ TMCi01/CS4 | P70/TMRI01/ TMCi01/CS4 | P70/TMRI01/ TMCi01 | NC |
| 101 | C7 | PG0 | PG0 | PG0 | PG0 | NC |
| 102 | A7 | PG1/CS3/IRQ7 | PG1/CS3/IRQ7 | PG1/CS3/IRQ7 | PG1/IRQ7 | NC |
| 103 | B7 | PG2/CS2 | PG2/CS2 | PG2/CS2 | PG2 | NC |
| 104 | C6 | PG3/CS1 | PG3/CS1 | PG3/CS1 | PG3 | NC |
| 105 | A6 | PG4/CS0 | PG4/CS0 | PG4/CS0 | PG4 | NC |
| 106 | B6 | TDO | TDO | TDO | TDO | VCC |
| 107 | D6 | TCK | TCK | TCK | TCK | VCC |
| 108 | A5 | TMS | TMS | TMS | TMS | VCC |
| 109 | B5 | TRST | TRST | TRST | TRST | RES |
| 110 | C5 | TDI | TDI | TDI | TDI | VCC |
| 111 | A4 | PE0/D0 | PE0/D0 | PE0/D0 | PE0 | NC |

| Pin No. | | Pin Name | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------|--------|--------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | Mode 4 | Mode 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7 ³ ¹ | PROM Mode |
| 112 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 113 | D5 | PE1/D1 | PE1/D1 | PE1/D1 | PE1 | NC |
| 114 | — | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 115 | B4 | PE2/D2 | PE2/D2 | PE2/D2 | PE2 | NC |
| 116 | A3 | PE3/D3 | PE3/D3 | PE3/D3 | PE3 | VCC |
| 117 | C4 | PE4/D4 | PE4/D4 | PE4/D4 | PE4 | VSS |
| 118 | B3 | PE5/D5 | PE5/D5 | PE5/D5 | PE5 | OE |
| 119 | A2 | PE6/D6 | PE6/D6 | PE6/D6 | PE6 | WE |
| 120 | C3 | PE7/D7 | PE7/D7 | PE7/D7 | PE7 | CE |
| — | A1, A11, L1, L11 | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |

Notes: NC (No Connection): These pins should not be connected; they should be left open.

1. The USB may be unusable in mode 7 in some cases. See section 3, MCU Operating Modes, for details.
2. NC in H8S/2215. $\overline{\text{EMLE}}$ pin in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.
3. PUPD+ pin in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

1.5 Pin Functions

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|------------------------|---------|----------------------|--------------------|--|--|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| Power Supply | VCC | 10 | E4 | Input | Power supply pins. Connect all these pins to the system power supply. |
| | | 75 | F11 | | |
| | VSS | 12 | E1 | Input | Ground pins. Connect all these pins to the system power supply (0 V). |
| | | 61 | G10 | | |
| | | 73 | | | |
| PLLVCC | 64 | H8 | Input | Power supply pin for internal PLL oscillator. Connect this pin to the system power supply. | |
| PLLVSS | 62 | K10 | Input | Ground pin for an on-chip PLL oscillator. | |
| | PLLCAP | 63 | K11 | Output | External capacitor pin for an on-chip PLL oscillator. |
| Clock | XTAL | 74 | F9 | Input | For connection to a crystal resonator. For examples of crystal resonator connection and external clock input, see section 21, Clock Pulse Generator. |
| | EXTAL | 76 | F10 | Input | For connection to a crystal resonator. (An external clock can be supplied from the EXTAL pin.) For examples of crystal resonator connection and external clock input, see section 21, Clock Pulse Generator. |
| | XTAL48 | 65 | J10 | Input | USB operating clock input pins. 48-MHz clock for USB communications is input. For examples of using an on-chip PLL, EXTAL48 must be fixed low and XTAL48 must be open. |
| | EXTAL48 | 66 | J11 | Input | |
| | ϕ | 78 | E11 | Output | Supplies the system clock to external devices. |
| Operating Mode Control | MD2 | 77 | F8 | Input | Except for mode changing, be sure to fix the levels of the mode pins (MD2 to MD0) by pulling them down or pulling them up until the power turns off. |
| | MD1 | 68 | H10 | | |
| | MD0 | 67 | H9 | | |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|----------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------|--|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| System Control | $\overline{\text{RES}}$ | 72 | G11 | Input | Reset input pin. When this pin is driven low, the chip is reset. |
| | $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ | 71 | G9 | Input | When this pin is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode. |
| | $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ | 96 | A9 | Input | When this pin is driven low, a transition is made to manual reset mode. |
| | $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ | 87 | D9 | Input | Used by an external bus master to issue a bus request to this LSI |
| | $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ | 86 | C11 | Output | Indicates that the bus has been released to an external bus master. |
| | $\overline{\text{FWE}}$ | 69 | H11 | Input | Pin for use by flash memory. This pin is only used in the flash memory version. In the mask ROM version it should be fixed at 0. |
| | $\overline{\text{EMLE}}^{*1}$ | 1 ^{*1} | A1 ^{*1} | Input | Emulator enable pin. Leave open if the E10A is not used. Drive low level only if E10A is used. |
| Interrupts | $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ | 70 | G8 | Input | Nonmaskable interrupt pin. If this pin is not used, it should be fixed high. |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ | 102 | A7 | Input | These pins request a maskable interrupt. |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ | 93 | D8 | | |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ | 90 | C9 | | |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ | 83 | E8 | | |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ | 87 | D9 | | |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ | 41 | J5 | | |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ | 39 | L4 | | |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|-------------|--------|----------------------|--------------------|--------|-------------------------------|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| Address bus | A23 | 38 | K4 | Output | These pins output an address. |
| | A22 | 37 | J4 | | |
| | A21 | 36 | L3 | | |
| | A20 | 35 | K3 | | |
| | A19 | 33 | H4 | | |
| | A18 | 32 | L2 | | |
| | A17 | 31 | K2 | | |
| | A16 | 30 | J3 | | |
| | A15 | 29 | K1 | | |
| | A14 | 28 | J2 | | |
| | A13 | 27 | H3 | | |
| | A12 | 26 | J1 | | |
| | A11 | 25 | H2 | | |
| | A10 | 23 | G4 | | |
| | A9 | 21 | H1 | | |
| | A8 | 20 | G3 | | |
| | A7 | 19 | G2 | | |
| | A6 | 18 | G1 | | |
| | A5 | 17 | F4 | | |
| | A4 | 16 | F2 | | |
| | A3 | 15 | F1 | | |
| | A2 | 14 | F3 | | |
| | A1 | 13 | E2 | | |
| | A0 | 11 | E3 | | |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|----------|--------|----------------------|--------------------|-----|--|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| Data bus | D15 | 9 | D1 | I/O | These pins constitute a bi-directional data bus. |
| | D14 | 8 | D2 | | |
| | D13 | 7 | D3 | | |
| | D12 | 6 | C1 | | |
| | D11 | 5 | C2 | | |
| | D10 | 4 | D4 | | |
| | D9 | 3 | B1 | | |
| | D8 | 2 | B2 | | |
| | D7 | 120 | C3 | | |
| | D6 | 119 | A2 | | |
| | D5 | 118 | B3 | | |
| | D4 | 117 | C4 | | |
| | D3 | 116 | A3 | | |
| | D2 | 115 | B4 | | |
| | D1 | 113 | D5 | | |
| | D0 | 111 | A4 | | |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|-------------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------|---|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| Bus Control | $\overline{CS7}$ | 97 | C8 | Output | Signals for selecting areas 7 to 0. |
| | $\overline{CS6}$ | 98 | B8 | | |
| | $\overline{CS5}$ | 99 | A8 | | |
| | $\overline{CS4}$ | 100 | D7 | | |
| | $\overline{CS3}$ | 102 | A7 | | |
| | $\overline{CS2}$ | 103 | B7 | | |
| | $\overline{CS1}$ | 104 | C6 | | |
| | $\overline{CS0}$ | 105 | A6 | | |
| | \overline{AS} | 79 | E10 | Output | When this pin is low, it indicates that address output on the address bus is enabled. |
| | \overline{RD} | 80 | E9 | Output | When this pin is low, it indicates that the external address space can be read. |
| | \overline{HWR} | 81 | D11 | Output | A strobe signal that writes to external space and indicates that the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is enabled. |
| | \overline{LWR} | 83 | E8 | Output | A strobe signal that writes to external space and indicates that the lower half (D7 to D0) of the data bus is enabled. |
| | \overline{WAIT} | 85 | D10 | Input | Requests insertion of a wait state in the bus cycle when accessing external 3-state address space. |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|---|--------|----------------------|--------------------|---|---|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| 16-bit timer pulse unit (TPU) | TCLKA | 37 | J4 | Input | TPU external clock input pins. |
| | TCLKB | 38 | K4 | | |
| | TCLKC | 40 | H5 | | |
| | TCLKD | 42 | L5 | | |
| | TIOCA0 | 35 | K3 | I/O | The TGRA_0 to TGRD_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pins. |
| | TIOCB0 | 36 | L3 | | |
| | TIOCC0 | 37 | J4 | | |
| | TIOCD0 | 38 | K4 | | |
| | TIOCA1 | 39 | L4 | I/O | The TGRA_1 to TGRB_1 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pins. |
| | TIOCB1 | 40 | H5 | | |
| TIOCA2 | 41 | J5 | I/O | The TGRA_2 to TGRB_2 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pins. | |
| TIOCB2 | 42 | L5 | | | |
| 8-bit timer (TMR) | TMO1 | 97 | C8 | Output | Compare match output pins. |
| | TMO0 | 98 | B8 | | |
| | TMCi01 | 100 | D7 | Input | Input pins for the external clock input to the counter. |
| | TMRi01 | 100 | D7 | Input | The counter reset input pins. |
| Serial Communica- tion interface (SCI) | TxD2 | 31 | K2 | Output | Data output pins |
| | TxD1 | 91 | B10 | | |
| | TxD0 | 88 | C10 | | |
| | RxD2 | 32 | L2 | Input | Data input pins |
| | RxD1 | 92 | A10 | | |
| | RxD0 | 89 | B11 | | |
| | SCK2 | 33 | H4 | I/O | Clock input/output pins |
| | SCK1 | 93 | D8 | | |
| SCK0 | 90 | C9 | | | |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|--------------------------------|--------|----------------------|--------------------|--------|---|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| A/D converter | AN15 | 44 | J6 | Input | Analog input pins for the A/D converter. |
| | AN14 | 45 | L6 | | |
| | AN3 | 46 | K6 | | |
| | AN2 | 47 | H6 | | |
| | AN1 | 48 | L7 | | |
| | AN0 | 49 | K7 | | |
| | ADTRG | 83 | E8 | Input | Pin for input of an external trigger to start A/D conversion |
| D/A converter | DA1 | 44 | J6 | Output | Analog output pins for the D/A converter. |
| | DA0 | 45 | L6 | | |
| A/D converter D/A converter | AVCC | 51 | L8 | Input | Power supply pin for the A/D and D/A converter. When the D/A converter is not used, connect this pin to the system power supply (VCC). |
| | AVSS | 43 | K5 | Input | The ground pin for the A/D and D/A converter. Connect this pin to the system power supply (0 V). |
| | Vref | 50 | J7 | Input | The reference voltage input pin for the A/D and D/A converter. When the A/D and D/A converter is not used, this pin should be connected to the system power supply (VCC). |
| Boundary scan | TMS | 108 | A5 | Input | Control signal input pin for the boundary scan |
| | TCK | 107 | D6 | Input | Clock input pin for the boundary scan |
| | TD0 | 106 | B6 | Output | Data output pin for the boundary scan |
| | TDI | 110 | C5 | Input | Data input pin for the boundary scan |
| | TRST | 109 | B5 | Input | Reset pin for the TAP controller Perform pin processing even when the boundary scan function is not used. For details, see 14.5, Usage Notes. |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------|---|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| USB | USD+ | 58 | K9 | I/O | USB data input/output pin |
| | USD- | 59 | L10 | | |
| | VBUS | 55 | K8 | Input | Connection/disconnection detecting Input/output pin for the USB cable |
| | USPND | 53 | H7 | Output | USB suspend output This pin is driven high when a transition is made to suspend state. |
| | VM | 35 | K3 | Input | Pins to be connected to the transceiver (ISP1104) manufactured by NXP. |
| | VP | 36 | L3 | | |
| | RCV | 37 | J4 | | |
| | VPO | 38 | K4 | Output | |
| | FSE0 | 40 | H5 | | |
| | \overline{OE} | 42 | L5 | | |
| | SUSPND | 33 | H4 | | |
| | \overline{UBPM} | 56 | L9 | Input | Bus power/self power mode setting Input. When the USB is used in bus power mode, this input pin must be fixed at 0. When the USB is used in self power mode, this input pin must be fixed at 1. |
| | DrVCC | 57 | J8 | — | Power supply for the on-chip transceiver. Connect this pin to the system power supply. |
| | DrVSS | 60 | J9 | — | Ground pin for the on-chip transceiver. |
| | P36 (PUPD+) | 94 | B9 | I/O | Used for D+ pull-up control. |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function | | |
|----------|--------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|-----|----------------|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | | | |
| I/O port | P17 | 42 | L5 | I/O | 8-bit I/O pins | | |
| | P16 | 41 | J5 | | | | |
| | P15 | 40 | H5 | | | | |
| | P14 | 39 | L4 | | | | |
| | P13 | 38 | K4 | | | | |
| | P12 | 37 | J4 | | | | |
| | P11 | 36 | L3 | | | | |
| | P10 | 35 | K3 | | | | |
| | P36 | 94 | B9 | | | I/O | 7-bit I/O pins |
| | P35 | 93 | D8 | | | | |
| P34 | 92 | A10 | | | | | |
| P33 | 91 | B10 | | | | | |
| P32 | 90 | C9 | | | | | |
| P31 | 89 | B11 | | | | | |
| P30 | 88 | C10 | | | | | |
| P43 | 46 | K6 | Input | 4-bit input pins | | | |
| P42 | 47 | H6 | | | | | |
| P41 | 48 | L7 | | | | | |
| P40 | 49 | K7 | | | | | |
| P74 | 96 | A9 | I/O | 5-bit I/O pins | | | |
| P73 | 97 | C8 | | | | | |
| P72 | 98 | B8 | | | | | |
| P71 | 99 | A8 | | | | | |
| P70 | 100 | D7 | | | | | |
| P97 | 44 | J6 | Input | 2-bit input pins | | | |
| P96 | 45 | L6 | | | | | |
| PA3 | 33 | H4 | I/O | 4-bit I/O pins | | | |
| PA2 | 32 | L2 | | | | | |
| PA1 | 31 | K2 | | | | | |
| PA0 | 30 | J3 | | | | | |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function |
|----------|--------|----------------------|--------------------|-----|----------------|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | |
| I/O port | PB7 | 29 | K1 | I/O | 8-bit I/O pins |
| | PB6 | 28 | J2 | | |
| | PB5 | 27 | H3 | | |
| | PB4 | 26 | J1 | | |
| | PB3 | 25 | H2 | | |
| | PB2 | 23 | G4 | | |
| | PB1 | 21 | H1 | | |
| | PB0 | 20 | G3 | | |
| | PC7 | 19 | G2 | I/O | 8-bit I/O pins |
| | PC6 | 18 | G1 | | |
| | PC5 | 17 | F4 | | |
| | PC4 | 16 | F2 | | |
| | PC3 | 15 | F1 | | |
| | PC2 | 14 | F3 | | |
| | PC1 | 13 | E2 | | |
| | PC0 | 11 | E3 | | |
| | PD7 | 9 | D1 | I/O | 8-bit I/O pins |
| | PD6 | 8 | D2 | | |
| | PD5 | 7 | D3 | | |
| | PD4 | 6 | C1 | | |
| | PD3 | 5 | C2 | | |
| | PD2 | 4 | D4 | | |
| | PD1 | 3 | B1 | | |
| | PD0 | 2 | B2 | | |
| | PE7 | 120 | C3 | I/O | 8-bit I/O pins |
| | PE6 | 119 | A2 | | |
| | PE5 | 118 | B3 | | |
| | PE4 | 117 | C4 | | |
| | PE3 | 116 | A3 | | |
| | PE2 | 115 | B4 | | |
| | PE1 | 113 | D5 | | |
| | PE0 | 111 | A4 | | |

| Type | Symbol | Pin No. | | I/O | Function | | |
|----------|--------|----------------------|--------------------|-----|---|-----|----------------|
| | | TFP-120, TFP-120V | BP-112, BP-112V | | | | |
| I/O port | PF7 | 78 | E11 | I/O | 8-bit I/O pins | | |
| | PF6 | 79 | E10 | | | | |
| | PF5 | 80 | E9 | | | | |
| | PF4 | 81 | D11 | | | | |
| | PF3 | 83 | E8 | | | | |
| | PF2 | 85 | D10 | | | | |
| | PF1 | 86 | C11 | | | | |
| | PF0 | 87 | D9 | | | | |
| | PG4 | 105 | A6 | | | I/O | 5-bit I/O pins |
| | PG3 | 104 | C6 | | | | |
| PG2 | 103 | B7 | | | | | |
| PG1 | 102 | A7 | | | | | |
| PG0 | 101 | C7 | | | | | |
| NC | NC | 1* ² | A1* ² | — | NC (No Connection): These pins should not be connected; they should be left open. | | |
| | | 22 | A11 | | | | |
| | | 24 | L1 | | | | |
| | | 34 | L11 | | | | |
| | | 52 | | | | | |
| | | 54 | | | | | |
| | | 82 | | | | | |
| | | 84 | | | | | |
| | | 95 | | | | | |
| | | 112 | | | | | |
| | 114 | | | | | | |

Notes: 1. Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C. (NC in H8S/2215.)

2. Available only in H8S/2215 ($\overline{\text{EMLE}}$ pin in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C).

Section 2 CPU

The H8S/2000 CPU is a high-speed central processing unit with an internal 32-bit architecture that is upward compatible with the H8/300 and H8/300H CPUs. The H8S/2000 CPU has sixteen 16-bit general registers, can address a 16-Mbyte linear address space, and is ideal for realtime control.

This section describes the H8S/2000 CPU. The usable modes and address spaces differ depending on the product. For details on each product, refer to section 3, MCU Operating Modes.

2.1 Features

- Upward-compatible with H8/300 and H8/300H CPUs
 - Can execute H8/300 and H8/300H CPU object programs
- General-register architecture
 - Sixteen 16-bit general registers also usable as sixteen 8-bit registers or eight 32-bit registers
- Sixty-five basic instructions
 - 8/16/32-bit arithmetic and logic instructions
 - Multiply and divide instructions
 - Powerful bit-manipulation instructions
- Eight addressing modes
 - Register direct [Rn]
 - Register indirect [@ERn]
 - Register indirect with displacement [@(d:16,ERn) or @(d:32,ERn)]
 - Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement [@ERn+ or @-ERn]
 - Absolute address [@aa:8, @aa:16, @aa:24, or @aa:32]
 - Immediate [#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32]
 - Program-counter relative [@(d:8,PC) or @(d:16,PC)]
 - Memory indirect [@@aa:8]
- 16-Mbyte address space
 - Program: 16 Mbytes
 - Data: 16 Mbytes
- High-speed operation
 - All frequently-used instructions execute in one or two states
 - 8/16/32-bit register-register add/subtract: 1 state
 - 8×8 -bit register-register multiply: 12 states
 - $16 \div 8$ -bit register-register divide: 12 states

- 16×16 -bit register-register multiply: 20 states
 - $32 \div 16$ -bit register-register divide: 20 states
 - Two CPU operating modes
 - Normal mode*
 - Advanced mode
- Note: * Normal mode is not available in this LSI.
- Power-down state
 - Transition to power-down state by SLEEP instruction
 - CPU clock speed selection

2.1.1 Differences between H8S/2600 CPU and H8S/2000 CPU

The differences between the H8S/2600 CPU and the H8S/2000 CPU are as shown below.

- Register configuration

The MAC register is supported only by the H8S/2600 CPU.
- Basic instructions

The four instructions MAC, CLRMAC, LDMAC, and STMAC are supported only by the H8S/2600 CPU.
- The number of execution states of the MULXU and MULXS instructions

| Instruction | Mnemonic | Execution States | |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------|----------|
| | | H8S/2600 | H8S/2000 |
| MULXU | MULXU.B Rs, Rd | 3 | 12 |
| | MULXU.W Rs, ERd | 4 | 20 |
| MULXS | MULXS.B Rs, Rd | 4 | 13 |
| | MULXS.W Rs, ERd | 5 | 21 |

In addition, there are differences in address space, CCR and EXR register functions, power-down modes, etc., depending on the model.

2.1.2 Differences from H8/300 CPU

In comparison to the H8/300 CPU, the H8S/2000 CPU has the following enhancements.

- More general registers and control registers
 - Eight 16-bit extended registers, and one 8-bit and two 32-bit control registers, have been added.
- Extended address space
 - Normal mode supports the same 64-kbyte address space as the H8/300 CPU.
 - Advanced mode supports a maximum 16-Mbyte address space.
- Enhanced addressing
 - The addressing modes have been enhanced to make effective use of the 16-Mbyte address space.
- Enhanced instructions
 - Addressing modes of bit-manipulation instructions have been enhanced.
 - Signed multiply and divide instructions have been added.
 - Two-bit shift instructions have been added.
 - Instructions for saving and restoring multiple registers have been added.
 - A test and set instruction has been added.
- Higher speed
 - Basic instructions execute twice as fast.

2.1.3 Differences from H8/300H CPU

In comparison to the H8/300H CPU, the H8S/2000 CPU has the following enhancements.

- Additional control register
 - One 8-bit control registers have been added.
- Enhanced instructions
 - Addressing modes of bit-manipulation instructions have been enhanced.
 - Two-bit shift instructions have been added.
 - Instructions for saving and restoring multiple registers have been added.
 - A test and set instruction has been added.
- Higher speed
 - Basic instructions execute twice as fast.

2.2 CPU Operating Modes

The H8S/2000 CPU has two operating modes: normal and advanced. Normal mode supports a maximum 64-kbyte address space. Advanced mode supports a maximum 16-Mbyte total address space. The mode is selected by the mode pins.

2.2.1 Normal Mode

The exception vector table and stack have the same structure as in the H8/300 CPU.

- **Address Space**
A maximum address space of 64 kbytes can be accessed.
- **Extended Registers (En)**
The extended registers (E0 to E7) can be used as 16-bit registers, or as the upper 16-bit segments of 32-bit registers. When En is used as a 16-bit register it can contain any value, even when the corresponding general register (Rn) is used as an address register. If the general register is referenced in the register indirect addressing mode with pre-decrement (@-Rn) or post-increment (@Rn+) and a carry or borrow occurs, however, the value in the corresponding extended register (En) will be affected.
- **Instruction Set**
All instructions and addressing modes can be used. Only the lower 16 bits of effective addresses (EA) are valid.
- **Exception Vector Table and Memory Indirect Branch Addresses**
In normal mode the top area starting at H'0000 is allocated to the exception vector table. One branch address is stored per 16 bits. The exception vector table in normal mode is shown in figure 2.1. For details of the exception vector table, see section 4, Exception Handling.
The memory indirect addressing mode (@@aa:8) employed in the JMP and JSR instructions uses an 8-bit absolute address included in the instruction code to specify a memory operand that contains a branch address. In normal mode the operand is a 16-bit (word) operand, providing a 16-bit branch address. Branch addresses can be stored in the top area from H'0000 to H'00FF. Note that this area is also used for the exception vector table.
- **Stack Structure**
When the program counter (PC) is pushed onto the stack in a subroutine call, and the PC, condition-code register (CCR), and extended control register (EXR) are pushed onto the stack in exception handling, they are stored as shown in figure 2.2. EXR is not pushed onto the stack in interrupt control mode 0. For details, see section 4, Exception Handling.

Note: Normal mode is not available in this LSI.

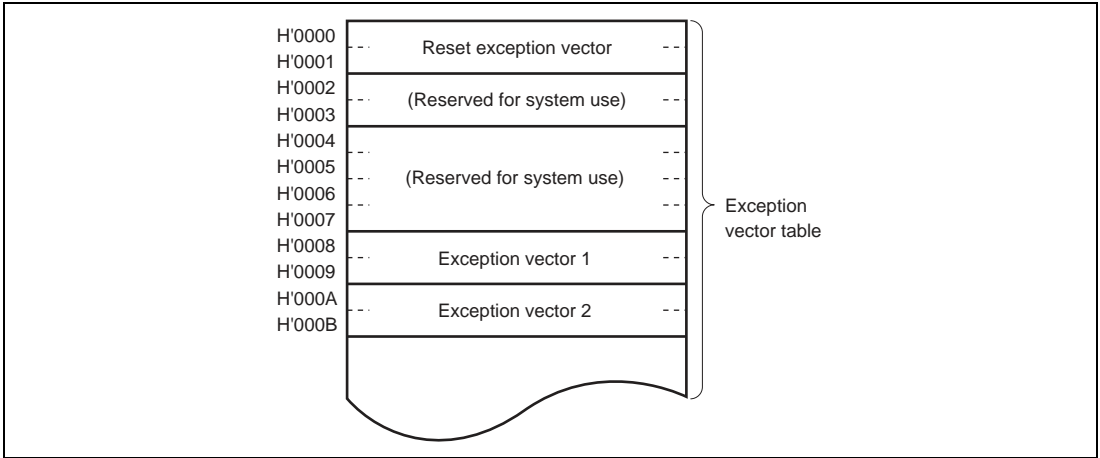


Figure 2.1 Exception Vector Table (Normal Mode)

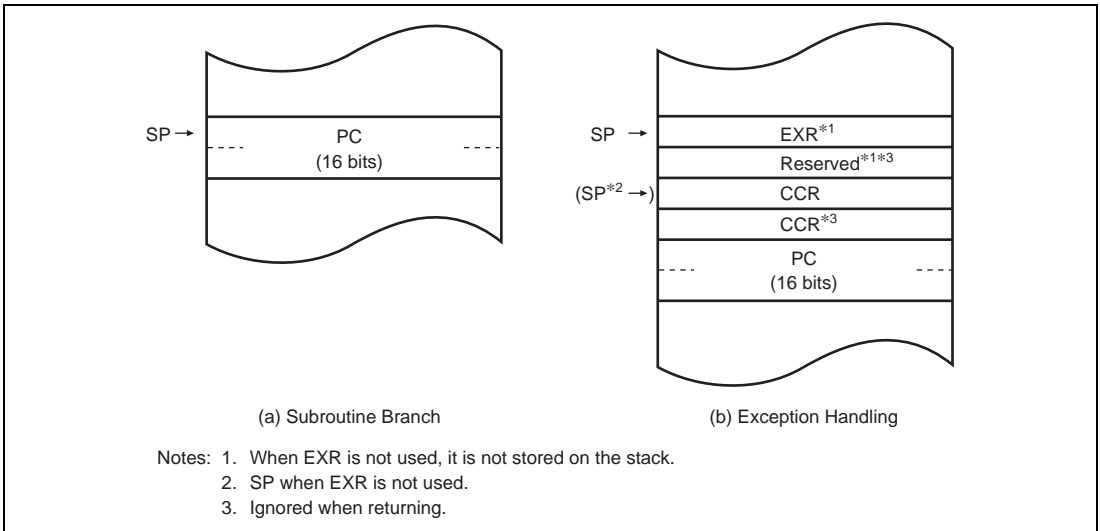


Figure 2.2 Stack Structure in Normal Mode

2.2.2 Advanced Mode

- Address Space

Linear access is provided to a 16-Mbyte maximum address space.

- Extended Registers (En)

The extended registers (E0 to E7) can be used as 16-bit registers, or as the upper 16-bit segments of 32-bit registers or address registers.

- Instruction Set

All instructions and addressing modes can be used.

- Exception Vector Table and Memory Indirect Branch Addresses

In advanced mode the top area starting at H'00000000 is allocated to the exception vector table in units of 32 bits. In each 32 bits, the upper 8 bits are ignored and a branch address is stored in the lower 24 bits (figure 2.3). For details of the exception vector table, see section 4, Exception Handling.

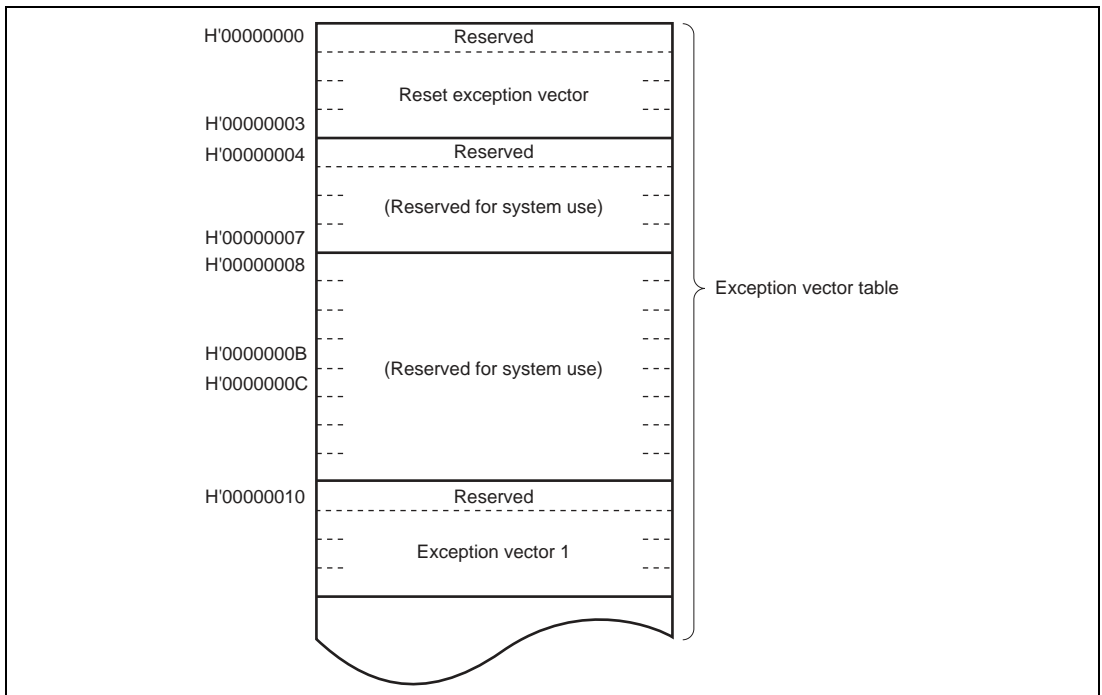


Figure 2.3 Exception Vector Table (Advanced Mode)

The memory indirect addressing mode (@aa:8) employed in the JMP and JSR instructions uses an 8-bit absolute address included in the instruction code to specify a memory operand that contains a branch address. In advanced mode the operand is a 32-bit longword operand,

providing a 32-bit branch address. The upper 8 bits of these 32 bits are a reserved area that is regarded as H'00. Branch addresses can be stored in the area from H'00000000 to H'000000FF. Note that the first part of this range is also the exception vector table.

- Stack Structure

In advanced mode, when the program counter (PC) is pushed onto the stack in a subroutine call, and the PC, condition-code register (CCR), and extended control register (EXR) are pushed onto the stack in exception handling, they are stored as shown in figure 2.4. When EXR is invalid, it is not pushed onto the stack. For details, see section 4, Exception Handling.

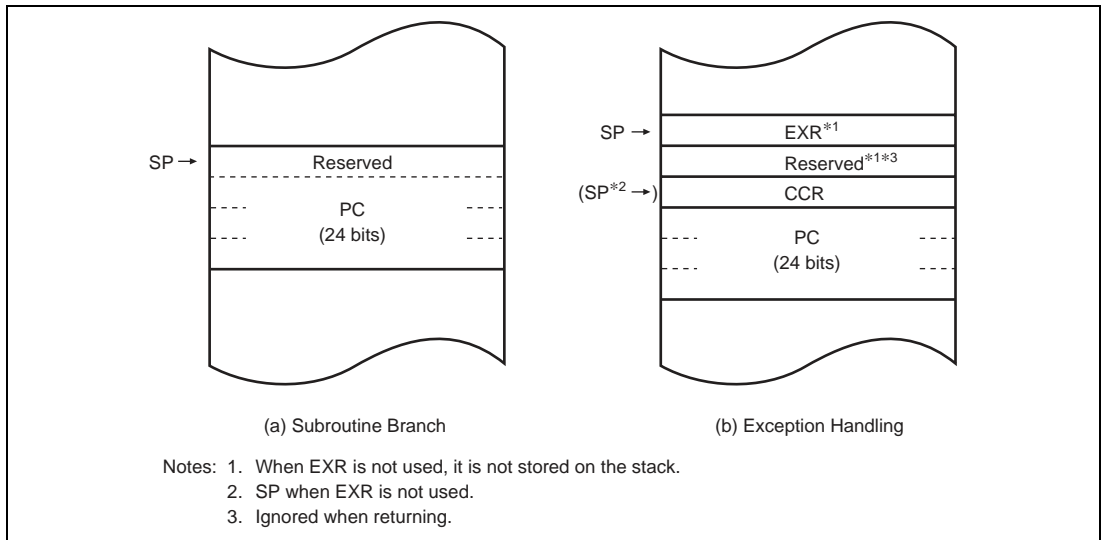


Figure 2.4 Stack Structure in Advanced Mode

2.3 Address Space

Figure 2.5 shows a memory map of the H8S/2000 CPU. The H8S/2000 CPU provides linear access to a maximum 64-kbyte address space in normal mode, and a maximum 16-Mbyte (architecturally 4-Gbyte) address space in advanced mode. The usable modes and address spaces differ depending on the product. For details on each product, refer to section 3, MCU Operating Modes.

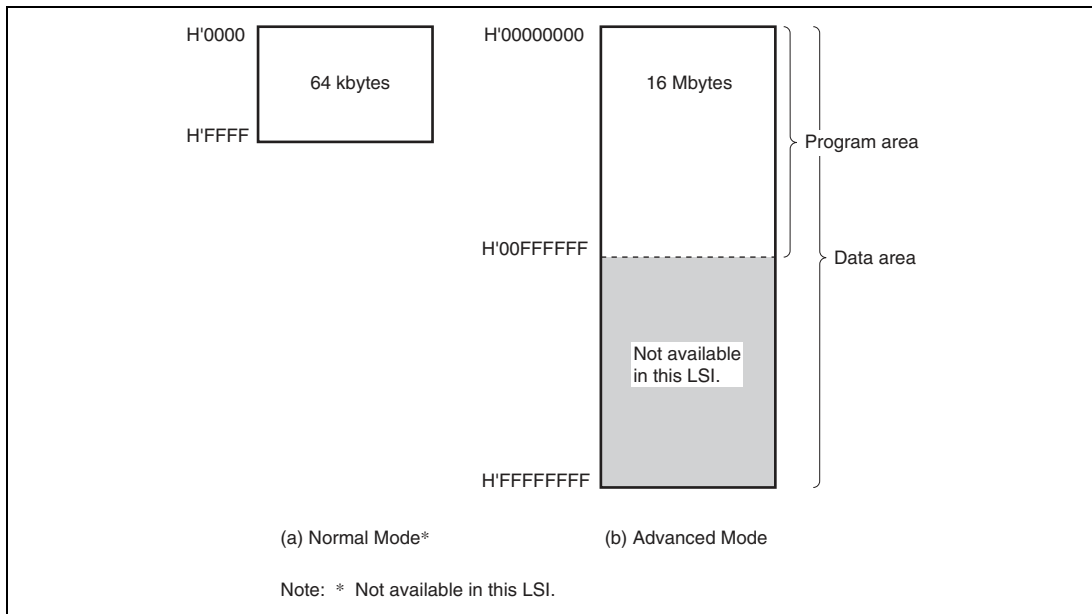


Figure 2.5 Memory Map

2.4 Register Configuration

The H8S/2000 CPU has the internal registers shown in figure 2.6. There are two types of registers: general registers and control registers. Control registers are a 24-bit program counter (PC), an 8-bit extended control register (EXR), and an 8-bit condition code register (CCR).

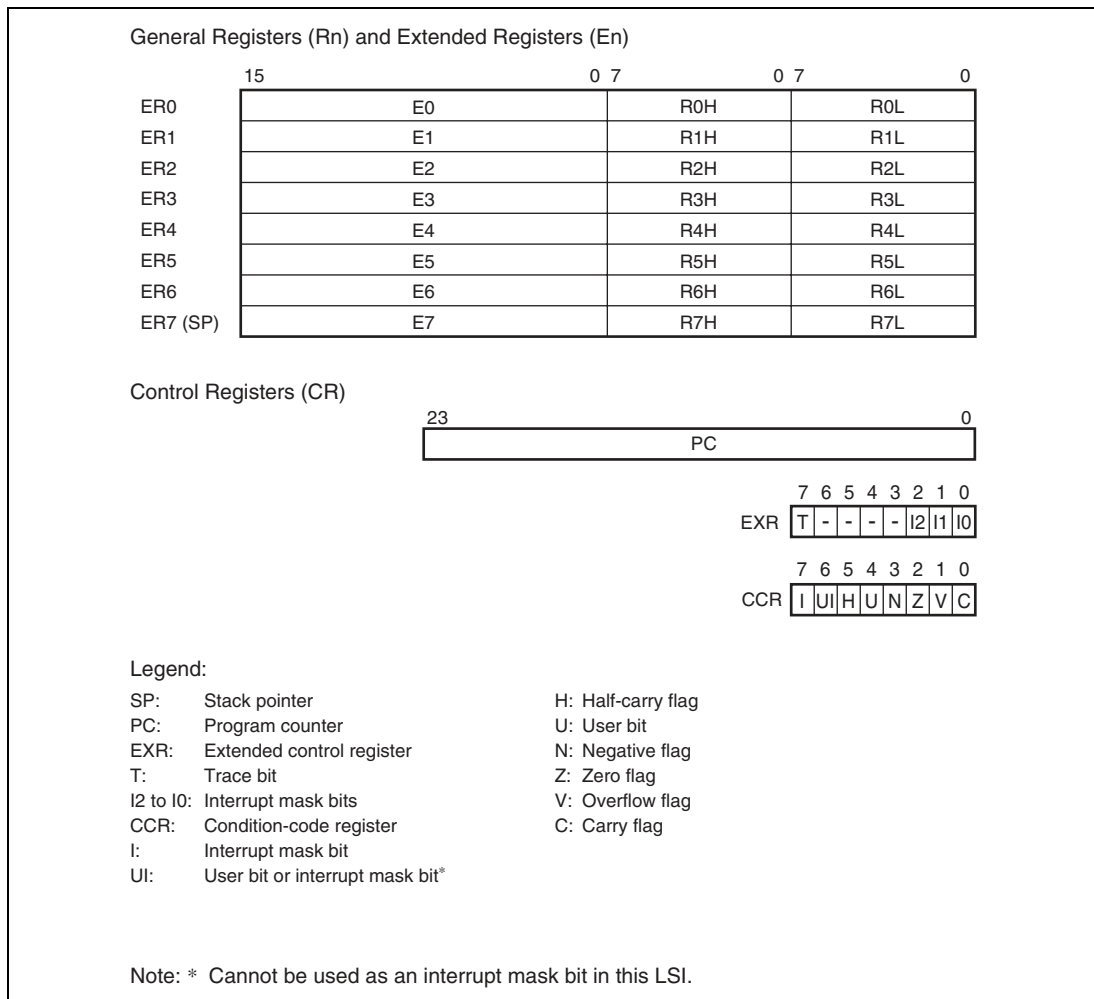


Figure 2.6 CPU Registers

2.4.1 General Registers

The H8S/2000 CPU has eight 32-bit general registers. These general registers are all functionally alike and can be used as both address registers and data registers. When a general register is used as a data register, it can be accessed as a 32-bit, 16-bit, or 8-bit register. Figure 2.7 illustrates the usage of the general registers. When the general registers are used as 32-bit registers or address registers, they are designated by the letters ER (ER0 to ER7).

The ER registers divide into 16-bit general registers designated by the letters E (E0 to E7) and R (R0 to R7). These registers are functionally equivalent, providing a maximum sixteen 16-bit registers. The E registers (E0 to E7) are also referred to as extended registers.

The R registers divide into 8-bit general registers designated by the letters RH (R0H to R7H) and RL (R0L to R7L). These registers are functionally equivalent, providing a maximum sixteen 8-bit registers.

The usage of each register can be selected independently.

General register ER7 has the function of stack pointer (SP) in addition to its general-register function, and is used implicitly in exception handling and subroutine calls. Figure 2.8 shows the stack.

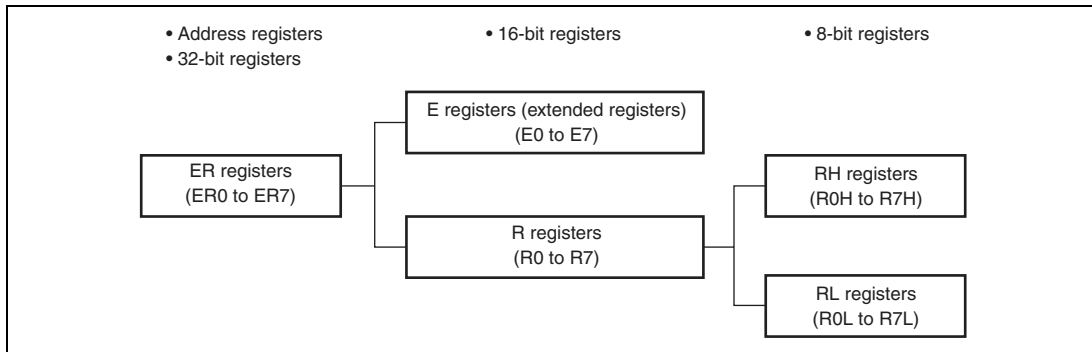


Figure 2.7 Usage of General Registers

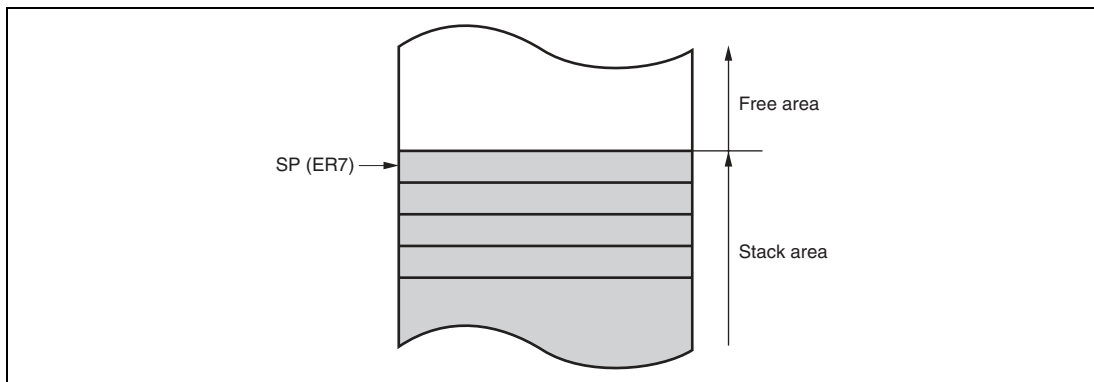


Figure 2.8 Stack

2.4.2 Program Counter (PC)

This 24-bit counter indicates the address of the next instruction the CPU will execute. The length of all CPU instructions is two bytes (one word), so the least significant PC bit is ignored (When an instruction is fetched, the least significant PC bit is regarded as 0).

2.4.3 Extended Control Register (EXR)

EXR is an 8-bit register that manipulates the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. When these instructions except for the STC instruction is executed, all interrupts including NMI will be masked for three states after execution is completed.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | T | 0 | R/W | Trace Bit When this bit is set to 1, a trace exception is generated each time an instruction is executed. When this bit is cleared to 0, instructions are executed in sequence. |
| 6 to 3 | — | All 1 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 1. |
| 2 to 0 | I2 I1 I0 | 1 | R/W | These bits designate the interrupt mask level (0 to 7). For details, refer to section 5, Interrupt Controller. |

2.4.4 Condition-Code Register (CCR)

This 8-bit register contains internal CPU status information, including an interrupt mask bit (I) and half-carry (H), negative (N), zero (Z), overflow (V), and carry (C) flags.

Operations can be performed on the CCR bits by the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. The N, Z, V, and C flags are used as branching conditions for conditional branch (Bcc) instructions.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | I | 1 | R/W | Interrupt Mask Bit Masks interrupts other than NMI when set to 1. NMI is accepted regardless of the I bit setting. The I bit is set to 1 by hardware at the start of an exception-handling sequence. For details, refer to section 5, Interrupt Controller. |
| 6 | UI | undefined | R/W | User Bit or Interrupt Mask Bit Can be written and read by software using the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. This bit cannot be used as an interrupt mask bit in this LSI. |
| 5 | H | undefined | R/W | Half-Carry Flag When the ADD.B, ADDX.B, SUB.B, SUBX.B, CMP.B or NEG.B instruction is executed, this flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 3, and cleared to 0 otherwise. When the ADD.W, SUB.W, CMP.W, or NEG.W instruction is executed, the H flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 11, and cleared to 0 otherwise. When the ADD.L, SUB.L, CMP.L, or NEG.L instruction is executed, the H flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 27, and cleared to 0 otherwise. |
| 4 | U | undefined | R/W | User Bit Can be written and read by software using the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. |
| 3 | N | undefined | R/W | Negative Flag Stores the value of the most significant bit of data as a sign bit. |
| 2 | Z | undefined | R/W | Zero Flag Set to 1 to indicate zero data, and cleared to 0 to indicate non-zero data. |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 1 | V | undefined | R/W | <p>Overflow Flag</p> <p>Set to 1 when an arithmetic overflow occurs, and cleared to 0 at other times.</p> |
| 0 | C | undefined | R/W | <p>Carry Flag</p> <p>Set to 1 when a carry occurs, and cleared to 0 otherwise.</p> <p>Used by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add instructions, to indicate a carry • Subtract instructions, to indicate a carry • Shift and rotate instructions, to indicate a carry <p>The carry flag is also used as a bit accumulator by bit manipulation instructions.</p> |

2.4.5 Initial Register Values

Reset exception handling loads the CPU's program counter (PC) from the vector table, clears the trace bit in EXR to 0, and sets the interrupt mask bits in CCR and EXR to 1. The other CCR bits and the general registers are not initialized. In particular, the stack pointer (ER7) is not initialized.

The stack pointer should therefore be initialized by an MOV.L instruction executed immediately after a reset.

2.5 Data Formats

The H8S/2000 CPU can process 1-bit, 4-bit (BCD), 8-bit (byte), 16-bit (word), and 32-bit (longword) data. Bit-manipulation instructions operate on 1-bit data by accessing bit n ($n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 7$) of byte operand data. The DAA and DAS decimal-adjust instructions treat byte data as two digits of 4-bit BCD data.

2.5.1 General Register Data Formats

Figure 2.9 shows the data formats in general registers.

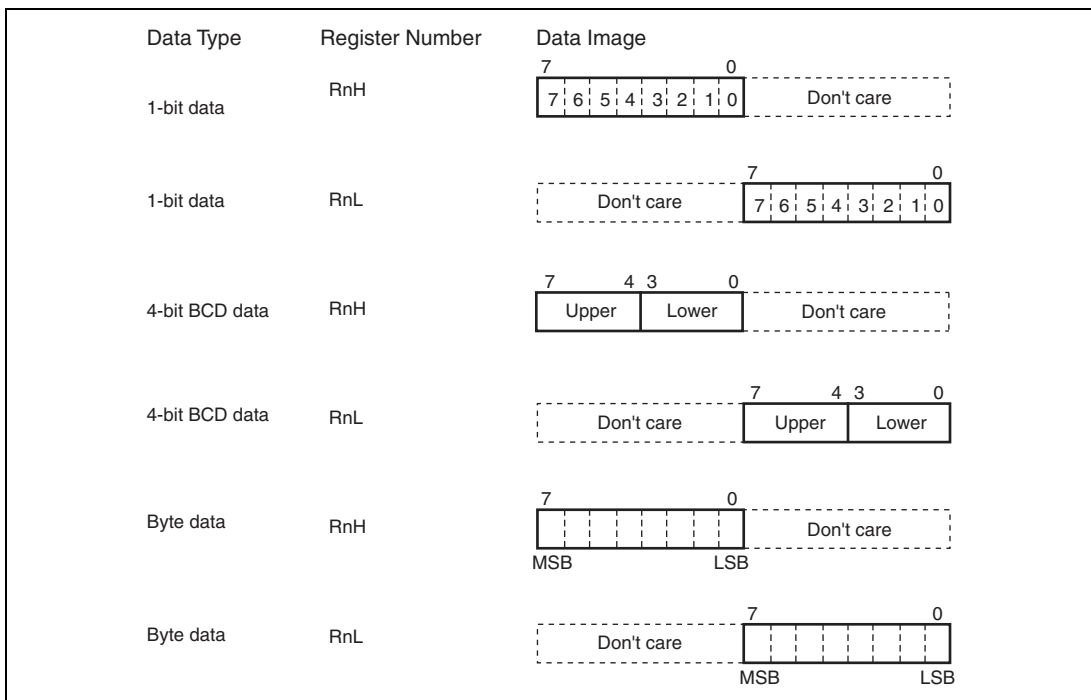


Figure 2.9 General Register Data Formats (1)

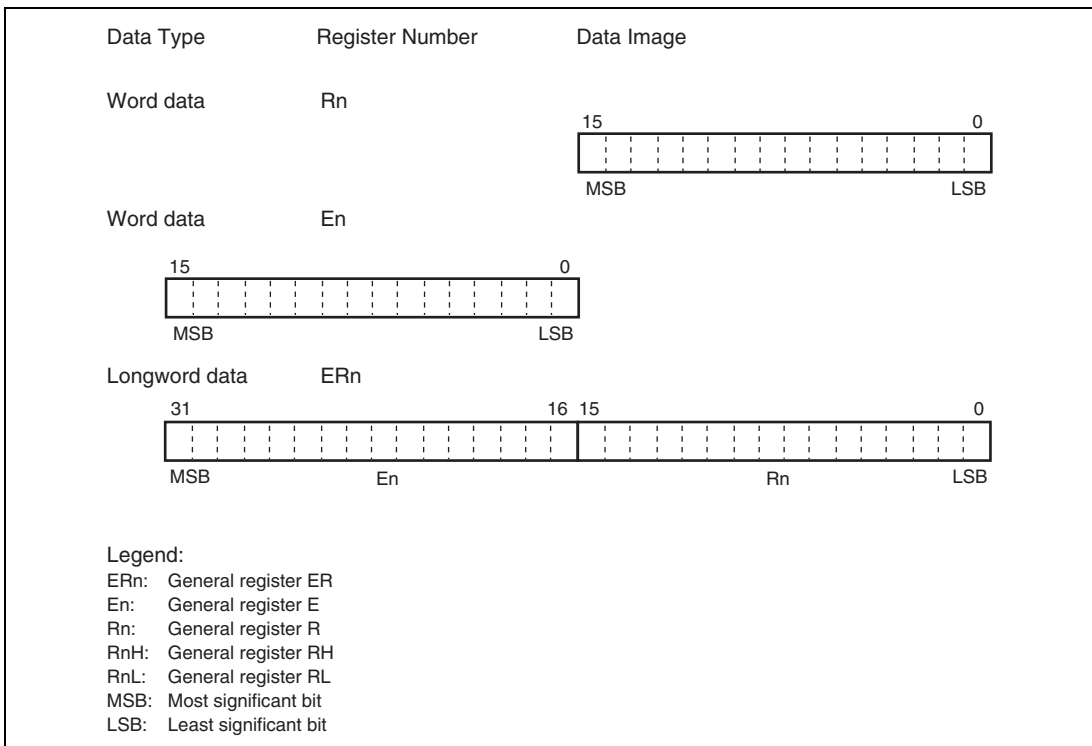


Figure 2.9 General Register Data Formats (2)

2.5.2 Memory Data Formats

Figure 2.10 shows the data formats in memory. The H8S/2000 CPU can access word data and longword data in memory, but word or longword data must begin at an even address. If an attempt is made to access word or longword data at an odd address, no address error occurs but the least significant bit of the address is regarded as 0, so the access starts at the preceding address. This also applies to instruction fetches.

When SP (ER7) is used as an address register to access the stack, the operand size should be word size or longword size.

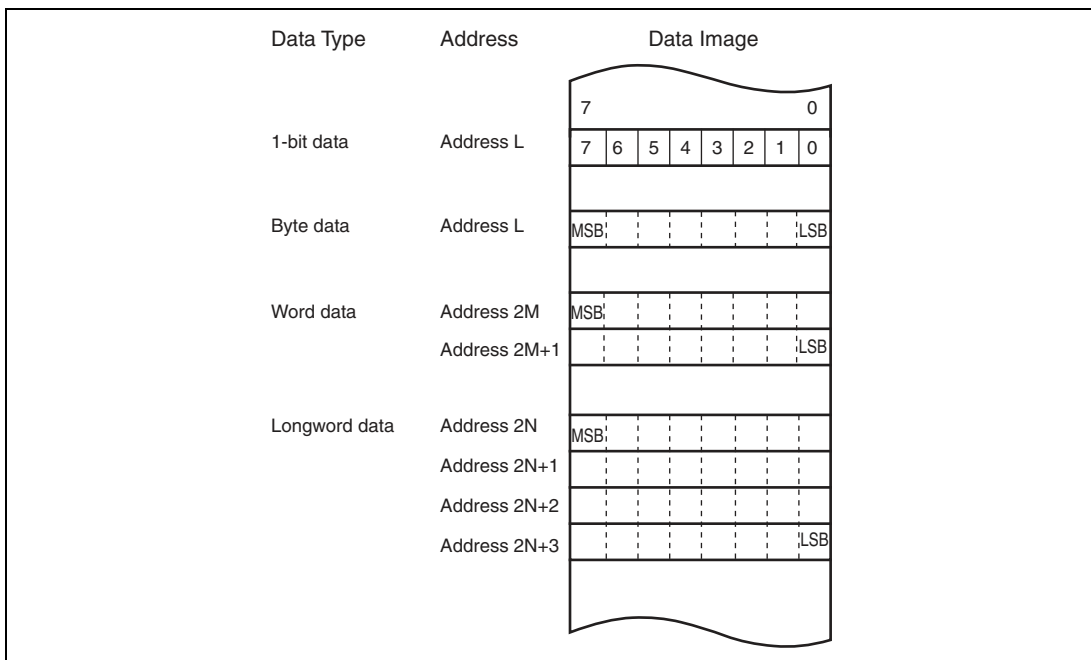


Figure 2.10 Memory Data Formats

2.6 Instruction Set

The H8S/2000 CPU has 65 types of instructions. The instructions are classified by function in table 2.1.

Table 2.1 Instruction Classification

| Function | Instructions | Size | Types |
|-----------------------|--|-------|-----------|
| Data transfer | MOV | B/W/L | 5 |
| | POP ^{*1} , PUSH ^{*1} | W/L | |
| | LDM ^{*5} , STM ^{*5} | L | |
| | MOVFP ^{*3} , MOVTP ^{*3} | B | |
| Arithmetic operations | ADD, SUB, CMP, NEG | B/W/L | 19 |
| | ADDX, SUBX, DAA, DAS | B | |
| | INC, DEC | B/W/L | |
| | ADDS, SUBS | L | |
| | MULXU, DIVXU, MULXS, DIVXS | B/W | |
| | EXTU, EXTS | W/L | |
| | TAS ^{*4} | B | |
| Logic operations | AND, OR, XOR, NOT | B/W/L | 4 |
| Shift | SHAL, SHAR, SHLL, SHLR, ROTL, ROTR, ROTXL, ROTXR | B/W/L | 8 |
| Bit manipulation | BSET, BCLR, BNOT, BTST, BLD, BILD, BST, BIST, BAND, BBIAND, BOR, BIOR, BXOR, BIXOR | B | 14 |
| Branch | Bcc ^{*2} , JMP, BSR, JSR, RTS | — | 5 |
| System control | TRAPA, RTE, SLEEP, LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, XORC, NOP | — | 9 |
| Block data transfer | EEPMOV | — | 1 |
| | | | Total: 65 |

Legend:

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

- Notes:
1. POP.W Rn and PUSH.W Rn are identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn and MOV.W Rn, @-SP. POP.L ERn and PUSH.L ERn are identical to MOV.L @SP+, ERn and MOV.L ERn, @-SP.
 2. Bcc is the general name for conditional branch instructions.
 3. Cannot be used in this LSI.
 4. Only register ER0, ER1, ER4, or ER5 should be used when using the TAS instruction.
 5. The ER7 register functions as a stack pointer for the LDM and STM instructions, so it cannot be for saving (STM) or restoring (LDM) data.

2.6.1 Table of Instructions Classified by Function

Tables 2.3 to 2.10 summarizes the instructions in each functional category. The notation used in tables 2.3 to 2.10 is defined below.

Table 2.2 Operation Notation

| Symbol | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| Rd | General register (destination)* |
| Rs | General register (source)* |
| Rn | General register* |
| ERn | General register (32-bit register) |
| (EAd) | Destination operand |
| (EAs) | Source operand |
| EXR | Extended control register |
| CCR | Condition-code register |
| N | N (negative) flag in CCR |
| Z | Z (zero) flag in CCR |
| V | V (overflow) flag in CCR |
| C | C (carry) flag in CCR |
| PC | Program counter |
| SP | Stack pointer |
| #IMM | Immediate data |
| disp | Displacement |
| + | Addition |
| − | Subtraction |
| × | Multiplication |
| ÷ | Division |
| ^ | Logical AND |
| ∨ | Logical OR |
| ⊕ | Logical exclusive OR |
| → | Move |
| ~ | NOT (logical complement) |
| :8/:16/:24/:32 | 8-, 16-, 24-, or 32-bit length |

Note: * General registers include 8-bit registers (R0H to R7H, R0L to R7L), 16-bit registers (R0 to R7, E0 to E7), and 32-bit registers (ER0 to ER7).

Table 2.3 Data Transfer Instructions

| Instruction | Size^{*1} | Function |
|--------------------|--------------------------|---|
| MOV | B/W/L | (EAs) → Rd, Rs → (EAd) Moves data between two general registers or between a general register and memory, or moves immediate data to a general register. |
| MOVFPE | B | Cannot be used in this LSI. |
| MOVTPE | B | Cannot be used in this LSI. |
| POP | W/L | @SP+ → Rn Pops a general register from the stack. POP.W Rn is identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn. POP.L ERn is identical to MOV.L @SP+, ERn |
| PUSH | W/L | Rn → @-SP Pushes a general register onto the stack. PUSH.W Rn is identical to MOV.W Rn, @-SP. PUSH.L ERn is identical to MOV.L ERn, @-SP. |
| LDM ^{*2} | L | @SP+ → Rn (register list) Pops two or more general registers from the stack. |
| STM ^{*2} | L | Rn (register list) → @-SP Pushes two or more general registers onto the stack. |

Notes: 1. Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

2. ER7 is used as a stack pointer in STM and LDM instructions. ER7, therefore, should not be used as a saving (STM) or restoring (LDM) register.

Table 2.4 Arithmetic Operations Instructions (1)

| Instruction | Size* | Function |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| ADD SUB | B/W/L | $Rd \pm Rs \rightarrow Rd$, $Rd \pm \#IMM \rightarrow Rd$ Performs addition or subtraction on data in two general registers, or on immediate data and data in a general register. (Immediate byte data cannot be subtracted from byte data in a general register. Use the SUBX or ADD instruction.) |
| ADDX SUBX | B | $Rd \pm Rs \pm C \rightarrow Rd$, $Rd \pm \#IMM \pm C \rightarrow Rd$ Performs addition or subtraction with carry or borrow on byte data in two general registers, or on immediate data and data in a general register. |
| INC DEC | B/W/L | $Rd \pm 1 \rightarrow Rd$, $Rd \pm 2 \rightarrow Rd$ Increments or decrements a general register by 1 or 2. (Byte operands can be incremented or decremented by 1 only.) |
| ADDS SUBS | L | $Rd \pm 1 \rightarrow Rd$, $Rd \pm 2 \rightarrow Rd$, $Rd \pm 4 \rightarrow Rd$ Adds or subtracts the value 1, 2, or 4 to or from data in a 32-bit register. |
| DAA DAS | B | Rd (decimal adjust) $\rightarrow Rd$ Decimal-adjusts an addition or subtraction result in a general register by referring to the OCR to produce 4-bit BCD data. |
| MULXU | B/W | $Rd \times Rs \rightarrow Rd$ Performs unsigned multiplication on data in two general registers: either 8 bits \times 8 bits \rightarrow 16 bits or 16 bits \times 16 bits \rightarrow 32 bits. |
| MULXS | B/W | $Rd \times Rs \rightarrow Rd$ Performs signed multiplication on data in two general registers: either 8 bits \times 8 bits \rightarrow 16 bits or 16 bits \times 16 bits \rightarrow 32 bits. |
| DIVXU | B/W | $Rd \div Rs \rightarrow Rd$ Performs unsigned division on data in two general registers: either 16 bits \div 8 bits \rightarrow 8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder or 32 bits \div 16 bits \rightarrow 16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder. |

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

Table 2.4 Arithmetic Operations Instructions (2)

| Instruction | Size^{*1} | Function |
|--------------------|--------------------------|---|
| DIVXS | B/W | Rd \div Rs \rightarrow Rd Performs signed division on data in two general registers: either 16 bits \div 8 bits \rightarrow 8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder or 32 bits \div 16 bits \rightarrow 16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder. |
| CMP | B/W/L | Rd – Rs, Rd – #IMM Compares data in a general register with data in another general register or with immediate data, and sets CCR bits according to the result. |
| NEG | B/W/L | 0 – Rd \rightarrow Rd Takes the two's complement (arithmetic complement) of data in a general register. |
| EXTU | W/L | Rd (zero extension) \rightarrow Rd Extends the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register to word size, or the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register to longword size, by padding with zeros on the left. |
| EXTS | W/L | Rd (sign extension) \rightarrow Rd Extends the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register to word size, or the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register to longword size, by extending the sign bit. |
| TAS ^{*2} | B | @ERd – 0, 1 \rightarrow (<bit 7> of @ERd) Tests memory contents, and sets the most significant bit (bit 7) to 1. |

Notes: 1. Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

2. Only register ER0, ER1, ER4, or ER5 should be used when using the TAS instruction.

Table 2.5 Logic Operations Instructions

| Instruction | Size* | Function |
|--------------------|--------------|--|
| AND | B/W/L | $Rd \wedge Rs \rightarrow Rd, Rd \wedge \#IMM \rightarrow Rd$ Performs a logical AND operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data. |
| OR | B/W/L | $Rd \vee Rs \rightarrow Rd, Rd \vee \#IMM \rightarrow Rd$ Performs a logical OR operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data. |
| XOR | B/W/L | $Rd \oplus Rs \rightarrow Rd, Rd \oplus \#IMM \rightarrow Rd$ Performs a logical exclusive OR operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data. |
| NOT | B/W/L | $\sim Rd \rightarrow Rd$ Takes the one's complement (logical complement) of general register contents. |

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

Table 2.6 Shift Instructions

| Instruction | Size* | Function |
|--------------------|--------------|--|
| SHAL | B/W/L | $Rd \text{ (shift)} \rightarrow Rd$ |
| SHAR | | Performs an arithmetic shift on general register contents. 1-bit or 2 bit shift is possible. |
| SHLL | B/W/L | $Rd \text{ (shift)} \rightarrow Rd$ |
| SHLR | | Performs an logical shift on general register contents. 1-bit or 2 bit shift is possible. |
| ROTL | B/W/L | $Rd \text{ (rotate)} \rightarrow Rd$ |
| ROTR | | Rotates general register contents. 1-bit or 2 bit rotation is possible. |
| ROTXL | B/W/L | $Rd \text{ (rotate)} \rightarrow Rd$ |
| ROTXR | | Rotates general register contents through the carry flag. 1-bit or 2 bit rotation is possible. |

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

W: Word

L: Longword

Table 2.7 Bit Manipulation Instructions (1)

| Instruction | Size* | Function |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| BSET | B | $1 \rightarrow \langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle$ Sets a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to 1. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register. |
| BCLR | B | $0 \rightarrow \langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle$ Clears a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to 0. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register. |
| BNOT | B | $\sim \langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle \rightarrow \langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle$ Inverts a specified bit in a general register or memory operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register. |
| BTST | B | $\sim \langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle \rightarrow Z$ Tests a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and sets or clears the Z flag accordingly. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower three bits of a general register. |
| BAND | B | $C \wedge \langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle \rightarrow C$ ANDs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. |
| BIAND | B | $C \wedge \sim [\langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle] \rightarrow C$ ANDs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. |
| BOR | B | $C \vee \langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle \rightarrow C$ ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. |
| BIOR | B | $C \vee [\sim \langle \text{bit-No.} \rangle \text{ of } \langle \text{EAd} \rangle] \rightarrow C$ ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. |

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

Table 2.7 Bit Manipulation Instructions (2)

| Instruction | Size* | Function |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| BXOR | B | $C \oplus (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$ Exclusive-ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. |
| BIXOR | B | $C \oplus [\sim (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>})] \rightarrow C$ Exclusive-ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. |
| BLD | B | $(\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$ Transfers a specified bit in a general register or memory to the carry flag. |
| BILD | B | $\sim (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>}) \rightarrow C$ Transfers the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. |
| BST | B | $C \rightarrow (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>})$ Transfers the carry flag value to a specified bit in a general register or memory operand. |
| BIST | B | $\sim C \rightarrow (\text{<bit-No.> of <EAd>})$ Transfers the inverse of the carry flag value to a specified bit in a general register or memory operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data. |

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

Table 2.8 Branch Instructions

| Instruction | Size | Function | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|---|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|----------|---------------|--------|----------|---------------|-------|-----|------|----------------|-----|-------------|----------------|-----------|-------------------------------|---------|-----------|-----------------|---------|-----|-----------|---------|-----|-------|---------|-----|----------------|---------|-----|--------------|---------|-----|------|---------|-----|-------|---------|-----|------------------|------------------|-----|-----------|------------------|-----|--------------|---------------------------|-----|---------------|---------------------------|
| Bcc | — | Branches to a specified address if a specified condition is true. The branching conditions are listed below. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Mnemonic</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Condition</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BRA (BT)</td> <td>Always (true)</td> <td>Always</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BRN (BF)</td> <td>Never (false)</td> <td>Never</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BHI</td> <td>High</td> <td>$C \vee Z = 0$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLS</td> <td>Low or same</td> <td>$C \vee Z = 1$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BCC (BHS)</td> <td>Carry clear (high or same)</td> <td>$C = 0$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BCS (BLO)</td> <td>Carry set (low)</td> <td>$C = 1$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BNE</td> <td>Not equal</td> <td>$Z = 0$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BEQ</td> <td>Equal</td> <td>$Z = 1$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BVC</td> <td>Overflow clear</td> <td>$V = 0$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BVS</td> <td>Overflow set</td> <td>$V = 1$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BPL</td> <td>Plus</td> <td>$N = 0$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BMI</td> <td>Minus</td> <td>$N = 1$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BGE</td> <td>Greater or equal</td> <td>$N \oplus V = 0$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLT</td> <td>Less than</td> <td>$N \oplus V = 1$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BGT</td> <td>Greater than</td> <td>$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0$</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLE</td> <td>Less or equal</td> <td>$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Mnemonic | Description | Condition | BRA (BT) | Always (true) | Always | BRN (BF) | Never (false) | Never | BHI | High | $C \vee Z = 0$ | BLS | Low or same | $C \vee Z = 1$ | BCC (BHS) | Carry clear (high or same) | $C = 0$ | BCS (BLO) | Carry set (low) | $C = 1$ | BNE | Not equal | $Z = 0$ | BEQ | Equal | $Z = 1$ | BVC | Overflow clear | $V = 0$ | BVS | Overflow set | $V = 1$ | BPL | Plus | $N = 0$ | BMI | Minus | $N = 1$ | BGE | Greater or equal | $N \oplus V = 0$ | BLT | Less than | $N \oplus V = 1$ | BGT | Greater than | $Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0$ | BLE | Less or equal | $Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$ |
| Mnemonic | Description | Condition | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BRA (BT) | Always (true) | Always | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BRN (BF) | Never (false) | Never | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BHI | High | $C \vee Z = 0$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BLS | Low or same | $C \vee Z = 1$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BCC (BHS) | Carry clear (high or same) | $C = 0$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BCS (BLO) | Carry set (low) | $C = 1$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BNE | Not equal | $Z = 0$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BEQ | Equal | $Z = 1$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BVC | Overflow clear | $V = 0$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BVS | Overflow set | $V = 1$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BPL | Plus | $N = 0$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BMI | Minus | $N = 1$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BGE | Greater or equal | $N \oplus V = 0$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BLT | Less than | $N \oplus V = 1$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BGT | Greater than | $Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BLE | Less or equal | $Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| JMP | — | Branches unconditionally to a specified address. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| BSR | — | Branches to a subroutine at a specified address | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| JSR | — | Branches to a subroutine at a specified address | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| RTS | — | Returns from a subroutine | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 2.9 System Control Instruction

| Instruction | Size* | Function |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| TRAPA | — | Starts trap-instruction exception handling. |
| RTE | — | Returns from an exception-handling routine. |
| SLEEP | — | Causes a transition to a power-down state. |
| LDC | B/W | (EAs) → CCR, (EAs) → EXR Moves the source operand contents or immediate data to CCR or EXR. Although CCR and EXR are 8-bit registers, word-size transfers are performed between them and memory. The upper 8 bits are valid. |
| STC | B/W | CCR → (EAd), EXR → (EAd) Transfers CCR or EXR contents to a general register or memory. Although CCR and EXR are 8-bit registers, word-size transfers are performed between them and memory. The upper 8 bits are valid. |
| ANDC | B | CCR ∧ #IMM → CCR, EXR ∧ #IMM → EXR Logically ANDs the CCR or EXR contents with immediate data. |
| ORC | B | CCR ∨ #IMM → CCR, EXR ∨ #IMM → EXR Logically ORs the CCR or EXR contents with immediate data. |
| XORC | B | CCR ⊕ #IMM → CCR, EXR ⊕ #IMM → EXR Logically exclusive-ORs the CCR or EXR contents with immediate data. |
| NOP | — | PC + 2 → PC Only increments the program counter. |

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.

B: Byte

W: Word

Table 2.10 Block Data Transfer Instruction

| Instruction | Size | Function |
|-------------|------|--|
| EEPMOV.B | — | if R4L \neq 0 then Repeat @ER5+ \rightarrow @ER6+ R4L-1 \rightarrow R4L Until R4L = 0 else next; |
| EEPMOV.W | — | if R4 \neq 0 then Repeat @ER5+ \rightarrow @ER6+ R4-1 \rightarrow R4 Until R4 = 0 else next; Transfer a data block. Starting from the address set in ER5, transfers data for the number of bytes set in R4L or R4 to the address location set in ER6. Execution of the next instruction begins as soon as the transfer is completed. |

2.6.2 Basic Instruction Formats

The H8S/2000 CPU instructions consist of 2-byte (1-word) units. An instruction consists of an operation field (op), a register field (r), an effective address extension (EA), and a condition field (cc).

Figure 2.11 shows examples of instruction formats.

- **Operation Field**
Indicates the function of the instruction, the addressing mode, and the operation to be carried out on the operand. The operation field always includes the first four bits of the instruction. Some instructions have two operation fields.
- **Register Field**
Specifies a general register. Address registers are specified by 3 bits, data registers by 3 bits or 4 bits. Some instructions have two register fields. Some have no register field.
- **Effective Address Extension**
8, 16, or 32 bits specifying immediate data, an absolute address, or a displacement.
- **Condition Field**
Specifies the branching condition of Bcc instructions.

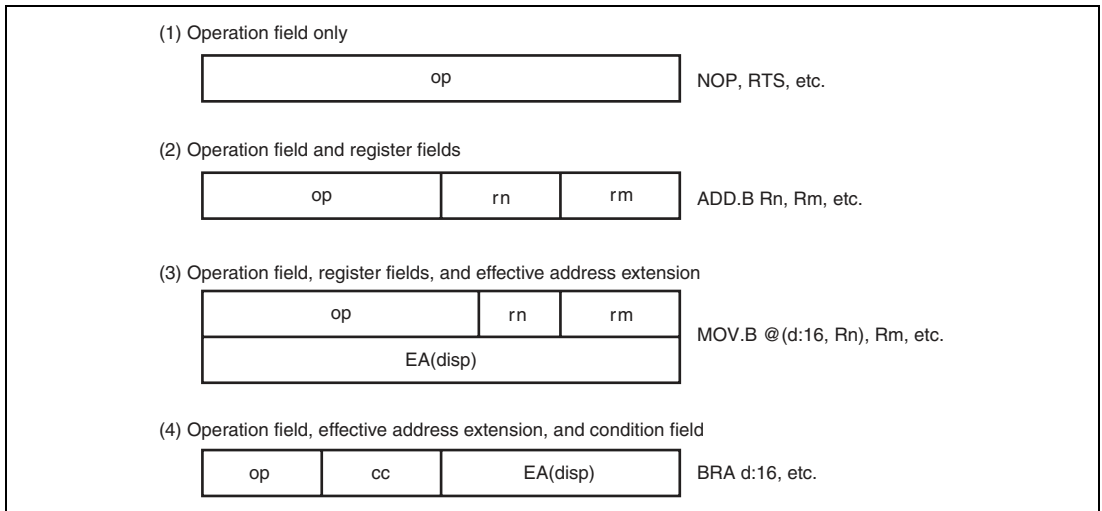


Figure 2.11 Instruction Formats (Examples)

2.7 Addressing Modes and Effective Address Calculation

The H8S/2000 CPU supports the eight addressing modes listed in table 2.11. Each instruction uses a subset of these addressing modes. Arithmetic and logic instructions can use the register direct and immediate modes. Data transfer instructions can use all addressing modes except program-counter relative and memory indirect. Bit manipulation instructions use register direct, register indirect, or absolute addressing mode to specify an operand, and register direct (BSET, BCLR, BNOT, and BTST instructions) or immediate (3-bit) addressing mode to specify a bit number in the operand.

Table 2.11 Addressing Modes

| No. | Addressing Mode | Symbol |
|-----|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 | Register direct | Rn |
| 2 | Register indirect | @ERn |
| 3 | Register indirect with displacement | @(d:16,ERn)/@(d:32,ERn) |
| 4 | Register indirect with post-increment | @ERn+ |
| | Register indirect with pre-decrement | @-ERn |
| 5 | Absolute address | @aa:8/@aa:16/@aa:24/@aa:32 |
| 6 | Immediate | #xx:8/#xx:16/#xx:32 |
| 7 | Program-counter relative | @(d:8,PC)/@(d:16,PC) |
| 8 | Memory indirect | @@aa:8 |

2.7.1 Register Direct—Rn

The register field of the instruction specifies an 8-, 16-, or 32-bit general register containing the operand. R0H to R7H and R0L to R7L can be specified as 8-bit registers. R0 to R7 and E0 to E7 can be specified as 16-bit registers. ER0 to ER7 can be specified as 32-bit registers.

2.7.2 Register Indirect—@ERn

The register field of the instruction code specifies an address register (ERn) which contains the address of the operand on memory. If the address is a program instruction address, the lower 24 bits are valid and the upper 8 bits are all assumed to be 0 (H'00).

2.7.3 Register Indirect with Displacement—@(d:16, ERn) or @(d:32, ERn)

A 16-bit or 32-bit displacement contained in the instruction is added to an address register (ERn) specified by the register field of the instruction, and the sum gives the address of a memory operand. A 16-bit displacement is sign-extended when added.

2.7.4 Register Indirect with Post-Increment or Pre-Decrement—@ERn+ or @-ERn

Register indirect with post-increment—@ERn+: The register field of the instruction code specifies an address register (ERn) which contains the address of a memory operand. After the operand is accessed, 1, 2, or 4 is added to the address register contents and the sum is stored in the address register. The value added is 1 for byte access, 2 for word transfer instruction, or 4 for longword transfer instruction. For word or longword transfer instruction, the register value should be even.

Register indirect with pre-decrement—@-ERn: The value 1, 2, or 4 is subtracted from an address register (ERn) specified by the register field in the instruction code, and the result becomes the address of a memory operand. The result is also stored in the address register. The value subtracted is 1 for byte access, 2 for word transfer instruction, or 4 for longword transfer instruction. For word or longword transfer instruction, the register value should be even.

2.7.5 Absolute Address—@aa:8, @aa:16, @aa:24, or @aa:32

The instruction code contains the absolute address of a memory operand. The absolute address may be 8 bits long (@aa:8), 16 bits long (@aa:16), 24 bits long (@aa:24), or 32 bits long (@aa:32). Table 2.12 indicates the accessible absolute address ranges.

To access data, the absolute address should be 8 bits (@aa:8), 16 bits (@aa:16), or 32 bits (@aa:32) long. For an 8-bit absolute address, the upper 24 bits are all assumed to be 1 (H'FFFF).

For a 16-bit absolute address the upper 16 bits are a sign extension. A 32-bit absolute address can access the entire address space.

A 24-bit absolute address (@aa:24) indicates the address of a program instruction. The upper 8 bits are all assumed to be 0 (H'00).

Table 2.12 Absolute Address Access Ranges

| Absolute Address | | Normal Mode* | Advanced Mode |
|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------------|---|
| Data address | 8 bits (@aa:8) | H'FF00 to H'FFFF | H'FFFF00 to H'FFFFFF |
| | 16 bits (@aa:16) | H'0000 to H'FFFF | H'000000 to H'007FFF, H'FF8000 to H'FFFFFF |
| | 32 bits (@aa:32) | | H'000000 to H'FFFFFF |
| Program instruction address | 24 bits (@aa:24) | | |

Note: * Not available in this LSI.

2.7.6 Immediate—#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32

The instruction contains 8-bit (#xx:8), 16-bit (#xx:16), or 32-bit (#xx:32) immediate data as an operand.

The ADDS, SUBS, INC, and DEC instructions contain immediate data implicitly. Some bit manipulation instructions contain 3-bit immediate data in the instruction code, specifying a bit number. The TRAPA instruction contains 2-bit immediate data in its instruction code, specifying a vector address.

2.7.7 Program-Counter Relative—@(d:8, PC) or @(d:16, PC)

This mode is used in the Bcc and BSR instructions. An 8-bit or 16-bit displacement contained in the instruction is sign-extended and added to the 24-bit PC contents to generate a branch address.

Only the lower 24 bits of this branch address are valid; the upper 8 bits are all assumed to be 0 (H'00). The PC value to which the displacement is added is the address of the first byte of the next instruction, so the possible branching range is –126 to +128 bytes (–63 to +64 words) or –32766 to +32768 bytes (–16383 to +16384 words) from the branch instruction. The resulting value should be an even number.

2.7.8 Memory Indirect—@aa:8

This mode can be used by the JMP and JSR instructions. The instruction code contains an 8-bit absolute address specifying a memory operand. This memory operand contains a branch address.

The upper bits of the absolute address are all assumed to be 0, so the address range is 0 to 255 (H'0000 to H'00FF in normal mode*, H'000000 to H'0000FF in advanced mode). In normal mode the memory operand is a word operand and the branch address is 16 bits long. In advanced mode the memory operand is a longword operand, the first byte of which is assumed to be H'00.

Note that the first part of the address range is also the exception vector area. For further details, refer to section 4, Exception Handling.

If an odd address is specified in word or longword memory access, or as a branch address, the least significant bit is regarded as 0, causing data to be accessed or instruction code to be fetched at the address preceding the specified address. (For further information, see section 2.5.2, Memory Data Formats.)

Note: * Not available in this LSI.

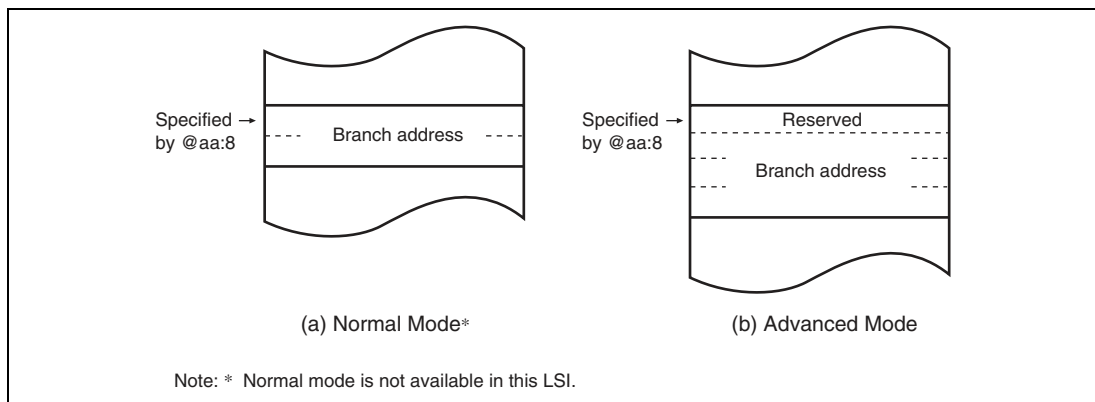


Figure 2.12 Branch Address Specification in Memory Indirect Mode

2.7.9 Effective Address Calculation

Table 2.13 indicates how effective addresses are calculated in each addressing mode. In normal mode the upper 8 bits of the effective address are ignored in order to generate a 16-bit address.

Table 2.13 Effective Address Calculation (1)

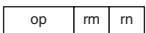
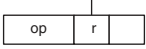
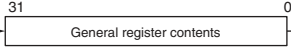
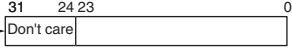

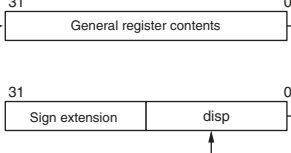
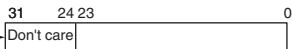
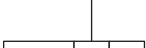
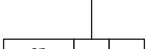
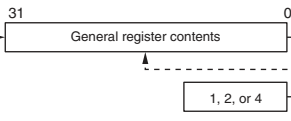
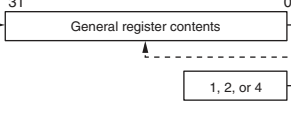
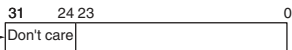
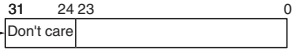
| No | Addressing Mode and Instruction Format | Effective Address Calculation | Effective Address (EA) | | | | | | | | |
|--------------|---|---|--|--------|------|---|------|---|----------|---|--|
| 1 | Register direct (Rn)  | | Operand is general register contents. | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Register indirect (@ERn)  |  |  | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Register indirect with displacement @ (d:16,ERn) or @ (d:32,ERn)  |  |  | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement • Register indirect with post-increment @ERn+  • Register indirect with pre-decrement @-ERn  |   <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operand Size</th> <th>Offset</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Byte</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Word</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Longword</td> <td>4</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Operand Size | Offset | Byte | 1 | Word | 2 | Longword | 4 |   |
| Operand Size | Offset | | | | | | | | | | |
| Byte | 1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Word | 2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| Longword | 4 | | | | | | | | | | |

Table 2.13 Effective Address Calculation (2)

| No | Addressing Mode and Instruction Format | Effective Address Calculation | Effective Address (EA) |
|----|--|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 5 | Absolute address @aa:8 | | |
| | @aa:16 | | |
| | @aa:24 | | |
| | @aa:32 | | |
| 6 | Immediate #xx:8/#xx:16/#xx:32 | | Operand is immediate data. |
| 7 | Program-counter relative @(d:8,PC)/@(d:16,PC) | | |
| 8 | Memory indirect @aa:8 • Normal mode* | | |
| | • Advanced mode | | |

Note: * Normal mode is not available in this LSI.

2.8 Processing States

The H8S/2000 CPU has five main processing states: the reset state, exception handling state, program execution state, bus-released state, and power-down state. Figure 2.13 indicates the state transitions.

- Reset State

In this state the CPU and internal peripheral modules are all initialized and stop. When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input goes low all current processing stops and the CPU enters the reset state. All interrupts are masked in the reset state. Reset exception handling starts when the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ signal changes from low to high. For details, refer to section 4, Exception Handling.

The reset state can also be entered by a watchdog timer overflow.

- Exception-Handling State

The exception-handling state is a transient state that occurs when the CPU alters the normal processing flow due to an exception source, such as, a reset, trace, interrupt, or trap instruction. The CPU fetches a start address (vector) from the exception vector table and branches to that address. For further details, refer to section 4, Exception Handling.

- Program Execution State

In this state the CPU executes program instructions in sequence.

- Bus-Released State

In a product which has a bus master other than the CPU, such as a direct memory access controller (DMAC) and a data transfer controller (DTC), the bus-released state occurs when the bus has been released in response to a bus request from a bus master other than the CPU. While the bus is released, the CPU halts operations.

- Power-Down State

This is a power-down state in which the CPU stops operating. The program stop state occurs when a SLEEP instruction is executed or the CPU enters hardware standby mode. For details, refer to section 22, Power-Down Modes.

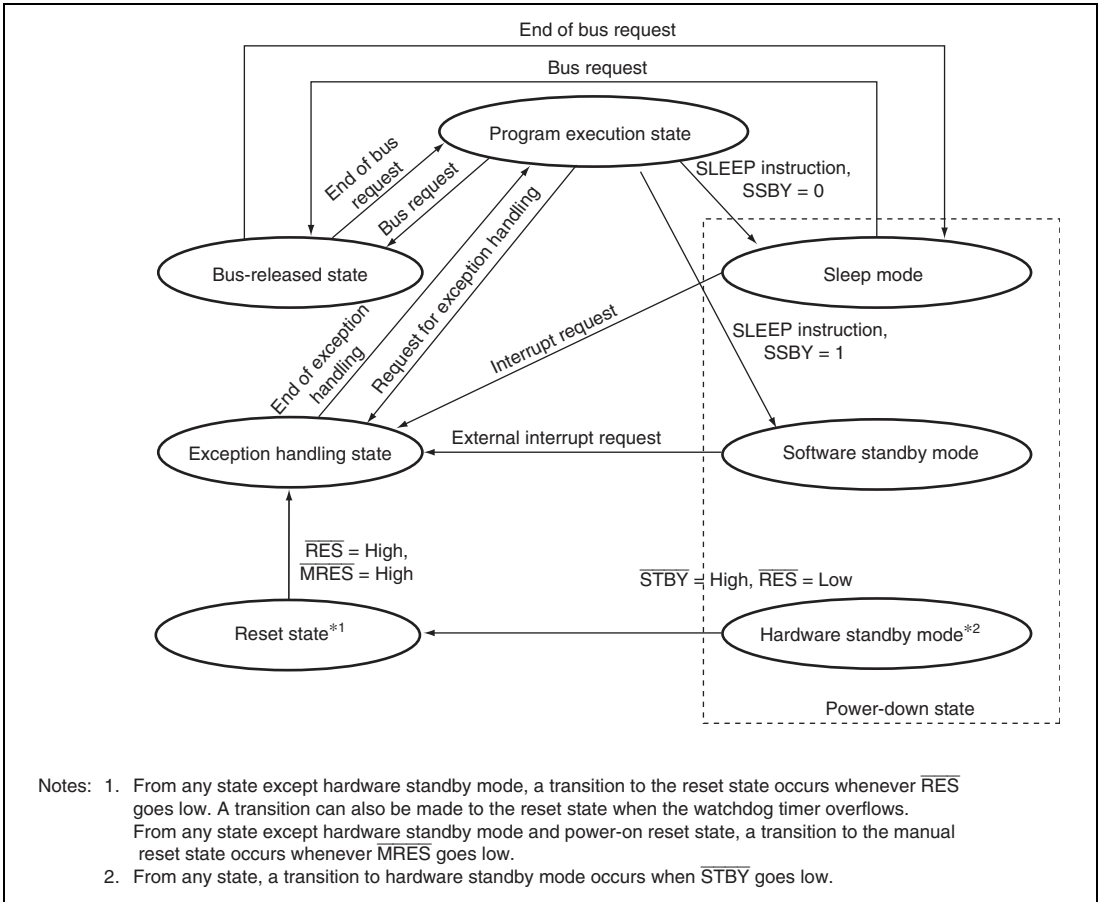


Figure 2.13 State Transitions

2.9 Usage Notes

2.9.1 Note on TAS Instruction Usage

Only register ER0, ER1, ER4, or ER5 should be used when using the TAS instruction. The TAS instruction is not generated by the Renesas Electronics H8S and H8/300 series C/C++ compilers. If the TAS instruction is used as a user-defined intrinsic function, ensure that only register ER0, ER1, ER4, or ER5 is used.

2.9.2 STM/LTM Instruction Usage

With the STM or LDM instruction, the ER7 register is used as the stack pointer, and thus cannot be used as a register that allows save (STM) or restore (LDM) operation.

With a single STM or LDM instruction, two to four registers can be saved or restored. The available registers are as follows:

For two registers: ER0 and ER1, ER2 and ER3, or ER4 and ER5

For three registers: ER0 to ER2, or ER4 to ER6

For four registers: ER0 to ER3

For the Renesas Electronics H8S or H8/300 Series C/C++ Compiler, the STM/LDM instruction including ER7 is not created.

2.9.3 Note on Bit Manipulation Instructions

Using bit manipulation instructions on registers containing write-only bits can result in the bits that should have been manipulated not being manipulated as intended or in the wrong bits being manipulated.

Reading data from a register containing write-only bits may return fixed or undefined values. Consequently, bit manipulation instructions that use the read values to perform operations (BNOT, BTST, BAND, BIAND, BOR, BIOR, BXOR, BIXOR, BLD, and BILD) will not work properly.

In addition, bit manipulation instructions that write data following operations based on the data values read (BSET, BCLR, BNOT, BST, and BIST) may change the values of bits unrelated to the intended bit manipulation. Therefore, caution is necessary when using bit manipulation instructions on registers containing write-only bits.

The instructions BSET, BCLR, BNOT, BST, and BIST perform the following operations in the order shown:

1. Read data in byte units
2. Perform bit manipulation on the read data according to the instruction
3. Write data in byte units

Example: Using the BCLR instruction to clear pin 14 only of P1DDR for port 1

P1DDR is an 8-bit register that contains write-only bits. It is used to specify the I/O setting of the individual pins in port 1. Reading produces invalid data. Attempting to read from P1DDR returns undefined values.

In this example, the BCLR instruction is used to set pin 14 as an input port. Let us assume that pins 17 to 14 are presently set as output pins and pins 13 to 10 are set as input pins. Thus, the value of P1DDR is initially H'F0.

| | P17 | P16 | P15 | P14 | P13 | P12 | P11 | P10 |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I/O | Output | Output | Output | Output | Input | Input | Input | Input |
| P1DDR | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

To change pin 14 from an output pin to an input pin, the value of bit 4 in P1DDR must be changed from 1 to 0 (H'F0 to H'E0). Now assume that the BCLR instruction is used to clear bit 4 in P1DDR to 0.

```
BCLR    #4, @P1DDR
```

However, using the above bit manipulation instruction on the write-only register P1DDR can cause problems, as described below.

The BCLR instruction first reads data from P1DDR in byte units, but in this case the read values are undefined. These undefined values can be 0 or 1 for each bit in the register, but there is no way of telling which. Since all of the bits in P1DDR are write-only, undefined values are returned for all of the bits when the register is read. In this example the value of P1DDR is H'F0, but we will assume that the value returned when the register was read is H'F8, which would give bit 3 a value of 1.

| | P17 | P16 | P15 | P14 | P13 | P12 | P11 | P10 |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I/O | Output | Output | Output | Output | Input | Input | Input | Input |
| P1DDR | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Read value | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

The BCLR instruction performs bit manipulation on the read value, which is H'F8 in this example. It clears bit 4 to 0.

| | P17 | P16 | P15 | P14 | P13 | P12 | P11 | P10 |
|------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I/O | Output | Output | Output | Output | Input | Input | Input | Input |
| P1DDR | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| After bit manipulation | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Following bit manipulation the data is written to P1DDR and the BCLR instruction terminates.

| | P17 | P16 | P15 | P14 | P13 | P12 | P11 | P10 |
|-------------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|
| I/O | Output | Output | Output | Input | Output | Input | Input | Input |
| P1DDR | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Write value | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

The contents of P1DDR should have been overwritten with a value of H'E0, but in fact a value of H'E8 was written to the register. This changed pin 13, which should have been an input pin, to an output pin. In this example we assumed that pin 13 was read as 1. However, since the values returned for pins 17 to 10 are all undefined when read, there is the possibility that individual bit values could be changed from 0 to 1 or from 1 to 0. To prevent this from happening, the recommendations in section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits, should be followed when changing the values of registers containing write-only bits.

In addition, the BCLR instruction can be used to clear flags in internal I/O registers to 0. In such cases it is not necessary to read the relevant flag beforehand so long as it is clear that it has been set to 1 by an interrupt processing routine or the like.

2.9.4 Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits

Using data transfer instructions or bit manipulation instructions on registers containing write-only bits can result in undefined values being read. To prevent the reading of undefined values, the procedure described below should be used to access registers containing write-only bits.

In order to write to a register containing write-only bits, set aside a work area in memory (in on-chip RAM, for example) and write the data to be manipulated to it. After accessing and manipulating the data in the work area in memory, write the resulting data to the register containing write-only bits.

Figure 2.14 Example Flowchart of Method for Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits

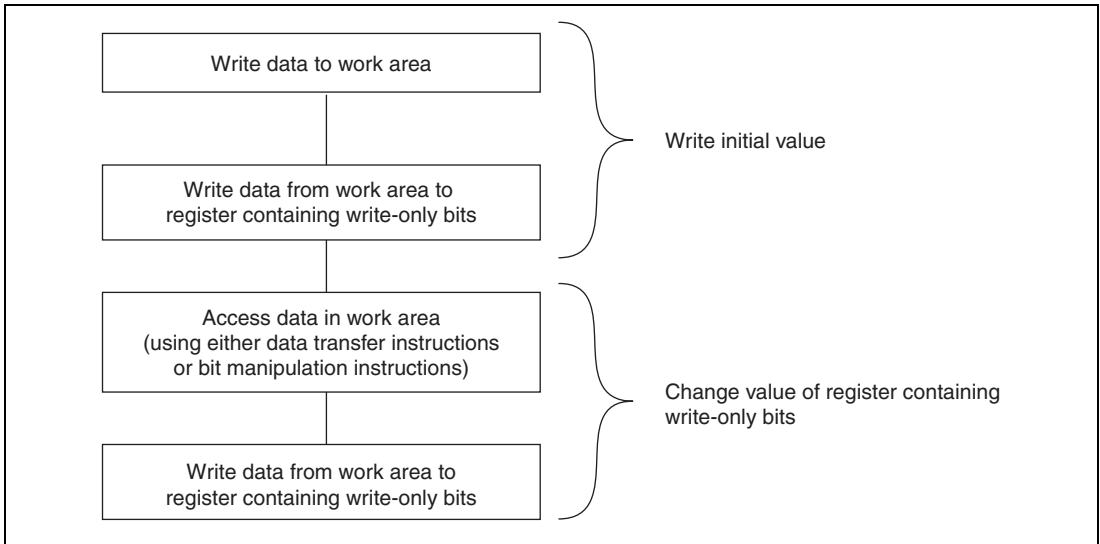


Figure 2.14 Flowchart of Method for Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits

Example: Clearing pin 14 only of P1DDR for port 1

P1DDR is an 8-bit register that contains write-only bits. It is used to specify the I/O setting of the individual pins in port 1. Reading produces invalid data. Attempting to read from P1DDR returns undefined values.

In this example, the BCLR instruction is used to set pin 14 as an input port. To start, the initial value H'F0 to be written to P1DDR is written ahead of time to the work area (RAM0) in memory.

```

MOV.B    #H'F0,  R0L
MOV.B    R0L,    @RAM0
MOV.B    R0L,    @P1DDR
  
```

| | P17 | P16 | P15 | P14 | P13 | P12 | P11 | P10 |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I/O | Output | Output | Output | Output | Input | Input | Input | Input |
| P1DDR | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| RAM0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

To change pin 14 from an output pin to an input pin, the value of bit 4 in P1DDR must be changed from 1 to 0 (H'F0 to H'E0). Here the BCLR instruction will be used to clear bit 4 in P1DDR to 0.

```
BCLR    #4,    @RAM0
```

| | P17 | P16 | P15 | P14 | P13 | P12 | P11 | P10 |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I/O | Output | Output | Output | Output | Input | Input | Input | Input |
| P1DDR | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| RAM0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Since RAM0 is a read/write area of memory, performing the above bit manipulation using the BCLR instruction causes only bit 4 in RAM0 to be cleared to 0. The value of RAM0 is then written to P1DDR.

```
MOV.B   @RAM0,  R0L
MOV.B   R0L,    @P1DDR
```

| | P17 | P16 | P15 | P14 | P13 | P12 | P11 | P10 |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| I/O | Output | Output | Output | Input | Input | Input | Input | Input |
| P1DDR | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| RAM0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

By using the above procedure to access registers containing write-only bits, it is possible to create programs that are not dependent on the type of instructions used.

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes

3.1 Operating Mode Selection

This LSI supports four operating modes (modes 7 to 4). These modes are depending on the setting of mode pins (MD2 to MD0). Modes 6 to 4 are extended modes in which external memory and external peripheral devices can be accessed. In extended modes, each area can be used as 8-bit or 16-bit address space according to the bus controller settings after program execution. In this case, if an area is specified as 16-bit access space, 16-bit bus mode is employed for all areas; while if an area is specified as 8-bit access space, 8-bit bus mode is employed for all areas. In mode 7, external addresses cannot be used. Do not change the mode pin settings during operation.

Table 3.1 MCU Operating Mode Selection

| MCU Operating Mode | MD2 | MD1 | MD0 | CPU Operating Mode | Description | On-Chip ROM | External Data Bus | |
|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|------------------|
| | | | | | | | Initial Value | Maximum Value |
| 4 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Advanced mode | On-chip ROM disabled, extended mode | Disabled | 16 bits | 16 bits |
| 5 | 1 | 0 | 1 | Advanced mode | On-chip ROM disabled, extended mode | Disabled | 8 bits | 16 bits |
| 6 | 1 | 1 | 0 | Advanced mode | On-chip ROM enabled, extended mode | Enabled | 8 bits | 16 bits |
| 7* | 1 | 1 | 1 | Advanced mode | Single-chip mode | Enabled | — | — |

Note: * The following applies to the use of mode 7.

(1) H8S/2215

The USB cannot be used in mode 7.

(2) H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T or H8S/2215C

Development work using the E6000 emulator:

The USB cannot be used in mode 7.

Development work using the on-chip (E10A-USB) emulator:

The USB can be used in mode 7.

See section 3.3.4, Mode 7, for details.

3.2 Register Descriptions

The following registers are related to the operating mode.

- Mode control register (MDCR)
- System control register (SYSCR)

3.2.1 Mode Control Register (MDCR)

MDCR is used to monitor the current operating mode of this LSI.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | — | 1 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 1 and cannot be modified. |
| 6 to 3 | — | All 0 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | MDS2 | —* | R | Mode select 2 to 0 |
| 1 | MDS1 | —* | R | These bits indicate the input levels at pins MD2 to MD0 (the current operating mode). Bits MDS2 to MDS0 correspond to MD2 to MD0. MDS2 to MDS0 are read-only bits and they cannot be written to. The mode pin (MD2 to MD0) input levels are latched into these bits when MDCR is read. These latches are canceled by a power-on reset, but maintained at manual reset. |
| 0 | MDS0 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the MD2 to MD0 pin settings.

3.2.2 System Control Register (SYSCR)

SYSCR is used to select the interrupt control mode and the detected edge for NMI, select the MRES input pin enable or disable, and enables or disables on-chip RAM.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | — | 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 6 | — | 0 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | INTM1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the control mode of the interrupt controller. For details of the interrupt control modes, see section 5.6, Interrupt Control Modes and Interrupt Operation. 00: Interrupt control mode 0 01: Setting prohibited 10: Interrupt control mode 2 11: Setting prohibited |
| 4 | INTM0 | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | NMIEG | 0 | R/W | NMI Edge Select Selects the valid edge of the NMI interrupt input. 0: An interrupt is requested at the falling edge of NMI input 1: An interrupt is requested at the rising edge of NMI input |
| 2 | MRESE | 0 | R/W | Manual reset Select Enables or disables the $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin input. 0: The $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin input (manual reset) is disabled 1: The $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin input (manual reset) is enabled The MRES input pin can be used. |
| 1 | — | 0 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 0 | RAME | 1 | R/W | RAM Enable Enables or disables the on-chip RAM. The RAME bit is initialized when the reset status is released. 0: On-chip RAM is disabled 1: On-chip RAM is enabled |

3.3 Operating Mode Descriptions

3.3.1 Mode 4

The CPU can access a 16-Mbyte address space in advanced mode. The on-chip ROM is disabled.

Pins P13 to P10, and ports A, B, and C function as an address bus, ports D and E function as a data bus, and part of port F carries bus control signals.

Pins P13 to P11 function as input ports immediately after a reset. Pin 10 and ports A and B function as address (A20 to A8) outputs immediately after a reset. Address (A23 to A21) output can be enabled or disabled by bits AE3 to AE0 in the pin function control register (PFCR) regardless of the corresponding data direction register (DDR) values. Pins for which address output is disabled among pins P13 to P10 and in ports A and B become port outputs when the corresponding DDR bits are set to 1.

Port C always has an address (A7 to A0) output function.

The initial bus mode after a reset is 16 bits, with 16-bit access to all areas. However, note that if 8-bit access is designated by the bus controller for all areas, the bus mode switches to 8 bits.

3.3.2 Mode 5

The CPU can access a 16-Mbyte address space in advanced mode. The on-chip ROM is disabled.

Pins P13 to P10, and ports A, B, and C function as an address bus, ports D and E function as a data bus, and part of port F carries bus control signals.

Pins P13 to P11 function as input ports immediately after a reset. Pin 10 and ports A and B function as address (A20 to A8) outputs immediately after a reset. Address (A23 to A21) output can be enabled or disabled by bits AE3 to AE0 in the pin function control register (PFCR) regardless of the corresponding data direction register (DDR) values. Pins for which address output is disabled among pins P13 to P10 and in ports A and B become port outputs when the corresponding DDR bits are set to 1.

Port C always has an address (A7 to A0) output function.

The initial bus mode after a reset is 8 bits, with 8-bit access to all areas. However, note that if 16-bit access is designated by the bus controller for any area, the bus mode switches to 16 bits and port E becomes a data bus.

3.3.3 Mode 6

The CPU can access a 16-Mbyte address space in advanced mode. The on-chip ROM is enabled.

Pins P13 to P10, and ports A, B and C function as input ports immediately after a reset. Address (A23 to A8) output can be enabled or disabled by bits AE3 to AE0 in the pin function control register (PFCR) regardless of the corresponding data direction register (DDR) values. Pins for which address output is disabled among pins P13 to P10 and in ports A and B become port outputs when the corresponding DDR bits are set to 1.

Port C is an input port immediately after a reset. Addresses A7 to A0 are output by setting the corresponding DDR bits to 1.

Ports D and E function as a data bus, and part of port F carries data bus signals.

The initial bus mode after a reset is 8 bits, with 8-bit access to all areas. However, note that if 16-bit access is designated by the bus controller for any area, the bus mode switches to 16 bits and port E becomes a data bus.

3.3.4 Mode 7

The CPU can access a 16-Mbyte address space in advanced mode. The on-chip ROM is enabled, but external addresses cannot be accessed.

All I/O ports are available for use as input-output ports.

In addition, the USB is not supported in some cases due to development tool issues, as summarized in table 3.2.

Table 3.2 USB Support in Mode 7

| Development Tool | H8S/2215 | H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T or H8S/2215C |
|------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|
| E6000 | × | × |
| E10A-USB | —* | ○ |

Note: * The H8S/2215 does not have an on-chip emulator function.

3.3.5 Pin Functions

The pin functions of ports 1, and A to F vary depending on the operating mode. Table 3.3 shows the functions in modes 4 to 7.

Table 3.3 Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode

| Port | | Mode 4 | Mode 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7* ¹ |
|--------|------------|--------|--------|--------|----------------------|
| Port 1 | P13 to P11 | P*/A | P*/A | P*/A | P |
| | P10 | P/A* | P/A* | P*/A | P |
| Port A | PA3 to PA0 | P/A* | P/A* | P*/A | P |
| Port B | | P/A* | P/A* | P*/A | P |
| Port C | | A | A | P*/A | P |
| Port D | | D | D | D | P |
| Port E | | P/D* | P*/D | P*/D | P |
| Port F | PF7 | P/C* | P/C* | P/C* | P*/C |
| | PF6 to PF4 | C | C | C | P |
| | PF3 | P/C* | P*/C | P*/C | |
| | PF2 to PF0 | P*/C | P*/C | P*/C | |

Legend:

P: I/O port

A: Address bus output

D: Data bus I/O

C: Control signals, clock I/O

*: After reset

Note: 1. The following applies to the use of mode 7.

(1) H8S/2215

The USB cannot be used in mode 7.

(2) H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T or H8S/2215C

Development work using the E6000 emulator:

The USB cannot be used in mode 7.

Development work using the on-chip (E10A-USB) emulator:

The USB can be used in mode 7.

See section 3.3.4, Mode 7, for details.

3.4 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode

Figures 3.1 to 3.4 show the memory map in each operating mode for HD64F2215, HD64F2215U, HD6432215B, and HD6432215C.

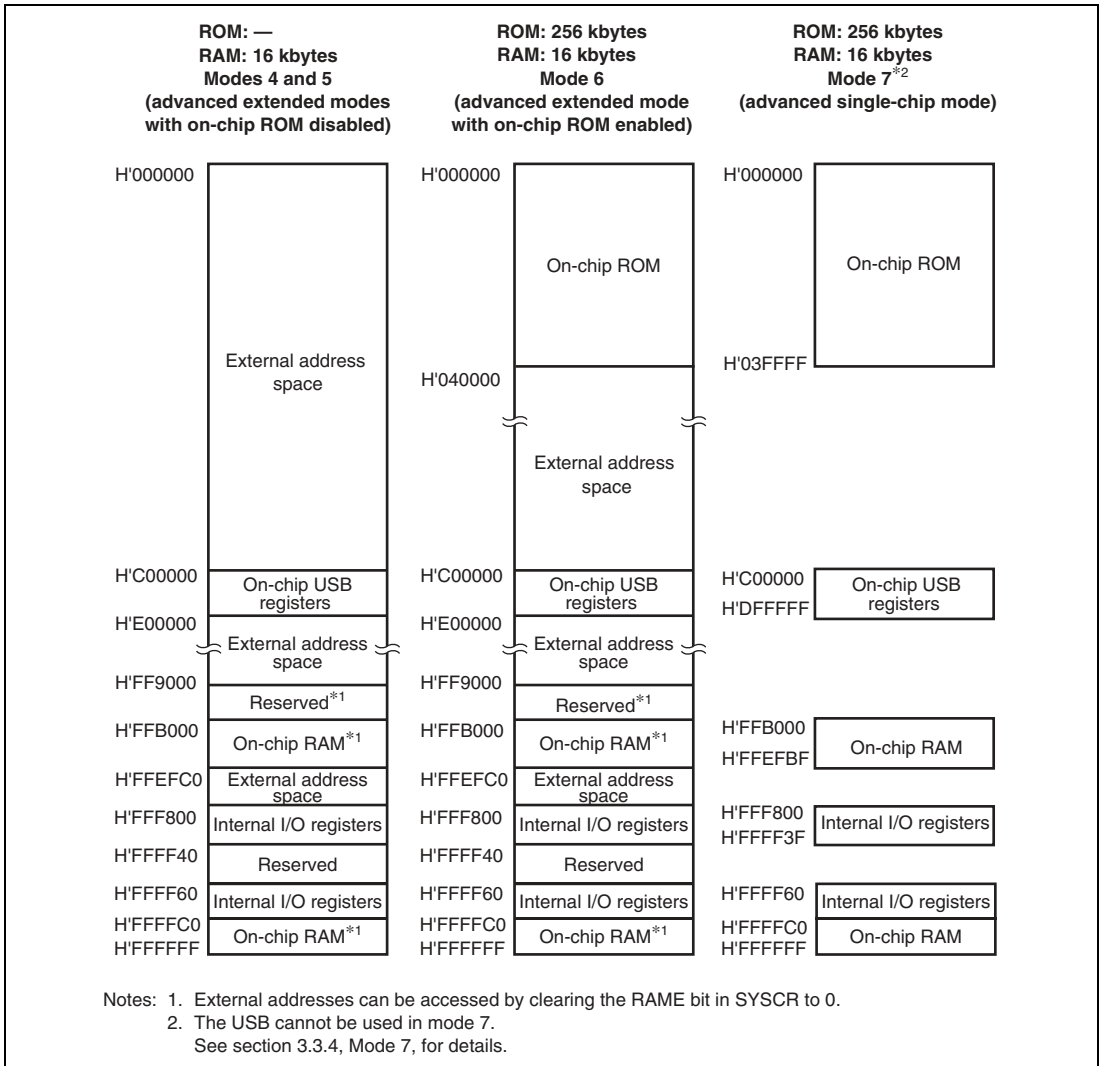


Figure 3.1 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD64F2215 and HD64F2215U

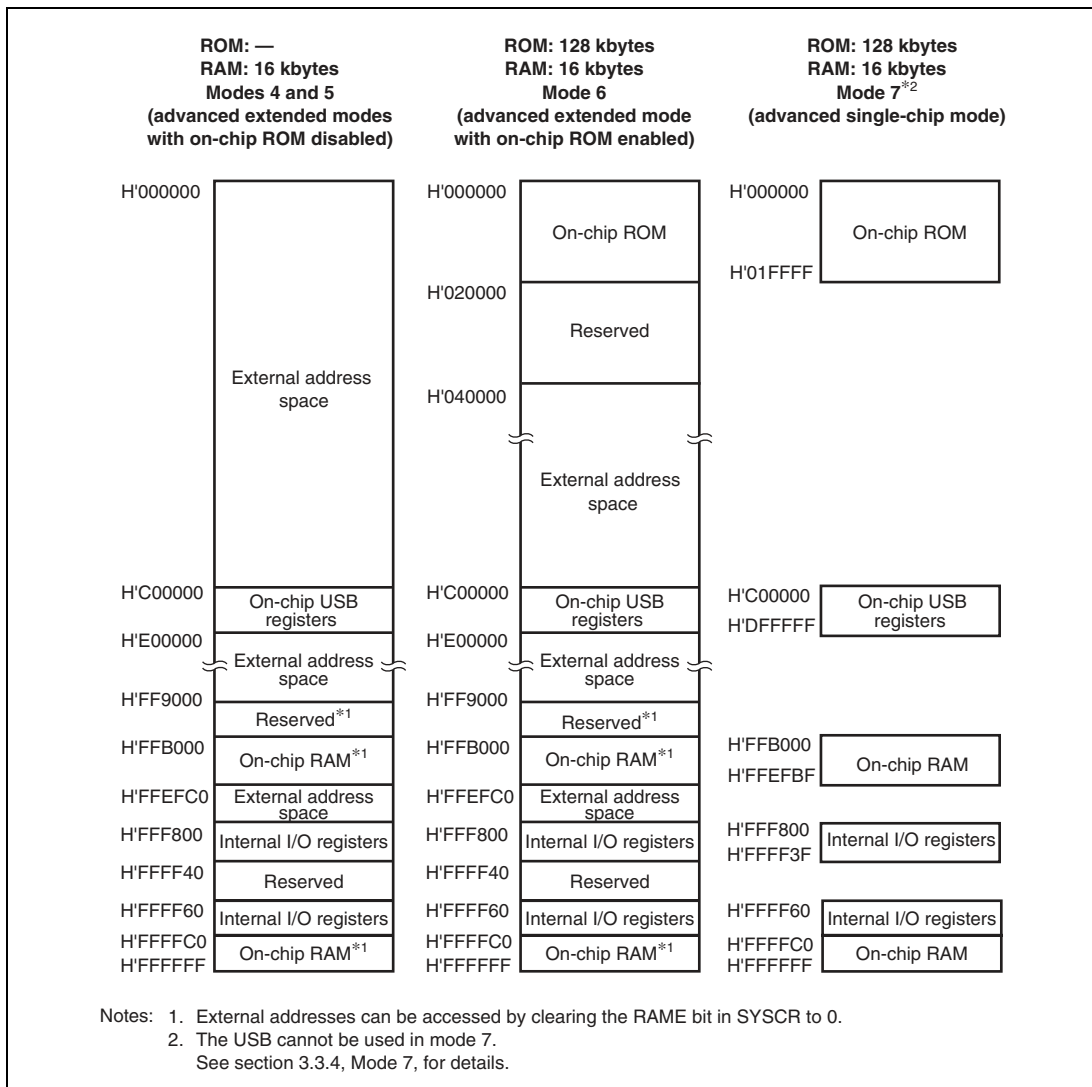


Figure 3.2 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD6432215B

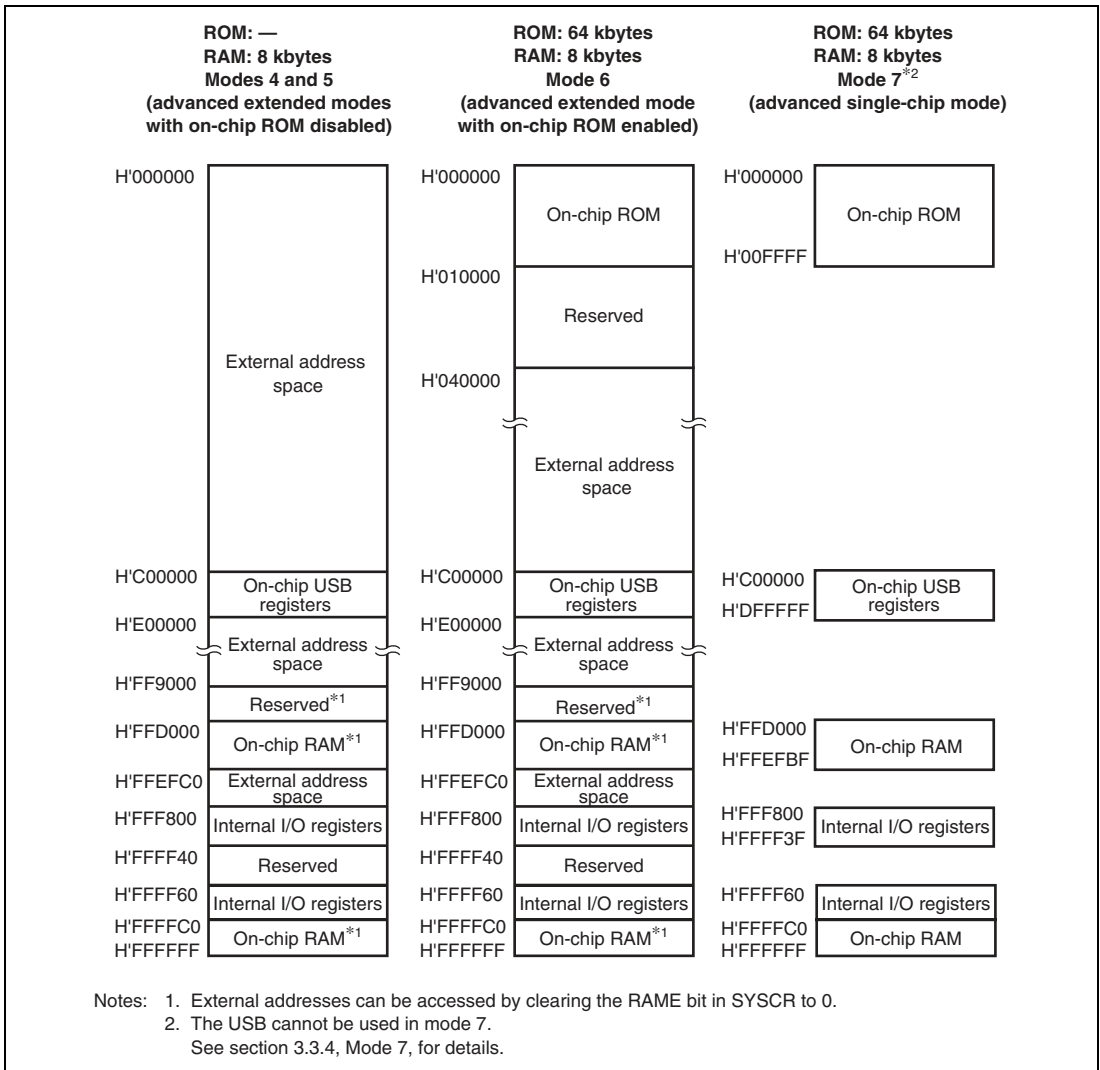


Figure 3.3 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD6432215C

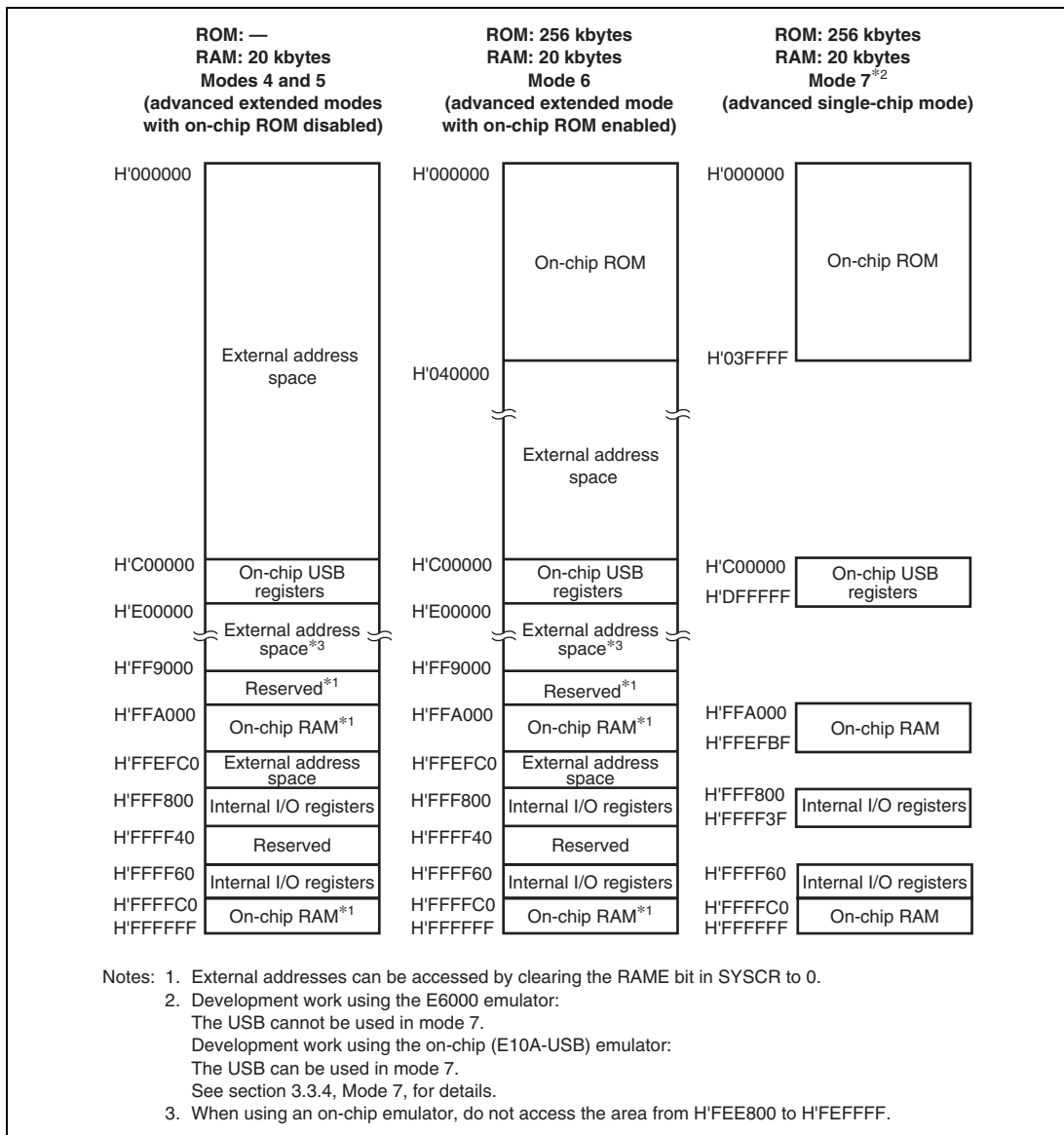


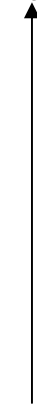
Figure 3.4 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode for HD64F2215R, HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215T, HD64F2215TU and HD64F2215CU

Section 4 Exception Handling

4.1 Exception Handling Types and Priority

As table 4.1 indicates, exception handling may be caused by a reset, trace, trap instruction, or interrupt. Exception handling is prioritized as shown in table 4.1. If two or more exceptions occur simultaneously, they are accepted and processed in order of priority. Exception sources, the stack structure, and operation of the CPU vary depending on the interrupt control mode. For details on the interrupt control mode, refer to section 5, Interrupt Controller.

Table 4.1 Exception Types and Priority

| Priority | Exception Type | Start of Exception Handling |
|--|--------------------------|---|
| High  | Reset | Starts immediately after a low-to-high transition at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin, or when the watchdog timer overflows. The CPU enters the reset state when the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is low. The CPU enters the manual reset state when the $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin is low. |
| | Trace | Starts when execution of the current instruction or exception handling ends, if the trace (T) bit in the EXR is set to 1. This is enabled only in trace interrupt control mode 2. Trace exception processing is not performed after RTE instruction execution. |
| | Interrupt | Starts when execution of the current instruction or exception handling ends, if an interrupt request has been issued. Note that after executing the ANDC, ORC, XORC, or LDC instruction or at the completion of reset exception processing, no interrupt is detected. |
| | Trap instruction (TRAPA) | Started by execution of a trap instruction (TRAPA). Trap exception processing is always accepted in program execution state. |
| Low | | |

4.2 Exception Sources and Exception Vector Table

Different vector addresses are assigned to different exception sources. Table 4.2 lists the exception sources and their vector addresses. Since the usable modes differ depending on the product, for details on each product, refer to section 3, MCU Operating Modes.

Table 4.2 Exception Handling Vector Table

| Exception Source | Vector Number | Vector Address ^{*1} | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| | | Normal Mode ^{*2} | Advanced Mode | |
| Power-on reset | 0 | H'0000 to H'0001 | H'0000 to H'0003 | |
| Manual reset | 1 | H'0002 to H'0003 | H'0004 to H'0007 | |
| Reserved for system use | 2 | H'0004 to H'0005 | H'0008 to H'000B | |
| | 3 | H'0006 to H'0007 | H'000C to H'000F | |
| | 4 | H'0008 to H'0019 | H'0010 to H'0013 | |
| Trace | 5 | H'000A to H'000B | H'0014 to H'0017 | |
| Direct transitions ^{*2} | 6 | H'000C to H'000D | H'0018 to H'001B | |
| External interrupt (NMI) | 7 | H'000E to H'000F | H'001C to H'001F | |
| Trap instruction | #0 | 8 | H'0010 to H'0011 | H'0020 to H'0023 |
| | #1 | 9 | H'0012 to H'0013 | H'0024 to H'0027 |
| | #2 | 10 | H'0014 to H'0015 | H'0028 to H'002B |
| | #3 | 11 | H'0016 to H'0017 | H'002C to H'002F |
| Reserved for system use | 12 | H'0018 to H'0019 | H'0030 to H'0033 | |
| | 13 | H'001A to H'001B | H'0034 to H'0037 | |
| | 14 | H'001C to H'001D | H'0038 to H'003B | |
| | 15 | H'001E to H'001F | H'003C to H'003F | |
| External interrupt | IRQ0 | 16 | H'0020 to H'0021 | H'0040 to H'0043 |
| External interrupt | IRQ1 | 17 | H'0022 to H'0023 | H'0044 to H'0047 |
| External interrupt | IRQ2 | 18 | H'0024 to H'0025 | H'0048 to H'004B |
| External interrupt | IRQ3 | 19 | H'0026 to H'0027 | H'004C to H'004F |
| External interrupt | IRQ4 | 20 | H'0028 to H'0029 | H'0050 to H'0053 |
| External interrupt | IRQ5 | 21 | H'002A to H'002B | H'0054 to H'0057 |
| USB interrupt | IRQ6 | 22 | H'002C to H'002D | H'0058 to H'005B |
| External interrupt | IRQ7 | 23 | H'002E to H'002F | H'005C to H'005F |
| Internal interrupt ^{*3} | 24 | H'0030 to H'0031 | H'0060 to H'0063 | |
| | 127 | H'00FE to H'00FF | H'01FC to H'01FF | |

Notes: 1. Lower 16 bits of the address.

2. Not available in this LSI.

3. For details of internal interrupt vectors, see section 5.5, Interrupt Exception Handling Vector Table.

4.3 Reset

A reset has the highest exception priority.

When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin goes low, all processing halts and this LSI enters the reset state. To ensure that this LSI is reset, hold the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin low for at least 20 ms at power-on.

A reset initializes the internal state of the CPU and the registers of on-chip peripheral modules.

This LSI can also be reset by overflow of the watchdog timer. For details, see section 12, Watchdog Timer (WDT).

Immediately after a reset, interrupt control mode 0 is set.

Note: $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ should be brought low level at power-on. For details, see section 14, Boundary Scan Function.

4.3.1 Reset Types

A reset can be of either of two types: a power-on reset or a manual reset. Reset types are shown in table 4.3. A power-on reset should be used when powering on.

The internal state of the CPU is initialized by either type of reset. A power-on reset also initializes all the registers in the on-chip peripheral modules, while a manual reset initializes all the registers in the on-chip peripheral modules except for the bus controller and I/O ports, which retain their previous states.

With a manual reset, since the on-chip peripheral modules are initialized, ports used as on-chip peripheral module I/O pins are switched to I/O ports controlled by DDR and DR.

Table 4.3 Reset Types

| Type | Reset Transition Condition | | Internal State | |
|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|--|
| | $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ | $\overline{\text{RES}}$ | CPU | On-Chip Peripheral Modules |
| Power-on reset | × | Low | Initialized | Initialized |
| Manual reset | Low | High | Initialized | Initialized, except for bus controller and I/O ports |

Legend:

×: Don't care

A reset caused by the watchdog timer can also be of either of two types: a power-on reset or a manual reset.

When the $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin is used, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin input must be enabled by setting the MRESE bit to 1 in SYSCR.

4.3.2 Reset Exception Handling

When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin goes high after being held low for the necessary time, this LSI starts reset exception handling as follows:

1. The internal state of the CPU and the registers of the on-chip peripheral modules are initialized, the T bit is cleared to 0 in EXR, and the I bit is set to 1 in EXR and CCR.
2. The reset exception handling vector address is read and transferred to the PC, and program execution starts from the address indicated by the PC.

Figures 4.1 and 4.2 show examples of the reset sequence.

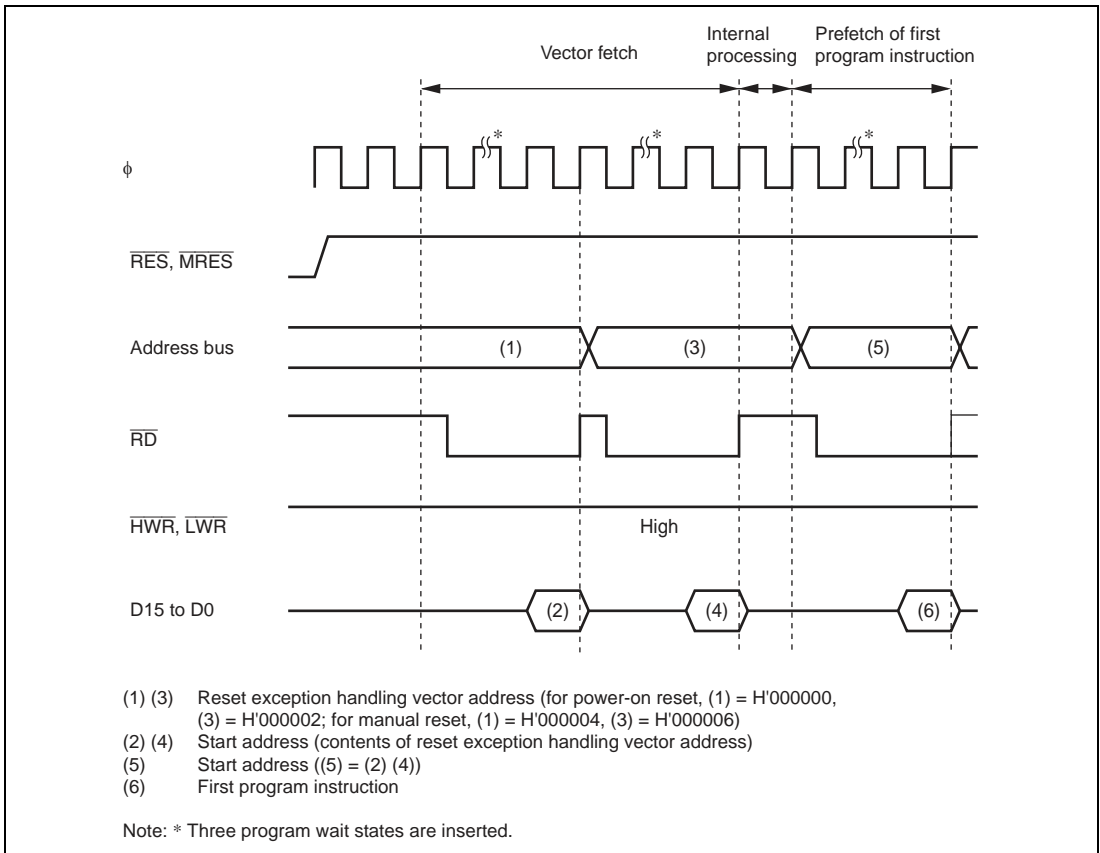


Figure 4.1 Reset Sequence (Mode 4)

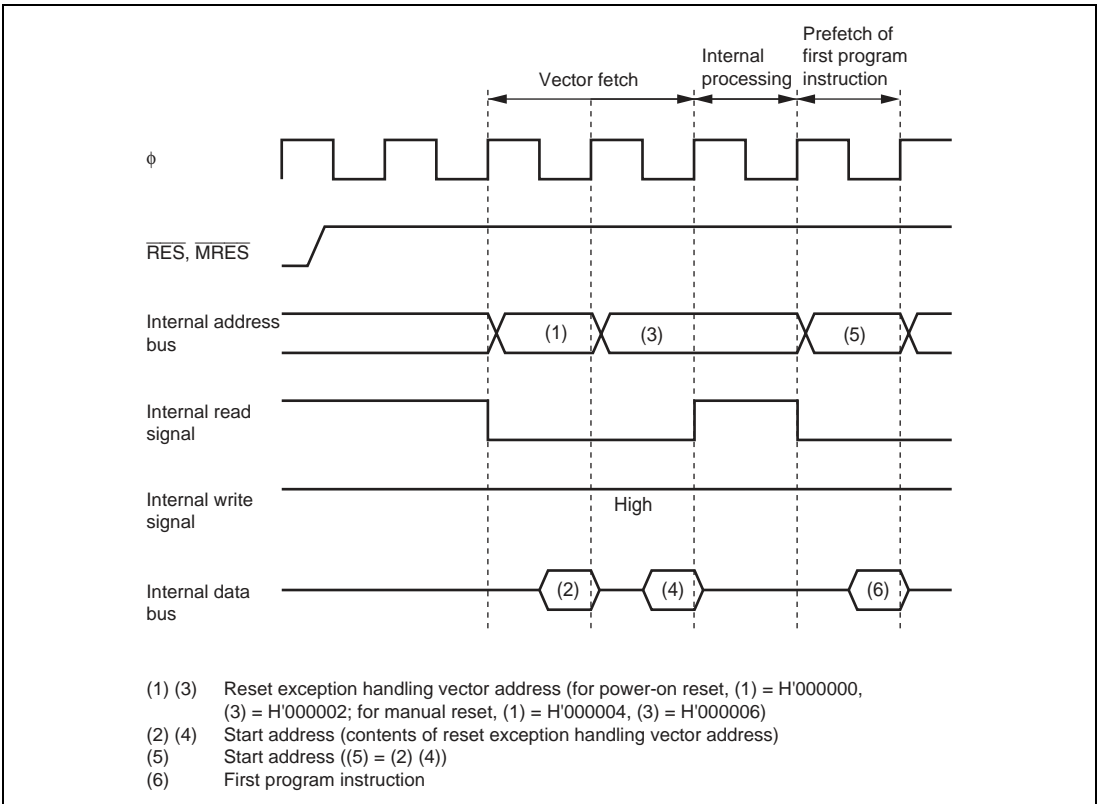


Figure 4.2 Reset Sequence (Modes 6, 7)

4.3.3 Interrupts after Reset

If an interrupt is accepted after a reset but before the stack pointer (SP) is initialized, the PC and CCR will not be saved correctly, leading to a program crash. To prevent this, all interrupt requests, including NMI, are disabled immediately after a reset. Since the first instruction of a program is always executed immediately after the reset state ends, make sure that this instruction initializes the stack pointer (example: `MOV.L #xx SP`).

4.3.4 State of On-Chip Peripheral Modules after Reset Release

After reset release, MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC are initialized to H'3F, H'FF, and H'FF, respectively, and all modules except the DMAC and DTC enter module stop mode. Consequently, on-chip peripheral module registers cannot be read from or written to. Register reading and writing is enabled when module stop mode is exited.

4.4 Traces

Traces are enabled in interrupt control mode 2. Trace mode is not activated in interrupt control mode 0, irrespective of the state of the T bit. For details of interrupt control modes, see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

If the T bit in EXR is set to 1, trace mode is activated. In trace mode, a trace exception occurs on completion of each instruction. Trace mode is not affected by interrupt masking. Table 4.4 shows the state of CCR and EXR after execution of trace exception handling. Trace mode is canceled by clearing the T bit in EXR to 0. The T bit saved on the stack retains its value of 1, and when control is returned from the trace exception handling routine by the RTE instruction, trace mode resumes.

Trace exception handling is not carried out after execution of the RTE instruction.

Interrupts are accepted even within the trace exception handling routine.

Table 4.4 Status of CCR and EXR after Trace Exception Handling

| Interrupt Control Mode | CCR | | EXR | |
|------------------------|--|----|----------|---|
| | I | UI | I2 to I0 | T |
| 0 | Trace exception handling cannot be used. | | | |
| 2 | 1 | — | — | 0 |

Legend:

1: Set to 1

0: Cleared to 0

—: Retains value prior to execution.

4.5 Interrupts

Interrupts are controlled by the interrupt controller. The interrupt controller has two interrupt control modes and can assign interrupts other than NMI to eight priority/mask levels to enable multiplexed interrupt control. The source to start interrupt exception handling and the vector address differ depending on the product. For details, refer to section 5, Interrupt Controller.

The interrupt exception handling is as follows:

1. The values in the program counter (PC), condition code register (CCR), and extended control register (EXR) are saved in the stack.
2. The interrupt mask bit is updated and the T bit is cleared.
3. A vector address corresponding to the interrupt source is generated, the start address is loaded from the vector table to the PC, and program execution starts from that address.

4.6 Trap Instruction

Trap instruction exception handling starts when a TRAPA instruction is executed. Trap instruction exception handling can be executed at all times in the program execution state.

The trap instruction exception handling is as follows:

1. The values in the program counter (PC), condition code register (CCR), and extended control register (EXR) are saved in the stack.
2. The interrupt mask bit is updated and the T bit is cleared.
3. A vector address corresponding to the interrupt source is generated, the start address is loaded from the vector table to the PC, and program execution starts from that address.

The TRAPA instruction fetches a start address from a vector table entry corresponding to a vector number from 0 to 3, as specified in the instruction code.

Table 4.5 shows the status of CCR and EXR after execution of trap instruction exception handling.

Table 4.5 Status of CCR and EXR after Trap Instruction Exception Handling

| Interrupt Control Mode | CCR | | EXR | |
|------------------------|-----|----|----------|---|
| | I | UI | I2 to I0 | T |
| 0 | 1 | — | — | — |
| 2 | 1 | — | — | 0 |

Legend:

1: Set to 1

0: Cleared to 0

—: Retains value prior to execution.

4.7 Stack Status after Exception Handling

Figure 4.3 shows the stack after completion of trap instruction exception handling and interrupt exception handling.

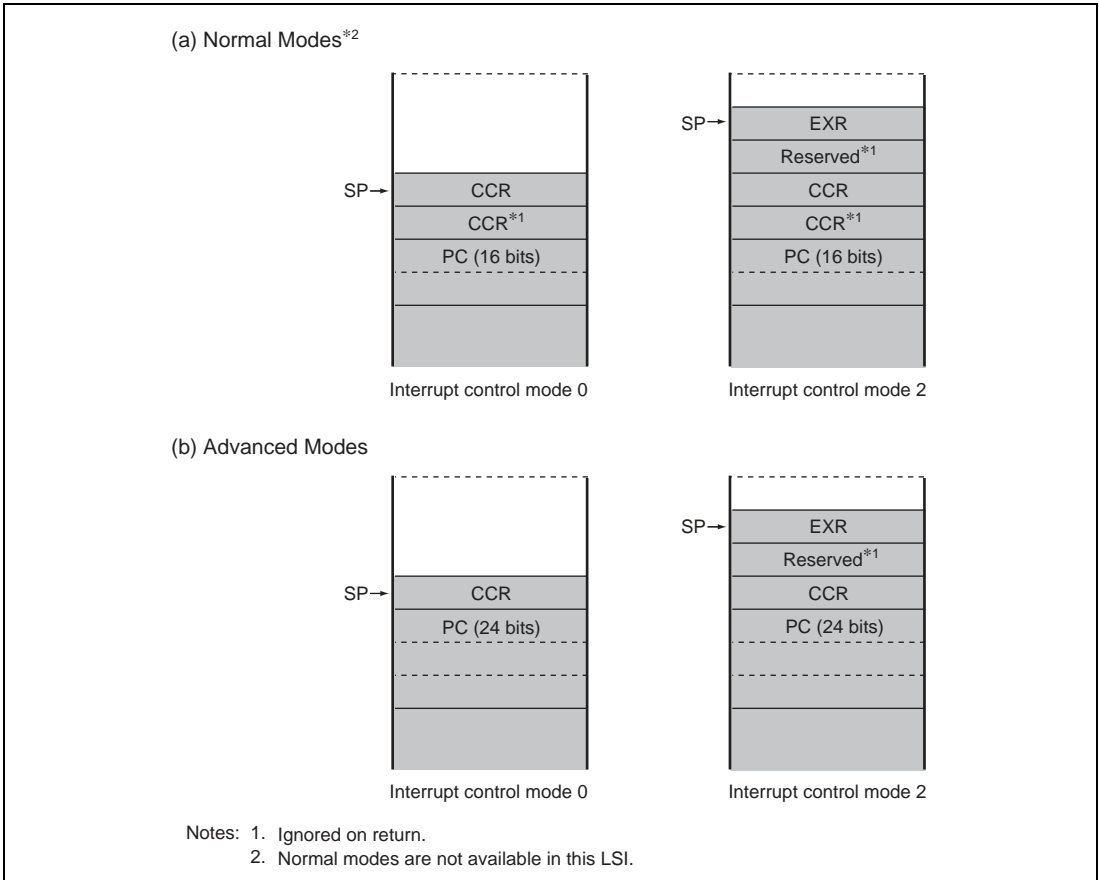


Figure 4.3 Stack Status after Exception Handling

4.8 Notes on Use of the Stack

When accessing word data or longword data, this LSI assumes that the lowest address bit is 0. The stack should always be accessed by word transfer instruction or longword transfer instruction, and the value of the stack pointer (SP: ER7) should always be kept even. Use the following instructions to save registers:

```
PUSH.W Rn (or MOV.W Rn, @-SP)
PUSH.L ERn (or MOV.L ERn, @-SP)
```

Use the following instructions to restore registers:

```
POP.W Rn (or MOV.W @SP+, Rn)
POP.L ERn (or MOV.L @SP+, ERn)
```

Setting SP to an odd value may lead to a malfunction. Figure 4.4 shows an example of what happens when the SP value is odd.

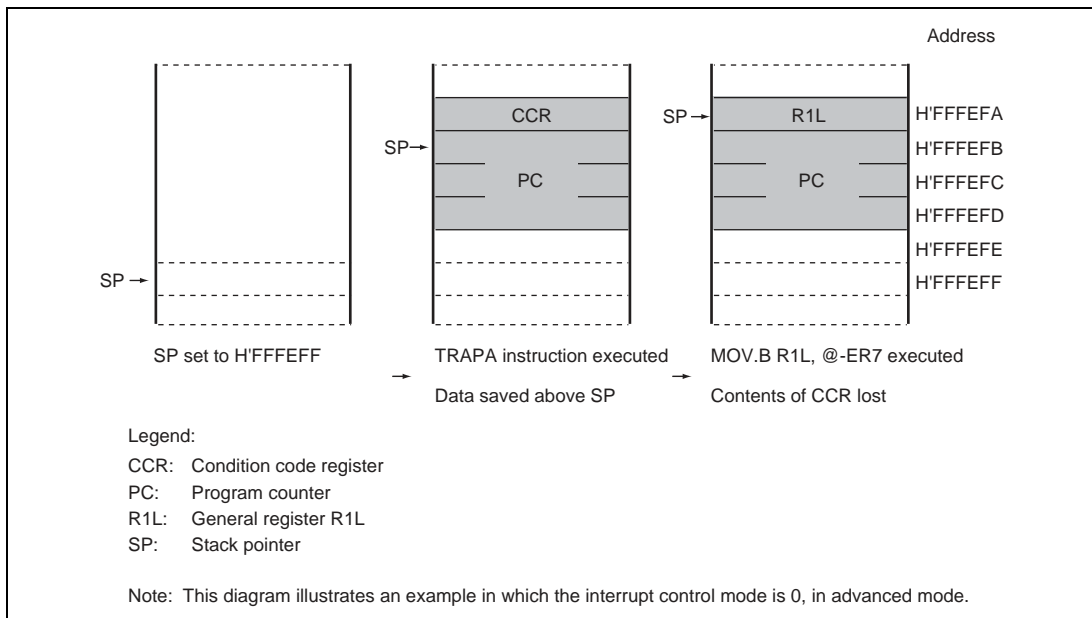


Figure 4.4 Operation when SP Value Is Odd

Section 5 Interrupt Controller

5.1 Features

- Two interrupt control modes
 - Any of two interrupt control modes can be set by means of the INTM1 and INTM0 bits in the system control register (SYSCR).
- Priorities settable with IPR
 - An interrupt priority register (IPR) is provided for setting interrupt priorities. Eight priority levels can be set for each module for all interrupts except NMI. NMI is assigned the highest priority level of 8, and can be accepted at all times.
- Independent vector addresses
 - All interrupt sources are assigned independent vector addresses, making it unnecessary for the source to be identified in the interrupt handling routine.
- Eight external interrupts (NMI, $\overline{\text{IRQ}}7$, and $\overline{\text{IRQ}}5$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ}}0$)
 - NMI is the highest-priority interrupt, and is accepted at all times. Rising edge or falling edge can be selected for NMI. Falling edge, rising edge, or both edge detection, or level sensing, can be selected for $\overline{\text{IRQ}}7$ and $\overline{\text{IRQ}}5$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ}}0$. $\overline{\text{IRQ}}6$ is an interrupt only for the on-chip USB.
- DTC and DMAC control
 - DTC or DMAC activation is performed by means of interrupts.

A block diagram of the interrupt controller is shown in figure 5.1.

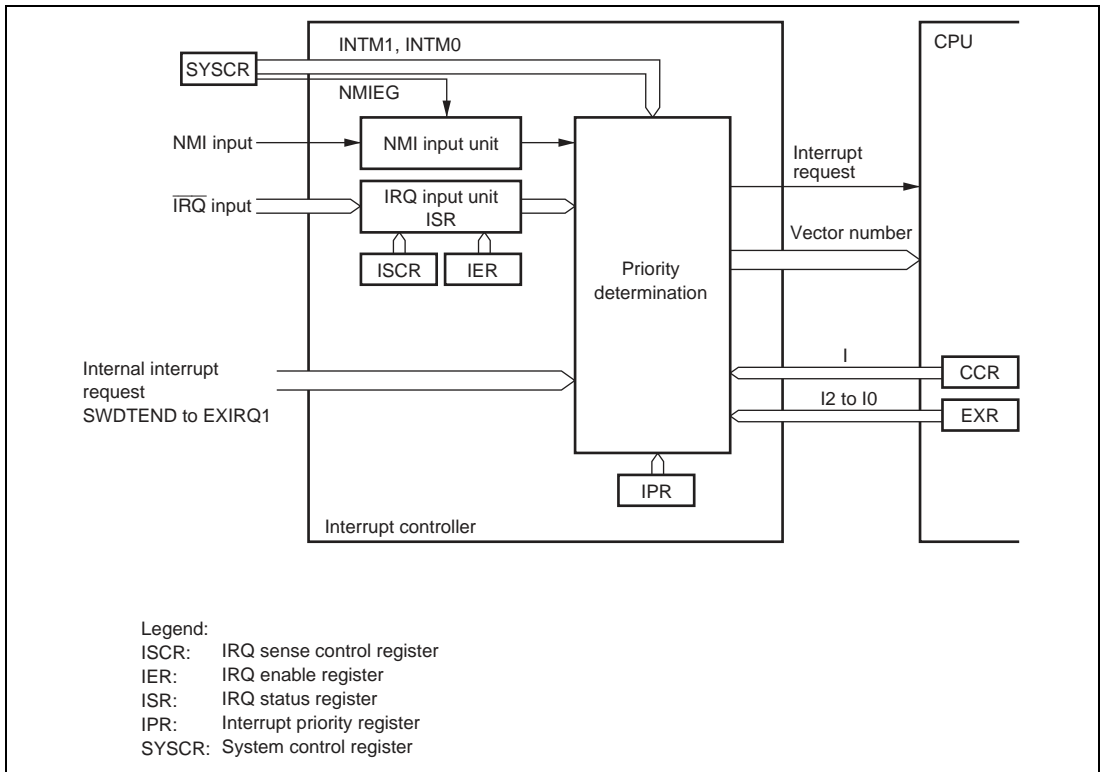


Figure 5.1 Block Diagram of Interrupt Controller

5.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 5.1 summarizes the pins of the interrupt controller.

Table 5.1 Pin Configuration

| Name | I/O | Function |
|--------------------------|------------|---|
| NMI | Input | Nonmaskable external interrupt Rising or falling edge can be selected |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ | Input | Maskable external interrupts |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ | Input | Rising, falling, or both edges, or level sensing, ($\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ is an interrupt signal only for the on-chip USB) can be selected |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ | Input | |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ | Input | |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ | Input | |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ | Input | |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ | Input | |

5.3 Register Descriptions

The interrupt controller has the following registers. For details on the system control register, refer to section 3.2.2, System Control Register (SYSCR).

- System control register (SYSCR)
- IRQ sense control register H (ISCRH)
- IRQ sense control register L (ISCR L)
- IRQ enable register (IER)
- IRQ status register (ISR)
- Interrupt priority register A (IPRA)
- Interrupt priority register B (IPRB)
- Interrupt priority register C (IPRC)
- Interrupt priority register D (IPRD)
- Interrupt priority register E (IPRE)
- Interrupt priority register F (IPRF)
- Interrupt priority register G (IPRG)
- Interrupt priority register I (IPRI)
- Interrupt priority register J (IPRJ)
- Interrupt priority register K (IPRK)
- Interrupt priority register M (IPRM)

5.3.1 Interrupt Priority Registers A to G, I to K, M (IPRA to IPRG, IPRI to IPRK, IPRM)

The IPR registers set priorities (levels 7 to 0) for interrupts other than NMI.

The correspondence between interrupt sources and IPR settings is shown in table 5.2. Setting a value in the range from H'0 to H'7 in the 3-bit groups of bits 6 to 4 and 2 to 0 sets the priority of the corresponding interrupt.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | — | 0 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 6 | IPR6 | 1 | R/W | Sets the priority of the corresponding interrupt source. |
| 5 | IPR5 | 1 | R/W | 000: Priority level 0 (Lowest) |
| 4 | IPR4 | 1 | R/W | 001: Priority level 1 010: Priority level 2 011: Priority level 3 100: Priority level 4 101: Priority level 5 110: Priority level 6 111: Priority level 7 (Highest) |
| 3 | — | 0 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | IPR2 | 1 | R/W | Sets the priority of the corresponding interrupt source. |
| 1 | IPR1 | 1 | R/W | 000: Priority level 0 (Lowest) |
| 0 | IPR0 | 1 | R/W | 001: Priority level 1 010: Priority level 2 011: Priority level 3 100: Priority level 4 101: Priority level 5 110: Priority level 6 111: Priority level 7 (Highest) |

5.3.2 IRQ Enable Register (IER)

IER controls enabling and disabling of interrupt requests IRQ7 to IRQ0.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | IRQ7E | 0 | R/W | IRQ7 Enable The IRQ7 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1. |
| 6 | IRQ6E | 0 | R/W | IRQ6 Enable* The IRQ6 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1. |
| 5 | IRQ5E | 0 | R/W | IRQ5 Enable The IRQ5 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1. |
| 4 | IRQ4E | 0 | R/W | IRQ4 Enable The IRQ4 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1. |
| 3 | IRQ3E | 0 | R/W | IRQ3 Enable The IRQ3 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1. |
| 2 | IRQ2E | 0 | R/W | IRQ2 Enable The IRQ2 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1. |
| 1 | IRQ1E | 0 | R/W | IRQ1 Enable The IRQ1 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1. |
| 0 | IRQ0E | 0 | R/W | IRQ0 Enable The IRQ0 interrupt request is enabled when this bit is 1. |

Note: * IRQ6 is an interrupt only for the on-chip USB.

5.3.3 IRQ Sense Control Registers H and L (ISCRH, ISCRL)

The ISCR registers select the source that generates an interrupt request at pins $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$, and $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 15 | IRQ7SCB | 0 | R/W | IRQ7 Sense Control B |
| 14 | IRQ7SCA | 0 | R/W | IRQ7 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input |
| 13 | IRQ6SCB | 0 | R/W | IRQ6* Sense Control B |
| 12 | IRQ6SCA | 0 | R/W | IRQ6* Sense Control A 00: Setting prohibited when using on-chip USB suspend or resume interrupt 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ input 1x: Setting prohibited |
| 11 | IRQ5SCB | 0 | R/W | IRQ5 Sense Control B |
| 10 | IRQ5SCA | 0 | R/W | IRQ5 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ input |

Legend:

x: Don't care

Note: * IRQ6 is an interrupt only for the on-chip USB.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 9 | IRQ4SCB | 0 | R/W | IRQ4 Sense Control B |
| 8 | IRQ4SCA | 0 | R/W | IRQ4 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ input |
| 7 | IRQ3SCB | 0 | R/W | IRQ3 Sense Control B |
| 6 | IRQ3SCA | 0 | R/W | IRQ3 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$ input |
| 5 | IRQ2SCB | 0 | R/W | IRQ2 Sense Control B |
| 4 | IRQ2SCA | 0 | R/W | IRQ2 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input |
| 3 | IRQ1SCB | 0 | R/W | IRQ1 Sense Control B |
| 2 | IRQ1SCA | 0 | R/W | IRQ1 Sense Control A 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input low level 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 1 | IRQ0SCB | 0 | R/W | IRQ0 Sense Control B |
| 0 | IRQ0SCA | 0 | R/W | IRQ0 Sense Control A |
| | | | | 00: Interrupt request generated at $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input low level |
| | | | | 01: Interrupt request generated at falling edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input |
| | | | | 10: Interrupt request generated at rising edge of $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input |
| | | | | 11: Interrupt request generated at both falling and rising edges of $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ input |

5.3.4 IRQ Status Register (ISR)

ISR indicates the status of IRQ7 to IRQ0 interrupt requests. Only 0 should be written to these bits for clearing the flag.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 7 | IRQ7F | 0 | R/(W)* | [Setting condition] |
| 6 | IRQ6F | 0 | R/(W)* | • When the interrupt source selected by the ISCR registers occurs |
| 5 | IRQ5F | 0 | R/(W)* | [Clearing conditions] |
| 4 | IRQ4F | 0 | R/(W)* | • Cleared by reading IRQnF flag when $\text{IRQnF} = 1$, then writing 0 to IRQnF flag |
| 3 | IRQ3F | 0 | R/(W)* | • When interrupt exception handling is executed when low-level detection is set and, $\overline{\text{IRQn}}$ input is high |
| 2 | IRQ2F | 0 | R/(W)* | • When interrupt exception handling is executed when falling, rising, or both-edge detection is set |
| 1 | IRQ1F | 0 | R/(W)* | • When the DTC is activated by an IRQn interrupt, and the DISEL bit in MRB of the DTC is cleared to 0 |
| 0 | IRQ0F | 0 | R/(W)* | |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear the flag.

5.4 Interrupt Sources

5.4.1 External Interrupts

There are eight external interrupts: NMI, IRQ7, and IRQ5 to IRQ0. These interrupts can be used to restore this LSI from software standby mode. IRQ6 is an interrupt only for the on-chip USB. However, IRQ6 is functionally same as IRQ7 restore this LSI from software standby mode. IRQ6 is functionally same as IRQ7 and IRQ5 to IRQ0.

NMI Interrupt: NMI is the highest-priority interrupt, and is always accepted by the CPU regardless of the interrupt control mode or the status of the CPU interrupt mask bits. The NMIEG bit in SYSCR can be used to select whether an interrupt is requested at a rising edge or a falling edge on the NMI pin.

IRQ7 to IRQ0 Interrupts: Interrupts IRQ7 to IRQ0 are requested by an input signal at pins $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$. Interrupts IRQ7 to IRQ0 have the following features:

- Using ISCR, it is possible to select whether an interrupt is generated by a low level, falling edge, rising edge, or both edges, at pins $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$
 - Enabling or disabling of interrupt requests IRQ7 to IRQ0 can be selected with IER.
 - The interrupt priority level can be set with IPR.
- The status of interrupt requests IRQ7 to IRQ0 is indicated in ISR. ISR flags can be cleared to 0 by software.

A block diagram of IRQ_n interrupts is shown in figure 5.2.

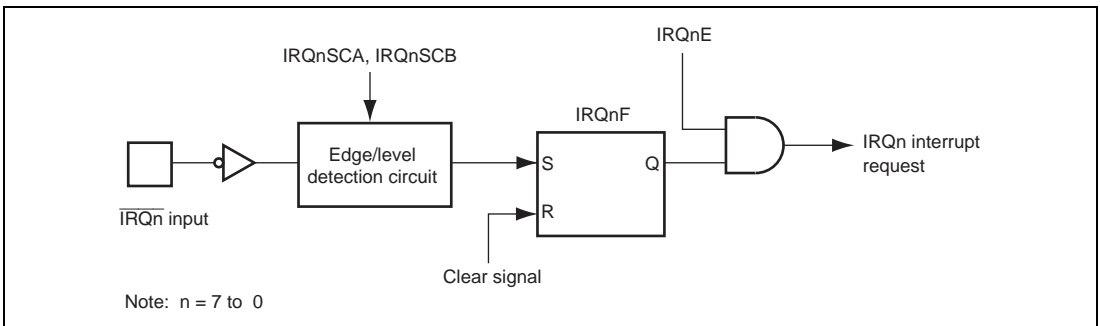


Figure 5.2 Block Diagram of IRQ_n Interrupts

The setting for IRQnF is shown in figure 5.3.

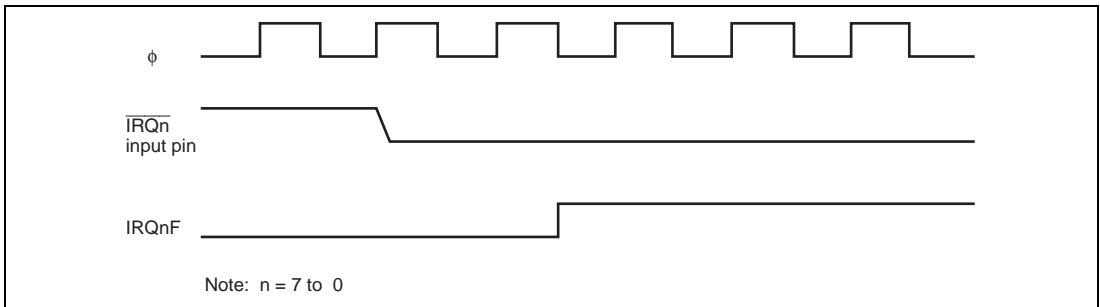


Figure 5.3 Set Timing for IRQnF

The detection of IRQn interrupts does not depend on whether the relevant pin has been set for input or output. However, when a pin is used as an external interrupt input pin, do not clear the corresponding DDR to 0; and use the pin as an I/O pin for another function. IRQnF interrupt request flag is set when the setting condition is satisfied, regardless of IER settings. Accordingly, refer to only necessary flags.

5.4.2 Internal Interrupts

The sources for internal interrupts from on-chip peripheral modules have the following features:

- For each on-chip peripheral module there are flags that indicate the interrupt request status, and enable bits that select enabling or disabling of these interrupts. If both of these are set to 1 for a particular interrupt source, an interrupt request is issued to the interrupt controller.
- The interrupt priority level can be set by means of IPR.
- The DMAC or DTC can be activated by a TPU, SCI, or other interrupt request.
- When the DMAC or DTC is activated by an interrupt request, it is not affected by the interrupt control mode or CPU interrupt mask bit.

5.5 Interrupt Exception Handling Vector Table

Table 5.2 shows interrupt exception handling sources, vector addresses, and interrupt priorities.

For default priorities, the lower the vector number, the higher the priority. Priorities among modules can be set by means of the IPR. Modules set at the same priority will conform to their default priorities. Priorities within a module are fixed.

Table 5.2 Interrupt Sources, Vector Addresses, and Interrupt Priorities

| Interrupt Source | Origin of Interrupt Source | Vector Number | Vector Address* | | Priority |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------|
| | | | Advanced Mode | IPR | |
| External pins | NMI | 7 | H'001C | | High ↑ |
| | IRQ0 | 16 | H'0040 | IPRA6 to IPRA4 | |
| | IRQ1 | 17 | H'0044 | IPRA2 to IPRA0 | |
| | IRQ2 | 18 | H'0048 | IPRB6 to IPRB4 | |
| | IRQ3 | 19 | H'004C | | |
| | IRQ4 | 20 | H'0050 | IPRB2 to IPRB0 | |
| | IRQ5 | 21 | H'0054 | | |
| USB | IRQ6 | 22 | H'0058 | IPRC6 to IPRC4 | |
| External pins | IRQ7 | 23 | H'005C | | |
| DTC | SWDTEND | 24 | H'0060 | IPRC2 to IPRC0 | |
| Watchdog Timer | WOVI | 25 | H'0064 | IPRD6 to IPRD4 | |
| A/D | ADI | 28 | H'0070 | | |
| TPU channel 0 | TGI0A | 32 | H'0080 | IPRF6 to IPRF4 | |
| | TGI0B | 33 | H'0084 | | |
| | TGI0C | 34 | H'0088 | | |
| | TGI0D | 35 | H'008C | | |
| | TGI0V | 36 | H'0090 | | |
| TPU channel 1 | TGI1A | 40 | H'00A0 | IPRF2 to IPRF0 | |
| | TGI1B | 41 | H'00A4 | | |
| | TGI1V | 42 | H'00A8 | | |
| | TGI1U | 43 | H'00AC | | |
| TPU channel 2 | TGI2A | 44 | H'00B0 | IPRG6 to IPRG4 | |
| | TGI2B | 45 | H'00B4 | | |
| | TGI2V | 46 | H'00B8 | | |
| | TGI2U | 47 | H'00BC | | |
| 8-bit timer channel 0 | CMI A0 (compare match A) | 64 | H'0100 | IPRI6 to IPRI4 | |
| | CMI B0 (compare match B) | 65 | H'0104 | | |
| | OVI0 (overflow) | 66 | H'0108 | | |

| Interrupt Source | Origin of Interrupt Source | Vector Number | Vector Address* | IPR | Priority |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------|
| 8-bit timer channel 1 | CMIA1 (compare match A) | 68 | H'0110 | IPRI2 to IPRIO | High ↑ |
| | CMIB1 (compare match B) | 69 | H'0114 | | |
| | OVI1 (overflow) | 70 | H'0118 | | |
| DMAC | DEND0A | 72 | H'0120 | IPRJ6 to IPRJ4 | |
| | DEND0B | 73 | H'0124 | | |
| | DEND1A | 74 | H'0128 | | |
| | DEND1B | 75 | H'012C | | |
| SCI channel 0 | ERI0 | 80 | H'0140 | IPRJ2 to IPRJ0 | |
| | RXI0 | 81 | H'0144 | | |
| | TXI0 | 82 | H'0148 | | |
| | TEI0 | 83 | H'014C | | |
| SCI channel 1 | ERI1 | 84 | H'0150 | IPRK6 to IPRK4 | |
| | RXI1 | 85 | H'0154 | | |
| | TXI1 | 86 | H'0158 | | |
| | TEI1 | 87 | H'015C | | |
| SCI channel 2 | ERI2 | 88 | H'0160 | IPRK2 to IPRK0 | |
| | RXI2 | 89 | H'0164 | | |
| | TXI2 | 90 | H'0168 | | |
| | TEI2 | 91 | H'016C | | |
| USB | EXIRQ0 | 104 | H'01A0 | IPRM6 to IPRM4 | Low |
| | EXIRQ1 | 105 | H'01A4 | | |

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the start address.

5.6 Interrupt Control Modes and Interrupt Operation

The interrupt controller has two modes: interrupt control mode 0 and interrupt control mode 2.

Interrupt operations differ depending on the interrupt control mode. The interrupt control mode is selected by SYSCR. Table 5.3 shows the differences between interrupt control mode 0 and interrupt control mode 2.

Table 5.3 Interrupt Control Modes

| Interrupt Control Mode | Priority Setting Register | Interrupt Mask Bits | Description |
|------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|--|
| 0 | Default | I | The priority of interrupt sources are fixed at the default settings. Interrupt sources except for NMI is marked by the I bit. |
| 2 | IPR | I2 to I0 | 8-level interrupt mask control is performed by bits I2 to I0. 8 priority levels other than NMI can be set with IPR. |

5.6.1 Interrupt Control Mode 0

In interrupt control mode 0, interrupt requests except for NMI is masked by the I bit of CCR in the CPU. Figure 5.4 shows a flowchart of the interrupt acceptance operation in this case.

1. If an interrupt source occurs when the corresponding interrupt enable bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is sent to the interrupt controller.
2. If the I bit is set to 1, only an NMI interrupt is accepted, and other interrupt requests are held pending. If the I bit is cleared, an interrupt request is accepted.
3. Interrupt requests are sent to the interrupt controller, the highest-ranked interrupt according to the priority system is accepted, and other interrupt requests are held pending.
4. When the CPU accepts an interrupt request, it starts interrupt exception handling after execution of the current instruction has been completed.
5. The PC and CCR are saved to the stack area by interrupt exception handling. The PC saved on the stack shows the address of the first instruction to be executed after returning from the interrupt handling routine.
6. Next, the I bit in CCR is set to 1. This masks all interrupts except NMI.

7. The CPU generates a vector address for the accepted interrupt and starts execution of the interrupt handling routine at the address indicated by the contents of the vector address in the vector table.

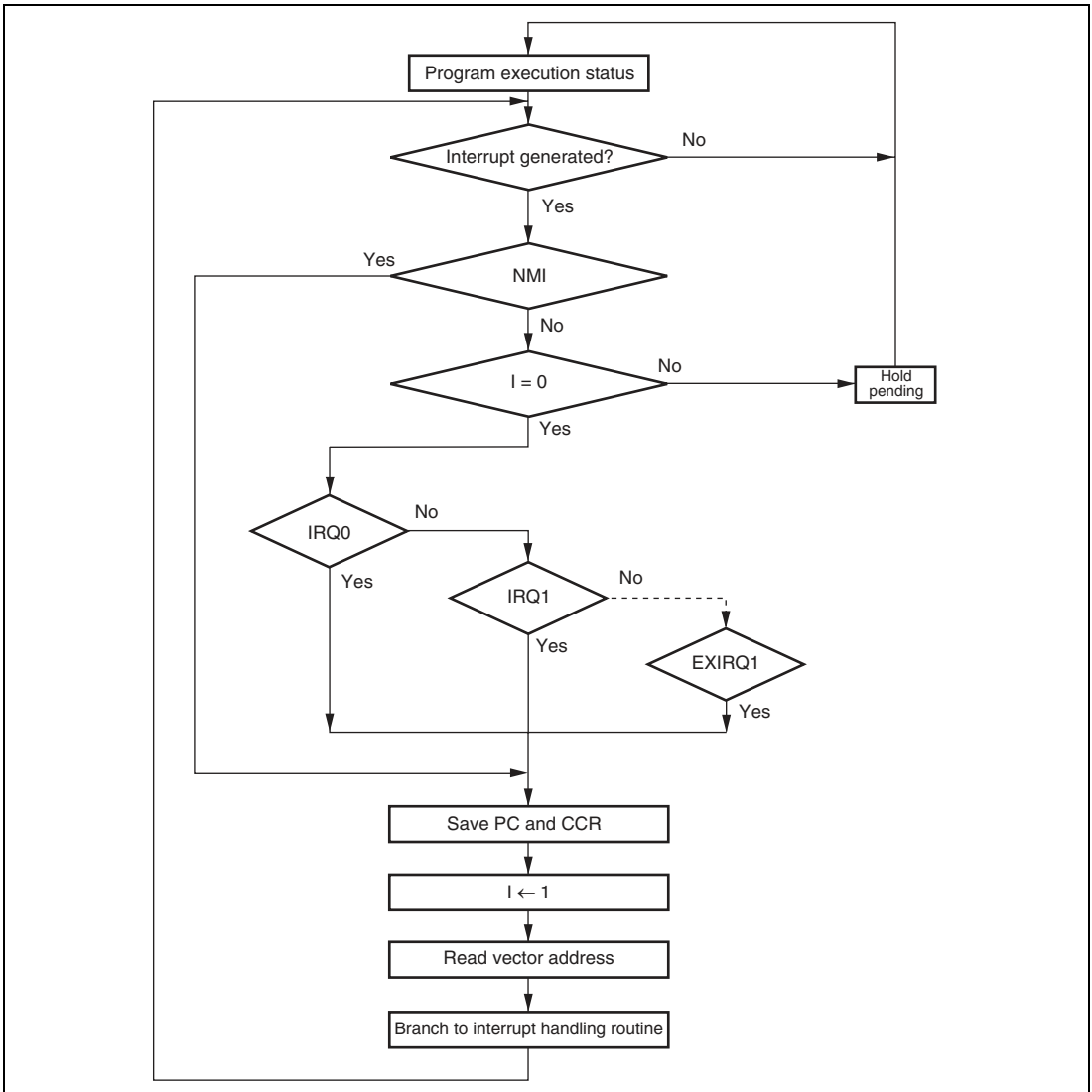


Figure 5.4 Flowchart of Procedure Up to Interrupt Acceptance in Interrupt Control Mode 0

5.6.2 Interrupt Control Mode 2

In interrupt control mode 2, mask control is done in eight levels for interrupt requests except for NMI by comparing the EXR interrupt mask level (I2 to I0 bits) in the CPU and the IPR setting.

Figure 5.5 shows a flowchart of the interrupt acceptance operation in this case.

1. If an interrupt source occurs when the corresponding interrupt enable bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is sent to the interrupt controller.
2. When interrupt requests are sent to the interrupt controller, the interrupt with the highest priority according to the interrupt priority levels set in IPR is selected, and lower-priority interrupt requests are held pending. If a number of interrupt requests with the same priority are generated at the same time, the interrupt request with the highest priority according to the priority system shown in table 5.2 is selected.
3. Next, the priority of the selected interrupt request is compared with the interrupt mask level set in EXR. An interrupt request with a priority no higher than the mask level set at that time is held pending, and only an interrupt request with a priority higher than the interrupt mask level is accepted.
4. When the CPU accepts an interrupt request, it starts interrupt exception handling after execution of the current instruction has been completed.
5. The PC, CCR, and EXR are saved to the stack area by interrupt exception handling. The PC saved on the stack shows the address of the first instruction to be executed after returning from the interrupt handling routine.
6. The T bit in EXR is cleared to 0. The interrupt mask level is rewritten with the priority level of the accepted interrupt.
If the accepted interrupt is NMI, the interrupt mask level is set to H'7.
7. The CPU generates a vector address for the accepted interrupt and starts execution of the interrupt handling routine at the address indicated by the contents of the vector address in the vector table.

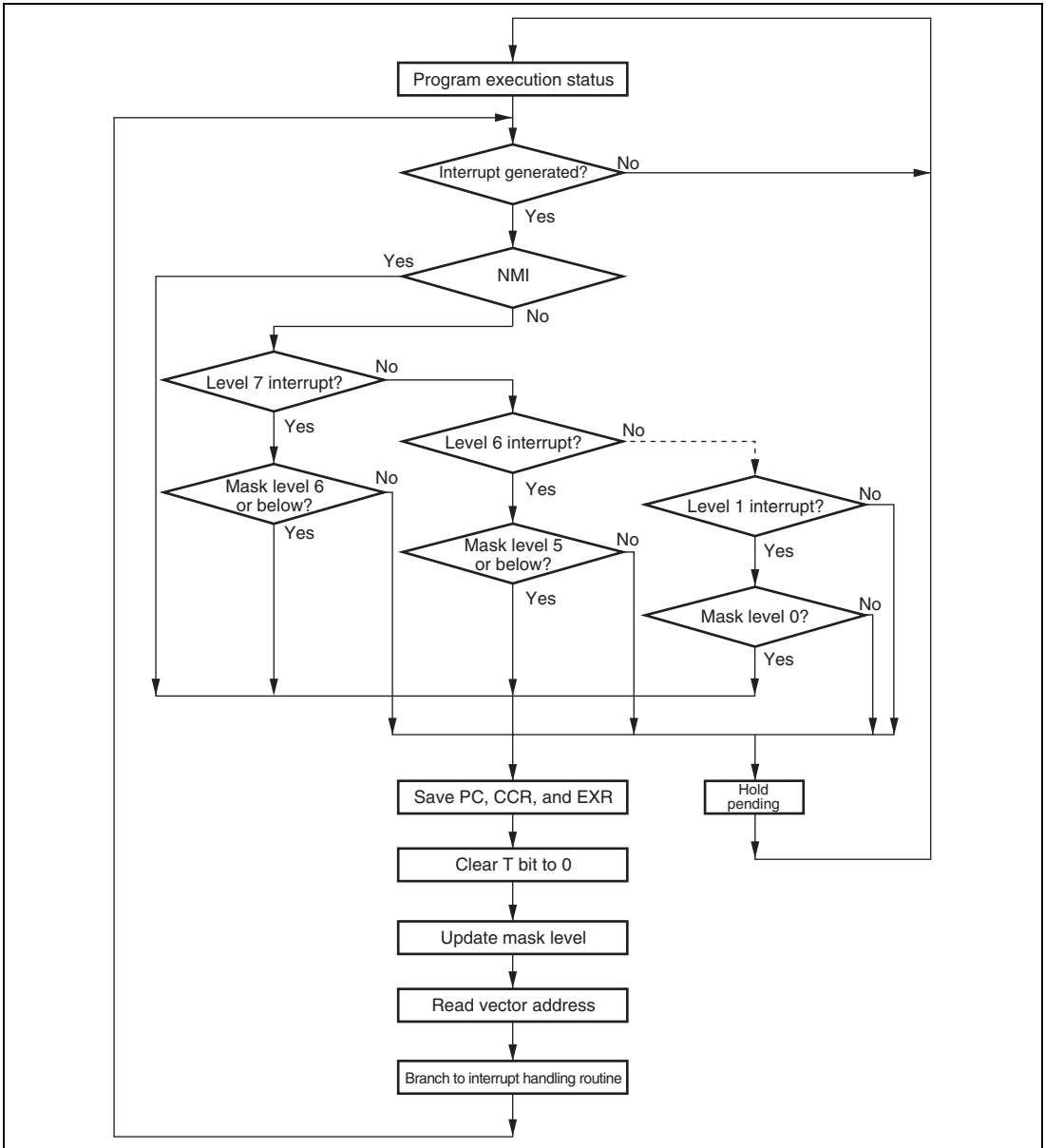


Figure 5.5 Flowchart of Procedure Up to Interrupt Acceptance in Interrupt Control Mode 2

5.6.3 Interrupt Exception Handling Sequence

Figure 5.6 shows the interrupt exception handling sequence. The example shown is for the case where interrupt control mode 0 is set in advanced mode, and the program area and stack area are in on-chip memory.

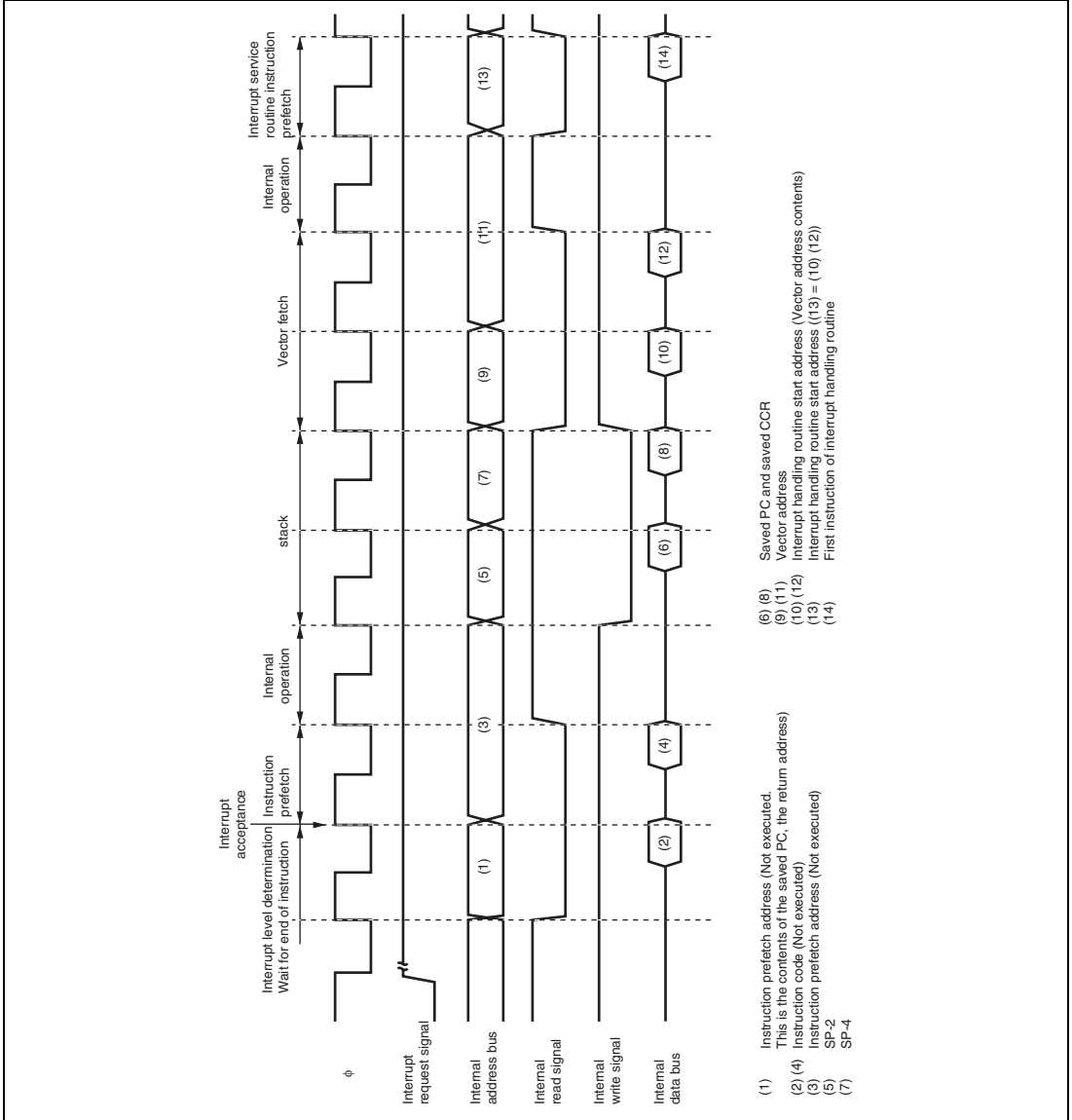


Figure 5.6 Interrupt Exception Handling

5.6.4 Interrupt Response Times

Table 5.4 shows interrupt response times — the interval between generation of an interrupt request and execution of the first instruction in the interrupt handling routine. The execution status symbols used in table 5.4 are explained in table 5.5.

This LSI is capable of fast word transfer to on-chip memory, and have the program area in on-chip ROM and the stack area in on-chip RAM, enabling high-speed processing.

Table 5.4 Interrupt Response Times

| No. | Execution State | Normal Mode ^{*5} | | Advanced Mode | |
|------------------------------|--|---------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | | Interrupt Control Mode 0 | Interrupt Control Mode 2 | Interrupt Control Mode 0 | Interrupt Control Mode 2 |
| 1 | Interrupt priority determination ^{*1} | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| 2 | Number of wait states until executing instruction ends ^{*2} | 1 to $19+2 \cdot S_i$ | 1 to $19+2 \cdot S_i$ | 1 to $19+2 \cdot S_i$ | 1 to $19+2 \cdot S_i$ |
| 3 | PC, CCR, EXR stack save | $2 \cdot S_k$ | $3 \cdot S_k$ | $2 \cdot S_k$ | $3 \cdot S_k$ |
| 4 | Vector fetch | S_i | S_i | $2 \cdot S_i$ | $2 \cdot S_i$ |
| 5 | Instruction fetch ^{*3} | $2 \cdot S_i$ | $2 \cdot S_i$ | $2 \cdot S_i$ | $2 \cdot S_i$ |
| 6 | Internal processing ^{*4} | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| Total (using on-chip memory) | | 11 to 31 | 12 to 32 | 12 to 32 | 13 to 33 |

- Notes:
1. Two states in case of internal interrupt.
 2. Refers to MULXS and DIVXS instructions.
 3. Prefetch after interrupt acceptance and interrupt handling routine prefetch.
 4. Internal processing after interrupt acceptance and internal processing after vector fetch.
 5. Not available in this LSI.

Table 5.5 Number of States in Interrupt Handling Routine Execution Statuses

| Symbol | | Object of Access | | | | |
|---------------------|-------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| | | Internal Memory | External Device | | | |
| | | | 8-Bit Bus | | 16-Bit Bus | |
| | | | 2-State Access | 3-State Access | 2-State Access | 3-State Access |
| Instruction fetch | S_i | 1 | 4 | $6 + 2m$ | 2 | $3 + m$ |
| Branch address read | S_j | | | | | |
| Stack manipulation | S_k | | | | | |

Legend:

m: Number of wait states in an external device access.

5.6.5 DTC Activation by Interrupt

The DTC and DMAC can be activated by an interrupt. In this case, the following options are available:

- Interrupt request to CPU
- Activation request to DTC
- Activation request to DMAC
- Selection of a number of the above

For details of interrupt requests that can be used with to activate the DTC and DMAC, see section 7, DMA Controller (DMAC) and section 8, Data Transfer Controller (DTC).

Figure 5.7 shows a block diagram of the interrupt controller of DTC and DMAC.

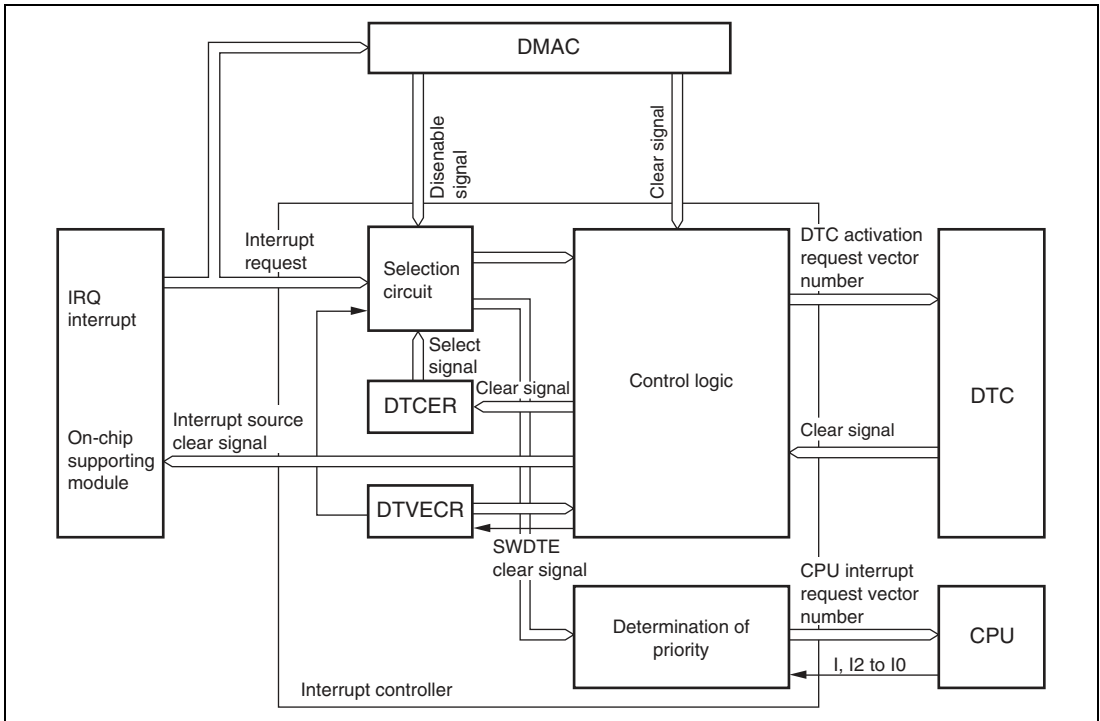


Figure 5.7 Interrupt Control for DTC and DMAC

Selection of Interrupt Source: An activation factor is directly input to each channel of the DMAC. The activation factors for each channel of the DMAC are selected by the DTF3 to DTF0 bits of DMACR. The DTA bit of DMABCR can be used to select whether the selected activation factors are managed by the DMAC. By setting the DTA bit to 1, the interrupt factor which was the activation factor for that DMAC cannot act as the DTC activation factor or the CPU interrupt factor.

Interrupt factors other than the interrupts managed by the DMAC are selected as DTC activation request or CPU interrupt request by the DTCERA to DTCERF of DTC and the DTCE bit of DTCERI.

By specifying the DISEL bit of the DTC's MRB, it is possible to clear the DTCE bit to 0 after DTC data transfer, and request a CPU interrupt.

If DTC carries out the designate number of data transfers and the transfer counter reads 0, after DTC data transfer, the DTCE bit is also cleared to 0, CPU interrupt requested.

Determination of Priority: The DTC activation source is selected in accordance with the default priority order, and is not affected by mask or priority levels. See section 8.4, Location of Register Information and DTC Vector Table. The activation source is directly input to each channel of DMAC.

Operation Order: If the same interrupt is selected as a DTC activation source and a CPU interrupt source, the DTC data transfer is performed first, followed by CPU interrupt exception handling.

If the same interrupt is selected as the DMAC activation factor and as the DTC activation factor or CPU interrupt factor, these operate independently. They operate in accordance with the respective operating states and bus priorities.

Table 5.6 shows the interrupt factor clear control and selection of interrupt factors by specification of the DTA bit of DMAC's DMABCR, DTC's DTCERA to DTCERF's DTCE bit, and the DISEL bit of DTC's MRB.

Table 5.6 Interrupt Source Selection and Clearing Control

| Settings | | | Interrupt Sources Selection/Clearing Control | | |
|----------|------|-------|--|-----|-----|
| DMAC | DTC | | DMAC | DTC | CPU |
| DTA | DTCE | DISEL | | | |
| 0 | 0 | * | Δ | X | O |
| | 1 | 0 | Δ | O | X |
| | | 1 | | Δ | Δ |
| 1 | * | * | O | X | X |

Legend:

- O: The relevant interrupt is used. Interrupt source clearing is performed.
(The CPU should clear the source flag in the interrupt handling routine.)
- Δ: The relevant interrupt is used. The interrupt source is not cleared.
- X: The relevant bit cannot be used.
- *: Don't care

Notes on Use: The SCI interrupt source is cleared when the DMAC or DTC reads or writes to the prescribed register, and is not dependent upon the DTA bit, DTCE bit, or DISEL bit.

5.7 Usage Notes

5.7.1 Contention between Interrupt Generation and Disabling

When an interrupt enable bit is cleared to 0 to disable interrupts, the disabling becomes effective after execution of the instruction.

When an interrupt enable bit is cleared to 0 by an instruction such as BCLR or MOV, if an interrupt is generated during execution of the instruction, the interrupt concerned will still be enabled on completion of the instruction, and so interrupt exception handling for that interrupt will be executed on completion of the instruction. However, if there is an interrupt request of higher priority than that interrupt, interrupt exception handling will be executed for the higher-priority interrupt, and the lower-priority interrupt will be ignored.

The same also applies when an interrupt source flag is cleared to 0.

Figure 5.8 shows an example in which the TGIEA bit in the TPU's TIER_0 is cleared to 0.

The above contention will not occur if an enable bit or interrupt source flag is cleared to 0 while the interrupt is masked.

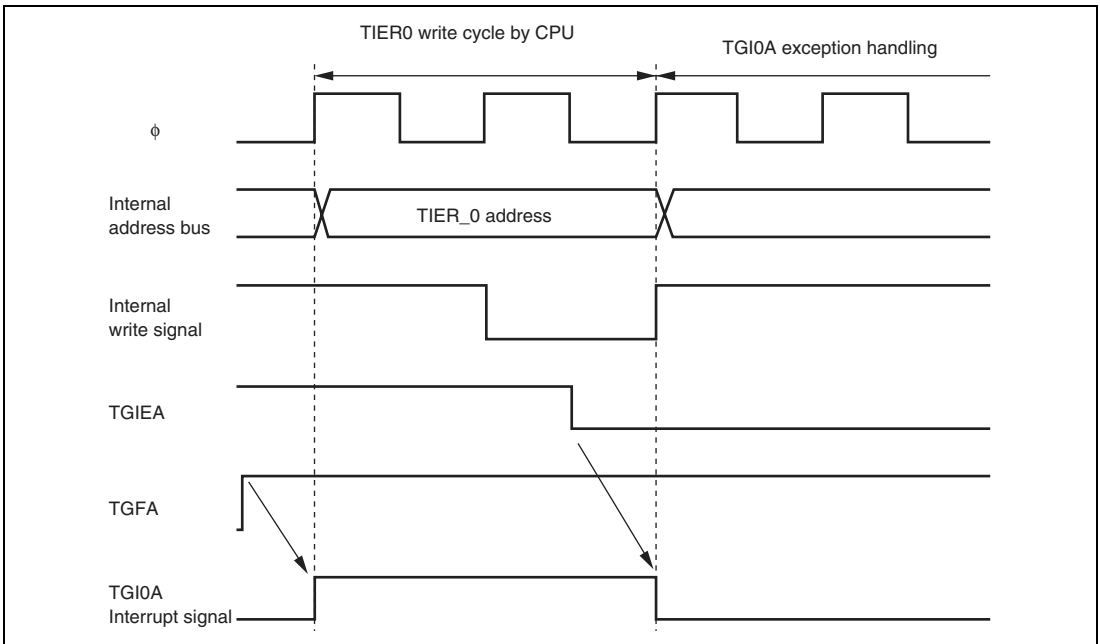


Figure 5.8 Contention between Interrupt Generation and Disabling

5.7.2 Instructions that Disable Interrupts

Instructions that disable interrupts are LDC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC. After any of these instructions is executed, all interrupts including NMI are disabled and the next instruction is always executed. When the I bit is set by one of these instructions, the new value becomes valid two states after execution of the instruction ends.

5.7.3 Times when Interrupts Are Disabled

There are times when interrupt acceptance is disabled by the interrupt controller.

The interrupt controller disables interrupt acceptance for a 3-state period after the CPU has updated the mask level with an LDC, ANDC, ORC, or XORC instruction.

5.7.4 Interrupts during Execution of EEPMOV Instruction

Interrupt operation differs between the EEPMOV.B instruction and the EEPMOV.W instruction.

With the EEPMOV.B instruction, an interrupt request (including NMI) issued during the transfer is not accepted until the move is completed.

With the EEPMOV.W instruction, if an interrupt request is issued during the transfer, interrupt exception handling starts at a break in the transfer cycle. The PC value saved on the stack in this case is the address of the next instruction.

Therefore, if an interrupt is generated during execution of an EEPMOV.W instruction, the following coding should be used.

```
L1: EEPMOV.W
    MOV.W  R4, R4
    BNE   L1
```

5.7.5 IRQ Interrupt

During clock operation, IRQ input is accepted in synchronization with the clock.

In software standby mode, non-synchronous input is accepted.

For details of the input conditions, see the Control Signal Timing description in the Electrical Characteristics section for the product in question.

5.7.6 NMI Interrupts Usage Notes

The NMI interrupt is part of the exception processing performed cooperatively by the LSI's internal interrupt controller and the CPU when the system is operating normally under the specified electrical conditions. No operations, including NMI interrupts, are guaranteed when operation is not normal (runaway status) due to software problems or abnormal input to the LSI's pins. In such cases, the LSI may be restored to the normal program execution state by applying an external reset.

Section 6 Bus Controller

This LSI has a built-in bus controller (BSC) that manages the external address space divided into eight areas. The bus controller also has a bus arbitration function, and controls the operation of the internal bus masters: the CPU, DMA controller (DMAC), and data transfer controller (DTC).

6.1 Features

- Manages external address space in area units
 - Manages the external space as eight areas of 2 Mbytes
 - Bus specifications can be set independently for each area
 - Burst ROM interface can be set
- Basic bus interface*
 - Chip select ($\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS7}$) can be output for areas 0 to 7
 - 8-bit access or 16-bit access can be selected for each area
 - 2-state access or 3-state access can be selected for each area
 - Program wait states can be inserted for each area
- Burst ROM interface
 - Burst ROM interface can be selected for area 0
 - One or two states can be selected for the burst cycle
- Idle cycle insertion
 - Idle cycle can be inserted between consecutive read accesses to different areas
 - Idle cycle can be inserted before a write access to an external area immediately after a read access to an external area
- Bus arbitration
 - The on-chip bus arbiter arbitrates bus mastership among CPU, DMAC, and DTC
- Other features
 - External bus release function

Note: * Chip select $\overline{CS6}$ in area 6 is for the on-chip USB. Therefore it cannot be used as an external area. 8-bit bus mode, 3-state access, and no program wait state should be set for area 6.

Figure 6.1 shows a block diagram of the bus controller.

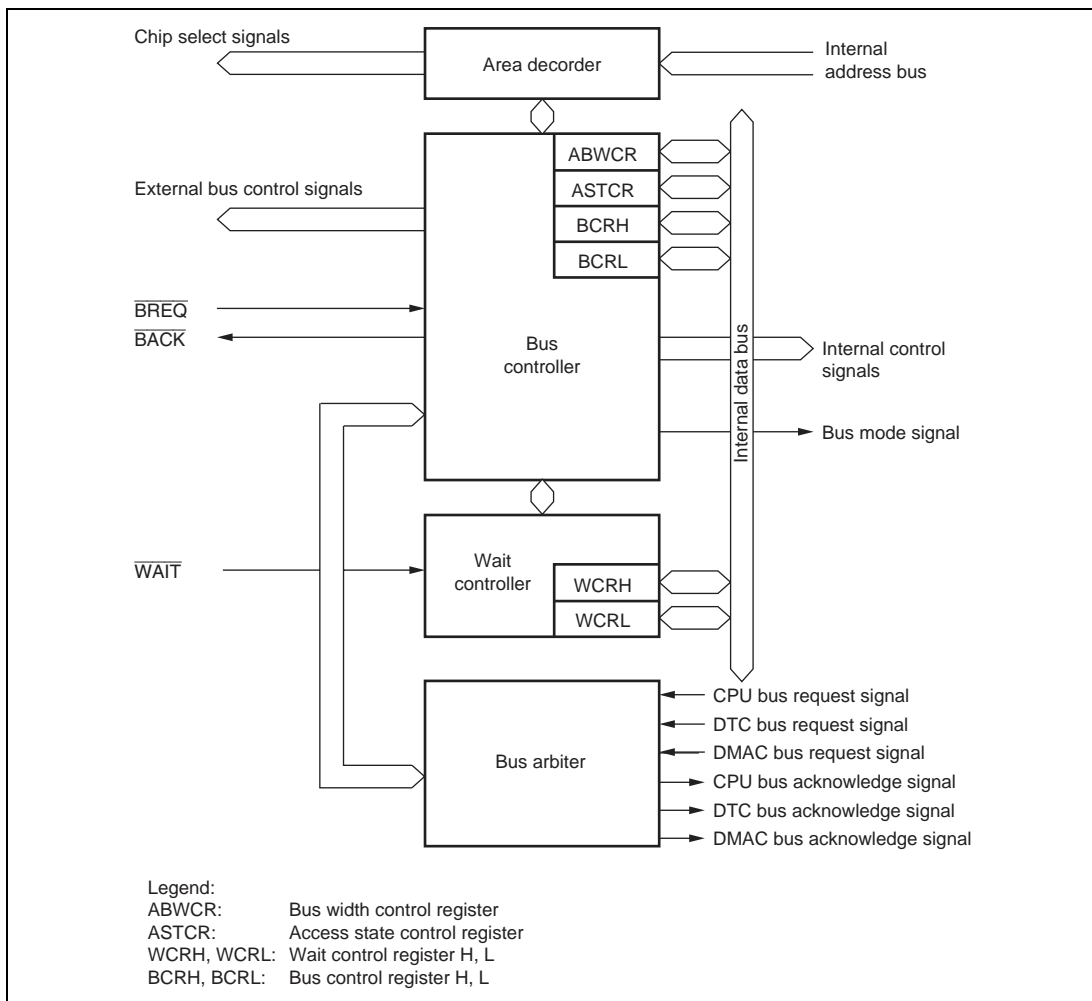


Figure 6.1 Block Diagram of Bus Controller

6.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 6.1 summarizes the pins of the bus controller.

Table 6.1 Pin Configuration

| Name | Symbol | I/O | Function |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------|---|
| Address strobe | \overline{AS} | Output | Strobe signal indicating that address output on address bus is enabled. |
| Read | \overline{RD} | Output | Strobe signal indicating that external space is being read. |
| High write | \overline{HWR} | Output | Strobe signal indicating that external space is to be written, and upper half (D15 to D8) of data bus is enabled. |
| Low write | \overline{LWR} | Output | Strobe signal indicating that external space is to be written, and lower half (D7 to D0) of data bus is enabled. |
| Chip select 0 to 7 | $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS7}$ | Output | Strobe signal indicating that areas 0 to 7 are selected. |
| Wait | \overline{WAIT} | Input | Wait request signal when accessing external 3-state access space. |
| Bus request | \overline{BREQ} | Input | Request signal that releases bus to external device. |
| Bus request acknowledge | \overline{BACK} | Output | Acknowledge signal indicating that bus has been released. |

6.3 Register Descriptions

The following shows the registers of the bus controller.

- Bus width control register (ABWCR)
- Access state control register (ASTCR)
- Wait control register H (WCRH)
- Wait control register L (WCRL)
- Bus control register H (BCRH)
- Bus control register L (BCRL)
- Pin function control register (PFCR)

6.3.1 Bus Width Control Register (ABWCR)

ABWCR designates each area for either 8-bit access or 16-bit access.

ABWCR sets the data bus width for the external memory space. The bus width for on-chip memory and internal I/O registers except for the on-chip USB is fixed regardless of the settings in ABWCR.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|--------------------|-------------------|-----|---|
| 7 | ABW7 | 1/0 ^{*1} | R/W | Area 7 to 0 Bus Width Controls |
| 6 | ABW6 ^{*2} | 1/0 ^{*1} | R/W | These bits select whether the corresponding area is to be designated for 8-bit access or 16-bit access. |
| 5 | ABW5 | 1/0 ^{*1} | R/W | |
| 4 | ABW4 | 1/0 ^{*1} | R/W | 0: Area n is designated for 16-bit access |
| 3 | ABW3 | 1/0 ^{*1} | R/W | 1: Area n is designated for 8-bit access |
| 2 | ABW2 | 1/0 ^{*1} | R/W | Note: n = 7 to 0 |
| 1 | ABW1 | 1/0 ^{*1} | R/W | |
| 0 | ABW0 | 1/0 ^{*1} | R/W | |

- Notes:
1. In modes 5 to 7, initial value of each bit is 1. In mode 4, initial value of each bit is 0.
 2. The on-chip USB is allocated to area 6. Therefore this bit should be set to 1.

6.3.2 Access State Control Register (ASTCR)

ASTCR designates each area as either a 2-state access space or a 3-state access space.

ASTCR sets the number of access states for the external memory space. The number of access states for on-chip memory and internal I/O registers except for the on-chip USB is fixed regardless of the settings in ASTCR.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | AST7 | 1 | R/W | Area 7 to 0 Access State Controls |
| 6 | AST6* | 1 | R/W | These bits select whether the corresponding area is to be designated as a 2-state access space or a 3-state access space. Wait state insertion is enabled or disabled at the same time. |
| 5 | AST5 | 1 | R/W | |
| 4 | AST4 | 1 | R/W | 0: Area n is designated for 2-state access Wait state insertion in area n external space is disabled |
| 3 | AST3 | 1 | R/W | |
| 2 | AST2 | 1 | R/W | 1: Area n is designated for 3-state access Wait state insertion in area n external space is enabled |
| 1 | AST1 | 1 | R/W | |
| 0 | AST0 | 1 | R/W | |

Note: n = 7 to 0

Note: * The on-chip USB is allocated to area 6. Therefore this bit should be set to 1.

6.3.3 Wait Control Registers H and L (WCRH, WCRL)

WCRH and WCRL select the number of program wait states for each area.

Program waits are not inserted in the case of on-chip memory or internal I/O registers except for the on-chip USB.

- WCRH

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | W71 | 1 | R/W | Area 7 Wait Control 1 and 0 |
| 6 | W70 | 1 | R/W | These bits select the number of program wait states when area 7 in external space is accessed while the AST7 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 7 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 7 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 7 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 7 is accessed |
| 5 | W61* | 1 | R/W | Area 6 Wait Control 1 and 0 |
| 4 | W60* | 1 | R/W | These bits select the number of program wait states when area 6 in external space is accessed while the AST6 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 6 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 6 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 6 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 6 is accessed |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 3 | W51 | 1 | R/W | Area 5 Wait Control 1 and 0 |
| 2 | W50 | 1 | R/W | <p>These bits select the number of program wait states when area 5 in external space is accessed while the AST5 bit in ASTCR is set to 1.</p> <p>00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 5 is accessed</p> <p>01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 5 is accessed</p> <p>10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 5 is accessed</p> <p>11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 5 is accessed</p> |
| 1 | W41 | 1 | R/W | Area 4 Wait Control 1 and 0 |
| 0 | W40 | 1 | R/W | <p>These bits select the number of program wait states when area 4 in external space is accessed while the AST4 bit in ASTCR is set to 1.</p> <p>00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 4 is accessed</p> <p>01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 4 is accessed</p> <p>10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 4 is accessed</p> <p>11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 4 is accessed</p> |

Note: * The on-chip USB is allocated to area 6. Therefore these bits should be set to 0.

- WCRL

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | W31 | 1 | R/W | Area 3 Wait Control 1 and 0 |
| 6 | W30 | 1 | R/W | <p>These bits select the number of program wait states when area 3 in external space is accessed while the AST3 bit in ASTCR is set to 1.</p> <p>00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 3 is accessed</p> <p>01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 3 is accessed</p> <p>10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 3 is accessed</p> <p>11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 3 is accessed</p> |
| 5 | W21 | 1 | R/W | Area 2 Wait Control 1 and 0 |
| 4 | W20 | 1 | R/W | <p>These bits select the number of program wait states when area 2 in external space is accessed while the AST2 bit in ASTCR is set to 1.</p> <p>00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 2 is accessed</p> <p>01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 2 is accessed</p> <p>10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 2 is accessed</p> <p>11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 2 is accessed</p> |
| 3 | W11 | 1 | R/W | Area 1 Wait Control 1 and 0 |
| 2 | W10 | 1 | R/W | <p>These bits select the number of program wait states when area 1 in external space is accessed while the AST1 bit in ASTCR is set to 1.</p> <p>00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 1 is accessed</p> <p>01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 1 is accessed</p> <p>10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 1 is accessed</p> <p>11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 1 is accessed</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 1 | W01 | 1 | R/W | Area 0 Wait Control 1 and 0 |
| 0 | W00 | 1 | R/W | These bits select the number of program wait states when area 0 in external space is accessed while the AST0 bit in ASTCR is set to 1. 00: Program wait not inserted when external space area 0 is accessed 01: 1 program wait state inserted when external space area 0 is accessed 10: 2 program wait states inserted when external space area 0 is accessed 11: 3 program wait states inserted when external space area 0 is accessed |

6.3.4 Bus Control Register H (BCRH)

BCRH selects enabling or disabling of idle cycle insertion, and the memory interface for area 0.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | ICIS1 | 1 | R/W | Idle Cycle Insert 1 Selects whether or not one idle cycle state is to be inserted between bus cycles when successive external read cycles are performed in different areas. 0: Idle cycle not inserted in case of successive external read cycles in different areas 1: Idle cycle inserted in case of successive external read cycles in different areas |
| 6 | ICIS0 | 1 | R/W | Idle Cycle Insert 0 Selects whether or not one idle cycle state is to be inserted between bus cycles when successive external read and write cycles are performed. 0: Idle cycle not inserted in case of successive external read and write cycles 1: Idle cycle inserted in case of successive external read and write cycles |
| 5 | BRSTRM | 0 | R/W | Burst ROM enable Selects whether area 0 is used as a burst ROM interface. 0: Area 0 is basic bus interface 1: Area 0 is burst ROM interface |
| 4 | BRSTS1 | 1 | R/W | Burst Cycle Select 1 Selects the number of burst cycles for the burst ROM interface. 0: Burst cycle comprises 1 state 1: Burst cycle comprises 2 states |
| 3 | BRSTS0 | 0 | R/W | Burst Cycle Select 0 Selects the number of words that can be accessed in a burst ROM interface burst access. 0: Max. 4 words in burst access 1: Max. 8 words in burst access |
| 2 to 0 | — | All 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |

6.3.5 Bus Control Register L (BCRL)

BCRL performs selection of the external bus-released state protocol, and enabling or disabling of $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin input.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|---------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | BRLE | 0 | R/W | Bus release enable Enables or disables external bus release. 0: External bus release is disabled. $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ can be used as I/O ports. 1: External bus release is enabled. |
| 6 | — | 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 5 | — | 0 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 4 | — | 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 3 | — | 1 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 1. |
| 2, 1 | — | All 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 0 | WAITE | 0 | R/W | $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin enable Selects enabling or disabling of wait input by the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin. 0: Wait input by $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin disabled. $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin can be used as I/O port. 1: Wait input by $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin enabled. |

6.3.6 Pin Function Control Register (PFCR)

PFCR performs address output control in external extended mode.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 4 | — | All 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 3 | AE3 | 1/0* | R/W | Address Output Enable 3 to 0 |
| 2 | AE2 | 1/0* | R/W | These bits select enabling or disabling of address outputs A8 to A23 in ROMless extended mode and modes with ROM. When a pin is enabled for address output, the address is output regardless of the corresponding DDR setting. When a pin is disabled for address output, it becomes an output port when the corresponding DDR bit is set to 1. 0000: A8 to A23 output disabled (Initial value in modes 6, 7) 0001: A8 output enabled; A9 to A23 output disabled 0010: A8, A9 output enabled; A10 to A23 output disabled 0011: A8 to A10 output enabled; A11 to A23 output disabled 0100: A8 to A11 output enabled; A12 to A23 output disabled 0101: A8 to A12 output enabled; A13 to A23 output disabled 0110: A8 to A13 output enabled; A14 to A23 output disabled 0111: A8 to A14 output enabled; A15 to A23 output disabled 1000: A8 to A15 output enabled; A16 to A23 output disabled 1001: A8 to A16 output enabled; A17 to A23 output disabled 1010: A8 to A17 output enabled; A18 to A23 output disabled 1011: A8 to A18 output enabled; A19 to A23 output disabled 1100: A8 to A19 output enabled; A20 to A23 output disabled 1101: A8 to A20 output enabled; A21 to A23 output disabled (Initial value in modes 4, 5) 1110: A8 to A21 output enabled; A22, A23 output disabled 1111: A8 to A23 output enabled |
| 1 | AE1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | AE0 | 1/0* | R/W | |

Note: * In modes 4 and 5, initial value of each bit is 1. In modes 6 and 7, initial value of each bit is 0.

6.4 Bus Control

6.4.1 Area Divisions

In advanced mode, the bus controller partitions the 16-Mbyte address space into eight areas, 0 to 7, in 2-Mbyte units, and performs bus control for external space in area units. In normal mode*, it controls a 64-kbyte address space comprising part of area 0.

Figure 6.2 shows an outline of the memory map.

Chip select signals ($\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS7}$) can be output for each area.

Note: * Not available in this LSI.

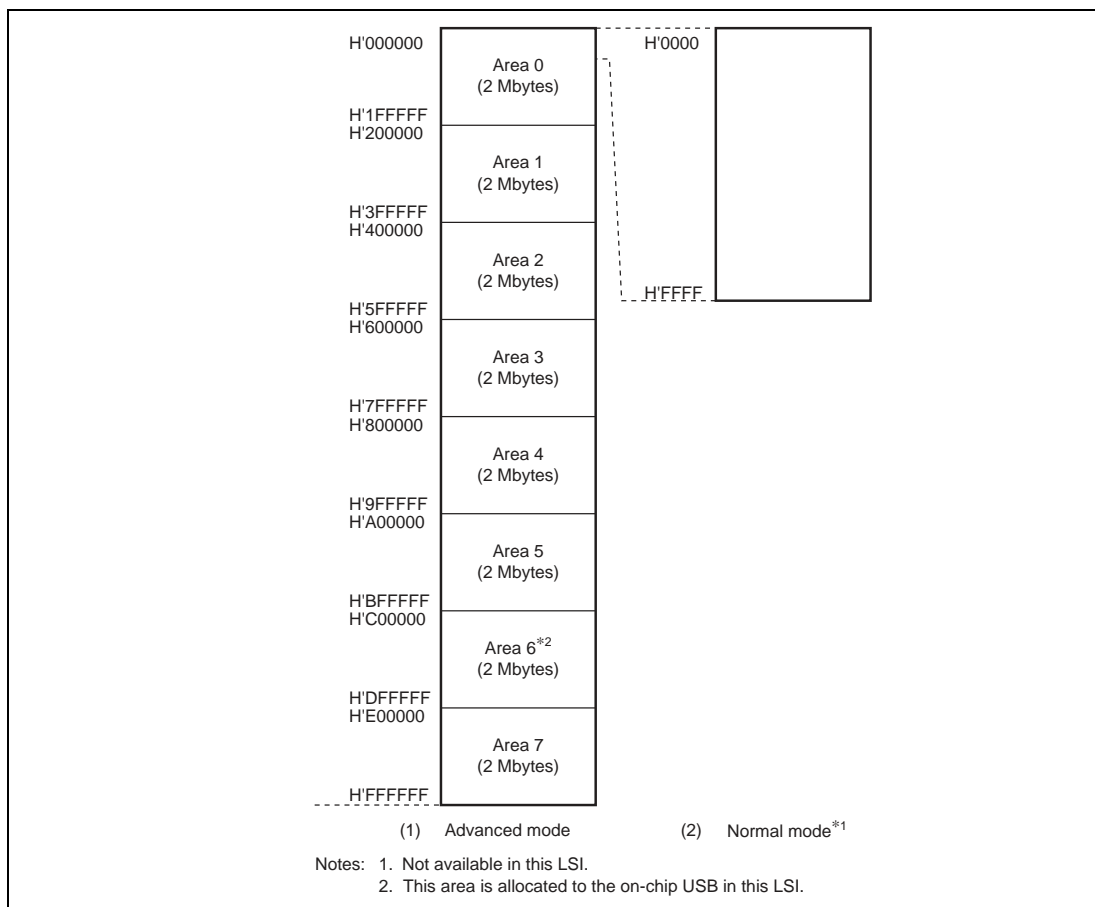


Figure 6.2 Overview of Area Divisions

6.4.2 Bus Specifications

The external space bus specifications consist of three elements: bus width, number of access states, and number of program wait states.

The bus width and number of access states for on-chip memory and internal I/O registers except for the on-chip USB are fixed, and are not affected by the bus controller.

Bus Width: A bus width of 8 or 16 bits can be selected with ABWCR. An area for which an 8-bit bus is selected functions as an 8-bit access space, and an area for which a 16-bit bus is selected functions as a 16-bit access space.

If all areas are designated for 8-bit access, 8-bit bus mode is set; if any area is designated for 16-bit access, 16-bit bus mode is set. When the burst ROM interface is designated, 16-bit bus mode is always set. 8-bit bus mode should be set for area 6 in this LSI.

Number of Access States: Two or three access states can be selected with ASTCR.

An area for which 2-state access is selected functions as a 2-state access space, and an area for which 3-state access is selected functions as a 3-state access space.

With the burst ROM interface, the number of access states may be determined without regard to ASTCR.

When 2-state access space is designated, wait insertion is disabled.

Area 6 should be set to function as a 3-state access space in this LSI.

Number of Program Wait States: When 3-state access space is designated by ASTCR, the number of program wait states to be inserted automatically is selected with WCRH and WCRL.

From 0 to 3 program wait states can be selected.

The number of program wait states in area 6 should be set to 0 in this LSI.

Table 6.2 Bus Specifications for Each Area (Basic Bus Interface)

| ABWCR | ASTCR | WCRH, WCRL | | Bus Specifications (Basic Bus Interface) | | |
|-------|-------|------------|-----|--|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| | | | | Bus Width | Number of Access States | Number of Program Wait States |
| ABWn | ASTn | Wn1 | Wn0 | | | |
| 0 | 0 | — | — | 16 | 2 | 0 |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | | 3 | 0 |
| | | | 1 | | | 1 |
| | | 1 | 0 | | | 2 |
| | | | 1 | | | 3 |
| 1 | 0 | — | — | 8 | 2 | 0 |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | | 3 | 0 |
| | | | 1 | | | 1 |
| | | 1 | 0 | | | 2 |
| | | | 1 | | | 3 |

6.4.3 Bus Interface for Each Area

The initial state of each area is basic bus interface, 3-state access space. The initial bus width is selected according to the operating mode. The bus specifications described here cover basic items only, and the sections on each memory interface (see section 6.6, Basic Bus Interface and section 6.7, Burst ROM Interface) should be referred to for further details.

Area 0: Area 0 includes on-chip ROM, and in ROM-disabled extended mode, all of area 0 is external space. In ROM-enabled extended mode, the space excluding on-chip ROM is external space.

When area 0 external space is accessed, the $\overline{CS0}$ signal can be output.

Either basic bus interface or burst ROM interface can be selected for area 0.

Areas 1 to 6: In external extended mode, all of areas 1 to 6 are external spaces. When areas 1 to 6 external space are accessed, the $\overline{CS1}$ to $\overline{CS6}$ pin signals respectively can be output. Only the basic bus interface can be used for areas 1 to 6. Area 6 is only for the on-chip USB. For details, see section 15, Universal Serial Bus Interface (USB).

Area 7: Area 7 includes the on-chip RAM and internal I/O registers. In external extended mode, the space excluding the on-chip RAM and internal I/O registers, is external space. The on-chip RAM is enabled when the RAME bit in the system control register (SYSCR) is set to 1; when the

RAME bit is cleared to 0, the on-chip RAM is disabled and the corresponding space becomes external space.

When area 7 external space is accessed, the $\overline{CS7}$ signal can be output.

Only the basic bus interface can be used for the area 7.

6.4.4 Chip Select Signals

This LSI can output chip select signals ($\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS7}$) to areas 0 to 7, the signal being driven low when the corresponding external space area is accessed. Figure 6.3 shows an example of \overline{CSn} ($n = 0$ to 7) output timing. Enabling or disabling of the \overline{CSn} signal is performed by setting the data direction register (DDR) for the port corresponding to the particular \overline{CSn} pin.

In ROM-disabled extended mode, the $\overline{CS0}$ pin is placed in the output state after a power-on reset. Pins $\overline{CS1}$ to $\overline{CS7}$ are placed in the input state after a power-on reset, and so the corresponding DDR should be set to 1 when outputting signals $\overline{CS1}$ to $\overline{CS7}$.

In ROM-enabled extended mode, pins $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS7}$ are all placed in the input state after a power-on reset, and so the corresponding DDR should be set to 1 when outputting signals $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS7}$. For details, see section 9, I/O Ports.

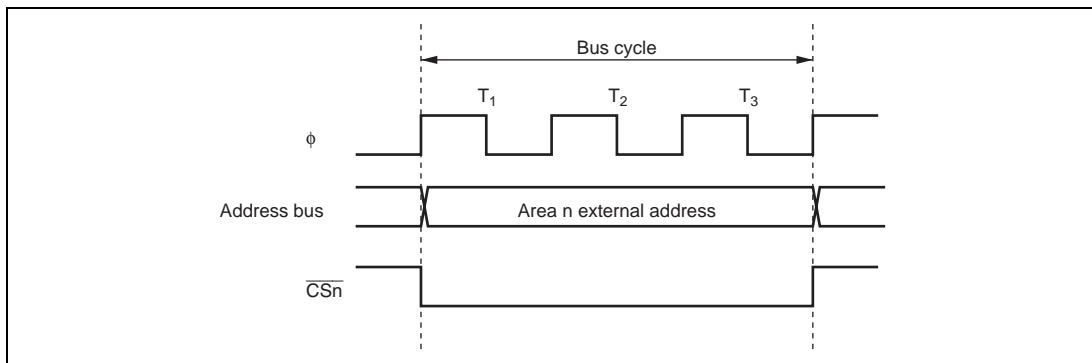


Figure 6.3 \overline{CSn} Signal Output Timing ($n = 0$ to 7)

6.5 Basic Timing

The CPU is driven by a system clock (ϕ), denoted by the symbol ϕ . The period from one rising edge of ϕ to the next is referred to as a “state”. The memory cycle or bus cycle consists of one, two, or three states. Different methods are used to access on-chip memory, on-chip peripheral modules, and the external address space.

6.5.1 On-Chip Memory (ROM, RAM) Access Timing

On-chip memory is accessed in one state. The data bus is 16 bits wide, permitting both byte and word transfer instruction. Figure 6.4 shows the on-chip memory access cycle. Figure 6.5 shows the pin states.

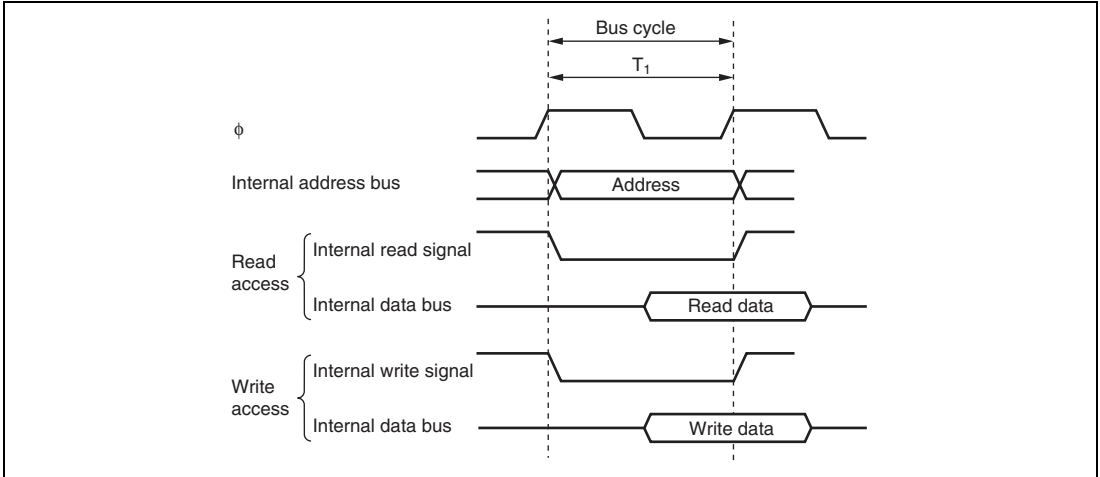


Figure 6.4 On-Chip Memory Access Cycle

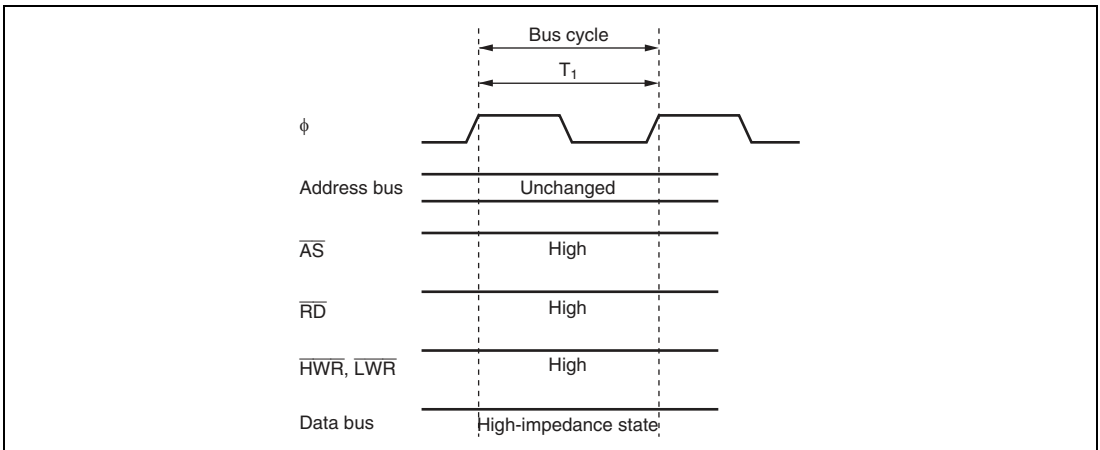


Figure 6.5 Pin States during On-Chip Memory Access

6.5.2 On-Chip Peripheral Module Access Timing

The on-chip peripheral modules are accessed in two states except on-chip USB. The data bus is either 8 bits or 16 bits wide, depending on the particular internal I/O register being accessed.

Figure 6.6 shows the access timing for the on-chip peripheral modules. Figure 6.7 shows the pin states.

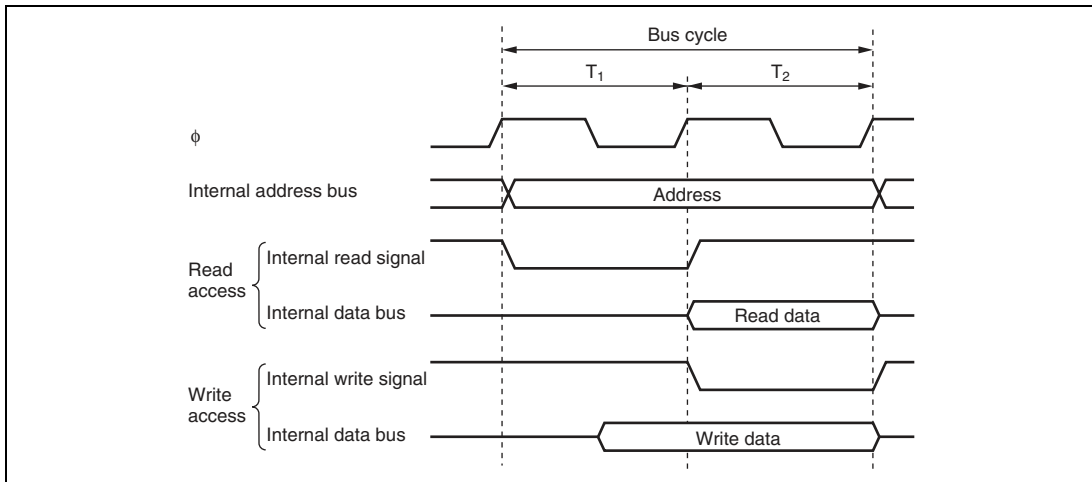


Figure 6.6 On-Chip Peripheral Module Access Cycle

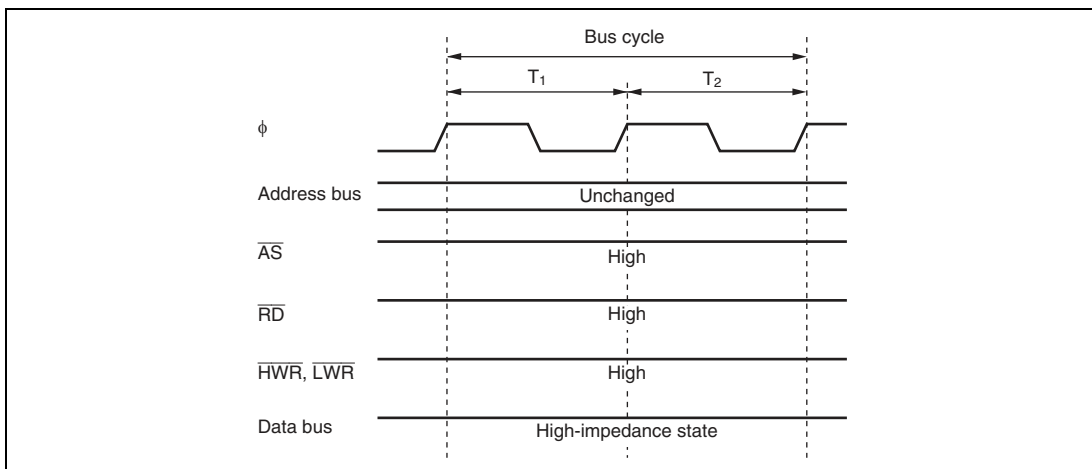


Figure 6.7 Pin States during On-Chip Peripheral Module Access

6.5.3 External Address Space Access Timing

The external address space is accessed with an 8-bit or 16-bit data bus width in a two-state or three-state bus cycle. In three-state access, wait states can be inserted. For further details, refer to section 6.6.3, Basic Timing.

6.6 Basic Bus Interface

The basic bus interface enables direct connection of ROM, SRAM, and so on.

6.6.1 Data Size and Data Alignment

Data sizes for the CPU and other internal bus masters are byte, word, and longword. The bus controller has a data alignment function, and when accessing external space, controls whether the upper data bus (D15 to D8) or lower data bus (D7 to D0) is used according to the bus specifications for the area being accessed (8-bit access space or 16-bit access space) and the data size.

8-Bit Access Space: Figure 6.8 illustrates data alignment control for the 8-bit access space. With the 8-bit access space, the upper data bus (D15 to D8) is always used for accesses. The amount of data that can be accessed at one time is one byte: a word transfer instruction is performed as two-byte accesses, and a longword transfer instruction, as four-byte accesses.

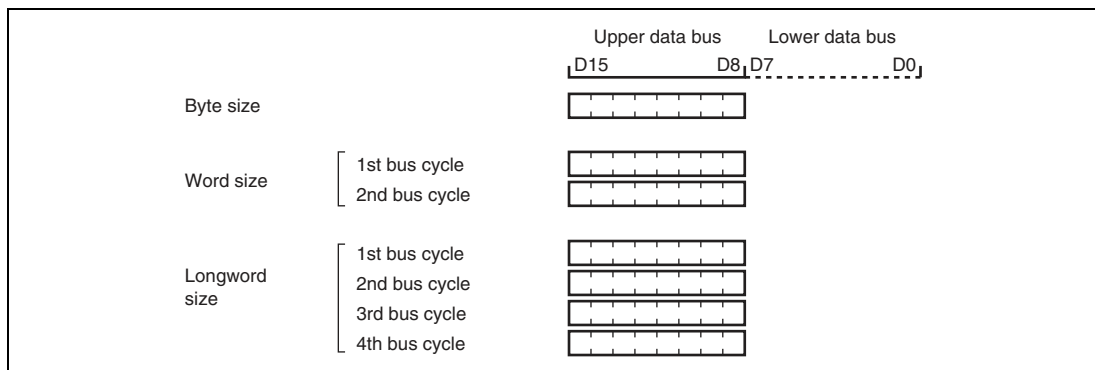


Figure 6.8 Access Sizes and Data Alignment Control (8-Bit Access Space)

16-Bit Access Space: Figure 6.9 illustrates data alignment control for the 16-bit access space. With the 16-bit access space, the upper data bus (D15 to D8) and lower data bus (D7 to D0) are used for accesses. The amount of data that can be accessed at one time is one byte or one word, and a longword transfer instruction is executed as two word transfer instructions.

In byte access, whether the upper or lower data bus is used is determined by whether the address is even or odd. The upper data bus is used for an even address, and the lower data bus for an odd address.

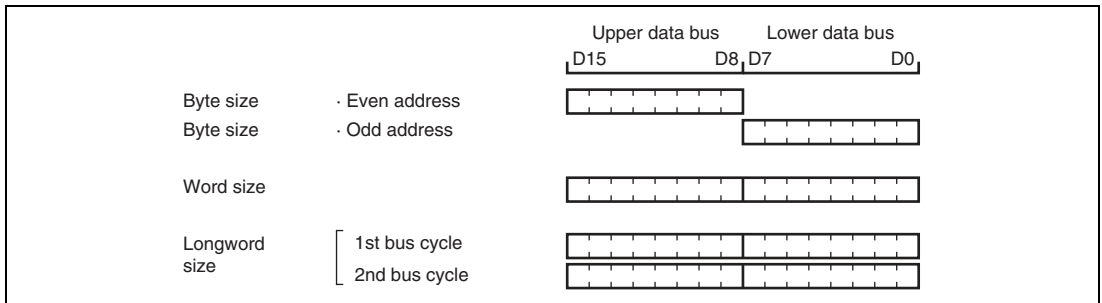


Figure 6.9 Access Sizes and Data Alignment Control (16-Bit Access Space)

6.6.2 Valid Strobes

Table 6.3 shows the data buses used and valid strobes for the access spaces.

In a read, the \overline{RD} signal is valid without discrimination between the upper and lower halves of the data bus.

In a write, the \overline{HWR} signal is valid for the upper half of the data bus, and the \overline{LWR} signal for the lower half.

Table 6.3 Data Buses Used and Valid Strobes

| Area | Access Size | Read/Write | Address | Valid Strobe | Upper Data Bus (D15 to D8) | Lower Data Bus (D7 to D0) |
|---------------------|-------------|------------|----------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 8-bit access space | Byte | Read | — | \overline{RD} | Valid | Invalid |
| | | Write | — | \overline{HWR} | | Hi-Z |
| 16-bit access space | Byte | Read | Even | \overline{RD} | Valid | Invalid |
| | | Read | Odd | | Invalid | Valid |
| | Write | Even | \overline{HWR} | Valid | Hi-Z | |
| | Write | Odd | \overline{LWR} | Hi-Z | Valid | |
| Word | Read | — | \overline{RD} | Valid | Valid | |
| | Write | — | $\overline{HWR}, \overline{LWR}$ | Valid | Valid | |

Notes: Hi-Z: High impedance.

Invalid: Input state: input value is ignored.

6.6.3 Basic Timing

8-Bit 2-State Access Space: Figure 6.10 shows the bus timing for an 8-bit 2-state access space. When an 8-bit access space is accessed, the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is used.

Wait states cannot be inserted.

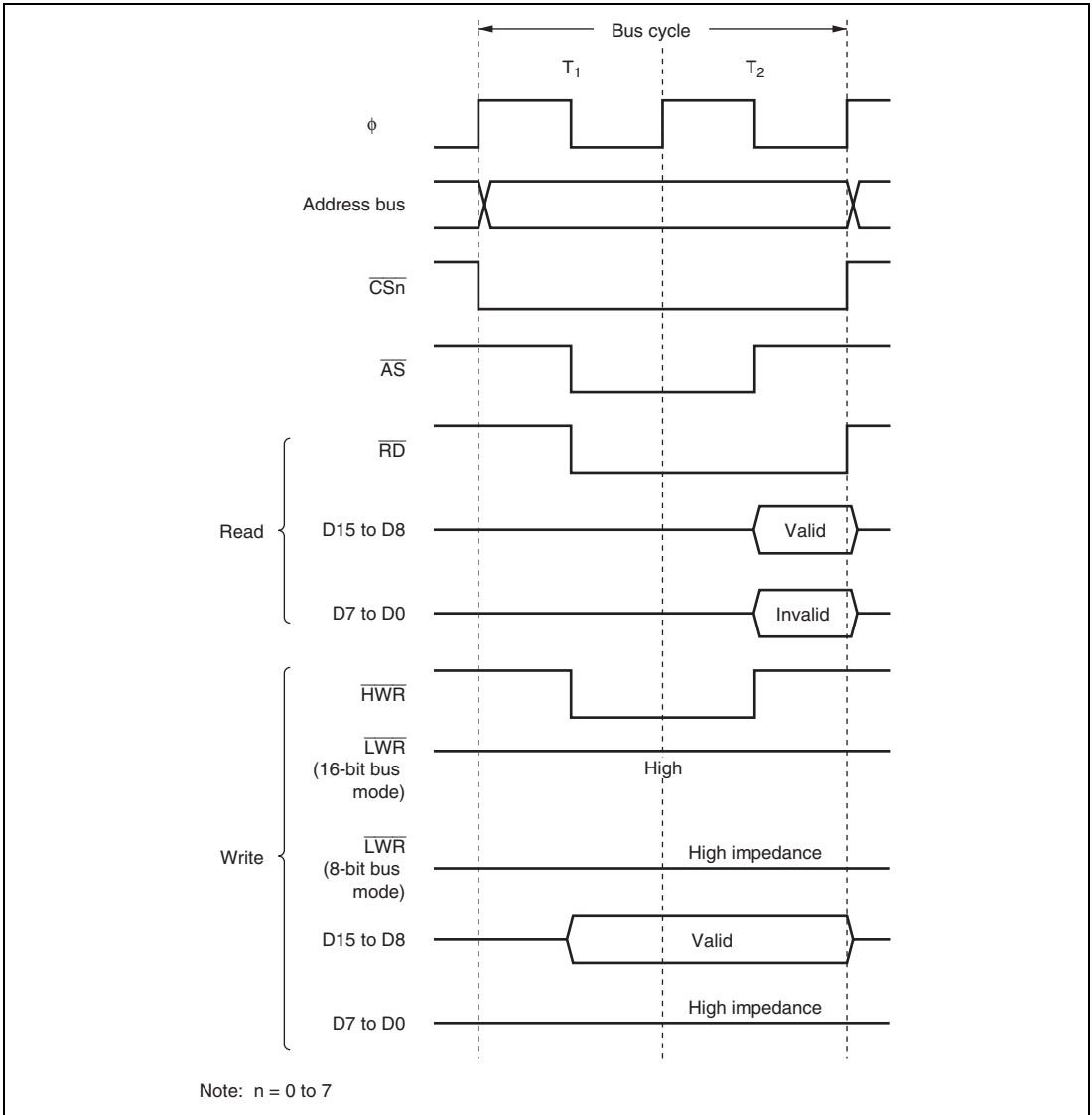


Figure 6.10 Bus Timing for 8-Bit 2-State Access Space

8-Bit 3-State Access Space (Except Area 6): Figure 6.11 shows the bus timing for an 8-bit 3-state access space. When an 8-bit access space is accessed, the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is used.

Wait states can be inserted.

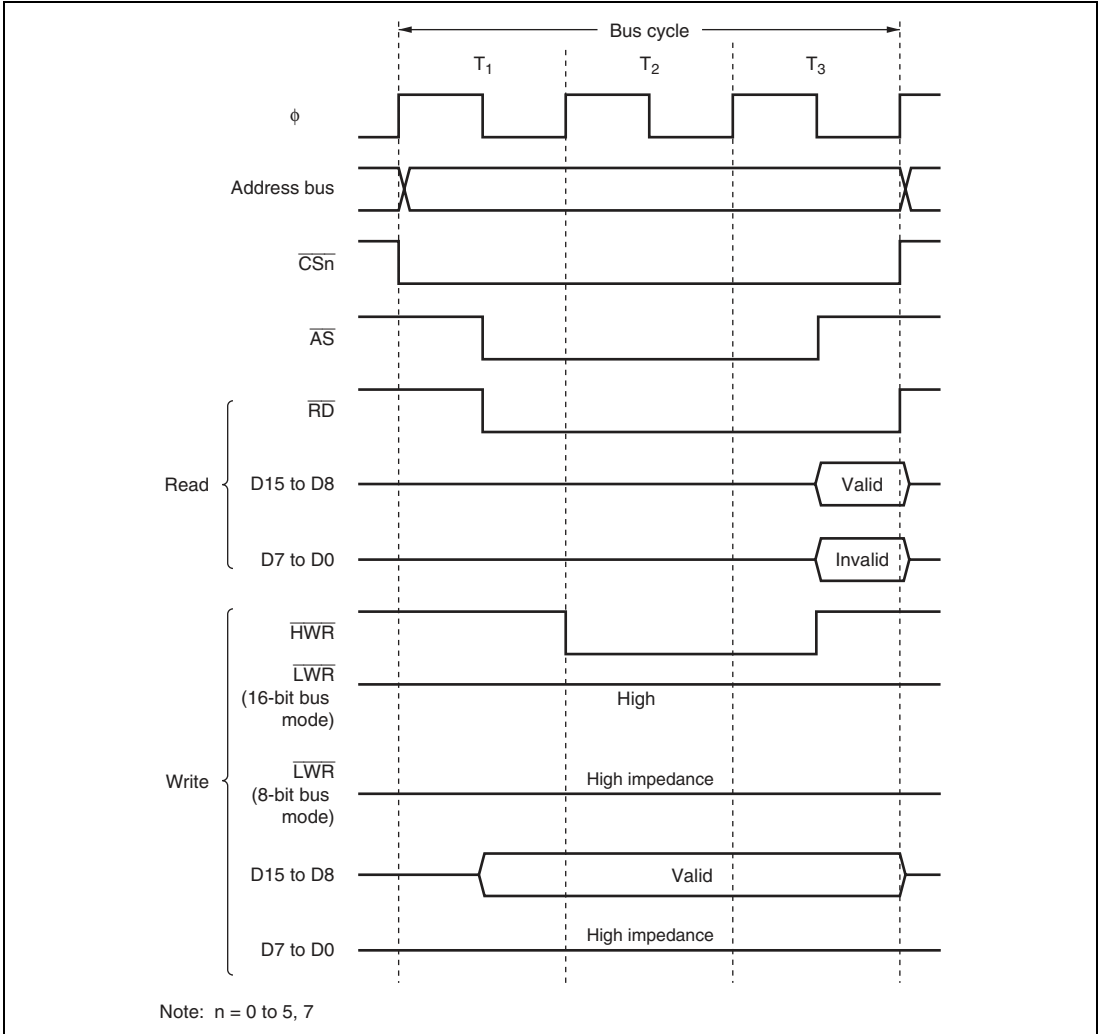


Figure 6.11 Bus Timing for 8-Bit 3-State Access Space (Except Area 6)

8-Bit 3-State Access Space (Area 6): Figure 6.12 shows the bus timing for area 6. When area 6 is accessed, the data bus cannot be used.

Wait states cannot be inserted.

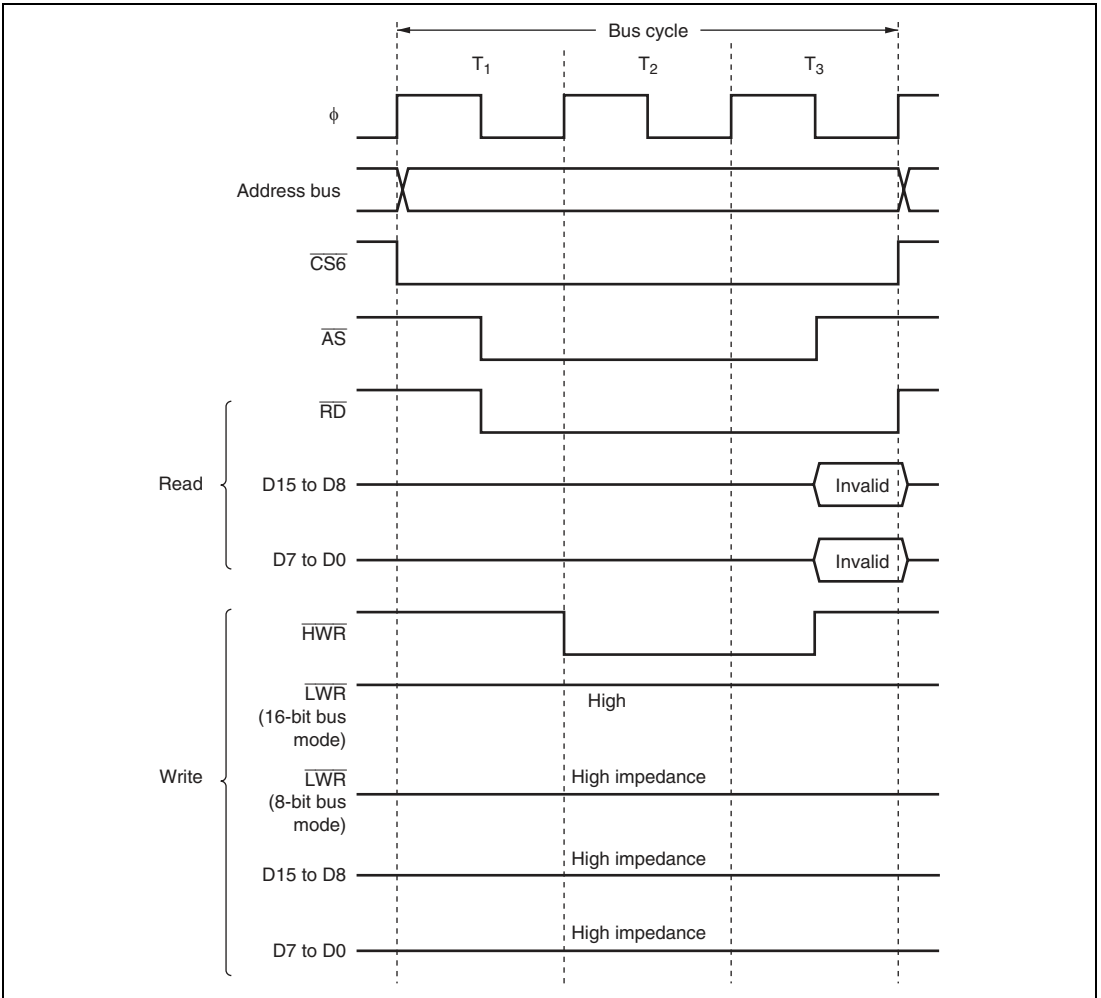


Figure 6.12 Bus Timing for Area 6

16-Bit 2-State Access Space: Figures 6.13 to 6.15 show bus timings for a 16-bit 2-state access space. When a 16-bit access space is accessed, the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is used for the even address, and the lower half (D7 to D0) for the odd address.

Wait states cannot be inserted.

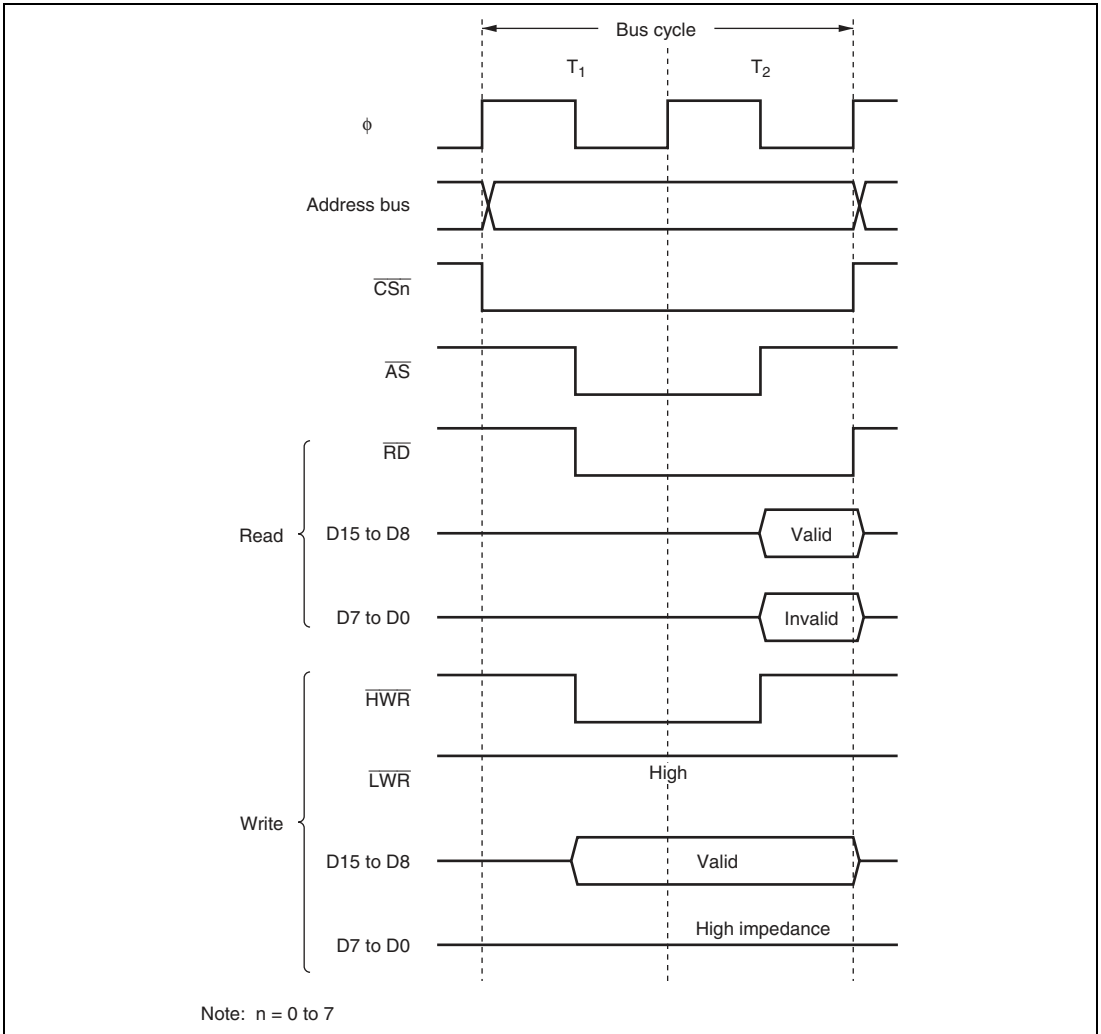


Figure 6.13 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (1) (Even Address Byte Access)

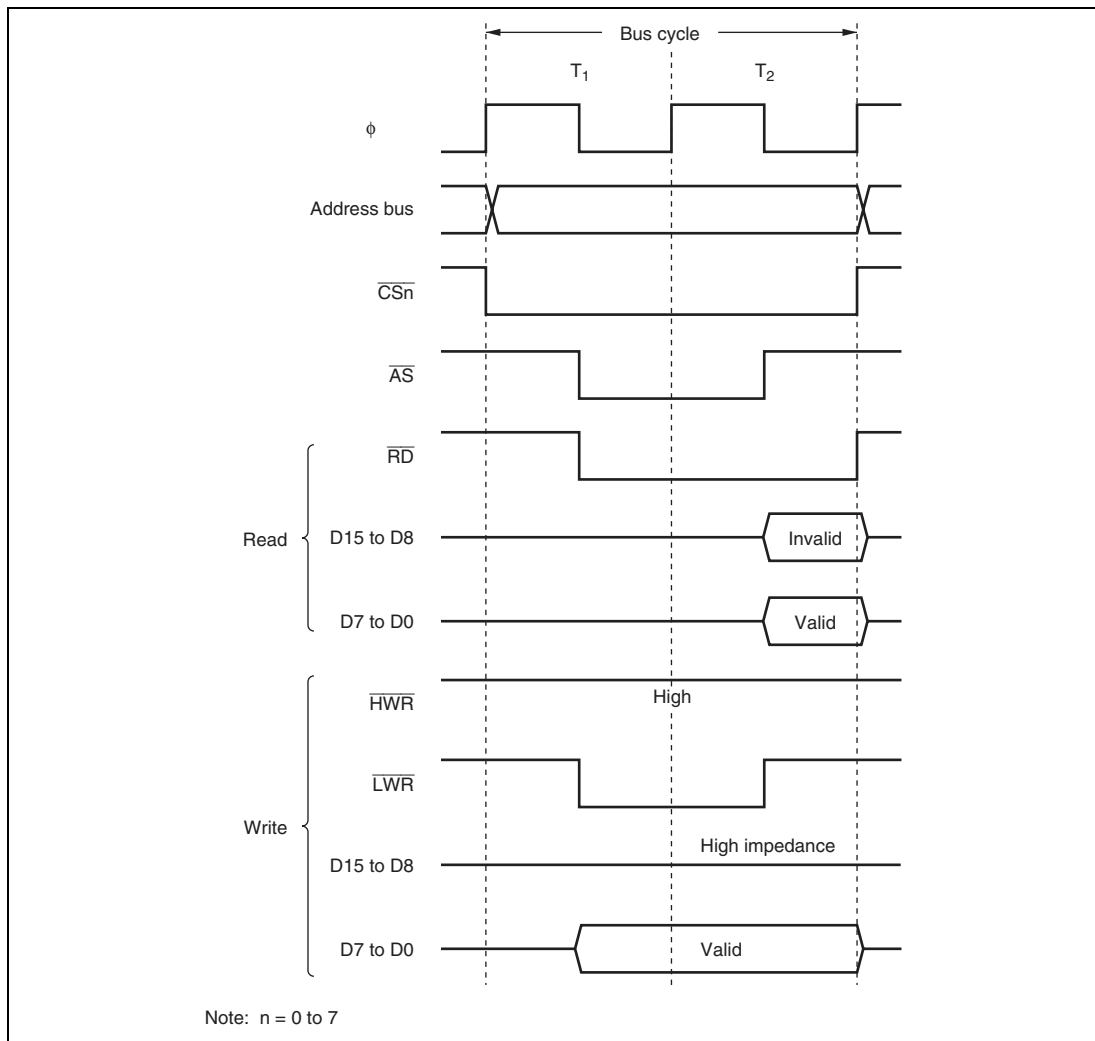


Figure 6.14 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (2) (Odd Address Byte Access)

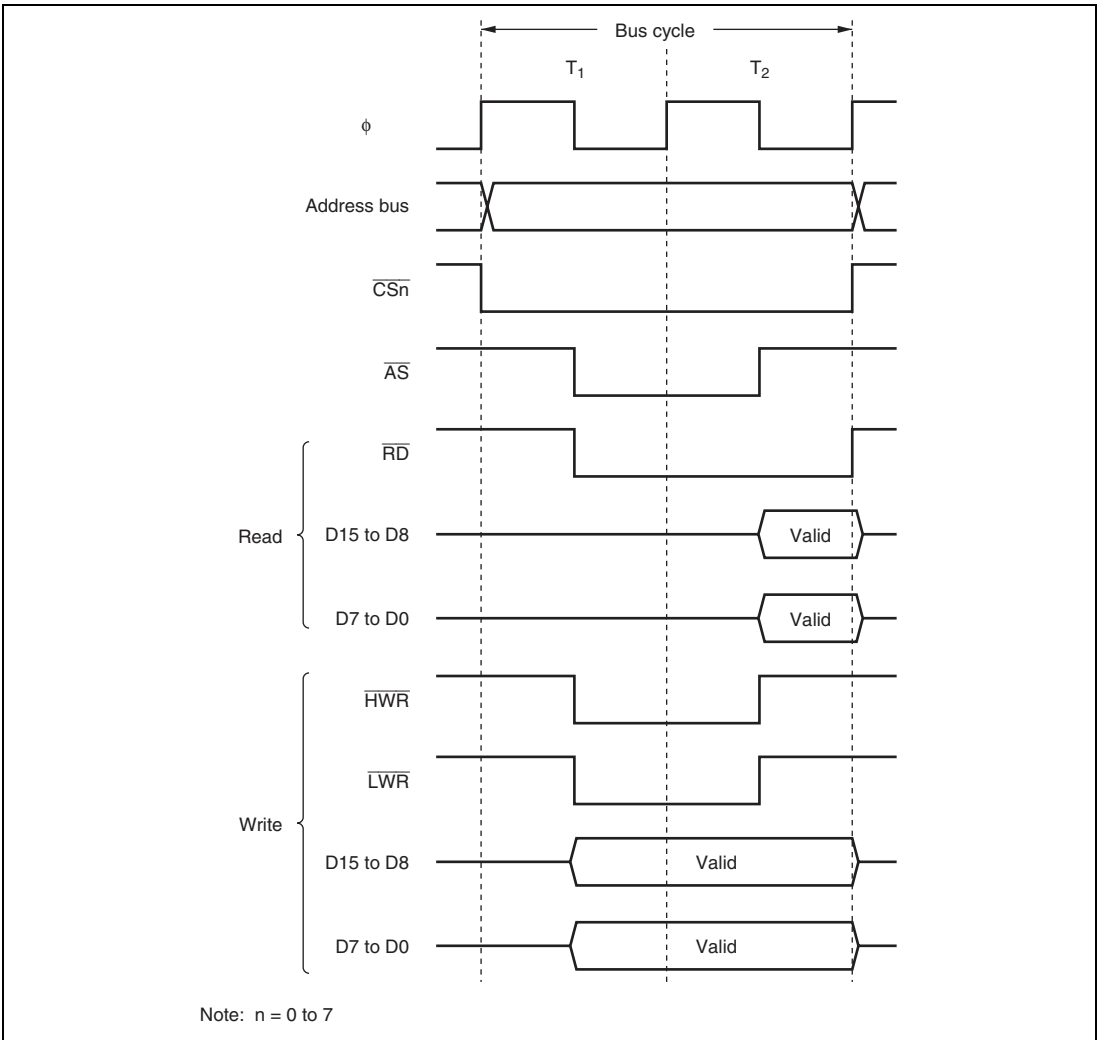


Figure 6.15 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 2-State Access Space (3) (Word Access)

16-Bit 3-State Access Space: Figures 6.16 to 6.18 show bus timings for a 16-bit 3-state access space. When a 16-bit access space is accessed, the upper half (D15 to D8) of the data bus is used for the even address, and the lower half (D7 to D0) for the odd address.

Wait states can be inserted.

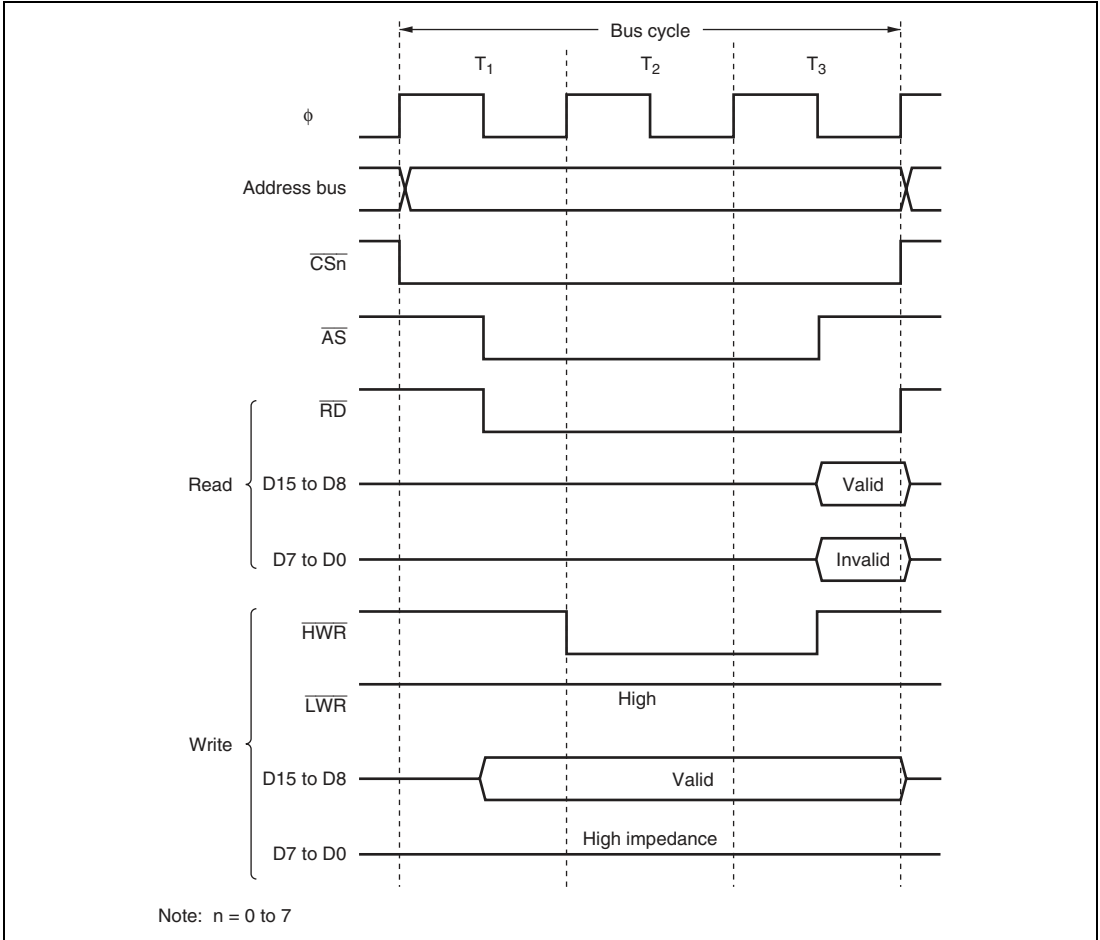


Figure 6.16 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (1) (Even Address Byte Access)

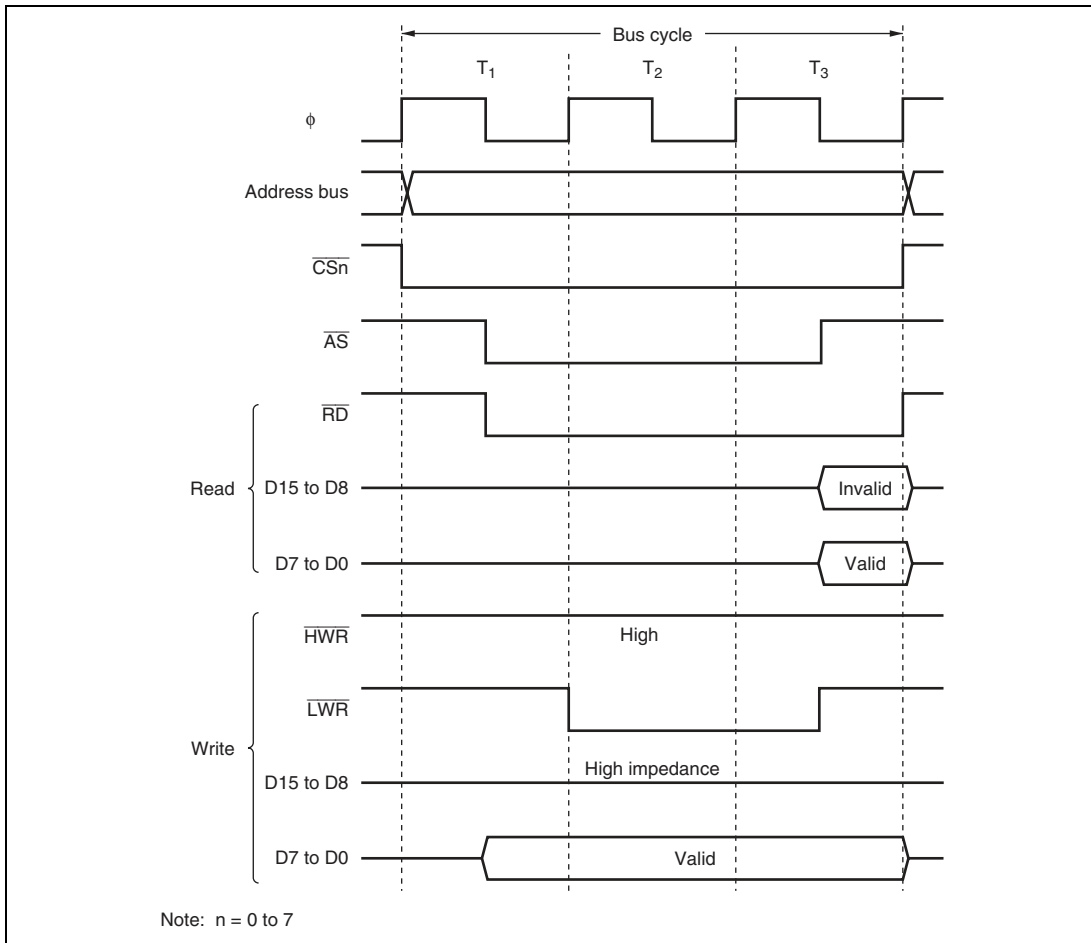


Figure 6.17 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (2) (Odd Address Byte Access)

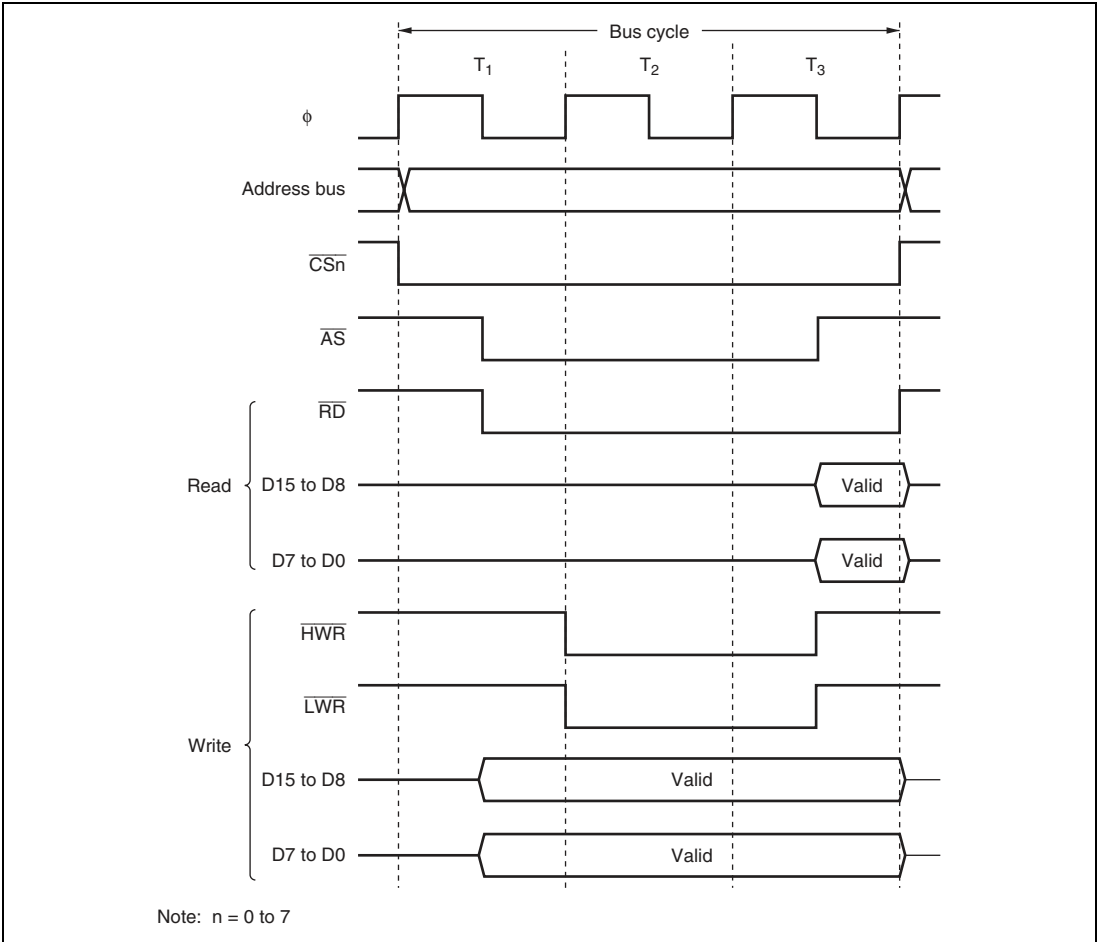


Figure 6.18 Bus Timing for 16-Bit 3-State Access Space (3) (Word Access)

6.6.4 Wait Control

When accessing external space, this LSI can extend the bus cycle by inserting one or more wait states (T_w). There are two ways of inserting wait states: program wait insertion and pin wait insertion using the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin.

Program Wait Insertion: From 0 to 3 wait states can be inserted automatically between the T_2 state and T_3 state on an individual area basis in 3-state access space, according to the settings of WCRH and WCRL.

Pin Wait Insertion: Setting the WAITE bit in BCRL to 1 enables wait insertion by means of the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin. When external space is accessed in this state, program wait insertion is first carried out according to the settings in WCRH and WCRL. Then, if the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin is low at the falling edge of ϕ in the last T_2 or T_w state, a T_w state is inserted. If the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin is held low, T_w states are inserted until it goes high.

Figure 6.19 shows an example of wait state insertion timing.

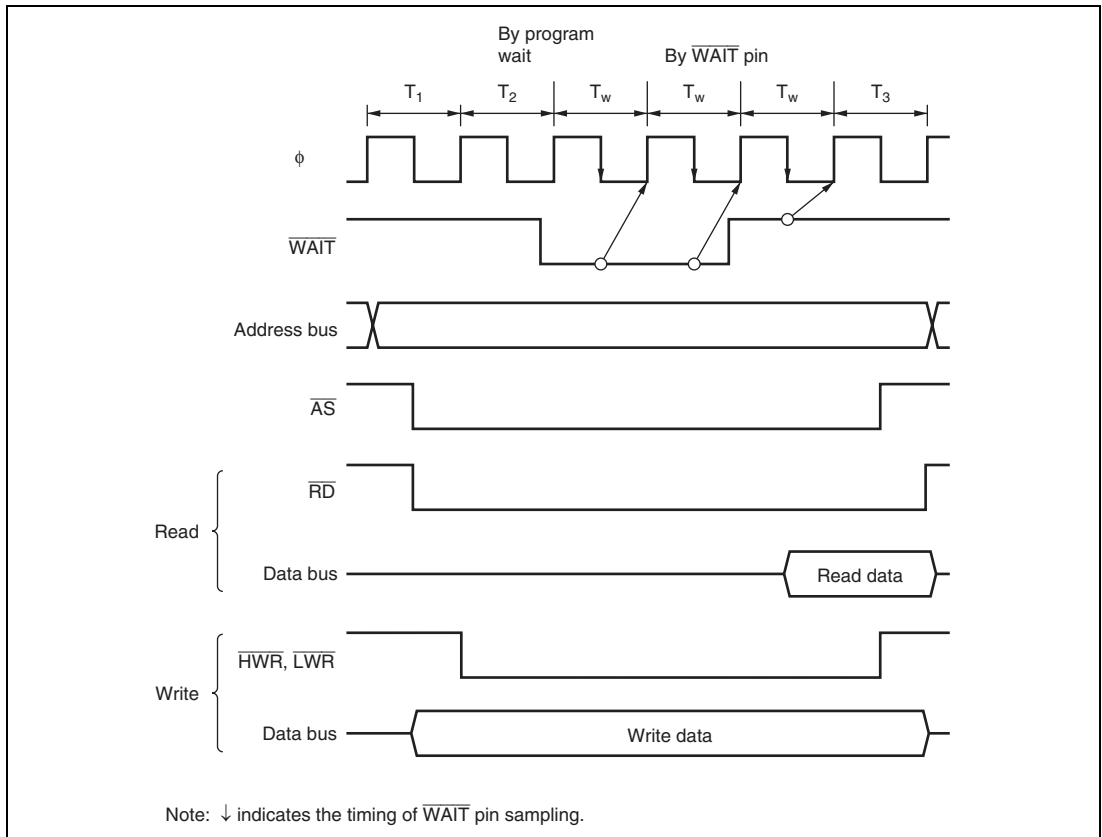


Figure 6.19 Example of Wait State Insertion Timing

6.7 burst ROM Interface

With this LSI, external space area 0 can be designated as burst ROM space, and burst ROM interfacing can be performed. The burst ROM space interface enables 16-bit configuration ROM with burst access capability to be accessed at high speed.

Area 0 can be designated as burst ROM space by means of the BRSTRM bit in BCRH.

Consecutive burst accesses of a maximum of 4 words or 8 words can be performed for CPU instruction fetches only. One or two states can be selected for burst access.

6.7.1 Basic Timing

The number of states in the initial cycle (full access) of the burst ROM interface is in accordance with the setting of the AST0 bit in ASTCR. Also, when the AST0 bit is set to 1, wait state insertion is possible. One or two states can be selected for the burst cycle, according to the setting of the BRSTS1 bit in BCRH. Wait states cannot be inserted. When area 0 is designated as burst ROM space, it becomes 16-bit access space regardless of the setting of the ABW0 bit in ABWCR.

When the BRSTS0 bit in BCRH is cleared to 0, burst access of up to 4 words is performed; when the BRSTS0 bit is set to 1, burst access of up to 8 words is performed.

The basic access timing for burst ROM space is shown in figures 6.20 and 6.21. The timing shown in figure 6.20 is for the case where the AST0 and BRSTS1 bits are both set to 1, and that in figure 6.21 is for the case where both these bits are cleared to 0.

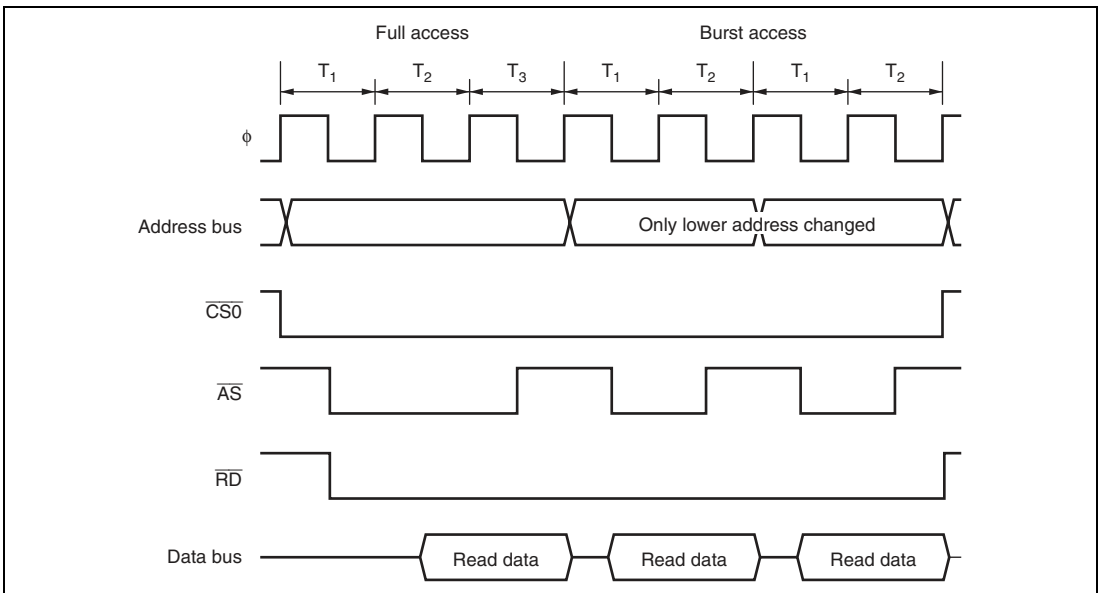


Figure 6.20 Example of Burst ROM Access Timing (When AST0 = BRSTS1 = 1)

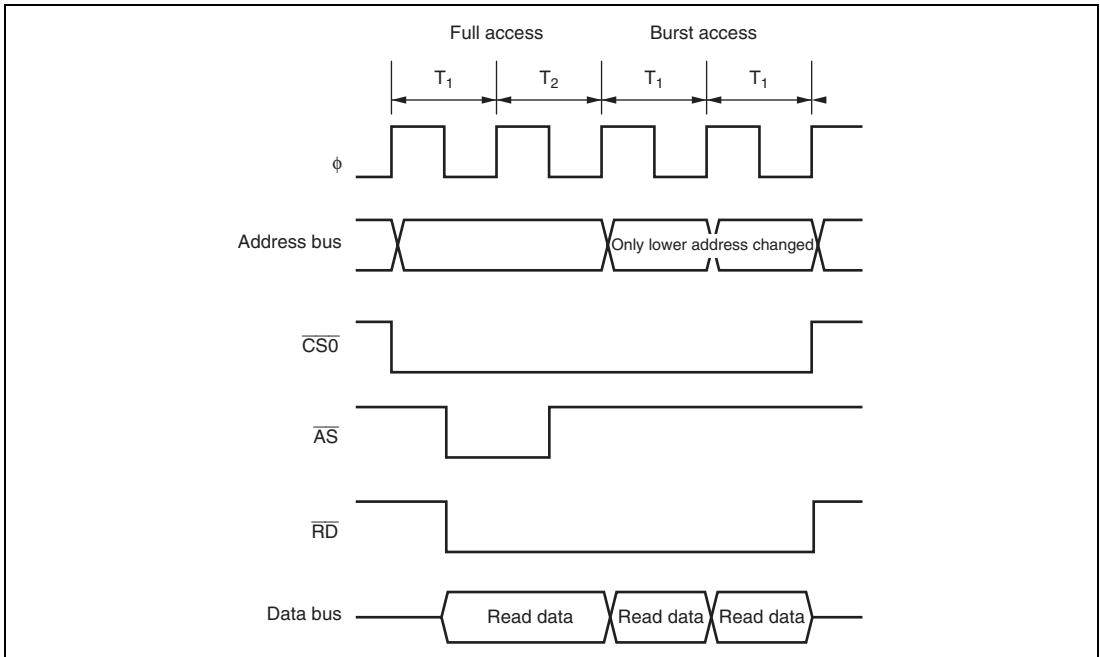


Figure 6.21 Example of Burst ROM Access Timing (When $AST0 = BRSTS1 = 0$)

6.7.2 Wait Control

As with the basic bus interface, either program wait insertion or pin wait insertion using the \overline{WAIT} pin can be used in the initial cycle (full access) of the burst ROM interface. See section 6.6.4, Wait Control.

Wait states cannot be inserted in a burst cycle.

6.8 Idle Cycle

When this LSI accesses external space, it can insert a 1-state idle cycle (T_1) between bus cycles in the following two cases: (1) when read accesses between different areas occur consecutively, and (2) when a write cycle occurs immediately after a read cycle. By inserting an idle cycle it is possible, for example, to avoid data collisions between ROM, with a long output floating time, and high-speed memory, I/O interfaces, and so on.

Consecutive Reads between Different Areas: If consecutive reads between different areas occur while the ICIS1 bit in BCRH is set to 1, an idle cycle is inserted at the start of the second read cycle.

Figure 6.22 shows an example of the operation in this case. In this example, bus cycle A is a read cycle from ROM with a long output floating time, and bus cycle B is a read cycle from SRAM, each being located in a different area. In (a), an idle cycle is not inserted, and a collision occurs in cycle B between the read data from ROM and that from SRAM. In (b), an idle cycle is inserted, and a data collision is prevented.

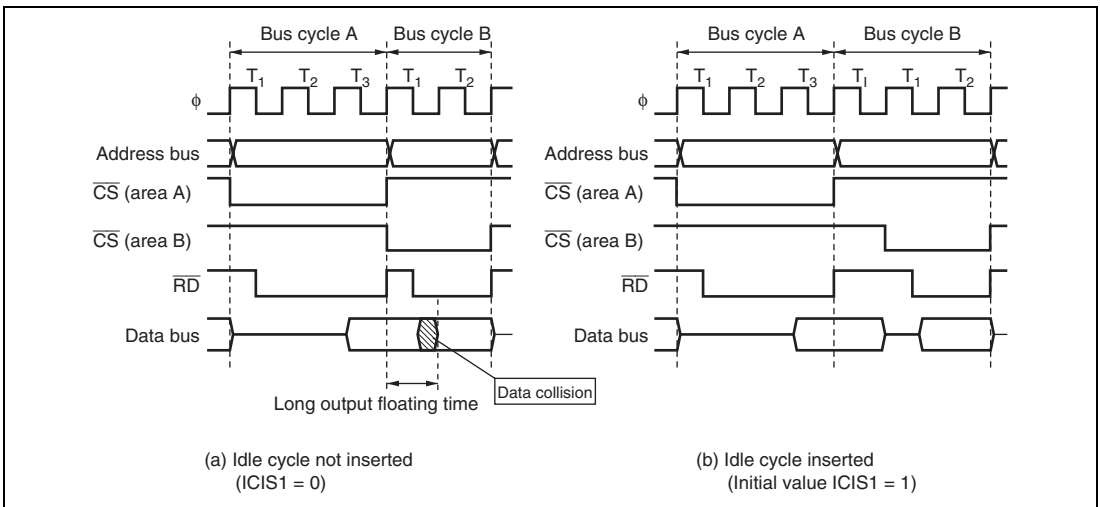


Figure 6.22 Example of Idle Cycle Operation (1)

Write after Read: If an external write occurs after an external read while the ICIS0 bit in BCRH is set to 1, an idle cycle is inserted at the start of the write cycle.

Figure 6.23 shows an example of the operation in this case. In this example, bus cycle A is a read cycle from ROM with a long output floating time, and bus cycle B is a CPU write cycle. In (a), an idle cycle is not inserted, and a collision occurs in cycle B between the read data from ROM and the CPU write data. In (b), an idle cycle is inserted, and a data collision is prevented.

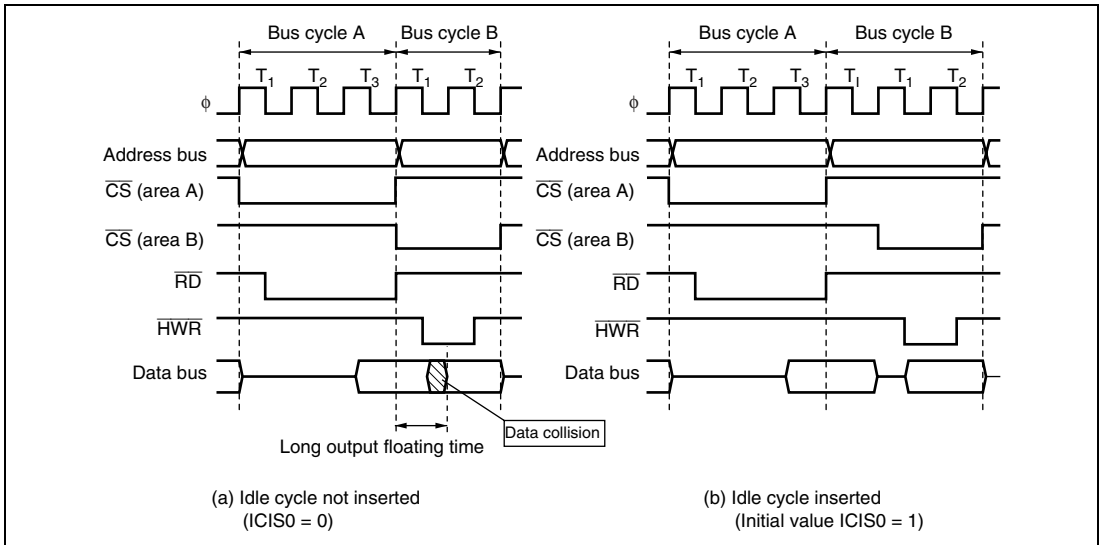


Figure 6.23 Example of Idle Cycle Operation (2)

Relationship between Chip Select (\overline{CS}) Signal and Read (\overline{RD}) Signal: Depending on the system's load conditions, the \overline{RD} signal may lag behind the \overline{CS} signal. An example is shown in figure 6.24.

In this case, with the setting for no idle cycle insertion (a), there may be a period of overlap between the bus cycle A \overline{RD} signal and the bus cycle B \overline{CS} signal.

Setting idle cycle insertion, as in (b), however, will prevent any overlap between the \overline{RD} and \overline{CS} signals.

In the initial state after reset release, idle cycle insertion (b) is set.

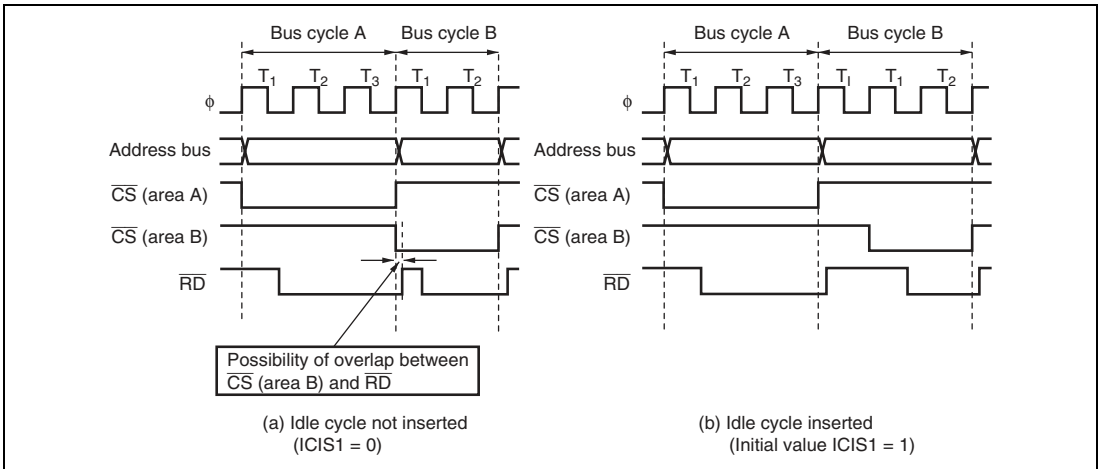


Figure 6.24 Relationship between Chip Select (\overline{CS}) and Read (\overline{RD})

Table 6.4 shows pin states in an idle cycle.

Table 6.4 Pin States in Idle Cycle

| Pins | Pin State |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| A23 to A0 | Contents of next bus cycle |
| D15 to D0 | High impedance |
| \overline{CSn} | High |
| \overline{AS} | High |
| \overline{RD} | High |
| HWR | High |
| \overline{LWR} | High |

6.9 Bus Release

This LSI can release the external bus in response to a bus request from an external device. In the external bus released state, the internal bus master continues to operate as long as there is no external access.

In external extended mode, the bus can be released to an external device by setting the BRLE bit in BCRL to 1. Driving the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin low issues an external bus request to this LSI. When the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin is sampled, at the prescribed timing the $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ pin is driven low, and the address bus, data bus, and bus control signals are placed in the high-impedance state, establishing the external bus-released state.

In the external bus released state, an internal bus master can perform accesses using the internal bus. When an internal bus master wants to make an external access, it temporarily defers activation of the bus cycle, and waits for the bus request from the external bus master to be dropped.

When the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin is driven high, the $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ pin is driven high at the prescribed timing and the external bus released state is terminated.

In the event of simultaneous external bus release request and external access request generation, the order of priority is as follows:

(High) External bus release > Internal bus master external access (Low)

Table 6.5 shows pin states in the external bus released state.

Table 6.5 Pin States in Bus Released State

| Pins | Pin State |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| A23 to A0 | High impedance |
| D15 to D0 | High impedance |
| $\overline{\text{CSn}}$ | High impedance |
| $\overline{\text{AS}}$ | High impedance |
| $\overline{\text{RD}}$ | High impedance |
| $\overline{\text{HWR}}$ | High impedance |
| $\overline{\text{LWR}}$ | High impedance |

Figure 6.25 shows the timing for transition to the bus-released state.

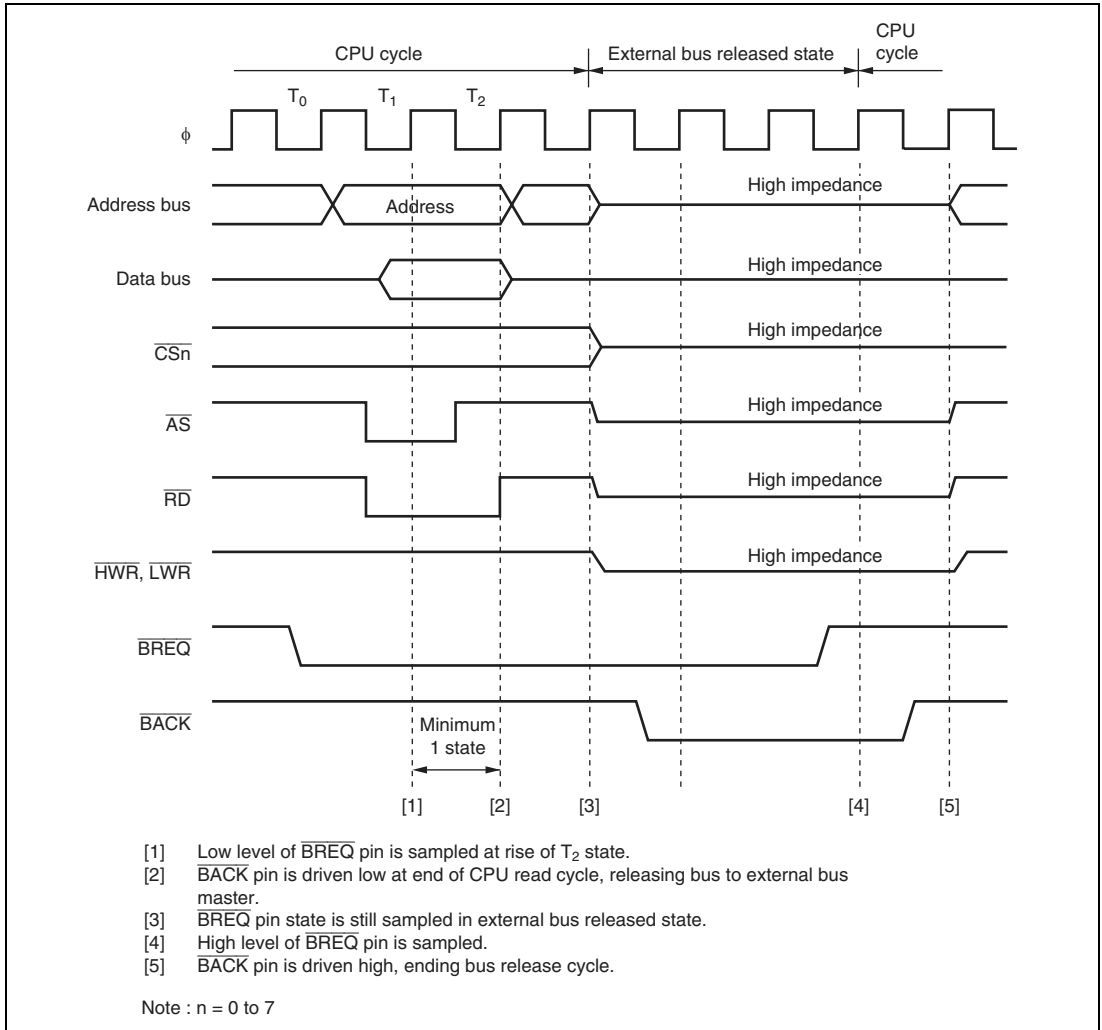


Figure 6.25 Bus-Released State Transition Timing

6.9.1 Notes on Bus Release

The external bus release function halts when a transition is made to sleep mode while MSTPCR is set to H'FFFFFF. To use the external bus release function in sleep mode, do not set MSTPCR to H'FFFFFF.

6.10 Bus Arbitration

This LSI has a bus arbiter that arbitrates bus master operations.

There are three bus masters, the CPU, DMAC, and DTC, which perform read/write operations when they have possession of the bus. Each bus master requests the bus by means of a bus request signal. The bus arbiter determines priorities at the prescribed timing, and permits use of the bus by means of a bus request acknowledge signal. The selected bus master then takes possession of the bus and begins its operation.

6.10.1 Operation

The bus arbiter detects the bus masters' bus request signals, and if the bus is requested, sends a bus request acknowledge signal to the bus master making the request. If there are bus requests from more than one bus master, the bus request acknowledge signal is sent to the one with the highest priority. When a bus master receives the bus request acknowledge signal, it takes possession of the bus until that signal is canceled.

The order of priority of the bus masters is as follows:

(High) DMAC > DTC > CPU (Low)

An internal bus access by an internal bus master, and external bus release, can be executed in parallel.

In the event of simultaneous external bus release request, and internal bus master external access request generation, the order of priority is as follows:

(High) External bus release > Internal bus master external access (Low)

6.10.2 Bus Transfer Timing

Even if a bus request is received from a bus master with a higher priority than that of the bus master that has acquired the bus and is currently operating, the bus is not necessarily transferred immediately. There are specific times at which each bus master can relinquish the bus.

CPU: The CPU is the lowest-priority bus master, and if a bus request is received from the DMAC and DTC, the bus arbiter transfers the bus to the bus master that issued the request. The timing for transfer of the bus is as follows:

- The bus is transferred at a break between bus cycles. However, if a bus cycle is executed in discrete operations, as in the case of a longword-size access, the bus is not transferred between the operations.
- If the CPU is in sleep mode, it transfers the bus immediately.

DTC: The DTC sends the bus arbiter a request for the bus when an activation request is generated.

The DTC can release the bus after a vector read, a register information read (3 states), a single data transfer, or a register information write (3 states). It does not release the bus during a register information read (3 states), a single data transfer, or a register information write (3 states).

DMAC: The DMAC sends the bus arbiter a request for the bus when an activation request is generated.

In the case of a USB request in normal mode, and in short address mode or in cycle steal mode, the DMAC releases the bus after a single transfer.

In block transfer mode, it releases the bus after transfer of one block, and in burst mode, after completion of the transfer.

6.10.3 External Bus Release Usage Note

External bus release can be performed on completion of an external bus cycle. The \overline{CS} signal remains low until the end of the external bus cycle. Therefore, when external bus release is performed, the \overline{CS} signal may change from the low level to the high-impedance state.

6.11 Resets and the Bus Controller

In a power-on reset, this LSI, including the bus controller, enters the reset state at that point, and an executing bus cycle is discontinued.

In a manual reset, the bus controller's registers and internal state are maintained, and an executing external bus cycle is completed. In this case, \overline{WAIT} input is ignored and write data is not guaranteed.

Section 7 DMA Controller (DMAC)

This LSI has a built-in DMA controller (DMAC) which can carry out data transfer on up to 4 channels.

7.1 Features

The features of the DMAC are listed below.

- Choice of short address mode or full address mode
 - (1) Short address mode
 - Maximum of 4 channels can be used
 - Choice of dual address mode
 - In dual address mode, one of the two addresses, transfer source and transfer destination, is specified as 24 bits and the other as 16 bits
 - Choice of sequential mode, idle mode, or repeat mode for dual address mode
 - (2) Full address mode
 - Maximum of 2 channels can be used
 - Transfer source and transfer destination address specified as 24 bits
 - Choice of normal mode or block transfer mode
- 16-Mbyte address space can be specified directly
- Byte or word can be set as the transfer unit
- Activation sources: internal interrupt, USB request, auto-request (depending on transfer mode)
 - 16-bit timer-pulse unit (TPU) compare match/input capture interrupts
 - Serial communication interface (SCI_0, SCI_1) transmission complete interrupt, reception complete interrupt
 - A/D conversion end interrupt
 - USB request
 - Auto-request
- Module stop mode can be set

A block diagram of the DMAC is shown in figure 7.1.

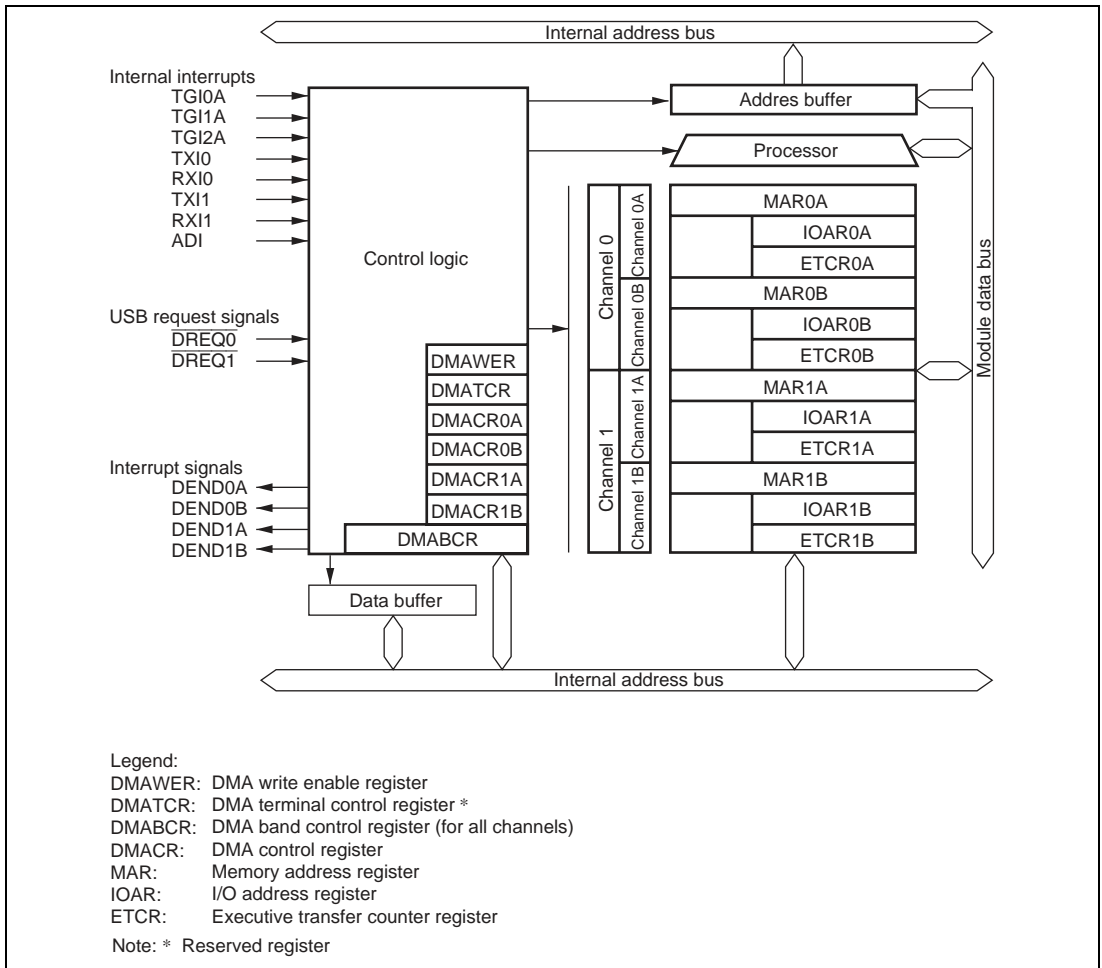


Figure 7.1 Block Diagram of DMAC

7.2 Register Configuration

The DMAC registers are listed below.

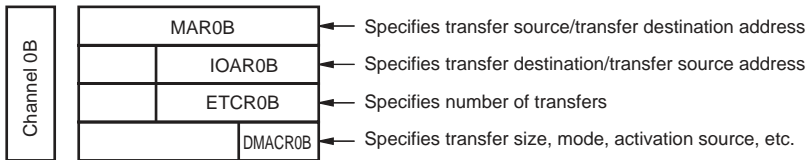
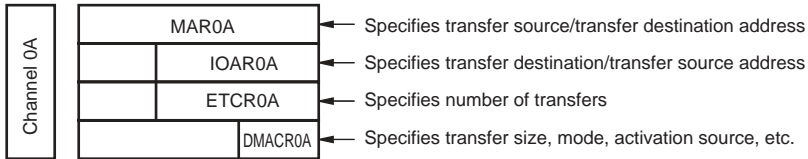
- Memory address register 0A (MAR0A)
- I/O address register 0A (IOAR0A)
- Transfer count register 0A (ETCR0A)
- Memory address register 0B (MAR0B)
- I/O address register 0B (IOAR0B)
- Transfer count register 0B (ETCR0B)
- Memory address register 1A (MAR1A)
- I/O address register 1A (IOAR1A)
- Transfer count register 1A (ETCR1A)
- Memory address register 1B (MAR1B)
- I/O address register 1B (IOAR1B)
- Transfer count register 1B (ETCR1B)
- DMA write enable register (DMAWER)
- DMA control register 0A (DMACR0A)
- DMA control register 0B (DMACR0B)
- DMA control register 1A (DMACR1A)
- DMA control register 1B (DMACR1B)
- DMA band control register (DMABCR)

The DMAC register functions differs depending on the address modes: short address mode and full address mode. The DMAC register functions are described in each address mode. Short address mode or full address mode can be selected for channels 1 and 0 independently by means of bits FAE1 and FAE0.

Table 7.1 Short Address Mode and Full Address Mode (For 1 Channel: Example of Channel 0)**FAE0 Description**

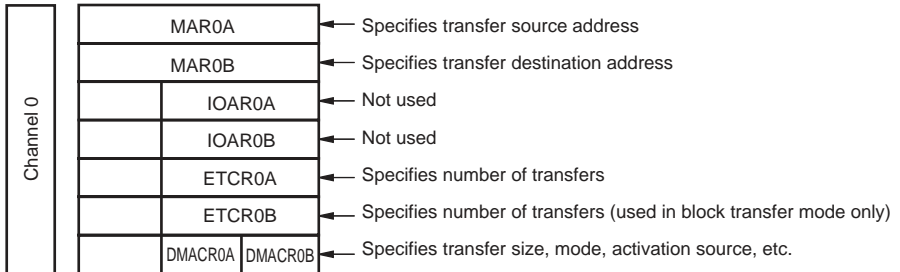
0

Short address mode specified (channels A and B operate independently)



1

Full address mode specified (channels A and B operate combination)



7.3 Register Descriptions

7.3.1 Memory Address Registers (MAR)

- Short Address Mode

MAR is a 32-bit readable/writable register that specifies the transfer source address or destination address. The upper 8 bits of MAR are reserved: they are always read as 0, and cannot be modified. Whether MAR functions as the source address register or as the destination address register can be selected by means of the DTDIR bit in DMACR.

MAR is incremented or decremented each time a byte or word transfer is executed, so that the address specified by MAR is constantly updated. For details, see section 7.3.4, DMA Control Register (DMACR). MAR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

- Full Address Mode

MAR is a 32-bit readable/writable register; MARA functions as the transfer source address register, and MARB as the destination address register.

MAR is composed of two 16-bit registers, MARH and MARL. The upper 8 bits of MARH are reserved: they are always read as 0, and cannot be modified. MAR is incremented or decremented each time a byte or word transfer is executed, so that the source or destination memory address can be updated automatically. For details, see section 7.3.4, DMA Control Register (DMACR). MAR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

7.3.2 I/O Address Register (IOAR)

- Short Address Mode

IOAR is a 16-bit readable/writable register that specifies the lower 16 bits of the transfer source address or destination address. The upper 8 bits of the transfer address are automatically set to H'FF. Whether IOAR functions as the source address register or as the destination address register can be selected by means of the DTDIR bit in DMACR.

IOAR is not incremented or decremented each time a transfer is executed, so that the address specified by IOAR is fixed. IOAR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

- Full Address Mode

IOAR is not used in full address mode transfer.

7.3.3 Execute Transfer Count Register (ETCR)

- Short Address Mode

ETCR is a 16-bit readable/writable register that specifies the number of transfers. The setting of this register is different for sequential mode and idle mode on the one hand, and for repeat mode on the other. ETCR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

- Sequential Mode and Idle Mode

In sequential mode and idle mode, ETCR functions as a 16-bit transfer counter (with a count range of 1 to 65,536). ETCR is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is performed, and when the count reaches H'0000, the DTE bit in DMABCR is cleared, and transfer ends.

- Repeat Mode

In repeat mode, ETCR functions as an 8-bit transfer counter ETCRL (with a count range of 1 to 256) and transfer number storage register ETCRH. ETCRL is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is performed, and when the count reaches H'00, ETCRL is loaded with the value in ETCRH. At this point, MAR is automatically restored to the value it had when the count was started. The DTE bit in DMABCR is not cleared, and so transfers can be performed repeatedly until the DTE bit is cleared by the user.

- Full Address Mode

ETCR is a 16-bit readable/writable register that specifies the number of transfers. The function of this register is different in normal mode and in block transfer mode. ETCR is not initialized by a reset or in standby mode.

- Normal Mode

- (a) ETCRA

In normal mode, ETCRA functions as a 16-bit transfer counter. ETCRA is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is performed, and transfer ends when the count reaches H'0000.

- (b) ETCRB

ETCRB is not used in normal mode.

- Block Transfer Mode

- (a) ETCRA

In block transfer mode, ETCRAL functions as an 8-bit block size counter and ETCRAH holds the block size. ETCRAL is decremented each time a 1-byte or 1-word transfer is performed, and when the count reaches H'00, ETCRAL is loaded with the value in ETCRAH. So by setting the block size in ETCRAH and ETCRAL, it is possible to repeatedly transfer blocks consisting of any desired number of bytes or words.

- (b) ETCRB

ETCRB functions in block transfer mode, as a 16-bit block transfer counter. ETCRB is decremented by 1 each time a block is transferred, and transfer ends when the count reaches H'0000.

7.3.4 DMA Control Register (DMACR)

DMACR controls the operation of each DMAC channel.

- Short Address Mode (common to DMACRA and DMACRB)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | DTSZ | 0 | R/W | Data Transfer Size Selects the size of data to be transferred at one time. 0: Byte-size transfer 1: Word-size transfer |
| 6 | DTID | 0 | R/W | Data Transfer Increment/Decrement Selects incrementing or decrementing of MAR every data transfer in sequential mode or repeat mode. In idle mode, MAR is neither incremented nor decremented. 0: MAR is incremented after a data transfer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTSZ = 0, MAR is incremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MAR is incremented by 2 after a transfer 1: MAR is decremented after a data transfer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTSZ = 0, MAR is decremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MAR is decremented by 2 after a transfer |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|----------|---|-----|--|-----|--|------|--|---|----|---|--|---|----|---|--|---|----|---|--|---|----|---|--|
| 5 | RPE | 0 | R/W | <p>Repeat Enable</p> <p>Used in combination with the DTIE bit in DMABCR to select the mode (sequential, idle, or repeat) in which transfer is to be performed.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td colspan="2">RPE</td> <td>DTIE</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0:</td> <td>Transfer in sequential mode (no transfer end interrupt)</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1:</td> <td>Transfer in sequential mode (with transfer end interrupt)</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0:</td> <td>Transfer in repeat mode (no transfer end interrupt)</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1:</td> <td>Transfer in idle mode (with transfer end interrupt)</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>Note: For details of operation in sequential, idle, and repeat mode, see section 7.4.2, Sequential Mode, section 7.4.3, Idle Mode, and section 7.4.4, Repeat Mode.</p> | RPE | | DTIE | | 0 | 0: | Transfer in sequential mode (no transfer end interrupt) | | 0 | 1: | Transfer in sequential mode (with transfer end interrupt) | | 1 | 0: | Transfer in repeat mode (no transfer end interrupt) | | 1 | 1: | Transfer in idle mode (with transfer end interrupt) | |
| RPE | | DTIE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0: | Transfer in sequential mode (no transfer end interrupt) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1: | Transfer in sequential mode (with transfer end interrupt) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 0: | Transfer in repeat mode (no transfer end interrupt) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1: | Transfer in idle mode (with transfer end interrupt) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | DTDIR | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Direction</p> <p>Specifies the data transfer direction (source or destination).</p> <p>0: Transfer with MAR as source address and IOAR as destination address</p> <p>1: Transfer with IOAR as source address and MAR as destination address</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 3 | DTF3 | 0 | R/W | Data Transfer Factor |
| 2 | DTF2 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the data transfer factor (activation source). |
| 1 | DTF1 | 0 | R/W | 0000: — |
| 0 | DTF0 | 0 | R/W | 0001: Activated by A/D conversion end interrupt 0010: — 0011: — 0100: Activated by SCI channel 0 transmission complete interrupt 0101: Activated by SCI channel 0 reception complete interrupt 0110: Activated by SCI channel 1 transmission complete interrupt 0111: Activated by SCI channel 1 reception complete interrupt 1000: Activated by TPU channel 0 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1001: Activated by TPU channel 1 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1010: Activated by TPU channel 2 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1011: — 1100: — 1101: — 1110: — 1111: — |

The same factor can be selected for more than one channel. In this case, activation starts with the highest-priority channel according to the relative channel priorities. For relative channel priorities, see section 7.4.10, DMAC Multi-Channel Operation.

- Full Address Mode (DMACRA)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 15 | DTSZ | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Size</p> <p>Selects the size of data to be transferred at one time.</p> <p>0: Byte-size transfer</p> <p>1: Word-size transfer</p> |
| 14 | SAID | 0 | R/W | Source Address Increment/Decrement |
| 13 | SAIDE | 0 | R/W | <p>Source Address Increment/Decrement Enable</p> <p>These bits specify whether source address register MARA is to be incremented, decremented, or left unchanged, when data transfer is performed.</p> <p>00: MARA is fixed</p> <p>01: MARA is incremented after a data transfer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTSZ = 0, MARA is incremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MARA is incremented by 2 after a transfer <p>10: MARA is fixed</p> <p>11: MARA is decremented after a data transfer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTSZ = 0, MARA is decremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MARA is decremented by 2 after a transfer |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 12 | BLKDIR | 0 | R/W | Block Direction |
| 11 | BLKE | 0 | R/W | Block Enable |
| | | | | <p>These bits specify whether normal mode or block transfer mode is to be used. If block transfer mode is specified, the BLKDIR bit specifies whether the source side or the destination side is to be the block area.</p> <p>00: Transfer in normal mode 01: Transfer in block transfer mode, destination side is block area 10: Transfer in normal mode 11: Transfer in block transfer mode, source side is block area</p> <p>For operation in normal mode and block transfer mode, see section 7.4, Operation.</p> |
| 10 to 8 | — | All 0 | R/W | <p>Reserved</p> <p>Although these bits are readable/writable, only 0 should be written here.</p> |

- Full Address Mode (DMACRB)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | — | 0 | R/W | Reserved Although this bit is readable/writable, only 0 should be written here. |
| 6 | DAID | 0 | R/W | Destination Address Increment/Decrement |
| 5 | DAIDE | 0 | R/W | Destination Address Increment/Decrement Enable These bits specify whether destination address register MARB is to be incremented, decremented, or left unchanged, when data transfer is performed. 00: MARB is fixed 01: MARB is incremented after a data transfer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTSZ = 0, MARB is incremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MARB is incremented by 2 after a transfer 10: MARB is fixed 11: MARB is decremented after a data transfer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTSZ = 0, MARB is decremented by 1 after a transfer • When DTSZ = 1, MARB is decremented by 2 after a transfer |
| 4 | — | 0 | R/W | Reserved Although this bit is readable/writable, only 0 should be written here. |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 3 | DTF3 | 0 | R/W | Data Transfer Factor |
| 2 | DTF2 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the data transfer factor (activation source). |
| 1 | DTF1 | 0 | R/W | In normal mode |
| 0 | DTF0 | 0 | R/W | 0000: — 0001: — 0010: — 0011: — 010x: — 0110: Auto-request (cycle steal) 0111: Auto-request (burst) 1xxx: — In block transfer mode 0000: — 0001: Activated by A/D conversion end interrupt 0010: — 0011: Activated by $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal's low level input from USB (USB request) 0100: Activated by SCI channel 0 transmission complete interrupt 0101: Activated by SCI channel 0 reception complete interrupt 0110: Activated by SCI channel 1 transmission complete interrupt 0111: Activated by SCI channel 1 reception complete interrupt 1000: Activated by TPU channel 0 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1001: Activated by TPU channel 1 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1010: Activated by TPU channel 2 compare match/input capture A interrupt 1011: — 11xx: — The same factor can be selected for more than one channel. In this case, activation starts with the highest-priority channel according to the relative channel priorities. For relative channel priorities, see section 7.4.10, DMAC Multi-Channel Operation. Legend: x: Don't care |

7.3.5 DMA Band Control Register (DMABCR)

DMABCR controls the operation of each DMAC channel.

- Short Address Mode

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-------------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 15 | FAE1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Full Address Enable 1</p> <p>Specifies whether channel 1 is to be used in short address mode or full address mode.</p> <p>In short address mode, channels 1A and 1B are used as independent channels.</p> <p>0: Short address mode 1: Full address mode</p> |
| 14 | FAE0 | 0 | R/W | <p>Full Address Enable 0</p> <p>Specifies whether channel 0 is to be used in short address mode or full address mode.</p> <p>In short address mode, channels 0A and 0B are used as independent channels.</p> <p>0: Short address mode 1: Full address mode</p> |
| 13, — 12 | — | All 0 | R/W | <p>Reserved</p> <p>Only 0 should be written to these bits.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 11 | DTA1B | 0 | R/W | Data Transfer Acknowledge |
| 10 | DTA1A | 0 | R/W | These bits enable or disable clearing, when DMA transfer is performed, of the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 1, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting is cleared automatically by DMA transfer. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 1, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting does not issue an interrupt request to the CPU or DTC. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 0, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting is not cleared when a transfer is performed, and can issue an interrupt request to the CPU or DTC in parallel. In this case, the interrupt source should be cleared by the CPU or DTC transfer. When DTE = 0, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting issues an interrupt request to the CPU or DTC regardless of the DTA bit setting. 0: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is disabled 1: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is enabled |
| 9 | DTA0B | 0 | R/W | |
| 8 | DTA0A | 0 | R/W | |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | DTE1B | 0 | R/W | Data Transfer Enable |
| 6 | DTE1A | 0 | R/W | When DTE = 0, data transfer is disabled and the activation source selected by the data transfer factor setting is ignored. If the activation source is an internal interrupt, an interrupt request is issued to the CPU or DTC. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 when DTE = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating the end of a transfer, and issues a transfer end interrupt request to the CPU or DTC. The conditions for the DTE bit being cleared to 0 are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When initialization is performed • When the specified number of transfers have been completed in a transfer mode other than repeat mode • When 0 is written to the DTE bit to forcibly abort the transfer, or for a similar reason When DTE = 1, data transfer is enabled and the DMAC waits for a request by the activation source selected by the data transfer factor setting. When a request is issued by the activation source, DMA transfer is executed. The condition for the DTE bit being set to 1 is as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 1 is written to the DTE bit after the DTE bit is read as 0 0: Data transfer disabled 1: Data transfer enabled |
| 5 | DTE0B | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | DTE0A | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | DTIE1B | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | DTIE1A | 0 | R/W | These bits enable or disable an interrupt to the CPU or DTC when transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 when DTE = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating the end of a transfer, and issues a transfer end interrupt request to the CPU or DTC. A transfer end interrupt can be canceled either by clearing the DTIE bit to 0 in the interrupt handling routine, or by performing processing to continue transfer by setting the transfer counter and address register again, and then setting the DTE bit to 1. 0: Transfer end interrupt disabled 1: Transfer end interrupt enabled |
| 1 | DTIE0B | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | DTIE0A | 0 | R/W | |
| | | | | |

- Full Address Mode

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 15 | F AE1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Full Address Enable 1</p> <p>Specifies whether channel 1 is to be used in short address mode or full address mode.</p> <p>In full address mode, channels 1A and 1B are used together as a single channel.</p> <p>0: Short address mode 1: Full address mode</p> |
| 14 | F AE0 | 0 | R/W | <p>Full Address Enable 0</p> <p>Specifies whether channel 0 is to be used in short address mode or full address mode.</p> <p>In full address mode, channels 0A and 0B are used together as a single channel.</p> <p>0: Short address mode 1: Full address mode</p> |
| 13, 12 | — | All 0 | R/W | <p>Reserved</p> <p>Although these bits are readable/writable, only 0 should be written here.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------|
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------|

| | | | | |
|----|------|---|-----|--|
| | | | | <p>Data Transfer Acknowledge</p> <p>Enables or disables clearing, when DMA transfer is performed, of the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting.</p> <p>When DTE = 1 and DTA = 1, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting is cleared automatically by DMA transfer. When DTE = 1 and DTA = 1, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting does not issue an interrupt request to the CPU or DTC.</p> <p>When DTE = 1 and DTA = 0, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting is not cleared when a transfer is performed, and can issue an interrupt request to the CPU or DTC in parallel. In this case, the interrupt source should be cleared by the CPU or DTC transfer.</p> <p>When DTE = 0, the internal interrupt source selected by the data transfer factor setting issues an interrupt request to the CPU or DTC regardless of the DTA bit setting.</p> <p>The state of the DTME bit does not affect the above operations.</p> |
| 11 | DTA1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Data transfer acknowledge 1</p> <p>Enables or disables clearing, when DMA transfer is performed, of the internal interrupt source selected by the channel 1 data transfer factor setting.</p> <p>0: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is disabled</p> <p>1: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is enabled</p> |
| 10 | — | 0 | R/W | <p>Reserved</p> <p>This bit can be read from or written to. The write value should always be 0.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 9 | DTA0 | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Acknowledge 0</p> <p>Enables or disables clearing, when DMA transfer is performed, of the internal interrupt source selected by the channel 0 data transfer factor setting.</p> <p>0: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is disabled</p> <p>1: Clearing of selected internal interrupt source at time of DMA transfer is enabled</p> |
| 8 | — | 0 | R/W | <p>Reserved</p> <p>Although this bit is readable/writable, only 0 should be written here.</p> <p>Data Transfer Master Enable 1</p> <p>Together with the DTE bit, this bit controls enabling or disabling of data transfer on the relevant channel. When both the DTME bit and the DTE bit are set to 1, transfer is enabled for the channel. If the relevant channel is in the middle of a burst mode transfer when an NMI interrupt is generated, the DTME bit is cleared, the transfer is interrupted, and bus mastership passes to the CPU. When the DTME bit is subsequently set to 1 again, the interrupted transfer is resumed. In block transfer mode, however, the DTME bit is not cleared by an NMI interrupt, and transfer is not interrupted.</p> <p>The conditions for the DTME bit being cleared to 0 are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When initialization is performed • When NMI is input in burst mode • When 0 is written to the DTME bit <p>The condition for DTME being set to 1 is as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 1 is written to DTME after DTME is read as 0 |
| 7 | DTME1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Master Enable 1</p> <p>Enables or disables data transfer on channel 1</p> <p>0: Data transfer disabled. In burst mode, cleared to 0 by an NMI interrupt</p> <p>1: Data transfer enabled</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| | | | | <p>Data Transfer Enable 1</p> <p>When DTE = 0, data transfer is disabled and the activation source selected by the data transfer factor setting is ignored. If the activation source is an internal interrupt, an interrupt request is issued to the CPU or DTC. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 when DTE = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating the end of a transfer, and issues a transfer end interrupt request to the CPU.</p> <p>The conditions for the DTE bit being cleared to 0 are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When initialization is performed • When the specified number of transfers have been completed • When 0 is written to the DTE bit to forcibly abort the transfer, or for a similar reason <p>When DTE = 1 and DTME = 1, data transfer is enabled and the DMAC waits for a request by the activation source selected by the data transfer factor setting. When a request is issued by the activation source, DMA transfer is executed.</p> <p>The condition for the DTE bit being set to 1 is as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 1 is written to the DTE bit after the DTE bit is read as 0 |
| 6 | DTE1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Enable 1</p> <p>Enables or disables data transfer on channel 1.</p> <p>0: Data transfer disabled</p> <p>1: Data transfer enabled</p> |
| 5 | DTME0 | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Master Enable 0</p> <p>Enables or disables data transfer on channel 0.</p> <p>0: Data transfer disabled. In burst mode, cleared to 0 by an NMI interrupt</p> <p>1: Data transfer enabled</p> |
| 4 | DTE0 | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Enable 0</p> <p>Enables or disables data transfer on channel 0.</p> <p>0: Data transfer disabled</p> <p>1: Data transfer enabled</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| | | | | <p>Data Transfer Interrupt Enable B</p> <p>Enables or disables an interrupt to the CPU or DTC when transfer is interrupted. If the DTIEB bit is set to 1 when DTME = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating a break in the transfer, and issues a transfer break interrupt request to the CPU or DTC. A transfer break interrupt can be canceled either by clearing the DTIEB bit to 0 in the interrupt handling routine, or by performing processing to continue transfer by setting the DTME bit to 1.</p> |
| 3 | DTIE1B | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Interrupt Enable 1B</p> <p>Enables or disables the channel 1 transfer break interrupt.</p> <p>0: Transfer break interrupt disabled</p> <p>1: Transfer break interrupt enabled</p> |
| | | | | <p>Data Transfer End Interrupt Enable A</p> <p>Enables or disables an interrupt to the CPU or DTC when transfer ends. If the DTIEA bit is set to 1 when DTE = 0, the DMAC regards this as indicating the end of a transfer, and issues a transfer end interrupt request to the CPU or DTC. A transfer end interrupt can be canceled either by clearing the DTIEA bit to 0 in the interrupt handling routine, or by performing processing to continue transfer by setting the DTE bit to 1.</p> |
| 2 | DTIE1A | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer End Interrupt Enable 1A</p> <p>Enables or disables the channel 1 transfer end interrupt.</p> <p>0: Transfer end interrupt disabled</p> <p>1: Transfer end interrupt enabled</p> |
| 1 | DTIE0B | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer Interrupt Enable 0B</p> <p>Enables or disables the channel 0 transfer break interrupt.</p> <p>0: Transfer break interrupt disabled</p> <p>1: Transfer break interrupt enabled</p> |
| 0 | DTIE0A | 0 | R/W | <p>Data Transfer End Interrupt Enable 0A</p> <p>Enables or disables the channel 0 transfer end interrupt.</p> <p>0: Transfer end interrupt disabled</p> <p>1: Transfer end interrupt enabled</p> |

7.3.6 DMA Write Enable Register (DMAWER)

The DMAC can activate the DTC with a transfer end interrupt, rewrite the channel on which the transfer ended using a DTC chain transfer, and reactivate the DTC. DMAWER applies restrictions so that only specific bits of DMACR for the specific channel and also DMABCR can be changed to prevent inadvertent changes being made to registers other than those for the channel concerned. The restrictions applied by DMAWER are valid for the DTC.

Figure 7.2 shows the transfer areas for activating the DTC with a channel 0A transfer end interrupt, and reactivating channel 0A. The address register and count register area is re-set by the first DTC transfer, then the control register area is re-set by the second DTC chain transfer.

When re-setting the control register area, perform masking by setting bits in DMAWER to prevent modification of the contents of the other channels.

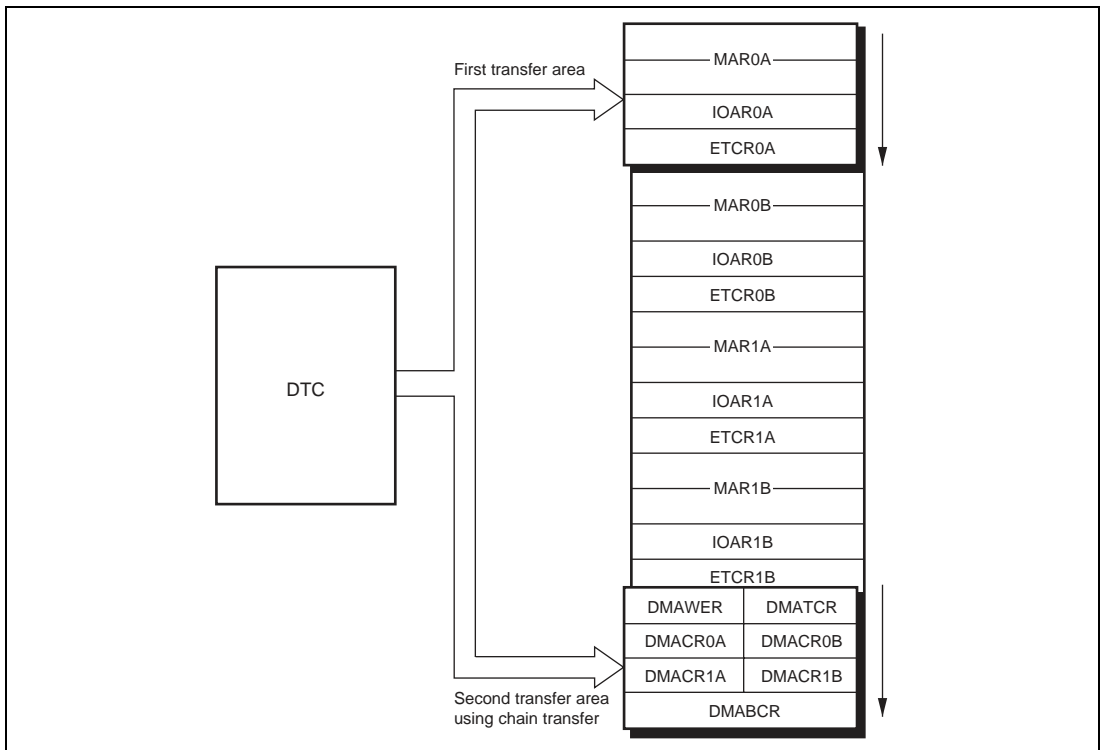


Figure 7.2 Areas for Register Re-Setting by DTC (Example: Channel 0A)

DMAWER controls enabling or disabling of writes to the DMACR and DMABCR by the DTC.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 4 | — | All 0 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 3 | WE1B | 0 | R/W | Write Enable 1B Enables or disables writes to all bits in DMACR1B, bits 11, 7, and 3 in DMABCR by the DTC. 0: Writes to all bits in DMACR1B, bits 11, 7, and 3 in DMABCR are disabled 1: Writes to all bits in DMACR1B, bits 11, 7, and 3 in DMABCR are enabled |
| 2 | WE1A | 0 | R/W | Write Enable 1A Enables or disables writes to all bits in DMACR1A, and bits 10, 6, and 2 in DMABCR by the DTC. 0: Writes to all bits in DMACR1A, and bits 10, 6, and 2 in DMABCR are disabled 1: Writes to all bits in DMACR1A, and bits 10, 6, and 2 in DMABCR are enabled |
| 1 | WE0B | 0 | R/W | Write Enable 0B Enables or disables writes to all bits in DMACR0B, bits 9, 5, and 1 in DMABCR by the DTC. 0: Writes to all bits in DMACR0B, bits 9, 5, and 1 in DMABCR, are disabled 1: Writes to all bits in DMACR0B, bits 9, 5, and 1 in DMABCR are enabled |
| 0 | WE0A | 0 | R/W | Write Enable 0A Enables or disables writes to all bits in DMACR0A, and bits 8, 4, and 0 in DMABCR by the DTC. 0: Writes to all bits in DMACR0A, and bits 8, 4, and 0 in DMABCR are disabled 1: Writes to all bits in DMACR0A, and bits 8, 4, and 0 in DMABCR are enabled |

Writes by the DTC to bits 15 to 12 (FAE and SAE) in DMABCR are invalid regardless of the DMAWER settings. These bits should be changed, if necessary, by CPU processing.

In writes by the DTC to bits 7 to 4 (DTE) in DMABCR, 1 can be written without first reading 0. To reactivate a channel set to full address mode, write 1 to both Write Enable A and Write Enable B for the channel to be reactivated.

MAR, IOAR, and ETCR are always write-enabled regardless of the DMAWER settings. When modifying these registers, the channel for which the modification is to be made should be halted.

7.4 Operation

7.4.1 Transfer Modes

Table 7.2 lists the DMAC modes.

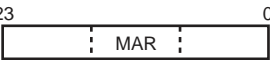
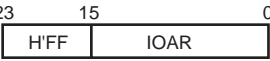
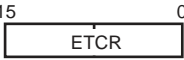
Table 7.2 DMAC Transfer Modes

| Transfer Mode | | Transfer Source | Remarks |
|--------------------|-------------------|---|---|
| Short address mode | Dual address mode | (1) Sequential mode (2) Idle mode (3) Repeat Mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts • SCI transmission complete interrupt • SCI reception complete interrupt • A/D conversion end interrupt |
| Full address mode | | (4) Normal mode (5) Block transfer mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • USB request • Auto-request • TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts • SCI transmission complete interrupt • SCI reception complete interrupt • A/D conversion end interrupt |

7.4.2 Sequential Mode

Sequential mode can be specified by clearing the RPE bit in DMACR to 0. In sequential mode, MAR is updated after each byte or word transfer in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the number of times specified in ETCR. One address is specified by MAR, and the other by IOAR. The transfer direction can be specified by the DTDIR bit in DMACR. Table 7.3 summarizes register functions in sequential mode.

Table 7.3 Register Functions in Sequential Mode

| Register | Function | | Initial Setting | Operation |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|---|
| | DTDIR = 0 | DTDIR = 1 | | |
|  | Source address register | Destination address register | Start address of transfer destination or transfer source | Incremented/decremented every transfer |
|  | Destination address register | Source address register | Start address of transfer source or transfer destination | Fixed |
|  | Transfer counter | | Number of transfers | Decremented every transfer, transfer ends when count reaches H'0000 |

MAR specifies the start address of the transfer source or transfer destination as 24 bits. MAR is incremented or decremented by 1 or 2 each time a byte or word is transferred. IOAR specifies the lower 16 bits of the other address. The 8 bits above IOAR have a value of H'FF. Figure 7.3 illustrates operation in sequential mode.

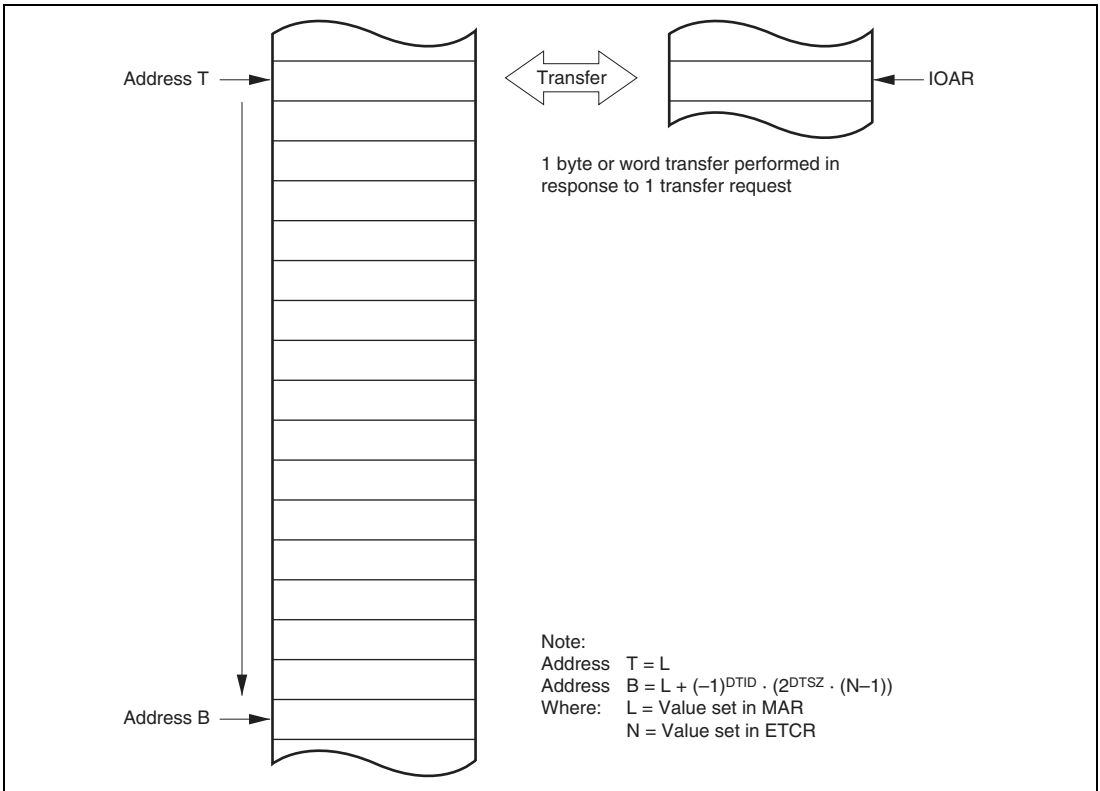


Figure 7.3 Operation in Sequential Mode

The number of transfers is specified as 16 bits in ETCR. ETCR is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is executed, and when its value reaches H'0000, the DTE bit is cleared and transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU or DTC. The maximum number of transfers, when H'0000 is set in ETCR, is 65,536. Transfer requests (activation sources) consist of A/D conversion end interrupt, SCI transmission complete and reception complete interrupts, and TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts. External requests can be set for channel B only. Figure 7.4 shows an example of the setting procedure for sequential mode.

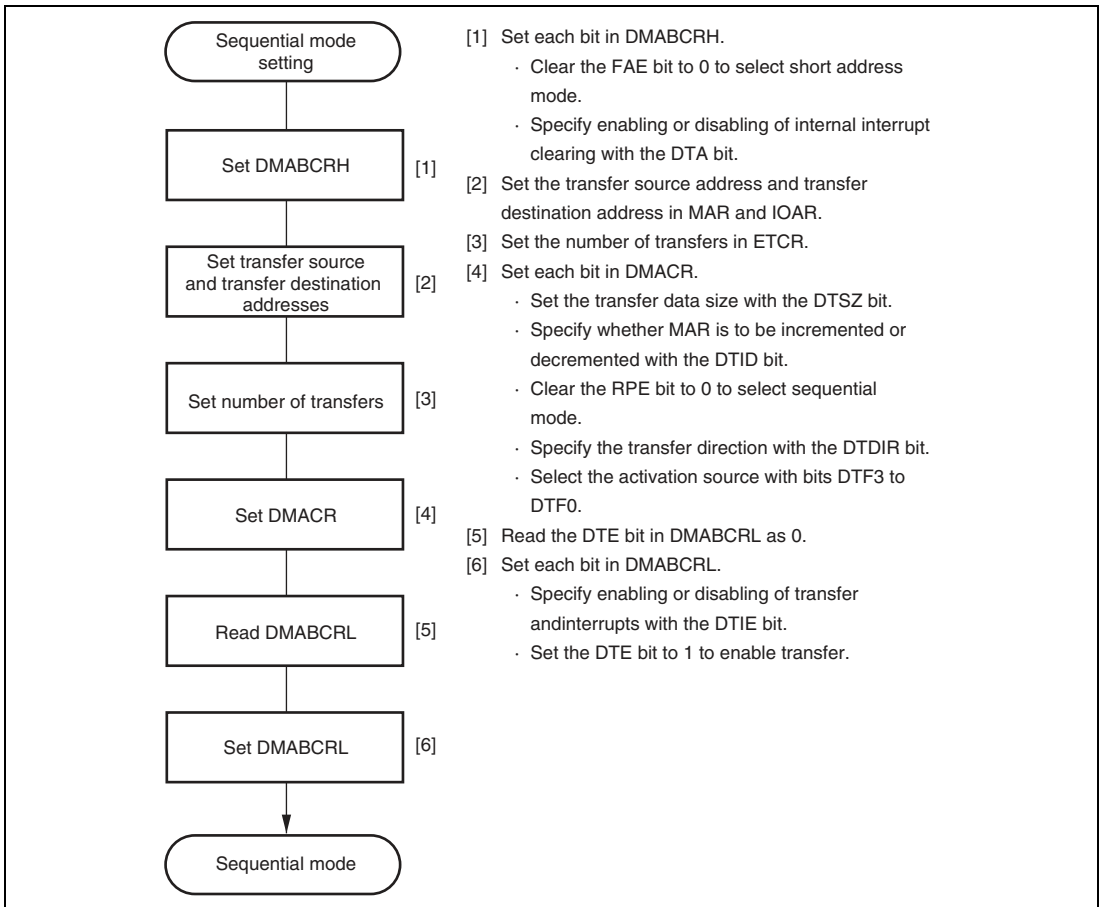
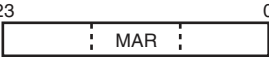
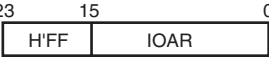
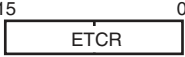


Figure 7.4 Example of Sequential Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.3 Idle Mode

Idle mode can be specified by setting the RPE bit and DTIE bit in DMACR to 1. In idle mode, one byte or word is transferred in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the number of times specified in ETCR. One address is specified by MAR, and the other by IOAR. The transfer direction can be specified by the DTDIR bit in DMACR. Table 7.4 summarizes register functions in idle mode.

Table 7.4 Register Functions in Idle Mode

| Register | Function | | Initial Setting | Operation |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|---|
| | DTDIR = 0 | DTDIR = 1 | | |
|  | Source address register | Destination address register | Start address of transfer destination or transfer source | Fixed |
|  | Destination address register | Source address register | Start address of transfer source or transfer destination | Fixed |
|  | Transfer counter | | Number of transfers | Decremented every transfer, transfer ends when count reaches H'0000 |

MAR specifies the start address of the transfer source or transfer destination as 24 bits. MAR is neither incremented nor decremented each time a byte or word is transferred. IOAR specifies the lower 16 bits of the other address. The 8 bits above IOAR have a value of H'FF. Figure 7.5 illustrates operation in idle mode.

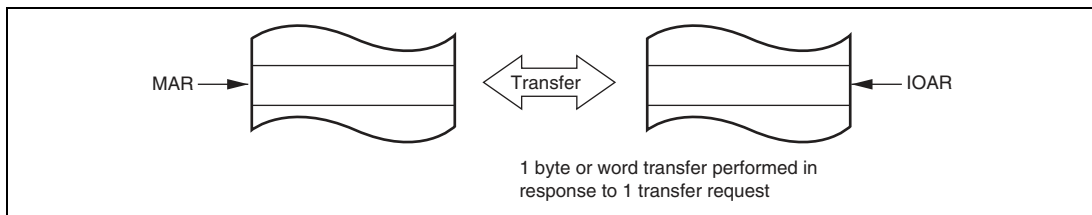


Figure 7.5 Operation in Idle Mode

The number of transfers is specified as 16 bits in ETCR. ETCR is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is executed, and when its value reaches H'0000, the DTE bit is cleared and transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU or DTC. The maximum number of transfers, when H'0000 is set in ETCR, is 65,536.

Transfer requests (activation sources) consist of A/D conversion end interrupt, SCI transmission complete and reception complete interrupts, and TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts. External requests can be set for channel B only. When the DMAC is used in single address mode, only channel B can be set. Figure 7.6 shows an example of the setting procedure for idle mode.

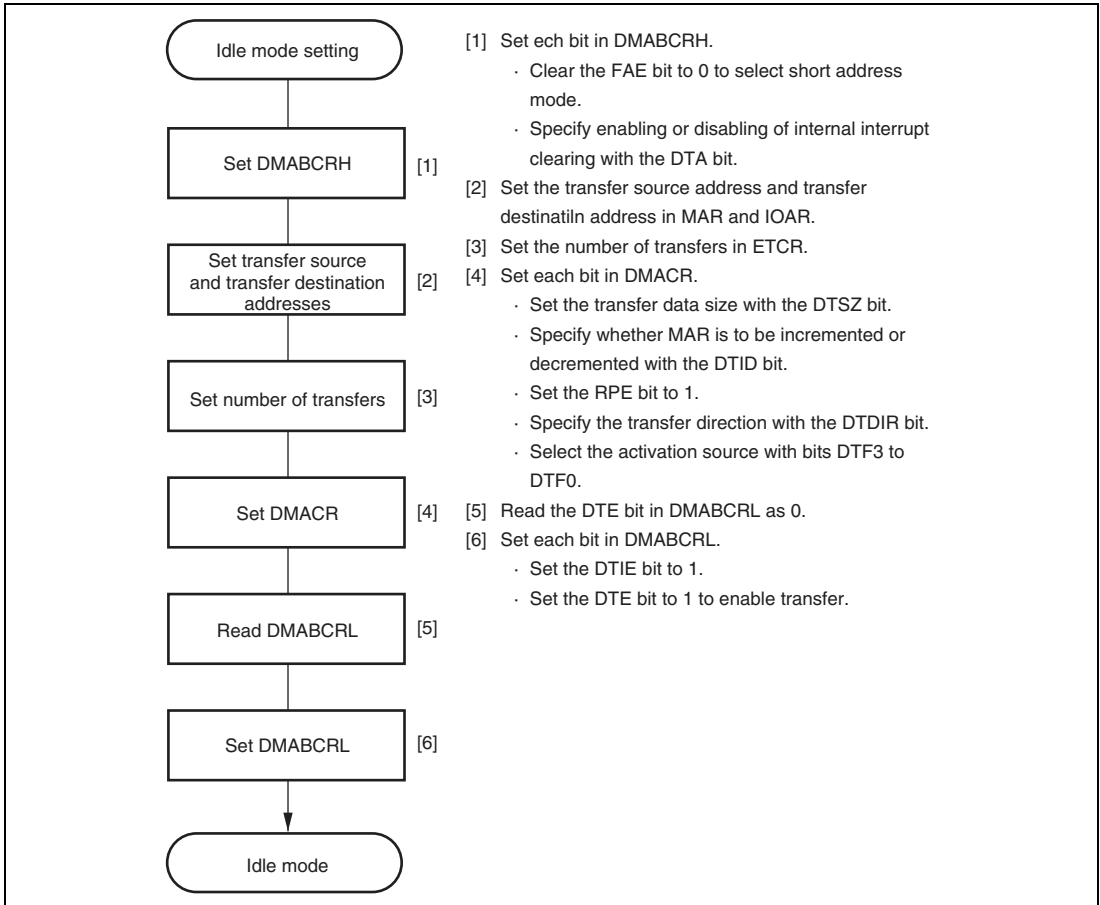
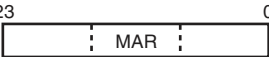





Figure 7.6 Example of Idle Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.4 Repeat Mode

Repeat mode can be specified by setting the RPE bit in DMACR to 1, and clearing the DTIE bit to 0. In repeat mode, MAR is updated after each byte or word transfer in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the number of times specified in ETCR. On completion of the specified number of transfers, MAR and ETCRL are automatically restored to their original settings and operation continues. One address is specified by MAR, and the other by IOAR. The transfer direction can be specified by the DTDIR bit in DMACR. Table 7.5 summarizes register functions in repeat mode.

Table 7.5 Register Functions in Repeat Mode

| Register | Function | | Initial Setting | Operation |
|--|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|---|
| | DTDIR = 0 | DTDIR = 1 | | |
|  | Source address register | Destination address register | Start address of transfer destination or transfer source | Incremented/decremented every transfer. Initial setting is restored when value reaches H'0000 |
|  | Destination address register | Source address register | Start address of transfer source or transfer destination | Fixed |
|  | Holds number of transfers | | Number of transfers | Fixed |
|  | Transfer counter | | Number of transfers | Decremented every transfer. Loaded with ETCRH value when count reaches H'00 |

MAR specifies the start address of the transfer source or transfer destination as 24 bits. MAR is incremented or decremented by 1 or 2 each time a byte or word is transferred. IOAR specifies the lower 16 bits of the other address. The 8 bits above IOAR have a value of H'FF. The number of transfers is specified as 8 bits by ETCRH and ETCRL. The maximum number of transfers, when H'00 is set in both ETCRH and ETCRL, is 256.

In repeat mode, ETCRL functions as the transfer counter, and ETCRH is used to hold the number of transfers. ETCRL is decremented by 1 each time a transfer is executed, and when its value reaches H'00, it is loaded with the value in ETCRH. At the same time, the value set in MAR is restored in accordance with the values of the DTSZ and DTID bits in DMACR. The MAR restoration operation is as shown below.

$$\text{MAR} = \text{MAR} - (-1)^{\text{DTID}} \cdot 2^{\text{DTSZ}} \cdot \text{ETCRH}$$

The same value should be set in ETCRH and ETCRL.

In repeat mode, operation continues until the DTE bit is cleared. To end the transfer operation, therefore, you should clear the DTE bit to 0. A transfer end interrupt request is not sent to the CPU or DTC. By setting the DTE bit to 1 again after it has been cleared, the operation can be restarted from the transfer after that terminated when the DTE bit was cleared. Figure 7.7 illustrates operation in repeat mode.

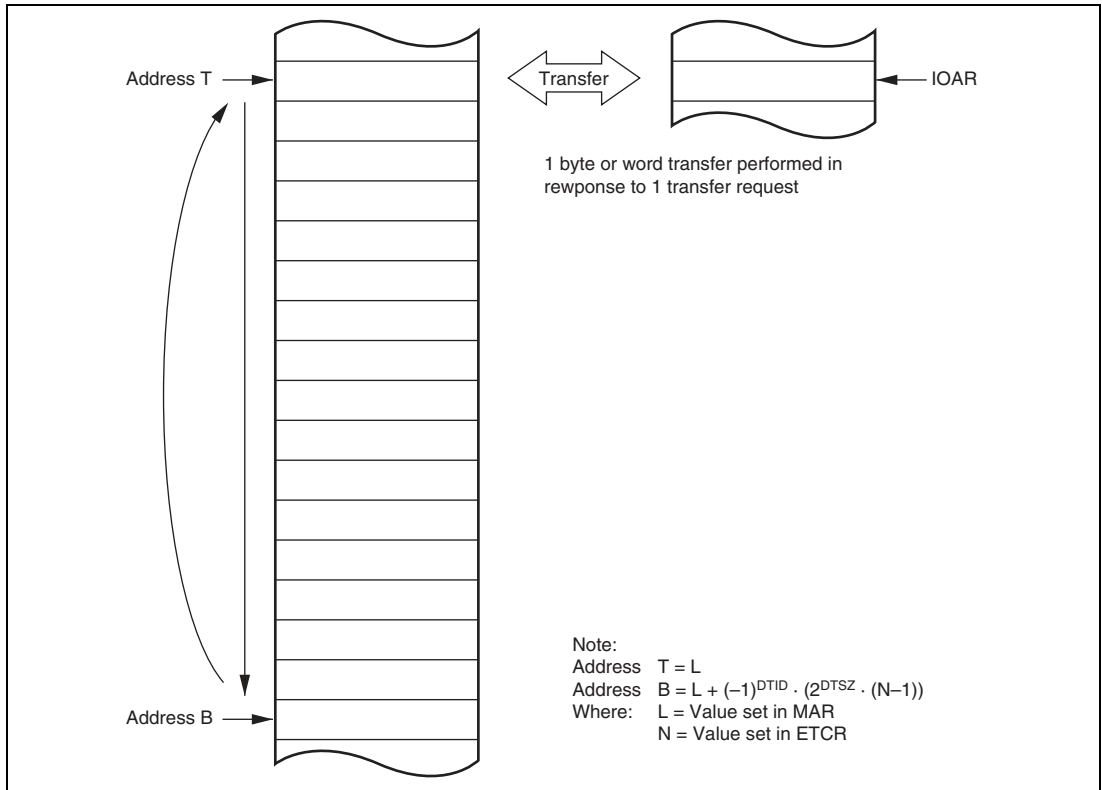


Figure 7.7 Operation in Repeat Mode

Transfer requests (activation sources) consist of A/D conversion end interrupt, SCI transmission complete and reception complete interrupts, and TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts. External requests can be set for channel B only. Figure 7.8 shows an example of the setting procedure for repeat mode.

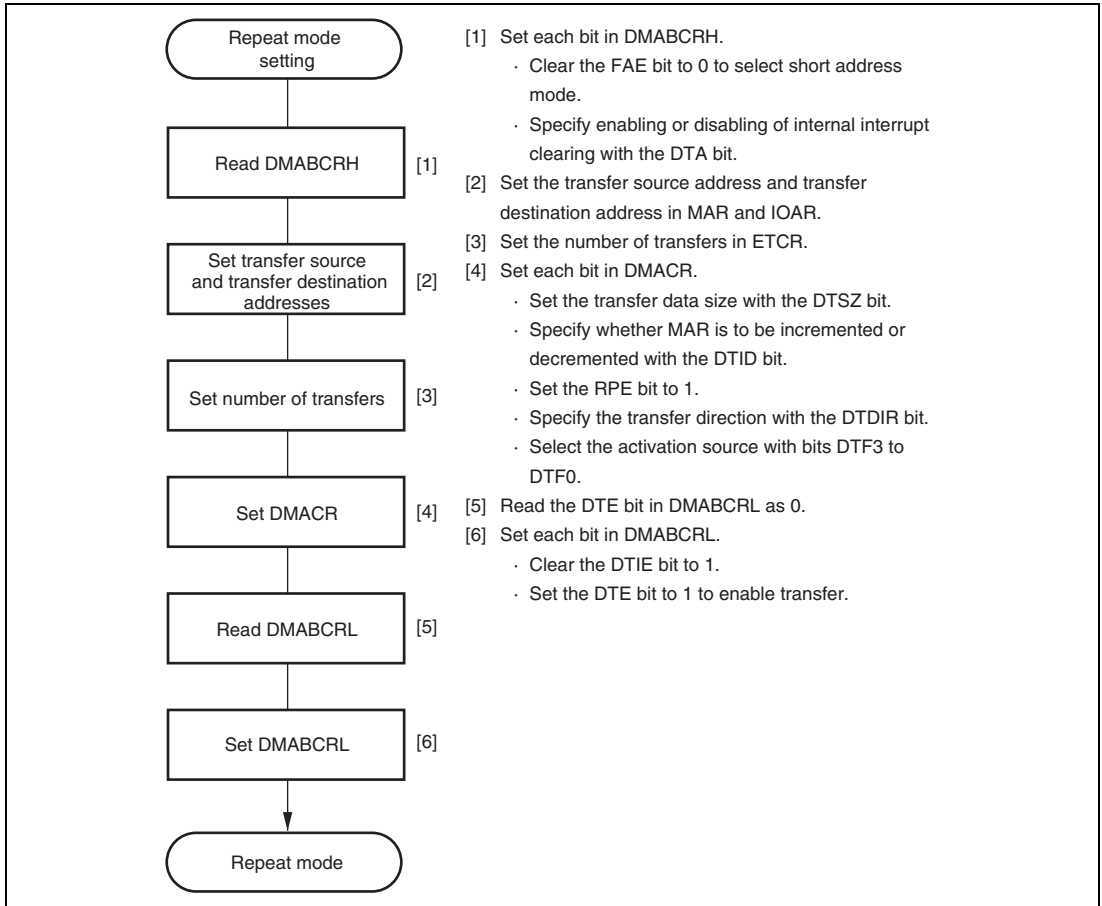
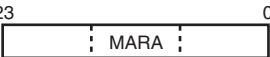




Figure 7.8 Example of Repeat Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.5 Normal Mode

In normal mode, transfer is performed with channels A and B used in combination. Normal mode can be specified by setting the FAE bit in DMABCR to 1 and clearing the BLKE bit in DMACRA to 0. In normal mode, MAR is updated after each byte or word transfer in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the number of times specified in ETCRA. The transfer source is specified by MARA, and the transfer destination by MARB. Table 7.6 summarizes register functions in normal mode.

Table 7.6 Register Functions in Normal Mode

| Register | Function | Initial Setting | Operation |
|---|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
|  | Source address register | Start address of transfer source | Incremented/decremented every transfer, or fixed |
|  | Destination address register | Start address of transfer destination | Incremented/decremented every transfer, or fixed |
|  | Transfer counter | Number of transfers | Decremented every transfer; transfer ends when count reaches H'0000 |

MARA and MARB specify the start addresses of the transfer source and transfer destination, respectively, as 24 bits. MAR can be incremented or decremented by 1 or 2 each time a byte or word is transferred, or can be fixed. Incrementing, decrementing, or holding a fixed value can be set separately for MARA and MARB.

The number of transfers is specified by ETCRA as 16 bits. ETCRA is decremented each time a transfer is performed, and when its value reaches H'0000 the DTE bit is cleared and transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU or DTC. The maximum number of transfers, when H'0000 is set in ETCRA, is 65,536.

Figure 7.9 illustrates operation in normal mode.

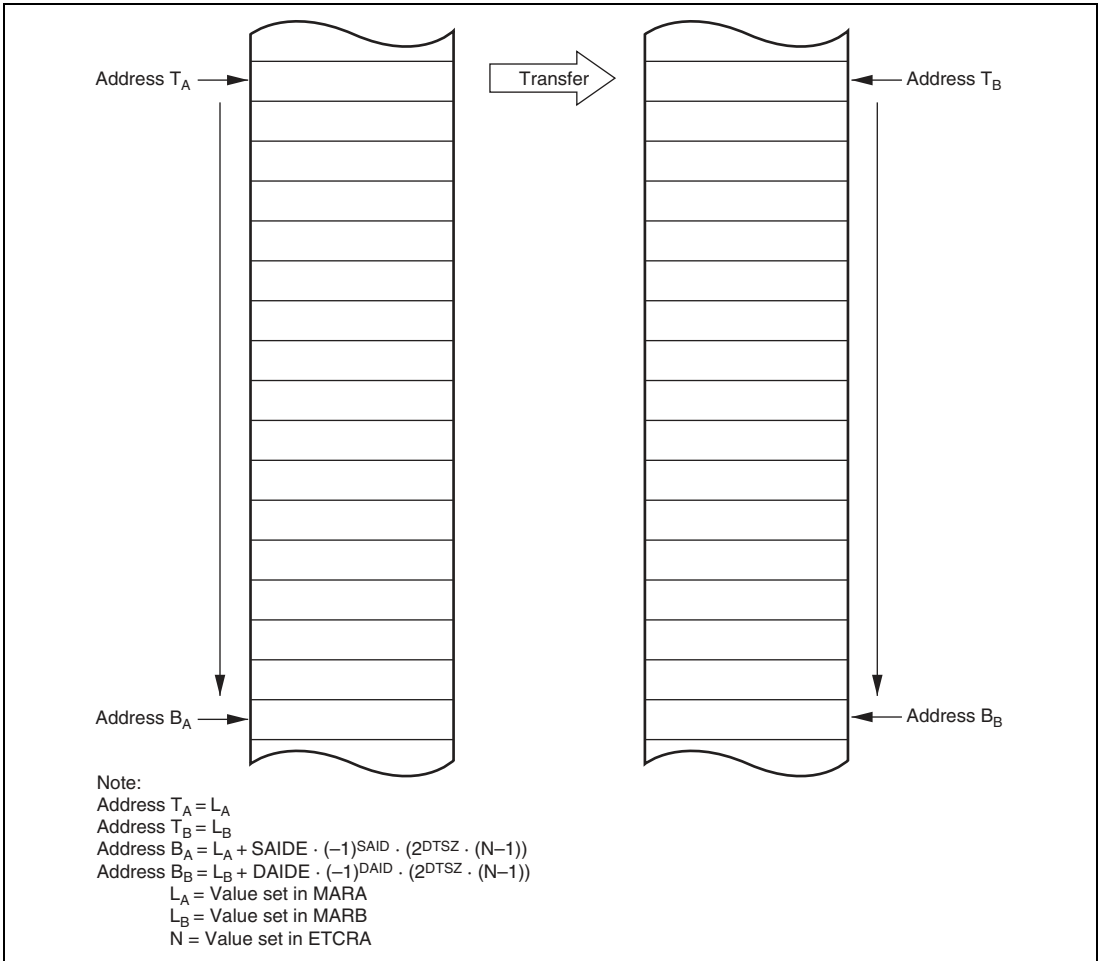


Figure 7.9 Operation in Normal Mode

Transfer requests (activation sources) are external requests and auto-requests. With auto-request, the DMAC is only activated by register setting, and the specified number of transfers are performed automatically. With auto-request, cycle steal mode or burst mode can be selected. In cycle steal mode, the bus is released to another bus master each time a transfer is performed. In burst mode, the bus is held continuously until transfer ends. For setting details, see section 7.3.4, DMA Controller Register (DMACR).

Figure 7.10 shows an example of the setting procedure for normal mode.

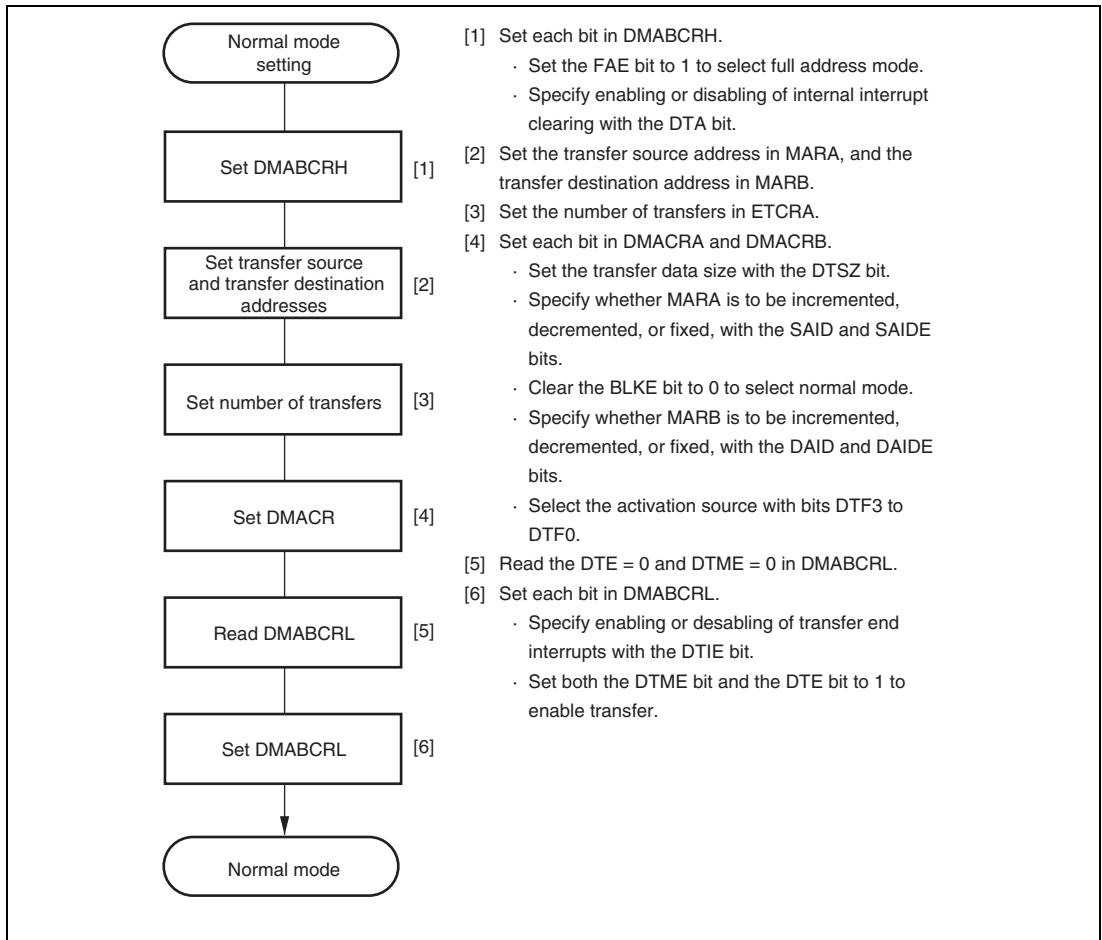

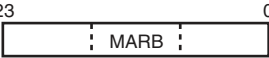





Figure 7.10 Example of Normal Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.6 Block Transfer Mode

In block transfer mode, transfer is performed with channels A and B used in combination. Block transfer mode can be specified by setting the FAE bit in DMABCR and the BLKE bit in DMACRA to 1. In block transfer mode, a transfer of the specified block size is carried out in response to a single transfer request, and this is executed the specified number of times. The transfer source is specified by MARA, and the transfer destination by MARB. Either the transfer source or the transfer destination can be selected as a block area (an area composed of a number of bytes or words). Table 7.7 summarizes register functions in block transfer mode.

Table 7.7 Register Functions in Block Transfer Mode

| Register | Function | Initial Setting | Operation |
|---|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
|  | Source address register | Start address of transfer source | Incremented/decremented every transfer, or fixed |
|  | Description address register | Start address of transfer destination | Incremented/decremented every transfer, or fixed |
| | Holds block size | Block size | Fixed |
|  | | | |
|  | Block size counter | Block size | decremented every transfer; ETCRH value copied when count reaches H'00 |
|  | Block transfer counter | Number of block transfers | Decrementd every block transfer; transfer ends when count reaches H'0000 |

MARA and MARB specify the start addresses of the transfer source and transfer destination, respectively, as 24 bits. MAR can be incremented or decremented by 1 or 2 each time a byte or word is transferred, or can be fixed. Incrementing, decrementing, or holding a fixed value can be set separately for MARA and MARB. Whether a block is to be designated for MARA or for MARB is specified by the BLKDIR bit in DMACRA.

To specify the number of transfers, if M is the size of one block (where M = 1 to 256) and N transfers are to be performed (where N = 1 to 65,536), M is set in both ETCRAH and ETCRAL, and N in ETCRB.

Figure 7.11 illustrates operation in block transfer mode when MARB is designated as a block area.

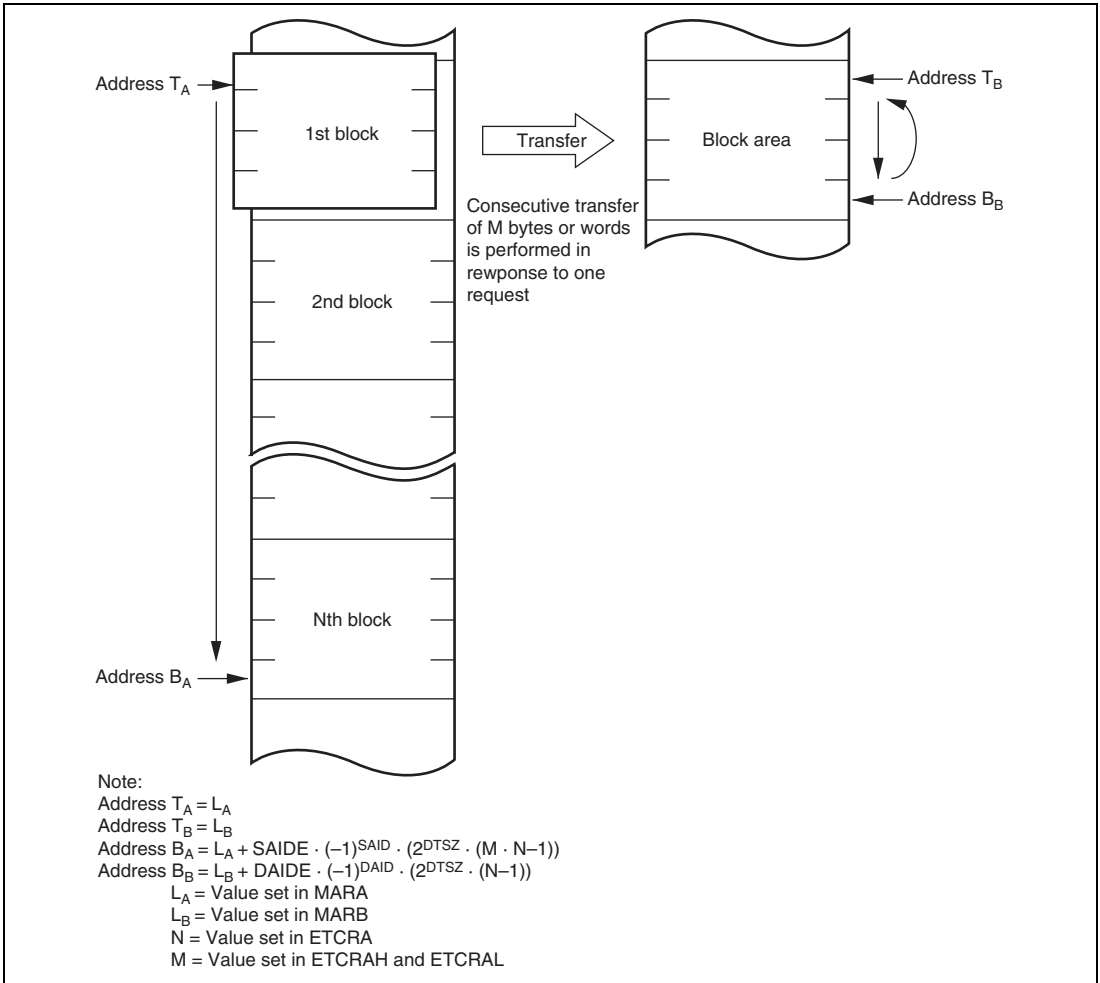


Figure 7.11 Operation in Block Transfer Mode (BLKDIR = 0)

Figure 7.12 illustrates operation in block transfer mode when MARA is designated as a block area.

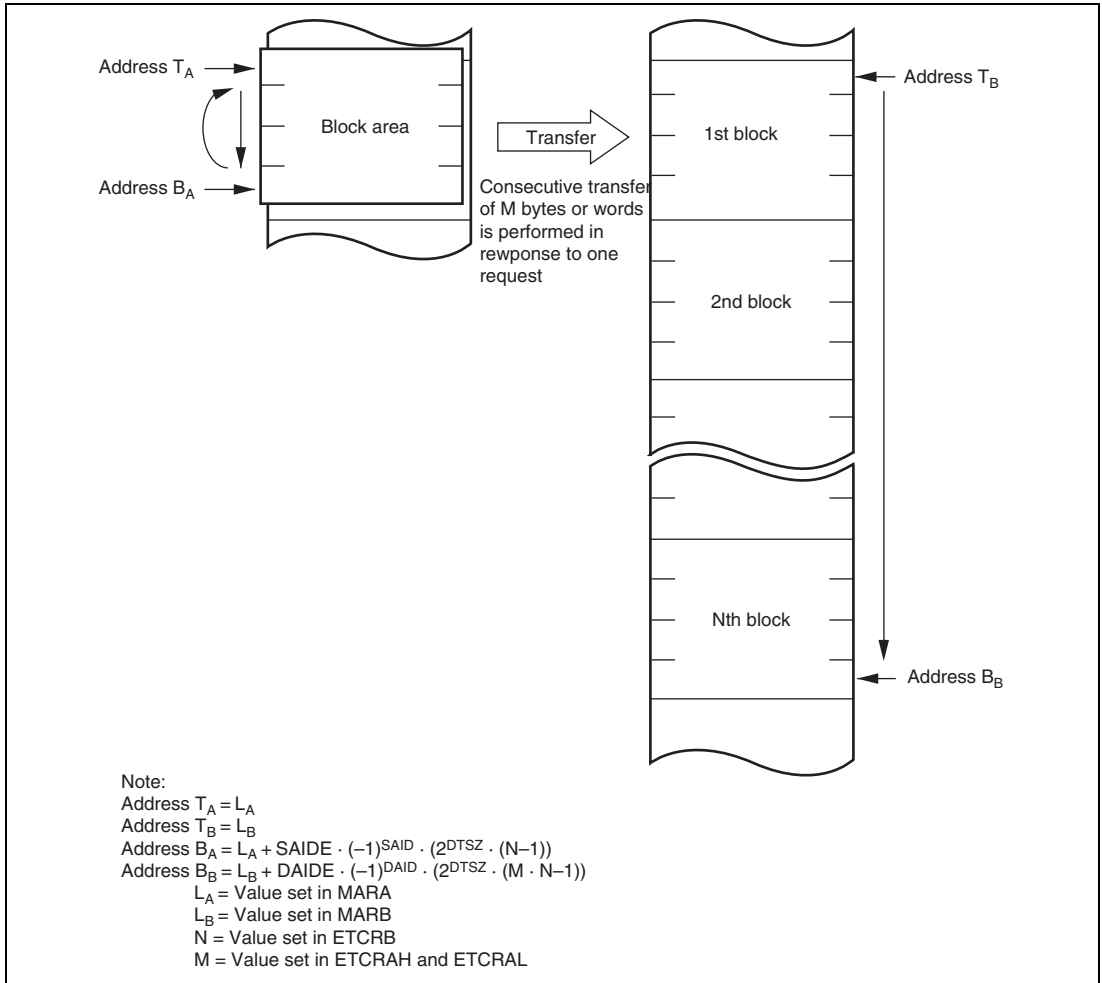


Figure 7.12 Operation in Block Transfer Mode (BLKDIR = 1)

ETCRAL is decremented by 1 each time a byte or word transfer is performed. In response to a single transfer request, burst transfer is performed until the value in ETCRAL reaches H'00. ETCRAL is then loaded with the value in ETCRAH. At this time, the value in the MAR register for which a block designation has been given by the BLKDIR bit in DMACRA is restored in accordance with the DTSZ, SAID/DAID, and SAIDE/DAIDE bits in DMACR.

ETCRB is decremented by 1 every block transfer, and when the count reaches H'0000 the DTE bit is cleared and transfer ends. If the DTIE bit is set to 1 at this point, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU or DTC. Figure 7.13 shows the operation flow in block transfer mode.

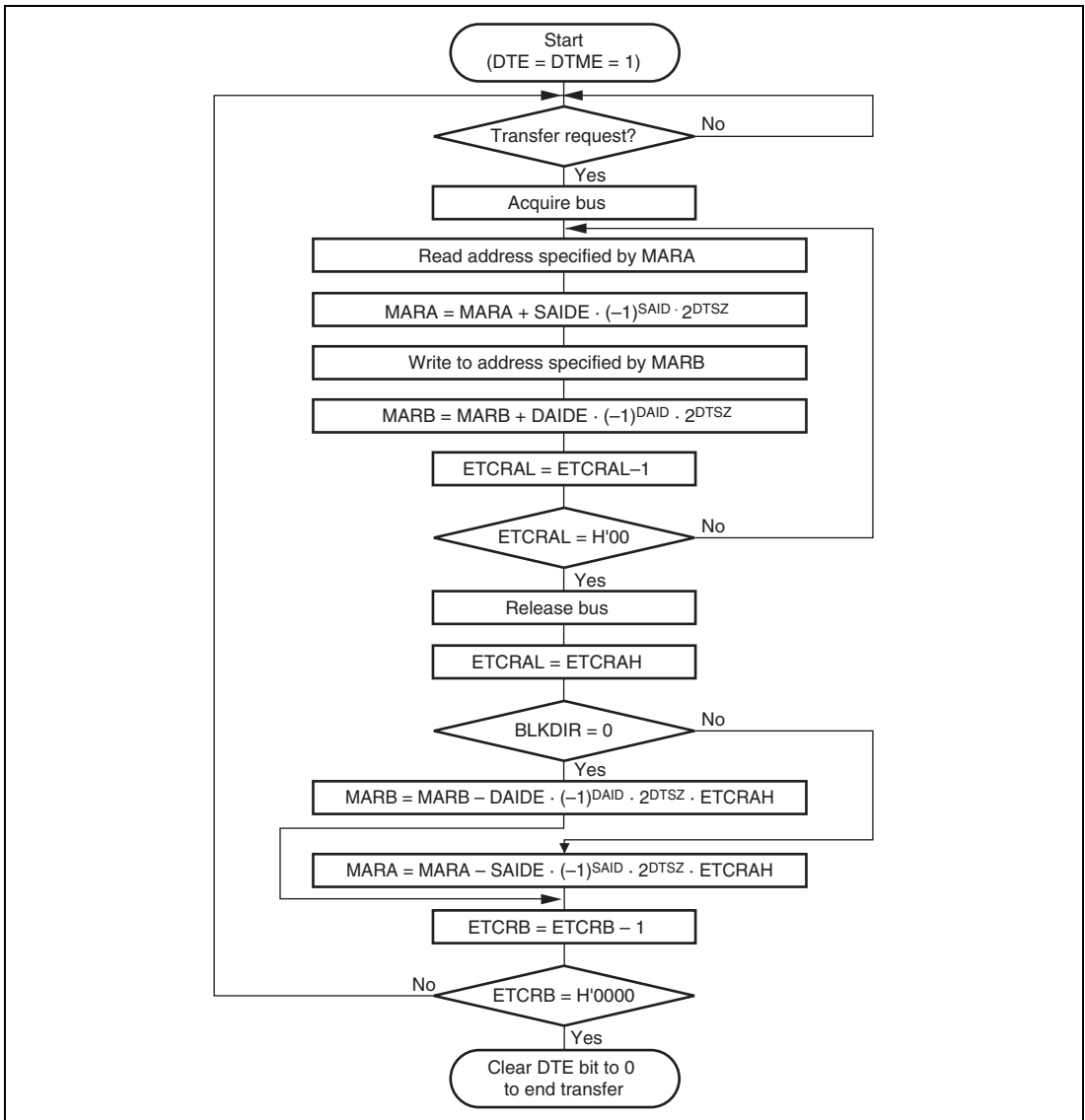


Figure 7.13 Operation Flow in Block Transfer Mode

Transfer requests (activation sources) consist of A/D conversion end interrupt, SCI transmission complete and reception complete interrupts, and TPU channel 0 to 2 compare match/input capture A interrupts. For details, see section 7.3.4, DMA Control Register (DMACR). Figure 7.14 shows an example of the setting procedure for block transfer mode.

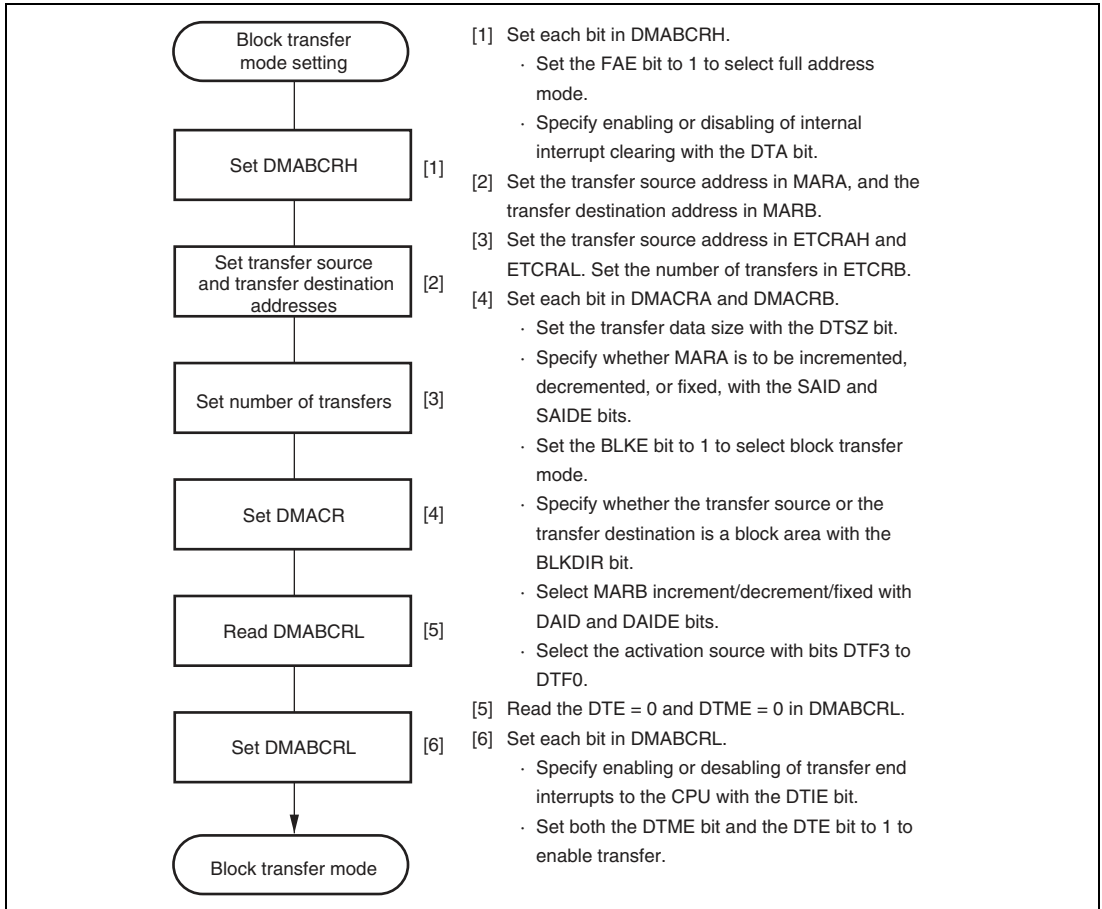


Figure 7.14 Example of Block Transfer Mode Setting Procedure

7.4.7 DMAC Activation Sources

DMAC activation sources consist of internal interrupts, external requests, and auto-requests. The activation sources that can be specified depend on the transfer mode, as shown in table 7.8.

Table 7.8 DMAC Activation Sources

| Activation Source | | Short Address Mode | Full Address Mode | |
|--------------------|---|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| | | | Normal Mode | Block Transfer Mode |
| Internal interrupt | ADI | ○ | × | ○ |
| | TXI0 | ○ | × | ○ |
| | RXI0 | ○ | × | ○ |
| | TXI1 | ○ | × | ○ |
| | RXI1 | ○ | × | ○ |
| | TGI0A | ○ | × | ○ |
| | TGI1A | ○ | × | ○ |
| | TGI2A | ○ | × | ○ |
| USB request | Low level input of the \overline{DERQ} signal | × | ○ | × |
| Auto-request | | × | ○ | × |

Legend:

○ : Can be specified

× : Cannot be specified

Activation by Internal Interrupt: An interrupt request selected as a DMAC activation source can be sent simultaneously to the CPU and DTC. For details, see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

With activation by an internal interrupt, the DMAC accepts the request independently of the interrupt controller. Consequently, interrupt controller priority settings are not accepted.

If the DMAC is activated by a CPU interrupt source or an interrupt source that is not used as a DTC activation source ($DTA = 1$), the interrupt source flag is cleared automatically by the DMA transfer. With ADI, TXI, and RXI interrupts, however, the interrupt source flag is not cleared unless the prescribed register is accessed in a DMA transfer. If the same interrupt is used as an activation source for more than one channel, the interrupt request flag is cleared when the highest-priority channel is activated first. Transfer requests for other channels are held pending in the DMAC, and activation is carried out in order of priority.

When $DTE = 0$, such as after completion of a transfer, a request from the selected activation source is not sent to the DMAC, regardless of the DTA bit. In this case, the relevant interrupt request is sent to the CPU or DTC. In case of overlap with a CPU interrupt source or DTC activation source ($DTA = 0$), the interrupt request flag is not cleared by the DMAC.

Activation by USB Request: A USB request (\overline{DREQ} signal) may be specified as the activation source. Level sensing is used for USB requests. In the normal mode of the full address mode, USB requests operate as follows.

Transfer request standby status continues while the \overline{DREQ} signal is held high. If the \overline{DREQ} signal is held low, the bus is released each time a single byte of data is transferred, causing continuous transfers to be split up into chunks. If the \overline{DREQ} signal goes high while a transfer is in progress, the transfer is suspended and the status changes to transfer request standby.

Activation by Auto-Request: Auto-request activation is performed by register setting only, and transfer continues to the end. With auto-request activation, cycle steal mode or burst mode can be selected.

In cycle steal mode, the DMAC releases the bus to another bus master each time a byte or word is transferred. DMA and CPU cycles usually alternate. In burst mode, the DMAC keeps possession of the bus until the end of the transfer, and transfer is performed continuously.

7.4.8 Basic DMAC Bus Cycles

An example of the basic DMAC bus cycle timing is shown in figure 7.15. In this example, word-size transfer is performed from 16-bit, 2-state access space to 8-bit, 3-state access space. When the bus is transferred from the CPU to the DMAC, a source address read and destination address write are performed. The bus is not released in response to another bus request, etc., between these read and write operations. As with CPU cycles, DMA cycles conform to the bus controller settings.

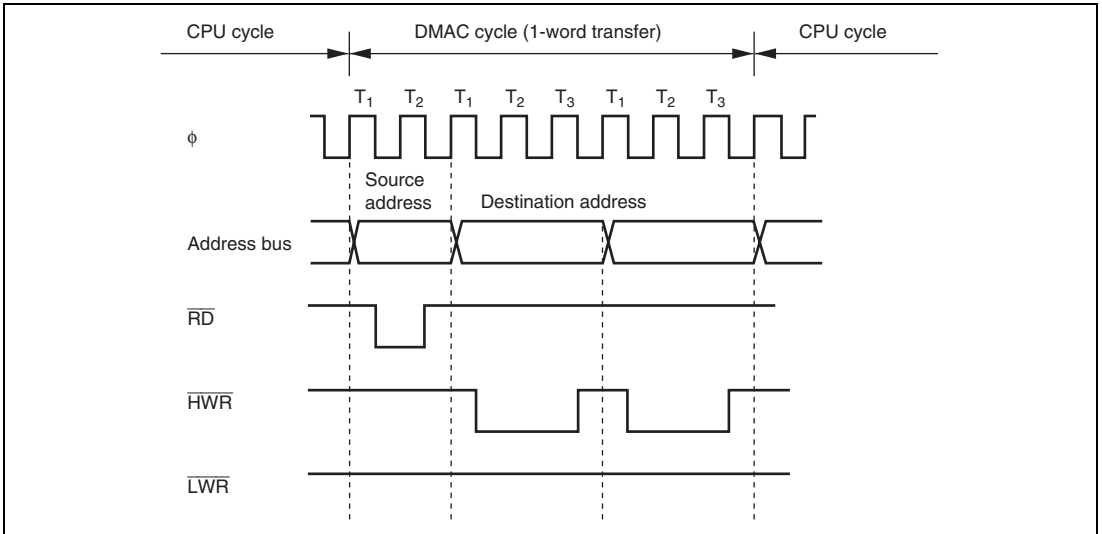


Figure 7.15 Example of DMA Transfer Bus Timing

The address is not output to the external address bus in an access to on-chip memory or an internal I/O register.

7.4.9 DMAC Bus Cycles (Dual Address Mode)

Short Address Mode: Figure 7.16 shows a transfer example in which $\overline{\text{TEND}}^*$ output is enabled and byte-size short address mode transfer (sequential/idle/repeat mode) is performed from external 8-bit, 2-state access space to internal I/O space.

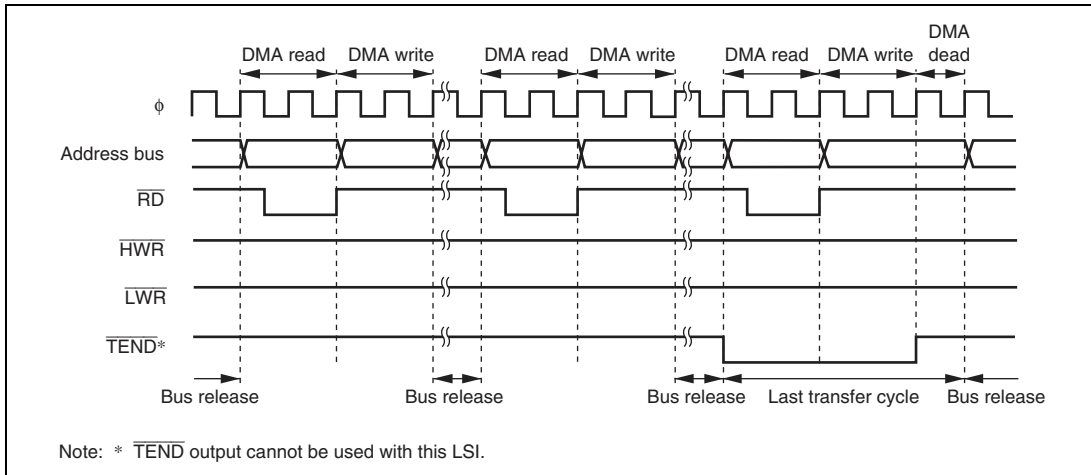


Figure 7.16 Example of Short Address Mode Transfer

A one-byte or one-word transfer is performed for one transfer request, and after the transfer the bus is released. While the bus is released one or more bus cycles are inserted by the CPU or DTC.

In the transfer end cycle (the cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0), a one-state DMA dead cycle is inserted after the DMA write cycle.

In repeat mode, when $\overline{\text{TEND}}^*$ output is enabled, $\overline{\text{TEND}}^*$ output goes low in the transfer cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0.

Note: * $\overline{\text{TEND}}$ output cannot be used with this LSI.

Full Address Mode (Cycle Steal Mode): Figure 7.17 shows a transfer example in which \overline{TEND}^* output is enabled and word-size full address mode transfer (cycle steal mode) is performed from external 16-bit, 2-state access space to external 16-bit, 2-state access space.

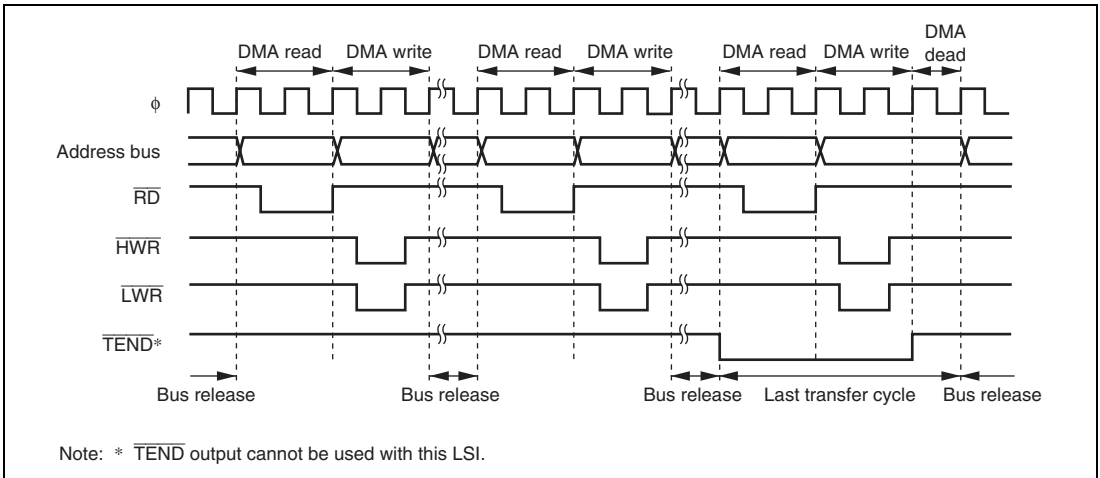


Figure 7.17 Example of Full Address Mode (Cycle Steal) Transfer

A one-byte or one-word transfer is performed, and after the transfer the bus is released. While the bus is released one bus cycle is inserted by the CPU or DTC.

In the transfer end cycle (the cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0), a one-state DMA dead cycle is inserted after the DMA write cycle.

Note: * \overline{TEND} output cannot be used with this LSI.

Full Address Mode (Burst Mode): Figure 7.18 shows a transfer example in which $\overline{\text{TEND}}^*$ output is enabled and word-size full address mode transfer (burst mode) is performed from external 16-bit, 2-state access space to external 16-bit, 2-state access space.

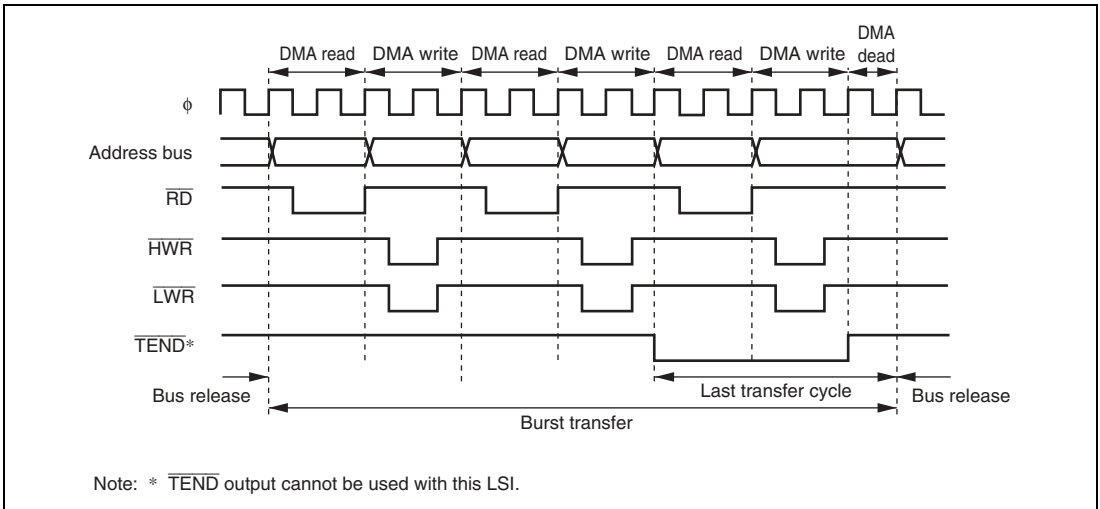


Figure 7.18 Example of Full Address Mode (Burst Mode) Transfer

In burst mode, one-byte or one-word transfers are executed consecutively until transfer ends. In the transfer end cycle (the cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0), a one-state DMA dead cycle is inserted after the DMA write cycle.

If a request from another higher-priority channel is generated after burst transfer starts, that channel has to wait until the burst transfer ends.

If an NMI is generated while a channel designated for burst transfer is in the transfer enabled state, the DTME bit is cleared and the channel is placed in the transfer disabled state. If burst transfer has already been activated inside the DMAC, the bus is released on completion of a one-byte or one-word transfer within the burst transfer, and burst transfer is suspended. If the last transfer cycle of the burst transfer has already been activated inside the DMAC, execution continues to the end of the transfer even if the DTME bit is cleared.

Note: * $\overline{\text{TEND}}$ output cannot be used with this LSI.

Full Address Mode (Block Transfer Mode): Figure 7.19 shows a transfer example in which \overline{TEND}^* output is enabled and word-size full address mode transfer (block transfer mode) is performed from internal 16-bit, 1-state access space to external 16-bit, 2-state access space.

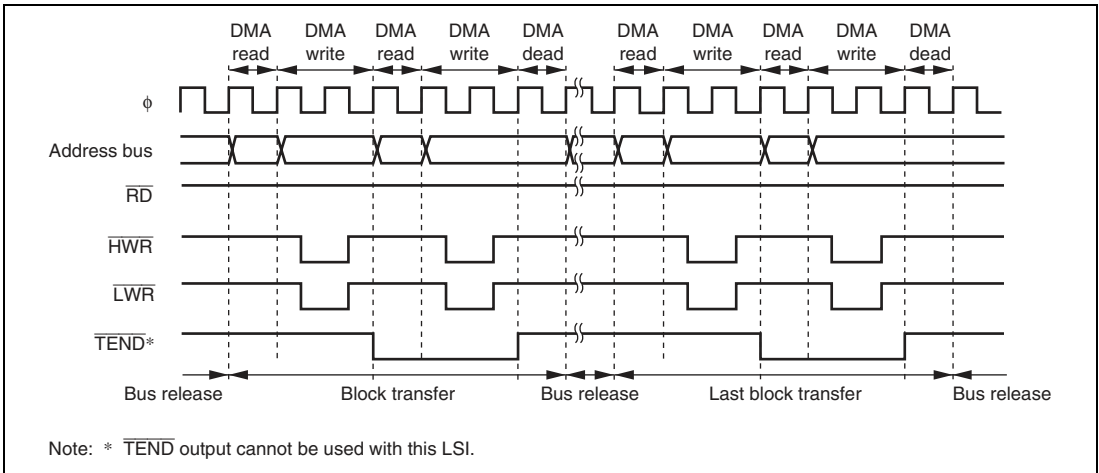


Figure 7.19 Example of Full Address Mode (Block Transfer Mode) Transfer

A one-block transfer is performed for one transfer request, and after the transfer the bus is released. While the bus is released, one or more bus cycles are inserted by the CPU or DTC.

In the transfer end cycle of each block (the cycle in which the transfer counter reaches 0), a one-state DMA dead cycle is inserted after the DMA write cycle.

One block is transmitted without interruption. NMI generation does not affect block transfer operation.

Note: * \overline{TEND} output cannot be used with this LSI.

$\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ Signal Level Activation Timing (Normal Mode): Set the DTA bit for the channel for which the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is selected to 1.

Figure 7.20 shows an example of $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ level activated normal mode transfer.

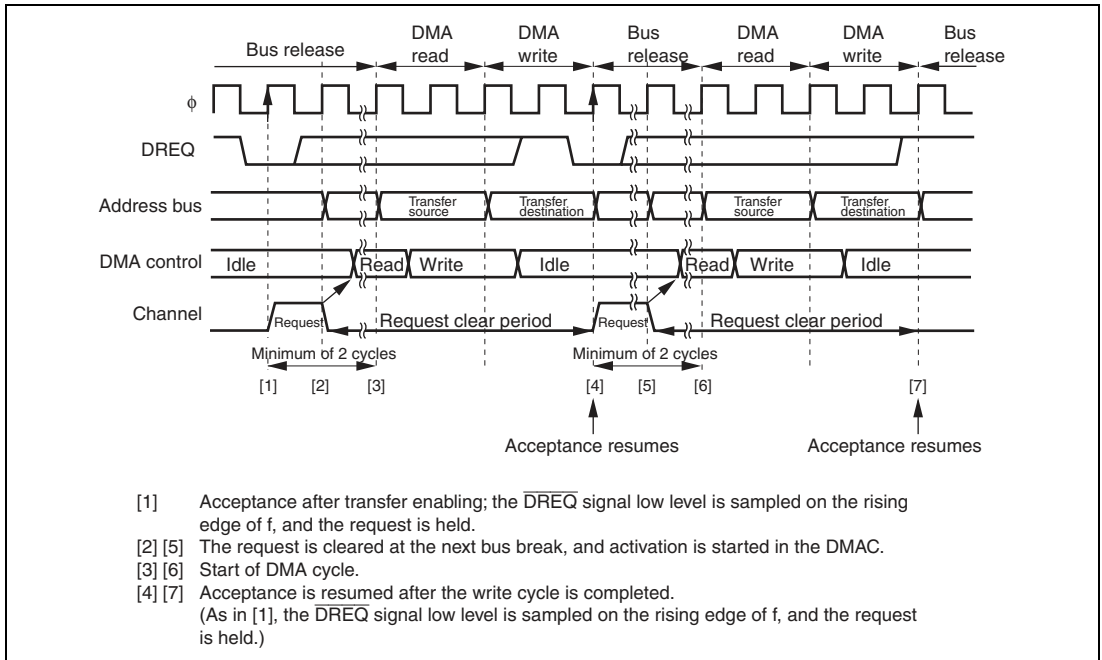


Figure 7.20 Example of $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ Level Activated Normal Mode Transfer

$\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal sampling is performed every cycle, with the rising edge of the next ϕ cycle after the end of the DMABCR write cycle for setting the transfer enabled state as the starting point.

When the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low level is sampled while acceptance by means of the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is possible, the request is held in the DMAC. Then, when activation is initiated in the DMAC, the request is cleared. Acceptance resumes after the end of the write cycle, $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ pin low level sampling is performed again, and this operation is repeated until the transfer ends.

Note: The $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal of this chip is an internal signal of chip, so it is not output from the pin.

7.4.10 DMAC Multi-Channel Operation

The DMAC channel priority order is: channel 0 > channel 1, and channel A > channel B. Table 7.9 summarizes the priority order for DMAC channels.

Table 7.9 DMAC Channel Priority Order

| Short Address Mode | Full Address Mode | Priority |
|--------------------|-------------------|----------|
| Channel 0A | Channel 0 | High |
| Channel 0B | | |
| Channel 1A | Channel 1 | Low |
| Channel 1B | | |

If transfer requests are issued simultaneously for more than one channel, or if a transfer request for another channel is issued during a transfer, when the bus is released the DMAC selects the highest-priority channel from among those issuing a request according to the priority order shown in table 7.14. During burst transfer, or when one block is being transferred in block transfer, the channel will not be changed until the end of the transfer. Figure 7.21 shows a transfer example in which transfer requests are issued simultaneously for channels 0A, 0B, and 1.

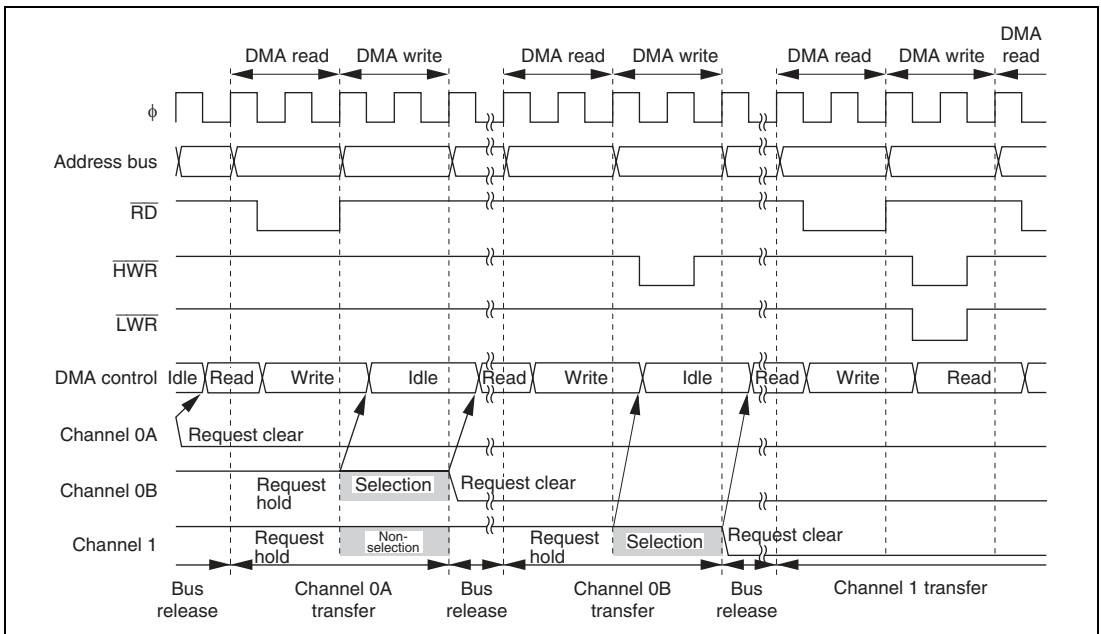


Figure 7.21 Example of Multi-Channel Transfer

7.4.11 Relation between the DMAC, External Bus Requests, and the DTC

There can be no break between a DMA cycle read and a DMA cycle write. This means that a refresh cycle, external bus release cycle, or DTC cycle is not generated between the external read and external write in a DMA cycle.

In the case of successive read and write cycles, such as in burst transfer or block transfer, a refresh or external bus released state may be inserted after a write cycle. Since the DTC has a lower priority than the DMAC, the DTC does not operate until the DMAC releases the bus.

When DMA cycle reads or writes are accesses to on-chip memory or internal I/O registers, these DMA cycles can be executed at the same time as refresh cycles or external bus release. However, simultaneous operation may not be possible when a write buffer is used.

7.4.12 NMI Interrupts and DMAC

When an NMI interrupt is requested, burst mode transfer in full address mode is interrupted. An NMI interrupt does not affect the operation of the DMAC in other modes.

In full address mode, transfer is enabled for a channel when both the DTE bit and the DTME bit are set to 1. With burst mode setting, the DTME bit is cleared when an NMI interrupt is requested.

If the DTME bit is cleared during burst mode transfer, the DMAC discontinues transfer on completion of the 1-byte or 1-word transfer in progress, then releases the bus, which passes to the CPU.

The channel on which transfer was interrupted can be restarted by setting the DTME bit to 1 again. Figure 7.22 shows the procedure for continuing transfer when it has been interrupted by an NMI interrupt on a channel designated for burst mode transfer.

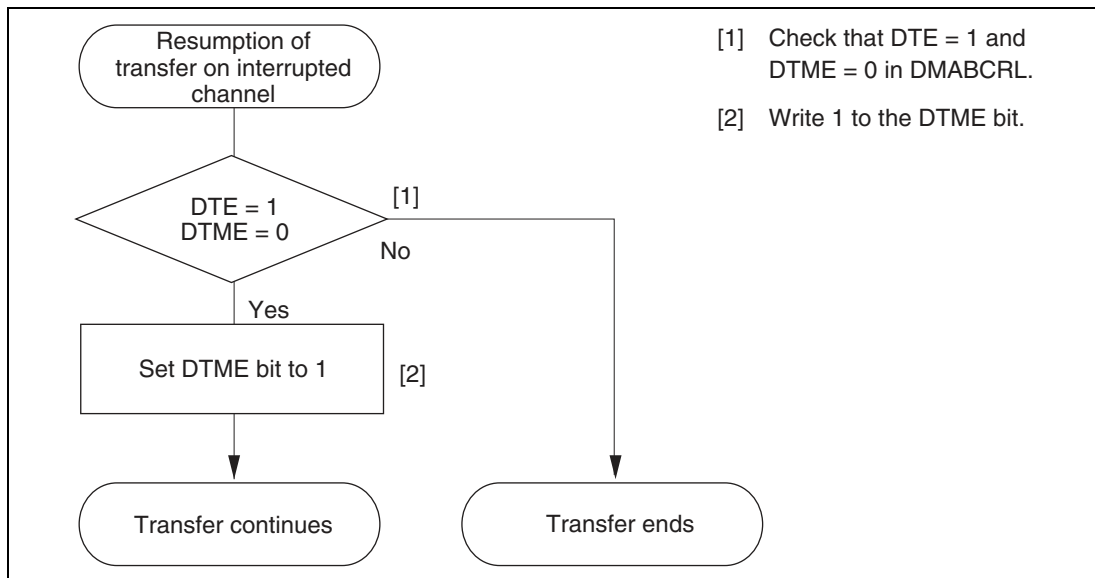


Figure 7.22 Example of Procedure for Continuing Transfer on Channel Interrupted by NMI Interrupt

7.4.13 Forced Termination of DMAC Operation

If the DTE bit for the channel currently operating is cleared to 0, the DMAC stops on completion of the 1-byte or 1-word transfer in progress. DMAC operation resumes when the DTE bit is set to 1 again. In full address mode, the same applies to the DTME bit. Figure 7.23 shows the procedure for forcibly terminating DMAC operation by software.

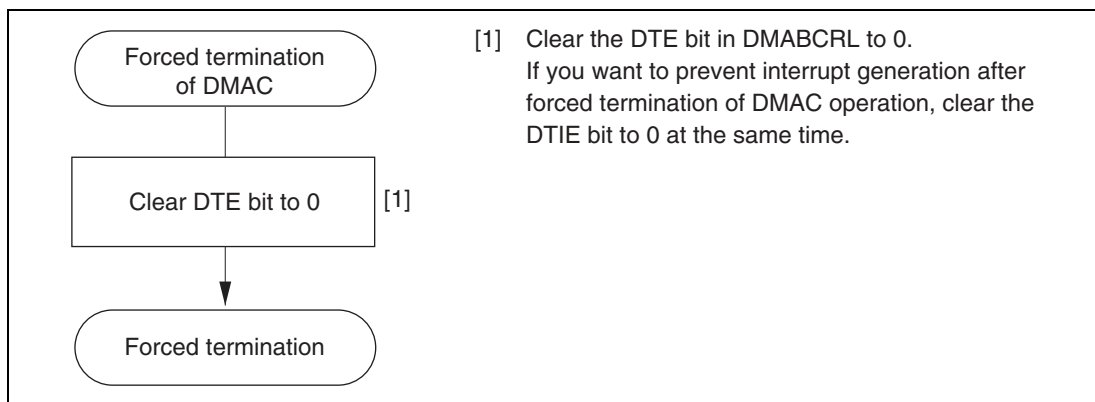


Figure 7.23 Example of Procedure for Forcibly Terminating DMAC Operation

7.4.14 Clearing Full Address Mode

Figure 7.24 shows the procedure for releasing and initializing a channel designated for full address mode. After full address mode has been cleared, the channel can be set to another transfer mode using the appropriate setting procedure.

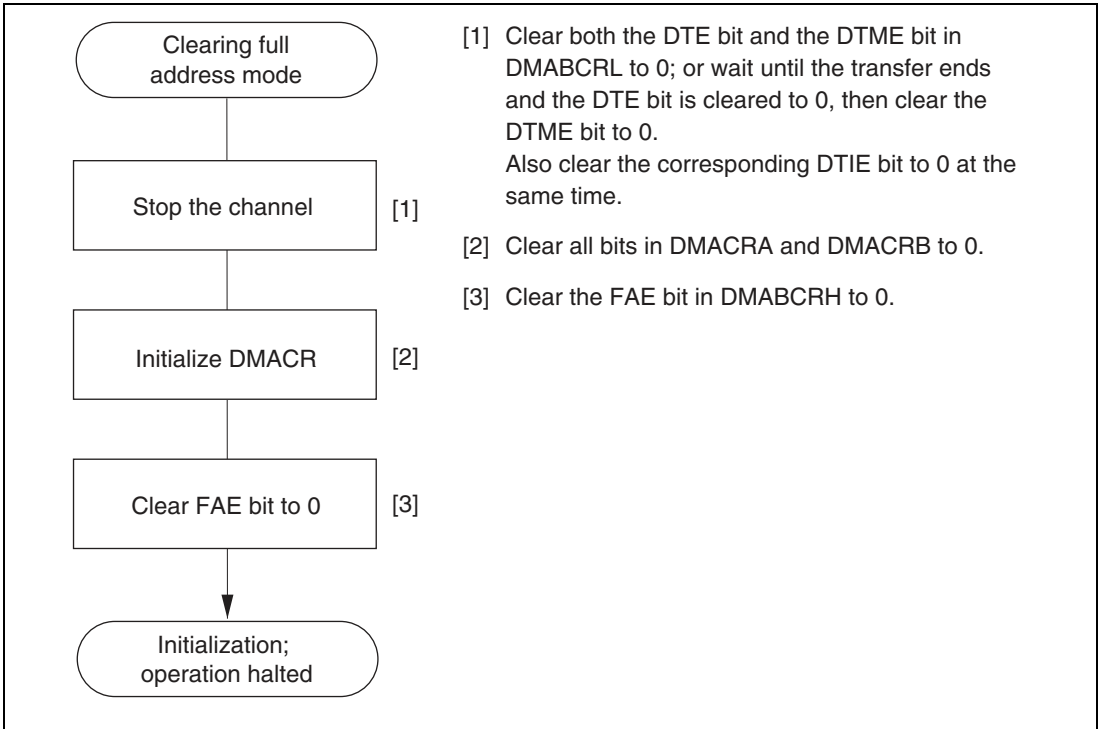


Figure 7.24 Example of Procedure for Clearing Full Address Mode

7.5 Interrupts

The sources of interrupts generated by the DMAC are transfer end and transfer break. Table 7.10 shows the interrupt sources and their priority order.

Table 7.10 Interrupt Source Priority Order

| Interrupt Name | Interrupt Source | | Interrupt Priority Order |
|----------------|--|---|--------------------------|
| | Short Address Mode | Full Address Mode | |
| DEND0A | Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 0A | Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 0 | High ↑ Low |
| DEND0B | Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 0B | Interrupt due to break in transfer on channel 0 | |
| DEND1A | Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 1A | Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 1 | |
| DEND1B | Interrupt due to end of transfer on channel 1B | Interrupt due to break in transfer on channel 1 | |

Enabling or disabling of each interrupt source is set by means of the DTIE bit for the corresponding channel in DMABCR, and interrupts from each source are sent to the interrupt controller independently. The relative priority of transfer end interrupts on each channel is decided by the interrupt controller, as shown in table 7.10.

Figure 7.25 shows a block diagram of a transfer end/transfer break interrupt. An interrupt is always generated when the DTIE bit is set to 1 while DTE bit is cleared to 0.

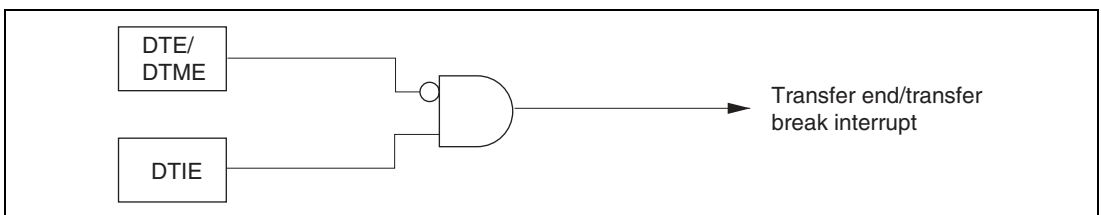


Figure 7.25 Block Diagram of Transfer End/Transfer Break Interrupt

In full address mode, a transfer break interrupt is generated when the DTME bit is cleared to 0 while DTIEB bit is set to 1. In both short address mode and full address mode, DMABCR should be set so as to prevent the occurrence of a combination that constitutes a condition for interrupt generation during setting.

7.6 Usage Notes

7.6.1 DMAC Register Access during Operation

Except for forced termination, the operating (including transfer waiting state) channel setting should not be changed. The operating channel setting should only be changed when transfer is disabled. Also, the DMAC register should not be written to in a DMA transfer.

DMAC register reads during operation (including the transfer waiting state) are described below.

1. DMAC control starts one cycle before the bus cycle, with output of the internal address. Consequently, MAR is updated in the bus cycle before DMAC transfer.

Figure 7.26 shows an example of the update timing for DMAC registers in dual address transfer mode.

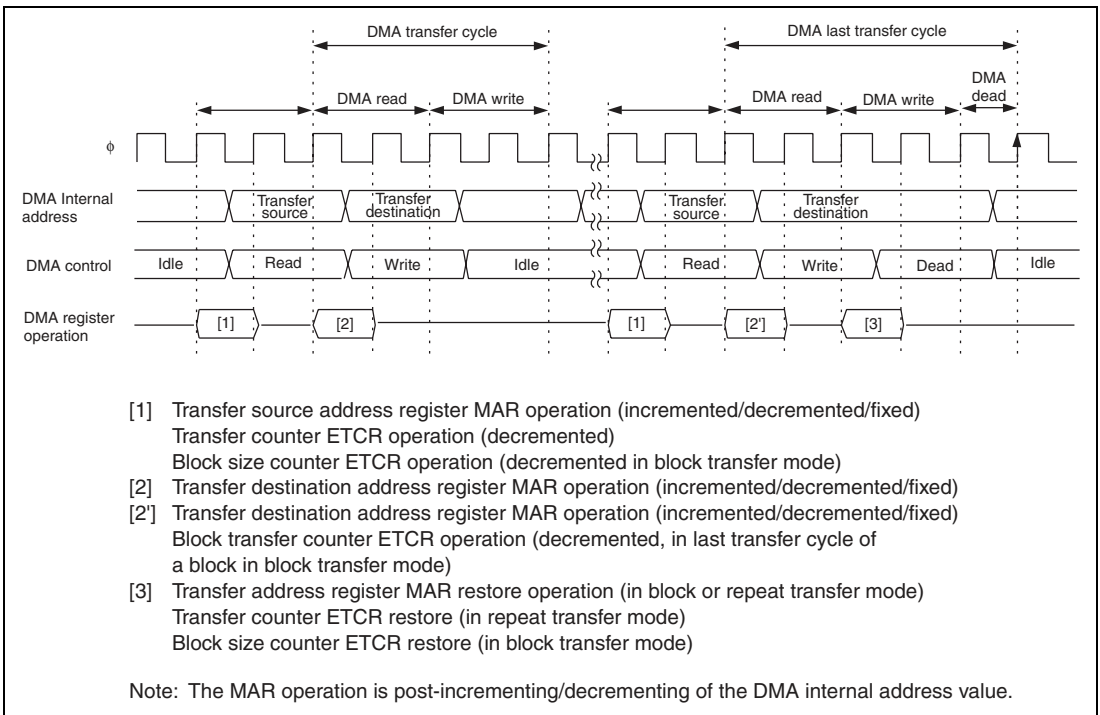


Figure 7.26 DMAC Register Update Timing

2. If a DMAC transfer cycle occurs immediately after a DMAC register read cycle, the DMAC register is read as shown in figure 7.27.

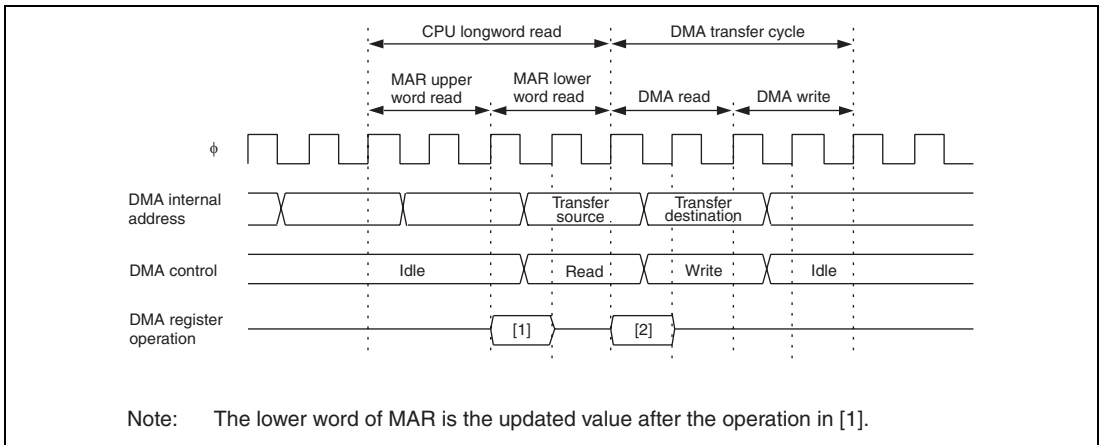


Figure 7.27 Contention between DMAC Register Update and CPU Read

7.6.2 Module Stop

When the MSTPA7 bit in MSTPCR is set to 1, the DMAC clock stops, and the module stop state is entered. However, 1 cannot be written to the MSTPA7 bit if any of the DMAC channels is enabled. This setting should therefore be made when DMAC operation is stopped.

When the DMAC clock stops, DMAC register accesses can no longer be made. Since the following DMAC register settings are valid even in the module stop state, they should be invalidated, if necessary, before a module stop.

- Transfer end/suspend interrupt (DTE = 0 and DTIE = 1)

7.6.3 Medium-Speed Mode

When the DTA bit is 0, internal interrupt signals specified as DMAC transfer sources are edge-detected. In medium-speed mode, the DMAC operates on a medium-speed clock, while on-chip peripheral modules operate on a high-speed clock.

Consequently, if the period in which the relevant interrupt source is cleared by the CPU, DTC, or another DMAC channel, and the next interrupt is generated, is less than one state with respect to the DMAC clock (bus master clock), edge detection may not be possible and the interrupt may be ignored.

7.6.4 Activation Source Acceptance

At the start of activation source acceptance, a low level is detected in both $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal falling edge sensing and low level sensing. Similarly, in the case of an internal interrupt, the interrupt request is detected. Therefore, a request is accepted from an internal interrupt or $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ pin low level that occurs before execution of the DMABCRL write to enable transfer.

When the DMAC is activated, take any necessary steps to prevent an internal interrupt or DREQ signal low level remaining from the end of the previous transfer, etc.

7.6.5 Internal Interrupt after End of Transfer

When the DTE bit is cleared to 0 by the end of transfer or an abort, the selected internal interrupt request will be sent to the CPU or DTC even if DTA is set to 1.

Also, if internal DMAC activation has already been initiated when operation is aborted, the transfer is executed but flag clearing is not performed for the selected internal interrupt even if DTA is set to 1.

An internal interrupt request following the end of transfer or an abort should be handled by the CPU as necessary.

7.6.6 Channel Re-Setting

To reactivate a number of channels when multiple channels are enabled, use exclusive handling of transfer end interrupts, and perform DMABCR control bit operations exclusively. Note, in particular, that in cases where multiple interrupts are generated between reading and writing of DMABCR, and a DMABCR operation is performed during new interrupt handling, the DMABCR write data in the original interrupt handling routine will be incorrect, and the write may invalidate the results of the operations by the multiple interrupts. Ensure that overlapping DMABCR operations are not performed by multiple interrupts, and that there is no separation between read and write operations by the use of a bit-manipulation instruction. Also, when the DTE and DTME bits are cleared by the DMAC or are written with 0, they must first be read while cleared to 0 before the CPU can write a 1 to them.

Section 8 Data Transfer Controller (DTC)

This LSI includes a data transfer controller (DTC). The DTC can be activated by an interrupt or software, to transfer data.

8.1 Features

- Transfer possible over any number of channels
 - Transfer information is stored in memory
 - One activation source can trigger a number of data transfer (chain transfer)
- Three transfer modes
 - Normal, repeat, and block transfer modes available
- One activation source can trigger a number of data transfers (chain transfer)
- Direct specification of 16-Mbyte address space possible
- Activation by software is possible
- Transfer can be set in byte or word units
- A CPU interrupt can be requested for the interrupt that activated the DTC
- Module stop mode can be set

Figure 8.1 shows a block diagram of the DTC. The DTC's register information is stored in the on-chip RAM. When the DTC is used, the RAME bit in SYSCR must be set to 1. A 32-bit bus connects the DTC to the on-chip RAM (1 kbyte), enabling 32-bit/1-state reading and writing of the DTC register information.

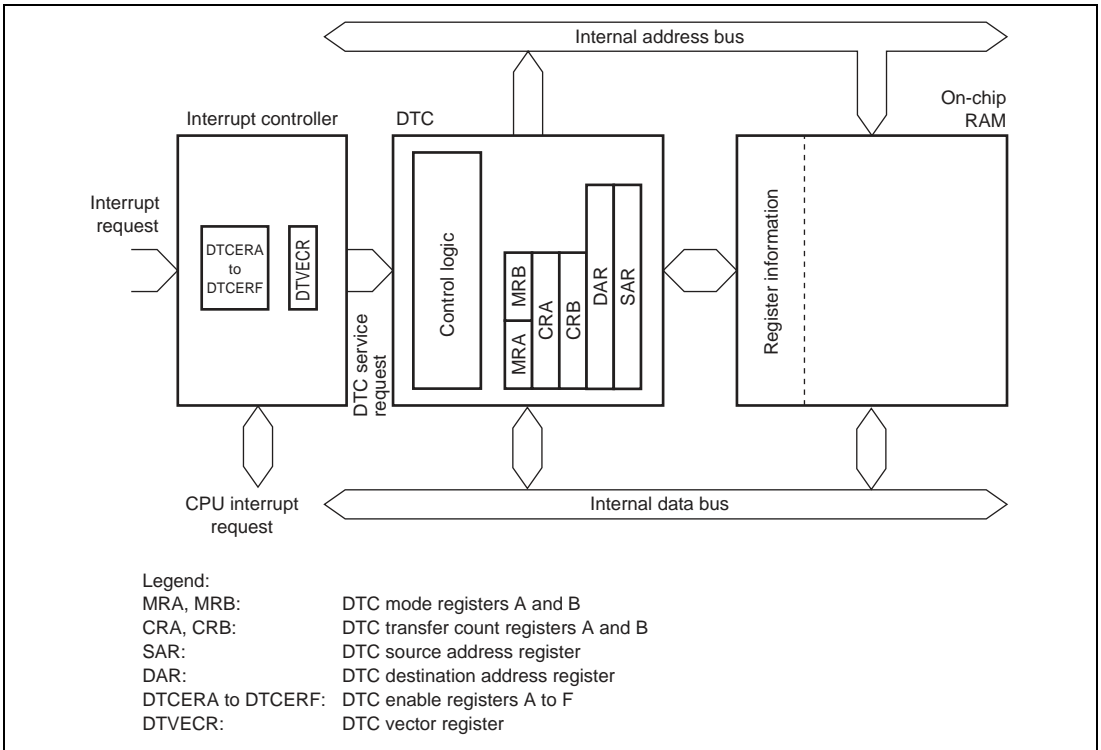


Figure 8.1 Block Diagram of DTC

8.2 Register Descriptions

DTC has the following registers.

- DTC mode register A (MRA)
- DTC mode register B (MRB)
- DTC source address register (SAR)
- DTC destination address register (DAR)
- DTC transfer count register A (CRA)
- DTC transfer count register B (CRB)

These six registers cannot be directly accessed from the CPU. When activated, the DTC reads a set of register information that is stored in an on-chip RAM to the corresponding DTC registers and transfers data. After the data transfer, it writes a set of updated register information back to the RAM.

- DTC enable registers (DTCERA to DTCERF)
- DTC vector register (DTVECR)

8.2.1 DTC Mode Register A (MRA)

MRA selects the DTC operating mode.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | SM1 | Undefined | — | Source Address Mode 1 and 0 |
| 6 | SM0 | Undefined | — | These bits specify an SAR operation after a data transfer. 0x: SAR is fixed 10: SAR is incremented after a transfer (by +1 when Sz = 0; by +2 when Sz = 1) 11: SAR is decremented after a transfer (by -1 when Sz = 0; by -2 when Sz = 1) |
| 5 | DM1 | Undefined | — | Destination Address Mode 1 and 0 |
| 4 | DM0 | Undefined | — | These bits specify a DAR operation after a data transfer. 0x: DAR is fixed 10: DAR is incremented after a transfer (by +1 when Sz = 0; by +2 when Sz = 1) 11: DAR is decremented after a transfer (by -1 when Sz = 0; by -2 when Sz = 1) |
| 3 | MD1 | Undefined | — | DTC Mode |
| 2 | MD0 | Undefined | — | These bits specify the DTC transfer mode. 00: Normal mode 01: Repeat mode 10: Block transfer mode 11: Setting prohibited |
| 1 | DTS | Undefined | — | DTC Transfer Mode Select Specifies whether the source side or the destination side is set to be a repeat area or block area, in repeat mode or block transfer mode. 0: Destination side is repeat area or block area 1: Source side is repeat area or block area |
| 0 | Sz | Undefined | — | DTC Data Transfer Size Specifies the size of data to be transferred. 0: Byte-size transfer 1: Word-size transfer |

Legend:

x: Don't care

8.2.2 DTC Mode Register B (MRB)

MRB selects the DTC operating mode.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | CHNE | Undefined | — | <p>DTC Chain Transfer Enable</p> <p>This bit specifies a chain transfer. For details, refer to section 8.5.4, Chain Transfer.</p> <p>In data transfer with CHNE set to 1, determination of the end of the specified number of transfers, clearing of the interrupt source flag, and clearing of DTCER, are not performed.</p> <p>0: DTC data transfer completed (waiting for start)</p> <p>1: DTC chain transfer (reads new register information and transfers data)</p> |
| 6 | DISEL | Undefined | — | <p>DTC Interrupt Select</p> <p>This bit specifies whether CPU interrupt is disabled or enabled after a data transfer.</p> <p>0: Interrupt request is issued to the CPU when the specified data transfer is completed.</p> <p>1: DTC issues interrupt request to the CPU in every data transfer (DTC does not clear the interrupt request flag that is a cause of the activation).</p> |
| 5 to 0 | — | Undefined | — | <p>Reserved</p> <p>These bits have no effect on DTC operation, and the write value should always be 0.</p> |

8.2.3 DTC Source Address Register (SAR)

SAR is a 24-bit register that designates the source address of data to be transferred by the DTC. For word-size transfer, specify an even source address.

8.2.4 DTC Destination Address Register (DAR)

DAR is a 24-bit register that designates the destination address of data to be transferred by the DTC. For word-size transfer, specify an even destination address.

8.2.5 DTC Transfer Count Register A (CRA)

CRA is a 16-bit register that designates the number of times data is to be transferred by the DTC. In normal mode, the entire CRA functions as a 16-bit transfer counter (1 to 65,536). It is decremented by 1 every time data is transferred, and transfer ends when the count reaches H'0000. In repeat mode or block transfer mode, the CRA is divided into two parts: the upper 8 bits (CRAH) and the lower 8 bits (CRAL). CRAH holds the number of transfers while CRAL functions as an 8-bit transfer counter (1 to 256). In block transfer mode, CRAH stores the block size while CRAL functions as an 8-bit block size counter (1 to 256). CRAL is decremented by 1 every time data is transferred, and the contents of CRAH are sent when the count reaches H'00. This operation is repeated.

8.2.6 DTC Transfer Count Register B (CRB)

CRB is a 16-bit register that designates the number of times data is to be transferred by the DTC in block transfer mode. It functions as a 16-bit transfer counter (1 to 65,536) that is decremented by 1 every time data is transferred, and transfer ends when the count reaches H'0000.

8.2.7 DTC Enable Registers (DTCERA to DTCERF)

DTCEr which is comprised of seven registers, DTCERA to DTCERF, is a register that specifies DTC activation interrupt sources. The correspondence between interrupt sources and DTCE bits is shown in table 8.2. For DTCE bit setting, use bit manipulation instructions such as BSET and BCLR for reading and writing. If all interrupts are masked, multiple activation sources can be set at one time (only at the initial setting) by writing data after executing a dummy read on the relevant register.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | DTCEn7 | 0 | R/W | DTC Activation Enable 7 to 0 |
| 6 | DTCEn6 | 0 | R/W | 0: Prohibits DTC startup by an interrupt. |
| 5 | DTCEn5 | 0 | R/W | 1: Selects a corresponding interrupt source as the DTC |
| 4 | DTCEn4 | 0 | R/W | startup source. |
| 3 | DTCEn3 | 0 | R/W | [Clearing conditions] |
| 2 | DTCEn2 | 0 | R/W | • When the DISEL bit is 1 and the data transfer has |
| 1 | DTCEn1 | 0 | R/W | ended |
| 0 | DTCEn0 | 0 | R/W | • When the specified number of transfers have ended |

[Holding condition]

- These bits are not cleared when the DISEL bit is 0 and the specified number of transfers have not ended

8.2.8 DTC Vector Register (DTVECR)

DTVECR enables or disables DTC activation by software, and sets a vector number for the software activation interrupt.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|------|--|
| 7 | SWDTE | 0 | R/W* | <p>DTC Software Activation Enable</p> <p>This bit specifies whether DTC software startup is enabled or prohibited.</p> <p>0: Prohibits DTC software startup. 1: Enables DTC software startup.</p> <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the DISEL bit is 0 and the specified number of transfers have not ended When 0 s written to the DISEL bit after a software-activated data transfer end interrupt (SWDTEND) request has been sent to the CPU <p>[Holding conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The DISEL bit is set to 1 and data transfer has finished. The specified number of data transfers have completed. A software-triggered data transfer is in progress. |
| 6 | DTVEC6 | 0 | R/W | DTC Software Activation Vector 6 to 0 |
| 5 | DTVEC5 | 0 | R/W | These bits specify a vector number for DTC software activation. |
| 4 | DTVEC4 | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | DTVEC3 | 0 | R/W | The vector address is expressed as H'0400 + (vector number × 2). For example, when DTVEC6 to DTVEC0 = H'10, the vector address is H'0420. When the bit SWDTE is 0, these bits can be written. |
| 2 | DTVEC2 | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | DTVEC1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | DTVEC0 | 0 | R/W | |

Note: * Only 1 may be written to the SWDTE bit.

8.3 Activation Sources

The DTC operates when activated by an interrupt or by a write to DTVECR by software. DTCER is used to select the activation interrupt source. An interrupt request can be directed to the CPU or DTC, as designated by the corresponding DTCER bit. At the end of a data transfer (or the last consecutive transfer in the case of chain transfer), the activation source or corresponding DTCER bit is cleared. Table 8.1 shows an activation source and DTCER clearance. The activation source flag, in the case of RXI0, for example, is the RDRF flag of SCI channel 0.

When an interrupt has been designated a DTC activation source, existing CPU mask level and interrupt controller priorities have no effect. If there is more than one activation source at the same time, the DTC operates in accordance with the default priorities. Figure 8.2 shows a block diagram of activation source control. For details see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

Table 8.1 Activation Source and DTCER Clearance

| Activation Source | When the DISEL Bit Is 0 and the Specified Number of Transfer Have Not Ended | When the DISEL Bit Is 1, or when the Specified Number of Transfers Have Ended |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| Software activation | The SWDTE bit is cleared to 0 | The SWDTE bit remains set to 1 An interrupt is issued to the CPU |
| Interrupt activation | The corresponding DTCER bit remains set to 1 The activation source flag is cleared to 0 | The corresponding DTCER bit is cleared to 0 The activation source flag remains set to 1 A request is issued to the CPU for the activation source interrupt |

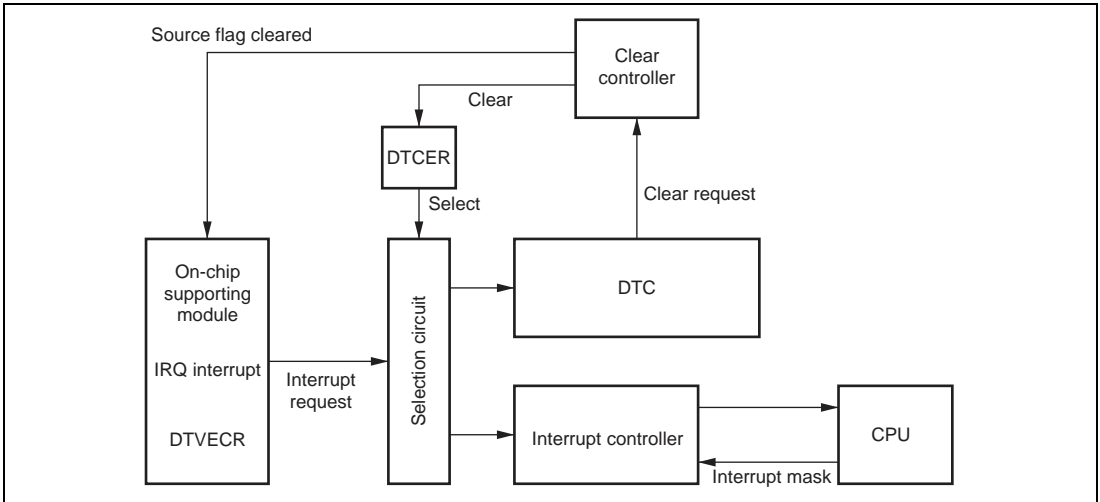


Figure 8.2 Block Diagram of DTC Activation Source Control

8.4 Location of Register Information and DTC Vector Table

Locate the register information in the on-chip RAM (addresses: H'FFEB0 to H'FFEFBF). Register information should be located at the address that is multiple of four within the range. Locating the register information in address space is shown in figure 8.3. Locate the MRA, SAR, MRB, DAR, CRA, and CRB registers, in that order, from the start address of the register information. In the case of chain transfer, register information should be located in consecutive areas and the register information start address should be located at the corresponding vector address to the interrupt source. The DTC reads the start address of the register information from the vector address set for each activation source, and then reads the register information from that start address.

When the DTC is activated by software, the vector address is obtained from: $H'0400 + (DTVECR[6:0] \times 2)$. For example, if DTVECR is H'10, the vector address is H'0420. The configuration of the vector address is the same in both normal and advanced modes, a 2-byte unit being used in both cases. These two bytes specify the lower bits of the register information start address.

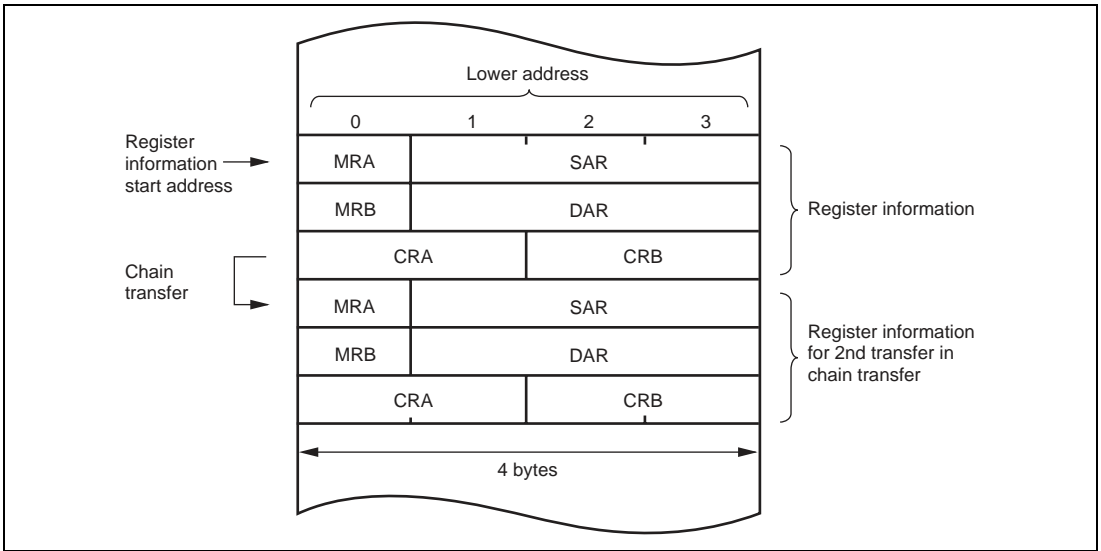


Figure 8.3 Correspondence between DTC Vector Address and Register Information

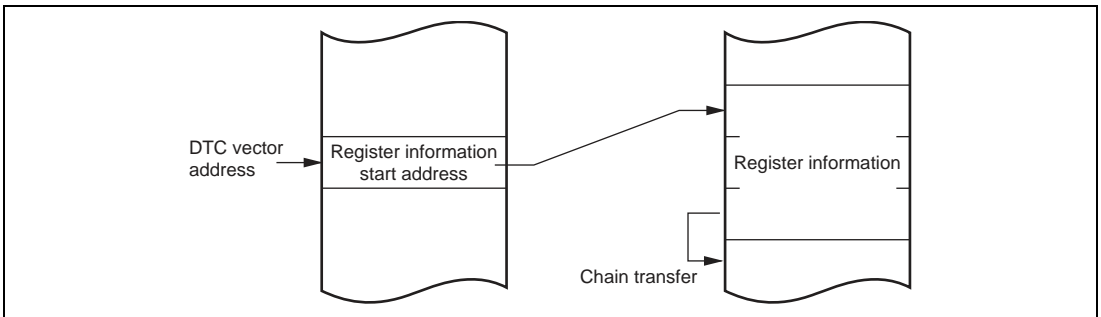


Figure 8.4 Correspondence between DTC Vector Address and Register Information

Table 8.2 Interrupt Sources, DTC Vector Addresses, and Corresponding DTCE

| Interrupt Source | Origin of Interrupt Source | Vector Number | DTC Vector Address | DTCE* | Priority |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|--------|----------|
| Software | Write to DTVECR | DTVECR | H'0400 + DTVECR[6:0] × 2 | | High |
| External pins | IRQ0 | 16 | H'0420 | DTCEA7 | ↑ |
| | IRQ1 | 17 | H'0422 | DTCEA6 | |
| | IRQ2 | 18 | H'0424 | DTCEA5 | |
| | IRQ3 | 19 | H'0426 | DTCEA4 | |
| | IRQ4 | 20 | H'0428 | DTCEA3 | |
| | IRQ5 | 21 | H'042A | DTCEA2 | |
| | IRQ7 | 23 | H'042E | DTCEA0 | |
| A/D | ADI | 28 | H'0438 | DTCEB6 | |
| TPU channel 0 | TGIA0 | 32 | H'0440 | DTCEB5 | |
| | TGIB0 | 33 | H'0442 | DTCEB4 | |
| | TGIC0 | 34 | H'0444 | DTCEB3 | |
| | TGID0 | 35 | H'0446 | DTCEB2 | |
| TPU channel 1 | TGI1A | 40 | H'0450 | DTCEB1 | |
| | TGI1B | 41 | H'0452 | DTCEB0 | |
| TPU channel 2 | TGI2A | 44 | H'0458 | DTCEC7 | |
| | TGI2B | 45 | H'045A | DTCEC6 | |
| 8-bit timer channel 0 | CMIA0 | 64 | H'0480 | DTCED3 | |
| | CMIB0 | 65 | H'0482 | DTCED2 | |
| 8-bit timer channel 1 | CMIA1 | 68 | H'0488 | DTCED1 | |
| | CMIB1 | 69 | H'048A | DTCED0 | |
| DMAC | DEND0A | 72 | H'0490 | DTCEE7 | |
| | DEND0B | 73 | H'0492 | DTCEE6 | |
| | DEND1A | 74 | H'0494 | DTCEE5 | |
| | DEND1A | 75 | H'0496 | DTCEE4 | |
| SIC channel 0 | RXI0 | 81 | H'04A2 | DTCEE3 | |
| | TXI0 | 82 | H'04A4 | DTCEE2 | |
| SIC channel 1 | RXI1 | 85 | H'04AA | DTCEE1 | |
| | TXI1 | 86 | H'04AC | DTCEE0 | |
| SIC channel 2 | RXI2 | 89 | H'04B2 | DTCEF7 | |
| | TXI2 | 90 | H'04B4 | DTCEF6 | Low |

Note: * DTCE bits with no corresponding interrupt are reserved, and the write value should always be 0.

8.5 Operation

Register information is stored in an on-chip RAM. When activated, the DTC reads register information in an on-chip RAM and transfers data. After the data transfer, it writes updated register information back to the memory. Pre-storage of register information in the memory makes it possible to transfer data over any required number of channels. The transfer mode can be specified as normal, repeat, and block transfer mode. Setting the CHNE bit to 1 makes it possible to perform a number of transfers with a single activation source (chain transfer).

The 24-bit SAR designates the DTC transfer source address and the 24-bit DAR designates the transfer destination address. After each transfer, SAR and DAR are independently incremented, decremented, or left fixed depending on its register information.

Figure 8.5 shows a flowchart of DTC operation.

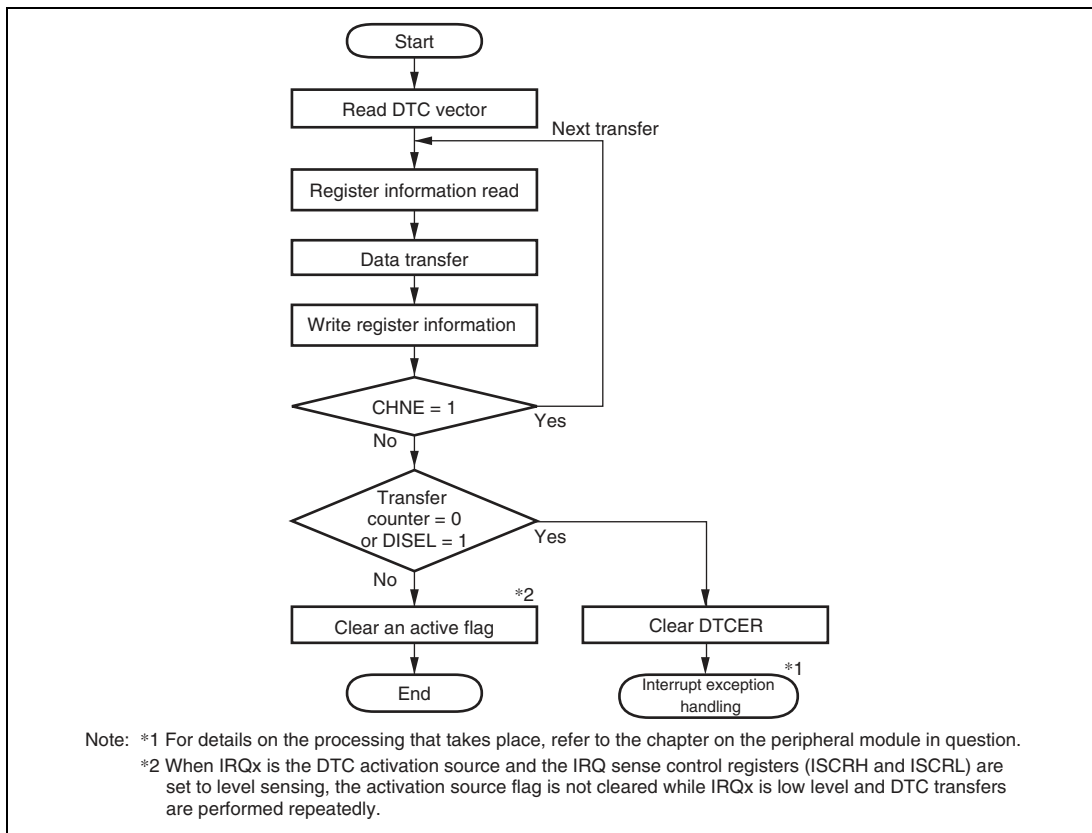


Figure 8.5 Flowchart of DTC Operation

Table 8.3 summarizes DTC functions.

Table 8.3 Overview of DTC Functions

| Transfer Mode | Activation Source | Address Register | |
|---|---|------------------|-------------|
| | | Source | Destination |
| Normal mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> One byte or one word data is transferred in response to a single transfer request. The memory address is incremented by 1 or 2. The number of times of data transfer is designated as 1 to 65,536. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IRQ TGI for TPU CMI for 8-bit timer TXI and RXI for SCI ADI for A/D converter | 24 bits | 24 bits |
| Repeat mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> One byte or one word data is transferred in response to a single transfer request. The memory address is incremented by 1 or 2. When the specified number of transfers (1 to 256) have ended, the initial state is restored, and transfer is repeated. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> DEND for DMAC Software | | |
| Block transfer mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The data of the specified block is transferred in response to a single transfer request. The block size is designated as 1 to 256 bytes or words. The number of times of data transfer is designated as 1 to 65,536. Either the transfer source or destination is designated as a block area. | | | |

8.5.1 Normal Mode

In normal mode, one operation transfers one byte or one word of data.

From 1 to 65,536 transfers can be specified. Once the specified number of transfers have ended, a CPU interrupt can be requested.

Table 8.4 shows the register information in normal mode, and figure 8.6 shows the memory mapping in normal mode.

Table 8.4 Register Information in Normal Mode

| Name | Abbreviation | Function |
|----------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| DTC source address register | SAR | Designates source address |
| DTC destination address register | DAR | Designates destination address |
| DTC transfer count register A | CRA | Designates transfer count |
| DTC transfer count register B | CRB | Not used |

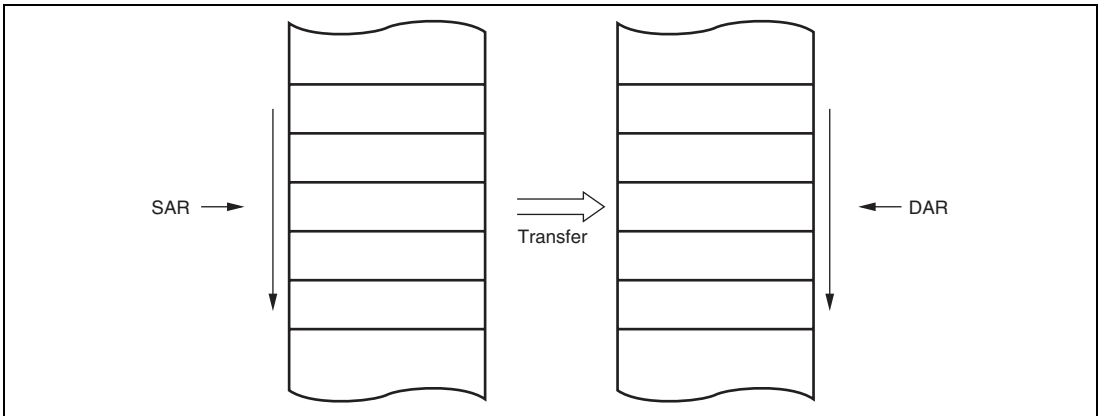


Figure 8.6 Memory Mapping in Normal Mode

8.5.2 Repeat Mode

In repeat mode, one operation transfers one byte or one word of data. From 1 to 256 transfers can be specified. Once the specified number of transfers have ended, the initial state of the transfer counter and the address register specified as the repeat area is restored, and transfer is repeated. In repeat mode the transfer counter value does not reach H'00, and therefore CPU interrupts cannot be requested when DISEL = 0.

Table 8.5 shows the register information in repeat mode, and figure 8.7 shows the memory mapping in repeat mode.

Table 8.5 Register Information in Repeat Mode

| Name | Abbreviation | Function |
|----------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| DTC source address register | SAR | Designates source address |
| DTC destination address register | DAR | Designates destination address |
| DTC transfer count register AH | CRAH | Holds number of transfers |
| DTC transfer count register AL | CRAL | Designates transfer count |
| DTC transfer count register B | CRB | Not used |

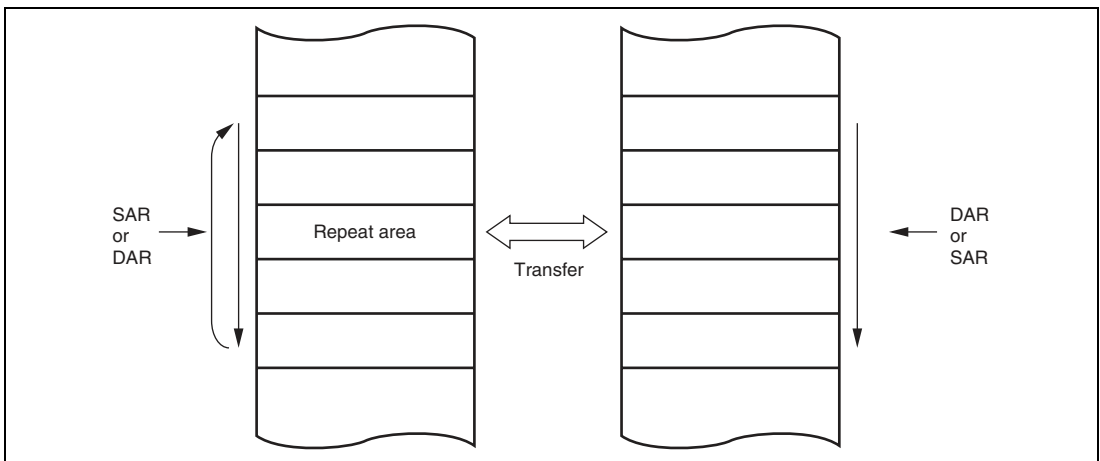


Figure 8.7 Memory Mapping in Repeat Mode

8.5.3 Block Transfer Mode

In block transfer mode, one operation transfers one block of data. Either the transfer source or the transfer destination is designated as a block area. The block size is 1 to 256. When the transfer of one block ends, the initial state of the block size counter and the address register specified as the block area is restored. The other address register is then incremented, decremented, or left fixed. From 1 to 65,536 transfers can be specified. Once the specified number of transfers have ended, a CPU interrupt is requested.

Table 8.6 shows the register information in block transfer mode, and figure 8.8 shows the memory mapping in block transfer mode.

Table 8.6 Register Information in Block Transfer Mode

| Name | Abbreviation | Function |
|----------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| DTC source address register | SAR | Designates source address |
| DTC destination address register | DAR | Designates destination address |
| DTC transfer count register AH | CRAH | Holds block size |
| DTC transfer count register AL | CRAL | Designates block size count |
| DTC transfer count register B | CRB | Transfer count |

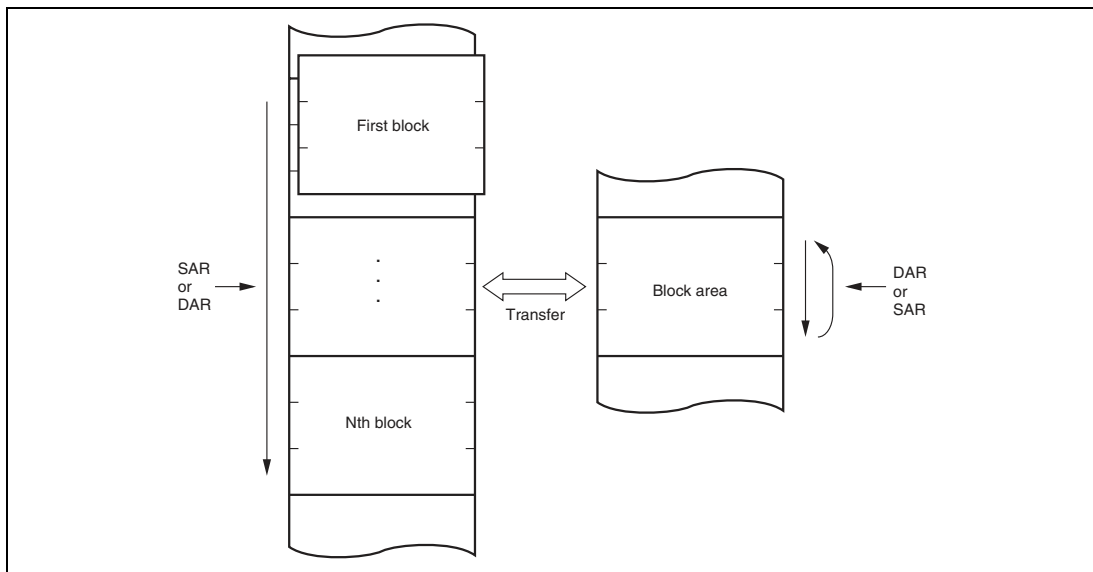


Figure 8.8 Memory Mapping in Block Transfer Mode

8.5.4 Chain Transfer

Setting the CHNE bit to 1 enables a number of data transfers to be performed consecutively in response to a single transfer request. SAR, DAR, CRA, CRB, MRA, and MRB, which define data transfers, can be set respectively.

Figure 8.9 shows the memory map for chain transfer. When activated, the DTC reads the register information start address stored at the vector address, and then reads the first register information at that start address. After the data transfer, the CHNE bit will be tested. When it has been set to 1, DTC reads next register information located in a consecutive area and performs the data transfer. These sequences are repeated until the CHNE bit is cleared to 0.

In the case of transfer with CHNE set to 1, an interrupt request to the CPU is not generated at the end of the specified number of transfers or by setting of the DISEL bit to 1, and the interrupt source flag for the activation source is not affected.

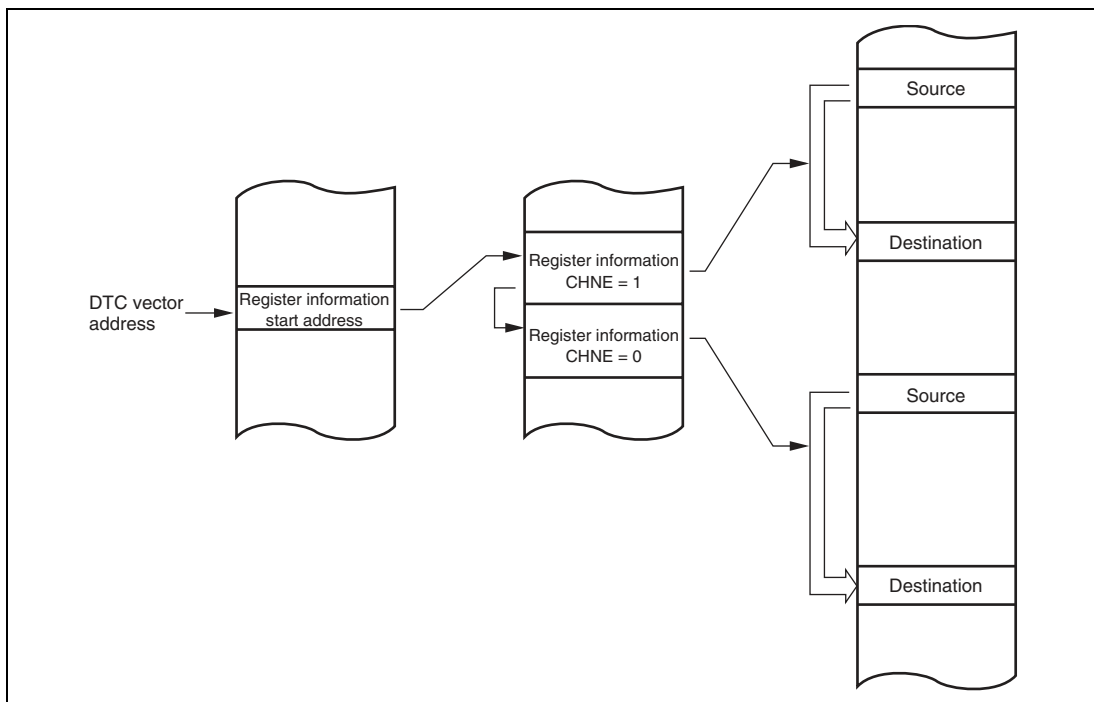


Figure 8.9 Chain Transfer Memory Map

8.5.5 Interrupts

An interrupt request is issued to the CPU when the DTC finishes the specified number of data transfers, or a data transfer for which the DIESEL bit was set to 1. In the case of interrupt activation, the interrupt set as the activation source is generated. These interrupts to the CPU are subject to CPU mask level and interrupt controller priority level control.

In the case of activation by software, a software activated data transfer end interrupt (SWDTEND) is generated. When the DIESEL bit is 1 and one data transfer has ended, or the specified number of transfers have ended, after data transfer ends, the SWDTE bit is held at 1 and an SWDTEND interrupt is generated. The interrupt handling routine should clear the SWDTE bit to 0.

When the DTC is activated by software, an SWDTEND interrupt is not generated during a data transfer wait or during data transfer even if the SWDTE bit is set to 1.

8.5.6 Operation Timing

Figures 8.10 to 8.12 show the DTC operation timing.

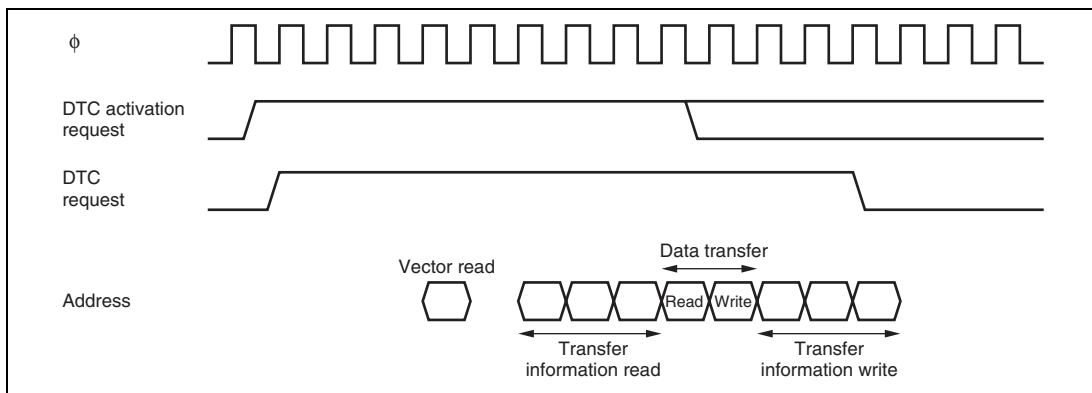


Figure 8.10 DTC Operation Timing (Example in Normal Mode or Repeat Mode)

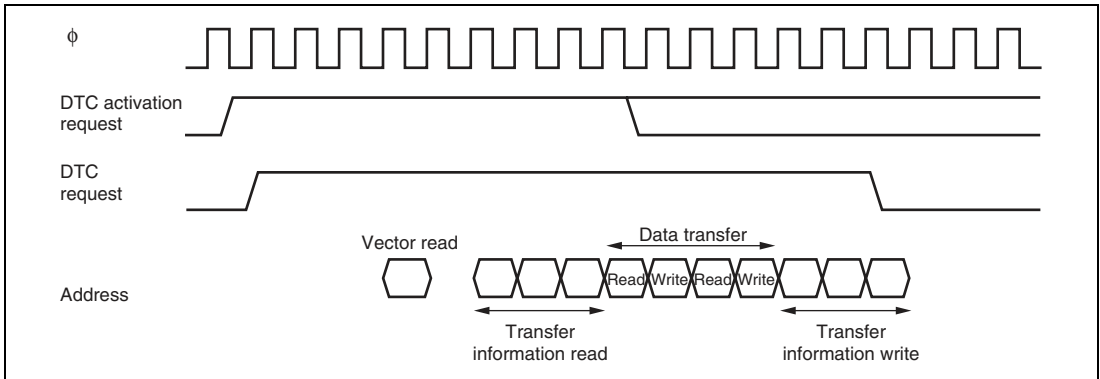


Figure 8.11 DTC Operation Timing (Example of Block Transfer Mode, with Block Size of 2)

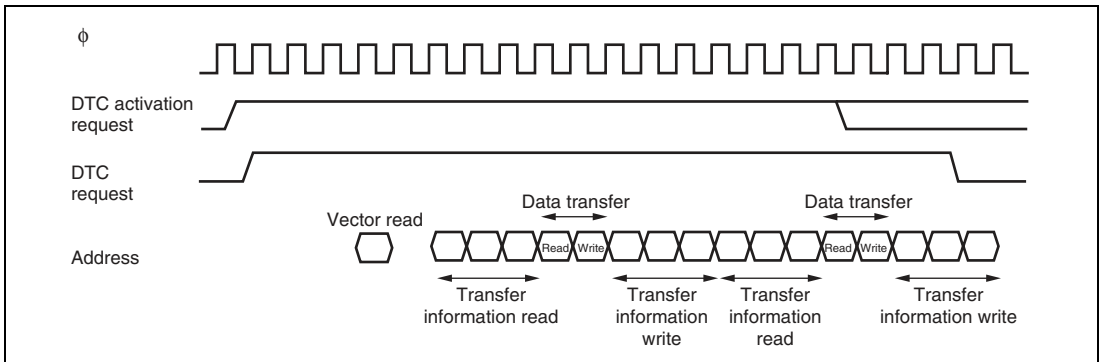


Figure 8.12 DTC Operation Timing (Example of Chain Transfer)

8.5.7 Number of DTC Execution States

Table 8.7 lists execution status for a single DTC data transfer, and table 8.8 shows the number of states required for each execution status.

Table 8.7 DTC Execution Status

| Mode | Vector Read | Register information Read/Write | Data read | Data Write | Internal Operations |
|----------------|-------------|------------------------------------|-----------|------------|---------------------|
| | I | J | K | L | M |
| Normal | 1 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| Repeat | 1 | 6 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| Block transfer | 1 | 6 | N | N | 3 |

Legend:

N: Block size (initial setting of CRAH and CRAL)

Table 8.8 Number of States Required for Each Execution Status

| Object to be Accessed | | | On-Chip RAM | On-Chip ROM | On-Chip I/O Registers | | External Devices | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|-------|-------------|-------------|-----------------------|----|------------------|----------|----|---------|
| | | | | | 8 | 16 | 8 | | 16 | |
| Bus width | | | 32 | 16 | 8 | 16 | 8 | | 16 | |
| Access states | | | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 2 | 3 |
| Execution status | Vector read | S_I | — | 1 | — | — | 4 | $6 + 2m$ | 2 | $3 + m$ |
| | Register information read/write | S_J | 1 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| | Byte data read | S_K | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | $3 + m$ | 2 | $3 + m$ |
| | Word data read | S_K | 1 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 4 | $6 + 2m$ | 2 | $3 + m$ |
| | Byte data write | S_L | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | $3 + m$ | 2 | $3 + m$ |
| | Word data write | S_L | 1 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 4 | $6 + 2m$ | 2 | $3 + m$ |
| | Internal operation | S_M | 1 | | | | | | | |

Legend:

m: Number of wait states in an external device access

The number of execution states is calculated from the formula below. Note that Σ means the sum of all transfers activated by one activation event (the number in which the CHNE bit is set to 1, plus 1).

$$\text{Number of execution states} = I \cdot S_I + \Sigma (J \cdot S_J + K \cdot S_K + L \cdot S_L) + M \cdot S_M$$

For example, when the DTC vector address table is located in on-chip ROM, normal mode is set, and data is transferred from the on-chip ROM to an internal I/O register, the time required for the DTC operation is 13 states. The time from activation to the end of the data write is 10 states.

8.6 Procedures for Using DTC

8.6.1 Activation by Interrupt

The procedure for using the DTC with interrupt activation is as follows:

1. Set the MRA, MRB, SAR, DAR, CRA, and CRB register information in the on-chip RAM.
2. Set the start address of the register information in the DTC vector address.
3. Set the corresponding bit in DTCER to 1.
4. Set the enable bits for the interrupt sources to be used as the activation sources to 1. The DTC is activated when an interrupt used as an activation source is generated.
5. After the end of one data transfer, or after the specified number of data transfers have ended, the DTCE bit is cleared to 0 and a CPU interrupt is requested. If the DTC is to continue transferring data, set the DTCE bit to 1.

8.6.2 Activation by Software

The procedure for using the DTC with software activation is as follows:

1. Set the MRA, MRB, SAR, DAR, CRA, and CRB register information in the on-chip RAM.
2. Set the start address of the register information in the DTC vector address.
3. Check that the SWDTE bit is 0.
4. Write 1 to SWDTE bit and the vector number to DTVECR.
5. Check the vector number written to DTVECR.
6. After the end of one data transfer, if the DISEL bit is 0 and a CPU interrupt is not requested, the SWDTE bit is cleared to 0. If the DTC is to continue transferring data, set the SWDTE bit to 1. When the DISEL bit is 1, or after the specified number of data transfers have ended, the SWDTE bit is held at 1 and a CPU interrupt is requested.

8.7 Examples of Use of the DTC

8.7.1 Normal Mode

An example is shown in which the DTC is used to receive 128 bytes of data via the SCI.

1. Set MRA to fixed source address ($SM1 = SM0 = 0$), incrementing destination address ($DM1 = 1, DM0 = 0$), normal mode ($MD1 = MD0 = 0$), and byte size ($Sz = 0$). The DTS bit can have any value. Set MRB for one data transfer by one interrupt ($CHNE = 0, DISEL = 0$). Set the SCI RDR address in SAR, the start address of the RAM area where the data will be received in DAR, and 128 (H'0080) in CRA. CRB can be set to any value.
2. Set the start address of the register information at the DTC vector address.
3. Set the corresponding bit in DTCER to 1.
4. Set the SCI to the appropriate receive mode. Set the RIE bit in SCR to 1 to enable the reception complete (RXI) interrupt. Since the generation of a receive error during the SCI reception operation will disable subsequent reception, the CPU should be enabled to accept receive error interrupts.
5. Each time reception of one byte of data ends on the SCI, the RDRF flag in SSR is set to 1, an RXI interrupt is generated, and the DTC is activated. The receive data is transferred from RDR to RAM by the DTC. DAR is incremented and CRA is decremented. The RDRF flag is automatically cleared to 0.
6. When CRA becomes 0 after the 128 data transfers have ended, the RDRF flag is held at 1, the DTCE bit is cleared to 0, and an RXI interrupt request is sent to the CPU. The interrupt handling routine should perform wrap-up processing.

8.7.2 Software Activation

An example is shown in which the DTC is used to transfer a block of 128 bytes of data by means of software activation. The transfer source address is H'1000 and the destination address is H'2000. The vector number is H'60, so the vector address is H'04C0.

1. Set MRA to incrementing source address ($SM1 = 1, SM0 = 0$), incrementing destination address ($DM1 = 1, DM0 = 0$), block transfer mode ($MD1 = 1, MD0 = 0$), and byte size ($Sz = 0$). The DTS bit can have any value. Set MRB for one block transfer by one interrupt ($CHNE = 0$). Set the transfer source address (H'1000) in SAR, the destination address (H'2000) in DAR, and 128 (H'8080) in CRA. Set 1 (H'0001) in CRB.
2. Set the start address of the register information at the DTC vector address (H'04C0).
3. Check that the SWDTE bit in DTVECR is 0. Check that there is currently no transfer activated by software.

4. Write 1 to the SWDTE bit and the vector number (H'60) to DTVECR. The write data is H'E0.
5. Read DTVECR again and check that it is set to the vector number (H'60). If it is not, this indicates that the write failed. This is presumably because an interrupt occurred between steps 3 and 4 and led to a different software activation. To activate this transfer, go back to step 3.
6. If the write was successful, the DTC is activated and a block of 128 bytes of data is transferred.
7. After the transfer, an SWDTEND interrupt occurs. The interrupt handling routine should clear the SWDTE bit to 0 and perform other wrap-up processing.

8.8 Usage Notes

8.8.1 Module Stop

DTC operation can be prohibited or enabled using the module stop control register. Access to the register is prohibited in the module stop mode. However, the module stop mode cannot be specified while the DTC is operating. For details, see section 22, Power-Down Modes.

8.8.2 On-Chip RAM

The MRA, MRB, SAR, DAR, CRA, and CRB registers are all located in on-chip RAM. When the DTC is used, the RAME bit in SYSCR must not be cleared to 0.

8.8.3 DTCE Bit Setting

For DTCE bit setting, use bit manipulation instructions such as BSET and BCLR. If all interrupts are masked, multiple activation sources can be set at one time (only at the initial setting) by writing data after executing a dummy read on the relevant register.

8.8.4 DMAC Transfer End Interrupt

When DTC transfer is activated by a DMAC transfer end interrupt, the DMAC's DTE bit is not subject to DTC control, regardless of the transfer counter and DISEL bit, and the write data has priority. Consequently, an interrupt request is not sent to the CPU when the DTC transfer counter reaches 0.

Section 9 I/O Ports

Table 9.1 summarizes the port functions. The pins of each port also have other functions such as input/output or external interrupt input pins of on-chip peripheral modules. Each I/O port includes a data direction register (DDR) that controls input/output, a data register (DR) that stores output data, and a port register (PORT) used to read the pin states. The input-only ports do not have a DR and a DDR.

Ports A to E have a built-in pull-up MOS function and a input pull-up MOS control register (PCR) to control the on/off state of input pull-up MOS.

Ports 3 and A include an open-drain control register (ODR) that controls the on/off state of the output buffer PMOS.

All the I/O ports can drive a single TTL load and 30 pF capacitive load.

Table 9.1 Port Functions (1)

| Port | Description | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7* | Input/Output Type |
|--------|---|-----------------------------------|------------|------------------|---|
| Port 1 | General I/O port also functioning as TPU I/O pins, interrupt input pins, and external USB transceiver I/O | P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD/ \overline{OE} | | P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD | Schmitt triggered input ($\overline{IRQ1}$, $\overline{IRQ0}$) |
| | | P16/TIOCA2/ $\overline{IRQ1}$ | | | |
| | | P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC/FSE0 | | P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC | |
| | | P14/TIOCA1/ $\overline{IRQ0}$ | | | |
| | | P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB/A23/VPO | | P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB | |
| | | P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA/A22/RV | | P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA | |
| | | P11/TIOCB0/A21/VP | | P11/TIOCB0 | |
| | | P10/TIOCA0/A20/VM | P10/TIOCA0 | | |
| Port 3 | General I/O port also functioning as SCI_0, SCI_1 pins and interrupt input pins | P36 | | | Open-drain output Schmitt triggered input ($\overline{IRQ5}$, $\overline{IRQ4}$) |
| | | P35/SCK1/ $\overline{IRQ5}$ | | | |
| | | P34/RxD1 | | | |
| | | P33/TxD1 | | | |
| | | P32/SCK0/ $\overline{IRQ4}$ | | | |
| | | P31/RxD0 | | | |
| | | P30/TxD0 | | | |
| Port 4 | General I/O port also functioning as A/D converter analog inputs | P43/AN3 | | | |
| | | P42/AN2 | | | |
| | | P41/AN1 | | | |
| | | P40/AN0 | | | |

Note: * The USB may be unusable in mode 7 in some cases. See section 3, MCU Operating Modes, for details.

Table 9.1 Port Functions (2)

| Port | Description | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7 ^{*1} | Input/Output Type |
|--------|---|---|---|--|---|
| Port 7 | General I/O port also functioning as bus control output pins, manual reset input pin, and 8-bit timer I/O | P74/ $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ P73/ $\text{TMO1}/\overline{\text{CS7}}$ P72/ $\text{TMO0}/\overline{\text{CS6}}$ ^{*2} P71/ $\overline{\text{CS5}}$ P70/ $\text{TMRI01}/\text{TMCi01}/\overline{\text{CS4}}$ | | P74/ $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ P73/ TMO1 P72/ TMO0 P71 P70/ $\text{TMRI01}/\text{TMCi01}$ | |
| Port 9 | General I/O port also functioning as D/A converter analog outputs and A/D converter analog input | P97/ $\text{AN15}/\text{DA1}$ P96/ $\text{AN14}/\text{DA0}$ | | | |
| Port A | General I/O port also functioning as SCI_2 I/O pins, address output pins, and external USB transceiver output | PA3/ $\text{A19}/\text{SCK2}/\text{SUSPND}$ PA2/ $\text{A18}/\text{RxD2}$ PA1/ $\text{A17}/\text{TxD2}$ PA0/ A16 | | PA3/ SCK2 PA2/ RxD2 PA1/ TxD2 PA0 | Built-in input pull-up MOS Open-drain output |
| Port B | General I/O port also functioning as address output pins | PB7/ A15 PB6/ A14 PB5/ A13 PB4/ A12 PB3/ A11 PB2/ A10 PB1/ A9 PB0/ A8 | | PB7 PB6 PB5 PB4 PB3 PB2 PB1 PB0 | Built-in input pull-up MOS |
| Port C | General I/O port also functioning as address output pins | A7 A6 A5 | When DDR = 0: PC7 When DDR = 1: A7 ^{*2} When DDR = 0: PC6 When DDR = 1: A6 ^{*2} When DDR = 0: PC5 When DDR = 1: A5 ^{*2} | PC7 PC6 PC5 | Built-in input pull-up MOS |

Notes: 1. The USB may be unusable in mode 7 in some cases. See section 3, MCU Operating Modes, for details.

2. $\overline{\text{CS6}}$ and A7 to A0 should be designated as an output when on-chip USB is used in mode 6.

Table 9.1 Port Functions (3)

| Port | Description | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7*1 | Input/Output Type |
|--------|--|--|---|----------|----------------------------|
| Port C | General I/O port also functioning as address output pins | A4 | When DDR = 0: PC4 When DDR = 1: A4*2 | PC4 | Built-in input pull-up MOS |
| | | A3 | When DDR = 0: PC3 When DDR = 1: A3*2 | PC3 | |
| | | A2 | When DDR = 0: PC2 When DDR = 1: A2*2 | PC2 | |
| | | A1 | When DDR = 0: PC1 When DDR = 1: A1*2 | PC1 | |
| | | A0 | When DDR = 0: PC0 When DDR = 1: A0*2 | PC0 | |
| Port D | General I/O port also functioning as data I/O pins | D15 | | PD7 | Built-in input pull-up MOS |
| | | D14 | | PD6 | |
| | | D13 | | PD5 | |
| | | D12 | | PD4 | |
| | | D11 | | PD3 | |
| | | D10 | | PD2 | |
| | | D9 | | PD1 | |
| | | D8 | | PD0 | |
| Port E | General I/O port also functioning as address output pins | 8-bit bus mode: PE7 16-bit bus mode: D7 | | PE7 | Built-in input pull-up MOS |
| | | 8-bit bus mode: PE6 16-bit bus mode: D6 | | PE6 | |
| | | 8-bit bus mode: PE5 16-bit bus mode: D5 | | PE5 | |
| | | 8-bit bus mode: PE4 16-bit bus mode: D5 | | PE4 | |
| | | 8-bit bus mode: PE3 16-bit bus mode: D3 | | PE3 | |
| | | 8-bit bus mode: PE2 16-bit bus mode: D2 | | PE2 | |

Notes: 1. The USB may be unusable in mode 7 in some cases. See section 3, MCU Operating Modes, for details.

2. $\overline{CS6}$ and A7 to A0 should be designated as an output when on-chip USB is used in mode 6.

Table 9.1 Port Functions (4)

| Port | Description | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6 | Mode 7* | Input/Output Type |
|--|--|---|--------|---|---|
| Port E | General I/O port also functioning as address output pins | 8-bit bus mode: PE1 | | PE1 | Built-in input pull-up MOS |
| | | 16-bit bus mode: D1 | | | |
| Port F | General I/O port also functioning as interrupt input pins and bus control I/O pins | 8-bit bus mode: PE0 | | PE0 | Schmitt triggered input ($\overline{IRQ3}$, $\overline{IRQ2}$) |
| | | 16-bit bus mode: D0 | | | |
| | | When DDR = 0: PF7 | | When DDR = 0 (after reset): PF7 | |
| | | When DDR = 1 (after reset): ϕ | | When DDR = 1: ϕ | |
| | | \overline{AS} | | PF6 | |
| | | \overline{RD} | | PF5 | |
| | | \overline{HWR} | | PF4 | |
| | | 8-bit bus mode: PF3/ \overline{ADTRG} / $\overline{IRQ3}$ | | PF3/ \overline{ADTRG} / $\overline{IRQ3}$ | |
| | | 16-bit bus mode: \overline{LWR} | | | |
| | | When WAITE = 0 (after reset) : PF2 | | PF2 | |
| When WAITE = 1: \overline{WAIT} | | | | | |
| When BRLE = 0 (after reset): PF1 | | PF1 | | | |
| When BRLE = 1: \overline{BACK} | | | | | |
| When BRLE = 0 (after reset): PF0/ $\overline{IRQ2}$ | | PF0/ $\overline{IRQ2}$ | | | |
| When BRLE = 1: \overline{BREQ} / $\overline{IRQ2}$ | | | | | |
| Port G | General I/O port also functioning as bus control input pins and interrupt Input pins | When DDR = 0 (after reset in mode 6): PG4 | | PG4 | Schmitt triggered input ($\overline{IRQ7}$) |
| | | When DDR = 1 (after reset in modes 4, 5): CS0 | | | |
| | | When DDR = 0: PG3 | | PG3 | |
| | | When DDR = 1: $\overline{CS1}$ | | | |
| | | When DDR = 0: PG2 | | PG2 | |
| | | When DDR = 1: $\overline{CS2}$ | | | |
| | | When DDR = 0: PG1/ $\overline{IRQ7}$ | | PG1/ $\overline{IRQ7}$ | |
| When DDR = 1: $\overline{CS3}$ / $\overline{IRQ7}$ | | | | | |
| | | PG0 | | | |

Note: * The USB may be unusable in mode 7 in some cases. See section 3, MCU Operating Modes, for details.

9.1 Port 1

Port 1 is an 8-bit I/O port. The port 1 has the following registers.

- Port 1 data direction register (P1DDR)
- Port 1 data register (P1DR)
- Port 1 register (PORT1)

9.1.1 Port 1 Data Direction Register (P1DDR)

P1DDR is an 8-bit write-only register, the individual bits of which specify input or output for the pins of port 1. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | P17DDR | 0 | W | Modes 4 to 6 |
| 6 | P16DDR | 0 | W | If address output is enabled by the setting of bits AE3 to AE0 in PFCR, pins P13 to P10 are address outputs. Pins |
| 5 | P15DDR | 0 | W | P17 to P14, and pins P13 to P10 when address output is |
| 4 | P14DDR | 0 | W | disabled, are output ports when the corresponding |
| 3 | P13DDR | 0 | W | P1DDR bits are set to 1, and input ports when the |
| 2 | P12DDR | 0 | W | corresponding P1DDR bits are cleared to 0. |
| 1 | P11DDR | 0 | W | Mode 7 |
| 0 | P10DDR | 0 | W | Setting a P1DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 1 |
| | | | | pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the |
| | | | | pin an input port. |

9.1.2 Port 1 Data Register (P1DR)

P1DR stores output data for the port 1 pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | P17DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose output port. |
| 6 | P16DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | P15DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | P14DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | P13DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | P12DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | P11DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | P10DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.1.3 Port 1 Register (PORT1)

PORT1 shows the pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | P17 | —* | R | If a port 1 read is performed while P1DDR bits are set to 1, the P1DR value is read. If a port 1 read is performed while P1DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 6 | P16 | —* | R | |
| 5 | P15 | —* | R | |
| 4 | P14 | —* | R | |
| 3 | P13 | —* | R | |
| 2 | P12 | —* | R | |
| 1 | P11 | —* | R | |
| 0 | P10 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins P17 to P10.

9.1.4 Pin Functions

Port 1 pins also function as TPU I/O pins, external interrupt input pins ($\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$, $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$), external USB transceiver input, and address bus (A23 to A20) output pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 9.2 P17 Pin Function

| FADSEL in UCTLR* ³ | 0 | | 1 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|------------|
| TPU Channel 2 Setting* ¹ | Output | Input or Initial Value | |
| P17DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | TIOCB2 output | P17 input | P17 output |
| | | TIOCB2 input | |
| | TCLKD input | | |

Table 9.3 P16 Pin Function

| TPU Channel 2 Setting* ¹ | Output | Input or Initial Value | |
|-------------------------------------|--|------------------------|------------|
| P16DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | TIOCA2 output | P16 input | P16 output |
| | | TIOCA2 input | |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ input* ² | | |

- Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel specification, refer to section 10, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
2. When used as an external interrupt pin, do not use for another functions.
3. The USB may be unusable in mode 7 in some cases. See section 3, MCU Operating Modes, for details.

Table 9.4 P15 Pin Function

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|------------|---------------------------|
| FADSEL in UCTLR* ³ | 0 | | | 1 |
| TPU Channel 1 Setting* ¹ | Output | Input or Initial Value | | — |
| P15DDR | — | 0 | 1 | — |
| Pin function | TIOCB1 output | P15 input | P15 output | FSE0 output* ³ |
| | | TIOCB1 input | | |
| | TCLKC input | | | |

Table 9.5 P14 Pin Function

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|------------|
| TPU Channel 1 Setting* ¹ | Output | Input or Initial Value | |
| P14DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | TIOCA1 output | P14 input | P14 output |
| | | TIOCA1 input | |
| | IRQ0 input* ² | | |

- Notes: 1. For details on the TPU channel specification, refer to section 10, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
 2. When used as an external interrupt pin, do not use for another functions.
 3. On-chip USB cannot be used in mode 7.

Table 9.6 P13 Pin Function

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| AE3 to AE0* ¹ | Other than B'1111 | | | B'1111 |
| FADSEL in UCTLR* ³ | 0 | | 1 | — |
| TPU Channel 0 Setting* ² | Output | Input or Initial Value | | — |
| P13DDR | — | 0 | 1 | — |
| Pin function | TIOCD0 output | P13 input | P13 output | VPO output* ³ |
| | | TIOCD0 input | | |
| | TCLKB input | | | |
| | | | | A23 output |

- Notes: 1. Valid in modes 4 to 6.
 2. For details on the TPU channel specification, refer to section 10, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
 3. The USB may be unusable in mode 7 in some cases. See section 3, MCU Operating Modes, for details.

Table 9.7 P12 Pin Function

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| AE3 to AE0*1 | Other than B'1111 | | | B'1111 | |
| FADSEL in UCTLR*3 | 0 | | 1 | — | |
| TPU Channel 0 Setting*2 | Output | Input or Initial Value | | — | |
| P12DDR | — | 0 | 1 | — | |
| Pin function | TIOCC0 output | P12 input | P12 output | RCV input*3 | A22 output |
| | | TIOCC0 input | | | |
| | TCLKA input | | | | |

Table 9.8 P11 Pin Function

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|------------|------------------|------------|
| AE3 to AE0*1 | Other than (B'1110 to B'1111) | | | B'1110 to B'1111 | |
| FADSEL in UCTLR*3 | 0 | | 1 | — | |
| TPU Channel 0 Setting*2 | Output | Input or Initial Value | | — | |
| P11DDR | — | 0 | 1 | — | |
| Pin function | TIOCB0 output | P11 input | P11 output | VP input*3 | A21 output |
| | | TIOCB0 input | | | |

Table 9.9 P10 Pin Function

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|------------|------------------|------------|
| AE3 to AE0*1 | Other than (B'1101 to B'1111) | | | B'1101 to B'1111 | |
| FADSEL in UCTLR*3 | 0 | | 1 | — | |
| TPU Channel 0 Setting*2 | Output | Input or Initial Value | | — | |
| P10DDR | — | 0 | 1 | — | |
| Pin function | TIOCA0 output | P10 input | P10 output | VM input | A20 output |
| | | TIOCA0 input | | | |

- Notes: 1. Valid in modes 4 to 6.
 2. For details on the TPU channel specification, refer to section 10, 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU).
 3. The USB may be unusable in mode 7 in some cases. See section 3, MCU Operating Modes, for details.

9.2 Port 3

Port 3 is a 7-bit I/O port also functioning as SCI I/O and external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$, $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$).

- Port 3 data direction register (P3DDR)
- Port 3 data register (P3DR)
- Port 3 register (PORT3)
- Port 3 open-drain control register (P3ODR)

9.2.1 Port 3 Data Direction Register (P3DDR)

The individual bits of P3DDR specify input or output for the pins of port 3. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 6 | P36DDR | 0 | W | Setting a P3DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 3 pin an output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input pin. |
| 5 | P35DDR | 0 | W | |
| 4 | P34DDR | 0 | W | |
| 3 | P33DDR | 0 | W | |
| 2 | P32DDR | 0 | W | |
| 1 | P31DDR | 0 | W | |
| 0 | P30DDR | 0 | W | |

9.2.2 Port 3 Data Register (P3DR)

P3DR stores output data for the port 3 pins (P36 to P30).

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 6 | P36DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose output port. |
| 5 | P35DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | P34DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | P33DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | P32DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | P31DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | P30DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.2.3 Port 3 Register (PORT3)

PORT3 shows the pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved This bit is undefined. |
| 6 | P36 | —* | R | If a port 3 read is performed while P3DDR bits are set to 1, the P3DR values are read. If a port 3 read is performed while P3DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 5 | P35 | —* | R | |
| 4 | P34 | —* | R | |
| 3 | P33 | —* | R | |
| 2 | P32 | —* | R | |
| 1 | P31 | —* | R | |
| 0 | P30 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the state of pins P36 to P30.

9.2.4 Port 3 Open-Drain Control Register (P3ODR)

P3ODR controls the PMOS on/off status for each port 3 pin (P36 to P30).

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved This bit is undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 6 | P36ODR | 0 | R/W | Setting a P3ODR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 3 pin an NMOS open-drain output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin a CMOS output pin. |
| 5 | P35ODR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | P34ODR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | P33ODR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | P32ODR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | P31ODR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | P30ODR | 0 | R/W | |

9.2.5 Pin Functions

Port 3 pins also function as SCI I/O pins and external interrupt input pins ($\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$, $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$). Port 3 pin functions are shown below.

Table 9.10 P36 Pin Function

| P36DDR | 0 | 1 |
|--------------|-----------|---|
| Pin function | P36 input | P36 output (USB D+ pull-up control output in HD64F2215U, HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215TU, HD64F2215CU) |

Table 9.11 P35 Pin Function

| | | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|------------|
| CKE1 in SCR_1 | 0 | | | | 1 |
| C \bar{A} in SMR_1 | 0 | | | 1 | — |
| CKE0 in SCR_1 | 0 | | 1 | — | — |
| P35DDR | 0 | 1 | — | — | — |
| Pin function | P35 input | P35 output* ² | SCK1 output* ² | SCK1 output* ² | SCK1 input |
| | IRQ5 input* ¹ | | | | |

Notes: 1. When used as an external interrupt pin, do not use for another function.

2. Note on Development Using the E6000 Emulator

The H8S/2215 Group does not have an I²C bus function and pins 35 and 34 are used for CMOS output (except when P35ODR and P34ODR are set to 1). The E6000 emulator expects pins 35 and 34 to be used for NMOS push-pull output, which differs from the pin output characteristics of the H8S/2215 Group. If it is necessary to use pins 35 and 34 for CMOS output, an appropriate resistance should be used for pull-up when using the H8S/2215 with the E6000.

Table 9.12 P34 Pin Function

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| RE in SCR_1 | 0 | | 1 |
| P34DDR | 0 | 1 | — |
| Pin function | P34 input | P34 output* | RxD1 input |

Note: * Note on Development Using the E6000 Emulator

The H8S/2215 Group does not have an I²C bus function and pins 35 and 34 are used for CMOS output (except when P35ODR and P34ODR are set to 1). The E6000 emulator expects pins 35 and 34 to be used for NMOS push-pull output, which differs from the pin output characteristics of the H8S/2215 Group. If it is necessary to use pins 35 and 34 for CMOS output, an appropriate resistance should be used for pull-up when using the H8S/2215 with the E6000.

Table 9.13 P33 Pin Function

| | | | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|-------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| SMIF in SCMR_1 | 0 | | | 1 | | | |
| TE in SCR_1 | 0 | | 1 | 0 | | 1 | |
| P33DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | P33 input | P33 output | TxD1 output | P33 input | Setting prohibited | TxD1 output | Setting prohibited |

Table 9.14 P32 Pin Function

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| CKE1 in SCR_0 | 0 | | | | 1 |
| C/ \bar{A} in SMR_0 | 0 | | | 1 | — |
| CKE0 in SCR_0 | 0 | | 1 | — | — |
| P32DDR | 0 | 1 | — | — | — |
| Pin function | P32 input | P32 output | SCK0 output | SCK0 output | SCK0 input |
| | $\bar{I}RQ4$ input* | | | | |

Note: * When used as an external interrupt pin, do not use for another function.

Table 9.15 P31 Pin Function

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| RE in SCR_0 | 0 | | 1 |
| P31DDR | 0 | 1 | — |
| Pin function | P31 input | P31 output | RxD0 input |

Table 9.16 P30 Pin Function

| | | | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|-------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| SMIF in SCMR_0 | 0 | | | 1 | | | |
| TE in SCR_0 | 0 | | 1 | 0 | | 1 | |
| P30DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | P30 input | P30 output | TxD0 output | P30 input | Setting prohibited | TxD0 output | Setting prohibited |

9.3 Port 4

Port 4 is a 4-bit I/O port also functioning as A/D converter analog input. Port 4 has the following register.

- Port 4 register (PORT4)

9.3.1 Port 4 Register (PORT4)

PORT4 shows port 4 pin states. PORT4 cannot be modified.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 4 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined. |
| 3 | P43 | —* | R | The pin states are always read when a port 4 read is performed. |
| 2 | P41 | —* | R | |
| 1 | P41 | —* | R | |
| 0 | P40 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins P43 to P40.

9.3.2 Pin Function

Port 4 also functions as A/D converter analog input (AN3 to AN0).

9.4 Port 7

Port 7 is a 5-bit I/O port also functioning as bus control output, manual reset input, and 8-bit timer I/O. Port 7 has the following registers.

- Port 7 data direction register (P7DDR)
- Port 7 data register (P7DR)
- Port 7 register (PORT7)

9.4.1 Port 7 Data Direction Register (P7DDR)

P7DDR is an 8-bit write-only register, the individual bits of which specify input or output for the pins of port 7. P7DDR cannot be read; if it is, an undefined value will be read. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 5 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 4 | P74DDR | 0 | W | Setting a P7DDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port 7 pin an output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input pin. |
| 3 | P73DDR | 0 | W | |
| 2 | P72DDR | 0 | W | |
| 1 | P71DDR | 0 | W | |
| 0 | P70DDR | 0 | W | |

9.4.2 Port 7 Data Register (P7DR)

P7DR stores output data for the port 7 pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 5 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 4 | P74DR | 0 | R/W | Stores output data for the port 7 pins. |
| 3 | P73DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | P72DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | P71DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | P70DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.4.3 Port 7 Register (PORT7)

PORT7 shows the pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 5 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 4 | P74 | —* | R | If a port 7 read is performed while P7DDR bits are set to 1, the P7DR values are read. If a port 7 read is performed while P7DDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 3 | P73 | —* | R | |
| 2 | P72 | —* | R | |
| 1 | P71 | —* | R | |
| 0 | P70 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the state of pins P74 to P70.

9.4.4 Pin Functions

Port 7 pins also function as bus control output pins, manual reset input pin, and 8 bit timer input/output. Port 7 pin functions are shown below.

Table 9.17 P74 Pin Function

| MRESE | 0 | | 1 |
|--------------|-----------|------------|--------------------------------|
| P74DDR | 0 | 1 | — |
| Pin function | P74 input | P74 output | $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ input |

Table 9.18 P73 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| OS3 to OS0 in TCSR_1 | OS3 to OS0 are all 0 | | At least one of OS3 to OS0 is 1 | OS3 to OS0 are all 0 | | At least one of OS3 to OS0 is 1 |
| P73DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 | — |
| Pin function | P73 input | $\overline{\text{CS7}}$ output | TMO1 output | P73 input | P73 output | TMO1 output |

Table 9.19 P72 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6* | | | Mode 7 | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|-----------|---------------------------------|
| OS3 to OS0 in TCSR_0 | OS3 to OS0 are all 0s | | At least one of OS3 to OS0 is 1 | OS3 to OS0 are all 0 | | At least one of OS3 to OS0 is 1 |
| P72DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 | — |
| Pin function | P72 input | $\overline{\text{CS6}}$ output | TMO0 output | P72 input | P72output | TMO0 output |

Note: * When on-chip USB is used in modes 4 to 6, bit P72DDR should be set to 1 so that the pin outputs CS6.

Table 9.20 P71 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| P71DDR | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | P71 input | $\overline{\text{CS5}}$ output | P71 input | P71 output |

Table 9.21 P70 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| P70DDR | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | P70 input | $\overline{\text{CS4}}$ output | P70 input | P70 output |
| | TMRI01, TMCI01 input | | | |

9.5 Port 9

Port 9 pins also function as A/D converter analog input and D/A converter analog output pins. The port 9 has the following register.

- Port 9 register (PORT9)

9.5.1 Port 9 Register (PORT9)

PORT9 shows port 9 pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | P97 | —* | R | The pin states are always read when a port 9 read is performed. |
| 6 | P96 | —* | R | |
| 5 to 0 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined. |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins P97 and P96.

9.5.2 Pin Function

Port 9 also functions as A/D converter analog input (AN15, AN14) and D/A converter analog output (DA1, DA0).

9.6 Port A

Port A is a 4-bit I/O port that also functions as address bus (A19 to A16) output, external USB transceiver output, and SCI_2 I/O, and interrupt input. The port A has the following registers.

- Port A data direction register (PADDR)
- Port A data register (PADR)
- Port A register (PORTA)
- Port A pull-up MOS control register (PAPCR)
- Port A open-drain control register (PAODR)

9.6.1 Port A Data Direction Register (PADDR)

The individual bits of PADDR specify input or output for the pins of port A. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 4 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 3 | PA3DDR | 0 | W | Modes 4 to 6 |
| 2 | PA2DDR | 0 | W | If address output is enabled by the setting of bits AE3 to AE0 in PFCR, the corresponding port A pins are address outputs. When address output is disabled, setting a PADDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port A pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 1 | PA1DDR | 0 | W | |
| 0 | PA0DDR | 0 | W | Mode 7 Setting a PADDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port A pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |

9.6.2 Port A Data Register (PADR)

PADR stores output data for the port A pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 4 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 3 | PA3DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose output port. |
| 2 | PA2DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PA1DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PA0DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.6.3 Port A Register (PORTA)

PORTA shows port A pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 4 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 3 | PA3 | —* | R | If a port A read is performed while PADDR bits are set to 1, the PADR values are read. If a port A read is performed while PADDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 2 | PA2 | —* | R | |
| 1 | PA1 | —* | R | |
| 0 | PA0 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PA3 to PA0.

9.6.4 Port A MOS Pull-Up Control Register (PAPCR)

PAPCR controls the function of the port A input pull-up MOS. PAPCR is valid for port input and SCI input pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 4 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 3 | PA3PCR* | 0 | R/W | When a pin function is specified to an input port, setting the corresponding bit to 1 turns on the input pull-up MOS for that pin. |
| 2 | PA2PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PA1PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PA0PCR | 0 | R/W | |

Note: * Set PA3PCR to 0 when FADSEL of USB is 1.

9.6.5 Port A Open Drain Control Register (PAODR)

PAODR specifies an output type of port A. PAODR is valid for port output and SCI output pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 4 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 3 | PA3ODR | 0 | R/W | Setting a PAODR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port A pin an NMOS open-drain output pin, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin a CMOS output pin. |
| 2 | PA2ODR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PA1ODR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PA0ODR | 0 | R/W | |

9.6.6 Pin Functions

Port A pins also function as address bus (A19 to A16) output, external USB transceiver output, SCI_2 I/O, and interrupt input. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 9.22 PA3 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| AE3 to AE0 | 11xx | Other than 11xx | | | | | |
| FADSEL of UCTLR | — | 0 | | | | | 1 |
| CKE1 in SCR_2 | — | 0 | | | | 1 | — |
| C/ \bar{A} in SMR_2 | — | 0 | | | 1 | — | — |
| CKE0 in SCR_2 | — | 0 | | 1 | — | — | — |
| PA3DDR | — | 0 | 1 | — | — | — | — |
| Pin function | A19 output | PA3 input | PA3 output | SCK2 output | SCK2 output | SCK2 input | SUSPND output |

| Operating mode | Mode 7 | | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|----------------|
| AE3 to AE0 | — | | | | | |
| FADSEL of UCTLR* | 0 | | | | | 1* |
| CKE1 in SCR_2 | 0 | | | | 1 | — |
| C/ \bar{A} in SMR_2 | 0 | | | 1 | — | — |
| CKE0 in SCR_2 | 0 | | 1 | — | — | — |
| PA3DDR | 0 | 1 | — | — | — | — |
| Pin function | PA3 input | PA3 output | SCK2 output | SCK2 output | SCK2 input | SUSPND output* |

Note: * On-chip USB cannot be used in mode 7.

Table 9.23 PA2 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | | Mode 7 | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| AE3 to AE0 | 1011 or 11xx | Other than 1011 or 11xx | | | — | | |
| RE in SCR_2 | — | 0 | | 1 | 0 | | 1 |
| PA2DDR | — | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 | — |
| Pin function | A18 output | PA2 input | PA2 output | RxD2 input | PA2 input | PA2 output | RxD2 input |

Table 9.24 PA1 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------------|------------|-------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| AE3 to AE0 | 101x or 11xx | Other than 101x or 11xx | | | | | | |
| SMIF in SCMR_2 | — | 0 | | | 1 | | | |
| TE in SCR_2 | — | 0 | | 1 | 0 | | 1 | |
| PA1DDR | — | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A17 output | PA1 input | PA1 output | TxD2 output | PA1 input | Setting prohibited | TxD2 output | Setting prohibited |

| Operating mode | Mode 7 | | | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|-------------|-----------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|--|
| SMIF in SCMR_2 | 0 | | | 1 | | | | |
| TE in SCR_2 | 0 | | 1 | 0 | | 1 | | |
| PA1DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | |
| Pin function | PA1 input | PA1 output | TxD2 output | PA1 input | Setting prohibited | TxD2 output | Setting prohibited | |

Table 9.25 PA0 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------------------|--------------|------------|-----------|------------|--|
| AE3 to AE0 | Other than 0xxxx or 1000 | 0xxx or 1000 | | — | | |
| PA0DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | |
| Pin function | PA16 output | PA0 input | PA0 output | PA0 input | PA0 output | |

9.6.7 Port A Input Pull-Up MOS Function

Port A has a built-in input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. Input pull-up MOS can be specified as on or off for individual bits.

Table 9.26 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 9.26 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port A)

| Pins | Power-On Reset | Hardware Standby Mode | Manual Reset | Software Standby Mode | In Other Operations |
|---|----------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Address output, port output, SCI output | OFF | | OFF | | |
| Port input, SCI input | | | ON/OFF | | |

Legend:

OFF: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

ON/OFF: On when PADDR = 0 and PAPCR = 1; otherwise off.

9.7 Port B

Port B is an 8-bit I/O port that also has address bus (A15 to A8) output. The port B has the following registers. Internal I/O Register.

- Port B data direction register (PBDDR)
- Port B data register (PBDR)
- Port B register (PORTB)
- Port B MOS pull-up control register (PBPCR)

9.7.1 Port B Data Direction Register (PBDDR)

The individual bits of PBDDR specify input or output for the pins of port B. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PB7DDR | 0 | W | Modes 4 to 6 |
| 6 | PB6DDR | 0 | W | If address output is enabled by the setting of bits AE3 to AE0 in PFCR, the corresponding port B pins are address outputs. When address output is disabled, setting a PBDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port B pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 5 | PB5DDR | 0 | W | |
| 4 | PB4DDR | 0 | W | |
| 3 | PB3DDR | 0 | W | Mode 7 |
| 2 | PB2DDR | 0 | W | |
| 1 | PB1DDR | 0 | W | Setting a PBDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port B pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 0 | PB0DDR | 0 | W | |

9.7.2 Port B Data Register (PBDR)

PBDR stores output data for the port B pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | PB7DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose output port. |
| 6 | PB6DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PB5DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PB4DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PB3DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PB2DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PB1DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PB0DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.7.3 Port B Register (PORTB)

PORTB shows port B pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PB7 | —* | R | If the port B read is performed while PBDDR bits are set to 1, the PBDR values are read. If a port B read is performed while PBDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 6 | PB6 | —* | R | |
| 5 | PB5 | —* | R | |
| 4 | PB4 | —* | R | |
| 3 | PB3 | —* | R | |
| 2 | PB2 | —* | R | |
| 1 | PB1 | —* | R | |
| 0 | PB0 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the status of pins PB7 to PB0.

9.7.4 Port B MOS Pull-Up Control Register (PBPCR)

PBPCR controls the on/off state of input pull-up MOS of port B.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PB7PCR | 0 | R/W | When a pin functions specified to an input port, setting the corresponding bit to 1 turns on the input pull-up MOS for that pin. |
| 6 | PB6PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PB5PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PB4PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PB3PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PB2PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PB1PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PB0PCR | 0 | R/W | |

9.7.5 Pin Functions

Port B pins also function as address bus (A15 to A9) output pins. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 9.27 PB7 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------|------------|
| | AE3 to AE0 | B'1xxx | Other than B'1xxx | | — |
| PB7DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A15 output | PB7 input | PB7 output | PB7 input | PB7 output |

Table 9.28 PB6 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|------------|
| | AE3 to AE0 | B'0111 or B'1xxx | Other than B'0111 or B'1xxx | | — |
| PB6DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A14 output | PB6 input | PB6 output | PB6 input | PB6 output |

Table 9.29 PB5 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|------------|
| | AE3 to AE0 | B'011x or B'1xxx | Other than B'011x or B'1xxx | | — |
| PB5DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A13 output | PB5 input | PB5 output | PB5 input | PB5 output |

Table 9.30 PB4 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-----------|------------|
| | AE3 to AE0 | Other than B'0100 or B'00xx | B'0100 or B'00xx | | — |
| PB4DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A12 output | PB4 input | PB4 output | PB4 input | PB4 output |

Table 9.31 PB3 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| AE3 to AE0 | Other than B'00xx | B'00xx | | — | |
| PB3DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A11 output | PB3 input | PB3 output | PB3 input | PB3 output |

Table 9.32 PB2 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| AE3 to AE0 | Other than B'0010 or B'000x | B'0010 or B'000x | | — | |
| PB2DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A10 output | PB2 input | PB2 output | PB2 input | PB2 output |

Table 9.33 PB1 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| AE3 to AE0 | Other than B'000x | B'000x | | — | |
| PB1DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A9 output | PB1 input | PB1 output | PB1 input | PB1 output |

Table 9.34 PB0 Pin Function

| Operating mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| AE3 to AE0 | Other than B'0000 | B'0000 | | — | |
| PB0DDR | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | A8 output | PB0 input | PB0 output | PB0 input | PB0 output |

9.7.6 Port B Input Pull-Up MOS Function

Port B has a built-in input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. Input pull-up MOS can be specified as on or off for individual bits.

Table 9.35 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 9.35 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port B)

| Pins | Power-On Reset | Hardware Standby Mode | Manual Reset | Software Standby Mode | In Other Operations |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Address output, port output | OFF | | OFF | | |
| Port input | | | ON/OFF | | |

Legend:

OFF: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

ON/OFF: On when PBDDR = 0 and PBPCR = 1; otherwise off.

9.8 Port C

Port C is an 8-bit I/O port that also has address bus (A7 to A0) output pins. The port C has the following registers.

- Port C data direction register (PCDDR)
- Port C data register (PCDR)
- Port C register (PORTC)
- Port C pull-up MOS control register (PCPCR)

Note: When using the on-chip USB in mode 6, set PCDDR so that addresses A7 to A0 are output from PC7 to PC0.

9.8.1 Port C Data Direction Register (PCDDR)

The individual bits of PCDDR specify input or output for the pins of port C. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | PC7DDR | 0 | W | Modes 4 and 5 |
| 6 | PC6DDR | 0 | W | Port C pins are address outputs regardless of the PCDDR settings. |
| 5 | PC5DDR | 0 | W | Mode 6 |
| 4 | PC4DDR | 0 | W | Setting a PCDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port C pin an address output, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 3 | PC3DDR | 0 | W | |
| 2 | PC2DDR | 0 | W | Mode 7 |
| 1 | PC1DDR | 0 | W | Setting a PCDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port C pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 0 | PC0DDR | 0 | W | |

9.8.2 Port C Data Register (PCDR)

PCDR stores output data for the port C pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | PC7DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose output port. |
| 6 | PC6DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PC5DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PC4DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PC3DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PC2DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PC1DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PC0DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.8.3 Port C Register (PORTC)

PORTC shows port C pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PC7 | —* | R | If a port C read is performed while PCDDR bits are set to 1, the PCDR values are read. If a port C read is performed while PCDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 6 | PC6 | —* | R | |
| 5 | PC5 | —* | R | |
| 4 | PC4 | —* | R | |
| 3 | PC3 | —* | R | |
| 2 | PC2 | —* | R | |
| 1 | PC1 | —* | R | |
| 0 | PC0 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PC7 to PC0.

9.8.4 Port C Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PCPCR)

PCPCR controls the on/off state of input pull-up MOS of port C.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PC7PCR | 0 | R/W | When a pin function is specified to an input port, setting the corresponding bit to 1 turns on the input pull-up MOS for that pin. |
| 6 | PC6PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PC5PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PC4PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PC3PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PC2PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PC1PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PC0PCR | 0 | R/W | |

9.8.5 Pin Functions

Port C pins also function as Address bus (A7 to A0) output. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions is shown below.

Table 9.36 PC7 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6* | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PC7DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | A7 output | PC7 input | A7 output | PC7 input | PC7 output |

Table 9.37 PC6 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6* | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PC6DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | A6 output | PC6 input | A6 output | PC6 input | PC6 output |

Table 9.38 PC5 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6* | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PC5DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | A5 output | PC5 input | A5 output | PC5 input | PC5 output |

Table 9.39 PC4 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6* | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PC4DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | A4 output | PC4 input | A4 output | PC4 input | PC4 output |

Table 9.40 PC3 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6* | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PC3DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | A3 output | PC3 input | A3 output | PC3 input | PC3 output |

Table 9.41 PC2 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6* | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PC2DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | A2 output | PC2 input | A2 output | PC2 input | PC2 output |

Table 9.42 PC1 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6* | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PC1DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | A1 output | PC1 input | A1 output | PC1 input | PC1 output |

Table 9.43 PC0 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 and 5 | Mode 6* | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PC0DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | A0 output | PC0 input | A0 output | PC0 input | PC0 output |

Note: * When on-chip USB is used in mode 6, bits PC7DDR to PC0DDR should be set to H'FF so that the pins output A7 to A0.

9.8.6 Port C Input Pull-Up MOS Function

Port C has a built-in input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. Input pull-up MOS can be used in modes 6 and 7, and can be specified as on or off for individual bits.

Table 9.44 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 9.44 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port C)

| Pins | Power-On Reset | Hardware Standby Mode | Manual Reset | Software Standby Mode | In Other Operations |
|---|----------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Address output (modes 4 and 5), port output (modes 6 and 7) | OFF | | OFF | | |
| Port input (modes 6 and 7) | | | ON/OFF | | |

Legend:

OFF: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

ON/OFF: On when PCDDR = 0 and PCPCR = 1; otherwise off.

9.9 Port D

Port D is an 8-bit I/O port that also has data bus (D15 to D8) I/O. The port D has the following registers.

- Port D data direction register (PDDDR)
- Port D data register (PDDR)
- Port D register (PORTD)
- Port D Pull-up MOS control register (PDPCR)

9.9.1 Port D Data Direction Register (PDDDR)

The individual bits of PDDDR specify input or output for the pins of port D. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PD7DDR | 0 | W | Modes 4 to 6 |
| 6 | PD6DDR | 0 | W | Port D pins automatically function as data input/output pins. |
| 5 | PD5DDR | 0 | W | Mode 7 |
| 4 | PD4DDR | 0 | W | Setting a PDDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port D pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 3 | PD3DDR | 0 | W | |
| 2 | PD2DDR | 0 | W | |
| 1 | PD1DDR | 0 | W | |
| 0 | PD0DDR | 0 | W | |

9.9.2 Port D Data Register (PDDR)

PDDR stores output data for the port D pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | PD7DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose I/O output port. |
| 6 | PD6DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PD5DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PD4DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PD3DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PD2DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PD1DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PD0DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.9.3 Port D Register (PORTD)

PORTD shows port D pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PD7 | —* | R | If a port D read is performed while PDDDR bits are set to 1, the PDDR values are read. If a port D read is performed while PDDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 6 | PD6 | —* | R | |
| 5 | PD5 | —* | R | |
| 4 | PD4 | —* | R | |
| 3 | PD3 | —* | R | |
| 2 | PD2 | —* | R | |
| 1 | PD1 | —* | R | |
| 0 | PD0 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PD7 to PD0.

9.9.4 Port D Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PDPCR)

PDPCR controls on/off states of the input pull-up MOS of port D.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PD7PCR | 0 | R/W | When the pin is in its input state, the input pull-up MOS of the input pin is on when the corresponding bit is set to 1. |
| 6 | PD6PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PD5PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PD4PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PD3PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PD2PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PD1PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PD0PCR | 0 | R/W | |

9.9.5 Pin Functions

Port D pins also functions as data bus (D15 to D8) I/O. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin functions in shown below.

Table 9.45 PD7 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------|------------|
| PD7DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | D15 input/output | PD7 input | PD7 output |

Table 9.46 PD6 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------|------------|
| PD6DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | D14 input/output | PD6 input | PD6 output |

Table 9.47 PD5 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------|------------|
| PD5DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | D13 input/output | PD5 input | PD5 output |

Table 9.48 PD4 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------|------------|
| PD4DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | D12 input/output | PD4 input | PD4 output |

Table 9.49 PD3 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------|------------|
| PD3DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | D11 input/output | PD3 input | PD3 output |

Table 9.50 PD2 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------|------------|
| PD2DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | D10 input/output | PD2 input | PD2 output |

Table 9.51 PD1 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| PD1DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | D9 input/output | PD1 input | PD1 output |

Table 9.52 PD0 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| PD0DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | D8 input/output | PD0 input | PD0 output |

9.9.6 Port D Input Pull-Up MOS Function

Port D has a built-in input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. Input pull-up MOS can be used in mode 7, and can be specified as on or off for individual bits.

Table 9.53 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 9.53 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port D)

| Pins | Power-On Reset | Hardware Standby Mode | Manual Reset | Software Standby Mode | In Other Operations |
|---|----------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Address output (modes 4 to 6), port output (mode 7) | OFF | | OFF | | |
| Port input (mode 7) | | | ON/OFF | | |

Legend:

OFF: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

ON/OFF: On when PDDDR = 0 and PDPCR = 1; otherwise off.

9.10 Port E

Port E is an 8-bit I/O port that also has data bus (D7 to D0) I/O. The port E has the following registers.

- Port E data direction register (PEDDDR)
- Port E data register (PEDR)
- Port E register (PORTE)
- Port E Pull-up MOS control register (PEPCR)

9.10.1 Port E Data Direction Register (PEDDDR)

The individual bits of PEDDDR specify input or output for the pins of port E. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | PE7DDR | 0 | W | Modes 4 to 6 |
| 6 | PE6DDR | 0 | W | When 8-bit bus mode is selected, port E functions as an I/O port. Setting a PEDDDR bit to 1 makes the |
| 5 | PE5DDR | 0 | W | corresponding port E pin an output port, while clearing the |
| 4 | PE4DDR | 0 | W | bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. When 16-bit bus |
| 3 | PE3DDR | 0 | W | mode is selected, the input/output direction settings in |
| 2 | PE2DDR | 0 | W | PEDDDR are ignored, and port E pins automatically |
| 1 | PE1DDR | 0 | W | function as data input/output pins. |
| 0 | PE0DDR | 0 | W | See section 6, Bus Controller, on 8-/16-bit bus mode. |
| | | | | Mode 7 |
| | | | | Setting a PEDDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port E |
| | | | | pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the |
| | | | | pin an input port. |

9.10.2 Port E Data Register (PEDR)

PEDR stores output data for the port E pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | PE7DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose output port. |
| 6 | PE6DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PE5DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PE4DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PE3DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PE2DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PE1DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PE0DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.10.3 Port E Register (PORTE)

PORTE shows port E pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PE7 | —* | R | If a port E read is performed while PEDDR bits are set to 1, the PEDR values are read. If a port E read is performed while PEDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 6 | PE6 | —* | R | |
| 5 | PE5 | —* | R | |
| 4 | PE4 | —* | R | |
| 3 | PE3 | —* | R | |
| 2 | PE2 | —* | R | |
| 1 | PE1 | —* | R | |
| 0 | PE0 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PE7 to PE0.

9.10.4 Port E Pull-Up MOS Control Register (PEPCR)

PEPCR controls on/off states of the input pull-up MOS of port E.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PE7PCR | 0 | R/W | When the pin is in the input state, the input pull-up MOS of the input pin is on when the corresponding bit is set to 1. |
| 6 | PE6PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PE5PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PE4PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PE3PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PE2PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PE1PCR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PE1PCR | 0 | R/W | |

9.10.5 Pin Function

Port E pins also functions as data bus (D7 to D0) I/O. The correspondence between the register specification and the pin function in show below.

Table 9.54 PE7 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| | 8-bit bus mode | | 16-bit bus mode | — | |
| PE7DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | PE7 input | PE7 output | D7 input/output | PE7 input | PE7 output |

Table 9.55 PE6 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| | 8-bit bus mode | | 16-bit bus mode | — | |
| PE6DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | PE6 input | PE6 output | D6 input/output | PE6 input | PE6 output |

Table 9.56 PE5 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| Bus Mode | 8-bit bus mode | | 16-bit bus mode | — | |
| PE5DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | PE5 input | PE5 output | D5 input/output | PE5 input | PE5 output |

Table 9.57 PE4 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| Bus Mode | 8-bit bus mode | | 16-bit bus mode | — | |
| PE4DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | PE4 input | PE4 output | D4 input/output | PE4 input | PE4 output |

Table 9.58 PE3 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| Bus Mode | 8-bit bus mode | | 16-bit bus mode | — | |
| PE3DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | PE3 input | PE3 output | D3 input/output | PE3 input | PE3 output |

Table 9.59 PE2 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| Bus Mode | 8-bit bus mode | | 16-bit bus mode | — | |
| PE2DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | PE2 input | PE2 output | D2 input/output | PE2 input | PE2 output |

Table 9.60 PE1 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| Bus Mode | 8-bit bus mode | | 16-bit bus mode | — | |
| PE1DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | PE1 input | PE1 output | D1 input/output | PE1 input | PE1 output |

Table 9.61 PE0 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| Bus Mode | 8-bit bus mode | | 16-bit bus mode | — | |
| PE0DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin Function | PE0 input | PE0 output | D0 input/output | PE0 input | PE0 output |

9.10.6 Port E Input Pull-Up MOS State

Port E has a built-in input pull-up MOS function that can be controlled by software. Input pull-up MOS can be used in 8-bit bus mode in modes 4 to 6 or in mode 7, and can be specified as on or off for individual bits.

Table 9.62 summarizes the input pull-up MOS states.

Table 9.62 Input Pull-Up MOS States (Port E)

| Pins | Power-On Reset | Hardware Standby Mode | Manual Reset | Software Standby Mode | In Other Operations |
|---|----------------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Data output (16-bit bus mode in modes 4 to 6), port output (8-bit bus mode in modes 4 to 6 or mode 7) | OFF | | OFF | | |
| Port input (8-bit bus mode in modes 4 to 6 or mode 7) | | | ON/OFF | | |

Legend:

OFF: Input pull-up MOS is always off.

ON/OFF: On when PEDDR = 0 and PEPCR = 1; otherwise off.

9.11 Port F

Port F is an 8-bit I/O port that also has external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$, $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$), bus control sign I/O, system clock output. The port F has the following registers.

- Port F data direction register (PFDDR)
- Port F data register (PFDR)
- Port F register (PORTF)

9.11.1 Port F Data Direction Register (PFDDR)

The individual bits of PFDDR specify input or output for the pins of port F. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PF7DDR | 1/0* | W | Modes 4 to 6 |
| 6 | PF6DDR | 0 | W | Pin PF7 functions as the ϕ output pin when the corresponding PFDDR bit is set to 1, and as an input port when the bit is cleared to 0. The input/output direction specification in PFDDR is ignored for pins PF6 to PF3, which are automatically designated as bus control outputs. Pins PF2 to PF0 are made bus control input/output pins by bus controller settings. Otherwise, setting a PFDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 5 | PF5DDR | 0 | W | |
| 4 | PF4DDR | 0 | W | |
| 3 | PF3DDR | 0 | W | |
| 2 | PF2DDR | 0 | W | |
| 1 | PF1DDR | 0 | W | |
| 0 | PF0DDR | 0 | W | |
| | | | | Mode 7 Setting a PFDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port F pin PF6 to PF0 an output port, or in the case of pin PF7, the ϕ output pin. Clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |

Note: * In modes 4 to 6, set to 1; in mode 7 cleared to 0.

9.11.2 Port F Data Register (PFDR)

PFDR stores output data for the port F pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | PF7DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose output port. |
| 6 | PF6DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 5 | PF5DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | PF4DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | PF3DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PF2DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PF1DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PF0DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.11.3 Port F Register (PORTF)

PORTF shows port F pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PF7 | —* | R | If a port F read is performed while PFDDR bits are set to 1, the PFDR values are read. If a port F read is performed while PFDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 6 | PF6 | —* | R | |
| 5 | PF5 | —* | R | |
| 4 | PF4 | —* | R | |
| 3 | PF3 | —* | R | |
| 2 | PF2 | —* | R | |
| 1 | PF1 | —* | R | |
| 0 | PF0 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PF7 to PF0.

9.11.4 Pin Functions

Port F is an 8-bit I/O port. Port F pins also function as external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ and $\overline{\text{IRQ3}}$), bus control signal, and system clock output (ϕ).

Table 9.63 PF7 Pin Function

| PF7DDR | 0 | 1 |
|--------------|-----------|---------------|
| Pin function | PF7 input | ϕ output |

Table 9.64 PF6 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| PF6DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | $\overline{\text{AS}}$ output | PF6 input | PF6 output |

Table 9.65 PF5 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|-------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| PF5DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | $\overline{\text{RD}}$ output | PF5 input | PF5 output |

Table 9.66 PF4 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| PF4DDR | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | HWR output | PF4 input | PF4 output |

Table 9.67 PF3 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|----------------------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| Bus Mode | 16 bits | 8 bits | | — | |
| PF3DDR | — | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | LWR output | PF3 input | PF3 output | PF3 input | PF3 output |
| | | ADTRG input * ¹ | | | |
| | | IRQ3 input * ² | | | |

Notes: 1. $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ input when TRGS0=TRGS1=1.

2. When used as an external interrupt input pin, do not use as an I/O pin for another function.

Table 9.68 PF2 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| WAITE | 0 | | 1 | — | |
| PF2DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | PF2 input | PF2 output | $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ input | PF2 input | PF2 output |

Table 9.69 PF1 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|------------|---------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| BRLE | 0 | | 1 | — | |
| PF1DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | PF1 input | PF1 output | $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ output | PF1 input | PF1 output |

Table 9.70 PF0 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------------------------|------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| BRLE | 0 | | 1 | — | |
| PF0DDR | 0 | 1 | — | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | PF0 input | PF0 output | $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ input | PF0 input | PF0 output |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ input* | | | | |

Note: * When used as an external interrupt input pin, do not use as an I/O pin for another function.

9.12 Port G

Port G is a 5-bit I/O port that also has functioning as external interrupt input ($\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$) and bus control output ($\overline{\text{CS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$). The port G has the following registers.

- Port G data direction register (PGDDR)
- Port G data register (PGDR)
- Port G register (PORTG)

9.12.1 Port G Data Direction Register (PGDDR)

The individual bits of PGDDR specify input or output for the pins of port G. If port G is, an undefined value will be read. Since this is a write-only register, bit manipulation instructions should not be used to write to it. For details, see section 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 5 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 4 | PG4DDR | 0/1* | W | Modes 4 to 6 |
| 3 | PG3DDR | 0 | W | Setting a PGDDR bit to 1 makes the PG4 to PG1 pins bus control signal outputs, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin input ports. Signal outputs, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin input ports. Setting a PGDDR bit to 1 makes the PG0 pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 2 | PG2DDR | 0 | W | |
| 1 | PG1DDR | 0 | W | Mode 7 Setting a PGDDR bit to 1 makes the corresponding port G pin an output port, while clearing the bit to 0 makes the pin an input port. |
| 0 | PG0DDR | 0 | W | |

Note: * In modes 4 and 5, set to 1; in modes 6 and 7 cleared to 0.

9.12.2 Port G Data Register (PGDR)

PGDR stores output data for the port G pins.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 5 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 4 | PG4DR | 0 | R/W | An output data for a pin is stored when the pin function is specified to a general purpose output port. |
| 3 | PG3DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | PG2DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 1 | PG1DR | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | PG0DR | 0 | R/W | |

9.12.3 Port G Register (PORTG)

PORTG shows port G pin states.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 5 | — | Undefined | — | Reserved These bits are undefined and cannot be modified. |
| 4 | PG4 | —* | R | If a port G read is performed while PGDDR bits are set to 1, the PGDR values are read. If a port G read is performed while PGDDR bits are cleared to 0, the pin states are read. |
| 3 | PG3 | —* | R | |
| 2 | PG2 | —* | R | |
| 1 | PG1 | —* | R | |
| 0 | PG0 | —* | R | |

Note: * Determined by the states of pins PG4 to PG0.

9.12.4 Pin Functions

Port G is an 8-bit I/O port. Port G pins also function as external interrupt inputs ($\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$) and bus control signals ($\overline{\text{CS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$).

Table 9.71 PG4 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| PG4DDR | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | PG4 input | $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ output | PG4 input | PG4 output |

Table 9.72 PG3 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| PG3DDR | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | PG3 input | $\overline{\text{CS1}}$ output | PG3 input | PG3 output |

Table 9.73 PG2 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| PG2DDR | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | PG2 input | $\overline{\text{CS2}}$ output | PG2 input | PG2 output |

Table 9.74 PG1 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | Modes 4 to 6 | | Mode 7 | |
|----------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| PG1DDR | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Pin function | PG1 input | $\overline{\text{CS3}}$ output | PG1 input | PG1 output |
| | $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ input* | | | |

Note: * When used as an external interrupt input pin, do not use as an I/O pin for another function.

Table 9.75 PG0 Pin Function

| Operating Mode | 0 | 1 |
|----------------|-----------|------------|
| PG0DDR | | |
| Pin function | PG0 input | PG0 output |

9.13 Handling of Unused Pins

Unused input pins should be fixed high or low. Generally, the input pins of CMOS products are high-impedance. Leaving unused pins open can cause the generation of intermediate levels due to peripheral noise induction. This can result in shoot-through current inside the device and cause it to malfunction. Table 9.76 lists examples of ways to handle unused pins.

For the handling of dedicated boundary scan pins that are unused, see section 14.2, Pin Configuration, and section 14.5, Usage Notes. For the handling of dedicated USB pins that are unused, see section 15.9.14, Pin Processing when USB Not Used.

Table 9.76 Examples of Ways to Handle Unused Input Pins

| Pin Name | Pin Handling Example |
|-----------------|---|
| Port 1 | Connect each pin to Vcc (pull-up) or to Vss (pull-down) via a resistor. |
| Port 3 | |
| Port 4 | Connect each pin to AVcc (pull-up) or to AVss (pull-down) via a resistor. |
| Port 7 | Connect each pin to Vcc (pull-up) or to Vss (pull-down) via a resistor. |
| Port 9 | Connect each pin to AVcc (pull-up) or to AVss (pull-down) via a resistor. |
| Port A | Connect each pin to Vcc (pull-up) or to Vss (pull-down) via a resistor. |
| Port B | |
| Port C | |
| Port D | |
| Port E | |
| Port F | |
| Port G | |

Section 10 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit (TPU)

This LSI has an on-chip 16-bit timer pulse unit (TPU) that comprises three 16-bit timer channels. The function list of the 16-bit timer unit and its block diagram are shown in table 10.1 and figure 10.1, respectively.

10.1 Features

- Maximum 8-pulse input/output
- Selection of 8 counter input clocks for each channel
- The following operations can be set for each channel
 - Waveform output at compare match, input capture function, counter clear operation, simultaneous writing to multiple timer counters (TCNT), simultaneous clearing using compare match or input capture, simultaneous input/output for individual registers using counter synchronous operation, PWM output using user-defined duty, up to 7-phase PWM output by combination with synchronous operation
- Buffer operation settable for channel 0
- Phase counting mode settable independently for each of channels 1 and 2
- Fast access via internal 16-bit bus
- 13 interrupt sources
- Automatic transfer of register data
- A/D converter conversion start trigger can be generated
- Module stop mode can be set
- Baud rate clock for the SCI0 can be generated by channels 1 and 2

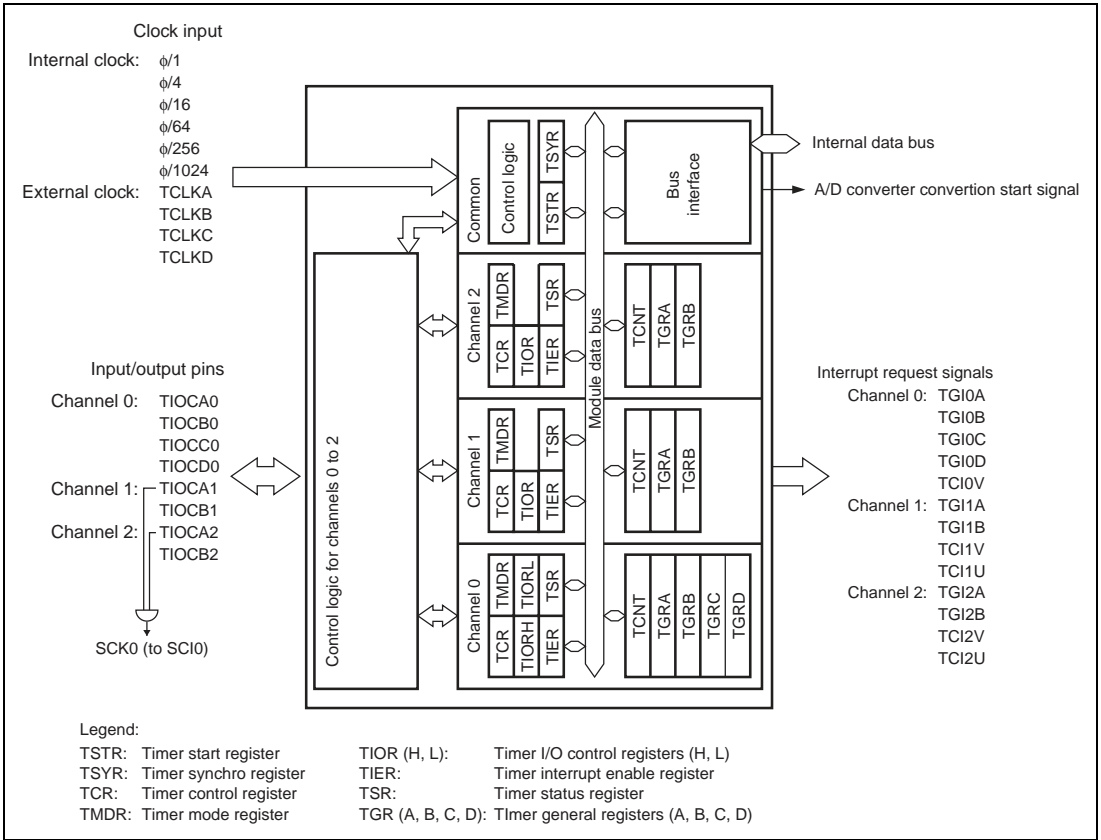


Figure 10.1 Block Diagram of TPU

Table 10.1 TPU Functions

| Item | Channel 0 | Channel 1 | Channel 2 |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Count clock | $\phi/1$ | $\phi/1$ | $\phi/1$ |
| | $\phi/4$ | $\phi/4$ | $\phi/4$ |
| | $\phi/16$ | $\phi/16$ | $\phi/16$ |
| | $\phi/64$ | $\phi/64$ | $\phi/64$ |
| | TCLKA | $\phi/256$ | $\phi/1024$ |
| | TCLKB | TCLKA | TCLKA |
| | TCLKC | TCLKB | TCLKB |
| | TCLKD | | TCLKC |
| General registers | TGRA_0 | TGRA_1 | TGRA_2 |
| | TGRB_0 | TGRB_1 | TGRB_2 |
| General registers/buffer registers | TGRC_0 | not possible | not possible |
| | TGRD_0 | | |
| I/O pins | TIOCA0 | TIOCA1 | TIOCA2 |
| | TIOCB0 | TIOCB1 | TIOCB2 |
| | TIOCC0 | | |
| | TIOCD0 | | |
| Counter clear function | TGR compare match or input capture | TGR compare match or input capture | TGR compare match or input capture |
| Compare match output | 0 output | possible | possible |
| | 1 output | possible | possible |
| | Toggle output | possible | possible |
| Input capture function | possible | possible | possible |
| Synchronous operation | possible | possible | possible |
| PWM mode | possible | possible | possible |
| Phase counting mode | not possible | possible | possible |
| Buffer operation | possible | not possible | not possible |

| Item | Channel 0 | Channel 1 | Channel 2 |
|-----------------------|--|---|---|
| DTC activation | TGR compare match or input capture | TGR compare match or input capture | TGR compare match or input capture |
| DMAC activation | TGRA_0 compare match or input capture | TGRA_1 compare match or input capture | TGRA_2 compare match or input capture |
| A/D converter trigger | TGRA_0 compare match or input capture | TGRA_1 compare match or input capture | TGRA_2 compare match or input capture |
| Interrupt sources | 5 sources <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Compare match or input capture 0A • Compare match or input capture 0B • Compare match or input capture 0C • Compare match or input capture 0D • Overflow | 4 sources <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Compare match or input capture 1A • Compare match or input capture 1B • Overflow • Underflow | 4 sources <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Compare match or input capture 2A • Compare match or input capture 2B • Overflow • Underflow |

10.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 10.2 Pin Configuration

| Channel | Symbol | I/O | Function |
|---------|--------|-------|---|
| All | TCLKA | Input | External clock A input pin (Channel 1 phase counting mode A phase input) |
| | TCLKB | Input | External clock B input pin (Channel 1 phase counting mode B phase input) |
| | TCLKC | Input | External clock C input pin (Channel 2 phase counting mode A phase input) |
| | TCLKD | Input | External clock D input pin (Channel 2 phase counting mode B phase input) |
| 0 | TIOCA0 | I/O | TGRA_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin |
| | TIOCB0 | I/O | TGRB_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin |
| | TIOCC0 | I/O | TGRC_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin |
| | TIOCD0 | I/O | TGRD_0 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin |
| 1 | TIOCA1 | I/O | TGRA_1 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin |
| | TIOCB1 | I/O | TGRB_1 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin |
| 2 | TIOCA2 | I/O | TGRA_2 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin |
| | TIOCB2 | I/O | TGRB_2 input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin |

10.3 Register Descriptions

The TPU has the following registers.

- Timer control register_0 (TCR_0)
- Timer mode register_0 (TMDR_0)
- Timer I/O control register H_0 (TIORH_0)
- Timer I/O control register L_0 (TIORL_0)
- Timer interrupt enable register_0 (TIER_0)
- Timer status register_0 (TSR_0)
- Timer counter_0 (TCNT_0)
- Timer general register A_0 (TGRA_0)
- Timer general register B_0 (TGRB_0)
- Timer general register C_0 (TGRC_0)
- Timer general register D_0 (TGRD_0)
- Timer control register_1 (TCR_1)
- Timer mode register_1 (TMDR_1)
- Timer I/O control register_1 (TIOR_1)
- Timer interrupt enable register_1 (TIER_1)
- Timer status register_1 (TSR_1)
- Timer counter_1 (TCNT_1)
- Timer general register A_1 (TGRA_1)
- Timer general register B_1 (TGRB_1)
- Timer control register_2 (TCR_2)
- Timer mode register_2 (TMDR_2)
- Timer I/O control register_2 (TIOR_2)
- Timer interrupt enable register_2 (TIER_2)
- Timer status register_2 (TSR_2)
- Timer counter_2 (TCNT_2)
- Timer general register A_2 (TGRA_2)
- Timer general register B_2 (TGRB_2)

Common Registers

- Timer start register (TSTR)
- Timer synchro register (TSYR)

10.3.1 Timer Control Register (TCR)

The TCR registers control the TCNT operation for each channel. The TPU has a total of three TCR registers, one for each channel (channels 0 to 2). TCR register settings should be made only when TCNT operation is stopped.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | CCLR2 | 0 | R/W | Counter Clear 2 to 0 |
| 6 | CCLR1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the TCNT counter clearing source. See tables 10.3 and 10.4 for details. |
| 5 | CCLR0 | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | CKEG1 | 0 | R/W | Clock Edge 1 and 0 |
| 3 | CKEG0 | 0 | R/W | <p>These bits select the input clock edge. When the internal clock is counted using both edges, the input clock frequency is halved (e.g., $\phi/4$ both edges = $\phi/2$ rising edge). If phase counting mode is used on channels 1, 2, 4, and 5, this setting is ignored and the phase counting mode setting has priority. Internal clock edge selection is valid when the input clock is $\phi/4$ or slower. If $\phi/1$ is selected as the input clock, this setting is ignored and count at falling edge of ϕ is selected.</p> <p>00: Count at rising edge 01: Count at falling edge 1x: Count at both edges Legend: x: Don't care</p> |
| 2 | TPSC2 | 0 | R/W | Time Prescaler 2 to 0 |
| 1 | TPSC1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the TCNT counter clock. The clock source can be selected independently for each channel. See tables 10.5 to 10.10 for details. |
| 0 | TPSC0 | 0 | R/W | |

Table 10.3 CCLR2 to CCLR0 (channel 0)

| Channel | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Description |
|---------|-------|-------|--|--|
| | CCLR2 | CCLR1 | CCLR0 | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | TCNT clearing disabled |
| | | | 1 | TCNT cleared by TGRA compare match/input capture |
| | | | 0 | TCNT cleared by TGRB compare match/input capture |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 | TCNT cleared by counter clearing for another channel performing synchronous clearing/synchronous operation ^{*1} |
| | | | 0 | TCNT clearing disabled |
| | | | 1 | TCNT cleared by TGRC compare match/input capture ^{*2} |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | TCNT cleared by TGRD compare match/input capture ^{*2} | |
| | | 0 | TCNT clearing disabled | |
| | | 1 | TCNT cleared by counter clearing for another channel performing synchronous clearing/synchronous operation ^{*1} | |

- Notes: 1. Synchronous operation setting is performed by setting the SYNC bit in TSYR to 1.
 2. When TGRC or TGRD is used as a buffer register. TCNT is not cleared because the buffer register setting has priority, and compare match/input capture does not occur.

Table 10.4 CCLR2 to CCLR0 (channels 1 and 2)

| Channel | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Description |
|---------|------------------------|-------|-------|--|
| | Reserved ^{*2} | CCLR1 | CCLR0 | |
| 1, 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | TCNT clearing disabled |
| | | | 1 | TCNT cleared by TGRA compare match/input capture |
| | | | 0 | TCNT cleared by TGRB compare match/input capture |
| 1, 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | TCNT cleared by counter clearing for another channel performing synchronous clearing/synchronous operation ^{*1} |
| | | | 0 | TCNT clearing disabled |

- Notes: 1. Synchronous operation setting is performed by setting the SYNC bit in TSYR to 1.
 2. Bit 7 is reserved in channels 1 and 2. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.

Table 10.5 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 0)

| Channel | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Description |
|---------|-------|-------|-------|---|
| | TPSC2 | TPSC1 | TPSC0 | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/1$ |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/4$ |
| | | 1 | 0 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/16$ |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/64$ |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | External clock: counts on TCLKA pin input |
| | | | 1 | External clock: counts on TCLKB pin input |
| | | 1 | 0 | External clock: counts on TCLKC pin input |
| | | | 1 | External clock: counts on TCLKD pin input |

Table 10.6 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 1)

| Channel | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Description |
|---------|-------|-------|-------|---|
| | TPSC2 | TPSC1 | TPSC0 | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/1$ |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/4$ |
| | | 1 | 0 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/16$ |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/64$ |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | External clock: counts on TCLKA pin input |
| | | | 1 | External clock: counts on TCLKB pin input |
| | | 1 | 0 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/256$ |
| | | | 1 | Setting prohibited |

Note: This setting is ignored when channel 1 is in phase counting mode.

Table 10.7 TPSC2 to TPSC0 (channel 2)

| Channel | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Description |
|---------|-------|-------|-------|---|
| | TPSC2 | TPSC1 | TPSC0 | |
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/1$ |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/4$ |
| | | 1 | 0 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/16$ |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/64$ |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | External clock: counts on TCLKA pin input |
| | | | 1 | External clock: counts on TCLKB pin input |
| | | 1 | 0 | External clock: counts on TCLKC pin input |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock: counts on $\phi/1024$ |

Note: This setting is ignored when channel 1 is in phase counting mode.

10.3.2 Timer Mode Register (TMDR)

The TMDR registers are used to set the operating mode for each channel. The TPU has three TMDR registers, one for each channel. TMDR register settings should be made only when TCNT operation is stopped.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|---------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 1 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 1 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | BFB | 0 | R/W | Buffer Operation B Specifies whether TGRB is to operate in the normal way, or TGRB and TGRD are to be used together for buffer operation. When TGRD is used as a buffer register, TGRD input capture/output compare is not generation. In channels 1 and 2, which have no TGRD, bit 5 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: TGRB operates normally 1: TGRB and TGRD used together for buffer operation |
| 4 | BFA | 0 | R/W | Buffer Operation A Specifies whether TGRA is to operate in the normal way, or TGRA and TGRC are to be used together for buffer operation. When TGRC is used as a buffer register, TGRC input capture/output compare is not generated. In channels 1 and 2, which have no TGRC, bit 4 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: TGRA operates normally 1: TGRA and TGRC used together for buffer operation |
| 3 | MD3 | 0 | R/W | Modes 3 to 0 |
| 2 | MD2 | 0 | R/W | These bits are used to set the timer operating mode. |
| 1 | MD1 | 0 | R/W | MD3 is a reserved bit. In a write, the write value should always be 0. See table 10.8, for details. |
| 0 | MD0 | 0 | R/W | |

Table 10.8 MD3 to MD0

| Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Description |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----------------------|
| MD3*1 | MD2*2 | MD1 | MD0 | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Normal operation |
| | | | 1 | Reserved |
| | 1 | | 0 | PWM mode 1 |
| | | | 1 | PWM mode 2 |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | Phase counting mode 1 |
| | | | 1 | Phase counting mode 2 |
| | | 1 | 0 | Phase counting mode 3 |
| | | | 1 | Phase counting mode 4 |
| 1 | x | x | x | — |

Legend:

x: Don't care

- Notes:
1. MD3 is reserved bit. In a write, it should be written with 0.
 2. Phase counting mode cannot be set for channels 0 and 3. In this case, 0 should always be written to MD2.

10.3.3 Timer I/O Control Register (TIOR)

The TIOR registers control the TGR registers. The TPU has eight TIOR registers, two each for channel 0, and one each for channels 1 and 2. Care is required since TIOR is affected by the TMDR setting. The initial output specified by TIOR is valid when the counter is stopped (the CST bit in TSTR is cleared to 0). Note also that, in PWM mode 2, the output at the point at which the counter is cleared to 0 is specified. When TGRC or TGRD is designated for buffer operation, this setting is invalid and the register operates as a buffer register.

- **TIORH_0, TIOR_1, TIOR_2**

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------------------------|
| 7 | IOB3 | 0 | R/W | I/O Control B3 to B0 |
| 6 | IOB2 | 0 | R/W | Specify the function of TGRB. |
| 5 | IOB1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | IOB0 | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | IOA3 | 0 | R/W | I/O Control A3 to A0 |
| 2 | IOA2 | 0 | R/W | Specify the function of TGRA. |
| 1 | IOA1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | IOA0 | 0 | R/W | |

- **TIORL_0**

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------------------------|
| 7 | IOD3 | 0 | R/W | I/O Control D3 to D0 |
| 6 | IOD2 | 0 | R/W | Specify the function of TGRD. |
| 5 | IOD1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 4 | IOD0 | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | IOC3 | 0 | R/W | I/O Control C3 to C0 |
| 2 | IOC2 | 0 | R/W | Specify the function of TGRC. |
| 1 | IOC1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | IOC0 | 0 | R/W | |

Table 10.9 TIORH_0 (channel 0)

| | | | | Description | | |
|-------|-------|-------|--|---|---|---|
| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | TGRB_0 | | |
| IOB3 | IOB2 | IOB1 | IOB0 | Function | TIOCB0 Pin Function | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Output compare register | Output disabled | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | 1 | Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match | | | |
| | | 1 | 0 | | 0 | Output disabled |
| | | | | | 1 | Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match |
| | 1 | | | Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match | | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Input capture register | Capture input source is TIOCB0 pin Input capture at rising edge |
| | | | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCB0 pin Input capture at falling edge |
| | | | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCB0 pin Input capture at both edges |
| | | 1 | x | x | | Setting prohibited |

Legend:

×: Don't care

Table 10.10 TIORH_0 (channel 0)

| | | | | Description | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------------------------|---|
| Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TGRA_0 | |
| IOA3 | IOA2 | IOA1 | IOA0 | Function | TIOCA0 Pin Function |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Output compare register | Output disabled |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match |
| | | | 0 | | Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match |
| | | 1 | 0 | | Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match |
| | | | 1 | | Output disabled |
| | | | 0 | | Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | Input capture register | Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at rising edge |
| | | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at falling edge |
| | | | × | | Capture input source is TIOCA0 pin Input capture at both edges |
| | | 1 | × | | Setting prohibited |

Legend:

×: Don't care

Table 10.11 TIORL_0 (channel 0)

| | | | | Description | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------------------------|--|--|---|
| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | TGRD_0 | | | |
| IOD3 | IOD2 | IOD1 | IOD0 | Function | TIOCD0 Pin Function | | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Output Compare register* | Output disabled | | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match | | |
| | | | 1 | | 0 | Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match | | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Input capture register* | Output disabled | |
| | | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match | |
| | | | | 1 | | 0 | Initial output is 1 output |
| | | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match | |
| | | 1 | x | x | | x | Capture input source is TIOCD0 pin Input capture at rising edge |
| | | | | | | x | Capture input source is TIOCD0 pin Input capture at falling edge |
| | | | | | | x | Capture input source is TIOCD0 pin Input capture at both edges |
| | | | | | | x | Setting prohibited |

Legend:

x: Don't care

Note: * When the BFB bit in TMDR_0 is set to 1 and TGRD_0 is used as a buffer register, this setting is invalid and input capture/output compare is not generated.

Table 10.12 TIORL_0 (channel 0)

| | | | | Description | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|---|--|
| Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TGRC_0 | |
| IOC3 | IOC2 | IOC1 | IOC0 | Function | TIOCC0 Pin Function |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Output compare register* | Output disabled |
| | | | 1 | Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match | |
| | | 1 | 0 | Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match | |
| | | 1 | 0 | 0 | Output disabled |
| | | | | 1 | Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match |
| | 1 | | 0 | Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | Input capture register* | Capture input source is TIOCC0 pin Input capture at rising edge |
| | | | 1 | Capture input source is TIOCC0 pin Input capture at falling edge | |
| | | 1 | × | Capture input source is TIOCC0 pin Input capture at both edges | |
| | | | × | Setting prohibited | |

Legend:

x: Don't care

Note: * When the BFA bit in TMDR_0 is set to 1 and TGRC_0 is used as a buffer register, this setting is invalid and input capture/output compare is not generated.

Table 10.13 TIOR_1 (channel 1)

| | | | | Description | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------------------------|--|---|
| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | TGRB_1 | | |
| IOB3 | IOB2 | IOB1 | IOB0 | Function | TIOCB1 Pin Function | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Output compare register | Output disabled | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match | |
| | | | 0 | | Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match | |
| | | 1 | 0 | 0 | Output disabled | Output disabled |
| | | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match |
| | | | | 0 | | Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match |
| | | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match |
| | | 1 | 1 | 0 | Input capture register | Capture input source is TIOCB1 pin Input capture at rising edge |
| | | | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCB1 pin Input capture at falling edge |
| | | | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCB1 pin Input capture at both edges |
| | | | | 1 | | Setting prohibited |

Legend:

x: Don't care

Table 10.14 TIOR_1 (channel 1)

| | | | | Description | |
|-------|-------|-------|---|---|---|
| Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TGRA_1 | |
| IOA3 | IOA2 | IOA1 | IOA0 | Function | TIOCA1 Pin Function |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Output compare register | Output disabled |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match |
| | | 1 | 0 | Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | Output disabled | Output disabled |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match |
| | | 1 | 0 | Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Input capture register | Capture input source is TIOCA1 pin Input capture at rising edge | |
| | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCA1 pin Input capture at falling edge | |
| | 1 | x | Capture input source is TIOCA1 pin Input capture at both edges | | |
| | | x | Setting prohibited | | |

Legend:

x: Don't care

Table 10.15 TIOR_2 (channel 2)

| | | | | Description | | |
|-------|-------|-------|------------------------|---|---|--|
| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | TGRB_2 | | |
| IOB3 | IOB2 | IOB1 | IOB0 | Function | TIOCB2 Pin Function | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Output compare register | Output disabled | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match | |
| | | 1 | 0 | Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match | | |
| | | | 1 | Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match | | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | Input capture register | Output disabled | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | 1 | 0 | 0 | Input capture register | Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match |
| | | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match |
| | | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match |
| 1 | × | 0 | Input capture register | Capture input source is TIOCB2 pin Input capture at rising edge | | |
| | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCB2 pin Input capture at falling edge | | |
| | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCB2 pin Input capture at both edges | | |

Legend

×: Don't care

Table 10.16 TIOR_2 (channel 2)

| | | | | Description | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|---|---|
| Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TGRA_2 | |
| IOA3 | IOA2 | IOA1 | IOA0 | Function | TIOCA2 Pin Function |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Output compare register | Output disabled |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 0 output 0 output at compare match |
| | | 1 | 0 | Initial output is 0 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | Initial output is 0 output Toggle output at compare match | |
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | Output disabled | Output disabled |
| | | | 1 | | Initial output is 1 output 0 output at compare match |
| | | 1 | 0 | Initial output is 1 output 1 output at compare match | |
| | | | 1 | Initial output is 1 output Toggle output at compare match | |
| 1 | × | 0 | 0 | Input capture register | Capture input source is TIOCA2 pin Input capture at rising edge |
| | | | 1 | | Capture input source is TIOCA2 pin Input capture at falling edge |
| | | 1 | × | Capture input source is TIOCA2 pin Input capture at both edges | |

Legend:

×: Don't care

10.3.4 Timer Interrupt Enable Register (TIER)

The TIER registers control enabling or disabling of interrupt requests for each channel. The TPU has three TIER registers, one for each channel.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | TTGE | 0 | R/W | A/D Conversion Start Request Enable Enables or disables generation of A/D conversion start requests by TGRA input capture/compare match. 0: A/D conversion start request generation disabled 1: A/D conversion start request generation enabled |
| 6 | — | 1 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 1 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | TCIEU | 0 | R/W | Underflow Interrupt Enable Enables or disables interrupt requests (TCU) by the TCFU flag when the TCFU flag in TSR is set to 1 in channels 1 and 2. In channel 0, bit 5 is reserved. 0: Interrupt requests (TCIU) by TCFU disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TCIU) by TCFU enabled |
| 4 | TCIEV | 0 | R/W | Overflow Interrupt Enable Enables or disables interrupt requests (TCIV) by the TCFV flag when the TCFV flag in TSR is set to 1. 0: Interrupt requests (TCIV) by TCFV disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TCIV) by TCFV enabled |
| 3 | TGIED | 0 | R/W | TGR Interrupt Enable D Enables or disables interrupt requests (TGID) by the TGFD bit when the TGFD bit in TSR is set to 1 in channel 0. In channels 1 and 2, bit 3 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: Interrupt requests (TGID) by TGFD disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TGID) by TGFD enabled |
| 2 | TGIEC | 0 | R/W | TGR Interrupt Enable C Enables or disables interrupt requests (TGIC) by the TGFC bit when the TGFC bit in TSR is set to 1 in channel 0. In channels 1 and 2, bit 2 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: Interrupt requests (TGIC) by TGFC disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TGIC) by TGFC enabled |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 1 | TGIEB | 0 | R/W | TGR Interrupt Enable B Enables or disables interrupt requests (TGIB) by the TGFB bit when the TGFB bit in TSR is set to 1. 0: Interrupt requests (TGIB) by TGFB disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TGIB) by TGFB enabled |
| 0 | TGIEA | 0 | R/W | TGR Interrupt Enable A Enables or disables interrupt requests (TGIA) by the TGFA bit when the TGFA bit in TSR is set to 1. 0: Interrupt requests (TGIA) by TGFA disabled 1: Interrupt requests (TGIA) by TGFA enabled |

10.3.5 Timer Status Register (TSR)

The TSR registers indicate the status of each channel. The TPU has three TSR registers, one for each channel.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|--|
| 7 | TCFD | 1 | R | Count Direction Flag Status flag that shows the direction in which TCNT counts in channels 1 and 2. In channel 0, bit 7 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. 0: TCNT counts down 1: TCNT counts up |
| 6 | — | 1 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 1 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | TCFU | 0 | R/(W)* | Underflow Flag Status flag that indicates that TCNT underflow has occurred when channels 1 and 2 are set to phase counting mode. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. In channel 0, bit 5 is reserved. [Setting condition] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the TCNT value underflows (change from H'0000 to H'FFFF) [Clearing condition] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to TCFU after reading TCFU = 1 |
| 4 | TCFV | 0 | R/(W)* | Overflow Flag Status flag that indicates that TCNT overflow has occurred. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. [Setting condition] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the TCNT value overflows (change from H'FFFF to H'0000) [Clearing condition] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to TCFV after reading TCFV = 1 |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 3 | TGFD | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Input Capture/Output Compare Flag D</p> <p>Status flag that indicates the occurrence of TGRD input capture or compare match in channel 0. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. In channels 1 and 2, bit 3 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When TCNT = TGRD while TGRD is functioning as output compare register • When TCNT value is transferred to TGRD by input capture signal while TGRD is functioning as input capture register <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTC is activated by TGID interrupt, DISEL bit in MRB of DTC is cleared to 0, and transfer counter value is not 0 • When 0 is written to TGFD after reading TGFD = 1 |
| 2 | TGFC | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Input Capture/Output Compare Flag C</p> <p>Status flag that indicates the occurrence of TGRC input capture or compare match in channel 0. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag. In channels 1 and 2, bit 2 is reserved. It is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When TCNT = TGRC while TGRC is functioning as output compare register • When TCNT value is transferred to TGRC by input capture signal while TGRC is functioning as input capture register <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTC is activated by TGIC interrupt, DISEL bit in MRB of DTC is cleared to 0, and transfer counter value is not 0 • When 0 is written to TGFC after reading TGFC = 1 |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 1 | TGFB | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Input Capture/Output Compare Flag B</p> <p>Status flag that indicates the occurrence of TGRB input capture or compare match. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When TCNT = TGRB while TGRB is functioning as output compare register • When TCNT value is transferred to TGRB by input capture signal while TGRB is functioning as input capture register <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTC is activated by TGIB interrupt, DISEL bit in MRB of DTC is cleared to 0, and transfer counter value is not 0 • When 0 is written to TGFB after reading TGFB = 1 |
| 0 | TGFA | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Input Capture/Output Compare Flag A</p> <p>Status flag that indicates the occurrence of TGRA input capture or compare match. The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When TCNT = TGRA while TGRA is functioning as output compare register • When TCNT value is transferred to TGRA by input capture signal while TGRA is functioning as input capture register <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When DTC is activated by TGIA interrupt, DISEL bit in MRB of DTC is cleared to 0, and transfer counter value is not 0 • When 0 is written to TGFA after reading TGFA = 1 |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear the flag.

10.3.6 Timer Counter (TCNT)

The TCNT registers are 16-bit counters. The TPU has three TCNT counters, one for each channel. The TCNT counters are initialized to H'0000 by a reset, and in hardware standby mode. The TCNT counters cannot be accessed in 8-bit units; they must always be accessed as a 16-bit unit.

10.3.7 Timer General Register (TGR)

The TGR registers are 16-bit registers with a dual function as output compare and input capture registers. The TPU has 16 TGR registers, four each for channel 0 and two each for channels 1 and 2. TGRC and TGRD for channel 0 can also be designated for operation as buffer registers. The TGR registers cannot be accessed in 8-bit units; they must always be accessed as a 16-bit unit. TGR buffer register combinations are TGRA—TGRC and TGRB—TGRD.

10.3.8 Timer Start Register (TSTR)

TSTR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects operation/stoppage for channels 0 to 2. When setting the operating mode in TMDR or setting the count clock in TCR, first stop the TCNT counter.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 3 | — | All 0 | — | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 2 | CST2 | 0 | R/W | Counter Start 2 to 0 (CST2 to CST0) |
| 1 | CST1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select operation or stoppage for TCNT. |
| 0 | CST0 | 0 | R/W | If 0 is written to the CST bit during operation with the TIOC pin designated for output, the counter stops but the TIOC pin output compare output level is retained. If TIOR is written to when the CST bit is cleared to 0, the pin output level will be changed to the set initial output value. 0: TCNT_2 to TCNT_0 count operation is stopped 1: TCNT_2 to TCNT_0 performs count operation |

10.3.9 Timer Synchro Register (TSYR)

TSYR selects independent operation or synchronous operation for the channel 0 to 2 TCNT counters. A channel performs synchronous operation when the corresponding bit in TSYR is set to 1.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 3 | — | All 0 | — | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 2 | SYNC2 | 0 | R/W | Timer Synchro 2 to 0 |
| 1 | SYNC1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select whether operation is independent of or synchronized with other channels. When synchronous operation is selected, synchronous presetting of multiple channels, and synchronous clearing through counter clearing on another channel are possible. To set synchronous operation, the SYNC bits for at least two channels must be set to 1. To set synchronous clearing, in addition to the SYNC bit, the TCNT clearing source must also be set by means of bits CCLR2 to CCLR0 in TCR. |
| 0 | SYNC0 | 0 | R/W | |
| | | | | 0: TCNT_2 to TCNT_0 operates independently (TCNT presetting /clearing is unrelated to other channels) |
| | | | | 1: TCNT_2 to TCNT_0 performs synchronous operation TCNT synchronous presetting/synchronous clearing is possible |

10.4 Interface to Bus Master

10.4.1 16-Bit Registers

TCNT and TGR are 16-bit registers. As the data bus to the bus master is 16 bits wide, these registers can be read and written to in 16-bit units.

These registers cannot be read from or written to in 8-bit units; 16-bit access must always be used.

An example of 16-bit register access operation is shown in figure 10.2.

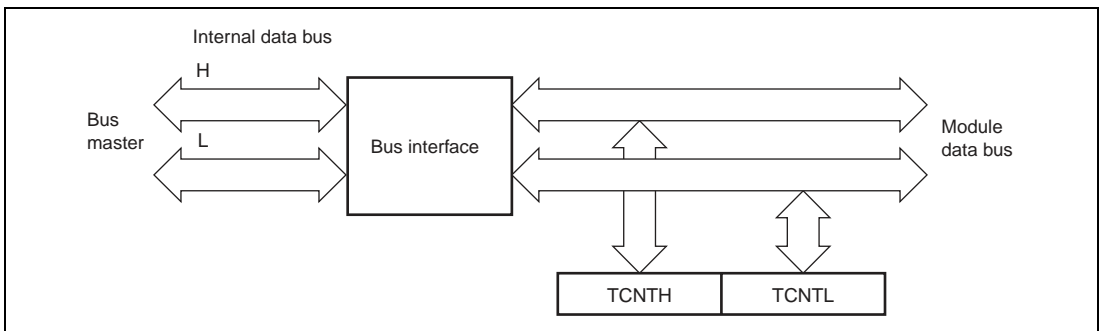


Figure 10.2 16-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCNT (16 Bits)]

10.4.2 8-Bit Registers

Registers other than TCNT and TGR are 8-bit. As the data bus to the CPU is 16 bits wide, these registers can be read and written to in 16-bit units. They can also be read and written to in 8-bit units.

Examples of 8-bit register access operation are shown in figures 10.3 to 10.5.

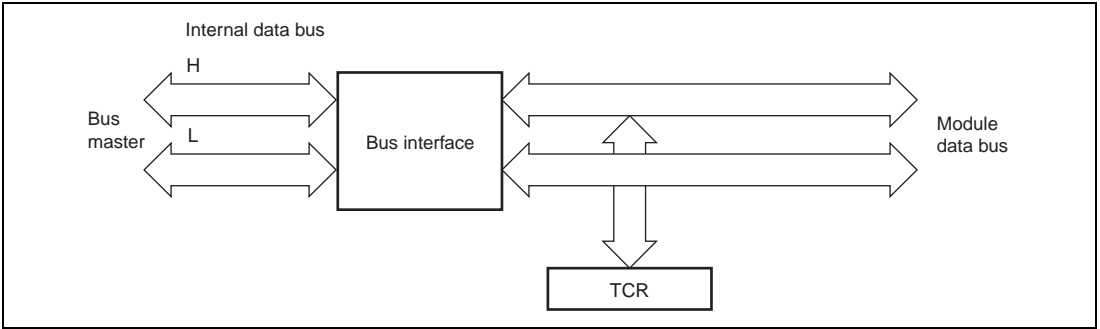


Figure 10.3 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCR (Upper 8 Bits)]

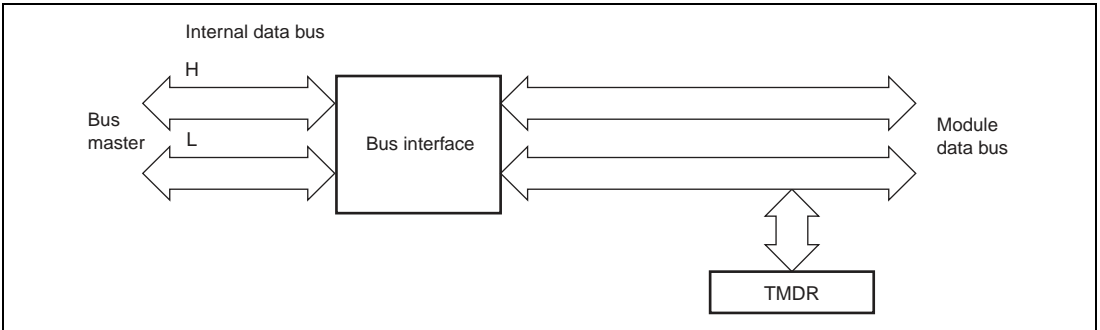


Figure 10.4 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TMDR (Lower 8 Bits)]

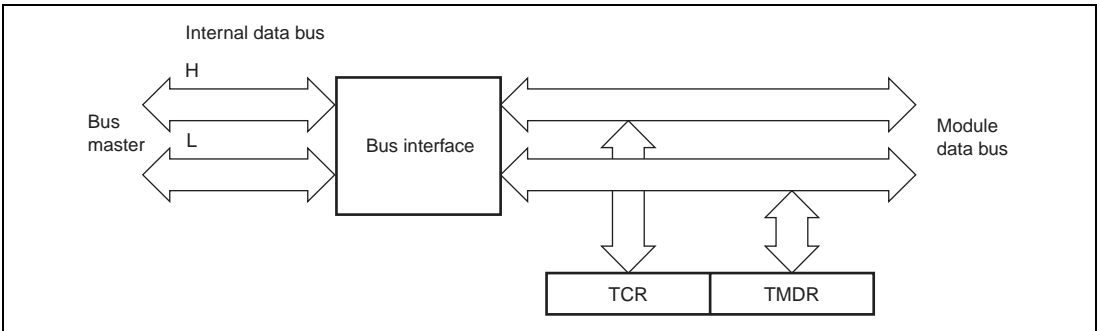


Figure 10.5 8-Bit Register Access Operation [Bus Master ↔ TCR and TMDR (16 Bits)]

10.5 Operation

10.5.1 Basic Functions

Each channel has a TCNT and TGR. TCNT performs up-counting, and is also capable of free-running operation, synchronous counting, and external event counting. Each TGR can be used as an input capture register or output compare register.

Counter Operation: When one of bits CST0 to CST2 is set to 1 in TSTR, the TCNT counter for the corresponding channel starts counting. TCNT can operate as a free-running counter, periodic counter, and so on.

1. Example of count operation setting procedure

Figure 10.6 shows an example of the count operation setting procedure.

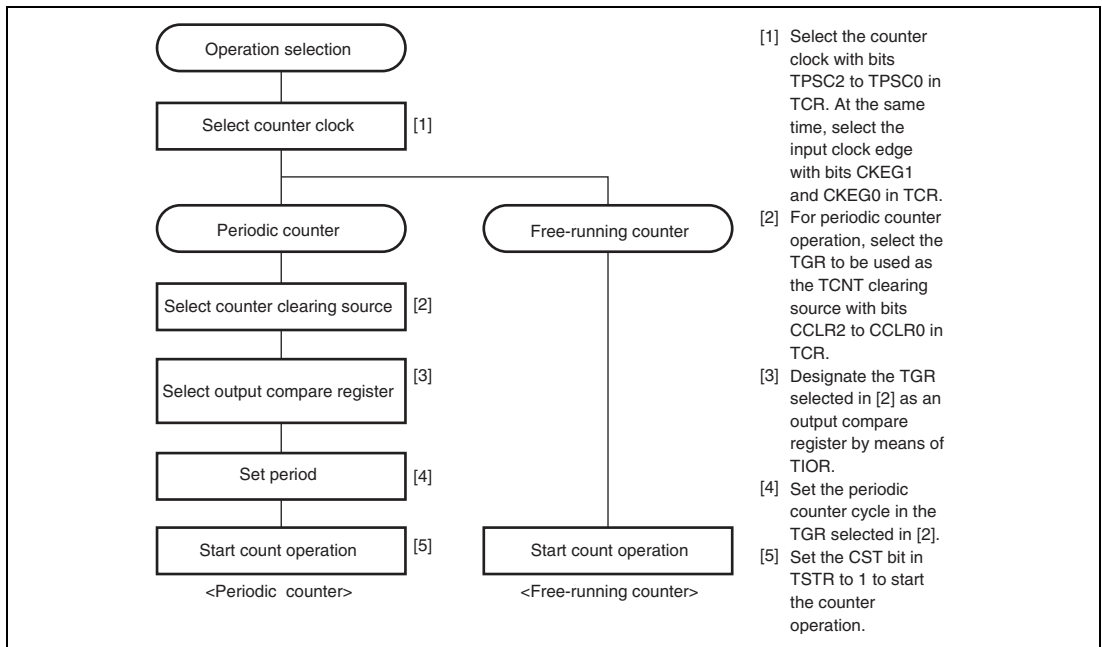


Figure 10.6 Example of Counter Operation Setting Procedure

2. Free-running count operation and periodic count operation

Immediately after a reset, the TPU's TCNT counters are all designated as free-running counters. When the relevant bit in TSTR is set to 1 the corresponding TCNT counter starts up-count operation as a free-running counter. When TCNT overflows (from H'FFFF to H'0000), the TCFV bit in TSR is set to 1. If the value of the corresponding TCIEV bit in TIER is 1 at this point, the TPU requests an interrupt. After overflow, TCNT starts counting up again from H'0000. Figure 10.7 illustrates free-running counter operation.

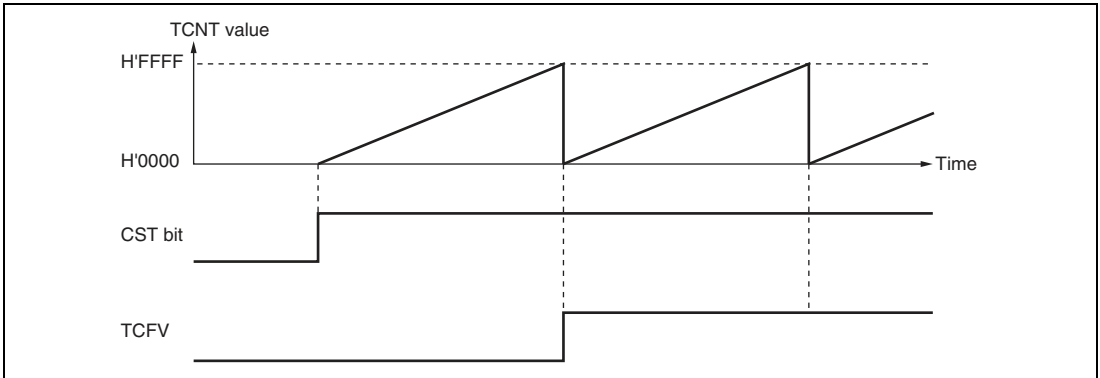


Figure 10.7 Free-Running Counter Operation

When compare match is selected as the TCNT clearing source, the TCNT counter for the relevant channel performs periodic count operation. The TGR register for setting the period is designated as an output compare register, and counter clearing by compare match is selected by means of bits CCLR2 to CCLR0 in TCR. After the settings have been made, TCNT starts up-count operation as periodic counter when the corresponding bit in TSTR is set to 1. When the count value matches the value in TGR, the TGF bit in TSR is set to 1 and TCNT is cleared to H'0000. If the value of the corresponding TGIE bit in TIER is 1 at this point, the TPU requests an interrupt. After a compare match, TCNT starts counting up again from H'0000. Figure 10.8 illustrates periodic counter operation.

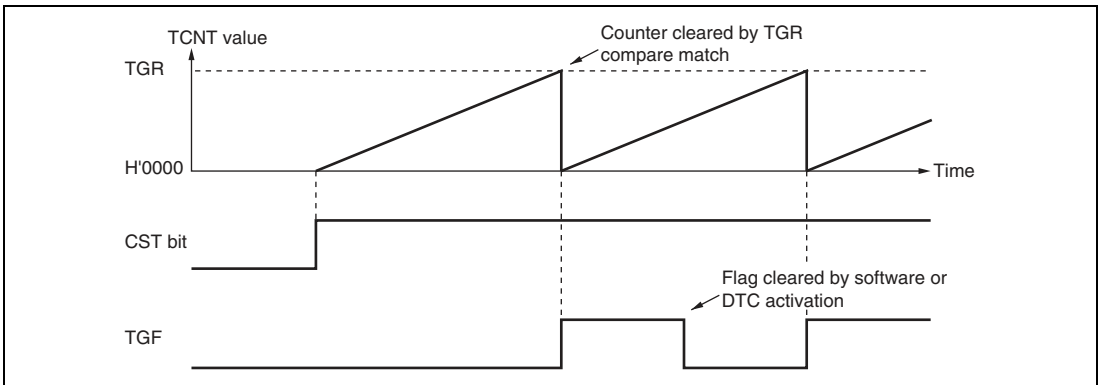


Figure 10.8 Periodic Counter Operation

Waveform Output by Compare Match: The TPU can perform 0, 1, or toggle output from the corresponding output pin using compare match.

1. Example of setting procedure for waveform output by compare match

Figure 10.9 shows an example of the setting procedure for waveform output by compare match.

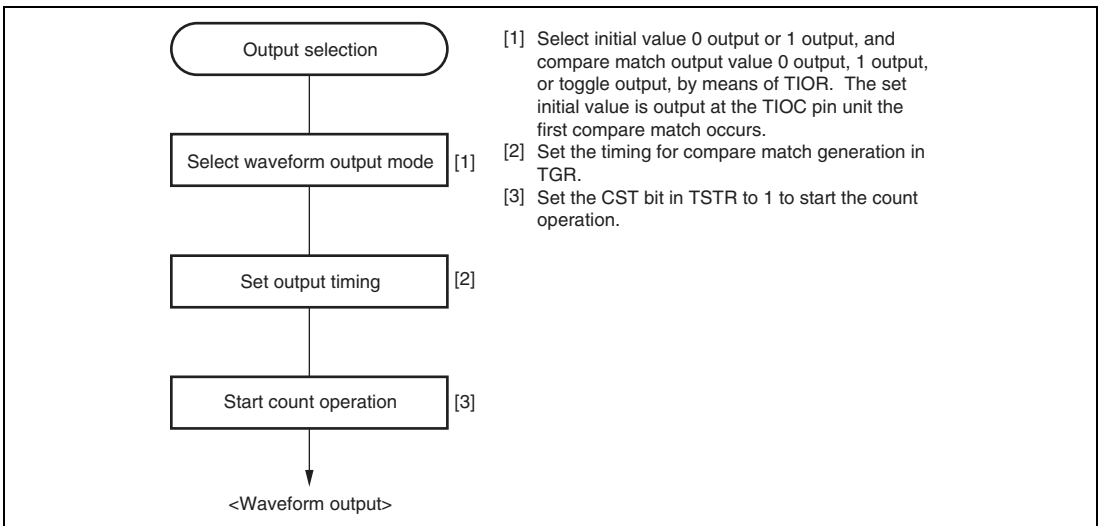


Figure 10.9 Example of Setting Procedure for Waveform Output by Compare Match

2. Examples of waveform output operation

Figure 10.10 shows an example of 0 output/1 output. In this example TCNT has been designated as a free-running counter, and settings have been made so that 1 is output by compare match A, and 0 is output by compare match B. When the set level and the pin level coincide, the pin level does not change.

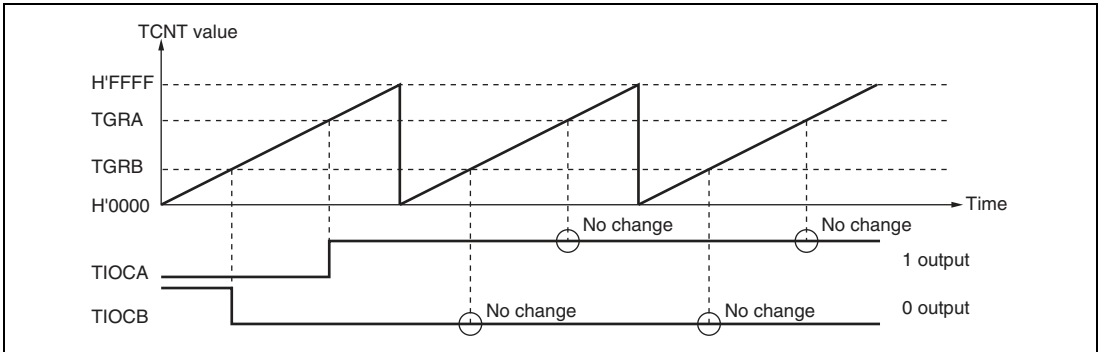


Figure 10.10 Example of 0 Output/1 Output Operation

Figure 10.11 shows an example of toggle output. In this example TCNT has been designated as a periodic counter (with counter clearing performed by compare match B), and settings have been made so that output is toggled by both compare match A and compare match B.

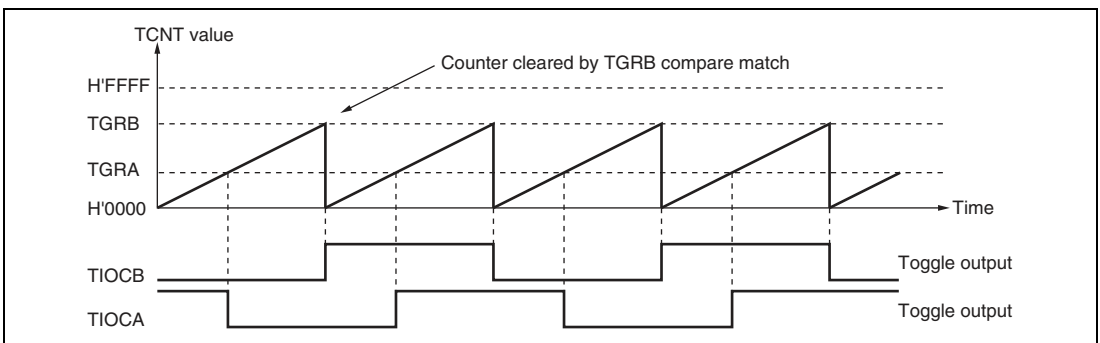


Figure 10.11 Example of Toggle Output Operation

Input Capture Function: The TCNT value can be transferred to TGR on detection of the TIOC pin input edge. Rising edge, falling edge, or both edges can be selected as the detected edge.

1. Example of input capture operation setting procedure

Figure 10.12 shows an example of the input capture operation setting procedure.

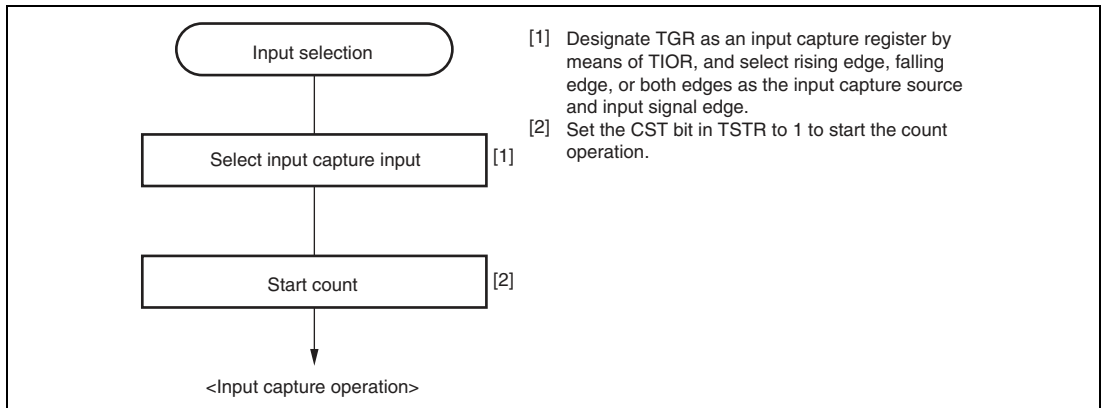


Figure 10.12 Example of Input Capture Operation Setting Procedure

2. Example of input capture operation

Figure 10.13 shows an example of input capture operation. In this example both rising and falling edges have been selected as the TIOCA pin input capture input edge, falling edge has been selected as the TIOCB pin input capture input edge, and counter clearing by TGRB input capture has been designated for TCNT.

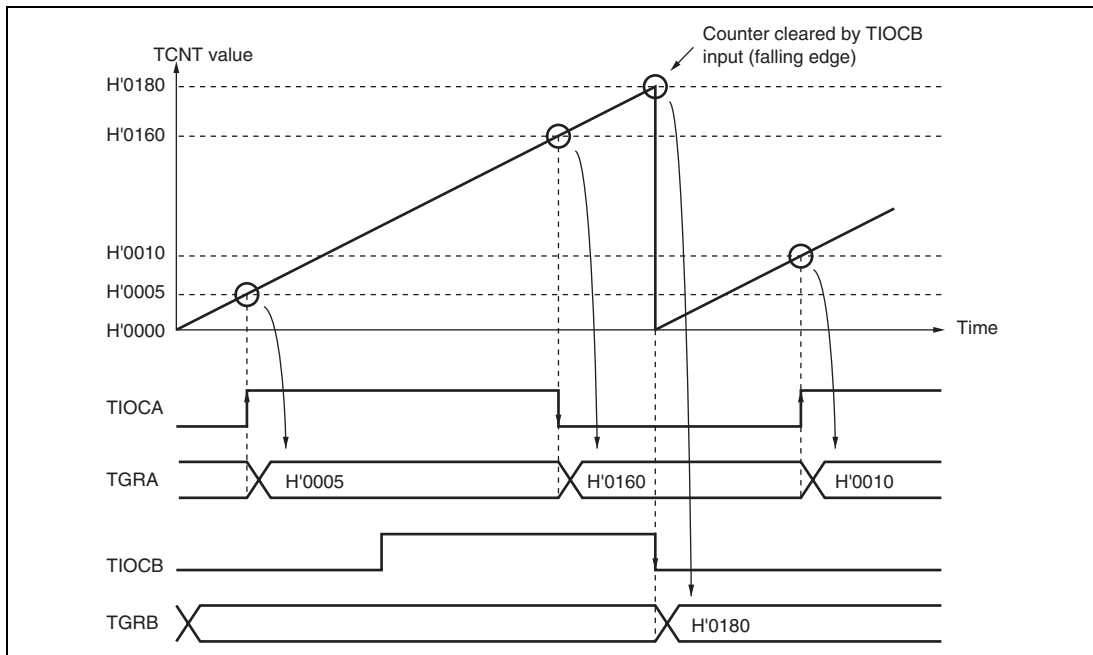


Figure 10.13 Example of Input Capture Operation

10.5.2 Synchronous Operation

In synchronous operation, the values in a number of TCNT counters can be rewritten simultaneously (synchronous presetting). Also, a number of TCNT counters can be cleared simultaneously by making the appropriate setting in TCR (synchronous clearing). Synchronous operation enables TGR to be incremented with respect to a single time base. Channels 0 to 2 can all be designated for synchronous operation.

Example of Synchronous Operation Setting Procedure: Figure 10.14 shows an example of the synchronous operation setting procedure.

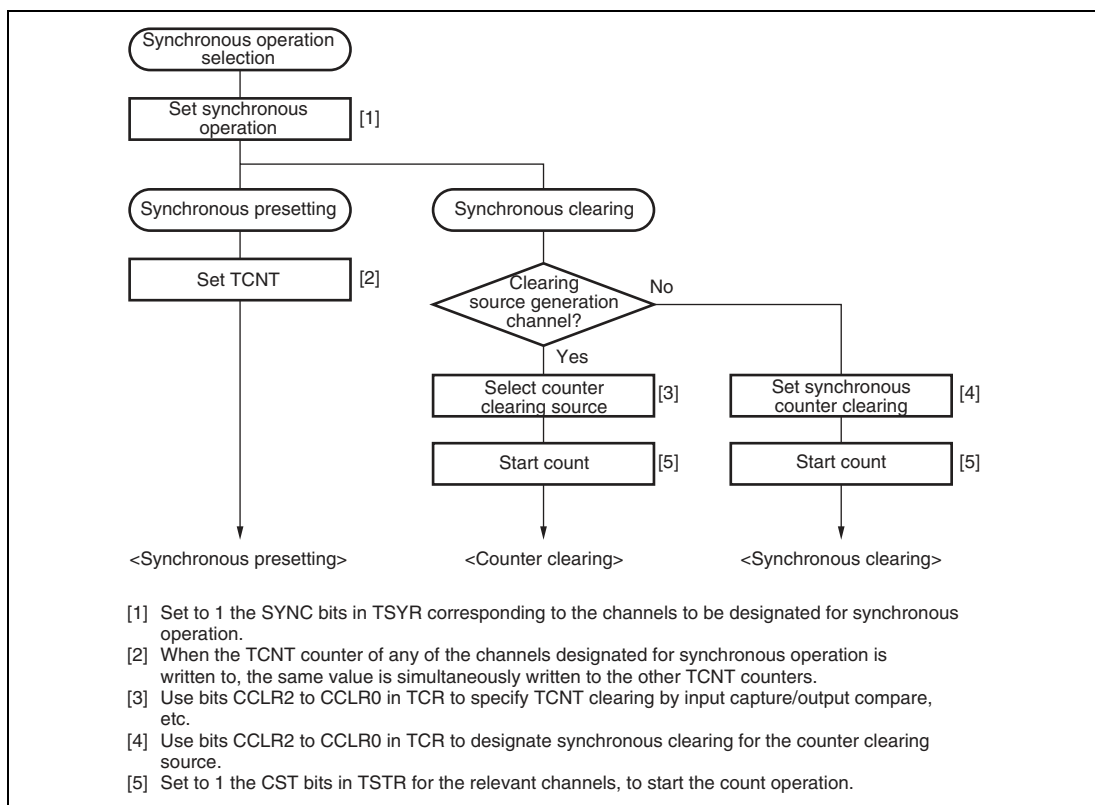


Figure 10.14 Example of Synchronous Operation Setting Procedure

Example of Synchronous Operation: Figure 10.15 shows an example of synchronous operation. In this example, synchronous operation and PWM mode 1 have been designated for channels 0 to 2, TGRB_0 compare match has been set as the channel 0 counter clearing source, and synchronous clearing has been set for the channel 1 and 2 counter clearing sources. Three-phase PWM waveforms are output from pins TIOC0A, TIOC1A, and TIOC2A. At this time, synchronous presetting, and synchronous clearing by TGRB_0 compare match, is performed for channel 0 to 2 TCNT counters, and the data set in TGRB_0 is used as the PWM cycle. For details of PWM modes, see section 10.5.4, PWM Modes.

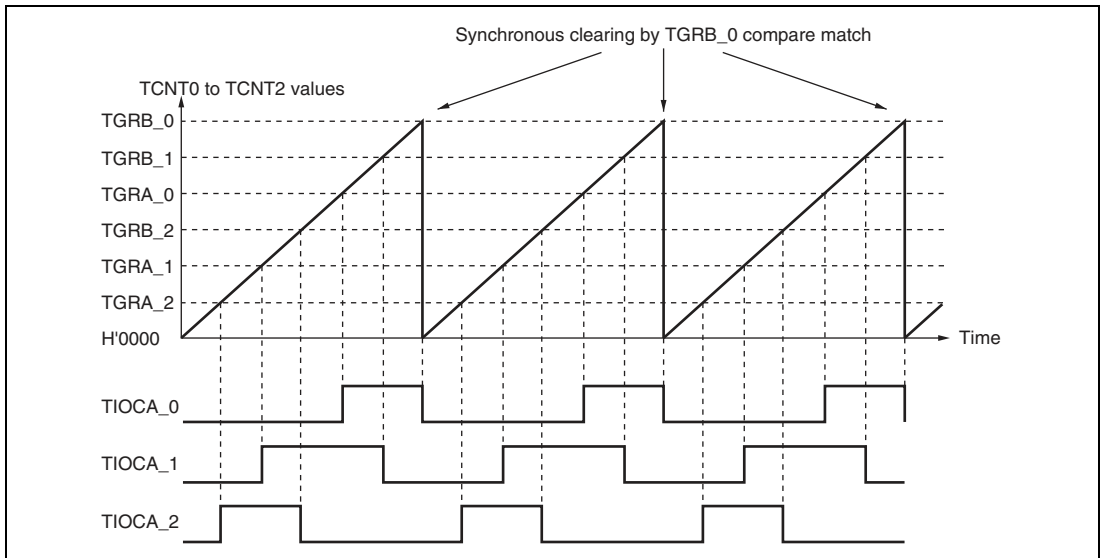


Figure 10.15 Example of Synchronous Operation

10.5.3 Buffer Operation

Buffer operation, provided for channel 0, enables TGRC and TGRD to be used as buffer registers. Buffer operation differs depending on whether TGR has been designated as an input capture register or as a compare match register. Table 10.17 shows the register combinations used in buffer operation.

Table 10.17 Register Combinations in Buffer Operation

| Channel | Timer General Register | Buffer Register |
|---------|------------------------|-----------------|
| 0 | TGRA_0 | TGRC_0 |
| | TGRB_0 | TGRD_0 |

- When TGR is an output compare register

When a compare match occurs, the value in the buffer register for the corresponding channel is transferred to the timer general register. This operation is illustrated in figure 10.16.

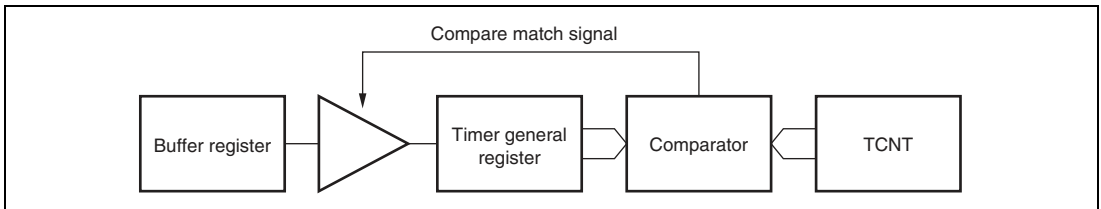


Figure 10.16 Compare Match Buffer Operation

- When TGR is an input capture register

When input capture occurs, the value in TCNT is transferred to TGR and the value previously held in the timer general register is transferred to the buffer register. This operation is illustrated in figure 10.17.

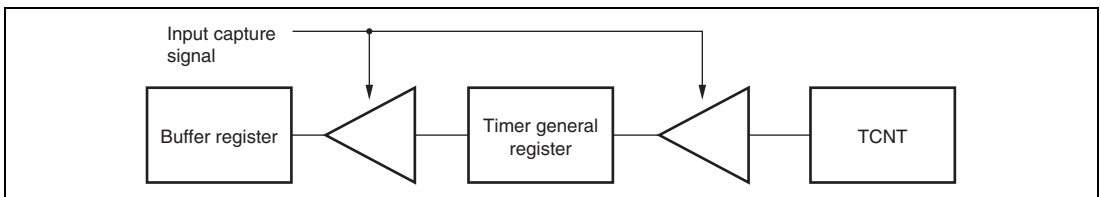


Figure 10.17 Input Capture Buffer Operation

Example of Buffer Operation Setting Procedure: Figure 10.18 shows an example of the buffer operation setting procedure.

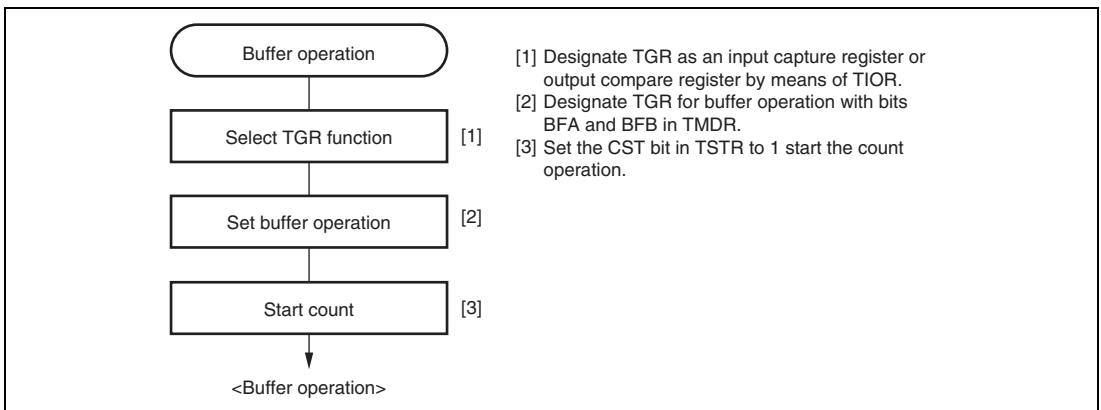


Figure 10.18 Example of Buffer Operation Setting Procedure

Examples of Buffer Operation

1. When TGR is an output compare register

Figure 10.19 shows an operation example in which PWM mode 1 has been designated for channel 0, and buffer operation has been designated for TGRA and TGRC. The settings used in this example are TCNT clearing by compare match B, 1 output at compare match A, and 0 output at compare match B. As buffer operation has been set, when compare match A occurs the output changes and the value in buffer register TGRC is simultaneously transferred to timer general register TGRA. This operation is repeated each time compare match A occurs. For details of PWM modes, see section 10.5.4, PWM Modes.

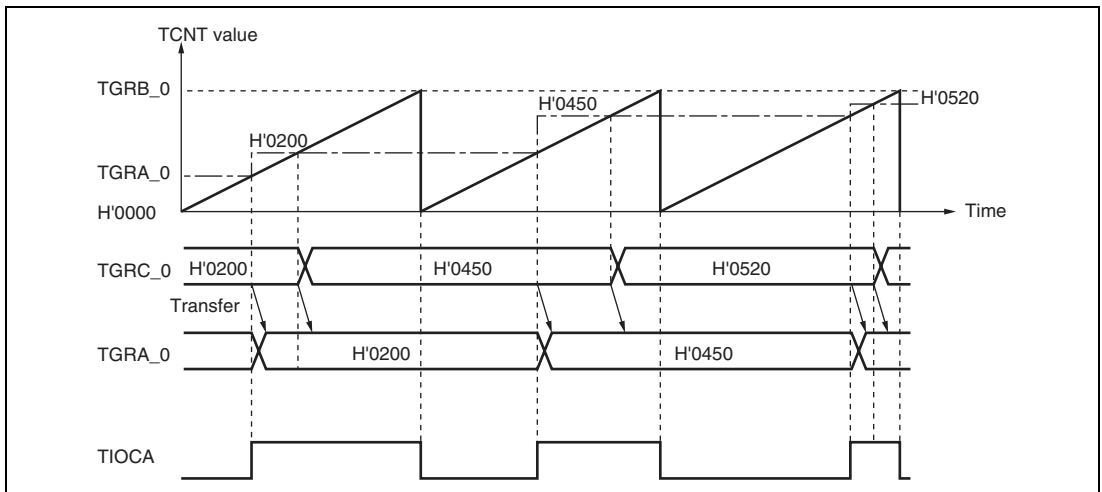


Figure 10.19 Example of Buffer Operation (1)

2. When TGR is an input capture register

Figure 10.20 shows an operation example in which TGRA has been designated as an input capture register, and buffer operation has been designated for TGRA and TGRC. Counter clearing by TGRA input capture has been set for TCNT, and both rising and falling edges have been selected as the TIOCA pin input capture input edge. As buffer operation has been set, when the TCNT value is stored in TGRA upon occurrence of input capture A, the value previously stored in TGRA is simultaneously transferred to TGRC.

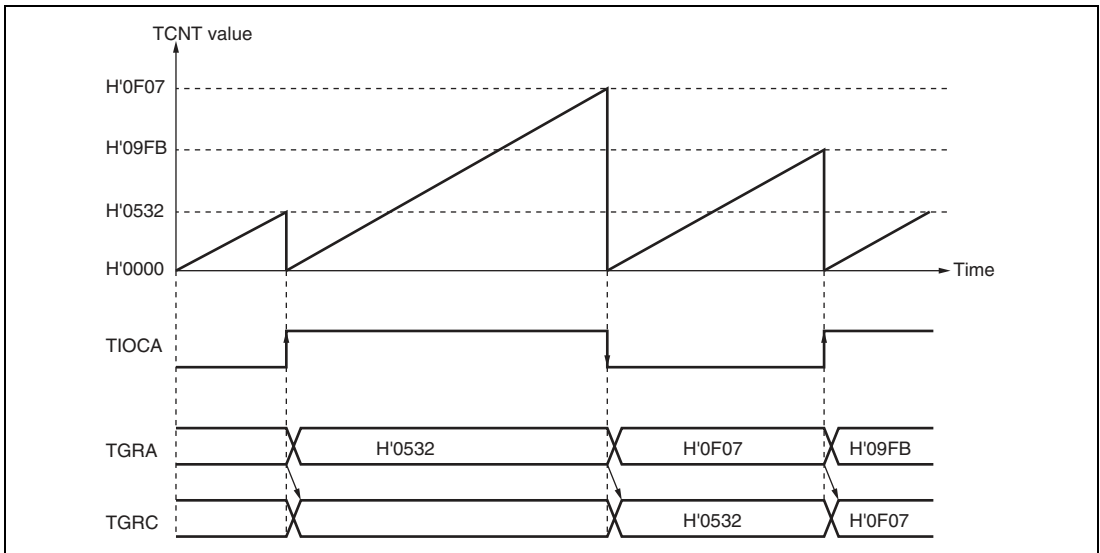


Figure 10.20 Example of Buffer Operation (2)

10.5.4 PWM Modes

In PWM mode, PWM waveforms are output from the output pins. 0, 1, or toggle output can be selected as the output level in response to compare match of each TGR. Settings of TGR registers can output a PWM waveform in the range of 0 % to 100 % duty. Designating TGR compare match as the counter clearing source enables the period to be set in that register. All channels can be designated for PWM mode independently. Synchronous operation is also possible. There are two PWM modes, as described below.

- PWM mode 1

PWM output is generated from the TIOCA and TIOCC pins by pairing TGRA with TGRB and TGRC with TGRD. The output specified by bits IOA3 to IOA0 and IOC3 to IOC0 in TIOR is output from the TIOCA and TIOCC pins at compare matches A and C, and the output specified by bits IOB3 to IOB0 and IOD3 to IOD0 in TIOR is output at compare matches B and D. The initial output value is the value set in TGRA or TGRC. If the set values of paired TGRs are identical, the output value does not change when a compare match occurs. In PWM mode 1, a maximum 4-phase PWM output is possible.

- PWM mode 2

PWM output is generated using one TGR as the cycle register and the others as duty registers. The output specified in TIOR is performed by means of compare matches. Upon counter clearing by a synchronization register compare match, the output value of each pin is the initial value set in TIOR. If the set values of the cycle and duty registers are identical, the output value does not change when a compare match occurs. In PWM mode 2, a maximum 7-phase PWM output is possible by combined use with synchronous operation. The correspondence between PWM output pins and registers is shown in table 10.18.

Table 10.18 PWM Output Registers and Output Pins

| Channel | Registers | Output Pins | |
|---------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| | | PWM Mode 1 | PWM Mode 2 |
| 0 | TGRA_0 | TIOCA0 | TIOCA0 |
| | TGRB_0 | | TIOCB0 |
| | TGRC_0 | TIOCC0 | TIOCC0 |
| | TGRD_0 | | TIOCD0 |
| 1 | TGRA_1 | TIOCA1 | TIOCA1 |
| | TGRB_1 | | TIOCB1 |
| 2 | TGRA_2 | TIOCA2 | TIOCA2 |
| | TGRB_2 | | TIOCB2 |

Note: In PWM mode 2, PWM output is not possible for the TGR register in which the period is set.

Example of PWM Mode Setting Procedure: Figure 10.21 shows an example of the PWM mode setting procedure.

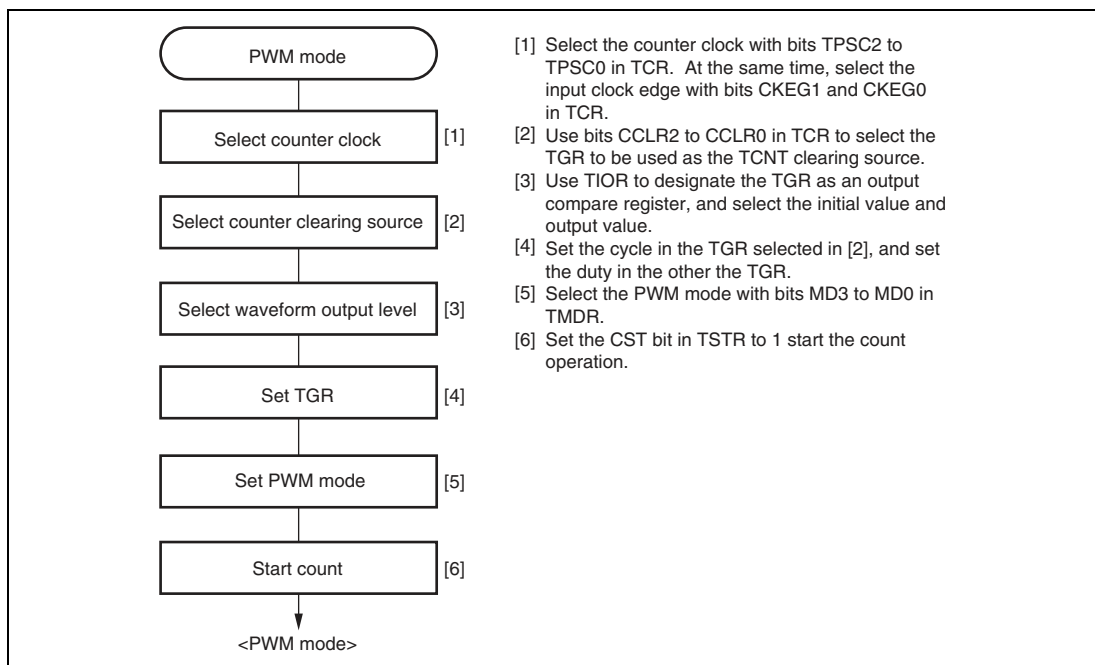


Figure 10.21 Example of PWM Mode Setting Procedure

Examples of PWM Mode Operation: Figure 10.22 shows an example of PWM mode 1 operation.

In this example, TGRA compare match is set as the TCNT clearing source, 0 is set for the TGRA initial output value and output value, and 1 is set as the TGRB output value. In this case, the value set in TGRA is used as the period, and the values set in TGRB registers as the duty.

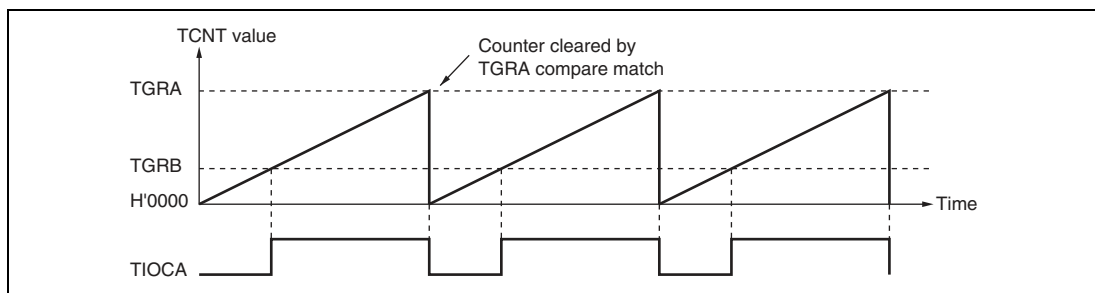


Figure 10.22 Example of PWM Mode Operation (1)

Figure 10.23 shows an example of PWM mode 2 operation. In this example, synchronous operation is designated for channels 0 and 1, TGRB_1 compare match is set as the TCNT clearing source, and 0 is set for the initial output value and 1 for the output value of the other TGR registers (TGRA_0 to TGRD_0, TGRA_1), to output a 5-phase PWM waveform. In this case, the value set in TGRB_1 is used as the cycle, and the values set in the other TGRs as the duty.

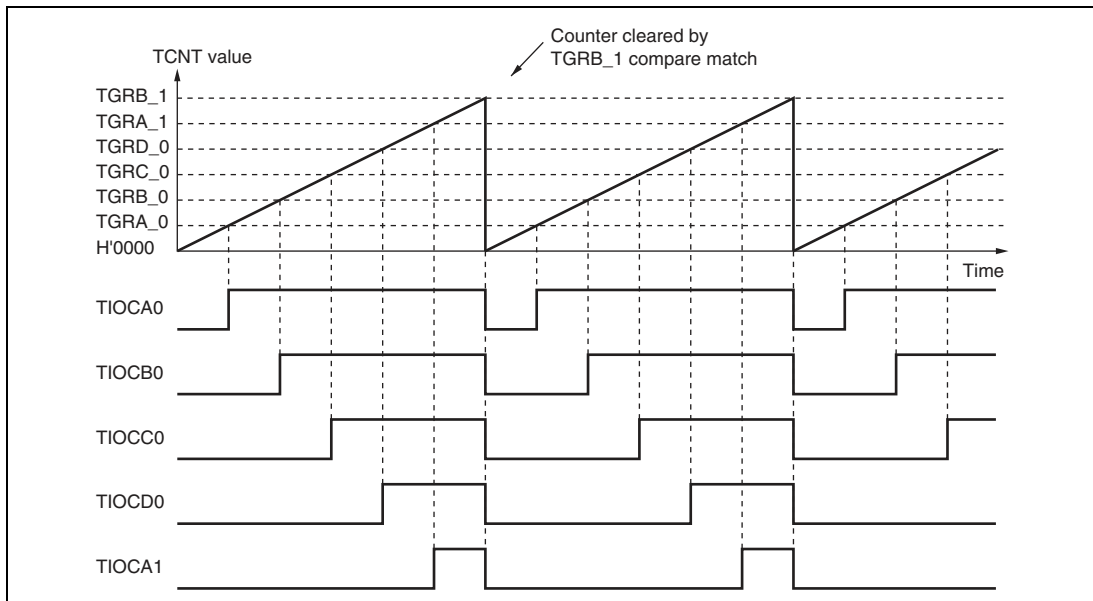


Figure 10.23 Example of PWM Mode Operation (2)

Figure 10.24 shows examples of PWM waveform output with 0% duty and 100% duty in PWM mode.

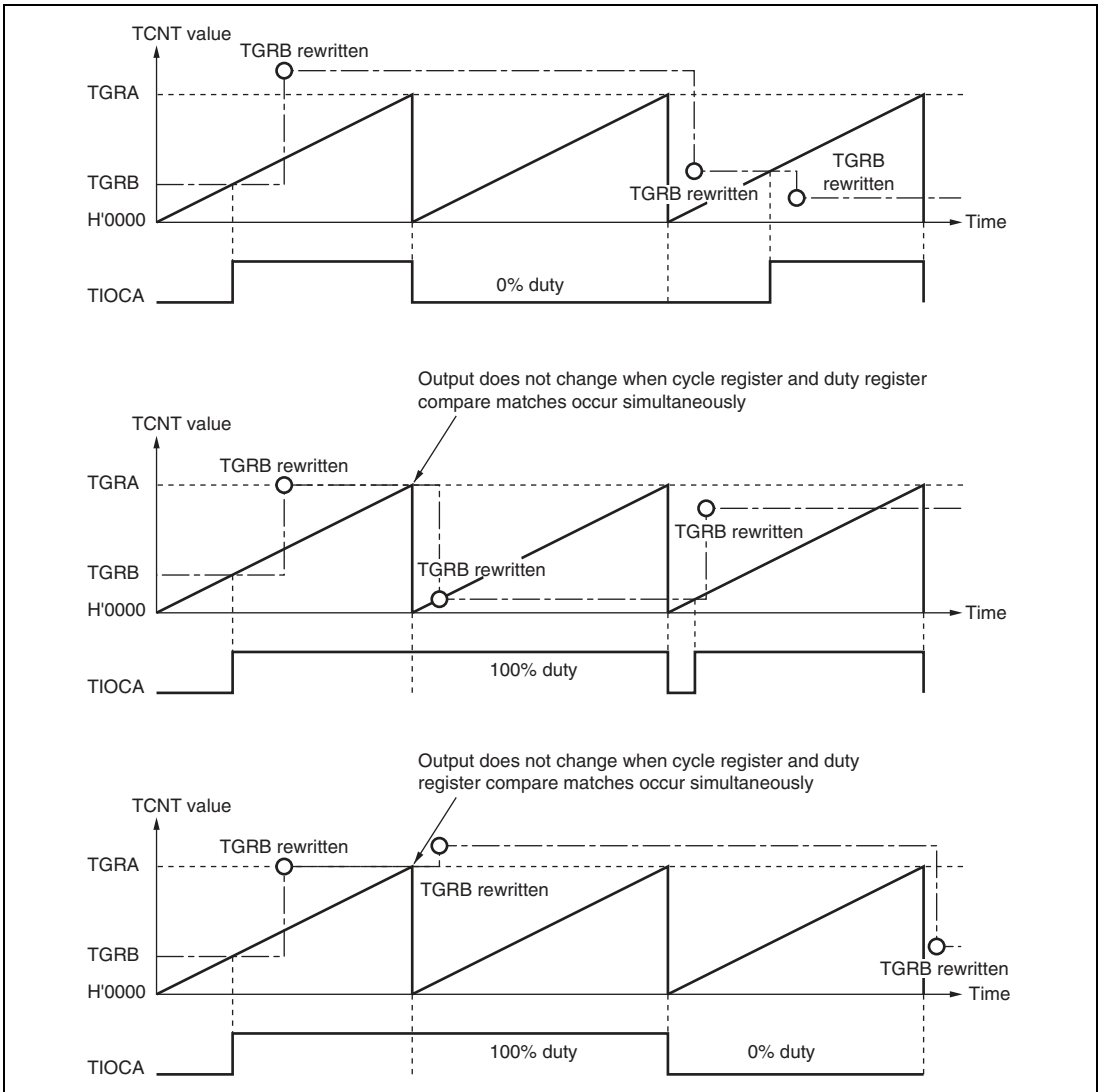


Figure 10.24 Example of PWM Mode Operation (3)

10.5.5 Phase Counting Mode

In phase counting mode, the phase difference between two external clock inputs is detected and TCNT is incremented/decremented accordingly. This mode can be set for channels 1 and 2. When phase counting mode is set, an external clock is selected as the counter input clock and TCNT operates as an up/down-counter regardless of the setting of bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 and bits CKEG1 and CKEG0 in TCR. However, the functions of bits CCLR1 and CCLR0 in TCR, and of TIOR, TIER, and TGR are valid, and input capture/compare match and interrupt functions can be used. This can be used for two-phase encoder pulse input. When overflow occurs while TCNT is counting up, the TCFV flag in TSR is set; when underflow occurs while TCNT is counting down, the TCFU flag is set. The TCFD bit in TSR is the count direction flag. Reading the TCFD flag provides an indication of whether TCNT is counting up or down. Table 10.19 shows the correspondence between external clock pins and channels.

Table 10.19 Phase Counting Mode Clock Input Pins

| Channels | External Clock Pins | |
|--|---------------------|---------|
| | A-Phase | B-Phase |
| When channel 1 is set to phase counting mode | TCLKA | TCLKB |
| When channel 2 is set to phase counting mode | TCLKC | TCLKD |

Example of Phase Counting Mode Setting Procedure: Figure 10.25 shows an example of the phase counting mode setting procedure.

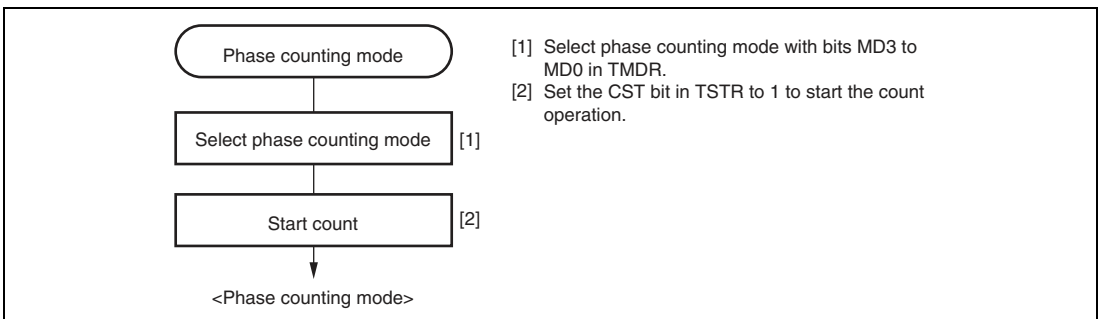


Figure 10.25 Example of Phase Counting Mode Setting Procedure

Examples of Phase Counting Mode Operation: In phase counting mode, TCNT counts up or down according to the phase difference between two external clocks. There are four modes, according to the count conditions.

1. Phase counting mode 1

Figure 10.26 shows an example of phase counting mode 1 operation, and table 10.20 summarizes the TCNT up/down-count conditions.

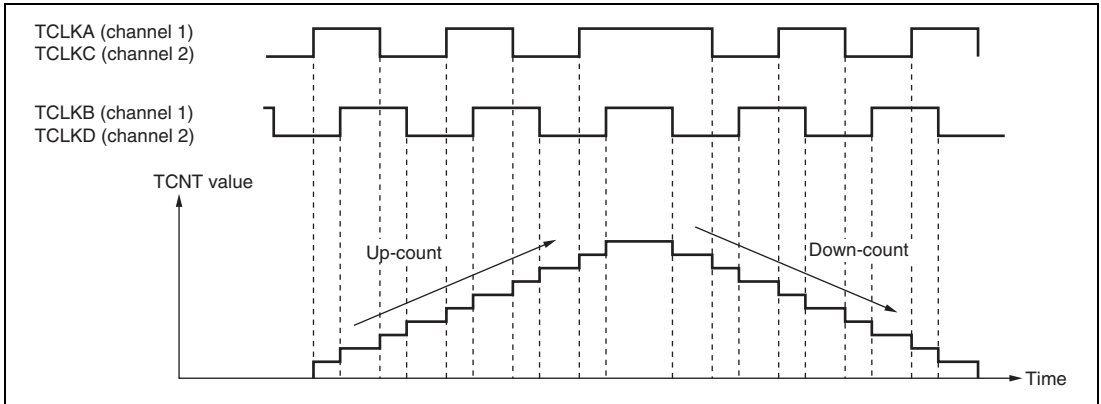


Figure 10.26 Example of Phase Counting Mode 1 Operation

Table 10.20 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 1

| TCLKA (Channel 1) TCLKC (Channel 2) | TCLKB (Channel 1) TCLKD (Channel 2) | Operation |
|--|--|------------|
| High level | | Up-count |
| Low level | | |
| | Low level | Down-count |
| | High level | |
| High level | | Down-count |
| Low level | | |
| | High level | Up-count |
| | Low level | |

Legend:

: Rising edge

: Falling edge

2. Phase counting mode 2

Figure 10.27 shows an example of phase counting mode 2 operation, and table 10.21 summarizes the TCNT up/down-count conditions.

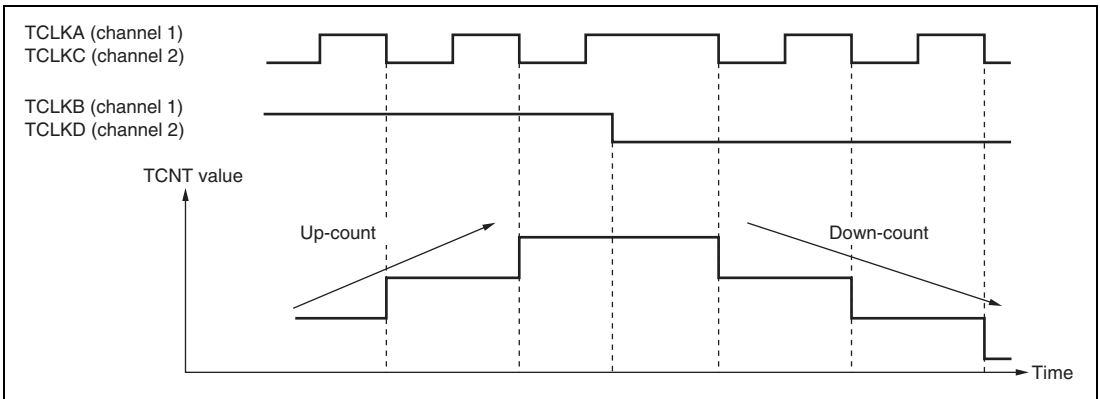


Figure 10.27 Example of Phase Counting Mode 2 Operation

Table 10.21 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 2

| TCLKA (Channel 1) TCLKC (Channel 2) | TCLKB (Channel 1) TCLKD (Channel 2) | Operation |
|--|--|------------|
| High level Low level | | Don't care |
| | Low level High level | Up-count |
| High level Low level | | Don't care |
| | High level Low level | Down-count |

Legend:

: Rising edge

: Falling edge

3. Phase counting mode 3

Figure 10.28 shows an example of phase counting mode 3 operation, and table 10.22 summarizes the TCNT up/down-count conditions.

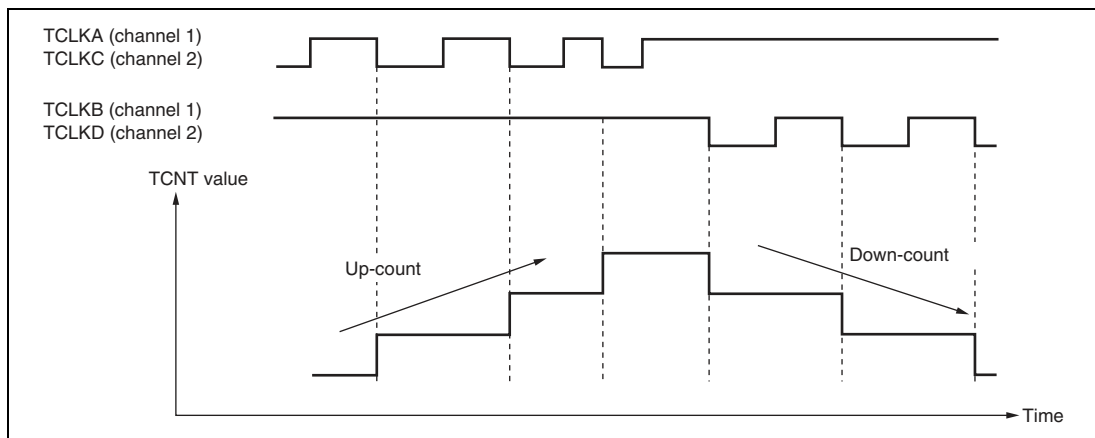


Figure 10.28 Example of Phase Counting Mode 3 Operation

Table 10.22 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 3

| TCLKA (Channel 1) TCLKC (Channel 2) | TCLKB (Channel 1) TCLKD (Channel 2) | Operation |
|--|--|------------|
| High level | \uparrow | Don't care |
| Low level | \downarrow | Don't care |
| \uparrow | Low level | Up-count |
| \downarrow | High level | Down-count |
| High level | \downarrow | Down-count |
| Low level | \uparrow | Don't care |
| \uparrow | High level | Up-count |
| \downarrow | Low level | Down-count |

Legend:

\uparrow : Rising edge

\downarrow : Falling edge

4. Phase counting mode 4

Figure 10.29 shows an example of phase counting mode 4 operation, and table 10.23 summarizes the TCNT up/down-count conditions.

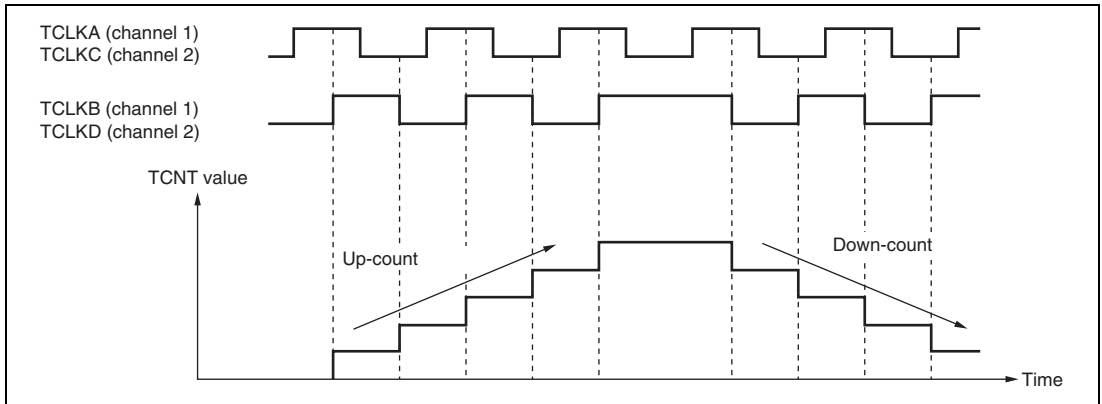


Figure 10.29 Example of Phase Counting Mode 4 Operation

Table 10.23 Up/Down-Count Conditions in Phase Counting Mode 4

| TCLKA (Channel 1) TCLKC (Channel 2) | TCLKB (Channel 1) TCLKD (Channel 2) | Operation |
|--|--|------------|
| High level | | Up-count |
| Low level | | Up-count |
| | Low level | Don't care |
| | High level | Don't care |
| High level | | Down-count |
| Low level | | Down-count |
| | High level | Don't care |
| | Low level | Don't care |

Legend:

: Rising edge

: Falling edge

Input Capture/Compare Match Interrupt: An interrupt is requested if the TGIE bit in TIER is set to 1 when the TGF flag in TSR is set to 1 by the occurrence of a TGR input capture/compare match on a particular channel. The interrupt request is cleared by clearing the TGF flag to 0. The TPU has 8 input capture/compare match interrupts, four each for channel 0, and two each for channels 1 and 2.

Overflow Interrupt: An interrupt is requested if the TCIEV bit in TIER is set to 1 when the TCFV flag in TSR is set to 1 by the occurrence of TCNT overflow on a channel. The interrupt request is cleared by clearing the TCFV flag to 0. The TPU has three overflow interrupts, one for each channel.

Underflow Interrupt: An interrupt is requested if the TCIEU bit in TIER is set to 1 when the TCFU flag in TSR is set to 1 by the occurrence of TCNT underflow on a channel. The interrupt request is cleared by clearing the TCFU flag to 0. The TPU has two underflow interrupts, one each for channels 1 and 2.

10.6.2 DTC Activation

The DTC can be activated by the TGR input capture/compare match interrupt for a channel. For details, see section 8, Data Transfer Controller (DTC). A total of 8 TPU input capture/compare match interrupts can be used as DTC activation sources, four each for channel 0, and two each for channels 1 and 2.

10.6.3 DMAC Activation

The DMAC can be activated by the TGRA input capture/compare match interrupt for a channel. For details, see section 7, DMA Controller (DMAC). With the TPU, a total of three TGRA input capture/compare match interrupts can be used as DMAC activation sources, one for each channel.

10.6.4 A/D Converter Activation

The A/D converter can be activated by the TGRA input capture/compare match for a channel. If the TTGE bit in TIER is set to 1 when the TGFA flag in TSR is set to 1 by the occurrence of a TGRA input capture/compare match on a particular channel, a request to start A/D conversion is sent to the A/D converter. If the TPU conversion start trigger has been selected on the A/D converter side at this time, A/D conversion is started. In the TPU, a total of three TGRA input capture/compare match interrupts can be used as A/D converter conversion start sources, one for each channel.

10.7 Operation Timing

10.7.1 Input/Output Timing

TCNT Count Timing: Figure 10.30 shows TCNT count timing in internal clock operation, and figure 10.31 shows TCNT count timing in external clock operation.

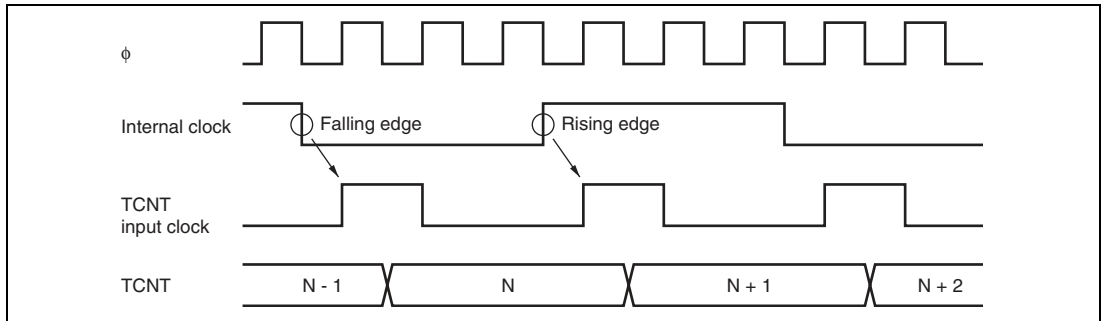


Figure 10.30 Count Timing in Internal Clock Operation

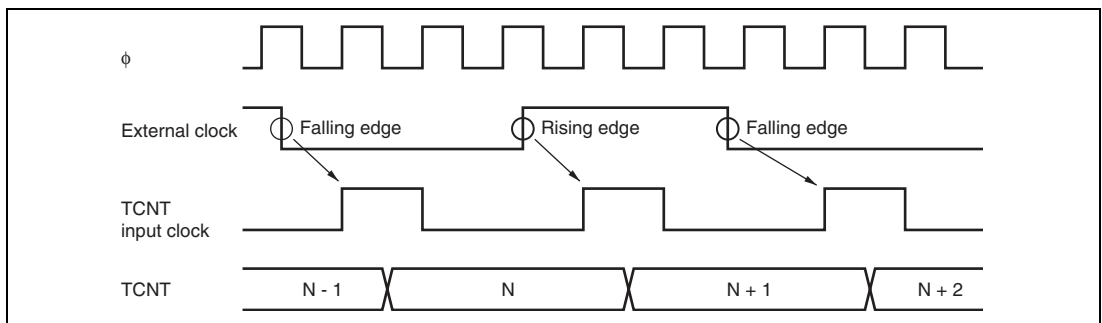


Figure 10.31 Count Timing in External Clock Operation

Output Compare Output Timing: A compare match signal is generated in the final state in which TCNT and TGR match (the point at which the count value matched by TCNT is updated). When a compare match signal is generated, the output value set in TIOR is output at the output compare output pin. After a match between TCNT and TGR, the compare match signal is not generated until the TCNT input clock is generated. Figure 10.32 shows output compare output timing.

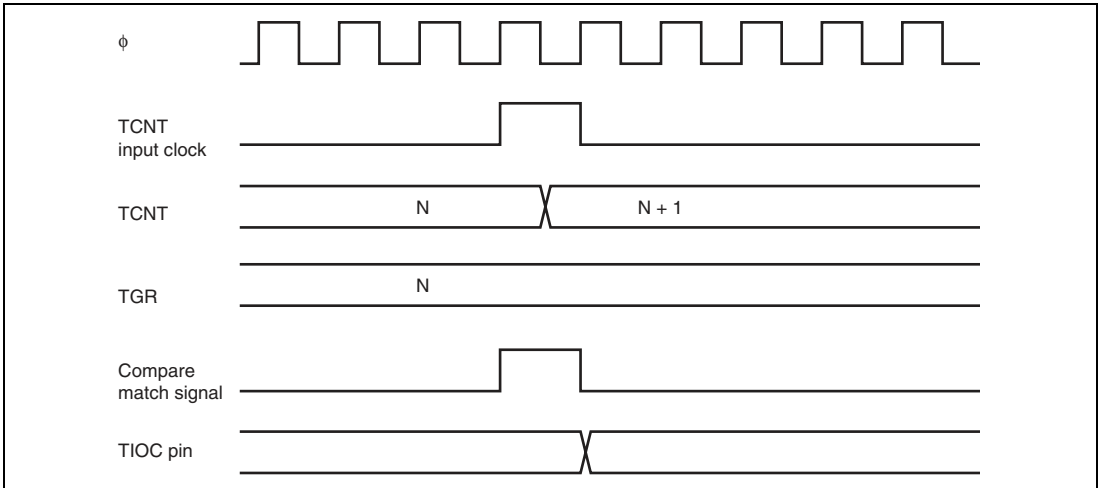


Figure 10.32 Output Compare Output Timing

Input Capture Signal Timing: Figure 10.33 shows input capture signal timing.

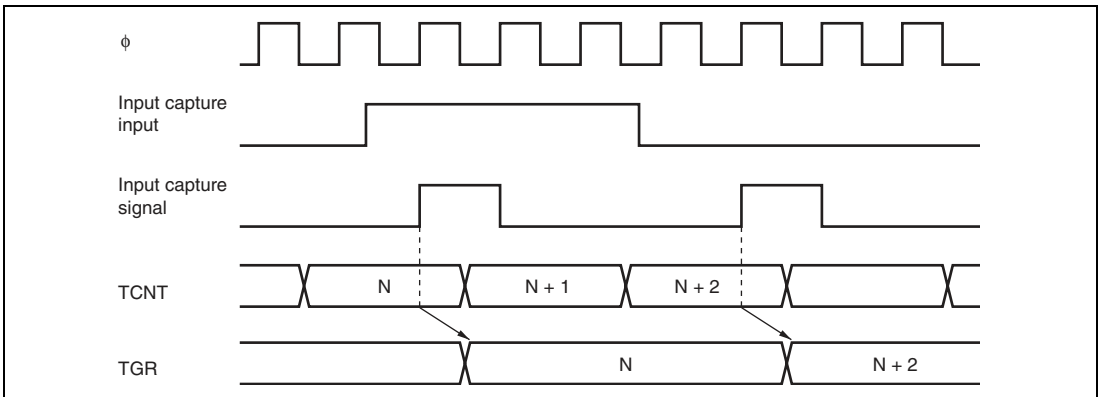


Figure 10.33 Input Capture Input Signal Timing

Timing for Counter Clearing by Compare Match/Input Capture: Figure 10.34 shows the timing when counter clearing by compare match occurrence is specified, and figure 10.35 shows the timing when counter clearing by input capture occurrence is specified.

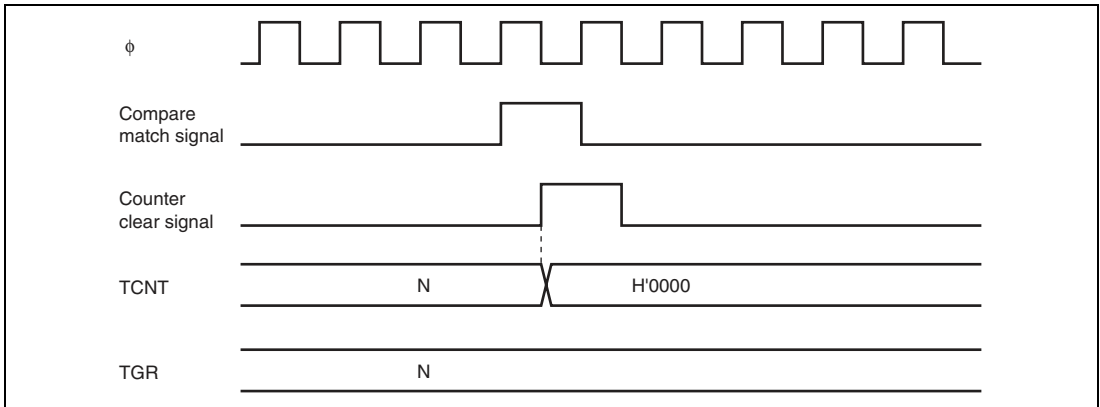


Figure 10.34 Counter Clear Timing (Compare Match)

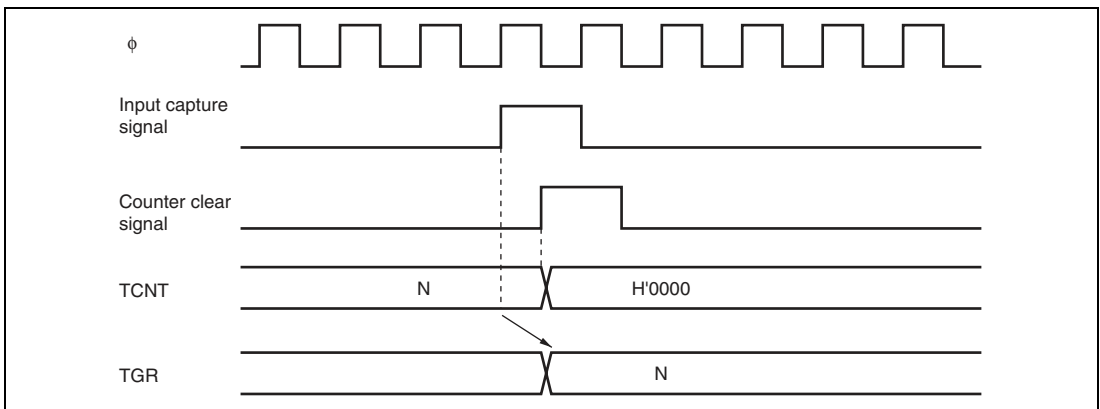


Figure 10.35 Counter Clear Timing (Input Capture)

Buffer Operation Timing: Figures 10.36 and 10.37 show the timing in buffer operation.

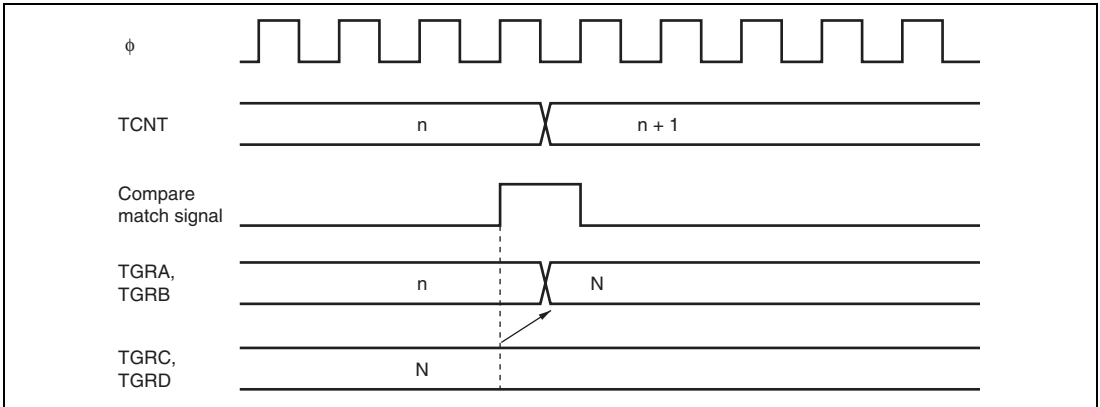


Figure 10.36 Buffer Operation Timing (Compare Match)

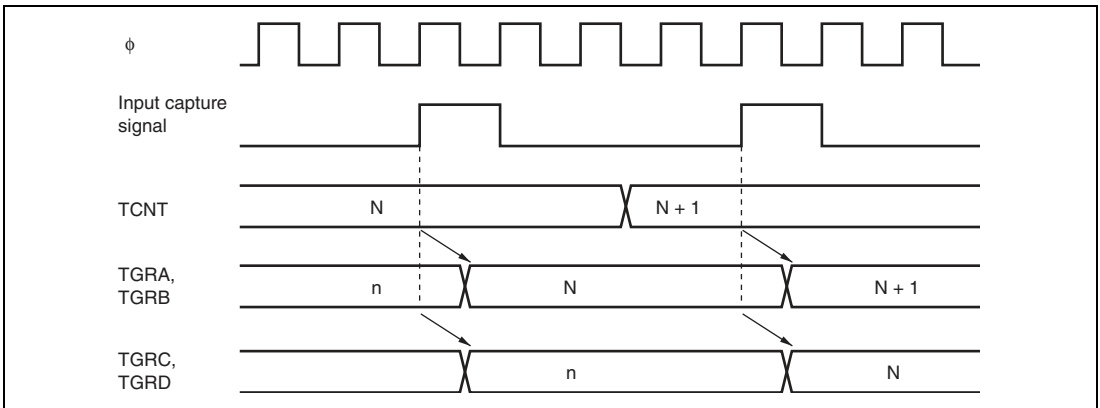


Figure 10.37 Buffer Operation Timing (Input Capture)

10.7.2 Interrupt Signal Timing

TGF Flag Setting Timing in Case of Compare Match: Figure 10.38 shows the timing for setting of the TGF flag in TSR by compare match occurrence, and TGI interrupt request signal timing.

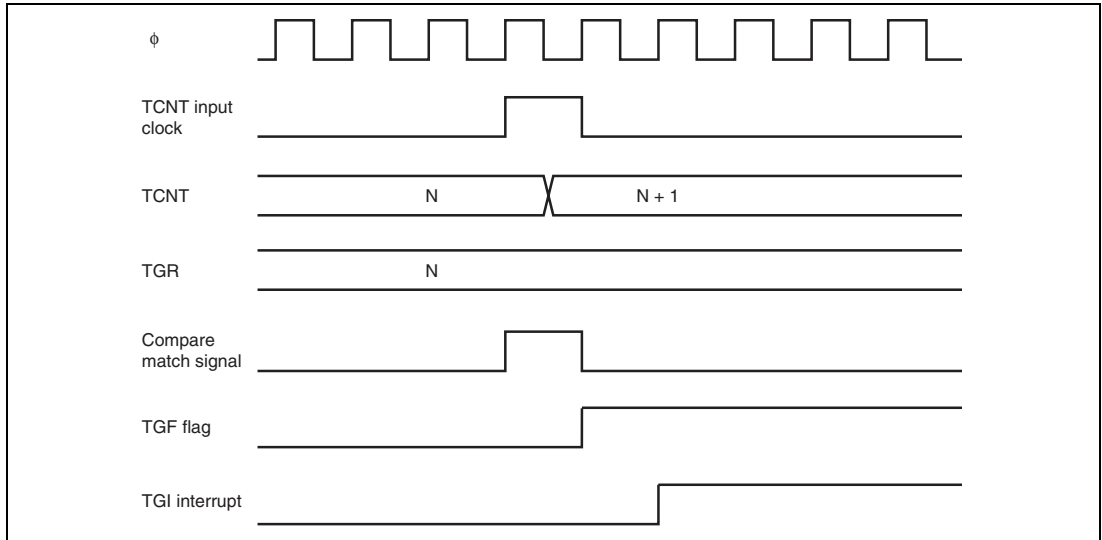


Figure 10.38 TGI Interrupt Timing (Compare Match)

TGF Flag Setting Timing in Case of Input Capture: Figure 10.39 shows the timing for setting of the TGF flag in TSR by input capture occurrence, and TGI interrupt request signal timing.

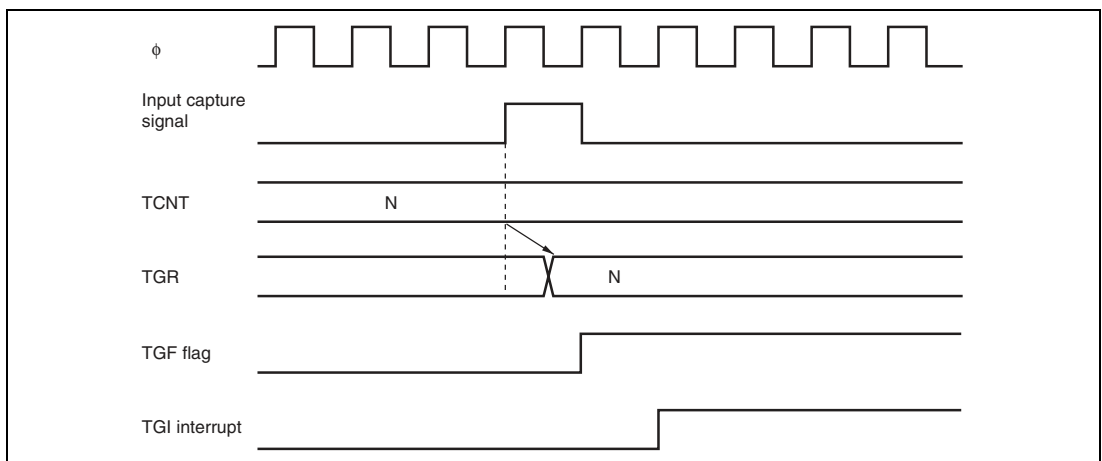


Figure 10.39 TGI Interrupt Timing (Input Capture)

TCFV Flag/TCFU Flag Setting Timing: Figure 10.40 shows the timing for setting of the TCFV flag in TSR by overflow occurrence, and TCIV interrupt request signal timing. Figure 10.41 shows the timing for setting of the TCFU flag in TSR by underflow occurrence, and TCIU interrupt request signal timing.

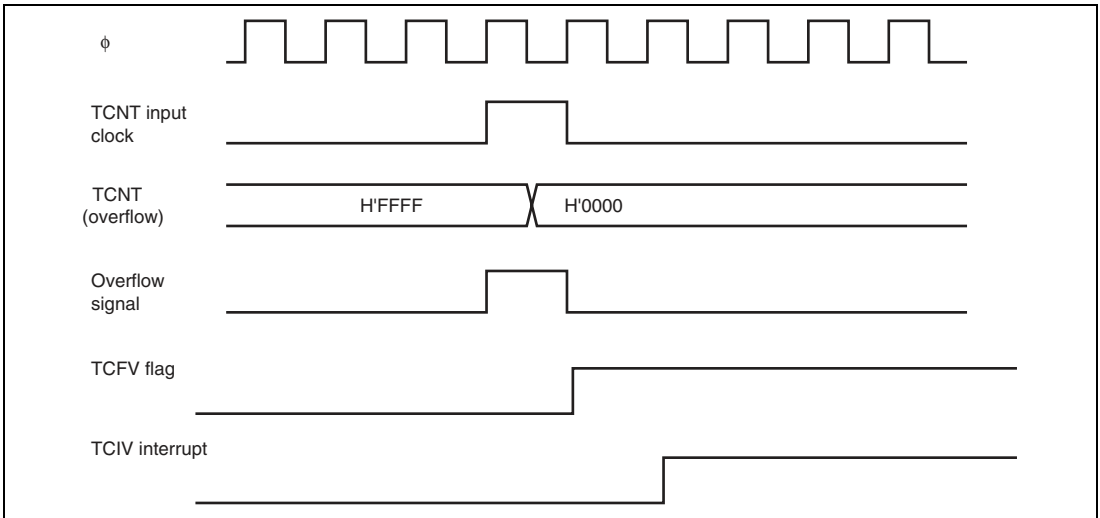


Figure 10.40 TCIV Interrupt Setting Timing

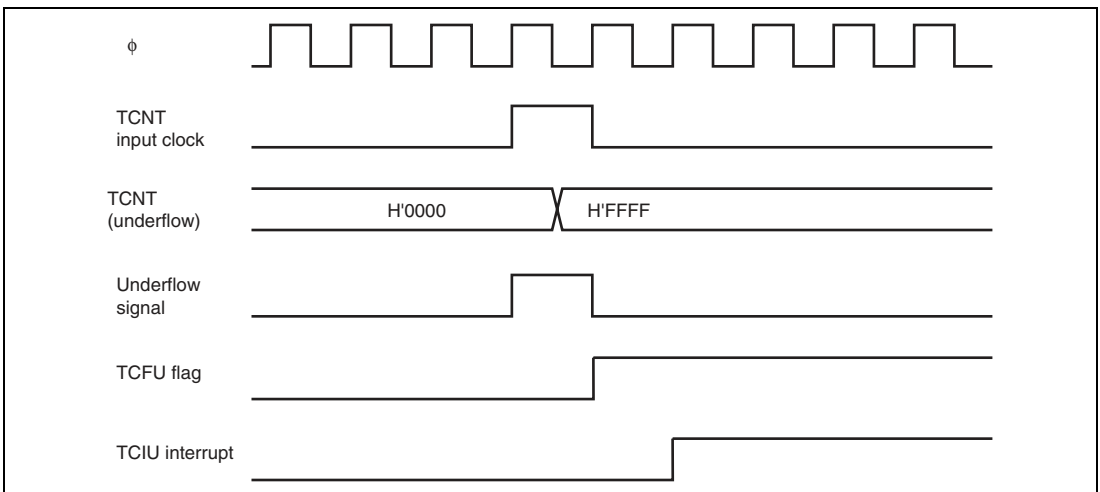


Figure 10.41 TCIU Interrupt Setting Timing

Status Flag Clearing Timing: After a status flag is read as 1 by the CPU, it is cleared by writing 0 to it. When the DTC or DMAC is activated, the flag is cleared automatically. Figure 10.42 shows the timing for status flag clearing by the CPU, and figure 10.43 shows the timing for status flag clearing by the DTC or DMAC.

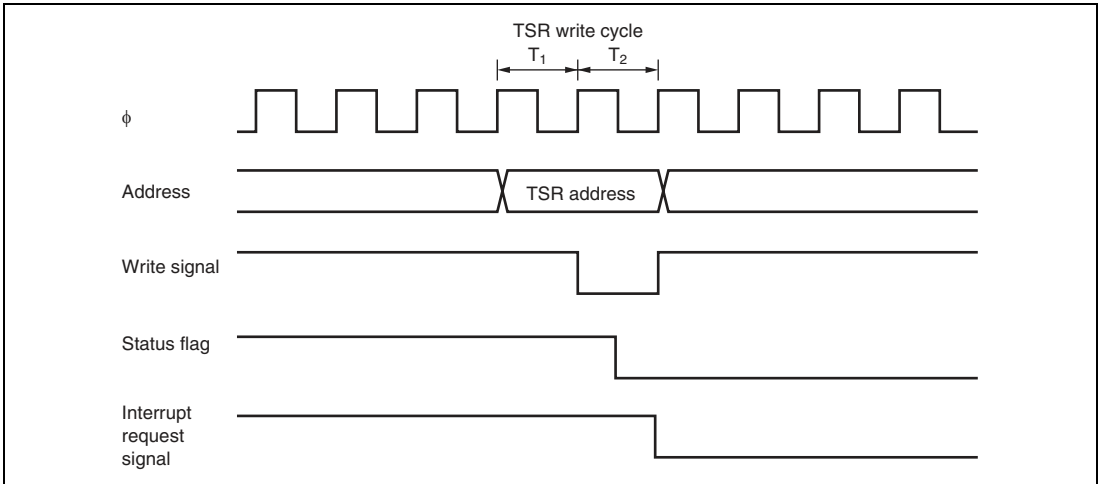


Figure 10.42 Timing for Status Flag Clearing by CPU

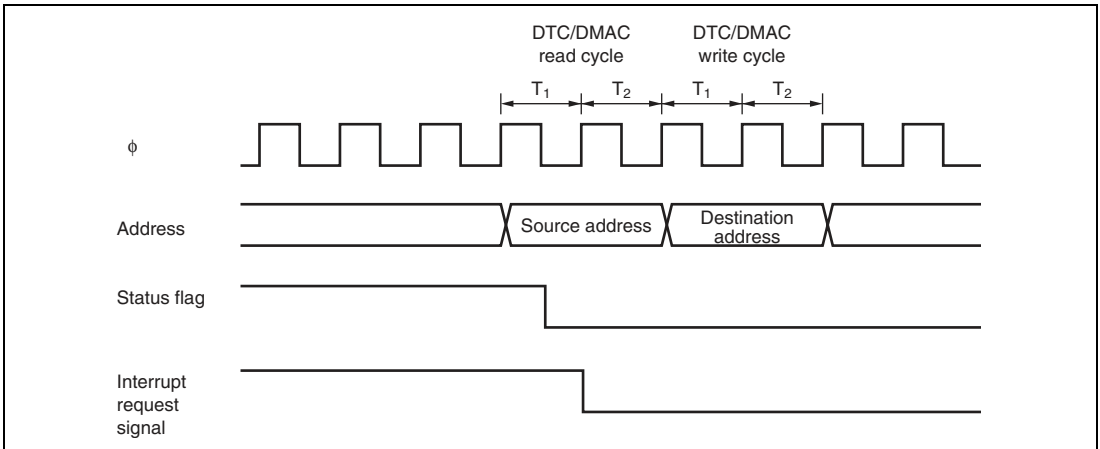


Figure 10.43 Timing for Status Flag Clearing by DTC or DMAC Activation

10.8 Usage Notes

Input Clock Restrictions: The input clock pulse width must be at least 1.5 states in the case of single-edge detection, and at least 2.5 states in the case of both-edge detection. The TPU will not operate properly with a narrower pulse width. In phase counting mode, the phase difference and overlap between the two input clocks must be at least 1.5 states, and the pulse width must be at least 2.5 states. Figure 10.44 shows the input clock conditions in phase counting mode.

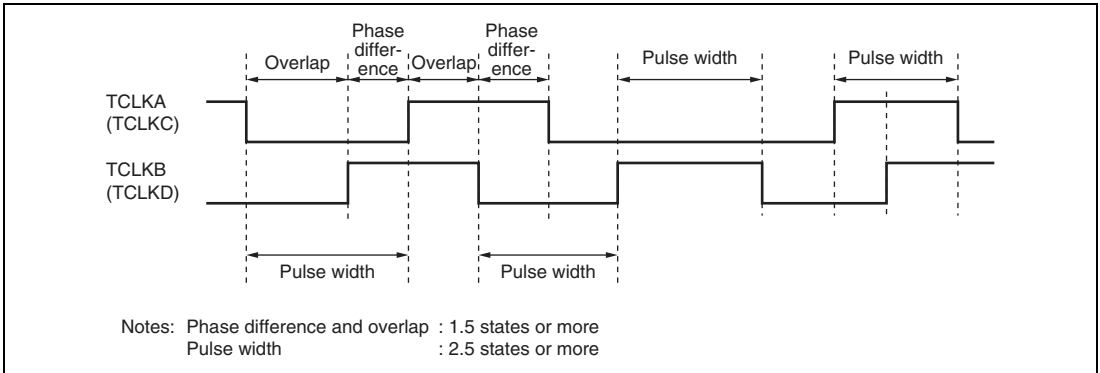


Figure 10.44 Phase Difference, Overlap, and Pulse Width in Phase Counting Mode

Caution on Period Setting: When counter clearing by compare match is set, TCNT is cleared in the final state in which it matches the TGR value (the point at which the count value matched by TCNT is updated). Consequently, the actual counter frequency is given by the following formula:

$$f = \frac{\phi}{(N + 1)}$$

Where f : Counter frequency
 ϕ : Operating frequency
 N : TGR set value

Contention between TCNT Write and Clear Operations: If the counter clear signal is generated in the T_2 state of a TCNT write cycle, TCNT clearing takes precedence and the TCNT write is not performed. Figure 10.45 shows the timing in this case.

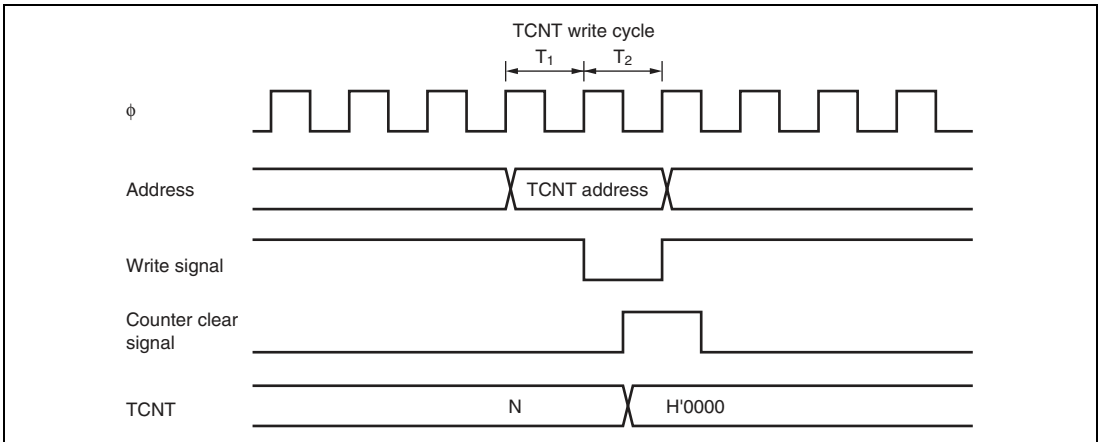


Figure 10.45 Contention between TCNT Write and Clear Operations

Contention between TCNT Write and Increment Operations: If incrementing occurs in the T_2 state of a TCNT write cycle, the TCNT write takes precedence and TCNT is not incremented. Figure 10.46 shows the timing in this case.

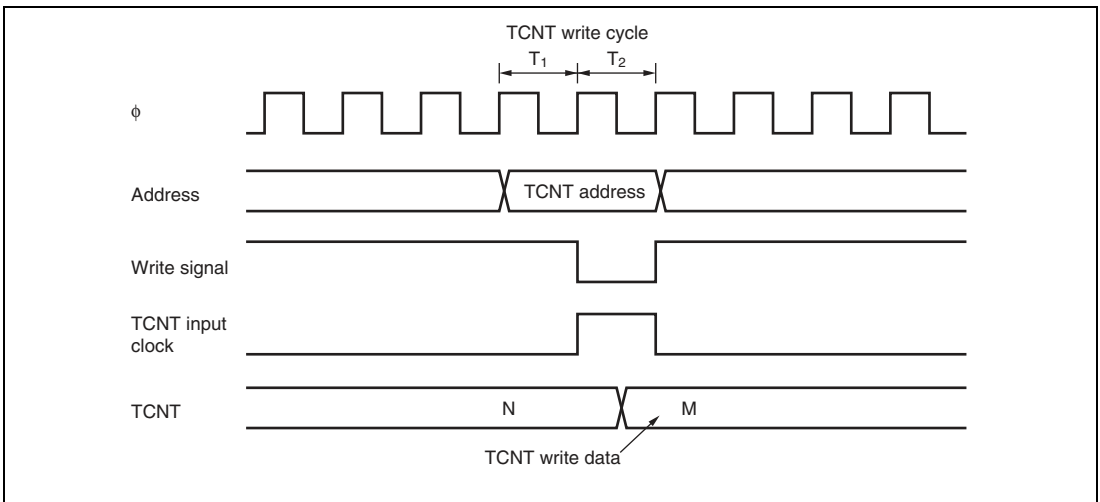


Figure 10.46 Contention between TCNT Write and Increment Operations

Contention between TGR Write and Compare Match: If a compare match occurs in the T_2 state of a TGR write cycle, the TGR write takes precedence and the compare match signal is inhibited. A compare match does not occur even if the same value as before is written. Figure 10.47 shows the timing in this case.

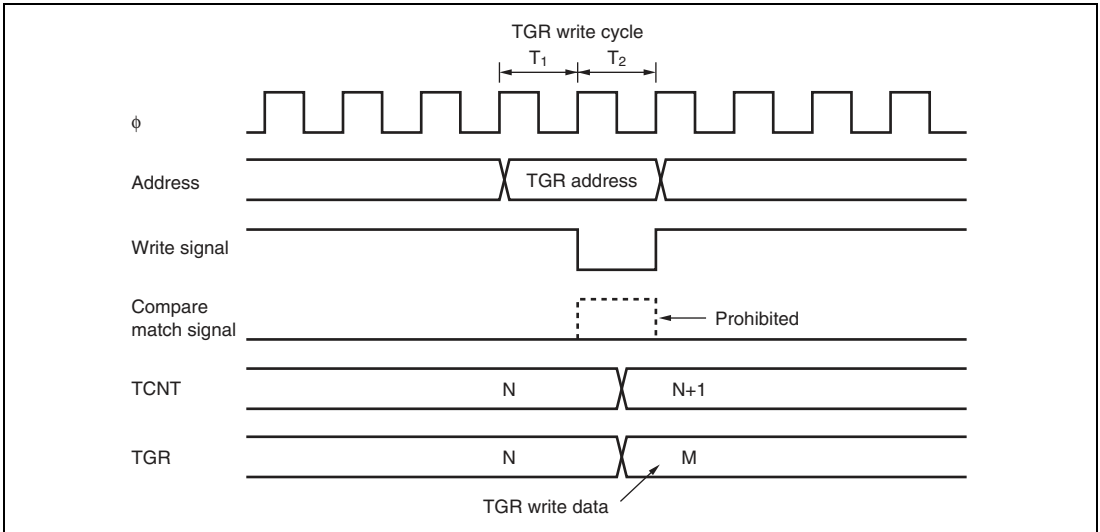


Figure 10.47 Contention between TGR Write and Compare Match

Contention between Buffer Register Write and Compare Match: If a compare match occurs in the T_2 state of a TGR write cycle, the data transferred to TGR by the buffer operation will be the data prior to the write. Figure 10.48 shows the timing in this case.

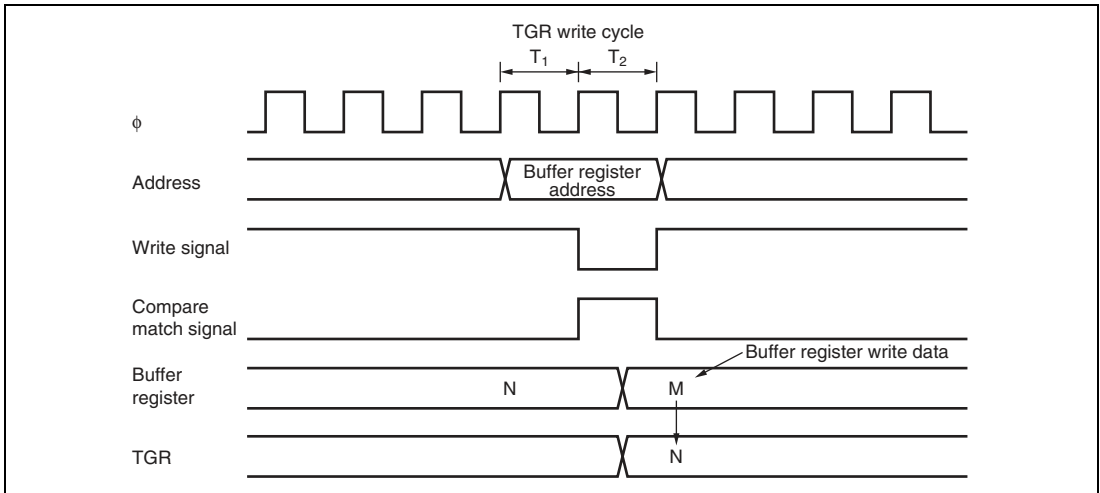


Figure 10.48 Contention between Buffer Register Write and Compare Match

Contention between TGR Read and Input Capture: If the input capture signal is generated in the T_1 state of a TGR read cycle, the data that is read will be the data after input capture transfer. Figure 10.49 shows the timing in this case.

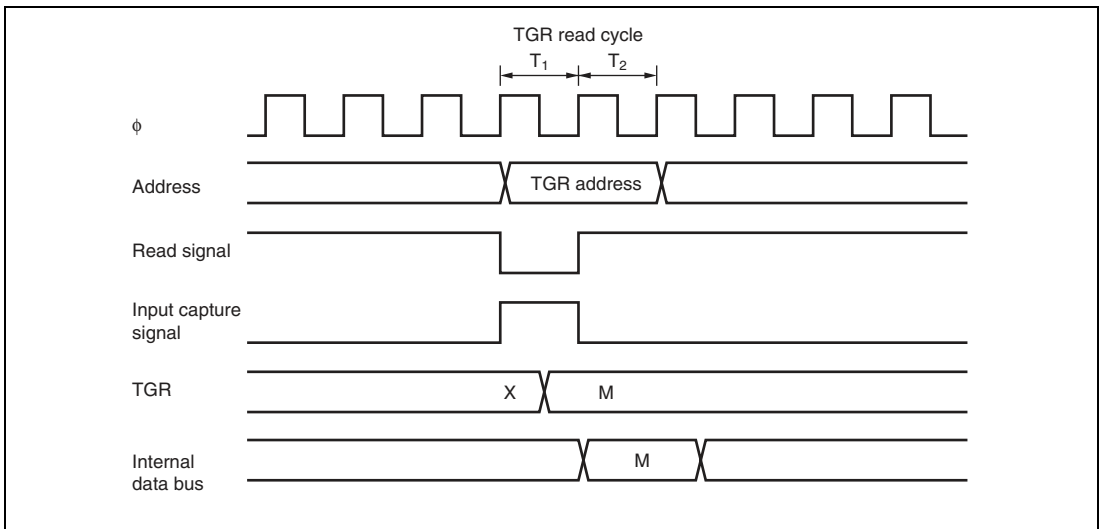


Figure 10.49 Contention between TGR Read and Input Capture

Contention between TGR Write and Input Capture: If the input capture signal is generated in the T_2 state of a TGR write cycle, the input capture operation takes precedence and the write to TGR is not performed. Figure 10.50 shows the timing in this case.

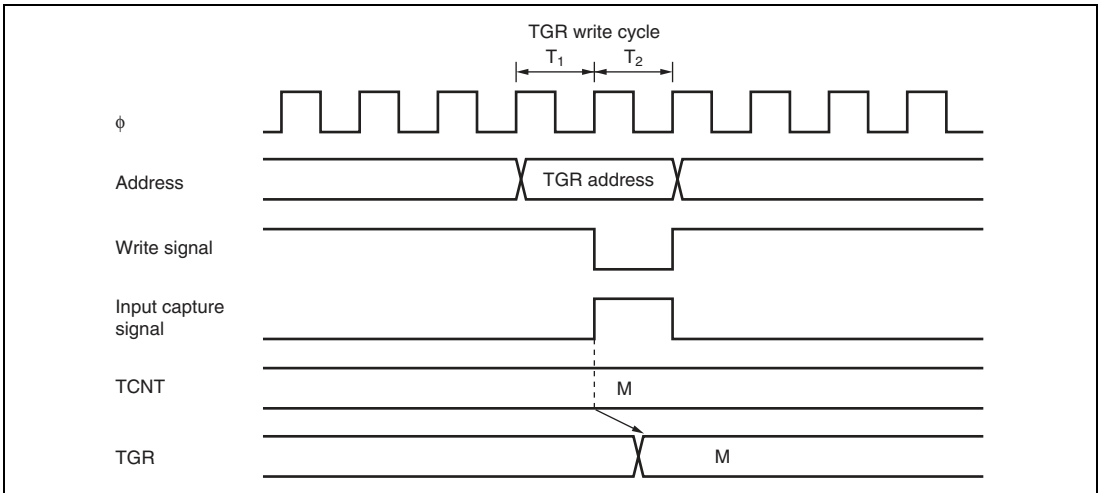


Figure 10.50 Contention between TGR Write and Input Capture

Contention between Buffer Register Write and Input Capture: If the input capture signal is generated in the T_2 state of a buffer register write cycle, the buffer operation takes precedence and the write to the buffer register is not performed. Figure 10.51 shows the timing in this case.

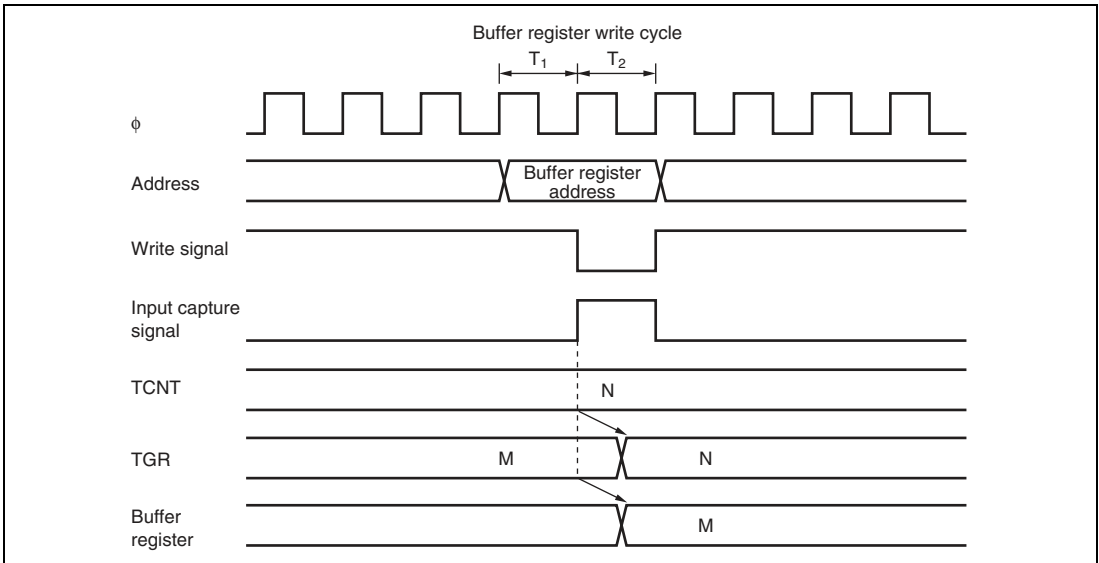


Figure 10.51 Contention between Buffer Register Write and Input Capture

Contention between Overflow/Underflow and Counter Clearing: If overflow/underflow and counter clearing occur simultaneously, the TCFV/TCFU flag in TSR is not set and TCNT clearing takes precedence. Figure 10.52 shows the operation timing when a TGR compare match is specified as the clearing source, and H'FFFF is set in TGR.

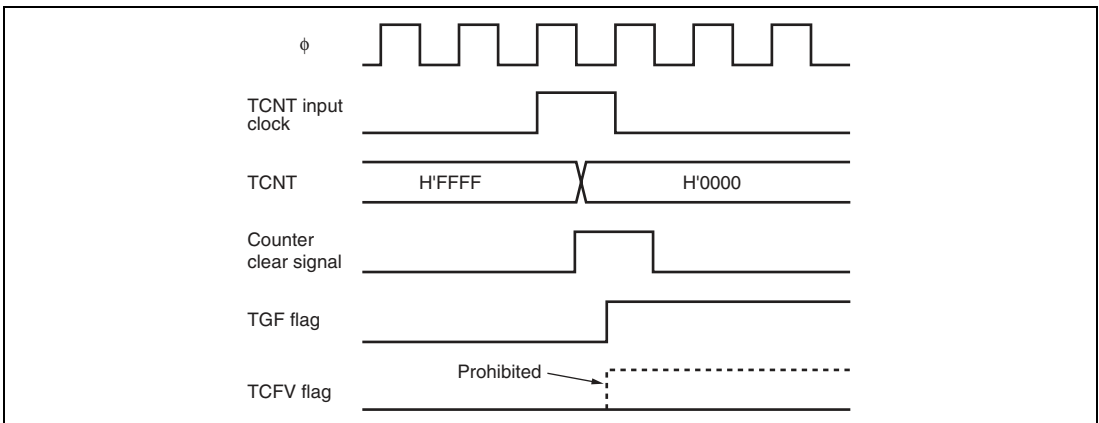


Figure 10.52 Contention between Overflow and Counter Clearing

Contention between TCNT Write and Overflow/Underflow: If there is an up-count or down-count in the T_2 state of a TCNT write cycle, and overflow/underflow occurs, the TCNT write takes precedence and the TCFV/TCFU flag in TSR is not set. Figure 10.53 shows the operation timing when there is contention between TCNT write and overflow.

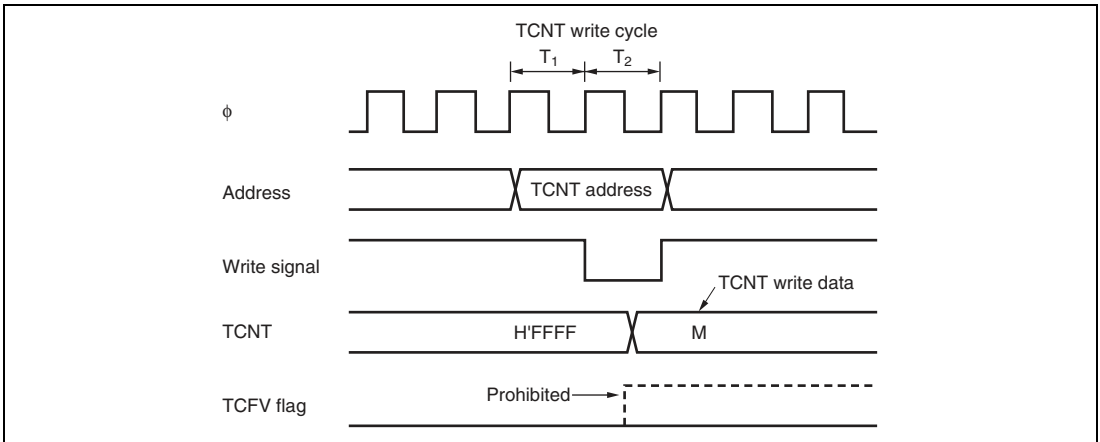


Figure 10.53 Contention between TCNT Write and Overflow

Multiplexing of I/O Pins: In this LSI, the TCLKA input pin is multiplexed with the TIOCC0 I/O pin, the TCLKB input pin with the TIOCD0 I/O pin, the TCLKC input pin with the TIOCB1 I/O pin, and the TCLKD input pin with the TIOCB2 I/O pin. When an external clock is input, compare match output should not be performed from a multiplexed pin.

Interrupts and Module Stop Mode: If module stop mode is entered when an interrupt has been requested, it will not be possible to clear the CPU interrupt source or the DTC activation source. Interrupts should therefore be disabled before entering module stop mode.

Module Stop Mode Setting: TPU operation can be disabled or enabled using the module stop control register. The initial setting is for TPU operation to be halted. Register access is enabled by clearing module stop mode. For details, refer to section 22, Power-Down Modes.

Section 11 8-Bit Timers (TMR)

This LIS includes an 8-bit timer module with two channels. Each channel has an 8-bit counter and two registers that are constantly compared with the TCNT value to detect compare match events.

The 8-bit timer module can thus be used for a variety of functions, including pulse output with an arbitrary duty cycle.

11.1 Features

The features of the 8-bit timer module are listed below.

- Selection of four clock sources
 - The counters can be driven by one of three internal clock signals ($\phi/8$, $\phi/64$, or $\phi/8192$) or an external clock input (enabling use as an external event counter).
 - Selection of three ways to clear the counters
 - The counters can be cleared on compare match A or B, or by an external reset signal.
 - Timer output control by a combination of two compare match signals
 - The timer output signal in each channel is controlled by a combination of two independent compare match signals, enabling the timer to generate output waveforms with an arbitrary duty cycle or PWM output.
 - Provision for cascading of two channels
 - Operation as a 16-bit timer is possible, using channel 0 (TMR_0) for the upper 8 bits and channel 1 (TMR_1) for the lower 8 bits (16-bit count mode).
 - Channel 1 (TMR_1) can be used to count channel 0 (TMR_0) compare matches (compare match count mode).
 - Three independent interrupts
 - Compare match A and B and overflow interrupts can be requested independently.
 - A/D converter conversion start trigger can be generated
 - Channel 0 compare match A signal can be used as an A/D converter conversion start trigger.
- Module stop mode can be set

Figure 11.1 shows a block diagram of the 8-bit timer module (TMR_0 and TMR_1).

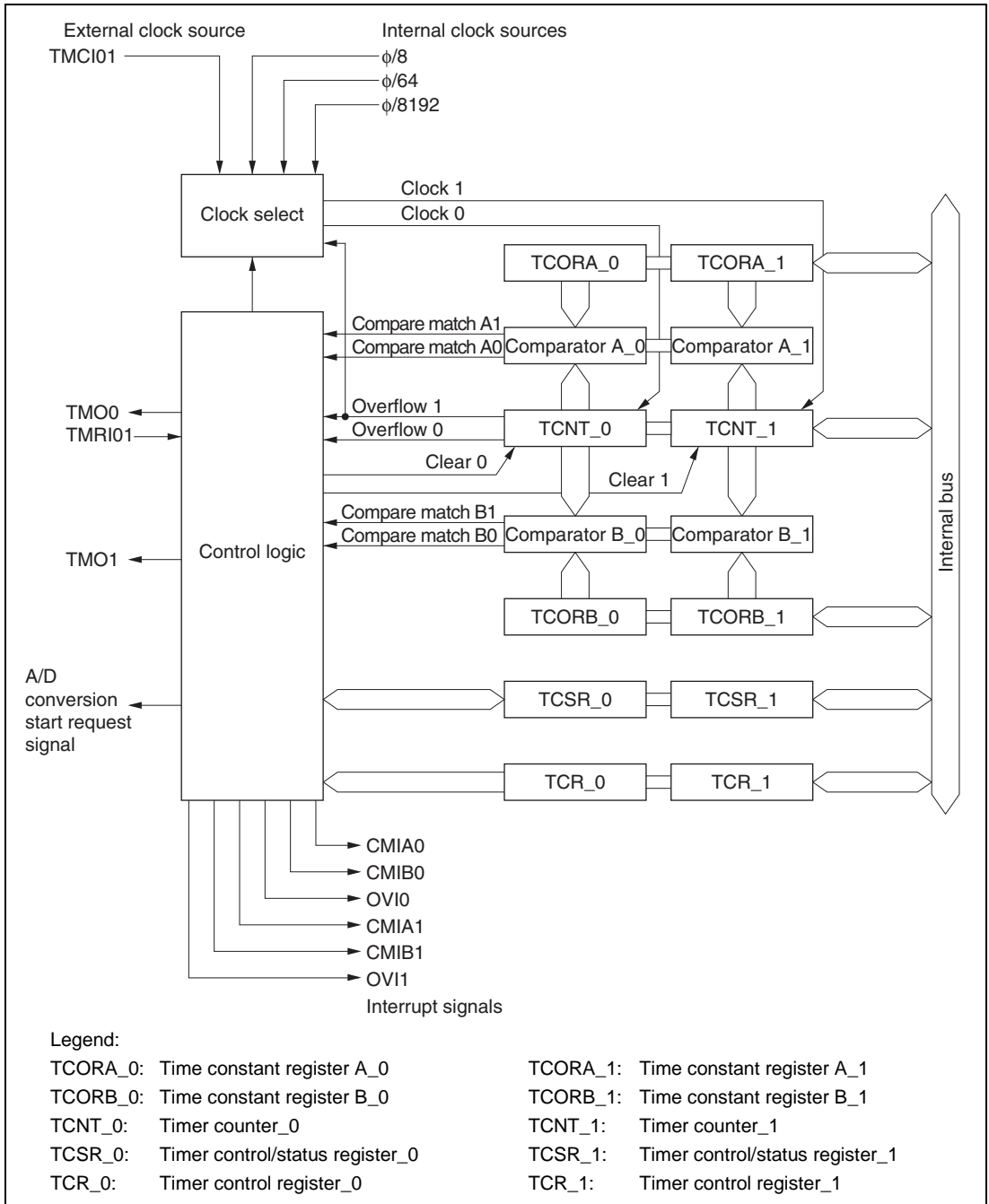


Figure 11.1 Block Diagram of 8-Bit Timer

11.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 11.1 summarizes the input and output pins of the TMR.

Table 11.1 Pin Configuration

| Channel | Name | Symbol | I/O | Function |
|---------|--------------------------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------|
| 0 | Timer output pin 0 | TMO0 | Output | Outputs at compare match |
| 1 | Timer output pin 1 | TMO1 | Output | Outputs at compare match |
| All | Timer clock input pin 01 | TMCI01 | Input | Inputs external clock for counter |
| | Timer reset input pin 01 | TMRI01 | Input | Inputs external reset to counter |

11.3 Register Descriptions

The TMR registers are listed below. For details on the module stop control register, refer to section 22.1.2, Module Stop Registers A to C (MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC).

- Timer counter (TCNT)
- Time constant register A (TCORA)
- Time constant register B (TCORB)
- Timer control register (TCR)
- Timer control/status register (TCSR)

11.3.1 Timer Counters (TCNT)

The TCNT registers are 8-bit up-counters. TCNT_0 and TCNT_1 comprise a single 16-bit register so they can be accessed together by a word transfer instruction. Bits CKS2 to CKS0 in TCR are used to select a clock. The TCNT counters can be cleared by an external reset input or by a compare match signal A or B. Which signal is to be used for clearing is selected by bits CCLR1 and CCLR0 in TCR. When a TCNT counter overflows from H'FF to H'00, OVFL in TCSR is set to 1. The TCNT counters are each initialized to H'00.

11.3.2 Time Constant Registers A (TCORA)

The TCORA_0 and TCORA_1 registers are 8-bit readable/writable registers. TCORA_0 and TCORA_1 comprise a single 16-bit register so they can be accessed together by a word transfer instruction. The value in TCORA is continually compared with the value in TCNT. When a match is detected, the corresponding CMFA flag in TCSR is set to 1. Note, however, that comparison is disabled during the T_2 state of a TCOR write cycle. The timer output (TMO) can be freely controlled by these compare match signals and the settings of bits OS1 and OS0 in TCSR. TCORA_0 and TCORA_1 are each initialized to H'FF.

11.3.3 Time Constant Registers B (TCORB)

The TCORB_0 registers are 8-bit readable/writable registers. TCORB_0 and TCORB_1 comprise a single 16-bit register so they can be accessed together by a word transfer instruction. TCORB is continually compared with the value in TCNT. When a match is detected, the corresponding CMFB flag in TCSR is set to 1. Note, however, that comparison is disabled during the T_2 state of a TCOR write cycle. The timer output can be freely controlled by these compare match signals and the settings of output select bits OS3 and OS2 in TCSR. TCORB_0 and TCORB_1 are each initialized to H'FF.

11.3.4 Time Control Registers (TCR)

The TCR registers select the clock source and the time at which TCNT is cleared, and enable interrupts.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | CMIEB | 0 | R/W | Compare Match Interrupt Enable B Selects whether CMFB interrupt requests (CMIB) are enabled or disabled when the CMFB flag in TCSR is set to 1. 0: CMFB interrupt requests (CMIB) are disabled 1: CMFB interrupt requests (CMIB) are enabled |
| 6 | CMIEA | 0 | R/W | Compare Match Interrupt Enable A Selects whether CMFA interrupt requests (CMIA) are enabled or disabled when the CMFA flag in TCSR is set to 1. 0: CMFA interrupt requests (CMIA) are disabled 1: CMFA interrupt requests (CMIA) are enabled |
| 5 | OVIE | 0 | R/W | Timer Overflow Interrupt Enable Selects whether OVF interrupt requests (OVI) are enabled or disabled when the OVF flag in TCSR is set to 1. 0: OVF interrupt requests (OVI) are disabled 1: OVF interrupt requests (OVI) are enabled |
| 4 | CCLR1 | 0 | R/W | Counter Clear 1 and 0 These bits select the method by which TCNT is cleared. 00: Clear is disabled 01: Clear by compare match A 10: Clear by compare match B 11: Clear by rising edge of external reset input |
| 3 | CCLR0 | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | CKS2 | 0 | R/W | Clock Select 2 to 0 |
| 1 | CKS1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the clock input to TCNT and count condition. See table 11.2. |
| 0 | CKS0 | 0 | R/W | |

Table 11.2 Clock Input to TCNT and Count Condition

| Channel | TCR | | | Description | |
|---------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--|--|
| | Bit 2 CKS2 | Bit 1 CKS1 | Bit 0 CKS0 | | |
| TMR_0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Clock input disabled | |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock, counted at falling edge of $\phi/8$ | |
| | | | 1 | 0 | Internal clock, counted at falling edge of $\phi/64$ |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock, counted at falling edge of $\phi/8192$ | |
| | | | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| TMR_1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Clock input disabled | |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock, counted at falling edge of $\phi/8$ | |
| | | | 1 | 0 | Internal clock, counted at falling edge of $\phi/64$ |
| | | | 1 | Internal clock, counted at falling edge of $\phi/8192$ | |
| | | | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| All | 1 | 0 | 1 | External clock, counted at rising edge | |
| | | | 1 | 0 | External clock, counted at falling edge |
| | | | 1 | 1 | External clock, counted at both rising and falling edges |

Note: * If the count input of TMR_0 is the TCNT_1 overflow signal and that of TMR_1 is the TCNT_0 compare match signal, no incrementing clock is generated. This setting is prohibited.

11.3.5 Timer Control/Status Registers (TCSR)

The TCSR registers display status flags, and control compare match output.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 7 | CMFB | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Compare Match Flag B</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set when TCNT matches TCORB <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cleared by reading CMFB when CMFB = 1, then writing 0 to CMFB When DTC is activated by CMIB interrupt, while DISEL bit is 0, and transfer counter value is not 0 |
| 6 | CMFA | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Compare Match Flag A</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set when TCNT matches TCORA <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cleared by reading CMFA when CMFA = 1, then writing 0 to CMFA When DTC is activated by CMIA interrupt, while DISEL bit is 0, and transfer counter value is not 0 |
| 5 | OVF | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Timer Overflow Flag</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set when TCNT overflows from H'FF to H'00 <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cleared by reading OVF when OVF = 1, then writing 0 to OVF |
| 4 | ADTE | 0 | R/W | <p>A/D Trigger Enable (only in channel 0)</p> <p>Selects enabling or disabling of A/D converter start requests by compare match A.</p> <p>This bit is reserved in channel 1. Always read as 1, and cannot be modified.</p> <p>0: A/D converter start requests by compare match A are disabled</p> <p>1: A/D converter start requests by compare match A are enabled</p> |
| 3 | OS3 | 0 | R/W | Output Select 3 and 2 |
| 2 | OS2 | 0 | R/W | <p>These bits select a method of TMO pin output when compare match B of TCOR and TCNT occurs.</p> <p>00: No change when compare match B occurs</p> <p>01: 0 is output when compare match B occurs</p> <p>10: 1 is output when compare match B occurs</p> <p>11: Output is inverted when compare match B occurs (toggle output)</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 1 | OS1 | 0 | R/W | Output Select 1 and 0 |
| 0 | OS0 | 0 | R/W | These bits select a method of TMO pin output when compare match A of TCOR and TCNT occurs. 00: No change when compare match A occurs 01: 0 is output when compare match A occurs 10: 1 is output when compare match A occurs 11: Output is inverted when compare match A occurs (toggle output) |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear these flags.

11.4 Operation

11.4.1 Pulse Output

Figure 11.2 shows an example that the 8-bit timer is used to generate a pulse output with a selected duty cycle. The control bits are set as follows:

1. In TCR, bit CCLR1 is cleared to 0 and bit CCLR0 is set to 1 so that the timer counter is cleared at a TCORA compare match.
2. In TCSR, bits OS3 to OS0 are set to B'0110, causing the output to change to 1 at a TCORA compare match and to 0 at a TCORB compare match.

With these settings, the 8-bit timer provides output of pulses at a rate determined by TCORA with a pulse width determined by TCORB. No software intervention is required.

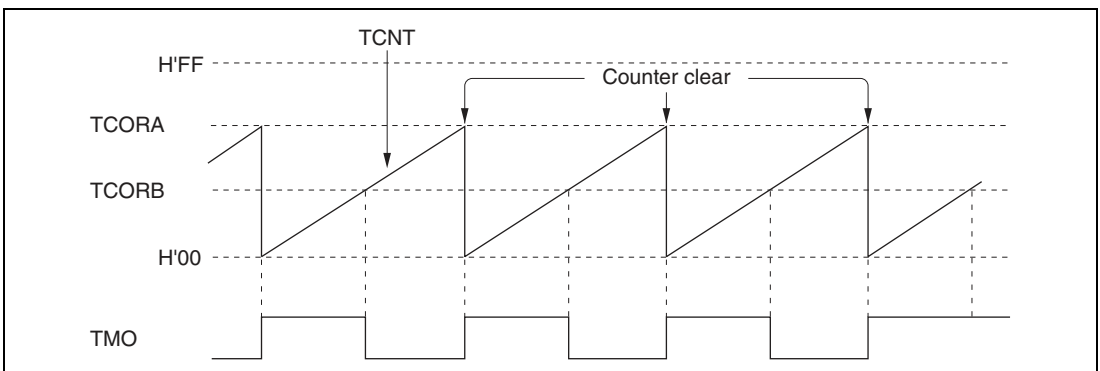


Figure 11.2 Example of Pulse Output

11.5 Operation Timing

11.5.1 TCNT Incrementation Timing

Figure 11.3 shows the count timing for internal clock input. Figure 11.4 shows the count timing for external clock signal. Note that the external clock pulse width must be at least 1.5 states for incrementation at a single edge, and at least 2.5 states for incrementation at both edges. The counter will not increment correctly if the pulse width is less than these values.

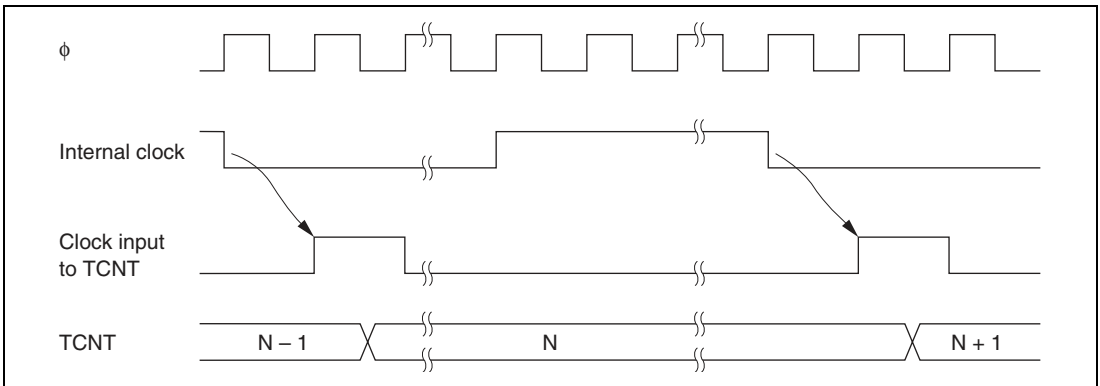


Figure 11.3 Count Timing for Internal Clock Input

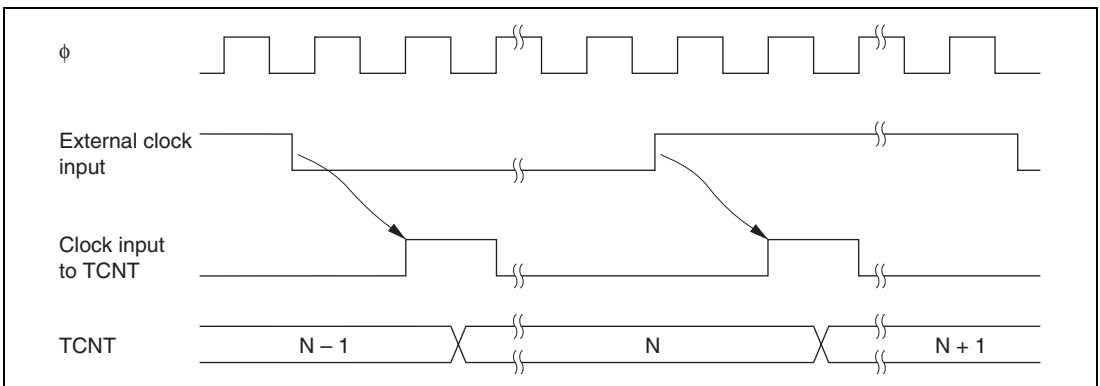


Figure 11.4 Count Timing for External Clock Input

11.5.2 Setting of Compare Match Flags CMFA and CMFB

The CMFA and CMFB flags in TCSR are set to 1 by a compare match signal generated when the TCOR and TCNT values match. The compare match signal is generated at the last state in which the match is true, just before the timer counter is updated. Therefore, when TCOR and TCNT match, the compare match signal is not generated until the next incrementation clock input. Figure 11.5 shows this timing.

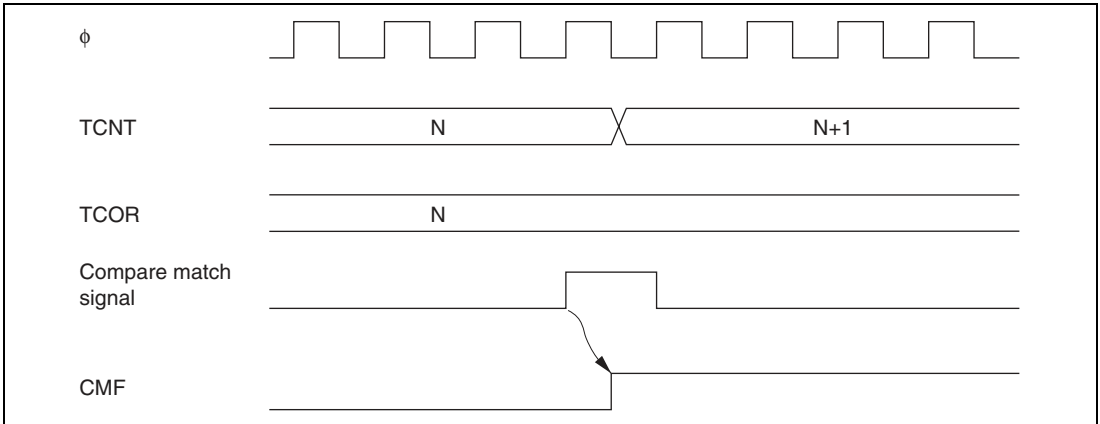


Figure 11.5 Timing of CMF Setting

11.5.3 Timer Output Timing

When compare match A or B occurs, the timer output changes as specified by bits OS3 to OS0 in TCSR. Figure 11.6 shows the timing when the output is set to toggle at compare match A.

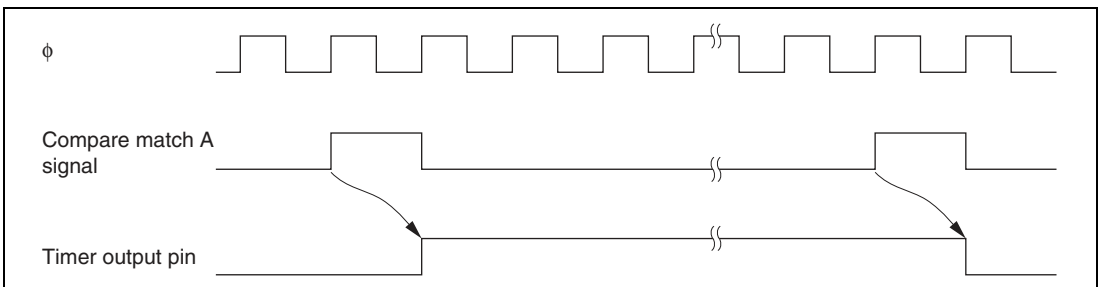


Figure 11.6 Timing of Timer Output

11.5.4 Timing of Compare Match Clear

The timer counter is cleared when compare match A or B occurs, depending on the setting of the CCLR1 and CCLR0 bits in TCR. Figure 11.7 shows the timing of this operation.

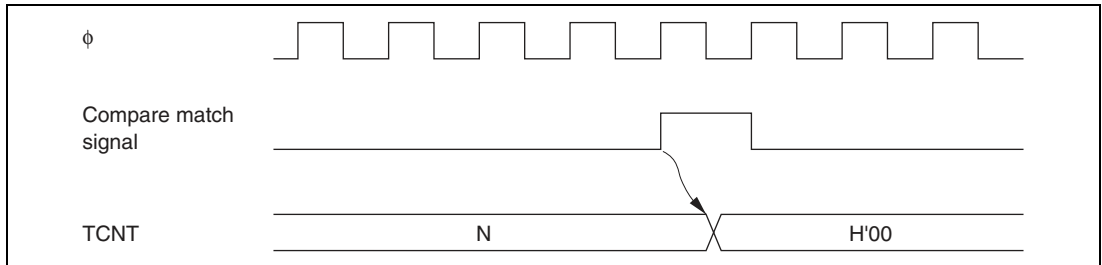


Figure 11.7 Timing of Compare Match Clear

11.5.5 Timing of TCNT External Reset

TCNT is cleared at the rising edge of an external reset input, depending on the settings of the CCLR1 and CCLR0 bits in TCR. The clear pulse width must be at least 1.5 states. Figure 11.8 shows the timing of this operation.

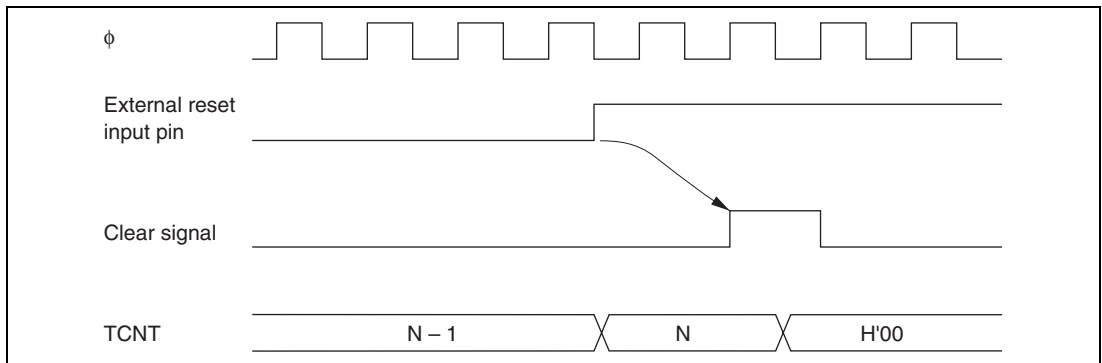


Figure 11.8 Timing of Clearance by External Reset

11.5.6 Timing of Overflow Flag (OVF) Setting

The OVF in TCSR is set to 1 when TCNT overflows (changes from H'FF to H'00). Figure 11.9 shows the timing of this operation.

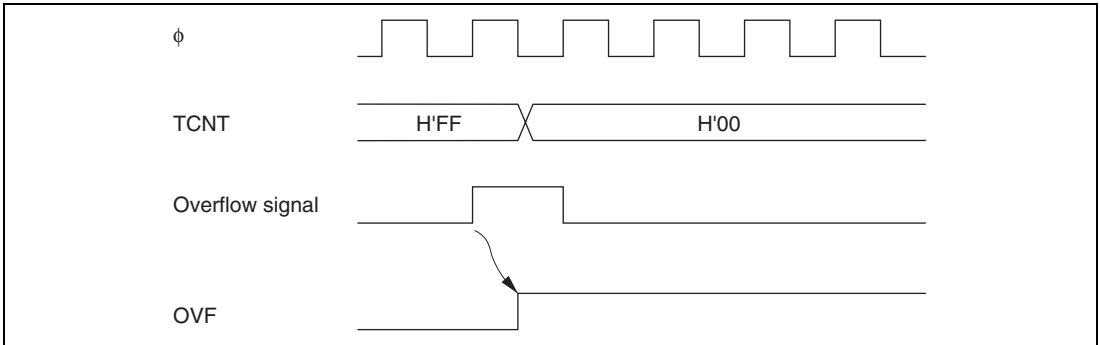


Figure 11.9 Timing of OVF Setting

11.6 Operation with Cascaded Connection

If bits CKS2 to CKS0 in either TCR_0 or TCR_1 are set to B'100, the 8-bit timers of the two channels are cascaded. With this configuration, a single 16-bit timer could be used (16-bit counter mode) or compare matches of the 8-bit channel 0 could be counted by the timer of channel 1 (compare match count mode). In this case, the timer operates as below.

11.6.1 16-Bit Counter Mode

When bits CKS2 to CKS0 in TCR_0 are set to B'100, the timer functions as a single 16-bit timer with channel 0 occupying the upper 8 bits and channel 1 occupying the lower 8 bits.

- Setting of compare match flags
 - The CMF flag in TCSR_0 is set to 1 when a 16-bit compare match event occurs.
 - The CMF flag in TCSR_1 is set to 1 when a lower 8-bit compare match event occurs.
- Counter clear specification
 - If the CCLR1 and CCLR0 bits in TCR_0 have been set for counter clear at compare match, the 16-bit counters (TCNT_0 and TCNT_1 together) are cleared when a 16-bit compare match event occurs. The 16-bit counters (TCNT0 and TCNT1 together) are cleared even if counter clear by the TMRI0 pin has also been set.
 - The settings of the CCLR1 and CCLR0 bits in TCR_1 are ignored. The lower 8 bits cannot be cleared independently.
- Pin output
 - Control of output from the TMO0 pin by bits OS3 to OS0 in TCSR_0 is in accordance with the 16-bit compare match conditions.
 - Control of output from the TMO1 pin by bits OS3 to OS0 in TCSR_1 is in accordance with the lower 8-bit compare match conditions.

11.6.2 Compare Match Count Mode

When bits CKS2 to CKS0 in TCR_1 are B'100, TCNT_1 counts compare match A's for channel 0. Channels 0 and 1 are controlled independently. Conditions such as setting of the CMF flag, generation of interrupts, output from the TMO pin, and counter clear are in accordance with the settings for each channel.

11.7 Interrupts

11.7.1 Interrupt Sources and DTC Activation

There are three 8-bit timer interrupt sources: CMIA, CMIB, and OVI. Their relative priorities are shown in table 11.3. Each interrupt source is set as enabled or disabled by the corresponding interrupt enable bit in TCR or TCSR, and independent interrupt requests are sent for each to the interrupt controller. It is also possible to activate the DTC by means of CMIA and CMIB interrupts.

Table 11.3 8-Bit Timer Interrupt Sources

| Channel | Name | Interrupt Source | Interrupt Flag | DTC Activation | Priority* |
|---------|-------|-----------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 0 | CMIA0 | TCORA_0 compare match | CMFA | Possible | High ↑ Low |
| | CMIB0 | TCORB_0 compare match | CMFB | Possible | |
| | OVI0 | TCNT_0 overflow | OVF | Not possible | |
| 1 | CMIA1 | TCORA_1 compare match | CMFA | Possible | High ↑ Low |
| | CMIB1 | TCORB_1 compare match | CMFB | Possible | |
| | OVI1 | TCNT_1 overflow | OVF | Not possible | |

Note: * This table shows the initial state immediately after a reset. The relative channel priorities can be changed by the interrupt controller.

11.7.2 A/D Converter Activation

The A/D converter can be activated only by TMR_0 compare match A. If the ADTE bit in TCSR0 is set to 1 when the CMFA flag is set to 1 by the occurrence of TMR_0 compare match A, a request to start A/D conversion is sent to the A/D converter. If the 8-bit timer conversion start trigger has been selected on the A/D converter side at this time, A/D conversion is started.

11.8 Usage Notes

11.8.1 Contention between TCNT Write and Clear

If a timer counter clock pulse is generated during the T_2 state of a TCNT write cycle, the clear takes priority, so that the counter is cleared and the write is not performed. Figure 11.10 shows this operation.

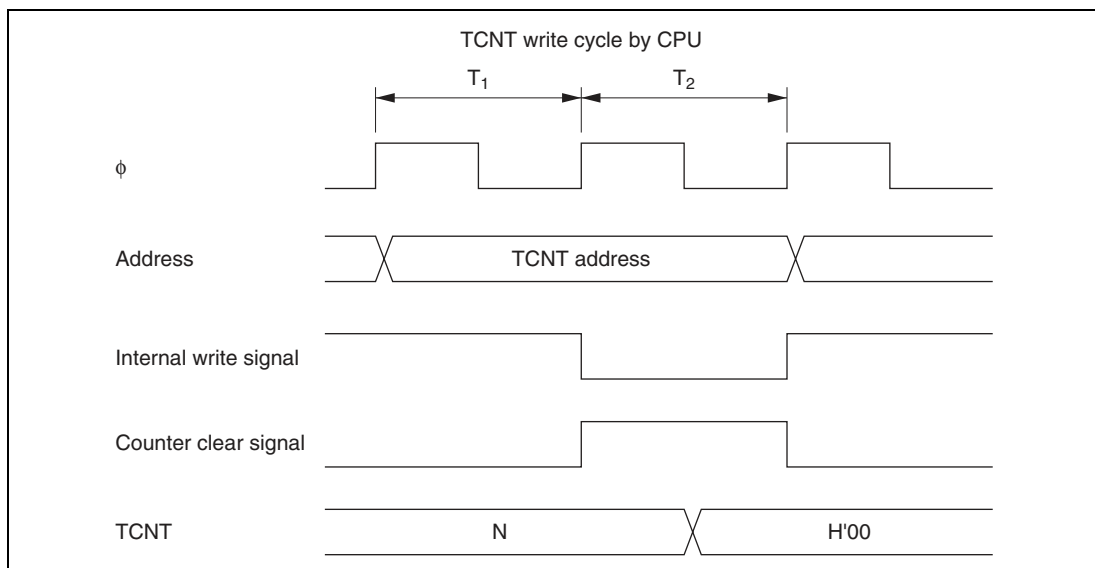


Figure 11.10 Contention between TCNT Write and Clear

11.8.2 Contention between TCNT Write and Increment

If a timer counter clock pulse is generated during the T_2 state of a TCNT write cycle, the write takes priority and the counter is not incremented. Figure 11.11 shows this operation.

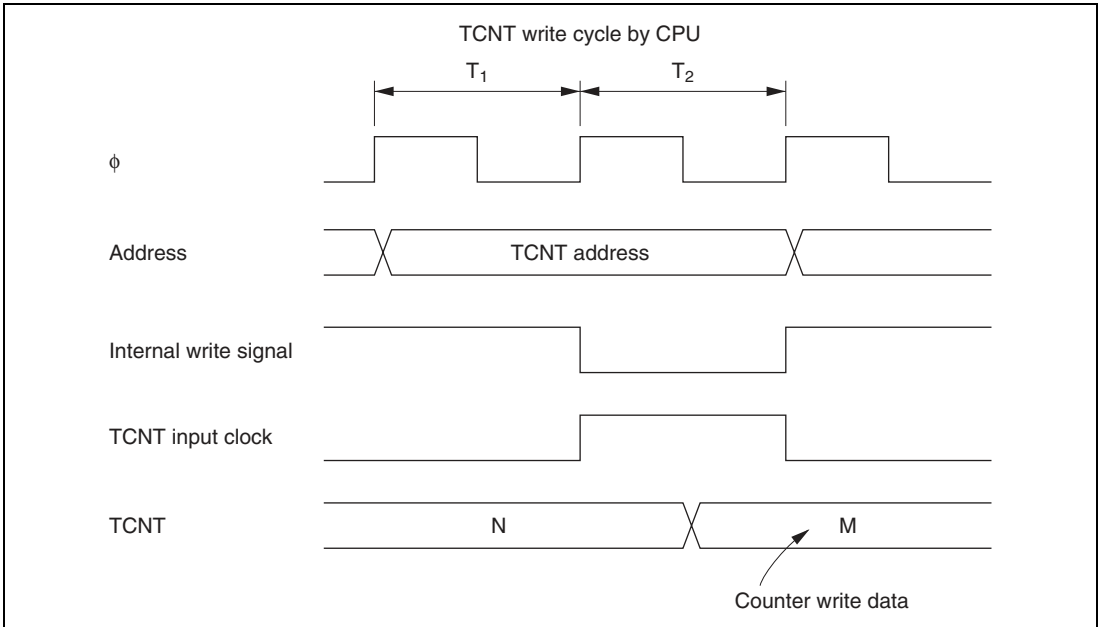


Figure 11.11 Contention between TCNT Write and Increment

11.8.3 Contention between TCOR Write and Compare Match

During the T_2 state of a TCOR write cycle, the TCOR write has priority and the compare match signal is prohibited even if a compare match event occurs. Figure 11.12 shows this operation.

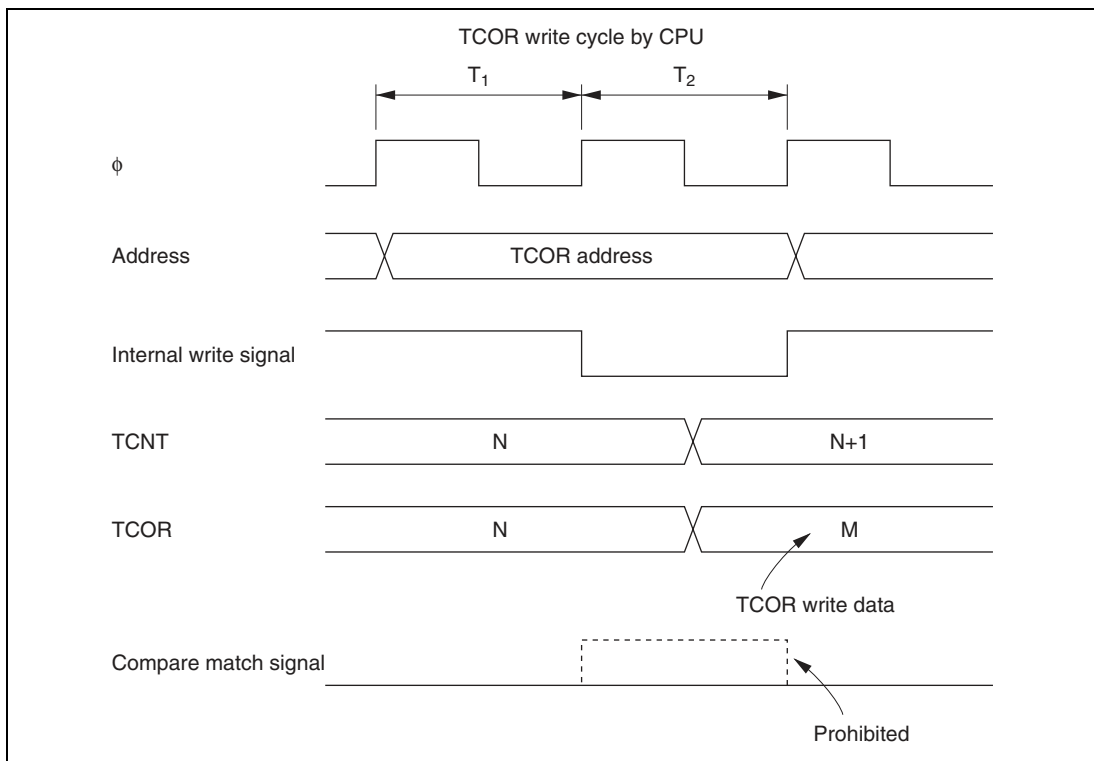


Figure 11.12 Contention between TCOR Write and Compare Match

11.8.4 Contention between Compare Matches A and B

If compare match events A and B occur at the same time, the 8-bit timer operates in accordance with the priorities for the output statuses set for compare match A and compare match B, as shown in table 11.4.

Table 11.4 Timer Output Priorities

| Output Setting | Priority |
|----------------|----------|
| Toggle output | High |
| 1 output | ↑ |
| 0 output | |
| No change | Low |

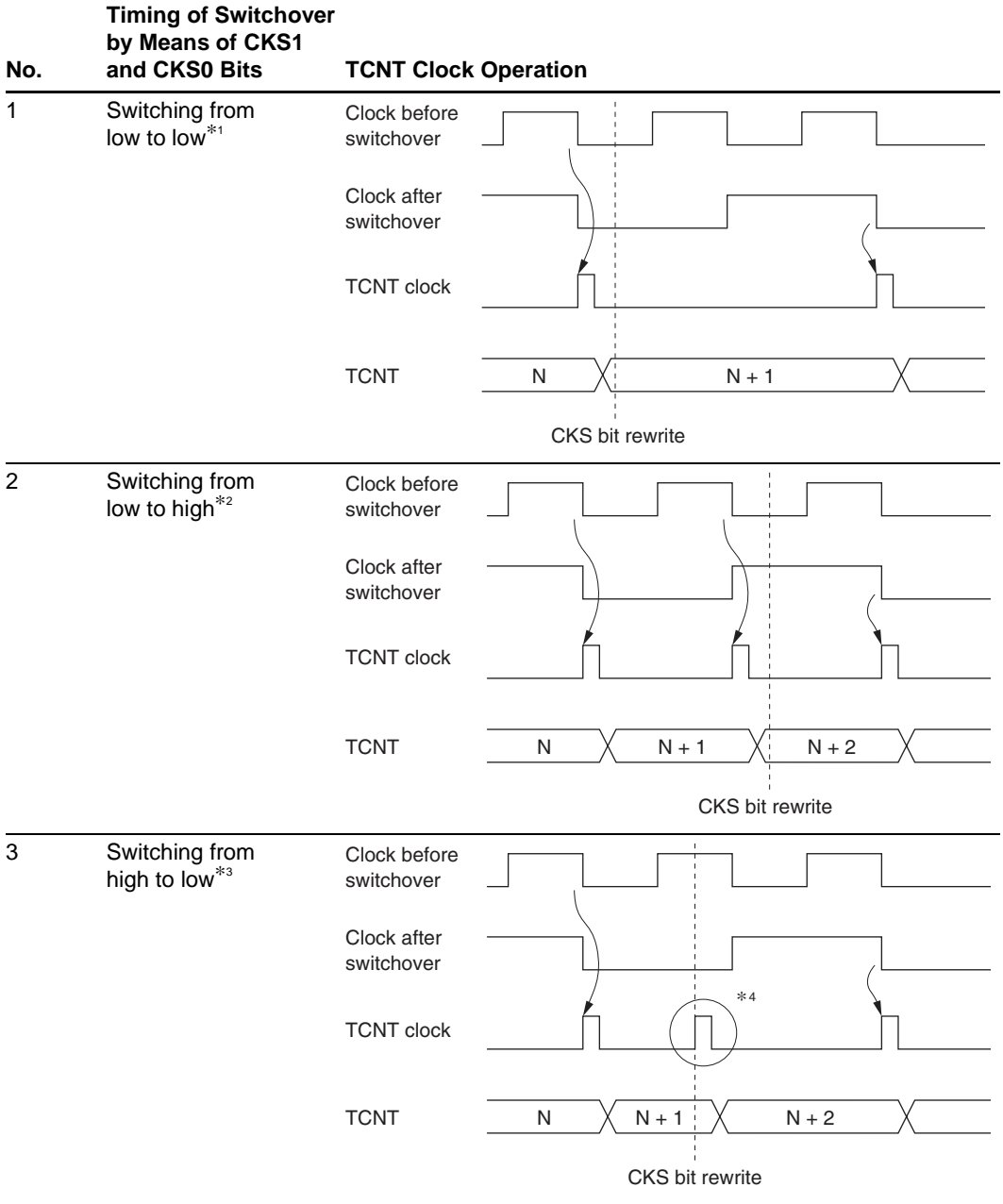
11.8.5 Switching of Internal Clocks and TCNT Operation

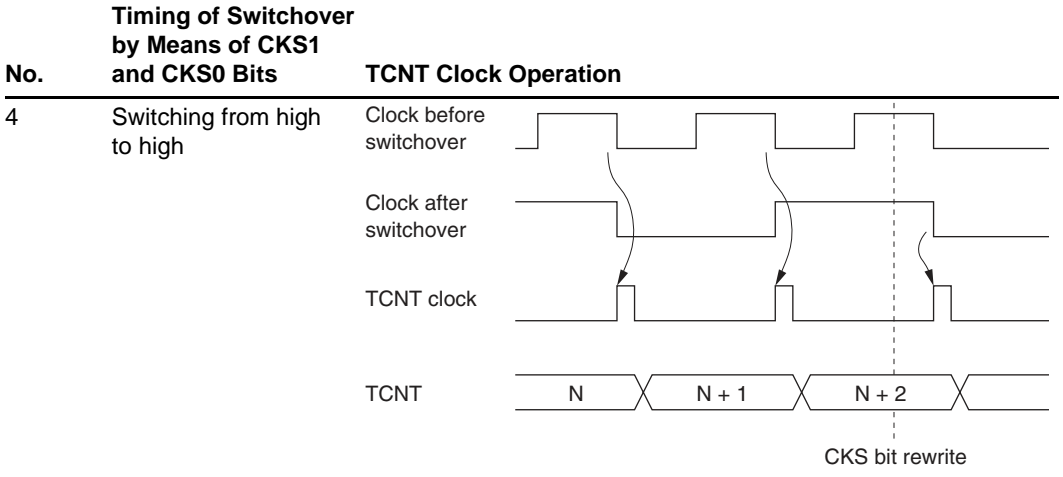
TCNT may increment erroneously when the internal clock is switched over. Table 11.5 shows the relationship between the timing at which the internal clock is switched (by writing to the CKS1 and CKS0 bits) and the TCNT operation.

When the TCNT clock is generated from an internal clock, the falling edge of the internal clock pulse is detected. If clock switching causes a change from high to low level, as shown in case 3 in table 11.5, a TCNT clock pulse is generated on the assumption that the switchover is a falling edge. This increments TCNT.

The erroneous incrementation can also happen when switching between internal and external clocks.

Table 11.5 Switching of Internal Clock and TCNT Operation





- Notes:
1. Includes switching from low to stop, and from stop to low.
 2. Includes switching from stop to high.
 3. Includes switching from high to stop.
 4. Generated on the assumption that the switchover is a falling edge; TCNT is incremented.

11.8.6 Mode Setting with Cascaded Connection

If 16-bit counter mode and compare match count mode are specified at the same time, input clocks for TCNT_0 and TCNT_1 are not generated, and the counter stops. Do not specify 16-bit counter and compare match count modes simultaneously.

11.8.7 Module Stop Mode Setting

Operation of the TMR can be disabled or enabled using the module stop control register. The initial setting is for operation of the TMR to be halted. Register access is enabled by clearing module stop mode. For details, refer to section 22, Power-Down Modes.

Section 12 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

The watchdog timer (WDT) is an 8-bit timer that can generate an internal reset signal for this LSI if a system crash prevents the CPU from writing to the timer counter, thus allowing it to overflow. When this watchdog function is not needed, the WDT can be used as an interval timer. In interval timer operation, an interval timer interrupt is generated each time the counter overflows.

The block diagram of the WDT is shown in figure 12.1.

12.1 Features

- Selectable from eight counter input clocks
- Switchable between watchdog timer mode and interval timer mode

In watchdog timer mode

- If the counter overflows, it is possible to select whether this LSI is internally reset or not.

In interval timer mode

- If the counter overflows, the WDT generates an interval timer interrupt (WOVI).

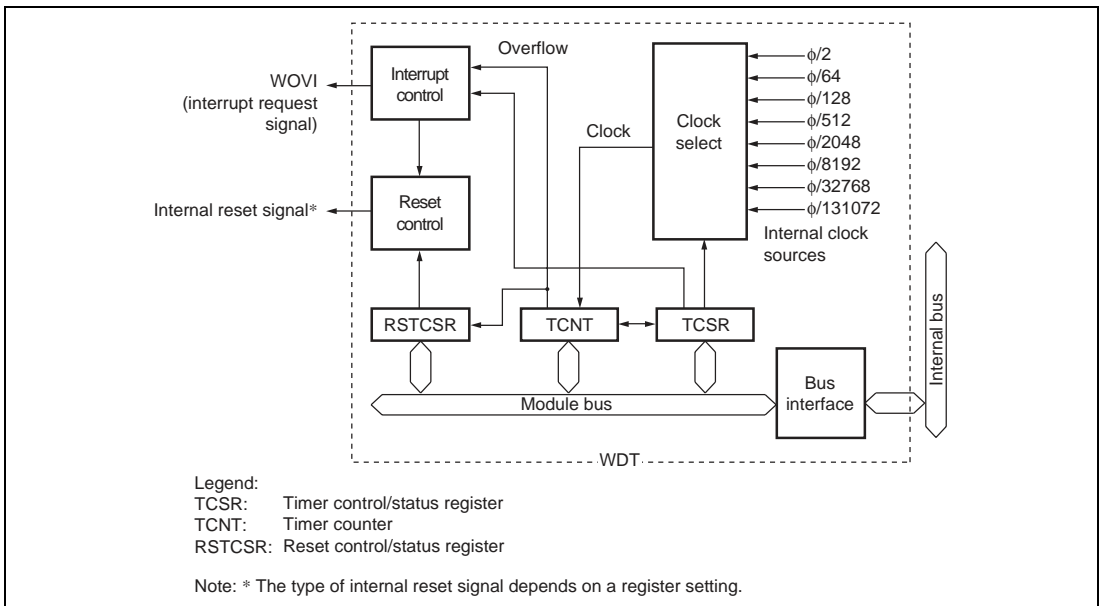


Figure 12.1 Block Diagram of WDT

12.2 Register Descriptions

The WDT has the following three registers. For details, refer to section 23, List of Registers. To prevent accidental overwriting, TCSR, TCNT, and RSTCSR have to be written to by a different method to normal registers. For details, refer to section 12.5.1, Notes on Register Access.

- Timer counter (TCNT)
- Timer control/status register (TCSR)
- Reset control/status register (RSTCSR)

12.2.1 Timer Counter (TCNT)

TCNT is an 8-bit readable/writable up-counter. TCNT is initialized to H'00 by a reset, when the TME bit in TCSR is cleared to 0.

12.2.2 Timer Control/Status Register (TCSR)

TCSR is an 8-bit readable/writable register. Its functions include selecting the clock source to be input to TCNT, and selecting the timer mode.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 7 | OVF | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Overflow Flag</p> <p>Indicates that TCNT has overflowed. Only a write of 0 is permitted, to clear the flag.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When TCNT overflows (changes from H'FF to H'00) <p>When internal reset request generation is selected in watchdog timer mode, OVF is cleared automatically by the internal reset.</p> <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cleared by reading TCSR when OVF = 1, then writing 0 to OVF <p>When polling CVF when the interval timer interrupt has been prohibited, OVF = 1 status should be read two or more times.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 6 | WT/IT | 0 | R/W | Timer Mode Select Selects whether the WDT is used as a watchdog timer or interval timer. 0: Interval timer mode 1: Watchdog timer mode |
| 5 | TME | 0 | R/W | Timer Enable When this bit is set to 1, TCNT starts counting. When this bit is cleared, TCNT stops counting and is initialized to H'00. |
| 4, 3 | — | All 1 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 1 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | CKS2 | 0 | R/W | Clock Select 2 to 0 |
| 1 | CKS1 | 0 | R/W | Selects the clock source to be input to TCNT. The overflow frequency for $\phi = 16$ MHz is enclosed in parentheses. 000: Clock $\phi/2$ (frequency: 32.0 μ s) 001: Clock $\phi/64$ (frequency: 1.0 ms) 010: Clock $\phi/128$ (frequency: 2.0 ms) 011: Clock $\phi/512$ (frequency: 8.2 ms) 100: Clock $\phi/2048$ (frequency: 32.8 ms) 101: Clock $\phi/8192$ (frequency: 131.1 ms) 110: Clock $\phi/32768$ (frequency: 524.3 ms) 111: Clock $\phi/131072$ (frequency: 2.1 s) |
| 0 | CKS0 | 0 | R/W | |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

12.2.3 Reset Control/Status Register (RSTCSR)

RSTCSR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that controls the generation of the internal reset signal when TCNT overflows, and selects the type of internal reset signal. RSTCSR is initialized to H'1F by a reset signal from the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin, and not by the WDT internal reset signal caused by overflows.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 7 | WOVF | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Watchdog Overflow Flag</p> <p>This bit is set when TCNT overflows in watchdog timer mode. This bit cannot be set in interval timer mode, and the write value should always be 0.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set when TCNT overflows (changed from H'FF to H'00) in watchdog timer mode <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cleared by reading RSTCSR when WOVF = 1, and then writing 0 to WOVF |
| 6 | RSTE | 0 | R/W | <p>Reset Enable</p> <p>Specifies whether or not a reset signal is generated in the chip if TCNT overflows during watchdog timer operation.</p> <p>0: Reset signal is not generated even if TCNT overflows (Though this LSI is not reset, TCNT and TCSR in WDT are reset)</p> <p>1: Reset signal is generated if TCNT overflows</p> |
| 5 | RSTS | 0 | R/W | <p>Reset Select</p> <p>Selects the type of internal reset generated if TCNT overflows during watchdog timer operation.</p> <p>0: Power-on reset</p> <p>1: Setting prohibited</p> |
| 4 to 0 | — | All 1 | — | <p>Reserved</p> <p>These bits are always read as 1 and cannot be modified.</p> |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

12.3 Operation

12.3.1 Watchdog Timer Mode

To use the WDT as a watchdog timer, set the $\overline{WT/IT}$ bit in TCSR and the TME bit to 1.

TCNT does not overflow while the system is operating normally. Software must prevent TCNT overflows by rewriting the TCNT value (normally by writing H'00) before overflows occurs.

When the RSTE bit of the RSTCSR is set to 1, and if the TCNT overflows, an internal reset signal for this LSI is issued. In this case, select power-on reset or manual reset by setting the RSTS bit of the RSTCSR to 0.

If a reset caused by a signal input to the \overline{RES} pin occurs at the same time as a reset caused by a WDT overflow, the \overline{RES} pin reset has priority and the WOVF bit in RSTCSR is cleared to 0. The internal reset signal is output for 518 states.

When the TCNT overflows in watchdog timer mode, the WOVF bit of the RSTCSR is set to 1. If the RSTE bit of the RSTCSR has been set to 1, an internal reset signal for the entire LSI is generated at TCNT overflow.

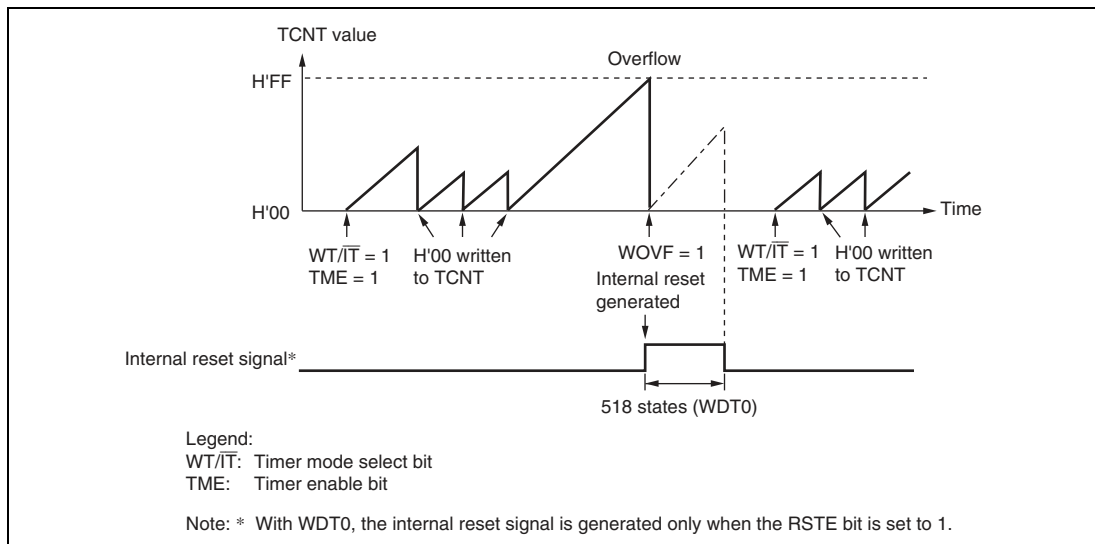


Figure 12.2 Operation in Watchdog Timer Mode

12.3.2 Timing of Setting of Watchdog Timer Overflow Flag (WOVF)

With WDT0, the WOVF bit in RSTCSR is set to 1 if TCNT overflows in watchdog timer mode. If TCNT overflows while the RSTE bit in RSTCSR is set to 1, an internal reset signal is generated for the entire chip. This timing is illustrated in figure 12.3.

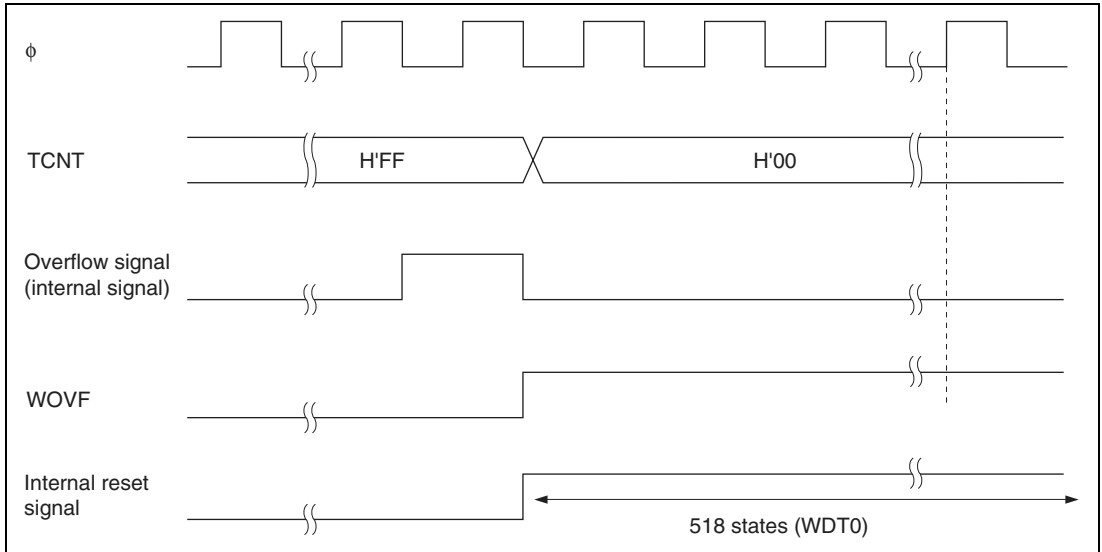


Figure 12.3 Timing of WOVF Setting

12.3.3 Interval Timer Mode

To use the WDT as an interval timer, clear bit $\overline{WT/IT}$ in TCSR to 0 and set bit TME to 1. When the interval timer is operating, an interval timer interrupt (WOVI) is generated each time the TCNT overflows. Therefore, an interrupt can be generated at intervals.

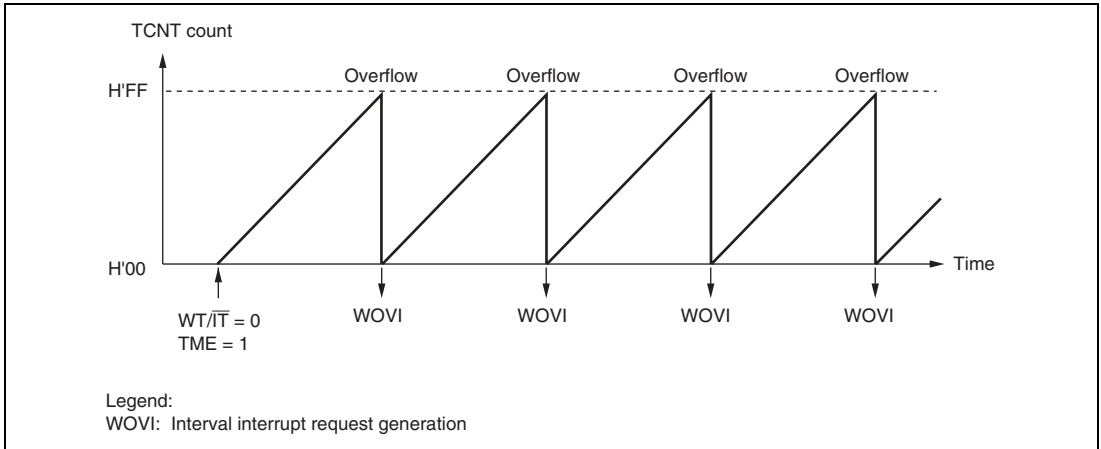


Figure 12.4 Operation in Interval Timer Mode

12.3.4 Timing of Setting of Overflow Flag (OVF)

The OVF flag is set to 1 if TCNT overflows during interval timer operation. At the same time, an interval timer interrupt (WOVI) is requested. This timing is shown in figure 12.5.

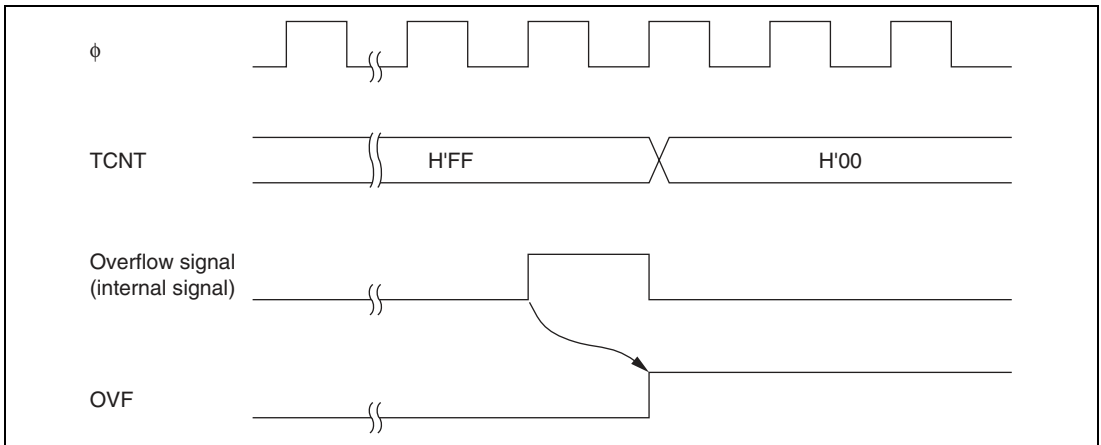


Figure 12.5 Timing of OVF Setting

12.4 Interrupts

During interval timer mode operation, an overflow generates an interval timer interrupt (WOVI). The interval timer interrupt is requested whenever the OVF flag is set to 1 in TCSR. OVF must be cleared to 0 in the interrupt handling routine.

Table 12.1 WDT Interrupt Source

| Name | Interrupt Source | Interrupt Flag | DTC Activation |
|------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| WOVI | TCNT overflow | WOVF | Impossible |

12.5 Usage Notes

12.5.1 Notes on Register Access

The watchdog timer's TCNT, TCSR, and RSTCSR registers differ from other registers in being more difficult to write to. The procedures for writing to and reading these registers are given below.

Writing to TCNT and TCSR: These registers must be written to by a word transfer instruction. They cannot be written to with byte transfer instructions. Figure 12.6 shows the format of data written to TCNT and TCSR.

TCNT and TCSR both have the same write address. For a write to TCNT, the upper byte of the written word must contain H'5A and the lower byte must contain the write data. For a write to TCSR, the upper byte of the written word must contain H'A5 and the lower byte must contain the write data. This transfers the write data from the lower byte to TCNT or TCSR.

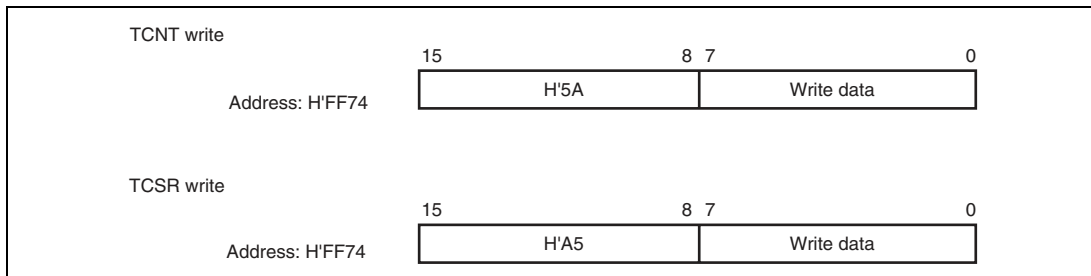


Figure 12.6 Format of Data Written to TCNT and TCSR

Writing to RSTCSR: RSTCSR must be written to by a word transfer to address H'FF76. It cannot be written to with byte instructions. Figure 12.7 shows the format of data written to RSTCSR. The method of writing 0 to the WOVF bit differs from that for writing to the RSTE and RSTS bits.

To write 0 to the WOVF bit, the upper byte of the written word must contain H'A5 and the lower byte must contain H'00. This clears the WOVF bit to 0, but has no effect on the RSTE and RSTS bits. To write to the RSTE and RSTS bits, the upper byte must contain H'5A and the lower byte must contain the write data. This writes the values in bits 6 and 5 of the lower byte into the RSTE and RSTS bits, but has no effect on the WOVF bit.

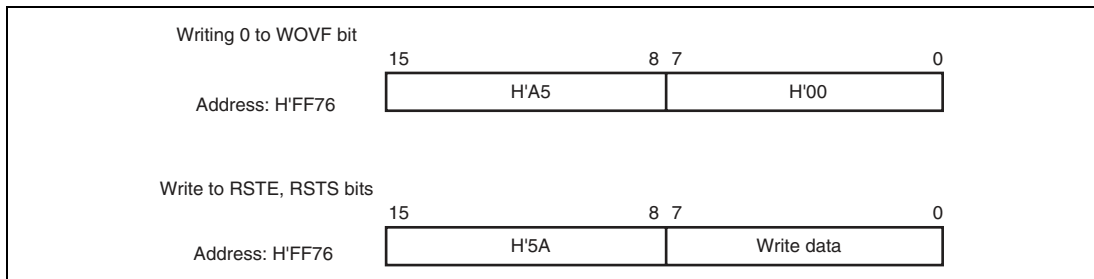


Figure 12.7 Format of Data Written to RSTCSR (Example of WDT0)

Reading from TCNT, TCSR, and RSTCSR: TCNT, TCSR, and RSTCSR are read by using the same method as for the general registers. TCSR, TCNT, and RSTCSR are allocated in addresses H'FF74, H'FF75, and H'FF77 respectively.

12.5.2 Contention between Timer Counter (TCNT) Write and Increment

If a timer counter clock pulse is generated during the T_2 state of a TCNT write cycle, the write takes priority and the timer counter is not incremented. Figure 12.8 shows this operation.

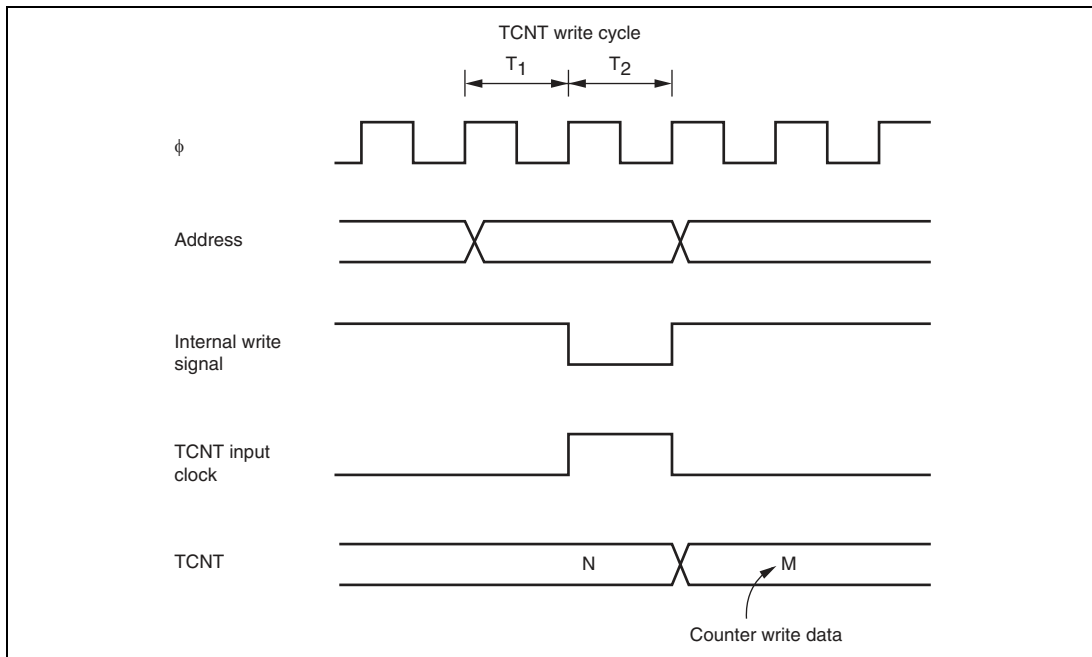


Figure 12.8 Contention between TCNT Write and Increment

12.5.3 Changing Value of CKS2 to CKS0

If bits CKS0 to CKS2 in TCSR are written to while the WDT is operating, errors could occur in the incrementation. Software must be used to stop the watchdog timer (by clearing the TME bit to 0) before changing the value of bits CKS0 to CKS2.

12.5.4 Switching between Watchdog Timer Mode and Interval Timer Mode

If the mode is switched from watchdog timer to interval timer while the WDT is operating, errors could occur in the incrementation. Software must be used to stop the watchdog timer (by clearing the TME bit to 0) before switching the mode.

12.5.5 Internal Reset in Watchdog Timer Mode

This LSI is not reset internally if TCNT overflows while the RSTE bit is cleared to 0 during watchdog timer operation, however TCNT and TCSR of the WDT are reset.

TCNT, TCSR, or RSTCR cannot be written to for 132 states following an overflow. During this period, any attempt to read the WOVF flag is not acknowledged. Accordingly, wait 132 states after overflow to write 0 to the WOVF flag for clearing.

12.5.6 OVF Flag Clearing in Interval Timer Mode

When the OVF flag setting conflicts with the OVF flag reading in interval timer mode, writing 0 to the OVF flag may not clear the flag even though the OVF flag has been read while it is 1. If there is a possibility that the OVF flag setting and reading will conflict, such as when the OVF flag is polled with the interval timer interrupt disabled, read the OVF flag while it is 1 at least twice before writing 0 to the OVF flag to clear the flag.

Section 13 Serial Communication Interface

This LSI has three independent serial communication interface (SCI) channels. The SCI can handle both asynchronous and clocked synchronous serial communication. Asynchronous serial data communication can be carried out using standard asynchronous communication chips such as a Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) or an Asynchronous Communication Interface Adapter (ACIA). The SCI also supports the smart card (IC card) interface based on ISO/IEC 7816-3 (Identification Card) as an enhanced asynchronous communication function.

13.1 Features

- Choice of asynchronous or clocked synchronous serial communication mode
- Full-duplex communication capability

The transmitter and receiver are mutually independent, enabling transmission and reception to be executed simultaneously.

Double-buffering is used in both the transmitter and the receiver, enabling continuous transmission and continuous reception of serial data.
- On-chip baud rate generator allows any bit rate to be selected

External clock can be selected as a transfer clock source (except for in Smart Card interface mode).
- Choice of LSB-first or MSB-first transfer (except in the case of asynchronous mode 7-bit data)
- Four interrupt sources

Transmit-end, transmit-data-empty, receive-data-full, and receive error — that can issue requests.

The transmit-data-empty interrupt and receive data full interrupts can be used to activate the DMA controller (DMAC) or the Data Transfer Controller (DTC).
- Module stop mode can be set

Asynchronous Mode

- Data length: 7 or 8 bits
- Stop bit length: 1 or 2 bits
- Parity: Even, odd, or none
- Receive error detection: Parity, overrun, and framing errors
- Break detection: Break can be detected by reading the RxD pin level directly in the case of a framing error

- Average transfer rate generator (SCI_0):
In H8S/2215 720 kbps, 460.784 kbps, or 115.196 kbps can be selected at 16 MHz.
In H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C
921.569 kbps, 720 kbps, 460.784 kbps, or 115.196 kbps can be selected at 16 MHz.
921.053 kbps, 720 kbps, 460.526 kbps, or 115.132 kbps can be selected at 24 MHz.
- A transfer rate clock can be input from the TPU (SCI_0)
- A multiprocessor communication function is provided that enables serial data communication with a number of processors

Clocked Synchronous Mode

- Data length: 8 bits
- Receive error detection: Overrun errors detected
- SCI select function (SCI_0): TxD0 = high-impedance and SCK0 = fixed high-level input can be selected when $\overline{\text{IRQ7}} = 1$)
- Serial data communication can be carried out with other chips that have a synchronous communication function

Smart Card Interface

- An error signal can be automatically transmitted on detection of a parity error during reception
- Data can be automatically re-transmitted on detection of a error signal during transmission
- Both direct convention and inverse convention are supported

13.1.1 Block Diagram

Figure 13.1 shows the block diagram of the SCI_0 for H8S/2215, figure 13.2 shows the block diagram of the SCI_0 for H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C. Figure 13.2 shows the block diagram of the SCI_1 and SCI_2.

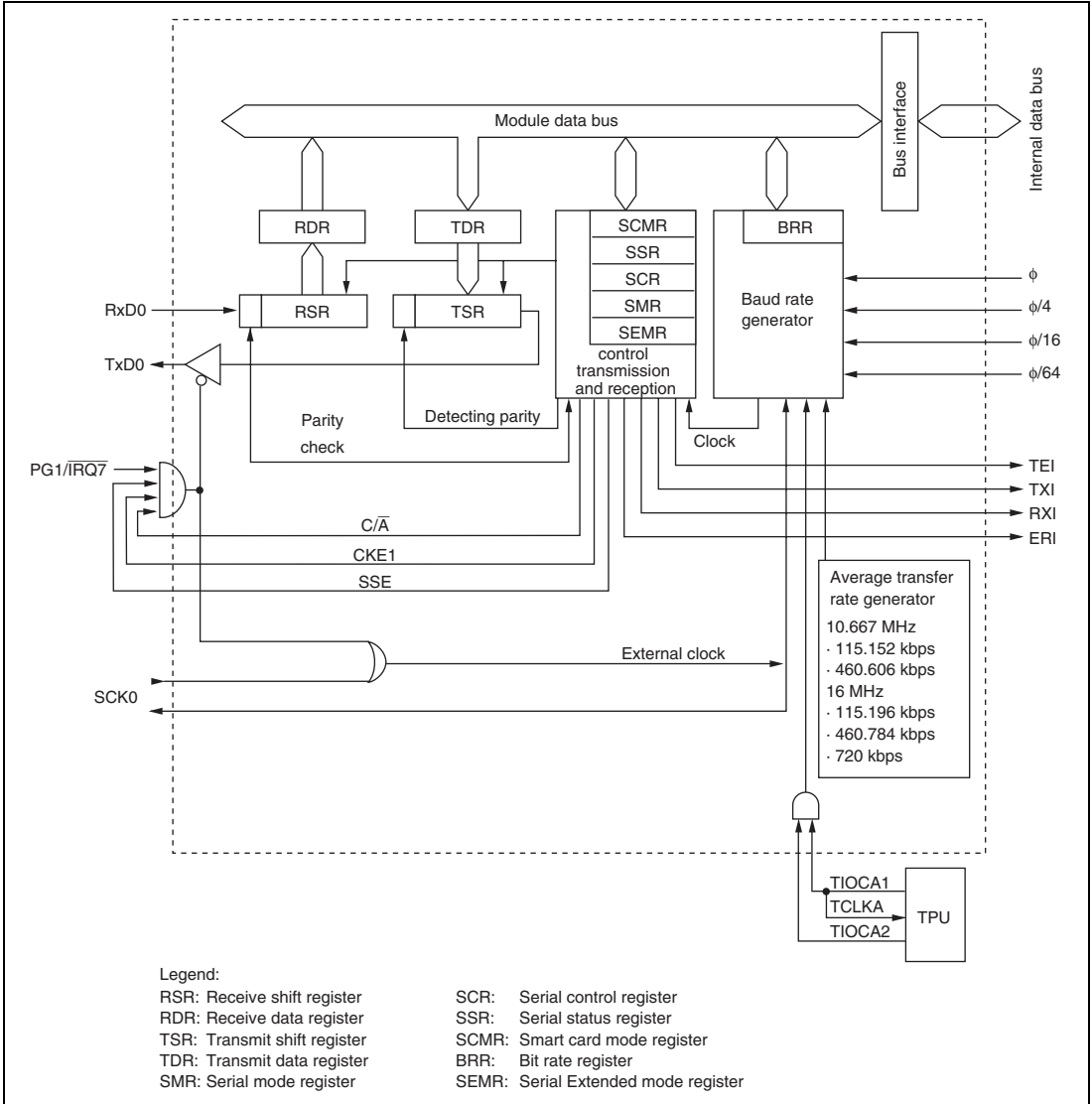
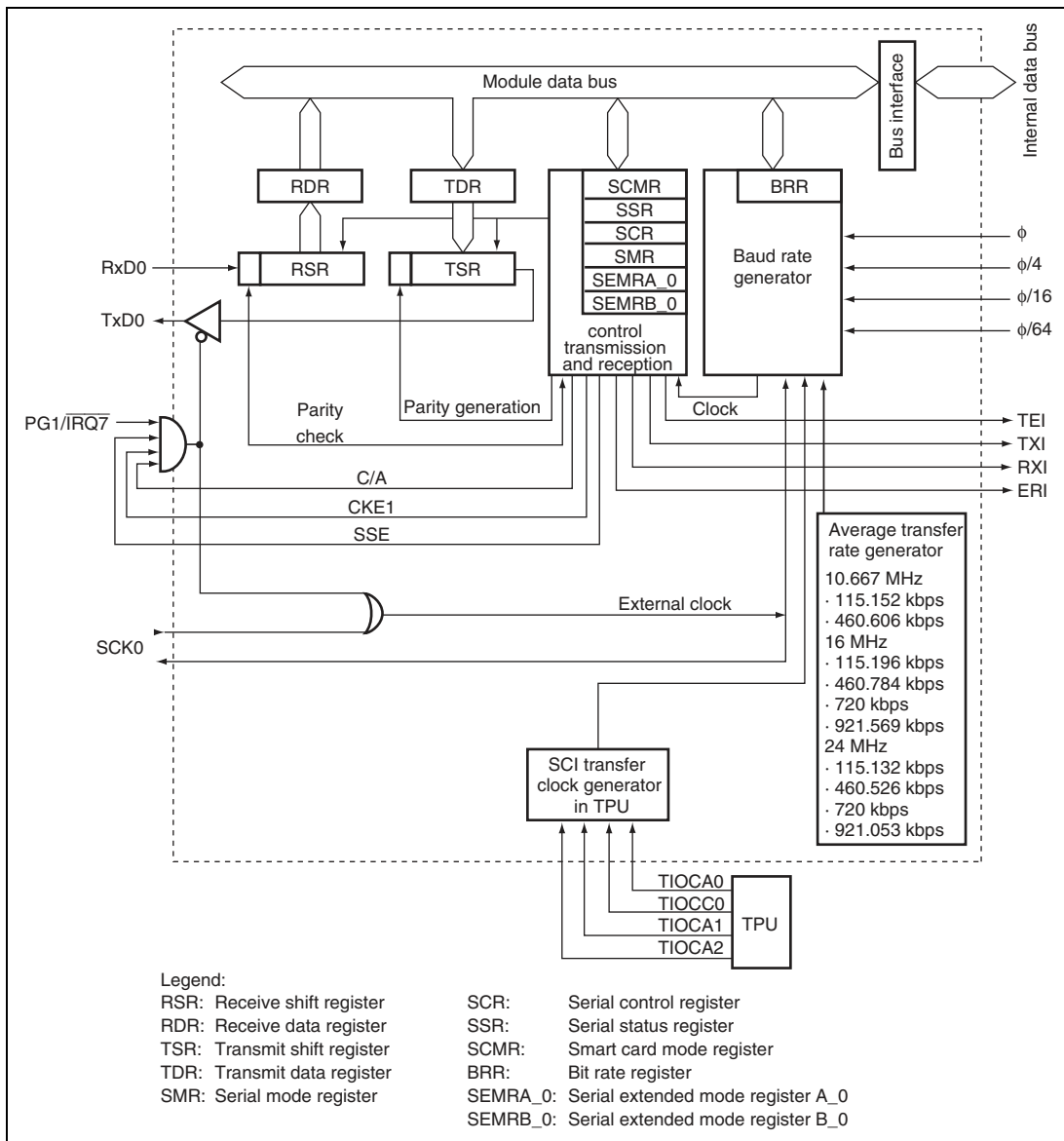


Figure 13.1 Block Diagram of SCI_0 (H8S/2215)



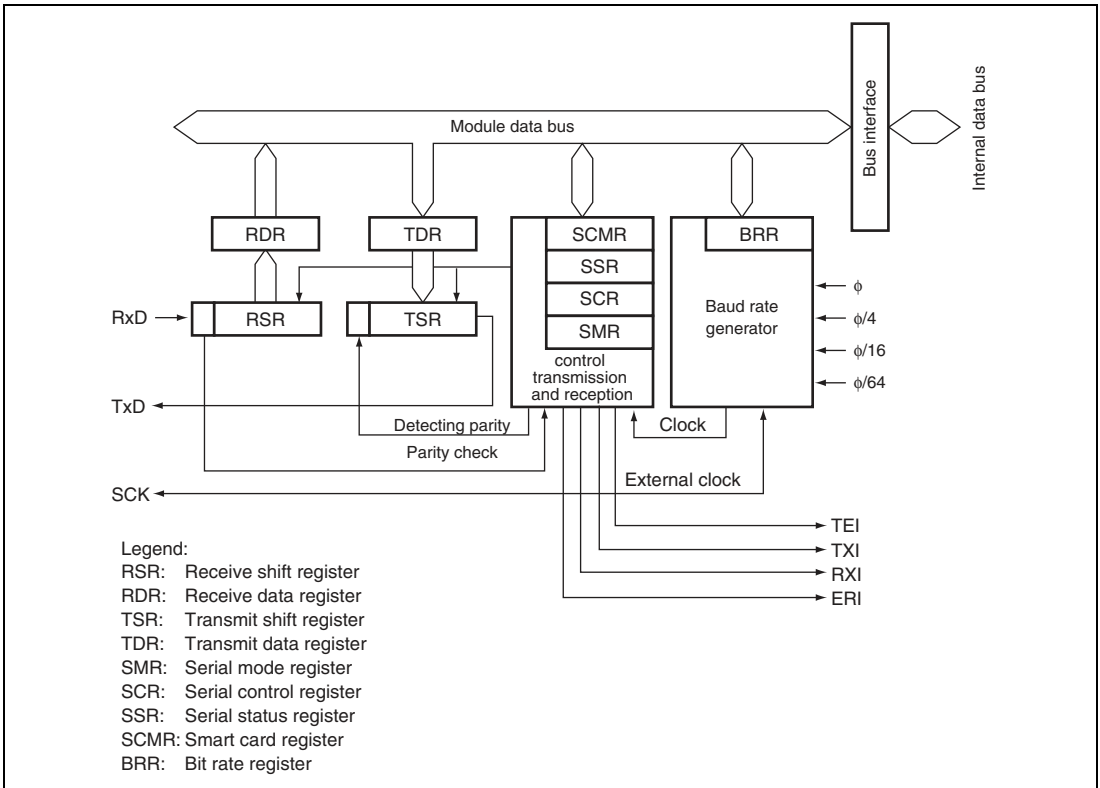


Figure 13.3 Block Diagram of SCI_1 and SCI_2

13.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 13.1 shows the serial pins for each SCI channel.

Table 13.1 Pin Configuration

| Channel | Pin Name* | I/O | Function |
|---------|-----------|--------|----------------------------|
| 0 | SCK0 | I/O | SCI_0 clock input/output |
| | RxD0 | Input | SCI_0 receive data input |
| | TxD0 | Output | SCI_0 transmit data output |
| 1 | SCK1 | I/O | SCI_1 clock input/output |
| | RxD1 | Input | SCI_1 receive data input |
| | TxD1 | Output | SCI_1 transmit data output |
| 2 | SCK2 | I/O | SCI_2 clock input/output |
| | RxD2 | Input | SCI_2 receive data input |
| | TxD2 | Output | SCI_2 transmit data output |

Note: * Pin names SCK, RxD, and TxD are used in the text for all channels, omitting the channel designation.

13.3 Register Descriptions

The SCI has the following registers for each channel. Some bits in the serial mode register (SMR), serial status register (SSR), and serial control register (SCR) have different functions in different modes—normal serial communication interface mode and smart card interface mode; therefore, the bits are described separately for each mode in the corresponding register sections.

- Receive shift register (RSR)
- Receive data register (RDR)
- Transmit data register (TDR)
- Transmit shift register (TSR)
- Serial mode register (SMR)
- Serial control register (SCR)
- Serial status register (SSR)
- Smart card mode register (SCMR)
- Serial extended mode register (SEMR) (only for channel 0 in H8S/2215)
- Serial extended mode register A_0 (SEMRA_0) (only for channel 0 in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

- Serial extended mode register B_0 (SEMRB_0) (only for channel 0 in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)
- Bit rate register (BRR)

13.3.1 Receive Shift Register (RSR)

RSR is a shift register that is used to receive serial data input to the RxD pin and convert it into parallel data. When one byte of data has been received, it is transferred to RDR automatically. RSR cannot be directly accessed by the CPU.

13.3.2 Receive Data Register (RDR)

RDR is an 8-bit register that stores received data. When the SCI has received one byte of serial data, it transfers the received serial data from RSR to RDR, where it is stored. After this, RSR is receive-enabled. As RSR and RDR function as a double buffer in this way, continuous receive operations are possible. After confirming that the RDRF bit in SSR is set to 1, read RDR only once. RDR cannot be written to by the CPU.

13.3.3 Transmit Data Register (TDR)

TDR is an 8-bit register that stores data for transmission. When the SCI detects that TSR is empty, it transfers the transmit data written in TDR to TSR and starts transmission. The double-buffered structure of TDR and TSR enables continuous serial transmission. If the next transmit data has already been written to TDR during serial transmission, the SCI transfers the written data to TSR to continue transmission. Although TDR can be read from or written to by the CPU at all times, to achieve reliable serial transmission, write transmit data to TDR only once after confirming that the TDRE bit in SSR is set to 1.

13.3.4 Transmit Shift Register (TSR)

TSR is a shift register that transmits serial data. To perform serial data transmission, the SCI first transfers transmit data from TDR to TSR, then sends the data to the TxD pin. TSR cannot be directly accessed by the CPU.

13.3.5 Serial Mode Register (SMR)

SMR is used to set the SCI's serial transfer format and select the baud rate generator clock source. Some bits in SMR have different functions in normal mode and smart card interface mode.

- Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 0)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|--------------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | C/ \bar{A} | 0 | R/W | Communication Mode 0: Asynchronous mode 1: Clocked synchronous mode |
| 6 | CHR | 0 | R/W | Character Length (enabled only in asynchronous mode) 0: Selects 8 bits as the data length 1: Selects 7 bits as the data length. LSB-first is fixed and the MSB of TDR is not transmitted in transmission In clocked synchronous mode, a fixed data length of 8 bits is used. |
| 5 | PE | 0 | R/W | Parity Enable (enabled only in asynchronous mode) When this bit is set to 1, the parity bit is added to transmit data before transmission, and the parity bit is checked in reception. For a multiprocessor format, parity bit addition and checking are not performed regardless of the PE bit setting. |
| 4 | O/ \bar{E} | 0 | R/W | Parity Mode (enabled only when the PE bit is 1 in asynchronous mode) 0: Selects even parity 1: Selects odd parity |
| 3 | STOP | 0 | R/W | Stop Bit Length (enabled only in asynchronous mode) Selects the stop bit length in transmission. 0: 1 stop bit 1: 2 stop bits In reception, only the first stop bit is checked. If the second stop bit is 0, it is treated as the start bit of the next transmit character. |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 2 | MP | 0 | R/W | <p>Multiprocessor Mode (enabled only in asynchronous mode)</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, the multiprocessor communication function is enabled. The PE bit and O/\bar{E} bit settings are invalid in multiprocessor mode. For details, see section 13.5, Multiprocessor Communication Function.</p> |
| 1 | CKS1 | 0 | R/W | Clock Select 0 and 1: |
| 0 | CKS0 | 0 | R/W | <p>These bits select the clock source for the baud rate generator.</p> <p>00: ϕ clock (n = 0) 01: $\phi/4$ clock (n = 1) 10: $\phi/16$ clock (n = 2) 11: $\phi/64$ clock (n = 3)</p> <p>For the relationship between the bit rate register setting and the baud rate, see section 13.3.12, Bit Rate Register (BRR). n is the decimal representation of the value of n in BRR (see section 13.3.12, Bit Rate Register (BRR)).</p> |

- Smart Card Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 1)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | GM | 0 | R/W | <p>GSM Mode</p> <p>Setting this bit to 1 allows GSM mode operation. In GSM mode, the TEND set timing is put forward to 11.0 etu from the start and the clock output control function is appended. For details, see section 13.7.9, Clock Output Control.</p> <p>0: Normal smart card interface mode operation (initial value)</p> <p>(1) The TEND flag is generated 12.5 etu (11.5 etu in the block transfer mode) after the beginning of the start bit.</p> <p>(2) Clock output on/off control only.</p> <p>1: GSM mode operation in smart card interface mode</p> <p>(1) The TEND flag is generated 11.0 etu after the beginning of the start bit.</p> <p>(2) In addition to clock output on/off control, high/how fixed control is supported (set using SCR).</p> |
| 6 | BLK | 0 | R/W | <p>Setting this bit to 1 allows block transfer mode operation. For details, see section 13.7.4, Block Transfer Mode.</p> <p>0: Normal smart card interface mode operation (initial value)</p> <p>(1) Error signal transmission, detection, and automatic data retransmission are performed.</p> <p>(2) The TXI interrupt is generated by the TEND flag.</p> <p>(3) The TEND flag is set 12.5 etu (11.0 etu in the GSM mode) after transmission starts.</p> <p>1: Operation in block transfer mode</p> <p>(1) Error signal transmission, detection, and automatic data retransmission are not performed.</p> <p>(2) The TXI interrupt is generated by the TDRE flag.</p> <p>(3) The TEND flag is set 11.5 etu (11.0 etu in the GSM mode) after transmission starts.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|--------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 5 | PE | 0 | R/W | <p>Parity Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, the parity bit is added to transmit data before transmission, and the parity bit is checked in reception. Set this bit to 1 in smart card interface mode.</p> |
| 4 | O/ \bar{E} | 0 | R/W | <p>Parity Mode (valid only when the PE bit is 1)</p> <p>0: Selects even parity 1: Selects odd parity</p> <p>For details on the usage of this bit in smart card interface mode, see section 13.7.2, Data Format (Except for Block Transfer Mode).</p> |
| 3 | BCP1 | 0 | R/W | Basic Clock Pulse 1,0 |
| 2 | BCP0 | 0 | R/W | <p>These bits select the number of basic clock cycles in a 1-bit data transfer time in smart card interface mode.</p> <p>00: 32 clock cycles (S = 32) 01: 64 clock cycles (S = 64) 10: 372 clock cycles (S = 372) 11: 256 clock cycles (S = 256)</p> <p>For details, see section 13.7.5, Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin. S is described in section 13.3.12, Bit Rate Register (BRR).</p> |
| 1 | CKS1 | 0 | R/W | Clock Select 1,0 |
| 0 | CKS0 | 0 | R/W | <p>These bits select the clock source for the baud rate generator.</p> <p>00: ϕ clock (n = 0) 01: $\phi/4$ clock (n = 1) 10: $\phi/16$ clock (n = 2) 11: $\phi/64$ clock (n = 3)</p> <p>For the relation between the bit rate register setting and the baud rate, see section 13.3.12, Bit Rate Register (BRR). n is the decimal display of the value of n in BRR (see section 13.3.12, Bit Rate Register (BRR)).</p> |

13.3.6 Serial Control Register (SCR)

SCR is a register that enables or disables SCI transfer operations and interrupt requests, and is also used to selection of the transfer clock source. For details on interrupt requests, refer to section 13.9, Interrupts. Some bits in SCR have different functions in normal mode and smart card interface mode.

- Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 0)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | TIE | 0 | R/W | <p>Transmit Interrupt Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, the TXI interrupt request is enabled.</p> <p>TXI interrupt request cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the TDRE flag, then clearing it to 0, or clearing the TIE bit to 0.</p> |
| 6 | RIE | 0 | R/W | <p>Receive Interrupt Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, RXI and ERI interrupt requests are enabled.</p> <p>RXI and ERI interrupt request cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the RDRF flag, or the FER, PER, or ORER flag, then clearing the flag to 0, or clearing the RIE bit to 0.</p> |
| 5 | TE | 0 | R/W | <p>Transmit Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, transmission is enabled.</p> <p>In this state, serial transmission is started when transmit data is written to TDR and the TDRE flag in SSR is cleared to 0. SMR setting must be performed to decide the transfer format before setting the TE bit to 1. The TDRE flag in SSR is fixed at 1 if transmission is disabled by clearing this bit to 0.</p> |
| 4 | RE | 0 | R/W | <p>Receive Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, reception is enabled.</p> <p>Serial reception is started in this state when a start bit is detected in asynchronous mode or serial clock input is detected in clocked synchronous mode. SMR setting must be performed to decide the transfer format before setting the RE bit to 1.</p> <p>Clearing the RE bit to 0 does not affect the RDRF, FER, PER, and ORER flags, which retain their states.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 3 | MPIE | 0 | R/W | <p>Multiprocessor Interrupt Enable (enabled only when the MP bit in SMR is 1 in asynchronous mode)</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, receive data in which the multiprocessor bit is 0 is skipped, and setting of the RDRF, FER, and ORER status flags in SSR is prohibited. On receiving data in which the multiprocessor bit is 1, this bit is automatically cleared and normal reception is resumed. For details, refer to section 13.5, Multiprocessor Communication Function.</p> <p>When receive data including MPB = 0 is received, receive data transfer from RSR to RDR, receive error detection, and setting of the RDRF, FER, and ORER flags in SSR, is not performed. When receive data including MPB = 1 is received, the MPB bit in SSR is set to 1, the MPIE bit is cleared to 0 automatically, and generation of RXI and ERI interrupts (when the TIE and RIE bits in SCR are set to 1) and FER and ORER flag setting is enabled.</p> |
| 2 | TEIE | 0 | R/W | <p>Transmit End Interrupt Enable</p> <p>This bit is set to 1, TEI interrupt request is enabled. TEI cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the TDRE flag in SSR, then clearing it to 0 and clearing the TEND flag to 0, or clearing the TEIE bit to 0.</p> |
| 1 | CKE1 | 0 | R/W | Clock Enable 0 and 1 |
| 0 | CKE0 | 0 | R/W | <p>Selects the clock source and SCK pin function.</p> <p>Asynchronous mode</p> <p>00: Internal baud rate generator SCK pin functions as I/O port</p> <p>01: Internal baud rate generator Outputs a clock of the same frequency as the bit rate from the SCK pin.</p> <p>1X: External clock Inputs a clock with a frequency 16 times the bit rate from the SCK pin.</p> <p>Clocked synchronous mode</p> <p>0X: Internal clock (SCK pin functions as clock output)</p> <p>1X: External clock (SCK pin functions as clock input)</p> |

Legend:

X: Don't care

- Smart Card Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 1)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | TIE | 0 | R/W | <p>Transmit Interrupt Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, TXI interrupt request is enabled. TXI interrupt request cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the TDRE flag in SSR, then clearing it to 0, or clearing the TIE bit to 0.</p> |
| 6 | RIE | 0 | R/W | <p>Receive Interrupt Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, RXI and ERI interrupt requests are enabled.</p> <p>RXI and ERI interrupt request cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the RDRF, FER, PER, or ORER flag in SSR, then clearing the flag to 0, or clearing the RIE bit to 0.</p> |
| 5 | TE | 0 | R/W | <p>Transmit Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, transmission is enabled. In this state, serial transmission is started when transmit data is written to TDR and the TDRE flag in SSR is cleared to 0.</p> <p>SMR setting must be performed to decide the transfer format before setting the TE bit to 1. When this bit is cleared to 0, the transmission operation is disabled, and the TDRE flag is fixed at 1.</p> |
| 4 | RE | 0 | R/W | <p>Receive Enable</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, reception is enabled. Serial reception is started in this state when a start bit is detected in asynchronous mode or serial clock input is detected in clocked synchronous mode.</p> <p>SMR setting must be performed to decide the reception format before setting the RE bit to 1.</p> <p>Clearing the RE bit to 0 does not affect the RDRF, FER, PER, and ORER flags, which retain their states.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 3 | MPIE | 0 | R/W | <p>Multiprocessor Interrupt Enable (enabled only when the MP bit in SMR is 1 in asynchronous mode)</p> <p>Write 0 to this bit in Smart Card interface mode.</p> <p>When receive data including MPB = 0 is received, receive data transfer from RSR to RDR, receive error detection, and setting of the RERF, FER, and ORER flags in SSR, are not performed.</p> <p>When receive data including MPB = 1 is received, the MPB bit in SSR is set to 1, the MPIE bit is cleared to 0 automatically, and generation of RXI and ERI interrupts (when the TIE and RIE bits in SCR are set to 1) and FER and ORER flag setting are enabled.</p> |
| 2 | TEIE | 0 | R/W | <p>Transmit End Interrupt Enable</p> <p>Write 0 to this bit in Smart Card interface mode.</p> <p>TEI cancellation can be performed by reading 1 from the TDRE flag in SSR, then clearing it to 0 and clearing the TEND flag to 0, or clearing the TEIE bit to 0.</p> |
| 1 | CKE1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Clock Enable 0 and 1</p> <p>Enables or disables clock output from the SCK pin. The clock output can be dynamically switched in GSM mode. For details, refer to section 13.7.9, Clock Output Control.</p> <p>When the GM bit in SMR is 0:</p> <p>00: Output disabled (SCK pin can be used as an I/O port pin)</p> <p>01: Clock output</p> <p>1X: Reserved</p> <p>When the GM bit in SMR is 1:</p> <p>00: Output fixed low</p> <p>01: Clock output</p> <p>10: Output fixed high</p> <p>11: Clock output</p> |
| 0 | CKE0 | 0 | | |

Legend:

X: Don't care

13.3.7 Serial Status Register (SSR)

SSR is a register containing status flags of the SCI and multiprocessor bits for transfer. 1 cannot be written to flags TDRE, RDRF, ORER, PER, and FER; they can only be cleared. Some bits in SSR have different functions in normal mode and smart card interface mode.

- Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 0)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|---------------------|--|
| 7 | TDRE | 1 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Transmit Data Register Empty</p> <p>Displays whether TDR contains transmit data.</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the TE bit in SCR is 0 • When data is transferred from TDR to TSR and data can be written to TDR <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1^{*3} • When the DMAC or the DTC^{*2} is activated by a TXI interrupt request and writes data to TDR |
| 6 | RDRF | 0 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Receive Data Register Full</p> <p>Indicates that the received data is stored in RDR.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When serial reception ends normally and receive data is transferred from RSR to RDR <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 0 is written to RDRF after reading RDRF = 1^{*3} • When the DMAC or the DTC^{*2} is activated by an RXI interrupt and transferred data from RDR <p>RDR and the RDRF flag are not affected and retain their previous values when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0. The RDRF flag is not affected and retains their previous values when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|---------------------|---|
| 5 | ORER | 0 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Overrun Error</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the next serial reception is completed while RDRF = 1 The receive data prior to the overrun error is retained in RDR, and the data received subsequently is lost. Also, subsequent serial reception cannot be continued while the ORER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either. <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to ORER after reading ORER = 1^{*3} The ORER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0. |
| 4 | FER | 0 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Framing Error</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the stop bit is 0 In 2-stop-bit mode, only the first stop bit is checked for a value of 0; the second stop bits not checked. If a framing error occurs, the receive data is transferred to RDR but the RDRF flag is not set. Also, subsequent serial reception cannot be continued while the FER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either. <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to FER after reading FER = 1^{*3} The FER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0. |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|---------------------|--|
| 3 | PER | 0 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Parity Error</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a parity error is detected during reception If a parity error occurs, the receive data is transferred to RDR but the RDRF flag is not set. Also, subsequent serial reception cannot be continued while the PER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either. <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to PER after reading PER = 1^{*3} The PER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0. |
| 2 | TEND | 1 | R | <p>Transmit End</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the TE bit in SCR is 0 When TDRE = 1 at transmission of the last bit of a 1-byte serial transmit character <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1 When the DMAC or the DTC^{*2} is activated by a TXI interrupt and writes data to TDR |
| 1 | MPB | 0 | R | <p>Multiprocessor Bit</p> <p>MPB stores the multiprocessor bit in the receive data. When the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0 its previous state is retained. This bit retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.</p> |
| 0 | MPBT | 0 | R/W | <p>Multiprocessor Bit Transfer</p> <p>MPBT stores the multiprocessor bit to be added to the transmit data.</p> |

- Notes:
- The write value should always be 0 to clear the flag.
 - The clearing conditions using the DTC are that DISEL bit be cleared to 0 and the transfer counter value be other than 0.
 - To clear the flag by the CPU on the H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T, and H8S/2215C, reread the flag after writing 0 to it.

- Smart Card Interface Mode (When SMIF in SCMR is 1)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|---------------------|--|
| 7 | TDRE | 1 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Transmit Data Register Empty</p> <p>Indicates whether TDR contains transmit data.</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the TE bit in SCR is 0 • When data is transferred from TDR to TSR and data can be written to TDR <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1^{*3} • When the DMAC or the DTC^{*2} is activated by a TXI interrupt request and writes data to TDR |
| 6 | RDRF | 0 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Receive Data Register Full</p> <p>Indicates that the received data is stored in RDR.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When serial reception ends normally and receive data is transferred from RSR to RDR <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 0 is written to RDRF after reading RDRF = 1^{*3} • When the DMAC or the DTC^{*2} is activated by an RXI interrupt and transferred data from RDR <p>The RDRF flag is not affected and retains their previous values when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.</p> <p>If reception of the next data is completed while the RDRF flag is still set to 1, an overrun error will occur and the receive data will be lost.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|---------------------|---|
| 5 | ORER | 0 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Overrun Error</p> <p>Indicates that an overrun error occurred during reception, causing abnormal termination.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the next serial reception is completed while RDRF = 1 <p>The receive data prior to the overrun error is retained in RDR, and the data received subsequently is lost. Also, subsequent serial cannot be continued while the ORER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either.</p> <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to ORER after reading ORER = 1^{*3} <p>The ORER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.</p> |
| 4 | ERS | 0 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Error Signal Status</p> <p>Indicates that the status of an error, signal 1 returned from the reception side at reception</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the low level of the error signal is sampled <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to ERS after reading ERS = 1^{*3} <p>The ERS flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.</p> |
| 3 | PER | 0 | R/(W) ^{*1} | <p>Parity Error</p> <p>Indicates that a parity error occurred during reception using parity addition in asynchronous mode, causing abnormal termination.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a parity error is detected during reception <p>If a parity error occurs, the receive data is transferred to RDR but the RDRF flag is not set. Also, subsequent serial reception cannot be continued while the PER flag is set to 1. In clocked synchronous mode, serial transmission cannot be continued, either.</p> <p>[Clearing condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written to PER after reading PER = 1^{*3} <p>The PER flag is not affected and retains its previous state when the RE bit in SCR is cleared to 0.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 2 | TEND | 1 | R | <p>Transmit End</p> <p>This bit is set to 1 when no error signal has been sent back from the receiving end and the next transmit data is ready to be transferred to TDR.</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the TE bit in SCR is 0 and the ERS bit is also 0 • When the ESR bit is 0 and the TDRE bit is 1 after the specified interval following transmission of 1-byte data. <p>The timing of bit setting differs according to the register setting as follows:</p> <p>When GM = 0 and BLK = 0, 2.5 etu after transmission starts</p> <p>When GM = 0 and BLK = 1, 1.0 etu after transmission starts</p> <p>When GM = 1 and BLK = 0, 1.5 etu after transmission starts</p> <p>When GM = 1 and BLK = 1, 1.0 etu after transmission starts</p> <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1 • When the DMAC or the DTC*² is activated by a TXI interrupt and transfers transmission data to TDR |
| 1 | MPB | 0 | R | <p>Multiprocessor Bit</p> <p>This bit is not used in Smart Card interface mode.</p> |
| 0 | MPBT | 0 | R/W | <p>Multiprocessor Bit Transfer</p> <p>Write 0 to this bit in Smart Card interface mode.</p> |

- Notes:
1. The write value should always be 0 to clear the flag.
 2. The clearing conditions using the DTC are that DISEL bit be cleared to 0 and the transfer counter value be other than 0.
 3. To clear the flag by the CPU on the H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T, and H8S/2215C, reread the flag after writing 0 to it.

13.3.8 Smart Card Mode Register (SCMR)

SCMR selects the operation in smart card interface or the data Transfer formats.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 4 | — | All 1 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 1. |
| 3 | DIR | 0 | R/W | Smart Card Data Transfer Direction Selects the serial/parallel conversion format. 0: LSB-first in transfer 1: MSB-first in transfer The bit setting is valid only when the transfer data format is 8 bits. |
| 2 | INV | 0 | R/W | Smart Card Data Invert Specifies inversion of the data logic level. The SINV bit does not affect the logic level of the parity bit. To invert the parity bit, invert the O/\bar{E} bit in SMR. 0: TDR contents are transmitted as they are. Receive data is stored as it is in RDR 1: TDR contents are inverted before being transmitted. Receive data is stored in inverted form in RDR |
| 1 | — | 1 | — | Reserved This bit is always read as 1. |
| 0 | SMIF | 0 | R/W | Smart Card Interface Mode Select When this bit is set to 1, smart card interface mode is selected. 0: Normal asynchronous or clocked synchronous mode 1: Smart card interface mode |

13.3.9 Serial Extended Mode Register (SEMR) (Only for Channel 0 in H8S/2215)

SEMR extends the functions of SCI_0. SEMR0 enables selection of the SCI_0 select function in synchronous mode, base clock setting in asynchronous mode, and also clock source selection and automatic transfer rate setting. Figure 13.3 shows an example of the internal base clock when an average transfer rate is selected and figure 13.4 shows as example of the setting when the TPU clock input is selected.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | SSE | 0 | R/W | <p>SCI_0 Select Enable</p> <p>Allows selection of the SCI0 select function when an external clock is input in synchronous mode.</p> <p>The SSE setting is valid when external clock input is used (CKE1 = 1 in SCR) in synchronous mode ($C/\bar{A} = 1$ in SMR).</p> <p>0: SCI_0 select function disabled 1: SCI_0 select function enabled</p> <p>When the SCI_0 select function is enabled, if 1 is input to the PG1/$\overline{IRQ7}$ pin, TxD0 output goes to the high-impedance state, SCK0 input is fixed high.</p> |
| 6 to 4 | — | Undefined | — | <p>Reserved</p> <p>The write value should always be 0.</p> |
| 3 | ABCS | 0 | R/W | <p>Asynchronous Base Clock Select</p> <p>Selects the 1-bit-interval base clock in asynchronous mode. The ABCS setting is valid in asynchronous mode ($C/\bar{A} = 0$ in SMR).</p> <p>0: SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate 1: SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 8 times transfer rate</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 2 | ACS2 | 0 | R/W | Asynchronous Clock Source Select 2 to 0 |
| 1 | ACS1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the clock source in asynchronous mode. |
| 0 | ACS0 | 0 | R/W | When an average transfer rate is selected, the base clock is set automatically regardless of the ABCS value. Note that average transfer rates are not supported for operating frequencies other than 10.667 MHz and 16 MHz. The setting in bits ACS2 to ACS0 is valid when external clock input is used (CKE1 = 1 in SCR) in asynchronous mode (C/A = 0 in SMR). Figures 13.3 and 13.4 show setting examples. 000: External clock input 001: 115.152 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 10.667$ MHz only) is selected* (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate) 010: 460.606 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 10.667$ MHz only) is selected* (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 8 times transfer rate) 011: Reserved 100: TPU clock input (AND of TIOCA1 and TIOCA2) The signal generated by TIOCA1 and TIOCA2, which are the compare match outputs for TPU_1 and TPU_2 or PWM outputs, is used as a base clock. Note that IRQ0 and IRQ1 cannot be used since TIOCA1 and TIOCA2 are used as outputs. The high pulse width for TIOCA1 should be its low pulse width or less. 101: 115.196 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 16$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate) 110: 460.784 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 16$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate) 111: 720 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 16$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 8 times transfer rate) |

Note: * Cannot be used in this LSI because the operating frequency ϕ in this LSI is 13 MHz or greater.

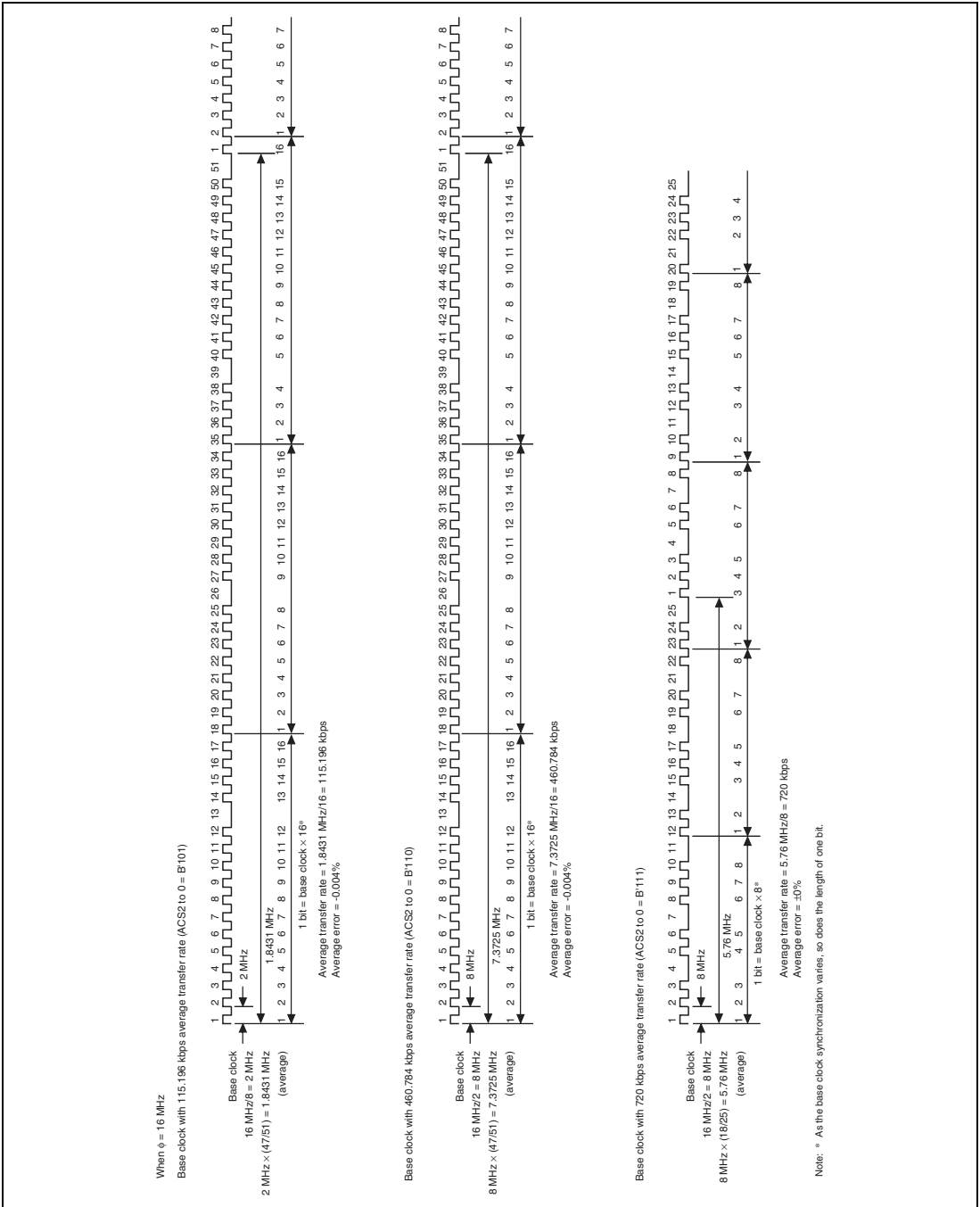


Figure 13.4 Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate Is Selected (1)

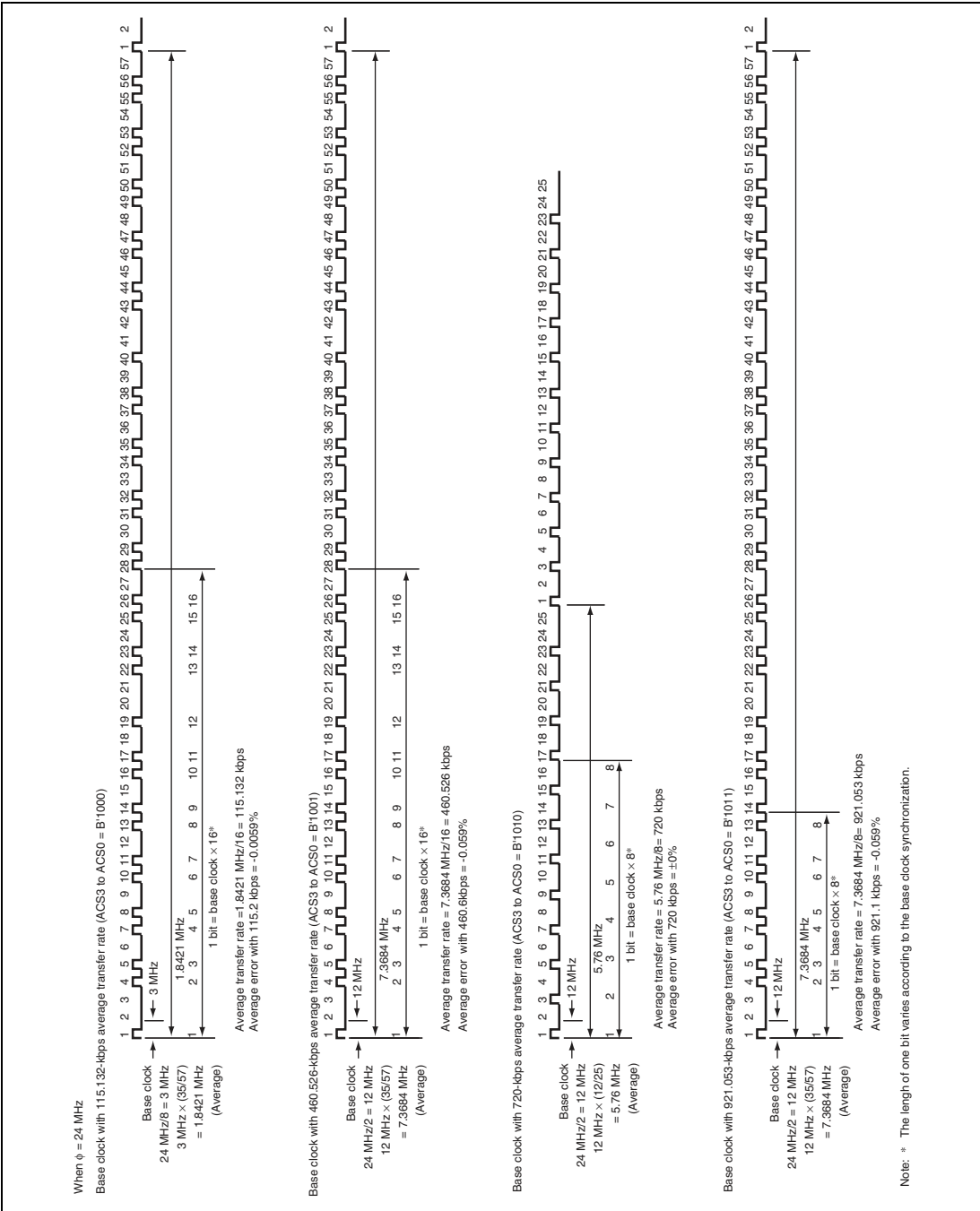
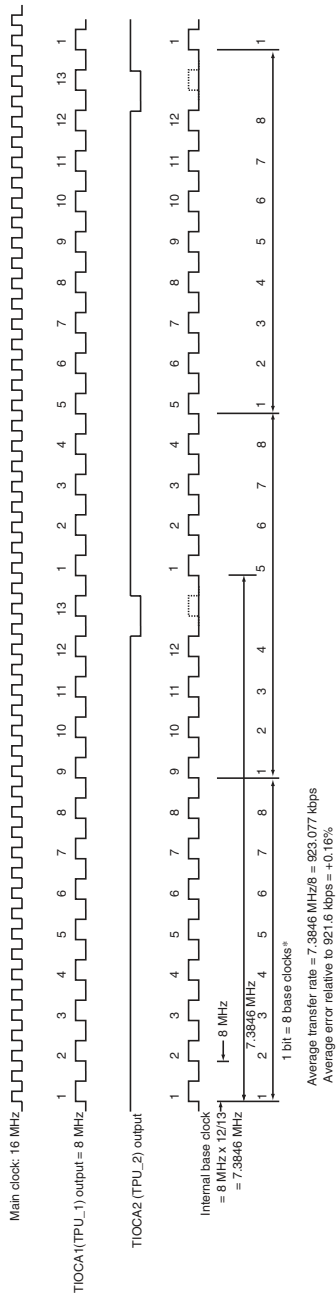


Figure 13.4 Examples of Base Clock when Average Transfer Rate Is Selected (2)

Example for 921.6 kbps when $\phi = 16$ MHz
 Generation of clock with 923.077 kbps average transfer rate by means of TPU (ACCS2 to 0 = B'100)
 (1) An 8 MHz base clock provided by TPU_1 is multiplied by 12/13 by TPU_2 to generate a 7.3846 MHz base clock
 (2) By making 1 bit = 8 base clocks, the average transfer rate is made 7.3846 MHz/8 = 923.077 kbps.

Sample TPU and SCI settings

- TMDR_1 = TMDR_2 = H'00 (PWM mode 1)
- TCR_1 = H'20 (TCNT_1 incremented on rising edge of ϕ 1, TCNT_1 cleared by TGRA_1 compare match)
- TGRB_1 = H'0000, TGRA_1 = H'0001
- TCR_1 = H'21 (output on TGRB_1 compare match, TIOCA1 initial output 0, 0 output on TGRA_1 compare match)
- TCR_2 = H'2C (TCNT_2 incremented on falling edge of TCLKA (TIOCA1), TCNT_2 cleared by TGRA_2 compare match)
- TGRB_2 = H'0000, TGRA_2 = H'000C
- TCR_2 = H'21 (output on TGRB_2 compare match, TIOCA2 initial output 0, 0 output on TGRA_2 compare match)
- SEMR = H'0C (ABCS = 1, ACS2-0 = B'100)



Note: * As the base clock synchronization varies, so does the length of one bit.

Figure 13.5 Example of Average Transfer Rate Setting when TPU Clock Is Input (1)

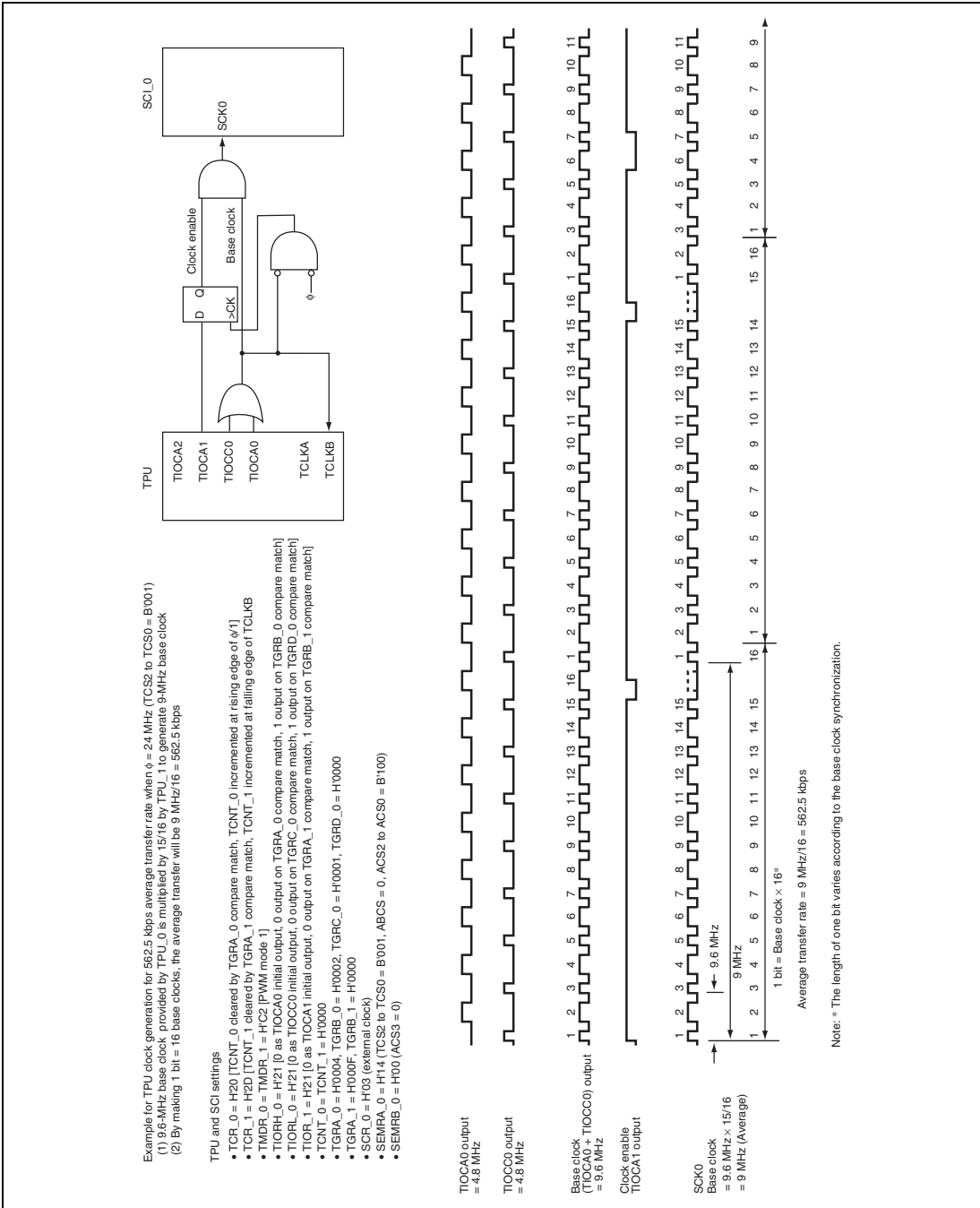
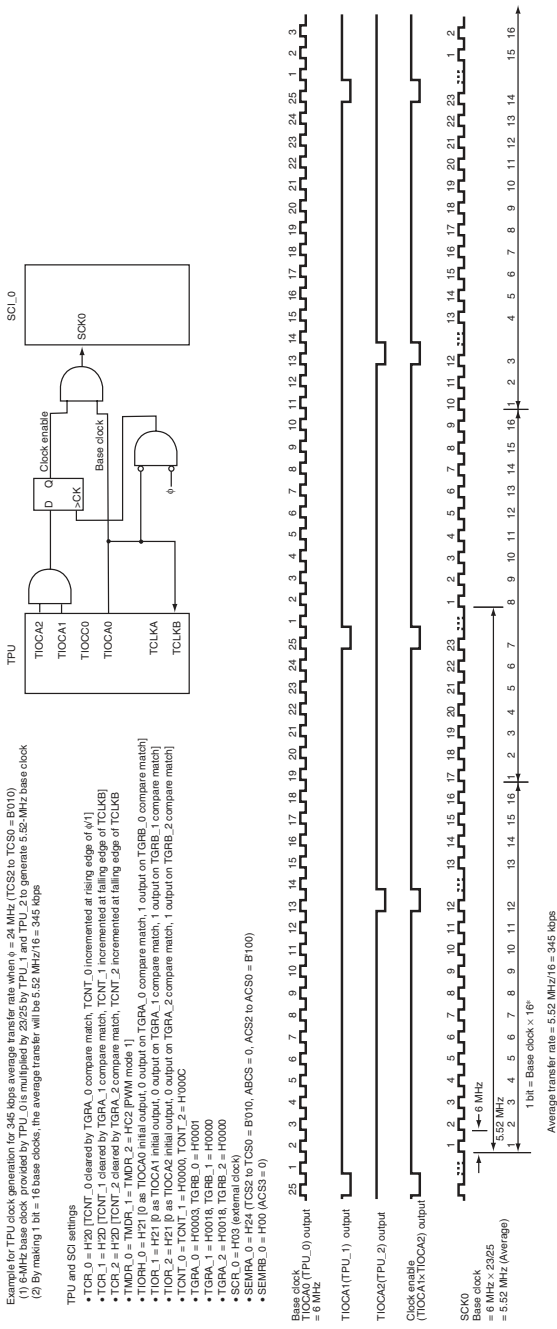


Figure 13.5 Example of Average Transfer Rate Setting when TPU Clock Is Input (2)



Example for TPU clock generation for 345 kbps average transfer rate when $\phi = 24$ MHz (TCS2 to TCS0 = B010)

(1) 6-MHz base clock provided by TPU_0 is multiplied by 2525 by TPU_1 and TPU_2 to generate 5.52-MHz base clock
 (2) By making 1 bit = 16 base clocks, the average transfer rate is 345 kbps (6 MHz/16 = 345 kbps)

TPU and SCI settings

- TOR_0 = H20 (TCNT_0 cleared by TGRA_0 compare match, TONT_0 incremented at rising edge of $\phi/1$)
- TOR_1 = H20 (TCNT_1 cleared by TGRA_1 compare match, TONT_1 incremented at falling edge of TCLKB)
- TOR_2 = H20 (TCNT_2 cleared by TGRA_2 compare match, TONT_2 incremented at falling edge of TCLKB)
- TMOR_0 = TMDR_1 = TMOR_2 = HC2 (PWM mode 1)
- TIOH0_0 = H21 (0 as TIOCA0 initial output, 0 output on TGRA_0 compare match, 1 output on TGRB_0 compare match)
- TIOH_1 = H21 (0 as TIOCA1 initial output, 0 output on TGRA_1 compare match, 1 output on TGRB_1 compare match)
- TIOH_2 = H21 (0 as TIOCA2 initial output, 0 output on TGRA_2 compare match, 1 output on TGRB_2 compare match)
- TCR_0 = TONT_1 = H0000, TONT_2 = H000C
- TGRA_0 = TGRA_1 = TGRA_2 = H0000
- TGRB_1 = H0018, TGRB_2 = H0000
- TGRA_2 = H0018, TGRB_2 = H0000
- SCR_0 = H03 (external clock)
- SEMRA_0 = H24 (TCS2 to TCS0 = B010), ABCS = 0, ACS2 to ACS0 = B100)
- SEMRB_0 = H00 (ACSS = 0)

Note: * The length of one bit varies according to the base clock synchronization.

Figure 13.5 Example of Average Transfer Rate Setting when TPU Clock Is Input (3)

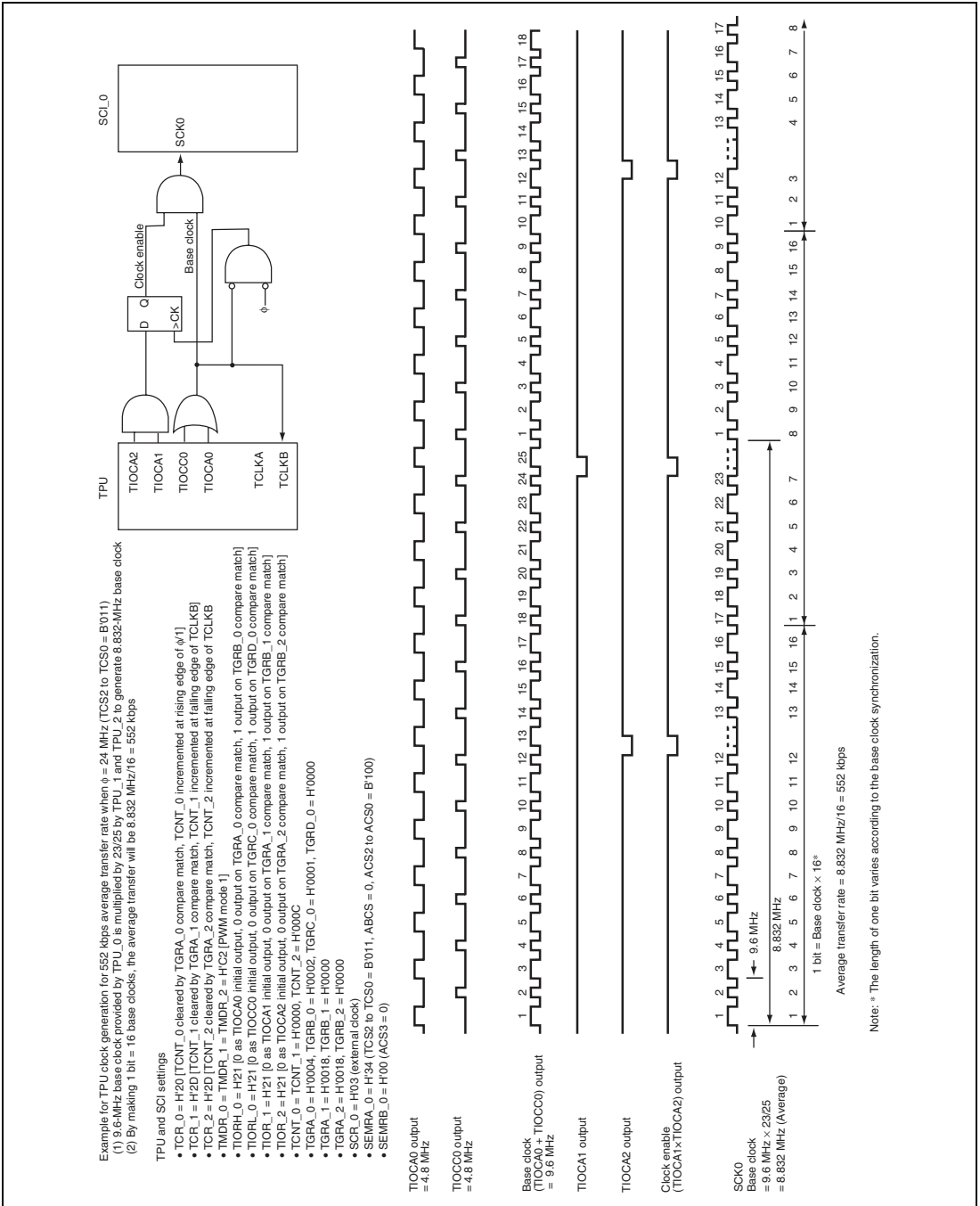


Figure 13.5 Example of Average Transfer Rate Setting when TPU Clock Is Input (4)

13.3.10 Serial Extended Mode Register A_0 (SEMRA_0) (Only for Channel 0 in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

SEMRA_0 extends the functions of SCI_0. SEMR0 enables selection of the SCI_0 select function in synchronous mode, base clock setting in asynchronous mode, and also clock source selection and automatic transfer rate setting. Figure 13.4 shows an example of the internal base clock when an average transfer rate is selected and figure 13.5 shows as example of the setting when the TPU clock input is selected.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--|-----------|------------|--------------|-------|-------|-------|-----|--------|--------|---------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----|-----------------|--------|-----------|---------------------------------------|-----------|-----|--------|-----------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|-----------|-----|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|-----------|-----|-------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| 7 | SSE | 0 | R/W | <p>SCI_0 Select Enable</p> <p>Allows selection of the SCI0 select function when an external clock is input in synchronous mode.</p> <p>The SSE setting is valid when external clock input is used (CKE1 = 1 in SCR) in synchronous mode (C/\bar{A} = 1 in SMR).</p> <p>0: SCI_0 select function disabled 1: SCI_0 select function enabled</p> <p>When the SCI_0 select function is enabled, if 1 is input to the PG1/IRQ7 pin, TxD0 output goes to the high-impedance state, SCK0 input is fixed high.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | TCS2 | 0 | R/W | TPU Clock Select | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | TCS1 | 0 | R/W | When the TPU clock is input (ACS3 to ACS0 = B'0100) as the clock source in asynchronous mode, serial transfer clock is generated depending on the combination of the TPU clock. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | TCS0 | 0 | R/W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Base Clock</th> <th>Clock Enable</th> <th>TCLKA</th> <th>TCLKB</th> <th>TCLKC</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>000</td> <td>TIOCA1</td> <td>TIOCA2</td> <td>Base clock written in the left column</td> <td>Pin input</td> <td>Pin input</td> </tr> <tr> <td>001</td> <td>TIOCA0 TIOCC0</td> <td>TIOCA1</td> <td>Pin input</td> <td>Base clock written in the left column</td> <td>Pin input</td> </tr> <tr> <td>010</td> <td>TIOCA0</td> <td>TIOCA1 & TIOCA2</td> <td>Pin input</td> <td>Base clock written in the left column</td> <td>Pin input</td> </tr> <tr> <td>011</td> <td>TIOCA0 TIOCC0</td> <td>TIOCA1 & TIOCA2</td> <td>Pin input</td> <td>Base clock written in the left column</td> <td>Pin input</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1xx</td> <td colspan="5">Reserved (Setting prohibited)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | | Base Clock | Clock Enable | TCLKA | TCLKB | TCLKC | 000 | TIOCA1 | TIOCA2 | Base clock written in the left column | Pin input | Pin input | 001 | TIOCA0 TIOCC0 | TIOCA1 | Pin input | Base clock written in the left column | Pin input | 010 | TIOCA0 | TIOCA1 & TIOCA2 | Pin input | Base clock written in the left column | Pin input | 011 | TIOCA0 TIOCC0 | TIOCA1 & TIOCA2 | Pin input | Base clock written in the left column | Pin input | 1xx | Reserved (Setting prohibited) | | | | |
| | Base Clock | Clock Enable | TCLKA | TCLKB | TCLKC | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 000 | TIOCA1 | TIOCA2 | Base clock written in the left column | Pin input | Pin input | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 001 | TIOCA0 TIOCC0 | TIOCA1 | Pin input | Base clock written in the left column | Pin input | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 010 | TIOCA0 | TIOCA1 & TIOCA2 | Pin input | Base clock written in the left column | Pin input | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 011 | TIOCA0 TIOCC0 | TIOCA1 & TIOCA2 | Pin input | Base clock written in the left column | Pin input | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1xx | Reserved (Setting prohibited) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Legend:

&: AND (logical multiplication)

| : OR (logical addition)

Note: The functions of bits 6 to 4 are not supported by the E6000 emulator. Figure 13.5 shows the setting examples.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 3 | ABCS | 0 | R/W | <p>Asynchronous Base Clock Select</p> <p>Selects the 1-bit-interval base clock in asynchronous mode. The ABCS setting is valid in asynchronous mode ($C/\bar{A} = 0$ in SMR).</p> <p>0: SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate</p> <p>1: SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 8 times transfer rate</p> |
| 2 | ACS2 | 0 | R/W | Asynchronous Clock Source Select 2 to 0 |
| 1 | ACS1 | 0 | R/W | <p>These bits select the clock source in asynchronous mode depending on the combination with the bit 7 (ACS3) in SEMRB_0 (serial extended mode register B_0). When an average transfer rate is selected, the base clock is set automatically regardless of the ABCS value. Note that average transfer rates support only 10.667 MHz, 16 MHz, and 24 MHz, and not support other operating frequencies.</p> <p>Set ACS3 to ACS0 when inputting the external clock (the CKE1 bit in the SCR register is 1) in asynchronous mode (the C/\bar{A} bit in the SMR register is 0). Figures 13.4 and 13.5 show the setting examples.</p> <p>ACS 3210</p> <p>0000: External clock input</p> <p>0001: 115.152 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 10.667$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate)</p> <p>0010: 460.606 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 10.667$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate)</p> <p>0011: 921.569 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 16$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate)</p> <p>0100: TPU clock input</p> <p>The signal generated by TIOCA0, TIOCC0, TIOCA1, and TIOCA2, which are the compare match outputs for TPU_0 to TPU_2 or PWM outputs, is used as a base clock. Note that $\overline{IRQ0}$ and $\overline{IRQ1}$ cannot be used since TIOCA1 and TIOCA2 are used as outputs.</p> |
| 0 | ACS0 | 0 | R/W | |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 2 | ACS2 | 0 | R/W | 0101: 115.196 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 16$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate) |
| 1 | ACS1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 0 | ACS0 | 0 | R/W | |
| | | | | 0110: 460.784 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 16$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate) |
| | | | | 0111: 720 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 16$ MHz only) is selected (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate) |
| | | | | 1000: 115.132 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 24$ MHz only) is selected* (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate) |
| | | | | 1001: 460.526 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 24$ MHz only) is selected* (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of 16 times transfer rate) |
| | | | | 1010: 720 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 24$ MHz only) is selected* (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate) |
| | | | | 1011: 921.053 kbps average transfer rate (for $\phi = 24$ MHz only) is selected* (SCI_0 operates on base clock with frequency of eight times transfer rate) |
| | | | | 11 \times \times : Reserved (Setting prohibited) |

Note: * The average transfer rate select functions for 24 MHz only (ACS3 to ACS0 = B'10XX) are not supported by the E6000 emulator.

13.3.11 Serial Extended Mode Register B_0 (SEMRB_0) (Only for Channel 0 in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

SEMRB_0 enables clock source selection with the combination of SEMRA_0, automatic transfer rate setting, and control of port 1 pins (P16, P14, P12, and P10) at the transfer clock generation by TPU.

Note: SEMRB_0 is not supported by the E6000 emulator.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | ACS3 | 0 | R/W | <p>Asynchronous Clock Source Select</p> <p>Selects the clock source in asynchronous mode depending on the combination with the ACS2 to ACS0 (bits 2 to 0 in SEMRA_0). For details, see section 13.3.9, Serial Extended Mode Register (SEMR) (Only for channel 0 in H8S/2215).</p> |
| 6 to 4 | — | Undefined | — | <p>Reserved</p> <p>The write value should always be 0.</p> |
| 3 | TIOCA2E | 1 | R/W | <p>TIOCA2 Output Enable</p> <p>Controls the TIOCA2 output on the P16 pin.</p> <p>When the TIOCA2 in TPU is output to generate the transfer clock, P16 is used as other function pin by setting this bit to 0.</p> <p>0: Disables output of TIOCA2 in TPU 1: Enables output of TIOCA2 in TPU</p> |
| 2 | TIOCA1E | 1 | R/W | <p>TIOCA1 Output Enable</p> <p>Controls the TIOCA1 output on the P14 pin.</p> <p>When the TIOCA1 in TPU is output to generate the transfer clock, P14 is used as other function pin by setting this bit to 0.</p> <p>0: Disables output of TIOCA1 in TPU 1: Enables output TIOCA1 in TPU</p> |
| 1 | TIOCC0E | 1 | R/W | <p>TIOCC0 Output Enable</p> <p>Controls the TIOCC0 output on the P12 pin.</p> <p>When the TIOCC0 in TPU is output to generate the transfer clock, P12 is used as other function pin by setting this bit to 0.</p> <p>0: Disables output of TIOCC0 in TPU 1: Enables output of TIOCC0 in TPU</p> |
| 0 | TIOCA0E | 1 | R/W | <p>TIOCA0 Output Enable</p> <p>Controls the TIOCA0 output on the P10 pin.</p> <p>When the TIOCA0 in TPU is output to generate the transfer clock, P10 is used as other function pin by setting this bit to 0.</p> <p>0: Disables output of TIOCA0 in TPU 1: Enables output of TIOCA0 in TPU</p> |

13.3.12 Bit Rate Register (BRR)

BRR is an 8-bit register that adjusts the bit rate. As the SCI performs baud rate generator control independently for each channel, different bit rates can be set for each channel. Table 13.2 shows the relationships between the N setting in BRR and bit rate B for normal asynchronous mode, clocked synchronous mode, and Smart Card interface mode. The initial value of BRR is H'FF, and it can be read from or written to by the CPU at all times.

Table 13.2 Relationships between the N Setting in BRR and Bit Rate B

| Mode | ABCS | Bit Rate | Error |
|---------------------------|------|--|---|
| Asynchronous mode | 0 | $B = \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)}$ | $\text{Error (\%)} = \left \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{B \times 64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)} - 1 \right \times 100$ |
| | 1 | $B = \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{32 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)}$ | $\text{Error (\%)} = \left \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{B \times 32 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)} - 1 \right \times 100$ |
| Clocked synchronous mode | x | $B = \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{8 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N + 1)}$ | — |
| Smart Card interface mode | x | $B = \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{S \times 2^{2n+1} \times (N + 1)}$ | $\text{Error (\%)} = \left \frac{\phi \times 10^6}{B \times S \times 2^{2n+1} \times (N + 1)} - 1 \right \times 100$ |

Legend:

B: Bit rate (bps)

N: BRR setting for baud rate generator ($0 \leq N \leq 255$)

ϕ : Operating frequency (MHz)

n, S: Determined by the SMR settings shown in the following tables.

x: Don't care

| SMR Setting | | | | SMR Setting | | |
|-------------|------|--------------|---|-------------|------|-----|
| CKS1 | CKS0 | Clock Source | n | BCP1 | BCP0 | S |
| 0 | 0 | ϕ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 32 |
| 0 | 1 | $\phi/4$ | 1 | 0 | 1 | 64 |
| 1 | 0 | $\phi/16$ | 2 | 1 | 0 | 372 |
| 1 | 1 | $\phi/64$ | 3 | 1 | 1 | 256 |

Table 13.3 shows sample N settings in BRR in normal asynchronous mode. Table 13.4 shows the maximum bit rate for each frequency in normal asynchronous mode. Table 13.6 shows sample N settings in BRR in clocked synchronous mode. Table 13.8 shows sample N settings in BRR in Smart Card interface mode. In Smart Card interface mode, S (the number of basic clock periods in

a 1-bit transfer interval) can be selected. For details, see section 13.7.5, Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin. Tables 13.5 and 13.7 show the maximum bit rates with external clock input.

When the ABCS bit in SCI_0's serial extended mode register (SEMR) is set to 1 in asynchronous mode, the maximum bit rates are twice those shown in table 13.3.

Table 13.3 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Asynchronous Mode)

| Bit Rate (bit/s) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|-----|-----------|----------|-----|-----------|--------|-----|-----------|---|-----|-----------|
| | 2 | | | 2.097152 | | | 2.4576 | | | 3 | | |
| | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) |
| 110 | 1 | 141 | 0.03 | 1 | 148 | -0.04 | 1 | 174 | -0.26 | 1 | 212 | 0.03 |
| 150 | 1 | 103 | 0.16 | 1 | 108 | 0.21 | 1 | 127 | 0.00 | 1 | 155 | 0.16 |
| 300 | 0 | 207 | 0.16 | 0 | 217 | 0.21 | 0 | 255 | 0.00 | 1 | 77 | 0.16 |
| 600 | 0 | 103 | 0.16 | 0 | 108 | 0.21 | 0 | 127 | 0.00 | 0 | 155 | 0.16 |
| 1200 | 0 | 51 | 0.16 | 0 | 54 | -0.70 | 0 | 63 | 0.00 | 0 | 77 | 0.16 |
| 2400 | 0 | 25 | 0.16 | 0 | 26 | 1.14 | 0 | 31 | 0.00 | 0 | 38 | 0.16 |
| 4800 | 0 | 12 | 0.16 | 0 | 13 | -2.48 | 0 | 15 | 0.00 | 0 | 19 | -2.34 |
| 9600 | — | — | — | — | 6 | -2.48 | 0 | 7 | 0.00 | 0 | 9 | -2.34 |
| 19200 | — | — | — | — | — | — | 0 | 3 | 0.00 | 0 | 4 | -2.34 |
| 31250 | 0 | 1 | 0.00 | — | — | — | — | — | — | 0 | 2 | 0.00 |
| 38400 | — | — | — | — | — | — | 0 | 1 | 0.00 | — | — | — |

| Bit Rate (bit/s) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|-----|-----------|---|-----|-----------|--------|-----|-----------|---|-----|-----------|
| | 3.6864 | | | 4 | | | 4.9152 | | | 5 | | |
| | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) |
| 110 | 2 | 64 | 0.70 | 2 | 70 | 0.03 | 2 | 86 | 0.31 | 2 | 88 | -0.25 |
| 150 | 1 | 191 | 0.00 | 1 | 207 | 0.16 | 1 | 255 | 0.00 | 2 | 64 | 0.16 |
| 300 | 1 | 95 | 0.00 | 1 | 103 | 0.16 | 1 | 127 | 0.00 | 1 | 129 | 0.16 |
| 600 | 0 | 191 | 0.00 | 0 | 207 | 0.16 | 0 | 255 | 0.00 | 1 | 64 | 0.16 |
| 1200 | 0 | 95 | 0.00 | 0 | 103 | 0.16 | 0 | 127 | 0.00 | 0 | 129 | 0.16 |
| 2400 | 0 | 47 | 0.00 | 0 | 51 | 0.16 | 0 | 63 | 0.00 | 0 | 64 | 0.16 |
| 4800 | 0 | 23 | 0.00 | 0 | 25 | 0.16 | 0 | 31 | 0.00 | 0 | 32 | -1.36 |
| 9600 | 0 | 11 | 0.00 | 0 | 12 | 0.16 | 0 | 15 | 0.00 | 0 | 15 | 1.73 |
| 19200 | 0 | 5 | 0.00 | — | — | — | 0 | 7 | 0.00 | 0 | 7 | 1.73 |
| 31250 | — | — | — | 0 | 3 | 0.00 | 0 | 4 | -1.70 | 0 | 4 | 0.00 |
| 38400 | 0 | 2 | 0.00 | — | — | — | 0 | 3 | 0.00 | 0 | 3 | 1.73 |

| Bit Rate (bit/s) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|-----|-----------|-------|-----|-----------|--------|-----|-----------|---|-----|-----------|
| | 6 | | | 6.144 | | | 7.3728 | | | 8 | | |
| | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) |
| 110 | 2 | 106 | -0.44 | 2 | 108 | 0.08 | 2 | 130 | -0.07 | 2 | 141 | 0.03 |
| 150 | 2 | 77 | 0.16 | 2 | 79 | 0.00 | 2 | 95 | 0.00 | 2 | 103 | 0.16 |
| 300 | 1 | 155 | 0.16 | 1 | 159 | 0.00 | 1 | 191 | 0.00 | 1 | 207 | 0.16 |
| 600 | 1 | 77 | 0.16 | 1 | 79 | 0.00 | 1 | 95 | 0.00 | 1 | 103 | 0.16 |
| 1200 | 0 | 155 | 0.16 | 0 | 159 | 0.00 | 0 | 191 | 0.00 | 0 | 207 | 0.16 |
| 2400 | 0 | 77 | 0.16 | 0 | 79 | 0.00 | 0 | 95 | 0.00 | 0 | 103 | 0.16 |
| 4800 | 0 | 38 | 0.16 | 0 | 39 | 0.00 | 0 | 47 | 0.00 | 0 | 51 | 0.16 |
| 9600 | 0 | 19 | -2.34 | 0 | 19 | 0.00 | 0 | 23 | 0.00 | 0 | 25 | 0.16 |
| 19200 | 0 | 9 | -2.34 | 0 | 9 | 0.00 | 0 | 11 | 0.00 | 0 | 12 | 0.16 |
| 31250 | 0 | 5 | 0.00 | 0 | 5 | 2.40 | — | — | — | 0 | 7 | 0.00 |
| 38400 | 0 | 4 | -2.34 | 0 | 4 | 0.00 | 0 | 5 | 0.00 | — | — | — |

| Bit Rate (bit/s) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|-----|-----------|----|-----|-----------|----|-----|-----------|--------|-----|-----------|
| | 9.8304 | | | 10 | | | 12 | | | 12.288 | | |
| | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) |
| 110 | 2 | 174 | -0.26 | 2 | 177 | -0.25 | 2 | 212 | 0.03 | 2 | 217 | 0.08 |
| 150 | 2 | 127 | 0.00 | 2 | 129 | 0.16 | 2 | 155 | 0.16 | 2 | 159 | 0.00 |
| 300 | 1 | 255 | 0.00 | 2 | 64 | 0.16 | 2 | 77 | 0.16 | 2 | 79 | 0.00 |
| 600 | 1 | 127 | 0.00 | 1 | 129 | 0.16 | 1 | 155 | 0.16 | 1 | 159 | 0.00 |
| 1200 | 0 | 255 | 0.00 | 1 | 64 | 0.16 | 1 | 77 | 0.16 | 1 | 79 | 0.00 |
| 2400 | 0 | 127 | 0.00 | 0 | 129 | 0.16 | 0 | 155 | 0.16 | 0 | 159 | 0.00 |
| 4800 | 0 | 63 | 0.00 | 0 | 64 | 0.16 | 0 | 77 | 0.16 | 0 | 79 | 0.00 |
| 9600 | 0 | 31 | 0.00 | 0 | 32 | -1.36 | 0 | 38 | 0.16 | 0 | 39 | 0.00 |
| 19200 | 0 | 15 | 0.00 | 0 | 15 | 1.73 | 0 | 19 | -2.34 | 0 | 19 | 0.00 |
| 31250 | 0 | 9 | -1.70 | 0 | 9 | 0.00 | 0 | 11 | 0.00 | 0 | 11 | 2.40 |
| 38400 | 0 | 7 | 0.00 | 0 | 7 | 1.73 | 0 | 9 | -2.34 | 0 | 9 | 0.00 |

| Bit Rate (bit/s) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|-----|-----------|---------|-----|-----------|----|-----|-----------|
| | 14 | | | 14.7456 | | | 16 | | |
| | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) |
| 110 | 2 | 248 | -0.17 | 3 | 64 | 0.70 | 3 | 70 | 0.03 |
| 150 | 2 | 181 | 0.16 | 2 | 191 | 0.00 | 2 | 207 | 0.16 |
| 300 | 2 | 90 | 0.16 | 2 | 95 | 0.00 | 2 | 103 | 0.16 |
| 600 | 1 | 181 | 0.16 | 1 | 191 | 0.00 | 1 | 207 | 0.16 |
| 1200 | 1 | 90 | 0.16 | 1 | 95 | 0.00 | 1 | 103 | 0.16 |
| 2400 | 0 | 181 | 0.16 | 0 | 191 | 0.00 | 0 | 207 | 0.16 |
| 4800 | 0 | 90 | 0.16 | 0 | 95 | 0.00 | 0 | 103 | 0.16 |
| 9600 | 0 | 45 | -0.93 | 0 | 47 | 0.00 | 0 | 51 | 0.16 |
| 19200 | 0 | 22 | -0.93 | 0 | 23 | 0.00 | 0 | 25 | 0.16 |
| 31250 | 0 | 13 | 0.00 | 0 | 14 | -1.70 | 0 | 15 | 0.00 |
| 38400 | — | — | — | 0 | 11 | 0.00 | 0 | 12 | 0.16 |

| Bit Rate (bps) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|-----|-----------|----|-----|-----------|---------|-----|-----------|----|-----|-----------|
| | 17.2032 | | | 18 | | | 19.6608 | | | 20 | | |
| | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) | n | N | Error (%) |
| 110 | 3 | 75 | 0.48 | 3 | 79 | -0.12 | 3 | 86 | 0.31 | 3 | 88 | -0.25 |
| 150 | 2 | 223 | 0.00 | 2 | 233 | 0.16 | 2 | 255 | 0.00 | 3 | 64 | 0.16 |
| 300 | 2 | 111 | 0.00 | 2 | 116 | 0.16 | 2 | 127 | 0.00 | 2 | 129 | 0.16 |
| 600 | 1 | 223 | 0.00 | 1 | 233 | 0.16 | 1 | 255 | 0.00 | 2 | 64 | 0.16 |
| 1200 | 1 | 111 | 0.00 | 1 | 116 | 0.16 | 1 | 127 | 0.00 | 1 | 129 | 0.16 |
| 2400 | 0 | 223 | 0.00 | 0 | 233 | 0.16 | 0 | 255 | 0.00 | 1 | 64 | 0.16 |
| 4800 | 0 | 111 | 0.00 | 0 | 116 | 0.16 | 0 | 127 | 0.00 | 0 | 129 | 0.16 |
| 9600 | 0 | 55 | 0.00 | 0 | 58 | -0.69 | 0 | 63 | 0.00 | 0 | 64 | 0.16 |
| 19200 | 0 | 27 | 0.00 | 0 | 28 | 1.02 | 0 | 31 | 0.00 | 0 | 32 | -1.36 |
| 31250 | 0 | 16 | 1.20 | 0 | 17 | 0.00 | 0 | 19 | -1.17 | 0 | 19 | 0.00 |
| 38400 | 0 | 13 | 0.00 | 0 | 14 | -2.34 | 0 | 15 | 0.00 | 0 | 15 | 1.73 |

| Bit Rate (bps) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|-------|
| | 24 | | |
| n | N | Error (%) | |
| 110 | 3 | 106 | -0.44 |
| 150 | 3 | 77 | 0.16 |
| 300 | 2 | 155 | 0.16 |
| 600 | 2 | 77 | 0.16 |
| 1200 | 1 | 155 | 0.16 |
| 2400 | 1 | 77 | 0.16 |
| 4800 | 0 | 155 | 0.16 |
| 9600 | 0 | 77 | 0.16 |
| 19200 | 0 | 38 | 0.16 |
| 31250 | 0 | 23 | 0.00 |
| 38400 | 0 | 19 | -2.34 |

Note: This table shows bit rates when the ABCS bit in SEMRA_0 is cleared to 0.
When the ABCS bit in SEMRA_0 is set to 1, the bit rates are twice those shown in this table.

In this LSI, operating frequency ϕ must be 13 MHz or greater.

Table 13.4 Maximum Bit Rate for Each Frequency (Asynchronous Mode)

| ϕ (MHz) | Maximum Bit Rate (kbps) | | | | ϕ (MHz) | Maximum Bit Rate (kbps) | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------|----------|---|---|--------------|-------------------------|----------|---|---|
| | ABCS = 0 | ABCS = 1 | n | N | | ABCS = 0 | ABCS = 1 | n | N |
| 2 | 62.5 | 125.0 | 0 | 0 | 9.8304 | 307.2 | 614.4 | 0 | 0 |
| 2.097152 | 65.536 | 131.027 | 0 | 0 | 10 | 312.5 | 625.0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2.4576 | 76.8 | 153.6 | 0 | 0 | 12 | 375.0 | 750.0 | 0 | 0 |
| 3 | 93.75 | 187.5 | 0 | 0 | 12.288 | 384.0 | 768.0 | 0 | 0 |
| 3.6864 | 115.2 | 230.4 | 0 | 0 | 14 | 437.5 | 875.0 | 0 | 0 |
| 4 | 125.0 | 250.0 | 0 | 0 | 14.7456 | 460.8 | 921.6 | 0 | 0 |
| 4.9152 | 153.6 | 307.2 | 0 | 0 | 16 | 500.0 | 1000.0 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 | 156.25 | 312.5 | 0 | 0 | 17.2032 | 537.6 | 1075.2 | 0 | 0 |
| 6 | 187.5 | 375.0 | 0 | 0 | 18 | 562.5 | 1125.0 | 0 | 0 |
| 6.144 | 192.0 | 384.0 | 0 | 0 | 19.6608 | 614.4 | 1228.8 | 0 | 0 |
| 7.3728 | 230.4 | 460.8 | 0 | 0 | 20 | 625.0 | 1250.0 | 0 | 0 |
| 8 | 250.0 | 500.0 | 0 | 0 | 24 | 750.0 | 1500.0 | 0 | 0 |

Table 13.5 Maximum Bit Rate with External Clock Input (Asynchronous Mode)

| ϕ (MHz) | External Input Clock (MHz) | Maximum Bit Rate (kbps) | | ϕ (MHz) | External Input Clock (MHz) | Maximum Bit Rate (kbps) | |
|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|----------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|----------|
| | | ABCS = 0 | ABCS = 1 | | | ABCS = 0 | ABCS = 1 |
| 2 | 0.5000 | 31.25 | 62.5 | 9.8304 | 2.4576 | 153.6 | 307.2 |
| 2.097152 | 0.5243 | 327.68 | 65.536 | 10 | 2.5000 | 156.25 | 312.5 |
| 2.4576 | 0.6144 | 38.4 | 76.8 | 12 | 3.0000 | 187.5 | 375.0 |
| 3 | 0.7500 | 46.875 | 93.75 | 12.288 | 3.0720 | 192.0 | 384.0 |
| 3.6864 | 0.9216 | 57.6 | 115.2 | 14 | 3.5000 | 218.75 | 437.0 |
| 4 | 1.0000 | 62.5 | 125.0 | 14.7456 | 3.6864 | 230.4 | 460.8 |
| 4.9152 | 1.2288 | 76.8 | 153.6 | 16 | 4.0000 | 250.0 | 500.0 |
| 5 | 1.2500 | 78.125 | 156.25 | 17.2032 | 4.3008 | 268.8 | 537.6 |
| 6 | 1.5000 | 93.75 | 187.5 | 18 | 4.5000 | 281.25 | 562.5 |
| 6.144 | 1.5360 | 96.0 | 192.0 | 19.6608 | 4.9152 | 307.2 | 614.4 |
| 7.3728 | 1.8432 | 115.2 | 230.4 | 20 | 5.0000 | 312.5 | 625.0 |
| 8 | 2.0000 | 125.0 | 250.0 | 24 | 6.0000 | 375.0 | 750.0 |

Note: In this LSI, operating frequency ϕ must be 13 MHz or greater.

Table 13.6 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

| Bit Rate (bps) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|-----|---|-----|---|-----|---|-----|----|-----|----|-----|----|-----|----|-----|
| | 2 | | 4 | | 6 | | 8 | | 10 | | 16 | | 20 | | 24 | |
| | n | N | n | N | n | N | n | N | n | N | n | N | n | N | n | N |
| 110 | 3 | 70 | — | — | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 250 | 2 | 124 | 2 | 249 | | | 3 | 124 | — | — | 3 | 249 | | | | |
| 500 | 1 | 249 | 2 | 124 | | | 2 | 249 | — | — | 3 | 124 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 k | 1 | 124 | 1 | 249 | | | 2 | 124 | — | — | 2 | 249 | — | — | — | — |
| 2.5 k | 0 | 199 | 1 | 99 | 1 | 149 | 1 | 199 | 1 | 249 | 2 | 99 | 2 | 124 | 2 | 149 |
| 5 k | 0 | 99 | 0 | 199 | 1 | 74 | 1 | 99 | 1 | 124 | 1 | 199 | 1 | 249 | 2 | 74 |
| 10 k | 0 | 49 | 0 | 99 | 0 | 149 | 0 | 199 | 0 | 249 | 1 | 99 | 1 | 124 | 1 | 149 |
| 25 k | 0 | 19 | 0 | 39 | 0 | 59 | 0 | 79 | 0 | 99 | 0 | 159 | 0 | 199 | 0 | 239 |
| 50 k | 0 | 9 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 29 | 0 | 39 | 0 | 49 | 0 | 79 | 0 | 99 | 0 | 119 |
| 100 k | 0 | 4 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 14 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 24 | 0 | 39 | 0 | 49 | 0 | 59 |
| 250 k | 0 | 1 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 5 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 15 | 0 | 19 | 0 | 23 |
| 500 k | 0 | 0* | 0 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 3 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 7 | 0 | 9 | 0 | 11 |
| 1 M | | | 0 | 0* | | | 0 | 1 | | | 0 | 3 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 5 |
| 2 M | | | | | | | 0 | 0* | | | 0 | 1 | | | 0 | 2 |
| 2.5 M | | | | | | | | | 0 | 0* | | | 0 | 1 | — | — |
| 4 M | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | 0* | | | | |
| 5 M | | | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | 0* | — | — |
| 6 M | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | 0* |

Legend:

Blank: Cannot be set.

—: Can be set, but there will be a degree of error.

*: Continuous transfer is not possible.

Table 13.7 Maximum Bit Rate with External Clock Input (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

| ϕ (MHz) | External Input Clock (MHz) | Maximum Bit Rate (Mbps) | ϕ (MHz) | External Input Clock (MHz) | Maximum Bit Rate (Mbps) |
|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 2 | 0.333 | 0.333 | 14 | 2.333 | 2.333 |
| 4 | 0.667 | 0.667 | 16 | 2.667 | 2.667 |
| 6 | 1.000 | 1.000 | 18 | 3.000 | 3.000 |
| 8 | 1.333 | 1.333 | 20 | 3.333 | 3.333 |
| 10 | 1.667 | 1.667 | 24 | 4.000 | 4.000 |
| 12 | 2.000 | 2.000 | | | |

Note: In this LSI, operating frequency ϕ must be 13 MHz or greater.

Table 13.8 BRR Settings for Various Bit Rates
(Smart Card Interface Mode, when $n = 0$ and $S = 372$)

| Bit Rate (bps) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|------|-----------|--------|-----------|-------|-----------|---------|-----------|-------|-----------|
| | 5.00 | | 7.00 | | 7.1424 | | 10.00 | | 10.7136 | | 13.00 | |
| | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) |
| 6720 | 0 | 0.01 | 1 | 30.00 | 1 | 28.57 | 1 | 0.01 | 1 | 7.14 | 2 | 13.33 |
| 9600 | 0 | 30.00 | 0 | 1.99 | 0 | 0.00 | 1 | 30.00 | 1 | 25.00 | 1 | 8.99 |

| Bit Rate (bps) | Operating Frequency ϕ (MHz) | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|-----------|
| | 14.2848 | | 16.00 | | 18.00 | | 20.00 | | 24.00 | |
| | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) | N | Error (%) |
| 6720 | 2 | 4.76 | 2 | 6.67 | 3 | 0.01 | 3 | 0.01 | 4 | 3.99 |
| 9600 | 1 | 0.00 | 1 | 12.01 | 2 | 15.99 | 2 | 6.66 | 2 | 12.01 |

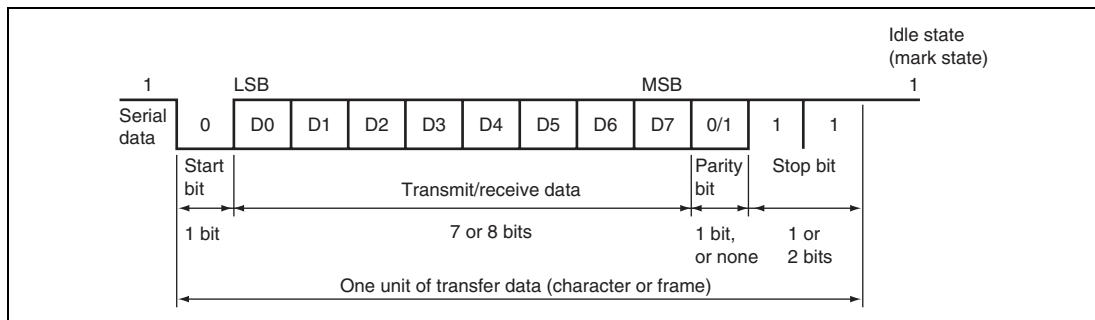
Table 13.9 Maximum Bit Rate at Various Frequencies (Smart Card Interface Mode)

| ϕ (MHz) | Maximum Bit Rate (bps) | | | | | n | N |
|--------------|------------------------|--------|---------|---------|--|---|---|
| | S = 32 | S = 64 | S = 256 | S = 372 | | | |
| 5.00 | 78125 | 39063 | 9766 | 6720 | | 0 | 0 |
| 6.00 | 93750 | 46875 | 11719 | 8065 | | | |
| 7.00 | 109375 | 54688 | 13672 | 9409 | | 0 | 0 |
| 7.1424 | 111600 | 55800 | 13950 | 9600 | | 0 | 0 |
| 10.00 | 156250 | 78125 | 19531 | 13441 | | 0 | 0 |
| 10.7136 | 167400 | 83700 | 20925 | 14400 | | 0 | 0 |
| 13.00 | 203125 | 101563 | 25391 | 17473 | | 0 | 0 |
| 14.2848 | 223200 | 111600 | 27900 | 19200 | | 0 | 0 |
| 16.00 | 250000 | 125000 | 31250 | 21505 | | 0 | 0 |
| 18.00 | 281250 | 140625 | 35156 | 24194 | | 0 | 0 |
| 20.00 | 312500 | 156250 | 39063 | 26882 | | 0 | 0 |
| 24.00 | 375000 | 187500 | 46875 | 32258 | | 0 | 0 |

Note: In this LSI, operating frequency ϕ must be 13 MHz or greater.

13.4 Operation in Asynchronous Mode

Figure 13.6 shows the general format for asynchronous serial communication. One frame consists of a start bit (low level), followed by data (in LSB-first order), a parity bit (high or low level), and finally stop bits (high level). In asynchronous serial communication, the transmission line is usually held in the mark state (high level). The SCI monitors the transmission line. When the transmission line goes to the space state (low level), the SCI recognizes a start bit and starts serial communication. Inside the SCI, the transmitter and receiver are independent units, enabling full-duplex. Both the transmitter and the receiver also have a double-buffered structure, so data can be read from or written during transmission or reception, enabling continuous data transfer.



**Figure 13.6 Data Format in Asynchronous Communication
(Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, Two Stop Bits)**

13.4.1 Data Transfer Format

Table 13.10 shows the data transfer formats that can be used in asynchronous mode. Any of 12 transfer formats can be selected according to the SMR setting. For details on the multiprocessor bit, refer to section 13.5, Multiprocessor Communication Function.

Table 13.10 Serial Transfer Formats (Asynchronous Mode)

| SMR Settings | | | | Serial Transfer Format and Frame Length | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------|----|----|------|---|------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|------|------|------|------|--|
| CHR | PE | MP | STOP | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | S | 8-bit data | | | | | | | | STOP | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | S | 8-bit data | | | | | | | | STOP | STOP | | |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | S | 8-bit data | | | | | | | | P | STOP | | |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | S | 8-bit data | | | | | | | | P | STOP | STOP | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | S | 7-bit data | | | | | | | STOP | | | | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | S | 7-bit data | | | | | | | STOP | STOP | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | S | 7-bit data | | | | | | | P | STOP | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | S | 7-bit data | | | | | | | P | STOP | STOP | | |
| 0 | – | 1 | 0 | S | 8-bit data | | | | | | | | MPB | STOP | | |
| 0 | – | 1 | 1 | S | 8-bit data | | | | | | | | MPB | STOP | STOP | |
| 1 | – | 1 | 0 | S | 7-bit data | | | | | | | MPB | STOP | | | |
| 1 | – | 1 | 1 | S | 7-bit data | | | | | | | MPB | STOP | STOP | | |

Legend:

S: Start bit

STOP: Stop bit

P: Parity bit

MPB: Multiprocessor bit

13.4.2 Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin in Asynchronous Mode

In asynchronous mode, the SCI operates on a basic clock with a frequency of 16 times the transfer rate. In reception, the SCI samples the falling edge of the start bit using the basic clock, and performs internal synchronization. Receive data is latched internally at the rising edge of the 8th pulse of the basic clock as shown in Figure 13.7. Thus, the reception margin in asynchronous mode is given by formula (1) below.

$$M = \left| \left(0.5 - \frac{1}{2N} \right) - (L - 0.5) F - \frac{|D - 0.5|}{N} (1 + F) \right| \times 100 [\%] \quad \dots \text{Formula (1)}$$

Where M: Reception margin

N: Ratio of bit rate to clock (N = 16 if ABCS = 0, N = 8 if ABCS = 1)

D: Clock duty (D = 0 to 1.0)

L: Frame length (L = 9 to 12)

F: Absolute value of clock rate deviation

Assuming values of F (absolute value of clock rate deviation) = 0, D (clock duty) = 0.5, and N (ratio of bit rate to clock) = 16 in formula (1), the reception margin can be given by the formula.

$$M = \{ 0.5 - 1/(2 \times 16) \} \times 100 [\%] = 46.875\%$$

However, this is only the computed value, and a margin of 20% to 30% should be allowed for in system design.

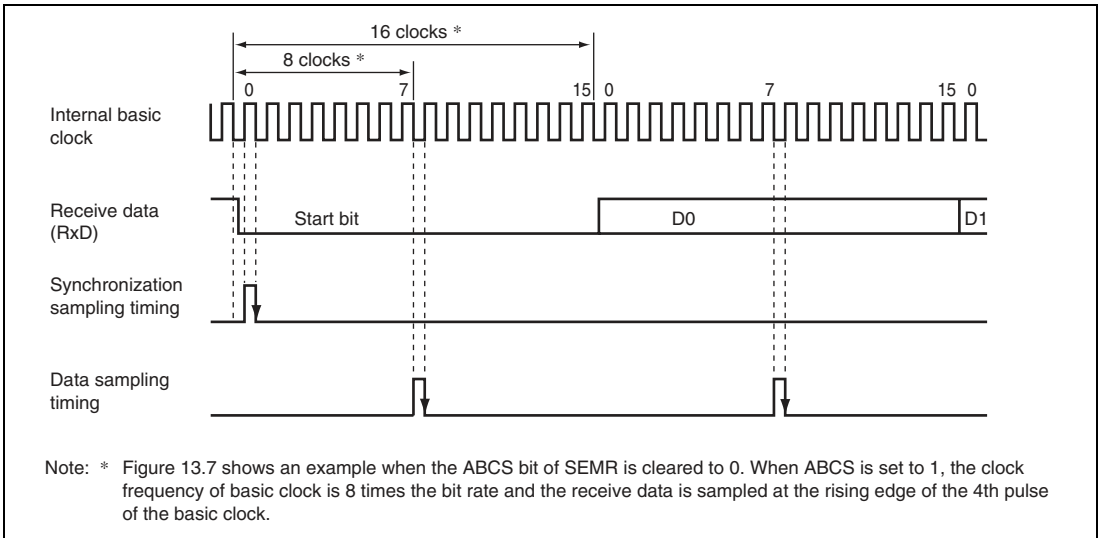


Figure 13.7 Receive Data Sampling Timing in Asynchronous Mode

13.4.3 Clock

Either an internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator or an external clock input at the SCK pin can be selected as the SCI's serial clock, according to the setting of the C/\bar{A} bit in SMR and the CKE0 and CKE1 bits in SCR. When an external clock is input at the SCK pin, the clock frequency should be 16 times the bit rate used. When an external clock is selected, the basic clock of average transfer rate can be selected according to the ACS2 to ACS0 bit setting of SEMR.

When the SCI is operated on an internal clock, the clock can be output from the SCK pin by setting CKE1 = 0 and CKE0 = 1. The frequency of the clock output in this case is equal to the bit rate, and the phase is such that the rising edge of the clock is in the middle of the transmit data, as shown in figure 13.8.

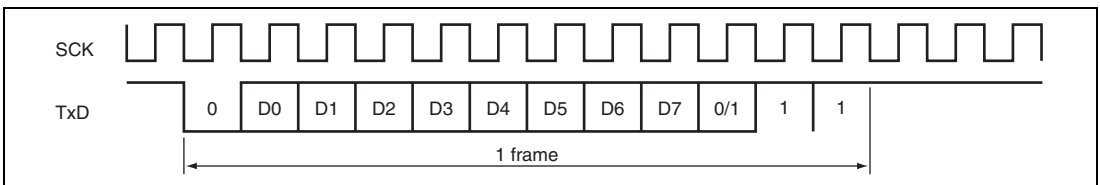


Figure 13.8 Relationship between Output Clock and Transfer Data Phase (Asynchronous Mode)

13.4.4 SCI Initialization (Asynchronous Mode)

Before transmitting and receiving data, you should first clear the TE and RE bits in SCR to 0, then initialize the SCI as described in a sample flowchart in figure 13.9. When the operating mode, or transfer format, is changed for example, the TE and RE bits must be cleared to 0 before making the change using the following procedure. When the TE bit is cleared to 0, the TDRE flag is set to 1. Note that clearing the RE bit to 0 does not initialize the contents of the RDRF, PER, FER, and ORER flags, or the contents of RDR. When the external clock is used in asynchronous mode, the clock must be supplied even during initialization.

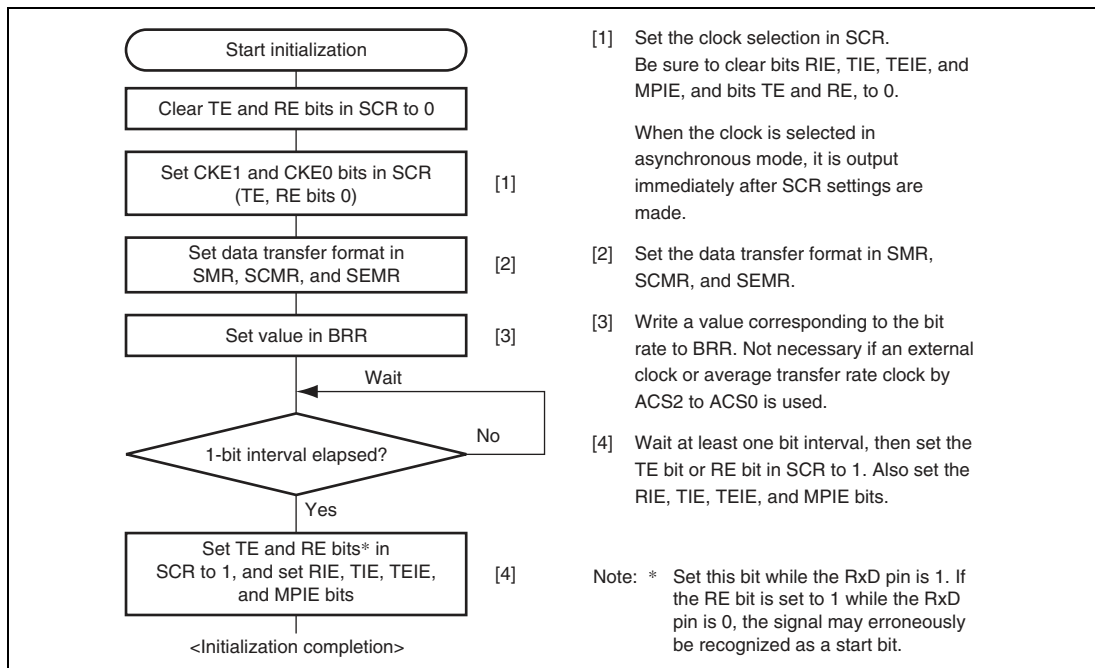
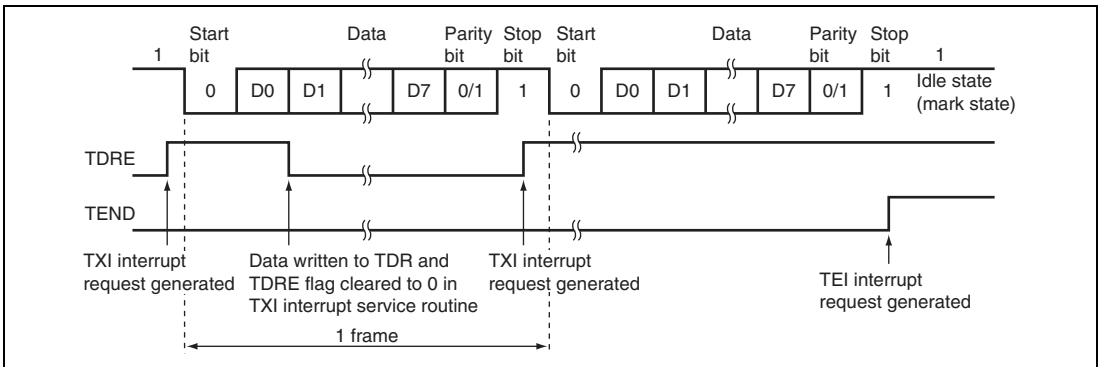


Figure 13.9 Sample SCI Initialization Flowchart

13.4.5 Data Transmission (Asynchronous Mode)

Figure 13.10 shows an example of operation for transmission in asynchronous mode. In transmission, the SCI operates as described below.

1. The SCI monitors the TDRE flag in SSR. If the flag is cleared to 0, the SCI recognizes that data has been written to TDR, and transfers the data from TDR to TSR.
2. After transferring data from TDR to TSR, the SCI sets the TDRE flag to 1 and starts transmission. If the TIE bit is set to 1 at this time, a transmit data empty interrupt request (TXI) is generated. Continuous transmission is possible because the TXI interrupt routine writes next transmit data to TDR before transmission of the current transmit data has been completed.
3. Data is sent from the TxD pin in the following order: start bit, transmit data, parity bit or multiprocessor bit (may be omitted depending on the format), and stop bit.
4. The SCI checks the TDRE flag at the timing for sending the stop bit.
5. If the TDRE flag is 0, the data is transferred from TDR to TSR, the stop bit is sent, and then serial transmission of the next frame is started.
6. If the TDRE flag is 1, the TEND flag in SSR is set to 1, the stop bit is sent, and then the "mark state" is entered, in which 1 is output. If the TEIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, a TEI interrupt request is generated.



**Figure 13.10 Example of Operation in Transmission in Asynchronous Mode
(Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, One Stop Bit)**

Figure 13.11 shows a sample flowchart for transmission in asynchronous mode.

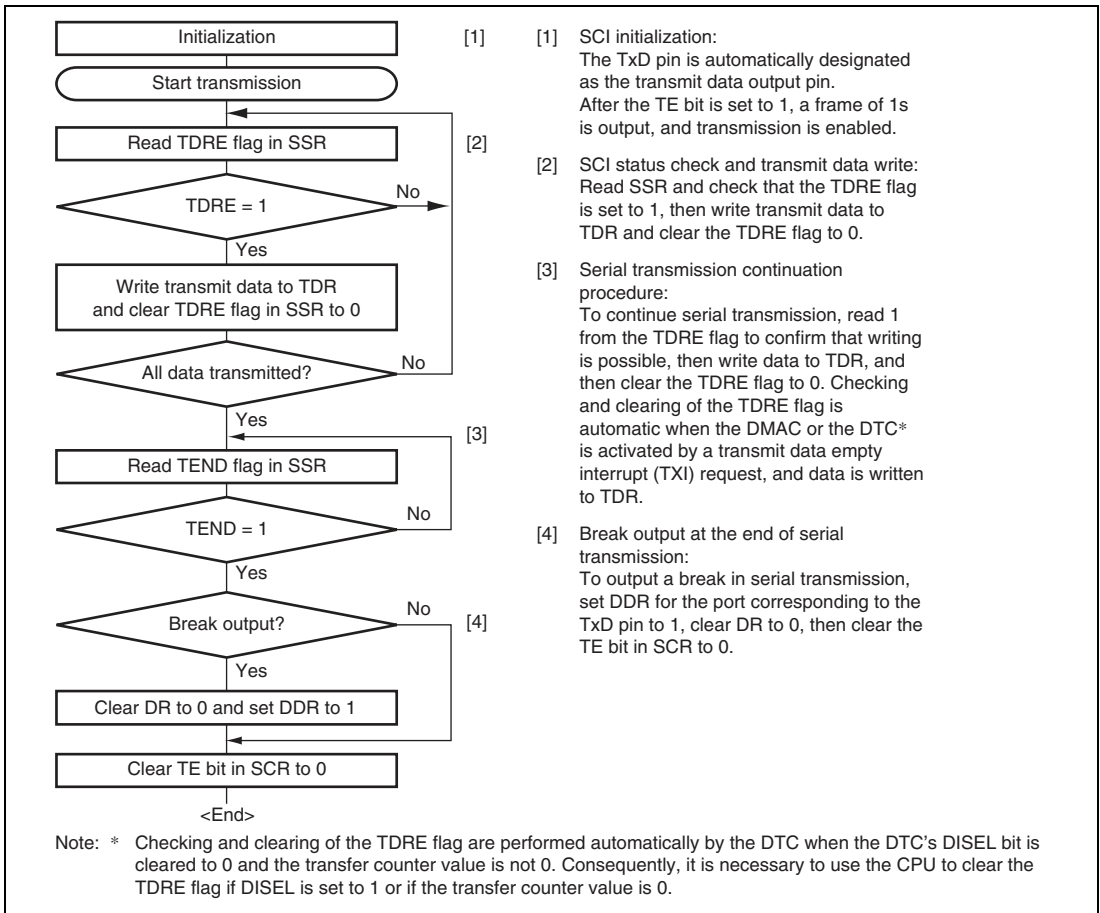
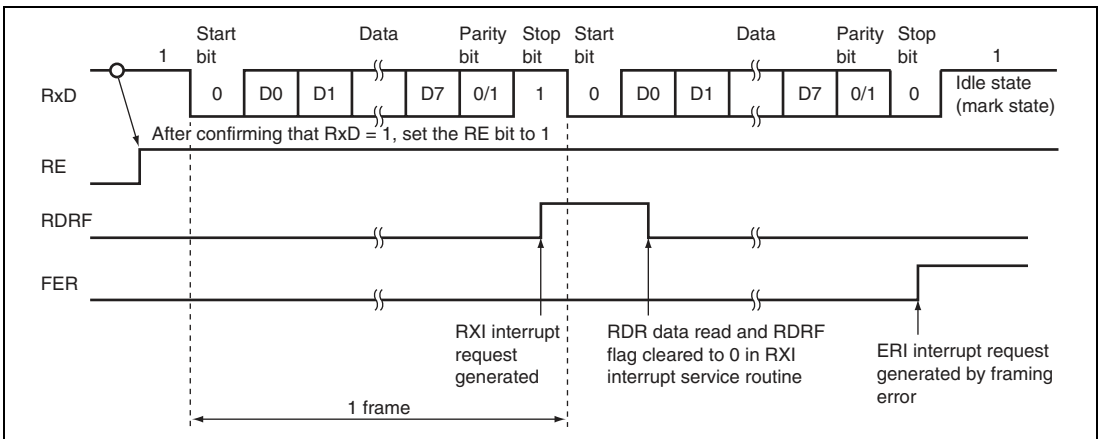


Figure 13.11 Sample Serial Transmission Data Flowchart

13.4.6 Serial Data Reception (Asynchronous Mode)

Figure 13.12 shows an example of operation for reception in asynchronous mode. In serial reception, the SCI operates as described below.

1. The SCI monitors the communication line. If a start bit is detected, the SCI performs internal synchronization, receives receive data in RSR, and checks the parity bit and stop bit.
2. If an overrun error occurs (when reception of the next data is completed while the RDRF flag is still set to 1), the ORE bit in SSR is set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated. Receive data is not transferred to RDR. The RDRF flag remains to be set to 1.
3. If a parity error is detected, the PER bit in SSR is set to 1 and receive data is transferred to RDR. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated.
4. If a framing error is detected (when the stop bit is 0), the FER bit in SSR is set to 1 and receive data is transferred to RDR. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated.
5. If reception is completed successfully, the RDRF bit in SSR is set to 1, and receive data is transferred to RDR. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an RXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous reception is possible because the RXI interrupt routine reads the receive data transferred to RDR before reception of the next receive data has been completed.



**Figure 13.12 Example of SCI Operation in Reception
(Example with 8-Bit Data, Parity, One Stop Bit)**

Table 13.11 shows the states of the SSR status flags and receive data handling when a receive error is detected. If a receive error is detected, the RDRF flag retains its state before receiving data. Reception cannot be resumed while a receive error flag is set to 1. Accordingly, clear the ORER, FER, PER, and RDRF bits to 0 before resuming reception. Figure 13.13 shows a sample flow chart for serial data reception.

Table 13.11 SSR Status Flags and Receive Data Handling

| SSR Status Flag | | | | Receive Data | Receive Error Type |
|-----------------|------|-----|-----|--------------------|---|
| RDRF* | ORER | FER | PER | | |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Lost | Overflow error |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | Transferred to RDR | Framing error |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | Transferred to RDR | Parity error |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | Lost | Overflow error + framing error |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | Lost | Overflow error + parity error |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | Transferred to RDR | Framing error + parity error |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Lost | Overflow error + framing error + parity error |

Note: * The RDRF flag retains the state it had before data reception.

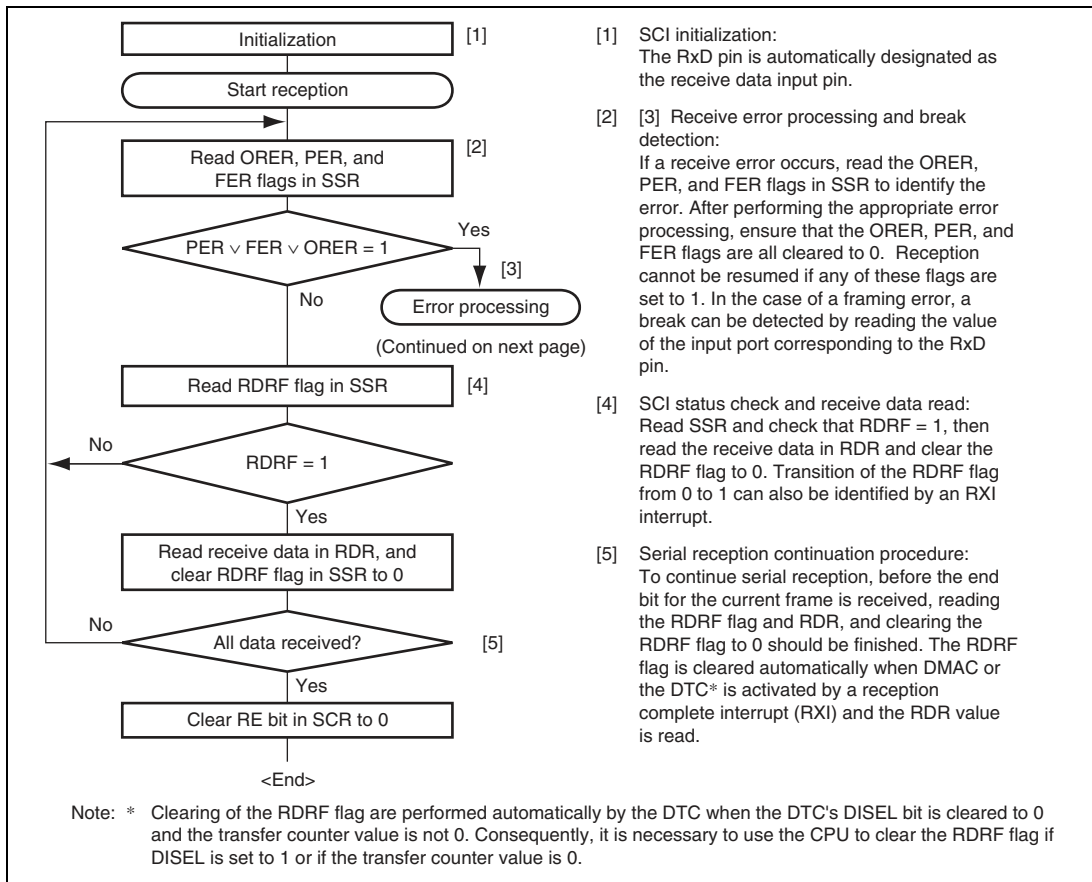


Figure 13.13 Sample Serial Reception Data Flowchart (1)

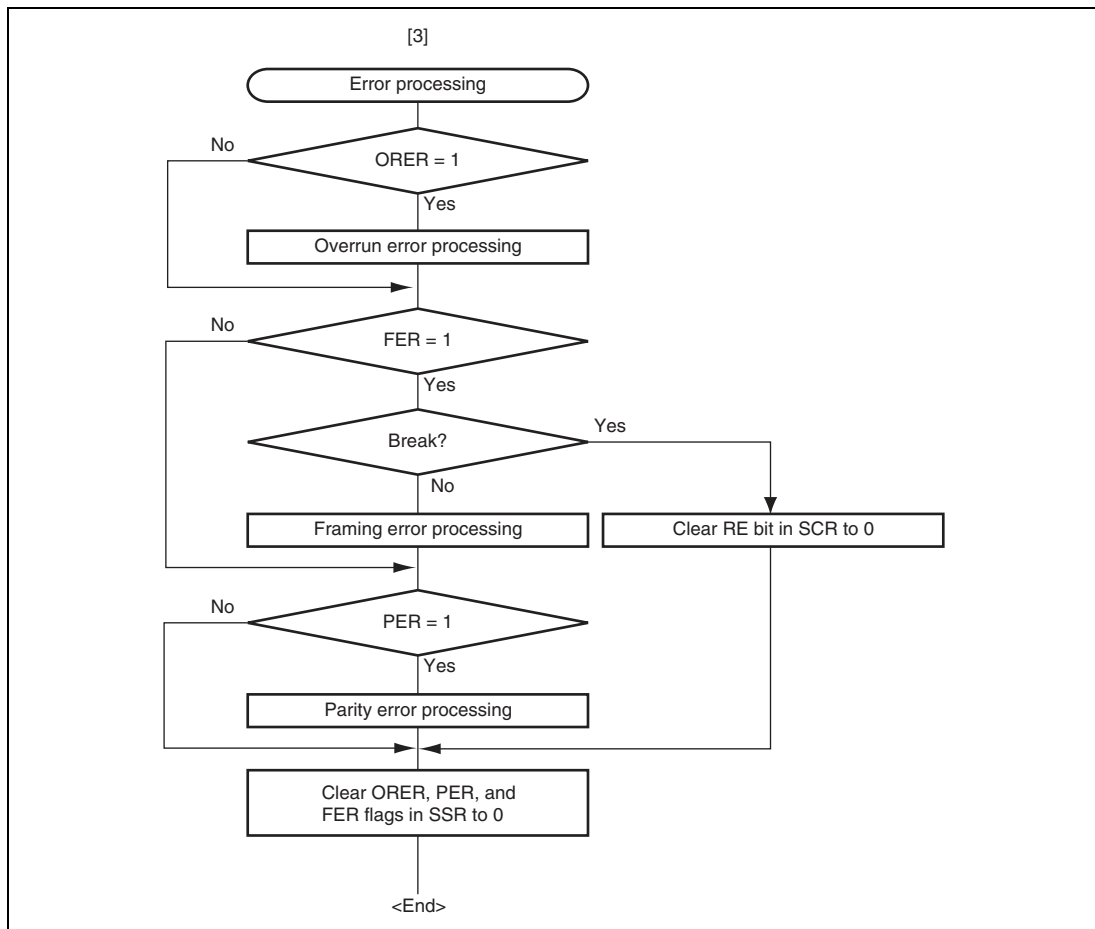


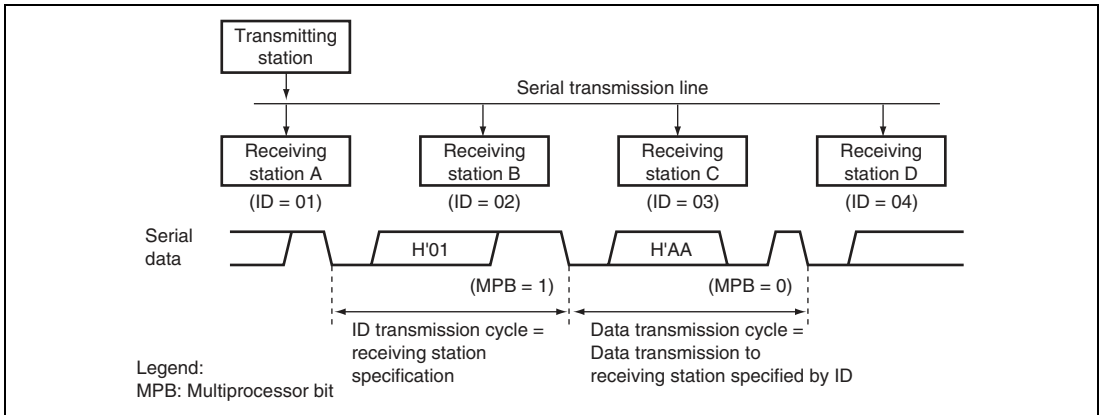
Figure 13.13 Sample Serial Reception Data Flowchart (2)

13.5 Multiprocessor Communication Function

Use of the multiprocessor communication function enables data transfer between a number of processors sharing communication lines by asynchronous serial communication using the multiprocessor format, in which a multiprocessor bit is added to the transfer data. When multiprocessor communication is performed, each receiving station is addressed by a unique ID code. The serial communication cycle consists of two component cycles; an ID transmission cycle that specifies the receiving station, and a data transmission cycle. The multiprocessor bit is used to differentiate between the ID transmission cycle and the data transmission cycle. If the multiprocessor bit is 1, the cycle is an ID transmission cycle; if the multiprocessor bit is 0, the cycle is a data transmission cycle. Figure 13.14 shows an example of inter-processor communication using the multiprocessor format. The transmitting station first sends the ID code of the receiving station with which it wants to perform serial communication as data with a 1 multiprocessor bit added. It then sends transmit data as data with a 0 multiprocessor bit added. When data with a 1 multiprocessor bit is received, the receiving station compares that data with its own ID. The station whose ID matches then receives the data sent next. Stations whose ID do not match continue to skip data until data with a 1 multiprocessor bit is again received.

The SCI uses the MPIE bit in SCR to implement this function. When the MPIE bit is set to 1, transfer of receive data from RSR to RDR, error flag detection, and setting the SSR status flags, RDRF, FER, and ORER to 1, are inhibited until data with a 1 multiprocessor bit is received. On reception of a receive character with a 1 multiprocessor bit, the MPB bit in SSR is set to 1 and the MPIE bit is automatically cleared, thus normal reception is resumed. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an RXI interrupt is generated.

When the multiprocessor format is selected, the parity bit setting is rendered invalid. All other bit settings are the same as those in normal asynchronous mode. The clock used for multiprocessor communication is the same as that in normal asynchronous mode.



**Figure 13.14 Example of Communication Using Multiprocessor Format
(Transmission of Data H'AA to Receiving Station A)**

13.5.1 Multiprocessor Serial Data Transmission

Figure 13.15 shows a sample flowchart for multiprocessor serial data transmission. For an ID transmission cycle, set the MPBT bit in SSR to 1 before transmission. For a data transmission cycle, clear the MPBT bit in SSR to 0 before transmission. All other SCI operations are the same as those in asynchronous mode.

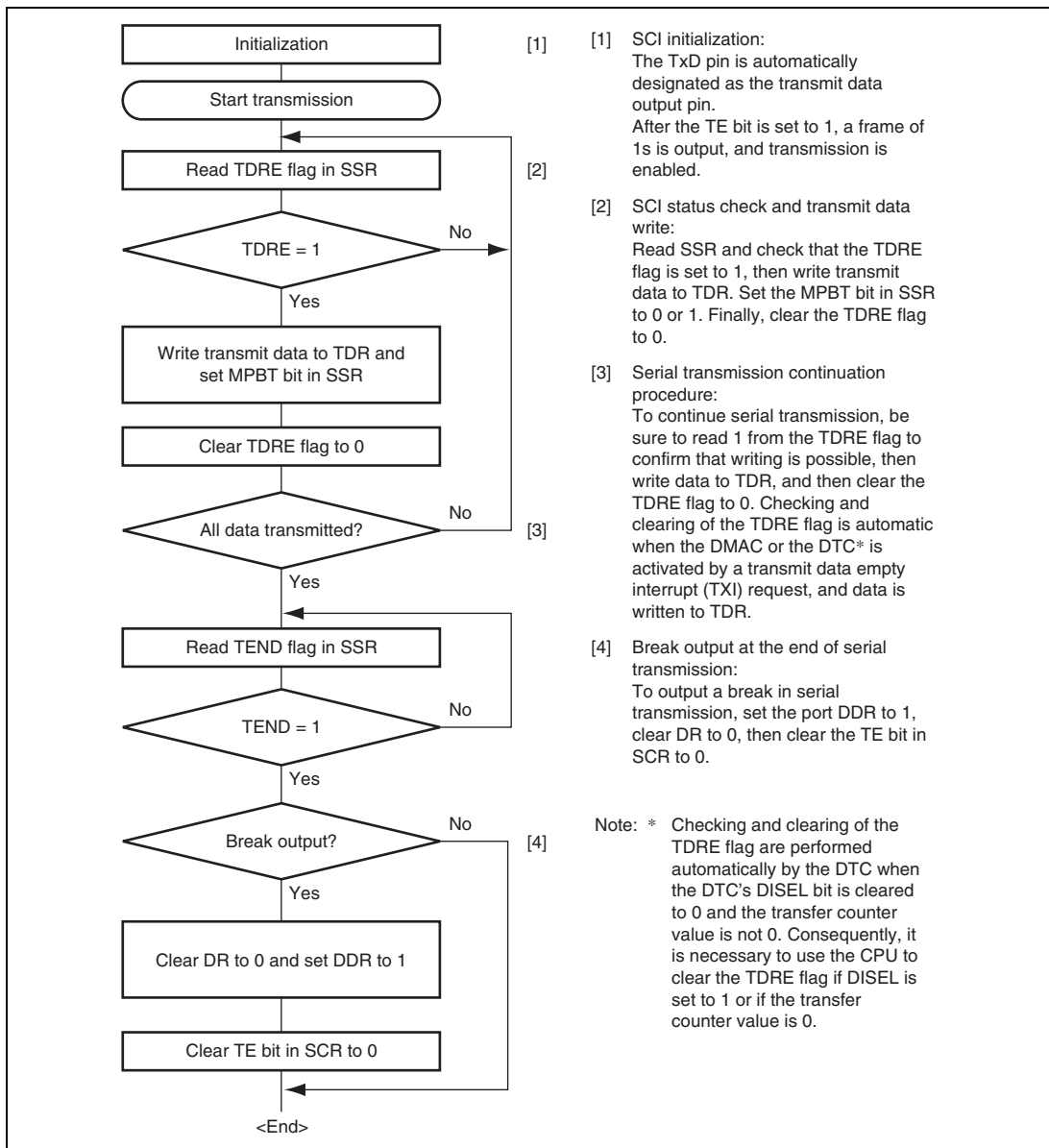
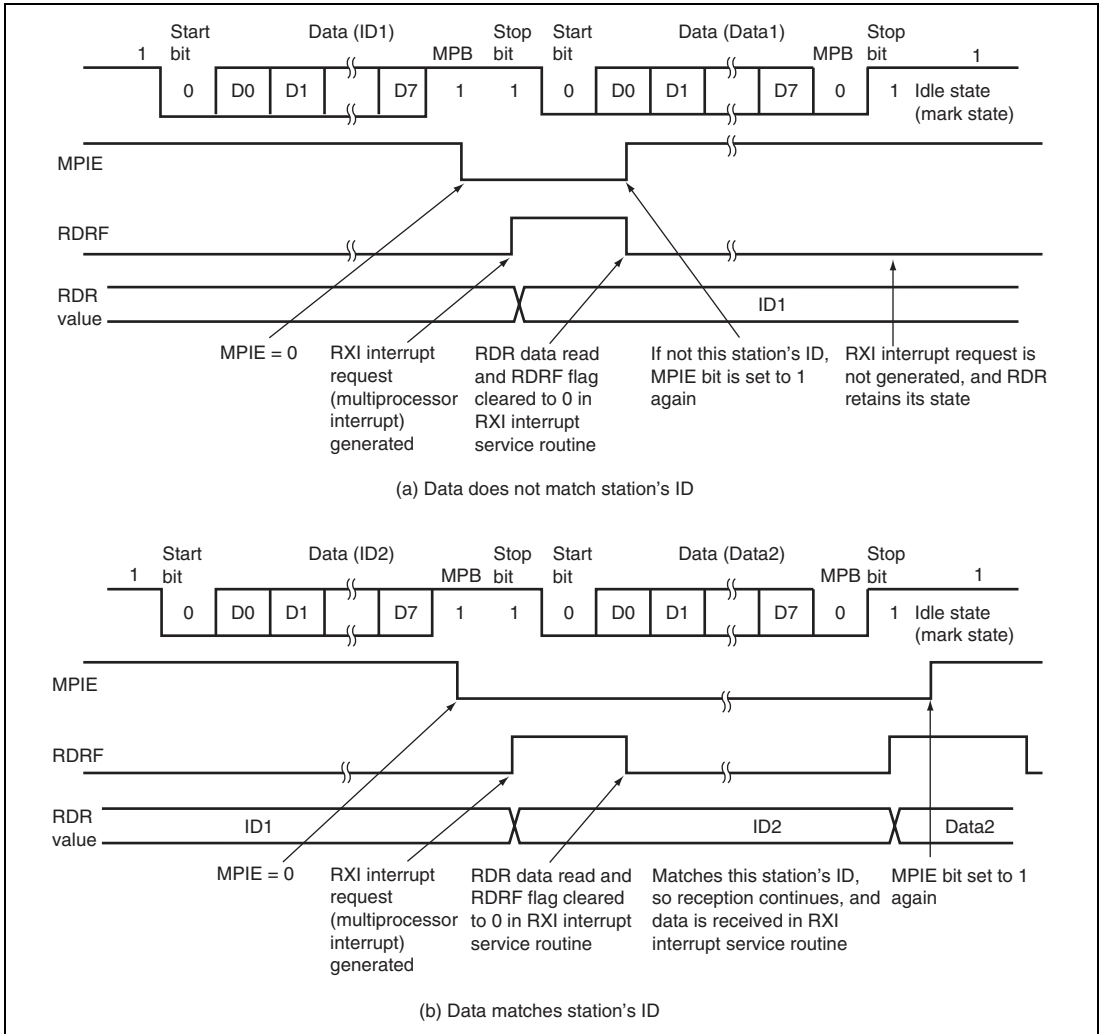


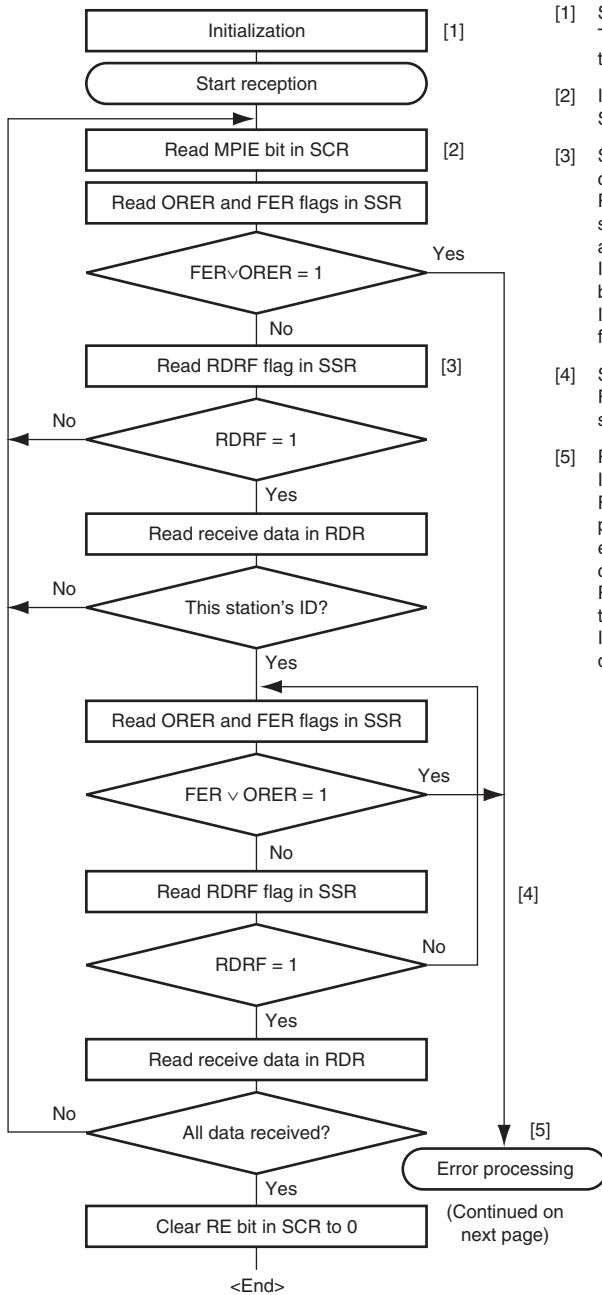
Figure 13.15 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Transmission Flowchart

13.5.2 Multiprocessor Serial Data Reception

Figure 13.17 shows a sample flowchart for multiprocessor serial data reception. If the MPIE bit in SCR is set to 1, data is skipped until data with a 1 multiprocessor bit is sent. On receiving data with a 1 multiprocessor bit, the receive data is transferred to RDR. An RXI interrupt request is generated at this time. All other SCI operations are the same as in asynchronous mode. Figure 13.16 shows an example of SCI operation for multiprocessor format reception.



**Figure 13.16 Example of SCI Operation in Reception
(Example with 8-Bit Data, Multiprocessor Bit, One Stop Bit)**



- [1] SCI initialization:
The Rx pin is automatically designated as the receive data input pin.
- [2] ID reception cycle:
Set the MPIE bit in SCR to 1.
- [3] SCI status check, ID reception and comparison:
Read SSR and check that the RDRF flag is set to 1, then read the receive data in RDR and compare it with this station's ID. If the data is not this station's ID, set the MPIE bit to 1 again, and clear the RDRF flag to 0. If the data is this station's ID, clear the RDRF flag to 0.
- [4] SCI status check and data reception:
Read SSR and check that the RDRF flag is set to 1, then read the data in RDR.
- [5] Receive error processing and break detection:
If a receive error occurs, read the ORER and FER flags in SSR to identify the error. After performing the appropriate error processing, ensure that the ORER and FER flags are all cleared to 0. Reception cannot be resumed if either of these flags is set to 1. In the case of a framing error, a break can be detected by reading the Rx pin value.

Figure 13.17 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Reception Flowchart (1)

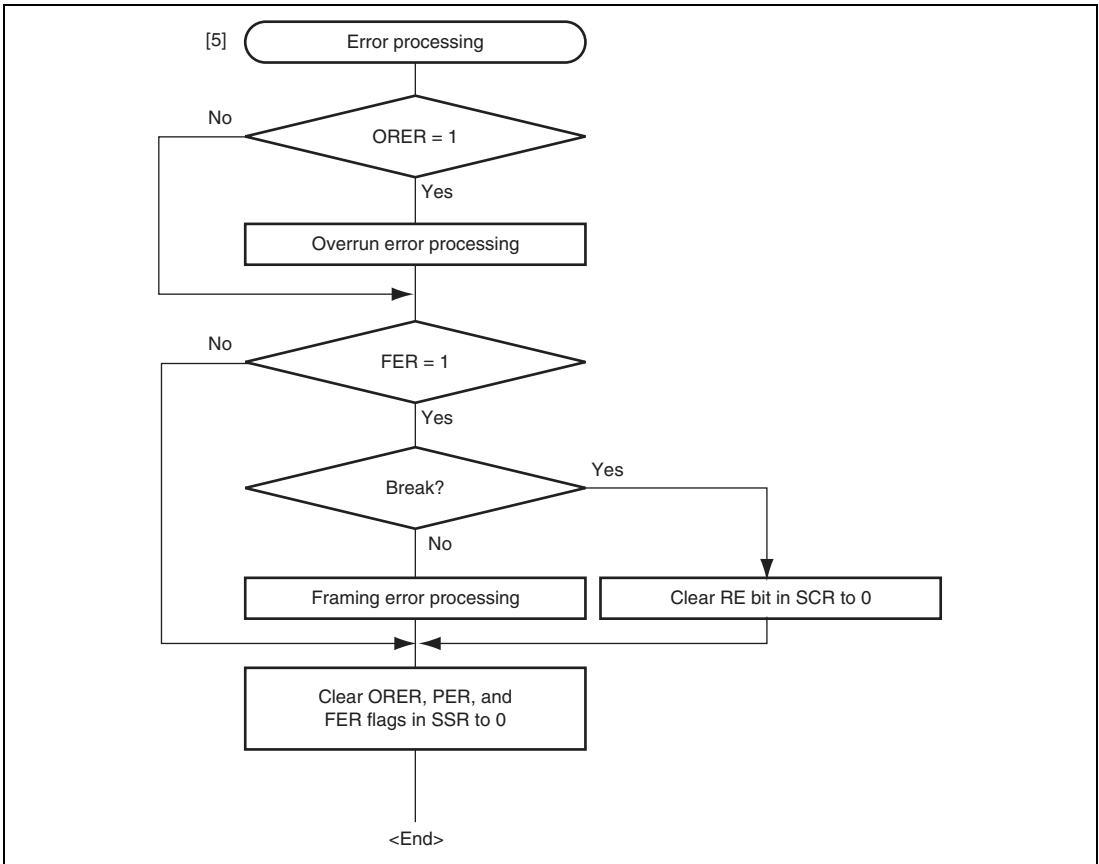


Figure 13.17 Sample Multiprocessor Serial Reception Flowchart (2)

13.6 Operation in Clocked Synchronous Mode

Figure 13.18 shows the general format for clocked synchronous communication. In clocked synchronous mode, data is transmitted or received synchronous with clock pulses. In clocked synchronous serial communication, data on the transmission line is output from one falling edge of the serial clock to the next. In clocked synchronous mode, the SCI receives data in synchronous with the rising edge of the serial clock. After 8-bit data is output, the transmission line holds the MSB state. In clocked synchronous mode, no parity or multiprocessor bit is added. Inside the SCI, the transmitter and receiver are independent units, enabling full-duplex communication through the use of a common clock. Both the transmitter and the receiver also have a double-buffered structure, so data can be read from or written during transmission or reception, enabling continuous data transfer.

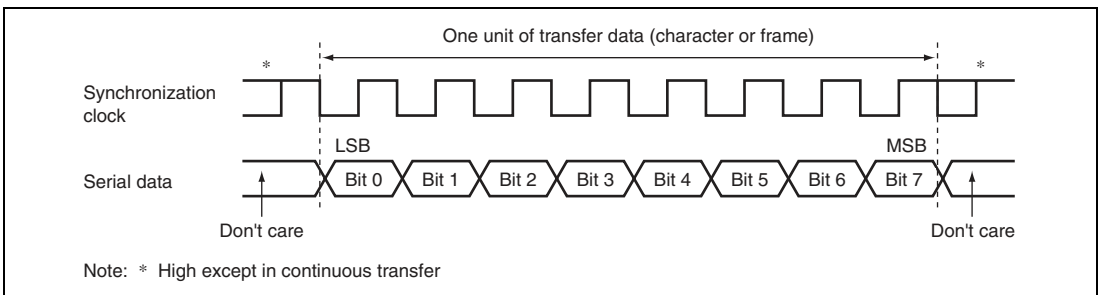


Figure 13.18 Data Format in Synchronous Communication (For LSB-First)

13.6.1 Clock

Either an internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator or an external synchronization clock input at the SCK pin can be selected, according to the setting of CKE0 and CKE1 bits in SCR. When the SCI is operated on an internal clock, the serial clock is output from the SCK pin. Eight serial clock pulses are output in the transfer of one character, and when no transfer is performed the clock is fixed high.

13.6.2 SCI Initialization (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Before transmitting and receiving data, the TE and RE bits in SCR should be cleared to 0, then the SCI should be initialized as described in a sample flowchart in figure 13.19. When the operating mode, or transfer format, is changed for example, the TE and RE bits must be cleared to 0 before making the change using the following procedure. When the TE bit is cleared to 0, the TDRE flag is set to 1. Note that clearing the RE bit to 0 does not change the contents of the RDRF, PER, FER, and ORER flags, or the contents of RDR.

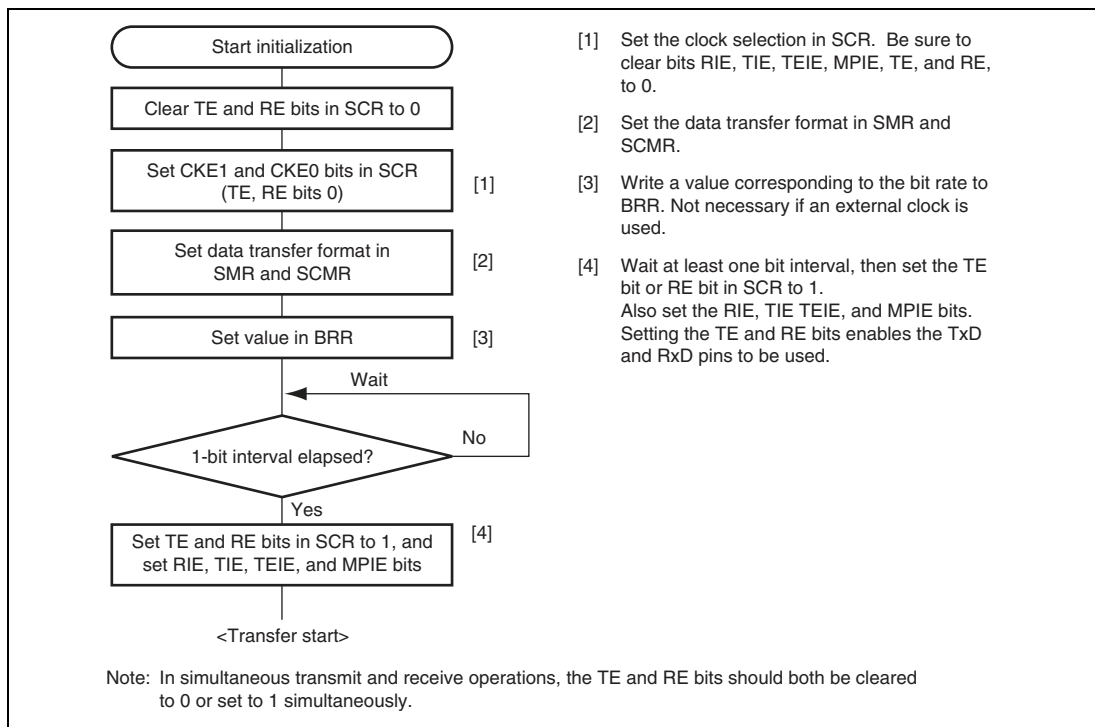


Figure 13.19 Sample SCI Initialization Flowchart

13.6.3 Serial Data Transmission (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Figure 13.20 shows an example of SCI operation for transmission in clocked synchronous mode. In serial transmission, the SCI operates as described below.

1. The SCI monitors the TDRE flag in SSR, and if the flag is 0, the SCI recognizes that data has been written to TDR, and transfers the data from TDR to TSR.

2. After transferring data from TDR to TSR, the SCI sets the TDRE flag to 1 and starts transmission. If the TIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, a transmit data empty interrupt (TXI) is generated. Continuous transmission is possible because the TXI interrupt routine writes the next transmit data to TDR before transmission of the current transmit data has been completed.
3. 8-bit data is sent from the TxD pin synchronized with the output clock when output clock mode has been specified, and synchronized with the input clock when use of an external clock has been specified.
4. The SCI checks the TDRE flag at the timing for sending the MSB (bit 7).
5. If the TDRE flag is cleared to 0, data is transferred from TDR to TSR, and serial transmission of the next frame is started.
6. If the TDRE flag is set to 1, the TEND flag in SSR is set to 1, and the TDRE flag maintains the output state of the last bit. If the TEIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, a TEI interrupt request is generated. The SCK pin is fixed high.

Figure 13.21 shows a sample flow chart for serial data transmission. Even if the TDRE flag is cleared to 0, transmission will not start while a receive error flag (ORER, FER, or PER) is set to 1. Make sure that the receive error flags are cleared to 0 before starting transmission. Note that clearing the RE bit to 0 does not clear the receive error flags.

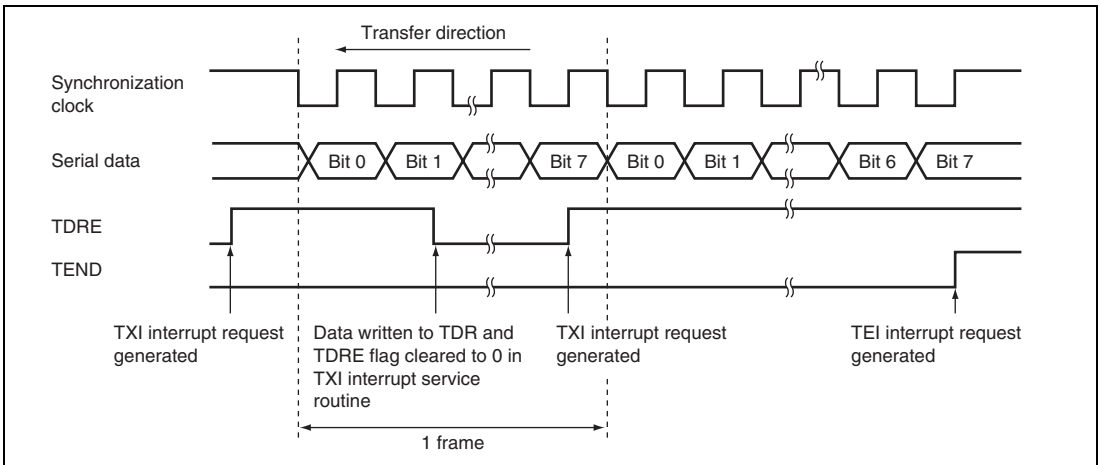


Figure 13.20 Sample SCI Transmission Operation in Clocked Synchronous Mode

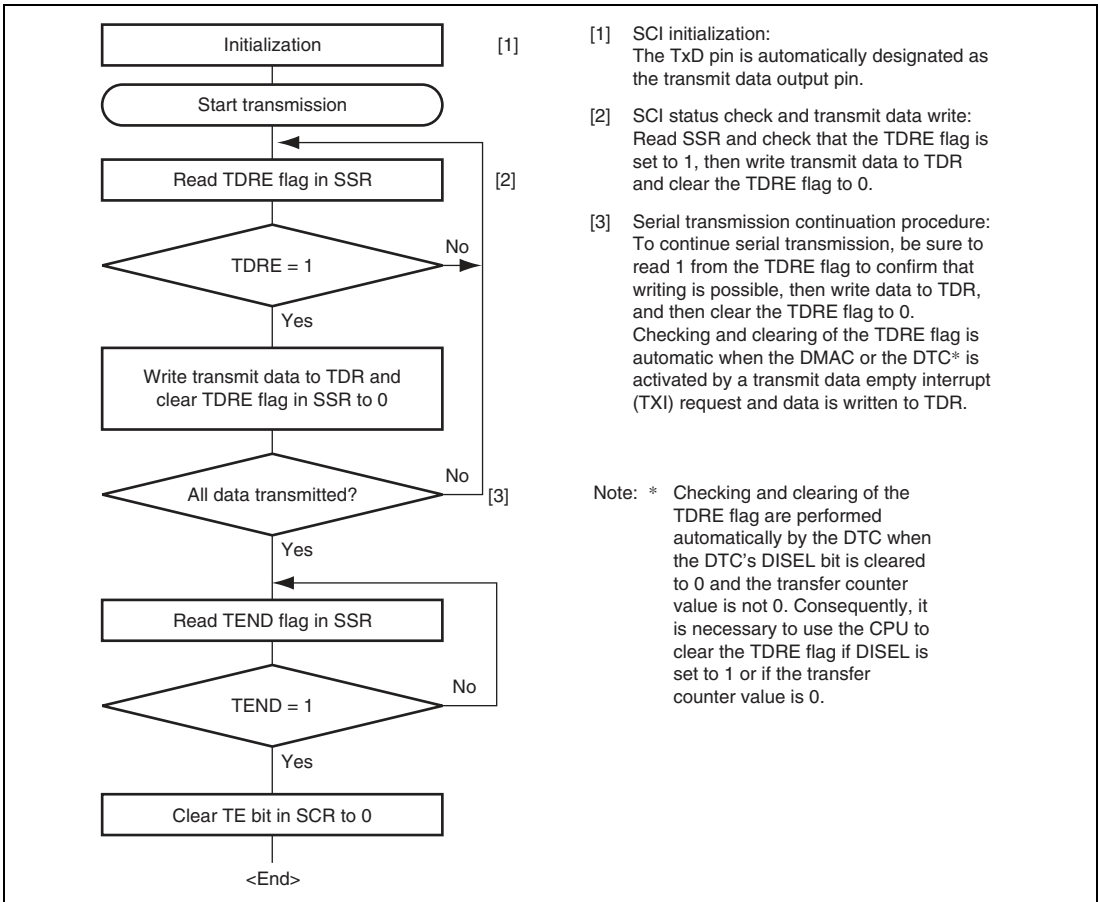


Figure 13.21 Sample Serial Transmission Data Flowchart

13.6.4 Serial Data Reception (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Figure 13.22 shows an example of SCI operation for reception in clocked synchronous mode. In serial reception, the SCI operates as described below.

1. The SCI performs internal initialization synchronous with a synchronous clock input or output, starts receiving data, and stores the received data in RSR.
2. If an overrun error occurs (when reception of the next data is completed while the RDRF flag in SSR is still set to 1), the ORER bit in SSR is set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated, receive data is not transferred to RDR, and the RDRF flag remains to be set to 1.
3. If reception is completed successfully, the RDRF bit in SSR is set to 1, and receive data is transferred to RDR. If the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1 at this time, an RXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous reception is possible because the RXI interrupt routine reads the receive data transferred to RDR before reception of the next receive data has finished.

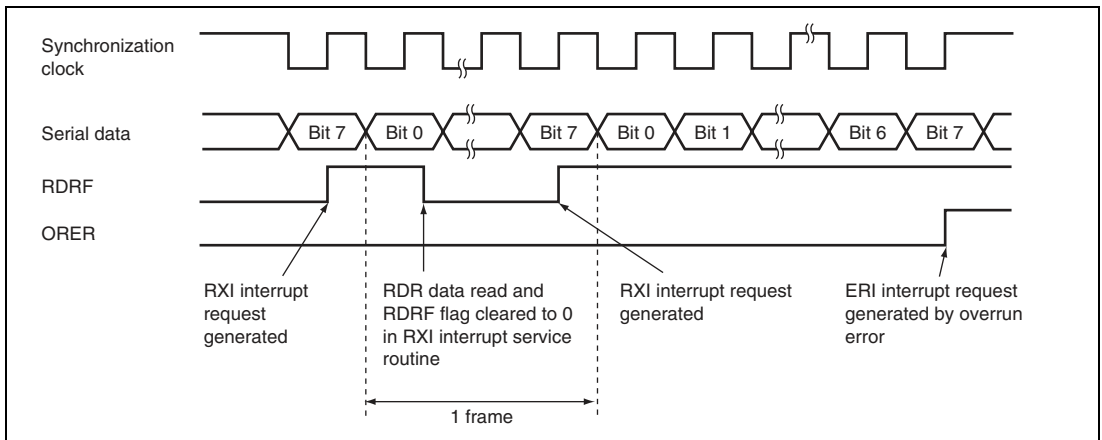


Figure 13.22 Example of SCI Operation in Reception

Reception cannot be resumed while a receive error flag is set to 1. Accordingly, clear the ORER, FER, PER, and RDRF bits to 0 before resuming reception. Figure 13.23 shows a sample flow chart for serial data reception.

When the internal clock is selected during reception, the synchronization clock will be output until an overrun error occurs or the RE bit is cleared. To receive data in frame units, a dummy data of one frame must be transmitted simultaneously.

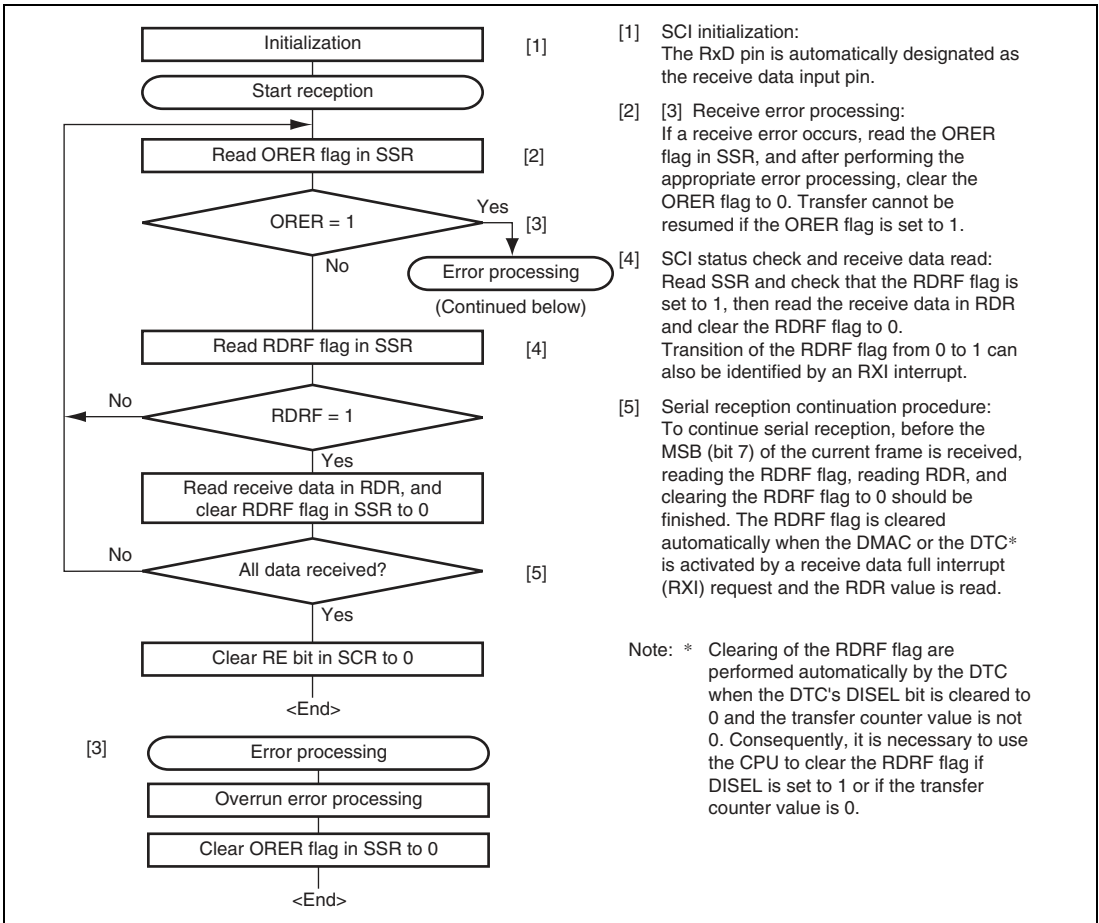
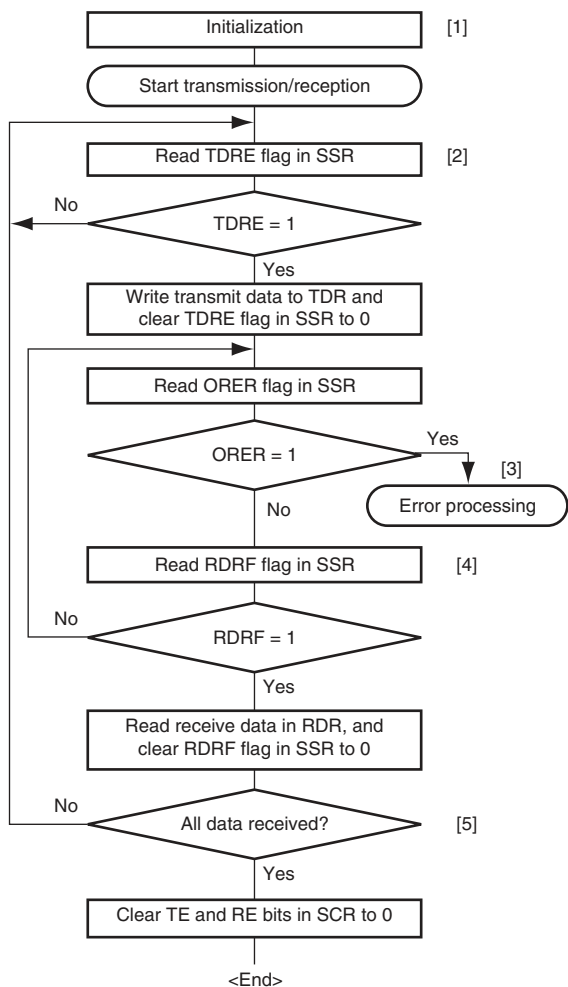


Figure 13.23 Sample Serial Reception Flowchart

13.6.5 Simultaneous Serial Data Transmission and Reception (Clocked Synchronous Mode)

Figure 13.24 shows a sample flowchart for simultaneous serial transmit and receive operations. The following procedure should be used for simultaneous serial data transmit and receive operations. To switch from transmit mode to simultaneous transmit and receive mode, after checking that the SCI has finished transmission and the TDRE and TEND flags are set to 1, clear TE to 0. Then simultaneously set TE and RE to 1 with a single instruction. To switch from receive mode to simultaneous transmit and receive mode, after checking that the SCI has finished reception, clear RE to 0. Then after checking that the RDRF and receive error flags (ORER, FER, and PER) are cleared to 0, simultaneously set TE and RE to 1 with a single instruction.



- [1] SCI initialization:
The TxD pin is designated as the transmit data output pin, and the RxD pin is designated as the receive data input pin, enabling simultaneous transmit and receive operations.
- [2] SCI status check and transmit data write:
Read SSR and check that the TDRE flag is set to 1, then write transmit data to TDR and clear the TDRE flag to 0. Transition of the TDRE flag from 0 to 1 can also be identified by a TXI interrupt.
- [3] Receive error processing:
If a receive error occurs, read the ORER flag in SSR, and after performing the appropriate error processing, clear the ORER flag to 0. Transmission/reception cannot be resumed if the ORER flag is set to 1.
- [4] SCI status check and receive data read:
Read SSR and check that the RDRF flag is set to 1, then read the receive data in RDR and clear the RDRF flag to 0. Transition of the RDRF flag from 0 to 1 can also be identified by an RXI interrupt.
- [5] Serial transmission/reception continuation procedure:
To continue serial transmission/reception, before the MSB (bit 7) of the current frame is received, finish reading the RDRF flag, reading RDR, and clearing the RDRF flag to 0. Also, before the MSB (bit 7) of the current frame is transmitted, read 1 from the TDRE flag to confirm that writing is possible. Then write data to TDR and clear the TDRE flag to 0.
Checking and clearing of the TDRE flag is automatic when the DMAC or the DTC* is activated by a transmit data empty interrupt (TXI) request and data is written to TDR. Also, the RDRF flag is cleared automatically when the DMAC or the DTC* is activated by a receive data full interrupt (RXI) request and the RDR value is read.

Notes: When switching from transmit or receive operation to simultaneous transmit and receive operations, first clear the TE bit and RE bit to 0, then set both these bits to 1 simultaneously.

* The TDRE and RDRF flags are automatically cleared by the DTC when the DTC's DISEL bit is cleared to 0 and the transfer counter value is not 0. Consequently, it is necessary to use the CPU to clear the TDRE and RDRF flags if DISEL is set to 1 or if the transfer counter value is 0.

Figure 13.24 Sample Flowchart of Simultaneous Serial Transmit and Receive Operations

13.7 Operation in Smart Card Interface

The SCI supports an IC card (Smart Card) interface that conforms to ISO/IEC 7816-3 (Identification Card) as a serial communication interface extension function. Switching between the normal serial communication interface and the Smart Card interface mode is carried out by means of a register setting.

13.7.1 Pin Connection Example

Figure 13.25 shows an example of connection with the Smart Card. In communication with an IC card, as both transmission and reception are carried out on a single data transmission line, the TxD pin and RxD pin should be connected to the LSI pin. The data transmission line should be pulled up to the V_{CC} power supply with a resistor. If an IC card is not connected, and the TE and RE bits are both set to 1, closed transmission/reception is possible, enabling self-diagnosis to be carried out. When the clock generated on the Smart Card interface is used by an IC card, the SCK pin output is input to the CLK pin of the IC card. This LSI port output is used as the reset signal.

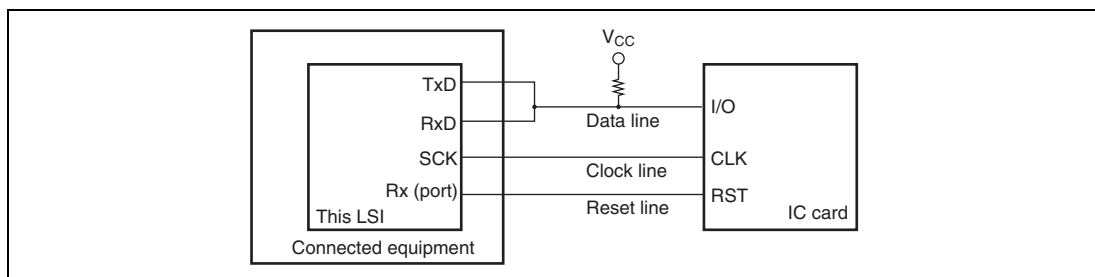


Figure 13.25 Schematic Diagram of Smart Card Interface Pin Connections

13.7.2 Data Format (Except for Block Transfer Mode)

Figure 13.26 shows the transfer data format in Smart Card interface mode.

- One frame consists of 8-bit data plus a parity bit in asynchronous mode.
- In transmission, a guard time of at least 2 etu (Elementary time unit: the time for transfer of one bit) is left between the end of the parity bit and the start of the next frame.
- If a parity error is detected during reception, a low error signal level is output for one etu period, 10.5 etu after the start bit.
- If an error signal is sampled during transmission, the same data is retransmitted automatically after a delay of 2 etu or longer.

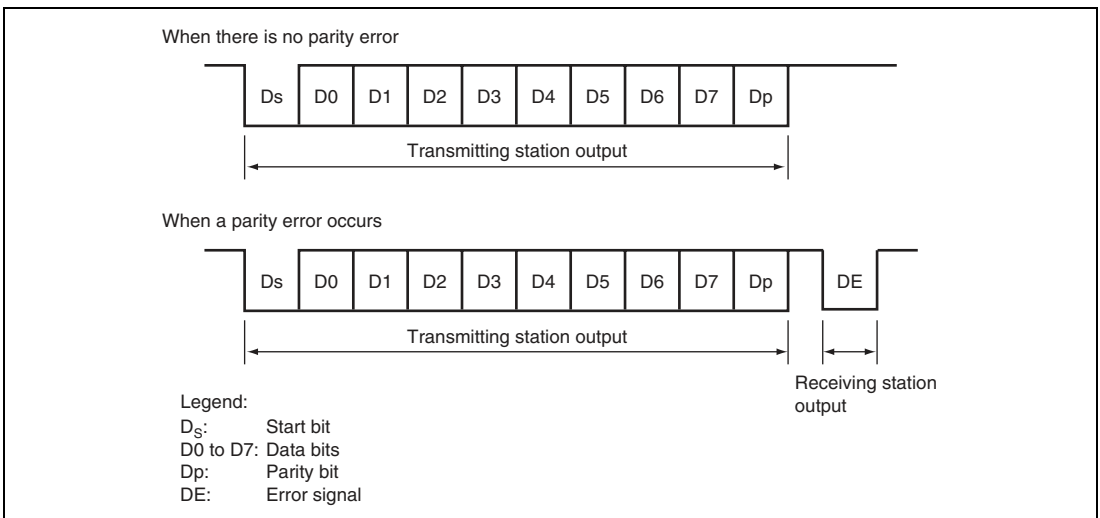


Figure 13.26 Normal Smart Card Interface Data Format

Data transfer with other types of IC cards (direct convention and inverse convention) are performed as described in the following.

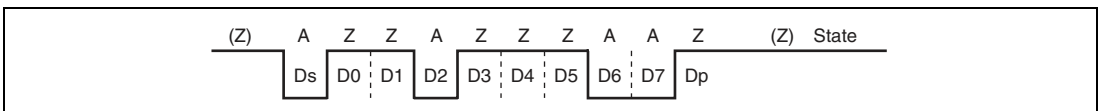


Figure 13.27 Direct Convention (SDIR = SINV = $\overline{O/E} = 0$)

With the direction convention type IC and the above sample start character, the logic 1 level corresponds to state Z and the logic 0 level to state A, and transfer is performed in LSB-first order. The start character data above is H'3B. For the direct convention type, clear the SDIR and SINV

bits in SCMR to 0. According to Smart Card regulations, clear the O/\bar{E} bit in SMR to 0 to select even parity mode.

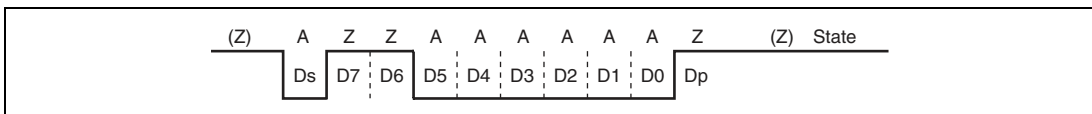


Figure 13.28 Inverse Convention ($SDIR = SINV = O/\bar{E} = 1$)

With the inverse convention type, the logic 1 level corresponds to state A and the logic 0 level to state Z, and transfer is performed in MSB-first order. The start character data for the above is H'3F. For the inverse convention type, set the SDIR and SINV bits in SCMR to 1. According to Smart Card regulations, even parity mode is the logic 0 level of the parity bit, and corresponds to state Z. In this LSI, the SINV bit inverts only data bits D0 to D7. Therefore, set the O/\bar{E} bit in SMR to 1 to invert the parity bit for both transmission and reception.

13.7.3 Clock

Only an internal clock which is generated by the on-chip baud rate generator is used as a transmit/receive clock. When an output clock is selected by setting CKE0 to 1, a clock with a frequency S^* times the bit rate is output from the SCK pin.

Note: * S is the value shown in section 13.3.12, Bit Rate Register (BRR).

13.7.4 Block Transfer Mode

Operation in block transfer mode is the same as that in the normal Smart Card interface mode, except for the following points.

- In reception, though the parity check is performed, no error signal is output even if an error is detected. However, the PER bit in SSR is set to 1 and must be cleared before receiving the parity bit of the next frame.
- In transmission, a guard time of at least 1 etu is left between the end of the parity bit and the start of the next frame.
- In transmission, because retransmission is not performed, the TEND flag is set to 1, 11.5 etu after transmission start.
- As with the normal Smart Card interface, the ERS flag indicates the error signal status, but since error signal transfer is not performed, this flag is always cleared to 0.

13.7.5 Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin

In Smart Card interface mode an internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator can only be used as a transmission/reception clock. In this mode, the SCI operates on a basic clock with a frequency of 32, 64, 372, or 256 times the transfer rate (fixed to 16 times in normal asynchronous mode) as determined by bits BCP1 and BCP0. In reception, the SCI samples the falling edge of the start bit using the basic clock, and performs internal synchronization. As shown in figure 13.29, by sampling receive data at the rising-edge of the 16th, 32nd, 186th, or 128th pulse of the basic clock, data can be latched at the middle of the bit. The reception margin is given by the following formula.

$$M = \left| \left(0.5 - \frac{1}{2N} \right) - (L - 0.5) F - \frac{|D - 0.5|}{N} (1 + F) \right| \times 100 [\%]$$

Where M: Reception margin (%)

N: Ratio of bit rate to clock (N = 32, 64, 372, and 256)

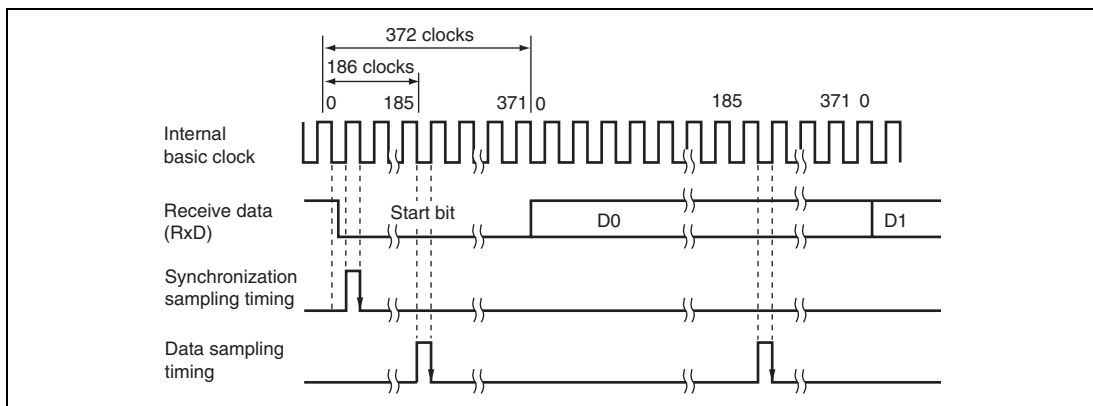
D: Clock duty (D = 0 to 1.0)

L: Frame length (L = 10)

F: Absolute value of clock frequency deviation

Assuming values of F = 0, D = 0.5 and N = 372 in the above formula, the reception margin formula is as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} M &= (0.5 - 1/2 \times 372) \times 100\% \\ &= 49.866\% \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 13.29 Receive Data Sampling Timing in Smart Card Mode
(Using Clock of 372 Times the Transfer Rate)**

13.7.6 Initialization

Before transmitting and receiving data, initialize the SCI as described below. Initialization is also necessary when switching from transmit mode to receive mode, or vice versa.

1. Clear the TE and RE bits in SCR to 0.
2. Clear the error flags ERS, PER, and ORER in SSR to 0.
3. Set the GM, BLK, O/ \bar{E} , BCP0, BCP1, CKS0, CKS1 bits in SMR. Set the PE bit to 1.
4. Set the SMIF, SDIR, and SINV bits in SCMR.

When the SMIF bit is set to 1, the TxD and RxD pins are both switched from ports to SCI pins, and are placed in the high-impedance state.

5. Set the value corresponding to the bit rate in BRR.
6. Set the CKE0 and CKE1 bits in SCR. Clear the TIE, RIE, TE, RE, MPIE, and TEIE bits to 0.
If the CKE0 bit is set to 1, the clock is output from the SCK pin.
7. Wait at least one bit interval, then set the TIE, RIE, TE, and RE bits in SCR. Do not set the TE bit and RE bit at the same time, except for self-diagnosis.

To switch from receive mode to transmit mode, after checking that the SCI has finished reception, initialize the SCI, and set RE to 0 and TE to 1. Whether SCI has finished reception or not can be checked with the RDRF, PER, or ORER flags. To switch from transmit mode to receive mode, after checking that the SCI has finished transmission, initialize the SCI, and set TE to 0 and RE to 1. Whether SCI has finished transmission or not can be checked with the TEND flag.

13.7.7 Serial Data Transmission (Except for Block Transfer Mode)

As data transmission in Smart Card interface mode involves error signal sampling and retransmission processing, the operations are different from those in normal serial communication interface mode (except for block transfer mode). Figure 13.30 illustrates the retransfer operation when the SCI is in transmit mode.

1. If an error signal is sent back from the receiving end after transmission of one frame is complete, the ERS bit in SSR is set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is enabled at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated. The ERS bit in SSR should be cleared to 0 by the time the next parity bit is sampled.
2. The TEND bit in SSR is not set for a frame in which an error signal indicating an abnormality is received. Data is retransferred from TDR to TSR, and retransmitted automatically.
3. If an error signal is not sent back from the receiving end, the ERS bit in SSR is not set. Transmission of one frame, including a retransfer, is judged to have been completed, and the TEND bit in SSR is set to 1. If the TIE bit in SCR is enabled at this time, a TXI interrupt request is generated. Writing transmit data to TDR transfers the next transmit data.

Figure 13.32 shows a flowchart for transmission. A sequence of transmit operations can be performed automatically by specifying the DTC or the DMAC to be activated with a TXI interrupt source. In a transmit operation, the TDRE flag is set to 1 at the same time as the TEND flag in SSR is set, and a TXI interrupt will be generated if the TIE bit in SCR has been set to 1. If the TXI request is designated beforehand as a DTC* or the DMAC activation source, the DTC* or the DMAC will be activated by the TXI request, and transfer of the transmit data will be carried out. The TDRE and TEND flags are automatically cleared to 0 when data is transferred by the DTC* or the DMAC. In the event of an error, the SCI retransmits the same data automatically. During this period, the TEND flag remains cleared to 0 and the DTC* or the DMAC is not activated. Therefore, the SCI and DTC* or the DMAC will automatically transmit the specified number of bytes in the event of an error, including retransmission. However, the ERS flag is not cleared automatically when an error occurs, and so the RIE bit should be set to 1 beforehand so that an ERI request will be generated in the event of an error, and the ERS flag will be cleared.

When performing transfer using the DMAC or the DTC, it is essential to set and enable the DMAC or the DTC* before carrying out SCI setting. For details of the DMAC or the DTC* setting procedures, refer to section 8, Data Transfer Controller (DTC) or section 7, DMA controller (DMAC).

Note: * The Flags are automatically cleared by the DTC when the DTC's DIESEL bit is cleared to 0 and the transfer counter value is not 0.

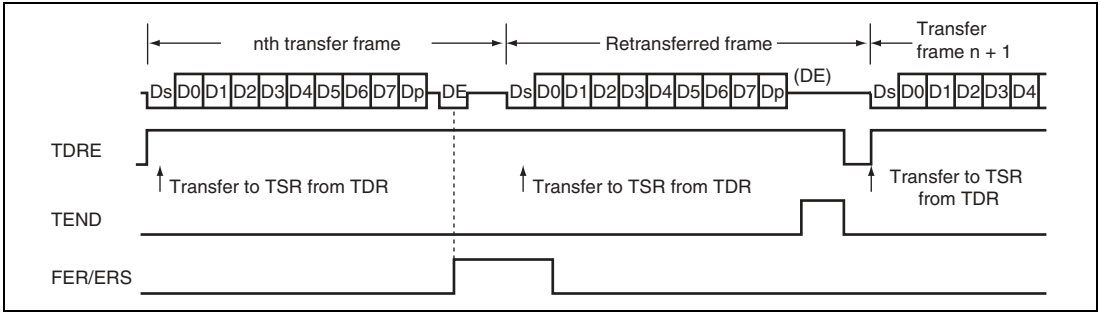


Figure 13.30 Retransfer Operation in SCI Transmit Mode

The timing for setting the TEND flag depends on the value of the GM bit in SMR. The TEND flag set timing is shown in figure 13.31.

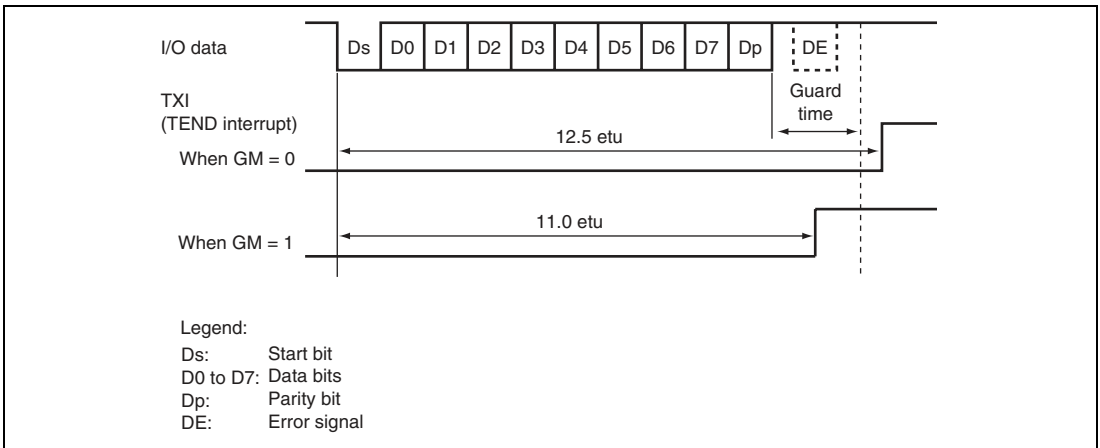


Figure 13.31 TEND Flag Generation Timing in Transmission Operation

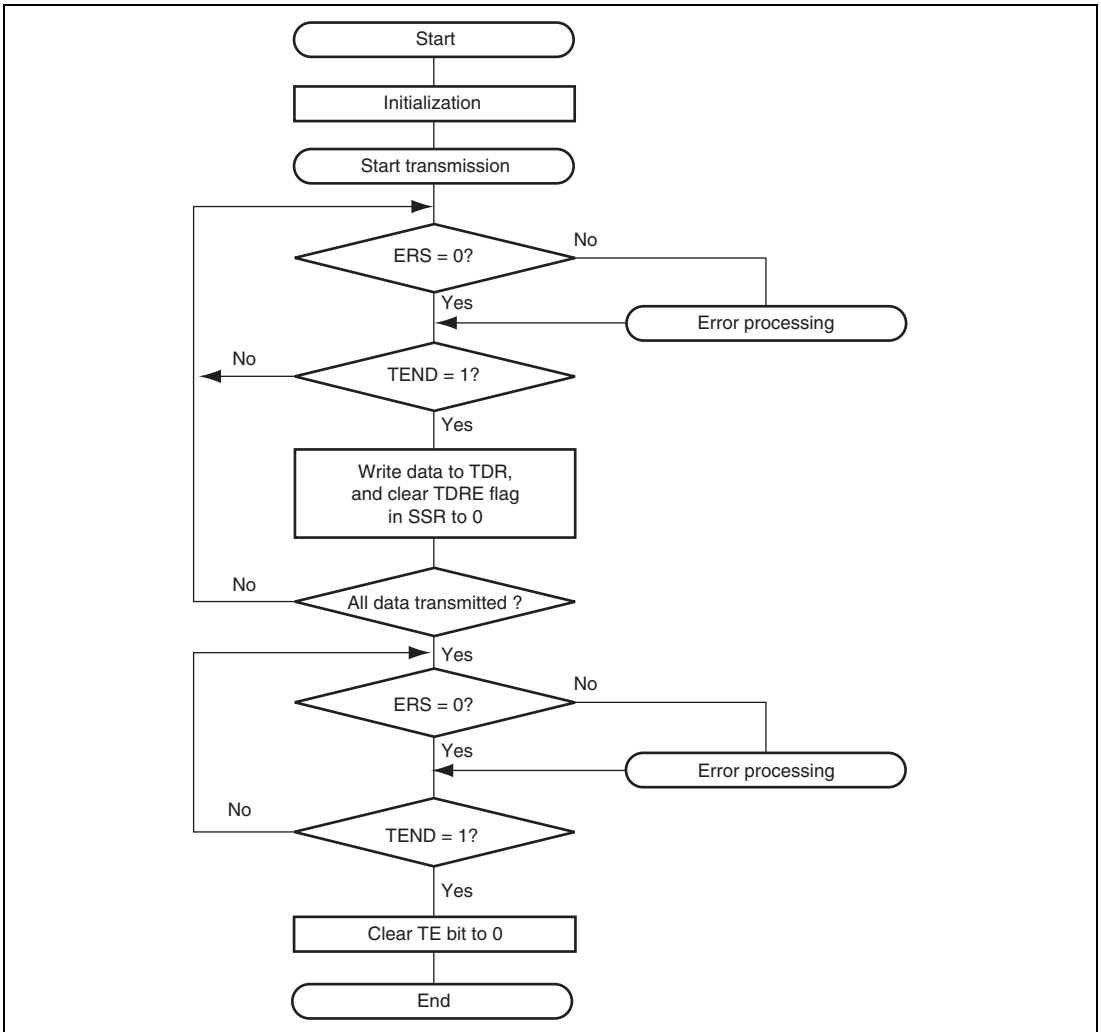


Figure 13.32 Example of Transmission Processing Flow

13.7.8 Serial Data Reception (Except for Block Transfer Mode)

Data reception in Smart Card interface mode uses the same operation procedure as for normal serial communication interface mode. Figure 13.33 illustrates the retransfer operation when the SCI is in receive mode.

1. If an error is found when the received parity bit is checked, the PER bit in SSR is automatically set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is set at this time, an ERI interrupt request is generated. The PER bit in SSR should be kept cleared to 0 until the next parity bit is sampled.
2. The RDRF bit in SSR is not set for a frame in which an error has occurred.
3. If no error is found when the received parity bit is checked, the PER bit in SSR is not set to 1, the receive operation is judged to have been completed normally, and the RDRF flag in SSR is automatically set to 1. If the RIE bit in SCR is enabled at this time, an RXI interrupt request is generated.

Figure 13.34 shows a flowchart for reception. A sequence of receive operations can be performed automatically by specifying the DTC* or the DMAC to be activated using an RXI interrupt source. In a receive operation, an RXI interrupt request is generated when the RDRF flag in SSR is set to 1. If the RXI request is designated beforehand as a DTC* or the DMAC activation source, the DTC* or the DMAC will be activated by the RXI request, and the receive data will be transferred. The RDRF flag is cleared to 0 automatically when data is transferred by the DTC* or the DMAC. If an error occurs in receive mode and the ORER or PER flag is set to 1, a transfer error interrupt (ERI) request will be generated. Hence, so the error flag must be cleared to 0. In the event of an error, the DTC* or the DMAC is not activated and receive data is skipped. Therefore, receive data is transferred for only the specified number of bytes in the event of an error. Even when a parity error occurs in receive mode and the PER flag is set to 1, the data that has been received is transferred to RDR and can be read from there.

Notes: For details on receive operations in block transfer mode, refer to section 13.4, Operation in Asynchronous Mode.

- * The Flags are automatically cleared by the DTC when the DTC's DISEL bit is cleared to 0 and the transfer counter value is not 0.

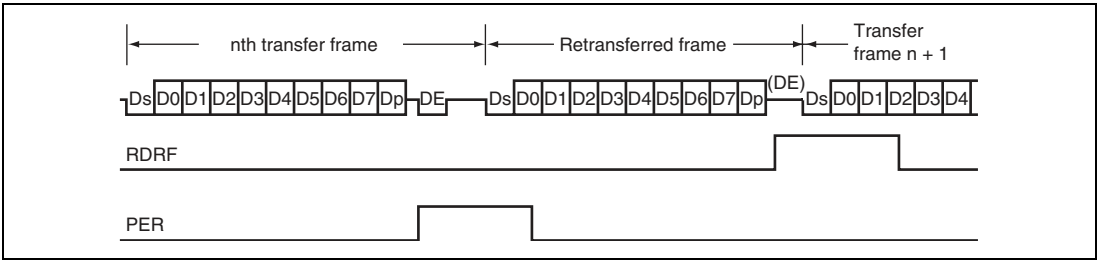


Figure 13.33 Retransfer Operation in SCI Receive Mode

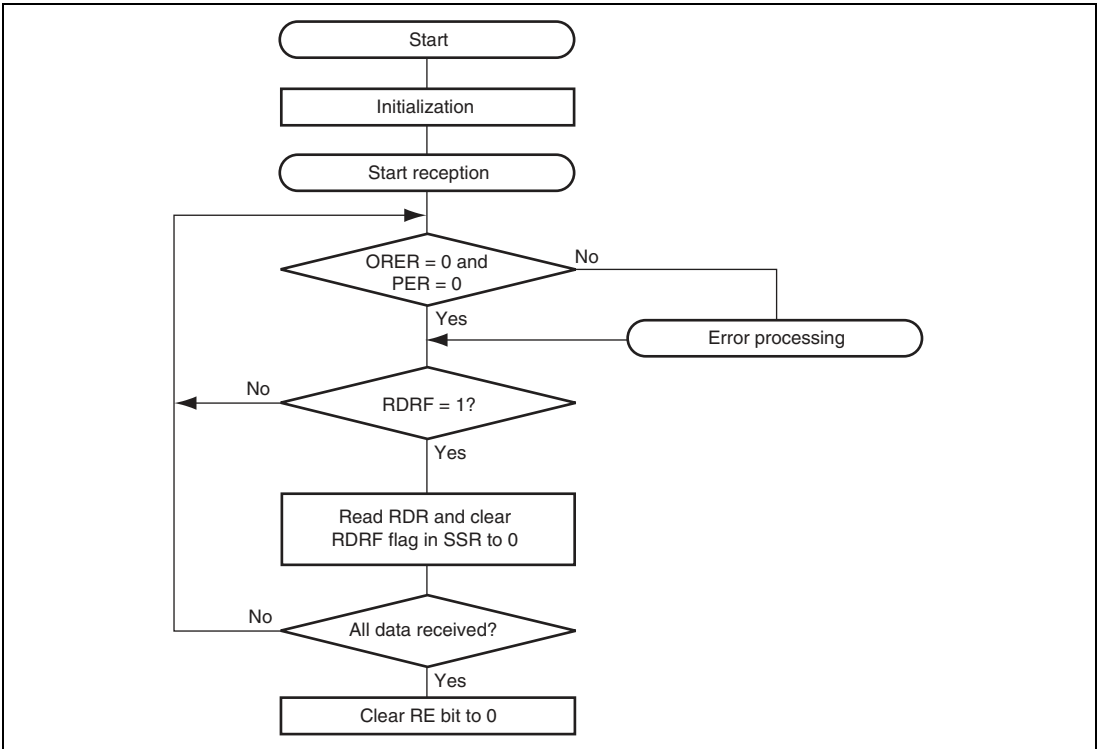


Figure 13.34 Example of Reception Processing Flow

13.7.9 Clock Output Control

When the GM bit in SMR is set to 1, the clock output level can be fixed with bits CKE0 and CKE1 in SCR. At this time, the minimum clock pulse width can be made the specified width. Figure 13.35 shows the timing for fixing the clock output level. In this example, GM is set to 1, CKE1 is cleared to 0, and the CKE0 bit is controlled.

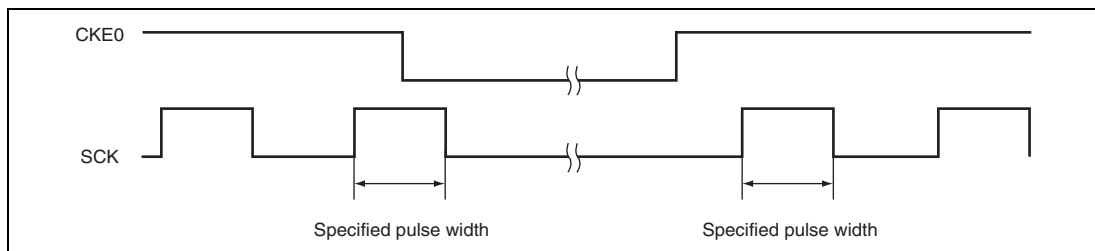


Figure 13.35 Timing for Fixing Clock Output Level

When turning on the power or switching between Smart Card interface mode and software standby mode, the following procedures should be followed in order to maintain the clock duty.

Powering On: To secure clock duty from power-on, the following switching procedure should be followed.

1. The initial state is port input and high impedance. Use a pull-up resistor or pull-down resistor to fix the potential.
2. Fix the SCK pin to the specified output level with the CKE1 bit in SCR.
3. Set SMR and SCMR, and switch to smart card mode operation.
4. Set the CKE0 bit in SCR to 1 to start clock output.

When changing from smart card interface mode to software standby mode:

1. Set the data register (DR) and data direction register (DDR) corresponding to the SCK pin to the value for the fixed output state in software standby mode.
2. Write 0 to the TE bit and RE bit in the serial control register (SCR) to halt transmit/receive operation. At the same time, set the CKE1 bit to the value for the fixed output state in software standby mode.
3. Write 0 to the CKE0 bit in SCR to halt the clock.
4. Wait for one serial clock period.

During this interval, clock output is fixed at the specified level, with the duty preserved.

5. Make the transition to the software standby state.

When returning to smart card interface mode from software standby mode

1. Exit the software standby state.
2. Write 1 to the CKE0 bit in SCR and output the clock. Signal generation is started with the normal duty.

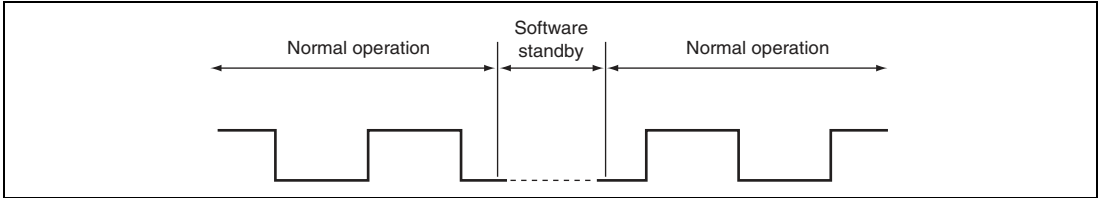


Figure 13.36 Clock Halt and Restart Procedure

13.8 SCI Select Function

The SCI_0 supports the SCI select function which allows clock synchronous communication between master LSI and one of multiple slave LSI. Figure 13.37 shows an example of communication using the SCI select function. Figure 13.38 shows the operation.

The master LSI can communicate with slave LSI_A by bringing $\overline{\text{SEL_A}}$ and $\overline{\text{SEL_B}}$ signals low and high, respectively. In this case, the TxDO_B pin of the slave LSI_B is brought high-impedance state and the internal SCK0_A signal is fixed high. This halts the communication operation of slave LSI_B. The master LSI can communicate with slave LSI_B by bringing the $\overline{\text{SEL_A}}$ and $\overline{\text{SEL_B}}$ signals high and low, respectively.

The slave LSI detects the selection by receiving the low level input from the $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ pin and immediately executes data transmission/reception processing.

Note: The selection signals ($\overline{\text{SEL_A}}$ and $\overline{\text{SEL_B}}$) of the LSI must be switched while the serial clock (M_SCK) is high after the end bit of the transmit data has been send. Note that one selection signal can be brought low at the same time.

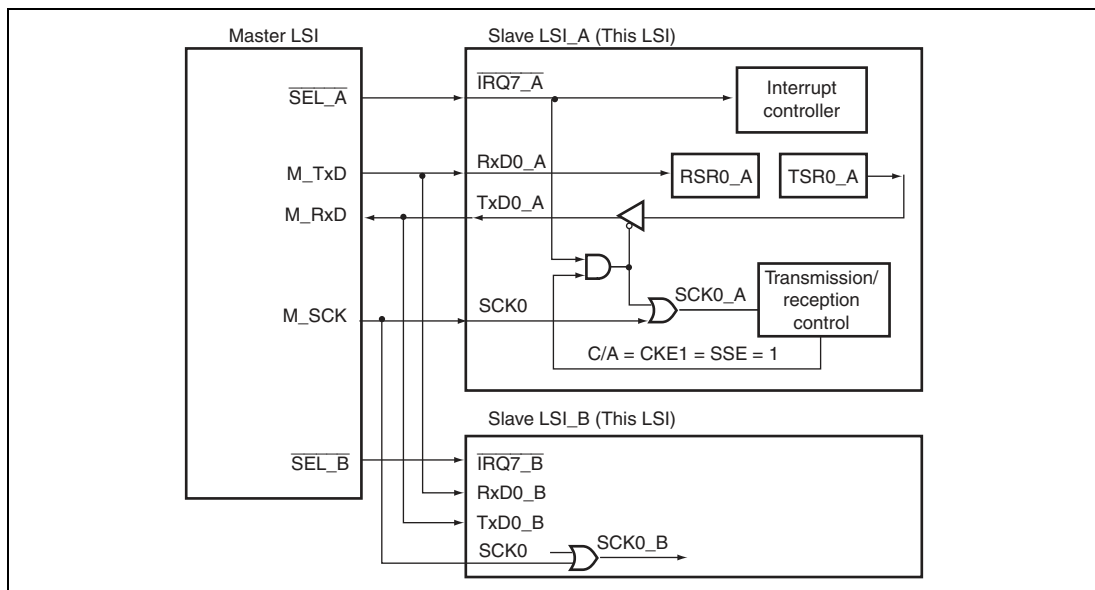


Figure 13.37 Example of Communication Using the SCI Select Function

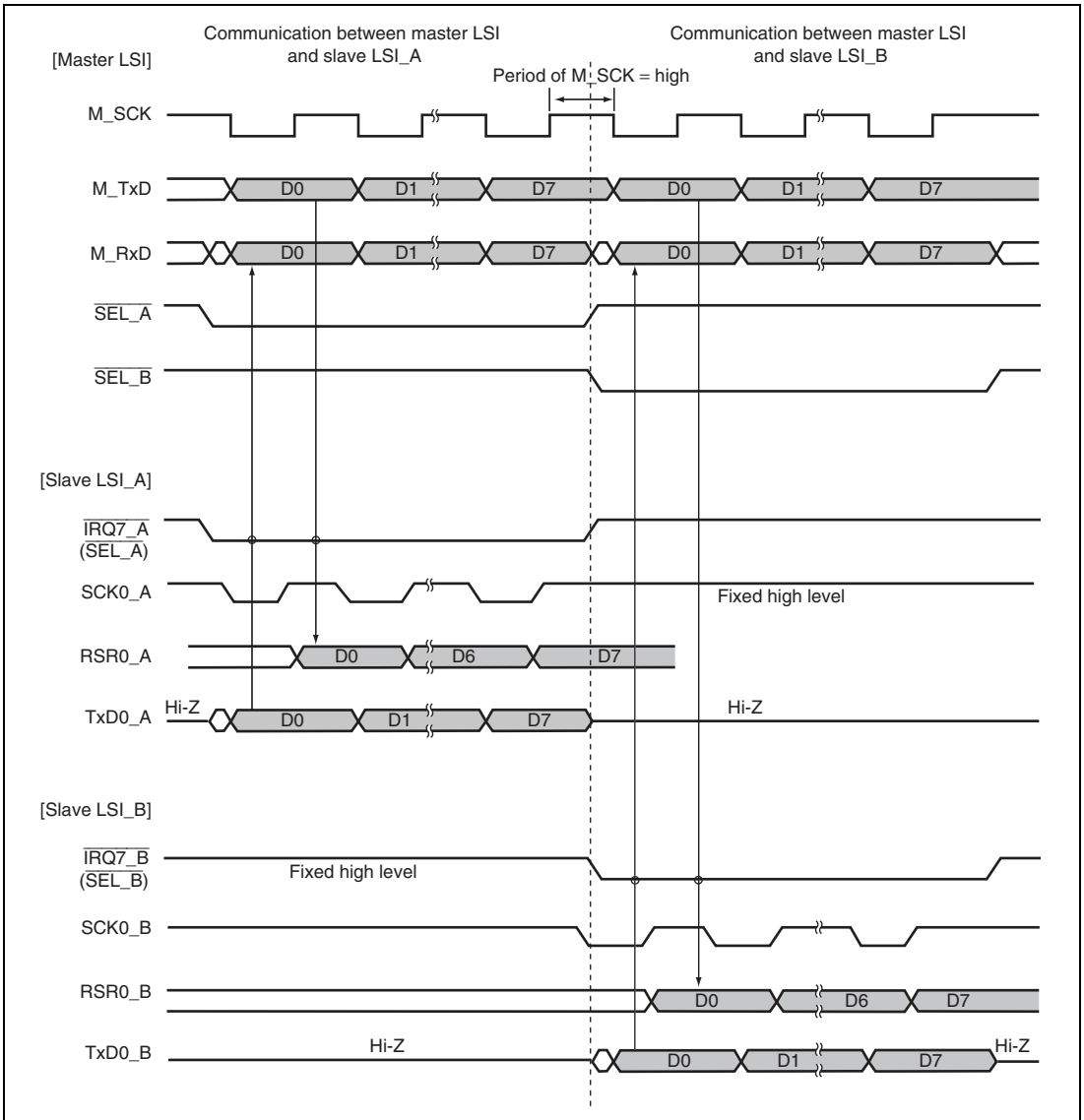


Figure 13.38 Example of Communication Using the SCI Select Function

13.9 Interrupts

13.9.1 Interrupts in Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode

Table 13.12 shows the interrupt sources in normal serial communication interface mode. A different interrupt vector is assigned to each interrupt source, and individual interrupt sources can be enabled or disabled using the enable bits in SCR.

When the TDRE flag in SSR is set to 1, a TXI interrupt request is generated. When the TEND flag in SSR is set to 1, a TEI interrupt request is generated. A TXI interrupt can activate the DMAC or the DTC to perform data transfer. The TDRE flag is cleared to 0 automatically when data is transferred by the DMAC or the DTC*.

When the RDRF flag in SSR is set to 1, an RXI interrupt request is generated. When the ORER, PER, or FER flag in SSR is set to 1, an ERI interrupt request is generated. An RXI interrupt request can activate the DMAC or the DTC to transfer data. The RDRF flag is cleared to 0 automatically when data is transferred by the DMAC or the DTC*.

A TEI interrupt is requested when the TEND flag is set to 1 and the TEIE bit is set to 1. If a TEI interrupt and a TXI interrupt are requested simultaneously, the TXI interrupt has priority for acceptance. However, if the TDRE and TEND flags are cleared simultaneously by the TXI interrupt routine, the SCI cannot branch to the TEI interrupt routine later.

Note: * The Flags are automatically cleared by the DTC when the DTC's DISEL bit is cleared to 0 and the transfer counter value is not 0.

13.9.2 Interrupts in Smart Card Interface Mode

Table 13.13 shows the interrupt sources in Smart Card interface mode. The transmit end interrupt (TEI) request cannot be used in this mode.

Note: In case of block transfer mode, see section 13.9.1, Interrupts in Normal Serial Communication Interface Mode.

Table 13.13 Interrupt Sources in Smart Card Interface Mode

| Channel | Name | Interrupt Source | Interrupt Flag | DTC Activation | DMAC Activation | Priority* |
|---------|------|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 0 | ERI0 | Receive Error, detection | ORER, PER, ERS | Not possible | Not possible | High ↑ Low |
| | RX10 | Receive Data Full | RDRF | Possible | Possible | |
| | TX10 | Transmit Data Empty | TEND | Possible | Possible | |
| 1 | ERI1 | Receive Error, detection | ORER, PER, ERS | Not possible | Not possible | |
| | RX11 | Receive Data Full | RDRF | Possible | Possible | |
| | TX11 | Transmit Data Empty | TEND | Possible | Possible | |
| 2 | ERI2 | Receive Error, detection | ORER, PER, ERS | Not possible | Not possible | |
| | RX12 | Receive Data Full | RDRF | Possible | Not possible | |
| | TX12 | Transmit Data Empty | TEND | Possible | Not possible | |

Notes: * Indicates the initial state immediately after a reset. Priorities in channels can be changed by the interrupt controller.

13.10 Usage Notes

13.10.1 Break Detection and Processing (Asynchronous Mode Only)

When framing error detection is performed, a break can be detected by reading the RxD pin value directly. In a break, the input from the RxD pin becomes all 0s, setting the FER flag, and possibly the PER flag. Note that as the SCI continues the receive operation after receiving a break, even if the FER flag is cleared to 0, it will be set to 1 again.

13.10.2 Mark State and Break Detection (Asynchronous Mode Only)

When TE is 0, the TxD pin is used as an I/O port whose direction (input or output) and level are determined by DR and DDR. This can be used to set the TxD pin to mark state (high level) or send a break during serial data transmission. To maintain the communication line at mark state until TE is set to 1, set both DDR and DR to 1. As TE is cleared to 0 at this point, the TxD pin becomes an I/O port, and 1 is output from the TxD pin. To send a break during serial transmission, first set PCR to 1 and PDR to 0, and then clear TE to 0. When TE is cleared to 0, the transmitter is initialized regardless of the current transmission state, the TxD pin becomes an I/O port, and 0 is output from the TxD pin.

13.10.3 Receive Error Flags and Transmit Operations (Clocked Synchronous Mode Only)

Transmission cannot be started when a receive error flag (ORER, PER, or FER) is set to 1, even if the TDRE flag is cleared to 0. Be sure to clear the receive error flags to 0 before starting transmission. Note also that receive error flags cannot be cleared to 0 even if the RE bit is cleared to 0.

13.10.4 Restrictions on Use of DMAC or DTC

- When an external clock source is used as the serial clock, the transmit clock should not be input until at least 5 ϕ clock cycles after TDR is updated by the DMAC or the DTC. Misoperation may occur if the transmit clock is input within 4 ϕ clocks after TDR is updated. (figure 13.39)
- When RDR is read by the DMAC or the DTC, be sure to set the activation source to the relevant SCI reception end interrupt (RXI).
- During data transfer, the TDRE and RDRF flags are automatically cleared by the DTC when the DTC's DISEL bit is cleared to 0 and the transfer counter value is not 0. Consequently, it is necessary to use the CPU to clear the TDRE and RDRF flags if DISEL is set to 1 or if the transfer counter value is 0.

In particular, data transmission cannot be completed correctly unless the TDRE flag is cleared using the CPU.

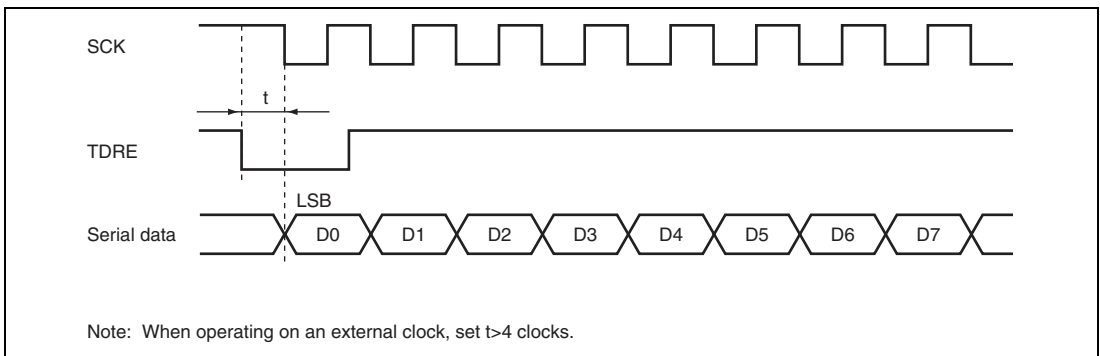


Figure 13.39 Example of Clocked Synchronous Transmission by DMAC or DTC

13.10.5 Operation in Case of Mode Transition

- Transmission

Operation should be stopped (by clearing TE, TIE, and TEIE to 0) before making a module stop mode, software standby mode, or subsleep mode transition. TSR, TDR, and SSR are reset. The output pin states in module stop mode, software standby mode, or subsleep mode depend on the port settings, and becomes high-level output after the relevant mode is cleared. If a transition is made during transmission, the data being transmitted will be undefined. When transmitting without changing the transmit mode after the relevant mode is cleared, transmission can be started by setting TE to 1 again, and performing the following sequence: SSR read -> TDR write -> TDRE clearance. To transmit with a different transmit mode after clearing the relevant mode, the procedure must be started again from initialization. Figure 13.40 shows a sample flowchart for mode transition during transmission. Port pin states are shown in figures 13.41 and 13.42.

Operation should also be stopped (by clearing TE, TIE, and TEIE to 0) before making a transition from transmission by DTC transfer to module stop mode or software standby mode transition. To perform transmission with the DTC after the relevant mode is cleared, setting TE and TIE to 1 will set the TXI flag and start DTC transmission.

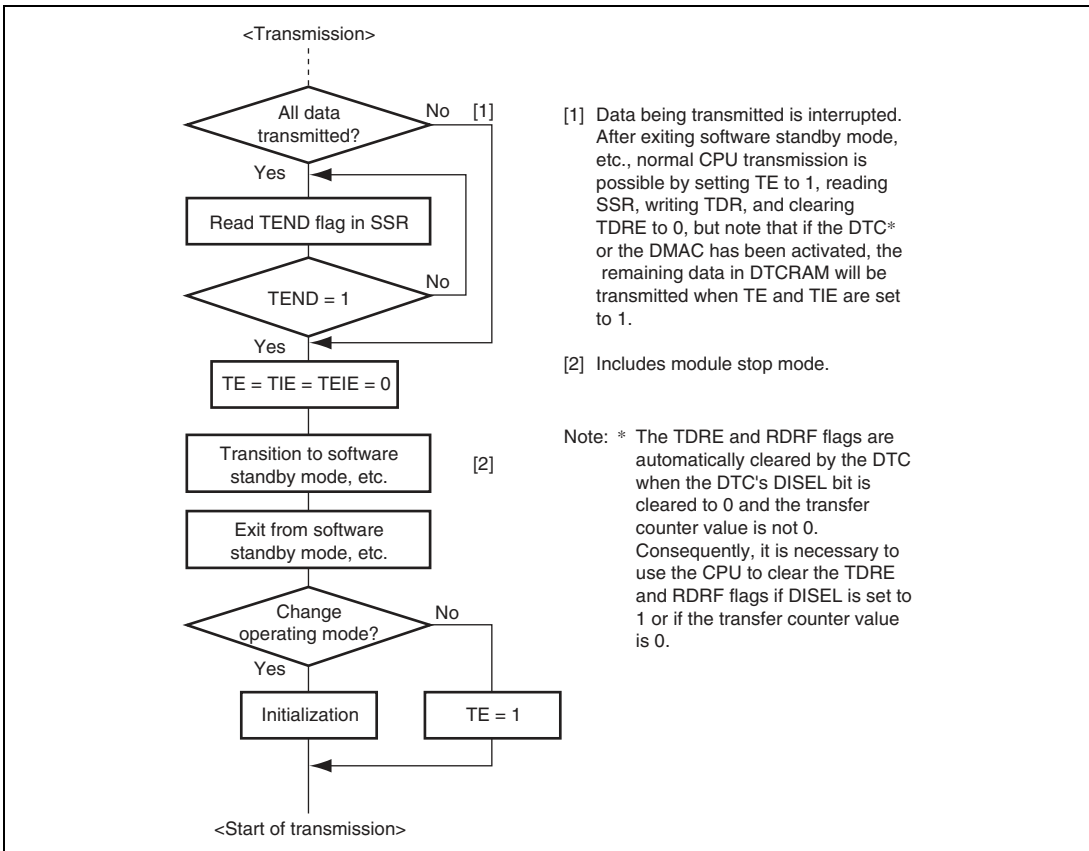


Figure 13.40 Sample Flowchart for Mode Transition during Transmission

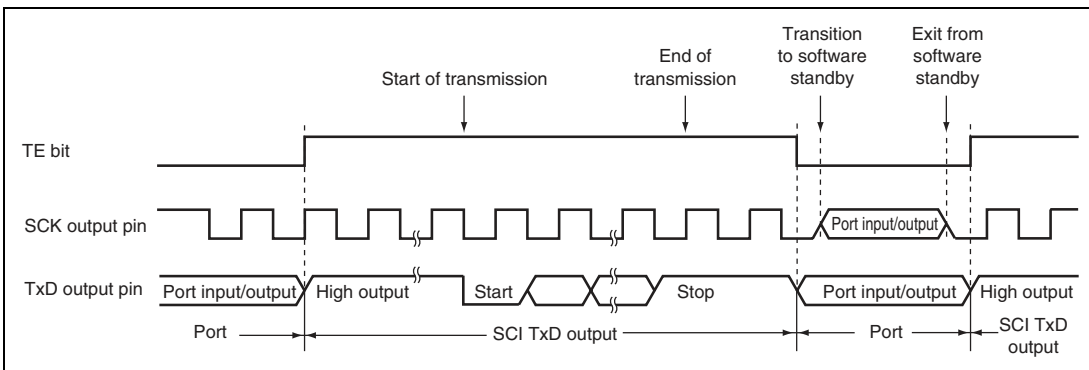


Figure 13.41 Port Pin State of Asynchronous Transmission Using Internal Clock

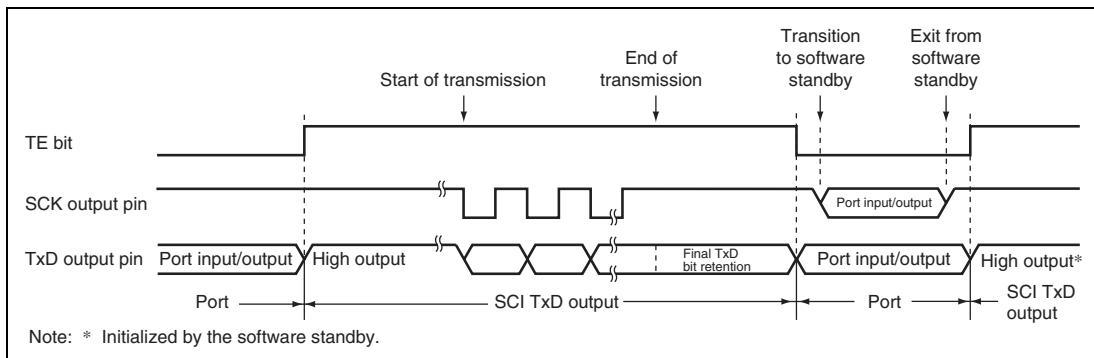


Figure 13.42 Port Pin State of Synchronous Transmission Using Internal Clock

- Reception

Receive operation should be stopped (by clearing RE to 0) before making a module stop mode, software standby mode, watch mode, subactive mode, or subsleep mode transition. RSR, RDR, and SSR are reset. If a transition is made without stopping operation, the data being received will be invalid.

To continue receiving without changing the reception mode after the relevant mode is cleared, set RE to 1 before starting reception. To receive with a different receive mode, the procedure must be started again from initialization.

Figure 13.43 shows a sample flowchart for mode transition during reception.

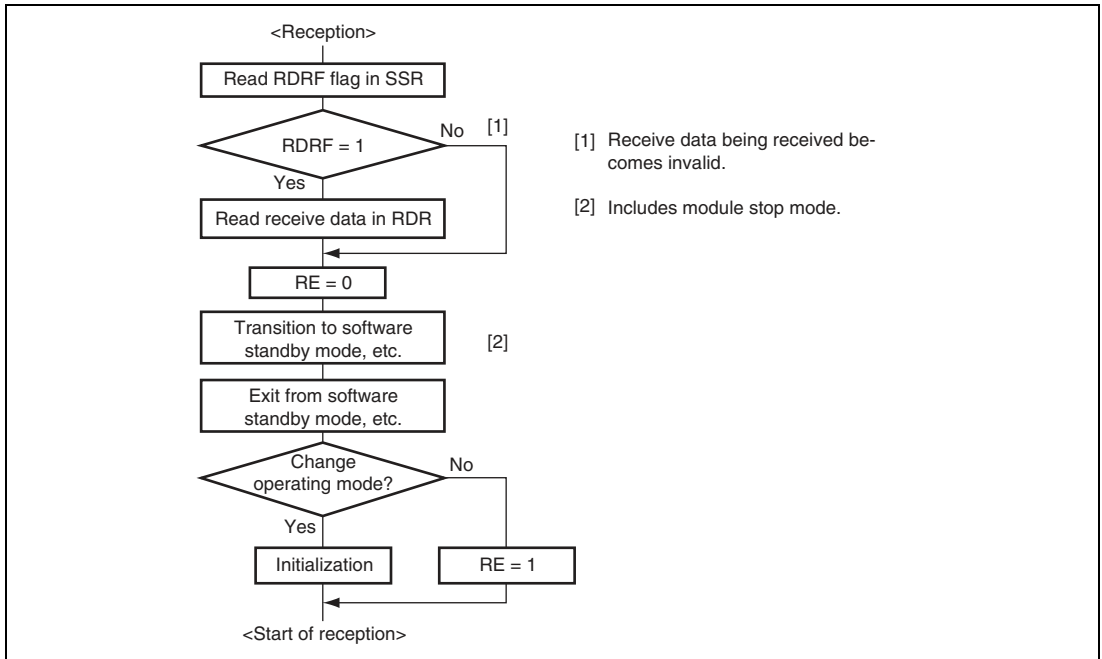


Figure 13.43 Sample Flowchart for Mode Transition during Reception

13.10.6 Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function

When switching the SCK pin function to the output port function (high-level output) by making the following settings while $DDR = 1$, $DR = 1$, $C/\bar{A} = 1$, $CKE1 = 0$, $CKE0 = 0$, and $TE = 1$ (synchronous mode), low-level output occurs for one half-cycle.

1. End of serial data transmission
2. TE bit = 0
3. C/\bar{A} bit = 0 ... switchover to port output
4. Occurrence of low-level output (see figure 13.44)

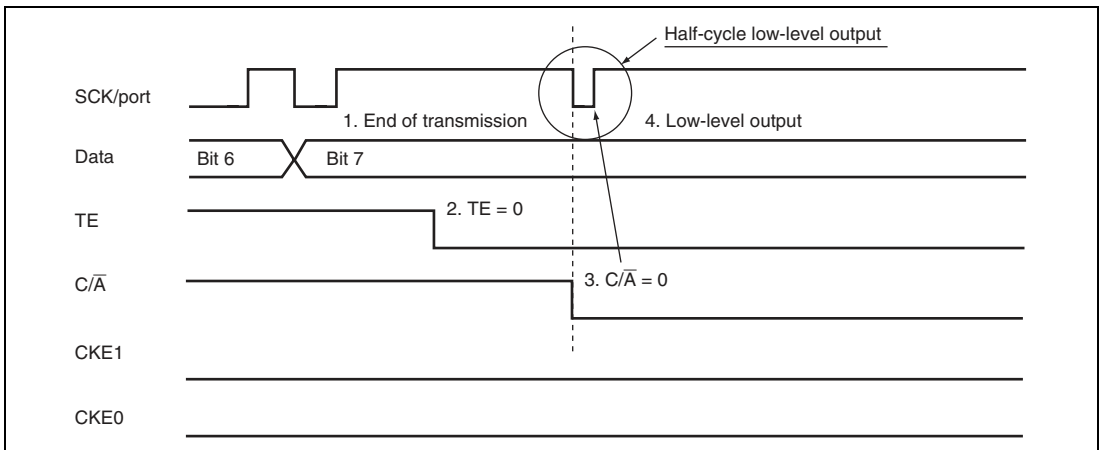
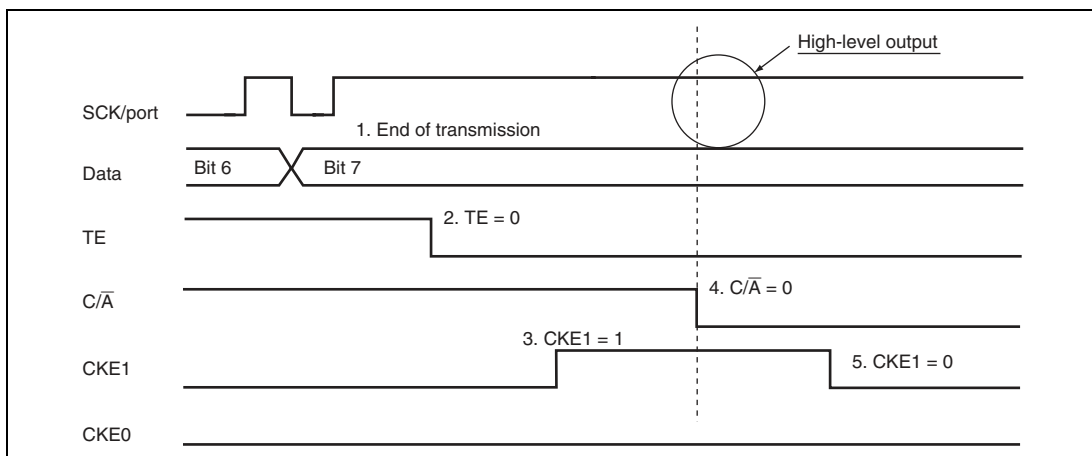


Figure 13.44 Operation when Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function

Sample Procedure for Avoiding Low-Level Output: As this sample procedure temporarily places the SCK pin in the input state, the SCK/port pin should be pulled up beforehand with an external circuit.

With $DDR = 1$, $DR = 1$, $C/\bar{A} = 1$, $CKE1 = 0$, $CKE0 = 0$, and $TE = 1$, make the following settings in the order shown.

1. End of serial data transmission
2. TE bit = 0
3. $CKE1$ bit = 1
4. C/\bar{A} bit = 0 ... switchover to port output
5. $CKE1$ bit = 0



**Figure 13.45 Operation when Switching from SCK Pin Function to Port Pin Function
(Example of Preventing Low-Level Output)**

13.10.7 Module Stop Mode Setting

Operation of the SCI can be disabled or enabled using the module stop control register. The initial setting is for operation of the SCI to be halted. Register access is enabled by clearing module stop mode. For details, refer to section 22, Power-Down Modes.

Section 14 Boundary Scan Function

This LSI incorporates a boundary scan function, which is a serial I/O interface based on the JTAG (Joint Test Action Group, IEEEStd.1149.1 and IEEE Standard Test Access Port and Boundary Scan Architecture). Figure 14.1 shows the block diagram of the boundary scan function.

14.1 Features

- Five test signals
 - TCK, TDI, TDO, TMS, $\overline{\text{TRST}}$
- Six test modes supported
 - BYAPASS, SAMPLE/PRELOAD, EXTEST, CLAMP, HIGHZ, IDCODE
- Boundary scan function cannot be performed on the following pins.
 - Power supply pins: VCC, VSS, Vref, AVCC, AVSS, PLLVCC, PLLVSS, PLLCAP, DrVCC, DrVSS
 - Clock signals: EXTAL, XTAL, EXTAL48, XTAL48
 - Analog signals: P40 to P43, P96, P97, USD+, USD-
 - Boundary scan signals: TCK, TDI, TDO, TMS, $\overline{\text{TRST}}$
 - E10A signal ($\overline{\text{EMLE}}$)

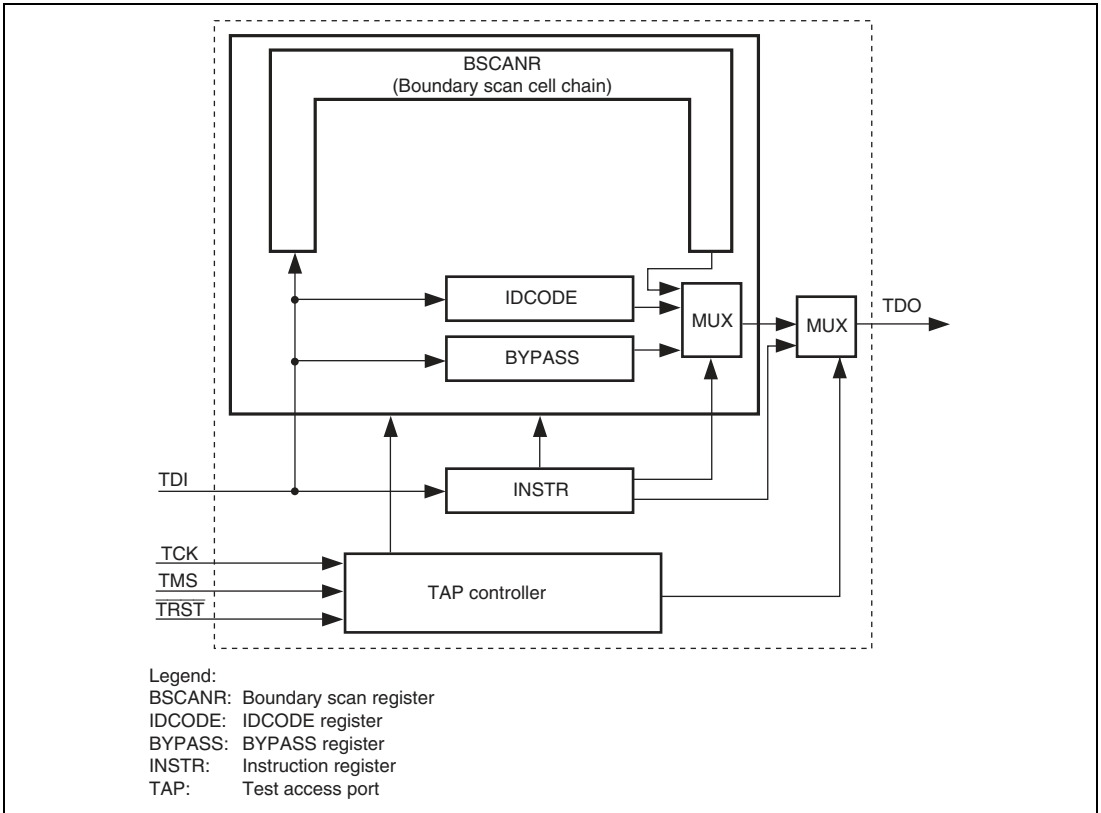


Figure 14.1 Block Diagram of Boundary Scan Function

14.2 Pin Configuration

Table 14.1 shows the I/O pins used in the boundary scan function.

Table 14.1 Pin Configuration

| Pin Name | I/O | Function |
|--------------------------|--------|--|
| TMS | Input | <p>Test Mode Select</p> <p>Controls the TAP controller which is a 16-state Finite State Machine.</p> <p>The TMS input value at the rising edge of TCK determines the status transition direction on the TAP controller.</p> <p>The TMS is fixed high when the boundary scan function is not used.</p> <p>The protocol is based on JTAG standard (IEEE Std.1149.1).</p> <p>This pin has a pull-up resistor.</p> |
| TCK | Input | <p>Test Clock</p> <p>A clock signal for the boundary scan function.</p> <p>When the boundary scan function is used, input a clock of 50% duty to this pin.</p> <p>This pin has a pull-up resistor.</p> |
| TDI | Input | <p>Test Data Input</p> <p>A data input signal for the boundary scan function.</p> <p>Data input from the TDI is latched at the rising edge of TCK.</p> <p>TDI is fixed high when the boundary scan function is not used.</p> <p>This pin has a pull-up resistor.</p> |
| TDO | Output | <p>Test Data Output</p> <p>A data output signal for the boundary scan function. Data output from the TDO changes at the falling edge of TCK. The output driver of the TDO is driven only when it is necessary only in Shift-IR or Shift-DR states, and is brought to the high-impedance state when not necessary.</p> |
| $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ | Input | <p>Test Reset</p> <p>Asynchronously resets the TAP controller when $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ is brought low.</p> <p>The user must apply power-on reset signal specific to the boundary scan function when the power is supplied (For details on signal design, see section 14.5, Usage Notes).</p> <p>This pin has a pull-up resistor.</p> |

14.3 Register Descriptions

The boundary scan function has the following registers. These registers cannot be accessed by the CPU.

- Instruction register (INSTR)
- IDCODE register (IDCODE)
- BYPASS register (BYPASS)
- Boundary scan register (BSCANR)

14.3.1 Instruction Register (INSTR)

INSTR is a 3-bit register. At initialization, this register is specified to IDCODE mode. When $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ is pulled low, or when the TAP controller is in the Test-Logic-Reset state, INSTR is initialized. INSTR can be written by the serial data input from the TDI. If more than three bits of instruction is input from the TDI, INSTR stores the last three bits of serial data.

If a command reserved in INSTR is used, the correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 2 | TI2 | 1 | — | Test Instruction Bits |
| 1 | TI1 | 0 | — | Instruction configuration is shown in table 14.2. |
| 0 | TI0 | 1 | — | |

Table 14.2 Instruction configuration

| Bit 2 | Bit1 | Bit 0 | Instruction |
|-------|------|-------|------------------------|
| TI2 | TI1 | TI0 | |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | EXTEST |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | SAMPLE/PRELOAD |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | CLAMP |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | HIGHZ |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Reserved |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | IDCODE (initial value) |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | Reserved |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | BYPASS |

EXTEST: The EXTEST instruction is used to test external circuits when this LSI is installed on the print circuit board. If this instruction is executed, output pins are used to output test data (specified by the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction) from the boundary scan register to the print circuit board, and input pins are used to input test results.

SAMPLE/PRELOAD: The SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction is used to input data from the LSI internal circuits to the boundary scan register, output data from scan path, and reload the data to the scan path. While this instruction is executed, input signals are directly input to the LSI and output signals are also directly output to the external circuits. The LSI system circuit is not affected by this instruction.

In SAMPLE operation, the boundary scan register latches the snap shot of data transferred from input pins to internal circuit or data transferred from internal circuit to output pins. The latched data is read from the scan path. The scan register latches the snap data at the rising edge of the TCK in Capture-DR state. The scan register latches snap shot without affecting the LSI normal operation.

In PRELOAD operation, initial value is written from the scan path to the parallel output latch of the boundary scan register prior to the EXTEST instruction execution. If the EXTEST is executed without executing this RELOAD operation, undefined values are output from the beginning to the end (transfer to the output latch) of the EXTEST sequence. (In EXTEST instruction, output parallel latches are always output to the output pins.)

CLAMP: When the CLAMP instruction is selected output pins output the boundary scan register value which was specified by the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction in advance. While the CLAMP instruction is selected, the status of boundary scan register is maintained regardless of the TAP controller state. BYPASS is connected between TDI and TDO, the same operation as BYPASS instruction can be achieved.

HIGHZ: When the HIGHZ instruction is selected, all outputs enter high-impedance state. While this instruction is selected, the status of boundary scan register is maintained regardless of the TAP controller state. BYPASS resistor is connected between TDI and TDO, the same operation as BYPASS instruction can be achieved.

IDCODE : When the IDCODE instruction is selected, IDCODE register value is output to the TDO in Shift-DR state of TAP controller. In this case, IDCODE register value is output from the LSB. During this instruction execution, test circuit does not affect the system circuit. INSTR is initialized by the IDCODE instruction in Test-Logic-Reset state of TAP controller.

BYPASS: The BYPASS instruction is a standard instruction necessary to operate bypass register. The BYPASS instruction improves the serial data transfer speed by bypassing the scan path. During this instruction execution, test circuit does not affect the system circuit.

14.3.2 IDCODE Register (IDCODE)

IDCODE is a 32-bit register. If INSTR is set to IDCODE mode, IDCODE is connected between TDI and TDO. The HD64F2215 and H8S/2215U output fixed code H'0002200F, HD6432215B output fixed code H'001B200F, HD6432215C output fixed code H'001C200F, HD64F2215R, HD64F2215RU and HD64F2215CU output fixed code H'08030447, and HD64F2215T and HD64F2215TU output fixed code H'08031447, respectively, from the TDO. Serial data cannot be written to IDCODE through TDI. Table 14.3 shows the IDCODE configuration.

Table 14.3 IDCODE Register Configuration

| Bits | 31 to 28 | 27 to 12 | 11 to 1 | 0 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| HD64F2215 code | 0000 | 0000 0000 0010 0010 | 0000 0000 111 | 1 |
| HD64F2215U code | | | | |
| HD6432215B code | 0000 | 0000 0001 1011 0010 | 0000 0000 111 | 1 |
| HD6432215C code | 0000 | 0000 0001 1100 0010 | 0000 0000 111 | 1 |
| HD64F2215R code | 0000 | 1000 0000 0011 0000 | 0100 0100 011 | 1 |
| HD64F2215RU and HD64F2215CU code | 0000 | 1000 0000 0011 0000 | 0100 0100 011 | 1 |
| HD64F2215T and HD64F2215TU code | 0000 | 1000 0000 0011 0001 | 0100 0100 011 | 1 |
| Contents | Version (4 bits) | Part No. (16 bits) | Product No. (11 bits) | Fixed code (1 bit) |

14.3.3 BYPASS Register (BYPASS)

BYPASS is a 1-bit register. If INSTR is specified to BYPASS mode, CLAMP mode, or HIGHZ mode, BYPASS is connected between TDI and TDO.

14.3.4 Boundary Scan Register (BSCANR)

BSCAN is a 217-bit shift register assigned on the pins to control input/output pins.

The I/O pins consists of three bits (IN, Control, OUT), input pins 1 bit (IN), and output pins 1 bit (OUT) of shift registers. The boundary scan test based on the JTAG standard can be performed by using instructions listed in table 14.2. Table 14.4 shows the correspondence between the LSI pins and boundary scan registers. (In table 14.4, Control indicates the high active pin. By specifying Control to high, the pin is driven by OUT.) Figure 14.2 shows the boundary scan register configuration example.

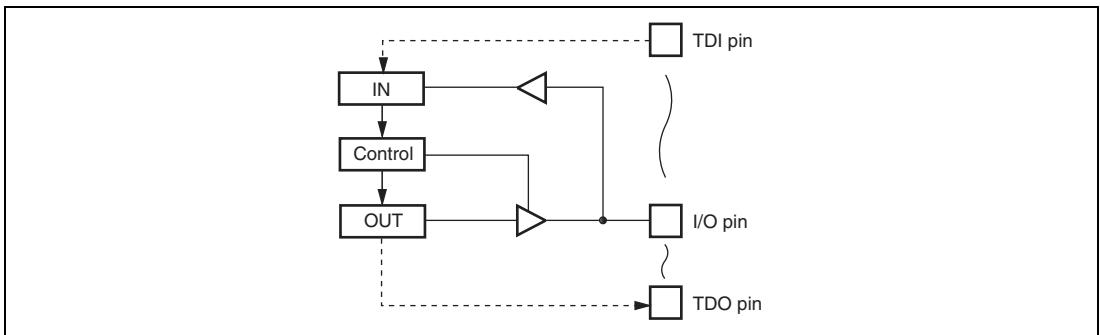


Figure 14.2 Boundary Scan Register Configuration

Table 14.4 Correspondence between LSI Pins and Boundary Scan Register

| TFP-120, TFP-120V Pin No. | BP-112, BP-112V Pin No. | Pin Name | I/O | Bit Name |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------|---------|----------|
| From TDI | | | | |
| 111 | A4 | PE0/D0 | IN | 216 |
| | | | Control | 215 |
| | | | OUT | 214 |
| 113 | D5 | PE1/D1 | IN | 213 |
| | | | Control | 212 |
| | | | OUT | 211 |
| 115 | B4 | PE2/D2 | IN | 210 |
| | | | Control | 209 |
| | | | OUT | 208 |
| 116 | A3 | PE3/D3 | IN | 207 |
| | | | Control | 206 |
| | | | OUT | 205 |
| 117 | C4 | PE4/D4 | IN | 204 |
| | | | Control | 203 |
| | | | OUT | 202 |
| 118 | B3 | PE5/D5 | IN | 201 |
| | | | Control | 200 |
| | | | OUT | 199 |
| 119 | A2 | PE6/D6 | IN | 198 |
| | | | Control | 197 |
| | | | OUT | 196 |
| 120 | C3 | PE7/D7 | IN | 195 |
| | | | Control | 194 |
| | | | OUT | 193 |
| 2 | B2 | PD0/D8 | IN | 192 |
| | | | Control | 191 |
| | | | OUT | 190 |
| 3 | B1 | PD1/D9 | IN | 189 |
| | | | Control | 188 |
| | | | OUT | 187 |

| TFP-120, TFP-120V Pin No. | BP-112, BP-112V Pin No. | Pin Name | I/O | Bit Name |
|--|--|-----------------|------------|-----------------|
| 4 | D4 | PD2/D10 | IN | 186 |
| | | | Control | 185 |
| | | | OUT | 184 |
| 5 | C2 | PD3/D11 | IN | 183 |
| | | | Control | 182 |
| | | | OUT | 181 |
| 6 | C1 | PD4/D12 | IN | 180 |
| | | | Control | 179 |
| | | | OUT | 178 |
| 7 | D3 | PD5/D13 | IN | 177 |
| | | | Control | 176 |
| | | | OUT | 175 |
| 8 | D2 | PD6/D14 | IN | 174 |
| | | | Control | 173 |
| | | | OUT | 172 |
| 9 | D1 | PD7/D15 | IN | 171 |
| | | | Control | 170 |
| | | | OUT | 169 |
| 11 | E3 | PC0/A0 | IN | 168 |
| | | | Control | 167 |
| | | | OUT | 166 |
| 13 | E2 | PC1/A1 | IN | 165 |
| | | | Control | 164 |
| | | | OUT | 163 |
| 14 | F3 | PC2/A2 | IN | 162 |
| | | | Control | 161 |
| | | | OUT | 160 |
| 15 | F1 | PC3/A3 | IN | 159 |
| | | | Control | 158 |
| | | | OUT | 157 |
| 16 | F2 | PC4/A4 | IN | 156 |
| | | | Control | 155 |
| | | | OUT | 154 |

| TFP-120, TFP-120V Pin No. | BP-112, BP-112V Pin No. | Pin Name | I/O | Bit Name |
|--|--|-----------------|------------|-----------------|
| 17 | F4 | PC5/A5 | IN | 153 |
| | | | Control | 152 |
| | | | OUT | 151 |
| 18 | G1 | PC6/A6 | IN | 150 |
| | | | Control | 149 |
| | | | OUT | 148 |
| 19 | G2 | PC7/A7 | IN | 147 |
| | | | Control | 146 |
| | | | OUT | 145 |
| 20 | G3 | PB0/A8 | IN | 144 |
| | | | Control | 143 |
| | | | OUT | 142 |
| 21 | H1 | PB1/A9 | IN | 141 |
| | | | Control | 140 |
| | | | OUT | 139 |
| 23 | G4 | PB2/A10 | IN | 138 |
| | | | Control | 137 |
| | | | OUT | 136 |
| 25 | H2 | PB3/A11 | IN | 135 |
| | | | Control | 134 |
| | | | OUT | 133 |
| 26 | J1 | PB4/A12 | IN | 132 |
| | | | Control | 131 |
| | | | OUT | 130 |
| 27 | H3 | PB5/A13 | IN | 129 |
| | | | Control | 128 |
| | | | OUT | 127 |
| 28 | J2 | PB6/A14 | IN | 126 |
| | | | Control | 125 |
| | | | OUT | 124 |
| 29 | K1 | PB7/A15 | IN | 123 |
| | | | Control | 122 |
| | | | OUT | 121 |

| TFP-120, TFP-120V Pin No. | BP-112, BP-112V Pin No. | Pin Name | I/O | Bit Name |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|----------|
| 30 | J3 | PA0/A16 | IN | 120 |
| | | | Control | 119 |
| | | | OUT | 118 |
| 31 | K2 | PA1/A17/TxD2 | IN | 117 |
| | | | Control | 116 |
| | | | OUT | 115 |
| 32 | L2 | PA2/A18/RxD2 | IN | 114 |
| | | | Control | 113 |
| | | | OUT | 112 |
| 33 | H4 | PA3/A19/SCK2/SUSPND | IN | 111 |
| | | | Control | 110 |
| | | | OUT | 109 |
| 35 | K3 | P10/TIOCA0/A20/VM | IN | 108 |
| | | | Control | 107 |
| | | | OUT | 106 |
| 36 | L3 | P11/TIOCB0/A21/VP | IN | 105 |
| | | | Control | 104 |
| | | | OUT | 103 |
| 37 | J4 | P12/TIOCC0/TCLKA/A22/RCV | IN | 102 |
| | | | Control | 101 |
| | | | OUT | 100 |
| 38 | K4 | P13/TIOCD0/TCLKB/A23/VPO | IN | 99 |
| | | | Control | 98 |
| | | | OUT | 97 |
| 39 | L4 | P14/TIOCA1/ $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ | IN | 96 |
| | | | Control | 95 |
| | | | OUT | 94 |
| 40 | H5 | P15/TIOCB1/TCLKC/FSE0 | IN | 93 |
| | | | Control | 92 |
| | | | OUT | 91 |
| 41 | J5 | P16/TIOCA2/ $\overline{\text{IRQ1}}$ | IN | 90 |
| | | | Control | 89 |
| | | | OUT | 88 |

| TFP-120, TFP-120V Pin No. | BP-112, BP-112V Pin No. | Pin Name | I/O | Bit Name |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|---------|----------|
| 42 | L5 | P17/TIOCB2/TCLKD/OE | IN | 87 |
| | | | Control | 86 |
| | | | OUT | 85 |
| 53 | H7 | USPND | OUT | 84 |
| 55 | K8 | VBUS | IN | 83 |
| 56 | L9 | UBPM | IN | 82 |
| 67 | H9 | MD0 | IN | 81 |
| 68 | H10 | MD1 | IN | 80 |
| 69 | H11 | FWE | IN | 79 |
| 70 | G8 | NMI | IN | 78 |
| 71 | G9 | STBY | IN | 77 |
| 72 | G11 | RES | IN | 76 |
| 77 | F8 | MD2 | IN | 75 |
| 78 | E11 | PF7/ ϕ | IN | 74 |
| | | | Control | 73 |
| | | | OUT | 72 |
| 79 | E10 | PF6/AS | IN | 71 |
| | | | Control | 70 |
| | | | OUT | 69 |
| 80 | E9 | PF5/RD | IN | 68 |
| | | | Control | 67 |
| | | | OUT | 66 |
| 81 | D11 | PF4/HWR | IN | 65 |
| | | | Control | 64 |
| | | | OUT | 63 |
| 83 | E8 | PF3/LWR/ADTRG/IRQ3 | IN | 62 |
| | | | Control | 61 |
| | | | OUT | 60 |
| 85 | D10 | PF2/WAIT | IN | 59 |
| | | | Control | 58 |
| | | | OUT | 57 |

| TFP-120, TFP-120V Pin No. | BP-112, BP-112V Pin No. | Pin Name | I/O | Bit Name |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|---------|----------|
| 86 | C11 | PF1/ $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ | IN | 56 |
| | | | Control | 55 |
| | | | OUT | 54 |
| 87 | D9 | PF0/ $\overline{\text{BREQ}}/\overline{\text{IRQ2}}$ | IN | 53 |
| | | | Control | 52 |
| | | | OUT | 51 |
| 88 | C10 | P30/TxD0 | IN | 50 |
| | | | Control | 49 |
| | | | OUT | 48 |
| 89 | B11 | P31/RxD0 | IN | 47 |
| | | | Control | 46 |
| | | | OUT | 45 |
| 90 | C9 | P32/ $\overline{\text{SCK0}}/\overline{\text{IRQ4}}$ | IN | 44 |
| | | | Control | 43 |
| | | | OUT | 42 |
| 91 | B10 | P33/TxD1 | IN | 41 |
| | | | Control | 40 |
| | | | OUT | 39 |
| 92 | A10 | P34/RxD1 | IN | 38 |
| | | | Control | 37 |
| | | | OUT | 36 |
| 93 | D8 | P35/ $\overline{\text{SCK1}}/\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ | IN | 35 |
| | | | Control | 34 |
| | | | OUT | 33 |
| 94 | B9 | P36 | IN | 32 |
| | | | Control | 31 |
| | | | OUT | 30 |
| 96 | A9 | P74/ $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ | IN | 29 |
| | | | Control | 28 |
| | | | OUT | 27 |
| 97 | C8 | P73/ $\overline{\text{TMO1}}/\overline{\text{CS7}}$ | IN | 26 |
| | | | Control | 25 |
| | | | OUT | 24 |

| TFP-120, TFP-120V Pin No. | BP-112, BP-112V Pin No. | Pin Name | I/O | Bit Name |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|---------|----------|
| 98 | B8 | P72/TMO0/ $\overline{\text{CS6}}$ | IN | 23 |
| | | | Control | 22 |
| | | | OUT | 21 |
| 99 | A8 | P71/ $\overline{\text{CS5}}$ | IN | 20 |
| | | | Control | 19 |
| | | | OUT | 18 |
| 100 | D7 | P70/TMRI01/TMCI01/ $\overline{\text{CS4}}$ | IN | 17 |
| | | | Control | 16 |
| | | | OUT | 15 |
| 101 | C7 | PG0 | IN | 14 |
| | | | Control | 13 |
| | | | OUT | 12 |
| 102 | A7 | PG1/ $\overline{\text{CS3}}$ / $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ | IN | 11 |
| | | | Control | 10 |
| | | | OUT | 9 |
| 103 | B7 | PG2/ $\overline{\text{CS2}}$ | IN | 8 |
| | | | Control | 7 |
| | | | OUT | 6 |
| 104 | C6 | PG3/ $\overline{\text{CS1}}$ | IN | 5 |
| | | | Control | 4 |
| | | | OUT | 3 |
| 105 | A6 | PG4/ $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ | IN | 2 |
| | | | Control | 1 |
| | | | OUT | 0 |

to TDO

14.4 Boundary Scan Function Operation

14.4.1 TAP Controller

Figure 14.3 shows the TAP controller status transition diagram, based on the JTAG standard.

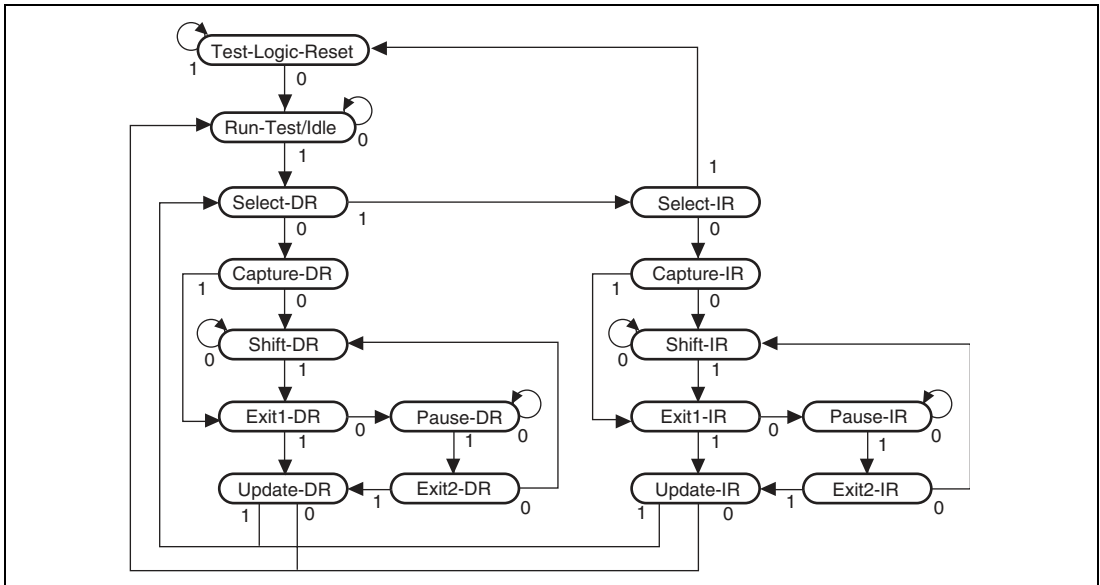


Figure 14.3 TAP Controller Status Transition

Note: The transition condition is the TMS value at the rising edge of TCK. The TDI value is sampled at the rising edge of the TCK and shifted at the falling edge of the TCK. The TDO value changes at the falling edge of the TCK. In addition, TDO is high-impedance state in a state other than Shift-DR or Shift-IR state. If $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ is 0, Test-Logic-Reset state is entered asynchronously with the TCK.

14.5 Usage Notes

- When using the boundary scan function, clear $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ to 0 at power-on and after the t_{RESW} time has elapsed set $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ to 1 and set TCK, TMS, and TDI appropriately. During normal operation when the boundary scan function is not used, set TCK, TMS, and TDI to Hi-Z, clear $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ to 0 at power-on, and after the t_{RESW} time has elapsed set TRST to 1 or to Hi-Z. These pins are pulled up internally, so care must be taken in standby mode because breakthrough current flow can occur if there is a potential difference between the pin input voltage value when set to 1 and the power supply voltage V_{cc} .
- The following must be noted on the power-on reset signal applied to the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ pin.
 - Reset signal must be applied at power-on.
 - $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ must be separated in order not to affect the system operation.
 - $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ must be separated from the system circuitry in order not to affect the system operation.
 - System circuitry must also be separated from the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ in order not to affect $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ operation as shown in figure 14.4.

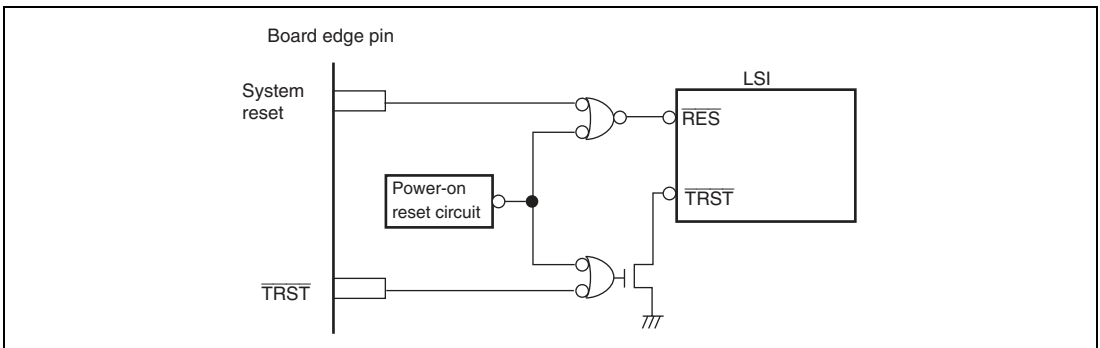


Figure 14.4 Recommended Reset Signal Design

- TCK clock speed should be slower than system clock frequency.
- In serial communication, data is input or output from the LSB as shown in figure 14.5.

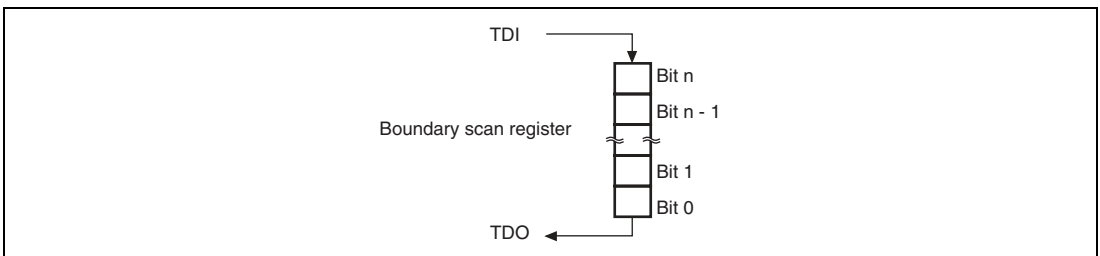


Figure 14.5 Serial Data Input/Output

5. If a pin with pull-up function is SAMPLEed with pull-up function enabled, the corresponding IN register is set to 1. In this case, the corresponding Control register must be cleared to 0.
6. If a pin with open-drain function is SAMPLEed while its open-drain function is enabled and while the corresponding OUT register is set to 1, the corresponding Control register is cleared to 0 (the pin status is Hi-Z). If the pin is SAMPLEed while the corresponding OUT register is cleared to 0, the corresponding Control register is set to 1 (the pin status is 0).
7. If EXTEST, CLAMP, or HIGHZ state is entered, this LSI enters guarded mode such as hardware standby mode ($\overline{\text{RES}} = \overline{\text{STBY}} = 0$). Before entering normal operating mode from EXTEST, CLAMP, or HIGHZ state, specify $\overline{\text{RES}}$, $\overline{\text{STBY}}$, FWE, and MD2 to MD0 pin to the designated mode.
8. When using the boundary scan function, leave the $\overline{\text{EMLE}}$ pin open.

Section 15 Universal Serial Bus Interface (USB)

This LSI incorporates a USB function module complying with USB standard version 1.1. Figure 15.1 shows the block diagram of the USB.

15.1 Features

- USB standard version 2.0 full speed mode (12 Mbps) support
- Bus-powered mode or self-powered mode is selectable via the USB specific pin ($\overline{\text{UBPM}}$)
- On-chip 48-MHz clock generator and PLL circuit (16 MHz \times 3 = 48 MHz, 24 MHz* \times 2 = 48 MHz)

Note: * Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

- On-chip bus transceiver
- Standard commands are processed automatically by hardware
 - Only Set_Descriptor, Get_Descriptor, Class/VendorCommand, and SynchFrame commands should be processed by software
- Configuration value, InterfaceNumber value, and AlternateSetting value can be checked by Set_Configuration and Set_Interface interrupts
- Four transfer mode supported (Control, Interrupt, Bulk, Isochronous)
- Endpoint configuration selectable

Maximum of 9 endpoints can be specified (including endpoint 0)

The size of the FIFO buffer used by each endpoint can be specified via firmware

The FIFO buffer for bulk transfer and isochronous transfer has a double-buffer configuration

Total 1288-byte FIFO

—EP0s fixed: Control_setup FIFO, 8 bytes

—EP0i fixed: Control_in FIFO, 64 bytes

—EP0o fixed: Control_out FIFO, 64 bytes

—EPn selectable: Interrupt_in FIFO, variable 0 to 64 bytes

—EPn selectable: Bulk_in FIFO, 64 bytes \times 2 (double-buffer configuration)

—EPn selectable: Bulk_out FIFO, 64 bytes \times 2 (double-buffer configuration)

—EPn selectable: Isochronous_in FIFO, variable 0 to 128 bytes \times 2 (double-buffer configuration)

—EPn selectable: Isochronous_out FIFO, variable 0 to 128 bytes \times 2 (double-buffer configuration)

—EPn selectable: Bulk_in FIFO, 64 bytes \times 2 (double-buffer configuration)

—EPn selectable: Bulk_out FIFO, 64 bytes \times 2 (double-buffer configuration)

—EPn selectable: Interrupt_in FIFO, variable 0 to 64 bytes

- Maximum Configuration, InterfaceNumber, and AlternateSetting configuration specifications of this LSI

| | |
|--|------------|
| H8S/2215: | EP0 |
| Configuration 1 ----- InterfaceNumber 0 to 2 ----- AlternateSetting 0 to 7 ----- | EP1 to EP8 |
| | |
| H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C: | EP0 |
| Configuration 1 ----- InterfaceNumber 0 to 3 ----- AlternateSetting 0 to 7 ----- | EP1 to EP8 |
- Start of frame (SOF) marker function
 - SOF interrupt occurs every 1 ms even though broken SOF received by error
- 23 kinds of interrupts (H8S/2215)
 - 25 kinds of interrupts (H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)
 - Suspend/resume interrupt source can be assigned for $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$
 - Each interrupt source can be assigned for $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ via registers
- DMA transfer interface
 - Two DMA requests are selectable from four Bulk transfer requests
- 8-bit bus (3 cycle bus access timing) connected to the external bus interface
 - Internal registers are addressed to a part of area 6 of external address (H'C00000 to H'DFFFFFF)
 - The area of H'C00100 to H'DFFFFFF is reserved for USB and should not be accessed

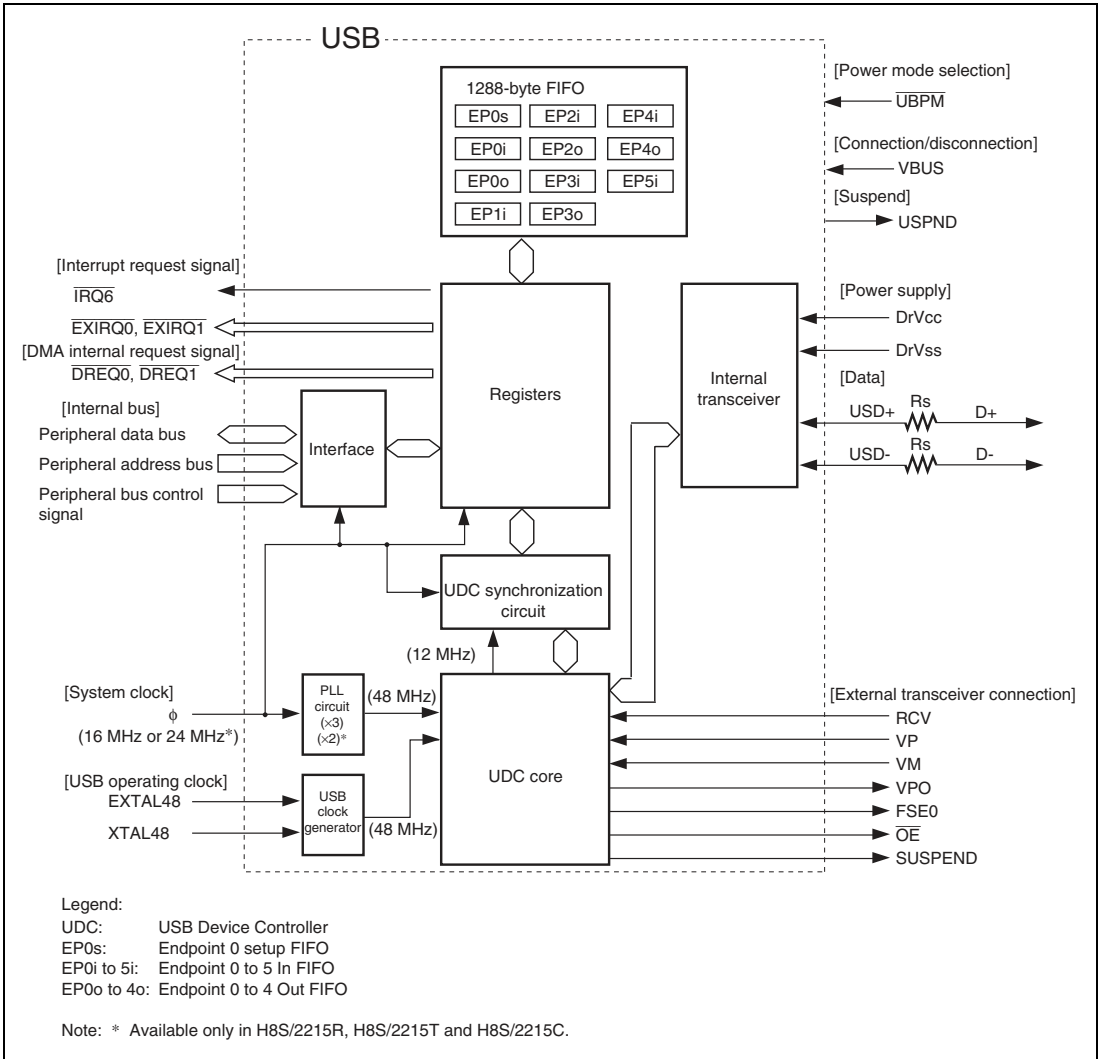


Figure 15.1 Block Diagram of USB

15.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 15.1 shows the USB pin configuration.

Table 15.1 Pin Configuration

| Pin Name | I/O | Function |
|--------------------------|--------|---|
| USD+ | I/O | I/O pin for USB data |
| USD- | | |
| DrVCC | Input | USB internal transceiver power supply pin |
| DrVSS | Input | USB internal transceiver ground pin |
| VBUS | Input | USB cable connection/disconnection detection signal pin |
| $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ | Input | USB bus-power/self-power mode selection pin When USB is used in bus-power mode, $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ must be fixed low. When USB is used in self-power mode, $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ must be fixed high. |
| XTAL48, EXTAL48 | Input | USB operating clock input pin 48-MHz clock for USB communication is input. When the internal PLL is used, EXTAL48 and XTAL48 must be fixed low and open, respectively. |
| USPND | Output | USB suspend output pin Set to high level when the system enter the suspend state. |
| RCV | Input | External transceiver connection signals |
| VP | Input | Signals used to connect with the transceiver (ISP1104) |
| VM | Input | manufactured by NXP. |
| VPO | Output | |
| FSE0 | Output | |
| $\overline{\text{OE}}$ | Output | |
| SUSPND | Output | |

15.3 Register Descriptions

The USB has the following registers for each channel.

- USB endpoint information register 00_0 to 22_4 (UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR22_4)
- USB control register (UCTLR)
- USB DMAC transfer request register (UDMAR)*
- USB device resume register (UDRR)
- USB trigger register 0 (UTRG0)*
- USB trigger register 1 (UTRG1)*
- USB FIFO clear register 0 (UFCLR0)*
- USB FIFO clear register 1 (UFCLR1)*
- USB endpoint stall register 0 (UESTL0)*
- USB endpoint stall register 1 (UESTL1)*
- USB endpoint data register 0s (UEDR0s) [for Setup data reception]
- USB endpoint data register 0i (UEDR0i) [for Control_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint data register 0o (UEDR0o) [for Control_out data reception]
- USB endpoint data register 1i (UEDR1i)* [for Interrupt_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint data register 2i (UEDR2i)* [for Bulk_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint data register 2o (UEDR2o)* [for Bulk_out data reception]
- USB endpoint data register 3i (UEDR3i)* [for Isochronous_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint data register 3o (UEDR3o)* [for Isochronous_out data reception]
- USB endpoint data register 4i (UEDR4i)* [for Bulk_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint data register 4o (UEDR4o)* [for Bulk_out data reception]
- USB endpoint data register 5i (UEDR5i)* [for Interrupt_in data transmission]
- USB endpoint receive data size register 0o (UESZ0o) [for Control_out data reception]
- USB endpoint receive data size register 2o (UESZ2o)* [for Bulk_out data reception]
- USB endpoint receive data size register 3o (UESZ3o)* [for Isochronous_out data reception]
- USB endpoint receive data size register 4o (UESZ4o)* [for Bulk_out data reception]
- USB interrupt flag register 0 (UIFR0)*
- USB interrupt flag register 1 (UIFR1)*
- USB interrupt flag register 2 (UIFR2)*
- USB interrupt flag register 3 (UIFR3)
- USB interrupt enable register 0 (UIER0)*
- USB interrupt enable register 1 (UIER1)*
- USB interrupt enable register 2 (UIER2)*

- USB interrupt enable register 3 (UIER3)
- USB interrupt selection register 0 (UISR0)*
- USB interrupt selection register 1 (UISR1)*
- USB interrupt selection register 2 (UISR2)*
- USB interrupt selection register 3 (UISR3)
- USB data status register (UDSR)*
- USB configuration value register (UCVR)
- USB time stamp register H, L (UTSRH, L)
- USB test register 0 (UTSTR0)
- USB test register 1 (UTSTR1)
- USB test register 2 (UTSTR2)
- USB test register A (UTSTRA)
- USB test register B (UTSTRB)
- USB test register C (UTSTRC)
- USB test register D (UTSTRD)
- USB test register E (UTSTRE)
- USB test register F (UTSTRF)
- Module stop control register B (MSTPCRB)

Note: * Indicates the register name or bit name when each endpoint formation is specified based on the Bluetooth standard. Register names and bit names must be modified according to the endpoint configuration selected. For details, refer to section 15.7, Endpoint Configuration Example.

The area of H'C00100 to H'DFFFFFF is reserved for USB and should not be accessed.

15.3.1 USB Endpoint Information Registers 00_0 to 22_4 (UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR22_4)

UEPIR is used to set 23 kinds of endpoint (EPINFO data). EPINFO data for each endpoint consists of 40 bits (five bytes). 115 bytes of endpoint data for all UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR22_4 registers must be written after the UDC interface software reset has been cancelled (the UIFST bit of the UCTLR register is cleared to 0). The endpoint data is automatically loaded and stored in the buffers in the UDC core after the UDC core software reset has been cancelled (the UDCRST bit of the UCTLR register is cleared to 0). For details on EPINFO data setting procedure, refer to section 15.5, Communication Operation.

The USB module in this LSI is designed to automatically load EPINFO data after UDC software reset. Accordingly, EPINFO data must be specified correctly. Otherwise, USB communication cannot be performed correctly.

EPINFO data written to UEPIR is maintained in the register. This EPINFO data is automatically re-loaded after each UDC core reset. Accordingly, EPINFO data need to be written only once.

- **UEPIRnn_0**

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|------------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 4 | D39 to D36 | — | R/W | <p>Endpoint number (4-bit configuration, settable values: 0 to 8)</p> <p>0000: Control transfer (EP0)</p> <p>0001 to 1000: Other than Control transfer (EP1 to EP8)</p> <p>There are restrictions on settable endpoint numbers according to the Interface number and Alternate number to which the endpoint belongs.</p> <p>Restriction 1: Set different endpoint numbers under one Alternate.</p> <p>However, there is no problem with use of the same endpoint number if the transfer directions (IN/OUT) are different. (Ex: Alt0 -- EP1, EP2i, EP2o)</p> <p>Restriction 2: Do not set the same endpoint number under different Interface numbers. (Ex: Int0 -- Alt0 -- EP1, EP2, Int1 -- Alt0 -- EP3)</p> |
| 3 | D35 | — | R/W | Configuration number to which endpoint belongs |
| 2 | D34 | — | R/W | <p>(2-bit configuration, settable values: 0, 1)</p> <p>00: Control transfer</p> <p>01: Other than Control transfer</p> |
| 1 | D33 | — | R/W | H8S/2215 |
| 0 | D32 | — | R/W | <p>Interface number to which endpoint belongs (2-bit configuration, settable values: 0 to 2)</p> <p>00: Control transfer</p> <p>00 to 10: Other than Control transfer</p> <p>H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C</p> <p>Interface number to which endpoint belongs (2-bit configuration, settable values: 0 to 3)</p> <p>00: Control transfer</p> <p>00 to 11: Other than Control transfer</p> |

• UEPIRnn_1

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|------------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 5 | D31 to D29 | — | R/W | Alternate number to which endpoint belongs (3-bit configuration, settable values: 0 to 7) 000: Control transfer 000 to 111: Other than Control transfer |
| 4 | D28 | — | R/W | Endpoint transfer type (2-bit configuration) |
| 3 | D27 | — | R/W | 00: Control (UEPIR00) 01: Isochronous (UEPIR04 to UEPIR19) 10: Bulk (UEPIR02, UEPIR03, UEPIR20, UEPIR21) 11: Interrupt (UEPIR01, UEPIR22) |
| 2 | D26 | — | R/W | Endpoint transfer direction (1-bit configuration) 0: out (UEPIR00, 03, 05, 07, 09, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21) 1: in (UEPIR01, 02, 04, 06, 08, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22) |
| 1 | D25 | — | R/W | Endpoint maximum packet size (D25 to D16 10-bit configuration) |
| 0 | D24 | — | R/W | Control transfer = 64 only (UEPIR00) Interrupt transfer = 0 to 64 (UEPIR01, UEPIR22) Bulk transfer = 0 or 64 (UEPIR02, UEPIR03, UEPIR20, UEPIR21) Isochronous transfer = 0 to 128 (UEPIR04 to UEPIR19) |

• UEPIRnn_2

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 0 | D23 to D16 | — | R/W | Endpoint maximum packet size (D25 to D16 10-bit configuration) Control transfer = 64 only (UEPIR00) Interrupt transfer = 0 to 64 (UEPIR01, UEPIR22) Bulk transfer = 0 or 64 (UEPIR02, UEPIR03, UEPIR20, UEPIR21) Isochronous transfer = 0 to 128 (UEPIR04 to UEPIR19) |

- **UEPIRnn_3**

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|-----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D15 to D8 | — | R/W | Endpoint internal address (D15 to D0 16-bit configuration) Set UEPIR00_3, UEPIR00_4 = H'0000 Set UEPIR01_3, UEPIR01_4 = H'0001 : Set UEPIR21_3, UEPIR21_4 = H'0015 Set UEPIR22_3, UEPIR22_4 = H'0016 |

- **UEPIRnn_4**

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | — | R/W | Endpoint internal address (D15 to D0 16-bit configuration) Set UEPIR00_3, UEPIR00_4 = H'0000 Set UEPIR01_3, UEPIR01_4 = H'0001 : Set UEPIR21_3, UEPIR21_4 = H'0015 Set UEPIR22_3, UEPIR22_4 = H'0016 |

This manual assumes that endpoint information (EPINFO data) is configured based on the Bluetooth standard shown in figure 15.2. If endpoint data is configured in a configuration other than that shown in figure 15.2, care must be taken for the correspondence between endpoint number, Configuration/Interface/Alternate number and maximum packet size, and register name and bit name. For details, refer to section 15.7, Endpoint Configuration Example.

Endpoint data configured based on the Bluetooth standard can be specified as shown in table 15.2. Endpoint data shown in table 15.2 includes unused endpoints (EP4i, EP4o, and EP5i). To load all EPINFO data items from UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR22_4 correctly, unused endpoints must also be dummy written as shown in table 15.2.

In addition, to prevent unused endpoints from being accessed from the host, descriptor information for the unused endpoints must not be returned in the enumeration phase at connection. This correctly informs the host of usable endpoint information and enables access control for unused endpoints. If descriptor information for the unused endpoints is returned to the host, the USB cannot operate correctly when the host accesses the unused endpoint.

Note that endpoint data information must match the corresponding descriptor information to be returned to the host. Otherwise, the USB cannot operate correctly. For example, if the descriptor information is returned as 16 bytes while the maximum packet size of the EPINFO data is eight bytes, the host attempts to access the EPINFO data in 16 byte units and cannot operate correctly.

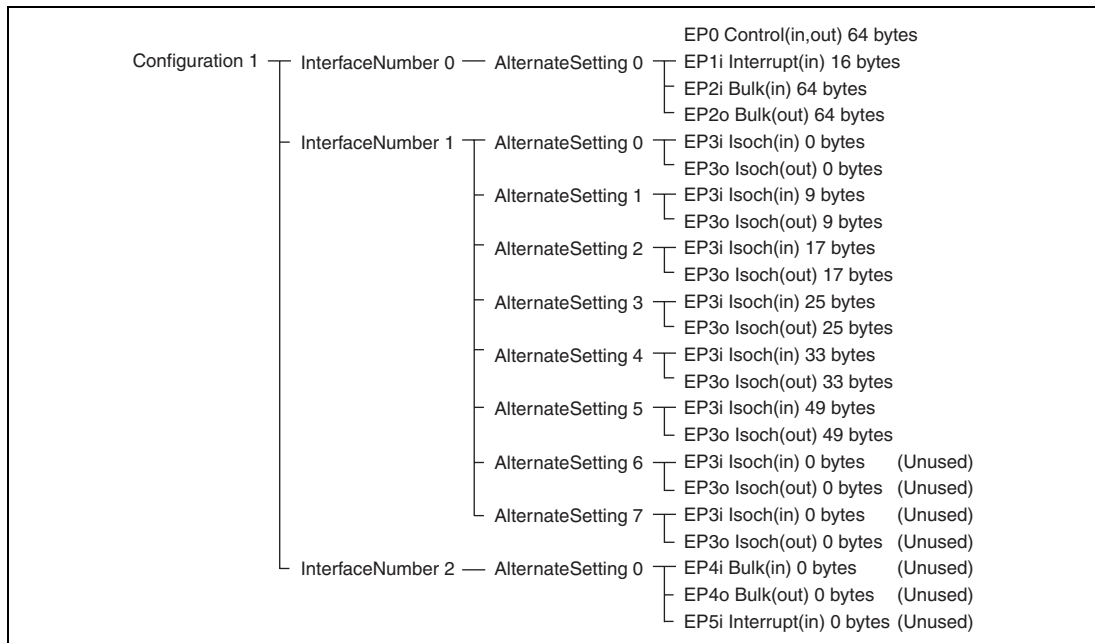


Figure 15.2 Example of Endpoint Configuration based on Bluetooth Standard

Table 15.2 shows the example of EPINFO data setting for endpoint configuration based on the Bluetooth standard.

The USB module of this LSI is optimized by the hardware specific to the transfer type. Accordingly, endpoints cannot be configured completely freely. Endpoints can be modified within the restrictions (only data within parentheses []) in table 15.2. Data other than that within parentheses [] must be specified according to table 15.2. For details on other endpoint configuration, refer to section 15.7, Endpoint Configuration Example.

Table 15.2 EPINFO Data Settings

| EPINFO Data Settings Based on Bluetooth Standard | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------|----------------------|---|--|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Register No. | Register Name | Address | Corresponding Transfer Mode ^{*1} | UEPI Rn_0 to UEPI Rn_4 Settings ^{*2} | UEPI Rn_0 | UEPI Rn_1 | UEPI Rn_2 | UEPI Rn_3 | UEPI Rn_3 |
| 1 | UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR00_4 | H'C00000 to H'C00004 | to Specific to Control transfer | B'0000_00_00_000_00_0_0001000000_0000000000000000 | H'00 | H'00 | H'40 | H'00 | H'00 |
| 2 | UEPIR01_0 to UEPIR01_4 | H'C00005 to H'C00009 | to Specific to Interrupt in transfer | B'[0001]_01_[00]_[000]_11_1_[0000010000]_0000000000000001 ^{*3} | H'14 | H'1C | H'10 | H'00 | H'01 |
| 3 | UEPIR02_0 to UEPIR02_4 | H'C0000A to H'C0000E | to Specific to Bulk in transfer | B'[0010]_01_[00]_[000]_10_1_[0001000000]_0000000000000010 ^{*4} | H'24 | H'14 | H'40 | H'00 | H'02 |
| 4 | UEPIR03_0 to UEPIR03_4 | H'C0000F to H'C00013 | to Specific to Bulk out transfer | B'[0010]_01_[00]_[000]_10_0_[0001000000]_0000000000000011 ^{*4} | H'24 | H'10 | H'40 | H'00 | H'03 |
| 5 | UEPIR04_0 to UEPIR04_4 | H'C00014 to H'C00018 | to Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[000]_01_1_[0000000000]_0000000000000100 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'04 |
| 6 | UEPIR05_0 to UEPIR05_4 | H'C00019 to H'C0001D | to Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[000]_01_0_[0000000000]_0000000000000101 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'05 |
| 7 | UEPIR06_0 to UEPIR06_4 | H'C0001E to H'C00022 | to Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[001]_01_1_[0000001001]_0000000000000110 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'2C | H'09 | H'00 | H'06 |
| 8 | UEPIR07_0 to UEPIR07_4 | H'C00023 to H'C00027 | to Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[001]_01_0_[0000001001]_0000000000000111 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'28 | H'09 | H'00 | H'07 |
| 9 | UEPIR08_0 to UEPIR08_4 | H'C00028 to H'C0002C | to Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[010]_01_1_[0000010001]_0000000000001000 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'4C | H'11 | H'00 | H'08 |
| 10 | UEPIR09_0 to UEPIR09_4 | H'C0002D to H'C00031 | to Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[010]_01_0_[0000010001]_0000000000001001 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'48 | H'11 | H'00 | H'09 |
| 11 | UEPIR10_0 to UEPIR10_4 | H'C00032 to H'C00036 | to Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[011]_01_1_[0000011001]_0000000000001010 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'6C | H'19 | H'00 | H'0A |
| 12 | UEPIR11_0 to UEPIR11_4 | H'C00037 to H'C0003B | to Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[011]_01_0_[0000011001]_0000000000001011 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'68 | H'19 | H'00 | H'0B |
| 13 | UEPIR12_0 to UEPIR12_4 | H'C0003C to H'C00040 | to Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[100]_01_1_[0000100001]_0000000000001100 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'8C | H'21 | H'00 | H'0C |
| 14 | UEPIR13_0 to UEPIR13_4 | H'C00041 to H'C00045 | to Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[100]_01_0_[0000100001]_0000000000001101 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'88 | H'21 | H'00 | H'0D |
| 15 | UEPIR14_0 to UEPIR14_4 | H'C00046 to H'C0004A | to Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[101]_01_1_[0000110001]_0000000000001110 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'AC | H'31 | H'00 | H'0E |
| 16 | UEPIR15_0 to UEPIR15_4 | H'C0004B to H'C0004F | to Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[101]_01_0_[0000110001]_0000000000001111 ^{*5} | H'35 | H'A8 | H'31 | H'00 | H'0F |
| 17 | UEPIR16_0 to UEPIR16_4 | H'C00050 to H'C00054 | to Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[110]_01_1_[0000000000]_000000000010000 ^{*5*6} | H'35 | H'CC | H'00 | H'00 | H'10 |

EPINFO Data Settings Based on Bluetooth Standard

| Register No. | Register Name | Address | Corresponding Transfer Mode ^{*1} | UEPIRn_0 to UEPIRn_4 Settings ^{*2} | | UEPI Rn_0 | UEPI Rn_1 | UEPI Rn_2 | UEPI Rn_3 | UEPI Rn_3 |
|--------------|------------------------|---------------------|---|---|--|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| 18 | UEPIR17_0 to UEPIR17_4 | H'C00055 to H'C0059 | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[110]_01_0_ | [0000000000]_000000000010001 ^{*5*6} | H'35 | H'C8 | H'00 | H'00 | H'11 |
| 19 | UEPIR18_0 to UEPIR18_4 | H'C0005A to H'C005E | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[111]_01_1_ | [0000000000]_000000000010010 ^{*5*6} | H'35 | H'EC | H'00 | H'00 | H'12 |
| 20 | UEPIR19_0 to UEPIR19_4 | H'C0005F to H'C0063 | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0011]_01_[01]_[111]_01_0_ | [0000000000]_000000000010011 ^{*5*6} | H'35 | H'E8 | H'00 | H'00 | H'13 |
| 21 | UEPIR20_0 to UEPIR20_4 | H'C00064 to H'C0068 | Specific to Bulk in transfer | B'[0100]_01_[10]_[000]_10_1_ | [0000000000]_000000000010100 ^{*4*6} | H'46 | H'14 | H'00 | H'00 | H'14 |
| 22 | UEPIR21_0 to UEPIR21_4 | H'C00069 to H'C006D | Specific to Bulk out transfer | B'[0100]_01_[10]_[000]_10_0_ | [0000000000]_000000000010101 ^{*4*6} | H'46 | H'10 | H'00 | H'00 | H'15 |
| 23 | UEPIR22_0 to UEPIR22_4 | H'C0006E to H'C0072 | Specific to Interrupt in transfer | B'[0101]_01_[10]_[000]_11_1_ | [0000000000]_000000000010110 ^{*3*6} | H'56 | H'1C | H'00 | H'00 | H'16 |

- Notes:
- Each endpoint is optimized by the hardware specific for the transfer mode. The transfer mode shown in table 15.2 must be specified. (D28 and D27 for all EPINFO data items must e specified as shown in table 15.2.)
 - Data indicated within parentheses [] can be modified. Data other than that within parentheses [] must be specified as shown in table 15.2.
 - Maximum packet size of Interrupt transfer must be from 0 to 64.
 - Maximum packet size of Bulk transfer must be 64 when used or 0 when unused.
 - Maximum packet size of Isochronous transfer must be from 0 to 128.
 - Maximum packet size of endpoint must be 0 when unused.

15.3.2 USB Control Register (UCTLR)

UCTLR is used to select USB data input/output pin and USB operating clock, specify SOF marker function, and controls the USB module reset. UCTLR can be read from or written to even in USB module stop mode. For details on UCTLR setting procedure, refer to section 15.5, Communication Operation.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | FADSEL | 0 | R/W | <p>I/O Analog or Digital Selection</p> <p>Selects USB function data I/O pins</p> <p>0: USD+ and USD- are used as data I/O pins</p> <p>1: Control I/O ports 1 and A compatible with Philips Corp. transceiver are connected to data I/O pins.</p> <p>P17 (output) → \overline{OE}: Output enable</p> <p>P15 (output) → FSE0: SE0 setting</p> <p>P13 (output) → VPO: Data+ output</p> <p>P12 (input) ← PCV: Differential input</p> <p>P11 (input) ← VP: Data+ input</p> <p>P10 (input) ← VM: Data- input</p> <p>PA3 (output) → SUSPND: Suspend enable</p> <p>Ports 1 and A are prioritized to address outputs. Accordingly, before setting FADSEL to 1, disable A23 to A19 output via PFCR. In addition, FADSEL must be set during USB module stop mode.</p> |
| 6 | SFME | 0 | R/W | <p>Start Of Frame (SOF) Marker Function Enable</p> <p>Controls the SOF marker function. If SFME is set to 1, the SOF interrupt flag can be set to 1 every 1ms even if the SOF packet has been broken. Note, however, that UTSR stores a time stamp when the correct SOF packet is received. The USB does not support UTSR automatic update function when the SOF packet is broken.</p> <p>To set SFME the first time, SFME must be set after SOF flag detection. SFME must be cleared to 0 when the suspension is detected. To set SFME after resume detection, SFME must also be set after SOF flag detection.</p> <p>0: Disables the SOF marker function</p> <p>1: Enables the SOF marker function</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 5 | UCKS3 | 0 | R/W | USB Operating Clock Selection 3 to 0 |
| 4 | UCKS2 | 0 | R/W | Select the USB operating clock (48 MHz). When UCKS0 to UCKS3 are 0000, both the 48-MHz oscillator and internal PLL circuit stop and USB operating clock must be selected according to the clock source. |
| 3 | UCKS1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | UCKS0 | 0 | R/W | <p>The internal PLL circuit and 48-MHz oscillator start operating after USB module stop mode has been cancelled. In addition, the USB operating clock is supplied to the UDC core after 48-MHz clock stabilization time has been passed. The USB clock stabilization wait time completion can be detected by the CK48READY flag of UIFR3.</p> <p>UCKS0 to UCKS3 must be written during USB module stop mode.</p> <p>0000: USB operating clock stops (Both 48-MHz oscillator and PLL stop)</p> <p>0001: Reserved</p> <p>0010 (H8S/2215): Reserved</p> <p>0010 (H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C): Uses a clock (48 MHz) generated by doubling the 24-MHz system clock by the PLL circuit. The 48-MHz oscillator stops. The USB operating clock stabilization time is 2 ms.</p> <p>0011: Uses a clock (48 MHz) generated by tripling the 16-MHz external clock (EXTAL pin input) by the PLL circuit.</p> <p>0100: Reserved</p> <p>0101: Reserved</p> <p>0110 (H8S/2215): Reserved</p> <p>0110 (H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C): Uses a clock (48 MHz) generated by doubling the 24-MHz system clock by the PLL circuit. The 48-MHz oscillator stops. The USB operating clock stabilization time is 8 ms.</p> <p>0111: Uses a clock (48 MHz) generated by tripling the 16-MHz crystal oscillator (system clock pulse generator) by the PLL circuit.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 5 | UCKS3 | 0 | R/W | 1000: Uses a clock supplied by the 48-MHz external clock (EXTAL48 pin input) directly. The PLL stops. The USB operating clock stabilization time is <u>246 to 200 μs</u> . |
| 4 | UCKS2 | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | UCKS1 | 0 | R/W | |
| 2 | UCKS0 | 0 | R/W | |
| | | | | 1001 (H8S/2215): Reserved |
| | | | | 1001 (H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C): Uses the clock supplied by the 48-MHz external clock (EXTAL48 pin input) directly. The PLL stops. The USB operating clock stabilization time is 300 to 200 μs (when using a 16-MHz to 24-MHz system clock). |
| | | | | 1010: Reserved |
| | | | | 1011: Reserved |
| | | | | 1100: Uses the USB operating clock (48 MHz) directly. The PLL stops. The USB operating clock stabilization time is <u>9.9 to 8 ms</u> . |
| | | | | 1101 (H8S/2215): Reserved |
| | | | | 1101 (H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C): Uses the USB operating clock (48 MHz) directly. The PLL stops. The USB operating clock stabilization time is 12 to 8 ms (when using a 16-MHz to 24-MHz system clock). |
| | | | | 1110: Reserved |
| | | | | 1111: Reserved |
| | | | | Note that the USB operating clock stabilization time differs according to the selected clock source and is automatically counted by the system clock. The USB operating clock stabilization time shown above is for the case when the 13- to 24- MHz system clock is used. |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 1 | UIFRST | 1 | R/W | <p>USB Interface Software Reset</p> <p>Controls USB module internal reset. When the UIFRST bit is set to 1, the USB internal modules other than UCTLR, UIER3, and the CK48 READY bit of UIFR3 are all reset. At initialization, the UIFRST bit must be cleared to 0 after the USB operating clock stabilization time has passed following USB module stop mode cancellation.</p> <p>0: Sets the USB internal modules to the operating state (at initialization, this bit must be cleared after the USB operating clock stabilization time has passed).</p> <p>1: Sets the USB internal modules other than UCTLR, UIER3, and the CK48 READY bit of UIFR3 reset state.</p> <p>If after being cleared to 0 the UIFIRST bit is again set to 1, the UDCRST bit must also be set to 1 at the same time.</p> |
| 0 | UDCRST | 1 | R/W | <p>UDC Core Software Reset</p> <p>Controls reset of the UDC core in the USB module. When the UDCRST bit is set to 1, the UDC core is reset and USB bus synchronization operation stops. At initialization, UDCRST must be cleared to 0 after D+ pull-up following UIFRST clearing to 0. In the suspend state, to maintain the internal state of the UDC core, enter software standby mode after setting USB module stop mode with the UDCRST bit to be maintained. After VBUS disconnection detection, UDCRST must be set to 1.</p> <p>0: Sets the UDC core in the USB module to operating state (at initialization, UDCRST must be cleared after D+ pull-up following UIFRST clearing to 0).</p> <p>1: Sets the UDC core in the USB module to reset state (in the suspend state, UDCRST must not be set to 1; after VBUS disconnection detection, UDCRST must be set to 1).</p> |

15.3.3 USB DMAC Transfer Request Register (UDMAR)

UDMAR is set when data transfer by means of a USB request of the on-chip DMAC is performed for data registers UEDR2i, UEDR2o, UEDR4i, and UEDR4o corresponding to EP2i, EP2o, EP4i, and EP4o used for Bulk transfer, respectively. DMAC transfer request sources specified in UDMAR must be two or less. If two DMAC transfer request sources are specified, a source must use $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ and another source must use $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$. If three or more DMAC transfer requests are specified or if $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ and $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ usage overlaps, the USB cannot operate correctly. For details on DMAC transfer, refer to section 15.6, DMA Transfer Specifications.

Note: As the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is not used in the data transfer by auto request of the on-chip DMAC, set UDMAR to H'00.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | EP4oT1 | 0 | R/W | EP4o DMAC Transfer Request Selection 1, 0 |
| 6 | EP4oT0 | 0 | R/W | 00: Does not request EP4o DMAC transfer 01: Reserved 10: Requests EP4o DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ 11: Requests EP4o DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ |
| 5 | EP4iT1 | 0 | R/W | EP4i DMAC Transfer Request Selection 1, 0 |
| 4 | EP4iT0 | 0 | R/W | 00: Does not request EP4i DMAC transfer 01: Reserved 10: Requests EP4i DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ 11: Requests EP4i DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ |
| 3 | EP2oT1 | 0 | R/W | EP2o DMAC Transfer Request Selection 1, 0 |
| 2 | EP2oT0 | 0 | R/W | 00: Does not request EP2o DMAC transfer 01: Reserved 10: Requests EP2o DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ 11: Requests EP2o DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ |
| 1 | EP2iT1 | 0 | R/W | EP2i DMAC Transfer Request Selection 1, 0 |
| 0 | EP2iT0 | 0 | R/W | 00: Does not request EP2i DMAC transfer 01: Reserved 10: Requests EP2i DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ 11: Requests EP2i DMAC transfer by $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ |

15.3.4 USB Device Resume Register (UDRR)

UDRR indicates remote wakeup according to the host enable/disable state and enables or disables remote wakeup of the USB modules in the suspend state.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 2 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 1 | RWUPs | 0 | R | Remote Wakeup Status Indicates the enabled or disabled state of remote wakeup by the host. This bit is a status bit and cannot be written to. If the remote wakeup from the host is disabled by Device_Remote_Wakeup through the Set_Feature/Clear_Feature request, this bit is cleared to 0. If the remote wakeup is enabled, this bit is set to 1. 0: Remote wakeup disabled state 1: Remote wakeup enabled state |
| 0 | DVR | 0 | W | Device Resume Cancels suspend state (remote wakeup execution). This bit can be written to 1 and is always read as 0. Before executing remote wakeup, software standby mode or USB module stop mode must be cancelled to provide a clock for the USB module. 0: Performs no operation 1: Cancels suspend state (executes remote wakeup) |

15.3.5 USB Trigger Register 0 (UTRG0)

UTRG0 generates one-shot triggers to the FIFO for each endpoint EP0 to EP2. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | EP2oRDFN | 0 | W | EP2o Read Completion 0: Performs no operation 1: Writes 1 to this bit after reading data for EP2o OUT FIFO. EP2o FIFO has a dual FIFO configuration. This trigger is generated to the currently effective FIFO. |
| 4 | EP2iPKTE | 0 | W | EP2i Packet Enable 0: Performs no operation 1: Generates a trigger to enable data transfer to the EP2i IN FIFO. EP2i FIFO has a dual FIFO configuration. This trigger is generated for the currently effective FIFO. |
| 3 | EP1iPKTE | 0 | W | EP1i Packet Enable 0: Performs no operation 1: Generates a trigger to enable data transfer to the EP1i IN FIFO. |
| 2 | EP0oRDFN | 0 | W | EP0o Read Completion 0: Performs no operation 1: Writes 1 to this bit after reading data for EP0o OUT FIFO. This trigger enables the next packet to be received. |
| 1 | EP0iPKTE | 0 | W | EP0i Packet Enable 0: Performs no operation 1: Generates a trigger to enable data transfer to the EP0i IN FIFO. |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 0 | EP0sRDFN | 0 | W | <p>EP0s Read Completion</p> <p>0: Performs no operation. A NAK handshake is returned in response to transmit/receive requests from the host in the data stage until 1 is written to this bit.</p> <p>1: Writes 1 to this bit after reading data for EP0s OUT FIFO. After receiving the setup command, this trigger enables the next packet to be received by the EP0i and EP0o in the data stage. EP0s can always be overwritten and receive data regardless of this trigger.</p> |

Note: As triggers to EP3i and EP3o for Isochronous transfer are automatically generated each time the SOF packet is received from the host, the user need not generate triggers to EP3i and EP3o. Accordingly, data write to UEDR3i and data read from UEDR3o must be completed before the next packet has been received.

15.3.6 USB Trigger Register 1 (UTRG1)

UTRG1 generates one-shot triggers to the FIFO for each endpoint EP4 and EP5. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 3 | — | All 0 | R | <p>Reserved</p> <p>These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.</p> |
| 2 | EP5iPKTE | 0 | W | <p>EP5i Packet Enable</p> <p>0: Performs no operation</p> <p>1: Generates a trigger to enable data transfer to the EP5i IN FIFO.</p> |
| 1 | EP4oRDFN | 0 | W | <p>EP4o Read Completion</p> <p>0: Performs no operation</p> <p>1: Writes 1 to this bit after reading data for EP4o OUT FIFO. EP4o FIFO has a dual FIFO configuration. This trigger is generated to the currently effective FIFO.</p> |
| 0 | EP4iPKTE | 0 | W | <p>EP4i Packet Enable</p> <p>0: Performs no operation</p> <p>1: Generates a trigger to enable data transfer to the EP4i IN FIFO. EP4i FIFO has a dual FIFO configuration. This trigger is generated for the currently effective FIFO.</p> |

15.3.7 USBFIFO Clear Register 0 (UFCLR0)

UFCLR0 is a one-shot register used to clear the FIFO for each end point from EP0 to EP3. Writing 1 to a bit clears the data in the corresponding FIFO. For IN FIFO, writing 1 to a bit in UFCLR0 clears the data for which the corresponding PKTE bit in UTRG0 is cleared to 0 after data write, or data that is validated by setting the corresponding PKTE bit in UTRG0. For OUT FIFO, writing 1 to a bit in UFCLR0 clears data that has not been fixed during reception or received data for which the corresponding RDFN bit is not set to 1. Accordingly, care must be taken not to clear data that is currently being received or transmitted. EP2i, EP2o, EP3i, and EP3o FIFOs, having a dual FIFO configuration, are cleared by entire FIFOs. Note that this trigger does not clear the corresponding interrupt flag. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | EP3oCLR | 0 | W | EP3o clear 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP3o OUT FIFO |
| 6 | EP3iCLR | 0 | W | EP3i clear 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP3i IN FIFO |
| 5 | EP2oCLR | 0 | W | EP2o clear* 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP2o OUT FIFO |
| 4 | EP2iCLR | 0 | W | EP2i clear 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP2i IN FIFO |
| 3 | EP1iCLR | 0 | W | EP1i clear 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP1i IN FIFO |
| 2 | EP0oCLR | 0 | W | EP0o clear 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP0o OUT FIFO |
| 1 | EP0iCLR | 0 | W | EP0i clear 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP0i IN FIFO |
| 0 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |

Note: * When DMA transfers are enabled (EP2oT1 bit set to 1 and EP2oT0 bit set to 0 or 1 in the UDMAR register), the data in the FIFO is cannot be cleared by writing 1 to EP2oCLR. To clear the data in the FIFO, first disable DMA transfers (clear the EP2oT1 and EP2oT0 bits in the UDMAR register to 0) and then write 1 to EP2oCLR.

15.3.8 USBFIFO Clear Register 1 (UFCLR1)

UFCLR1 is a one-shot register used to clear the FIFO for each endpoint from EP4 to EP5. Writing 1 to a bit clears the data in the corresponding FIFO. For IN FIFO, writing 1 to a bit in UFCLR1 clears the data for which the corresponding PKTE bit in UTRG1 is cleared to 0 after data write, or data that is validated by setting the corresponding PKTE bit in UTRG1. For OUT FIFO, writing 1 to a bit in UFCLR1 clears data that has not been fixed during reception or received data for which the corresponding read completion bit is not set to 1. Accordingly, care must be taken not to clear data that is currently being received or transmitted. EP4i and EP4o FIFOs, having a dual FIFO configuration, are cleared by entire FIFOs. Note that this trigger does not clear the corresponding interrupt flag. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 3 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | EP5iCLR | 0 | W | EP5i clear 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP5i IN FIFO |
| 1 | EP4oCLR | 0 | W | EP4o clear* 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP4o OUT FIFO |
| 0 | EP4iCLR | 0 | W | EP4i clear 0: Performs no operation 1: Clears EP4i IN FIFO |

Note: * When DMA transfers are enabled (EP4oT1 bit set to 1 and EP4oT0 bit set to 0 or 1 in the UDMAR register), the data in the FIFO is cannot be cleared by writing 1 to EP4oCLR. To clear the data in the FIFO, first disable DMA transfers (clear the EP4oT1 and EP4oT0 bits in the UDMAR register to 0) and then write 1 to EP4oCLR.

15.3.9 USB Endpoint Stall Register 0 (UESTL0)

UESTL0 is used to forcibly stall the endpoints for EP0 to EP3. While the bit is set to 1, the corresponding endpoint returns a stall handshake to the host. However, note that EP3 (Isochronous transfer) does not return a stall handshake.

The stall bit for endpoint 0 (EP0STL) is cleared automatically on reception of 8-bit command data for which decoding is performed by the function. When the SetupTS flag in UIFR0 is set, a write of 1 to the EP0STL bit is ignored. For details, refer to section 15.5.11, Stall Operations.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | EP3oSTL | 0 | R/W | EP3o stall 0: Cancels the EP3o stall state 1: Places the EP3o stall state |
| 6 | EP3iSTL | 0 | R/W | EP3i stall 0: Cancels the EP3i stall state 1: Places the EP3i stall state When the EP3i is placed in the stall state, a 0-length packet is returned for the first IN token. For the following IN token, nothing is returned. |
| 5 | EP2oSTL | 0 | R/W | EP2o stall 0: Cancels the EP2o stall state 1: Places the EP2o stall state |
| 4 | EP2iSTL | 0 | R/W | EP2i stall 0: Cancels the EP2i stall state 1: Places the EP2i stall state |
| 3 | EP1iSTL | 0 | R/W | EP1i stall 0: Cancels the EP1i stall state 1: Places the EP1i stall state |
| 2,1 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 0 | EP0STL | 0 | R/W | EP0 stall 0: Cancels the EP0 stall state 1: Places the EP0 stall state |

15.3.10 USB Endpoint Stall Register 1 (UESTL1)

UESTL1 is used to forcibly stall the endpoints for EP4 and EP5. In addition, UESTL1 can cancel all endpoint stall states. While the bit is set to 1, the corresponding endpoint returns a stall handshake to the host. For details, refer to section 15.5.11, Stall Operations.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | SCME | 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 6 to 3 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | EP5iSTL | 0 | R/W | EP5i stall 0: Cancels the EP5i stall state 1: Places the EP5i stall state |
| 1 | EP4oSTL | 0 | R/W | EP4o stall 0: Cancels the EP4o stall state 1: Places the EP4o stall state |
| 0 | EP4iSTL | 0 | R/W | EP4i stall 0: Cancels the EP4i stall state 1: Places the EP4i stall state |

15.3.11 USB Endpoint Data Register 0s (UEDR0s)

UEDR0s stores the setup command for endpoint 0s (for Control_out transfer). UEDR0s stores 8-byte command data sent from the host in setup stage.

For details on USB operation when the data for the next setup stage is received while data in UEDR0s is being read, refer to section 15.9, Usage Notes.

UEDR0s is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR0s allows the user to read 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | — | R | These bits store setup command for Control_out transfer |

15.3.12 USB Endpoint Data Register 0i (UEDR0i)

UEDR0i is a data register for endpoint 0i (for Control_in transfer). UEDR0i stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

UEDR0i is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR0i allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | All 0 | W | These bits store data for Control_in transfer |

15.3.13 USB Endpoint Data Register 0o (UEDR0o)

UEDR0o is a data register for endpoint 0o (for Control_out transfer). UEDR0o stores data received from the host. The number of data items to be read must be specified by UESZ0o.

When 1 byte is read from UEDR0o, UESZ0o is decremented by 1.

UEDR0o is a 1-byte register to which a 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR0o allows the user to read 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | — | R | These bits store data for Control_out transfer |

15.3.14 USB Endpoint Data Register 1i (UEDR1i)

UEDR1i is a data register for endpoint 1i (for Interrupt_in transfer). UEDR1i stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

UEDR1i is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR1i allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | All 0 | W | These bits store data for Interrupt_in transfer |

15.3.15 USB Endpoint Data Register 2i (UEDR2i)

UEDR2i is a data register for endpoint 2i (for Bulk_in transfer). UEDR2i stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

UEDR2i is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR2i allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | All 0 | W | These bits store data for Bulk_in transfer |

15.3.16 USB Endpoint Data Register 2o (UEDR2o)

UEDR2o is a data register for endpoint 2o (for Bulk_out transfer). UEDR2o stores data received from the host. The number of data items to be read must be specified by UESZ2o.

When 1 byte is read from UEDR2o, UESZ2o is decremented by 1.

UEDR2o is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR2o allows the user to read 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | — | R | These bits store data for Bulk_out transfer |

15.3.17 USB Endpoint Data Register 3i (UEDR3i)

UEDR3i is a data register for endpoint 3i (for Isochronous_in transfer). UEDR3i stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

All data items must be written to before the next SOF packet is received.

UEDR3i is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR3i allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | All 0 | W | These bits store data for Isochronous_in transfer |

15.3.18 USB Endpoint Data Register 3o (UEDR3o)

UEDR3o is a data register for endpoint 3o (for Isochronous_out transfer). UEDR3o stores data received from the host. The number of data items to be read must be specified by UESZ3o.

When 1 byte is read from UEDR3o, UESZ3o is decremented by 1.

All data items must be read before the next SOF packet is received.

UEDR3o is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR3o allows the user to read 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------|
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------|

| | | | | |
|--------|----------|---|---|--|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | — | R | These bits store data for Isochronous_out transfer |
|--------|----------|---|---|--|

15.3.19 USB Endpoint Data Register 4i (UEDR4i)

UEDR4i is a data register for endpoint 4i (for Bulk_in transfer). UEDR4i stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

UEDR4i is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR4i allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------|
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------|

| | | | | |
|--------|----------|-------|---|--|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | All 0 | W | These bits store data for Bulk_in transfer |
|--------|----------|-------|---|--|

15.3.20 USB Endpoint Data Register 4o (UEDR4o)

UEDR4o is a data register for endpoint 4o (for Bulk_out transfer). UEDR4o stores data received from the host. The number of data items to be read must be specified by UESZ4o.

When 1 byte is read from UEDR4o, UESZ4o is decremented by 1.

UEDR4o is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR4o allows the user to read 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------|
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|-------------|

| | | | | |
|--------|----------|---|---|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | — | R | These bits store data for Bulk_out transfer |
|--------|----------|---|---|---|

15.3.21 USB Endpoint Data Register 5i (UEDR5i)

UEDR5i is a data register for endpoint 5i (for Interrupt_in transfer). UEDR5i stores data to be sent to the host. The number of data items to be written continuously must be the maximum packet size or less.

UEDR5i is a byte register to which 4-byte address area is assigned. Accordingly, UEDR5i allows the user to write 2-byte or 4-byte data by word transfer or longword transfer. For information on accessing this register, see 2.9.4, Accessing Registers Containing Write-Only Bits.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | All 0 | W | These bits store data for Interrupt_in transfer |

15.3.22 USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 0o (UESZ0o)

UESZ0o is the receive data size register for endpoint 0o (for Control_out transfer). UESZ0o indicates the number of bytes of data to be received from the host.

Note that UESZ0o is decremented by 1 every time when 1 byte is read from UEDR0o.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | — | — | R | Reserved |
| 6 to 0 | D6 to D0 | — | R | These bits indicate the size of data to be received in Control_out transfer |

15.3.23 USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 2o (UESZ2o)

UESZ2o is the receive data size register for endpoint 2o (for Bulk_out transfer). UESZ2o indicates the number of bytes of data to be received from the host.

Note that UESZ2o is decremented by 1 every time when 1 byte is read from UEDR2o.

The FIFO for endpoint 2o (for Bulk_out transfer) has a dual-FIFO configuration. The data size indicated by this register refers to the currently selected FIFO.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | — | — | R | Reserved |
| 6 to 0 | D6 to D0 | — | R | These bits indicate the size of data to be received in Bulk_out transfer |

15.3.24 USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 3o (UESZ3o)

UESZ3o is the receive data size register for endpoint 3o (for Isochronous_out transfer). UESZ3o indicates the number of bytes of data to be received from the host.

Note that UESZ3o is decremented by 1 every time when 1 byte is read from UEDR3o.

The FIFO for endpoint 3o (for Isochronous_out transfer) has a dual-FIFO configuration. The data size indicated by this register refers to the currently selected FIFO.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | — | R | These bits indicate the size of data to be received in Isochronous_out transfer |

15.3.25 USB Endpoint Receive Data Size Register 4o (UESZ4o)

UESZ4o is the receive data size register for endpoint 4o (for Bulk_out transfer). UESZ4o indicates the number of bytes of data to be received from the host.

Note that UESZ4o is decremented by 1 every time when 1 byte is read from UEDR4o.

The FIFO for endpoint 4o (for Bulk_out transfer) has a dual-FIFO configuration. The data size indicated by this register refers to the currently selected FIFO.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | — | — | R | Reserved |
| 6 to 0 | D6 to D0 | — | R | These bits indicate the size of data to be received in Bulk_out transfer |

15.3.26 USB Interrupt Flag Register 0 (UIFR0)

UIFR0 is an interrupt flag register indicating the setup command reception, EP0 and EP1 transmission/reception, and bus reset states. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or EXIRQ1 interrupt is requested to the CPU. A bit in this register can be cleared by writing 0 to it. Writing 1 to a bit is invalid and causes no operation.

Consequently, to clear only a specific flag it is necessary to write 0 to the bit corresponding to the flag to be cleared and 1 to all the other bits. (To clear bit 5 only, write H'DF.) The bit-clear instruction is a read/modify/write instruction. There is a danger that the wrong bits may be cleared if a new flag is set between the read and write. Therefore, the bit-clear instruction should not be used to clear bits in this interrupt flag register.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|--|
| 7 | BRST | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Bus Reset</p> <p>Set to 1 when the bus reset signal is detected on the USB bus. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> <p>Note that BRST is also set to 1 if D+ is not pulled-up during USB cable connection.</p> |
| 6 | — | 0 | R | <p>Reserved</p> <p>This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified.</p> |
| 5 | EP1iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP1i Transfer Request</p> <p>Set to 1 if there is no valid transmit data in the FIFO when an IN token is sent from the host to EP1i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 4 | EP1iTS | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP1i Transfer Complete</p> <p>Set to 1 if the transmit data written in EP1i is transferred to the host normally and the ACK handshake is returned. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 3 | EP0oTS | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP0o Receive Complete</p> <p>Set to 1 if the EP0o receives data from the host normally and returns the ACK handshake to the host. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 2 | EP0iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP0i Transmit Request</p> <p>Set to 1 if there is no valid transmit data in the FIFO when an IN token is sent from the host to EP0i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 1 | EP0iTS | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP0i Transmit Complete</p> <p>Set to 1 if the transmit data written in EP0i is transferred to the host normally and the ACK handshake is returned. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 0 | SetupTS | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Setup Command Receive Complete</p> <p>Set to 1 if the EP0s normally receives 8-byte data to be decoded by the function from the host and returns the ACK handshake to the host. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

15.3.27 USB Interrupt Flag Register 1 (UIFR1) (Only in H8S/2215)

UIFR1 is an interrupt flag register indicating the EP2i, EP2o, EP3i, and EP3o. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ interrupt is requested from the CPU. EP2iTR and EP3iTR flags can be cleared by writing 0 to them. Writing 1 to them is invalid and causes no operation. However, EP2iEMPTY, EP2oREDY, EP3oTS and EP3oTF are status bits, and cannot be cleared.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|--|
| 7 | EP3oTF | 0 | R | <p>EP3o Abnormal Receive</p> <p>Indicates the status of EP3o FIFO, which can be read after the next SOF packet has been received following the data transmission from the host. This flag is set to 1 if a PID error, CRC error, bit staff error, data size error, or Bad EOP occurs when the data is transferred from the host to the EP3o. This is a status bit and cannot be cleared. In addition, an interrupt cannot be requested by this flag.</p> |
| 6 | EP3oTS | 0 | R | <p>EP3o Normal Receive</p> <p>Indicates the status of EP3o FIFO, which can be read after the next SOF packet has been received following the data transmission from the host. This flag is set to 1 if data is normally transferred from the host to the EP3o. This is a status bit and cannot be cleared. In addition, an interrupt cannot be requested by this flag.</p> |
| 5 | EP3iTF | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP3i Abnormal Transfer</p> <p>Set to 1 if data to be written to the EP3i FIFO is lost because no IN token has been returned. This flag is set when the SOF packet that is two packets after the data write is received. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 4 | EP3iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP3i Transmit Request</p> <p>Set to 1 if there is no valid transmit data in the FIFO to be accessed by the UDC when an IN token is sent from the host to EP3i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|-----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 3 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | EP2oREADY | 0 | R | EP2o Data Ready EP2o FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This flag is set if there is a valid data in at least one EP2o FIFO. This flag is cleared to 0 if there is no valid data in EP2o FIFO. This flag is a status flag and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 1 | EP2iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | EP2i Transmit Request Set to 1 if the EP2i FIFO is empty when an IN token is sent from the host to EP2i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 0 | EP2iEMPTY | 1 | R | EP2i FIFO Empty EP2i FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This flag is set if at least one EP2i FIFO is empty. This flag is cleared to 0 if EP2i FIFO is full. This flag is a status flag and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

15.3.28 USB Interrupt Flag Register 1 (UIFR1) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

UIFR1 is an interrupt flag register indicating the EP2i, EP2o, EP3i, and EP3o. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ interrupt is requested from the CPU. EP2iTR and EP3iTR flags can be cleared by writing 0 to them. Writing 1 to them is invalid and causes no operation. Consequently, to clear only a specific flag it is necessary to write 0 to the bit corresponding to the flag to be cleared and 1 to all the other bits. (To clear bit 5 only, write H'DF.) The bit-clear instruction is a read/modify/write instruction. There is a danger that the wrong bits may be cleared if a new flag is set between the read and write. Therefore, the bit-clear instruction should not be used to clear bits in this interrupt flag register. However, EP2iEMPTY, EP2oREDY, EP3oTS and EP3oTF are status bits, and cannot be cleared.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|--|
| 7 | EP3oTF | 0 | R | <p>EP3o Abnormal Receive</p> <p>Indicates the status of EP3o FIFO, which can be read after the next SOF packet has been received following the data transmission from the host. This flag is set to 1 if a PID error, CRC error, bit staff error, data size error, or Bad EOP occurs when the data is transferred from the host to the EP3o. This is a status bit and cannot be cleared. In addition, an interrupt cannot be requested by this flag.</p> |
| 6 | EP3oTS | 0 | R | <p>EP3o Normal Receive</p> <p>Indicates the status of EP3o FIFO, which can be read after the next SOF packet has been received following the data transmission from the host. This flag is set to 1 if data is normally transferred from the host to the EP3o. This is a status bit and cannot be cleared. In addition, an interrupt cannot be requested by this flag.</p> |
| 5 | EP3iTF | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP3i Abnormal Transfer</p> <p>Set to 1 if data to be written to the EP3i FIFO is lost because no IN token has been returned. This flag is set when the SOF packet that is two packets after the data write is received. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 4 | EP3iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>EP3i Transmit Request</p> <p>Set to 1 if there is no valid transmit data in the FIFO to be accessed by the UDC when an IN token is sent from the host to EP3i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|------------------|---------------|--------|---|
| 3 | EP2iALL EMPTY | 1 | R | EP2i FIFO All Empty Status EP2i FIFO has a dual FIFO configuration. This flag is set to 1 if both FIFOs are empty. (Corresponds to a UDSR/EP2iDE negative-polarity signal.) |
| 2 | EP2oREADY | 0 | R | EP2o Data Ready EP2o FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This flag is set if there is a valid data in at least one EP2o FIFO. This flag is cleared to 0 if there is no valid data in EP2o FIFO. This flag is a status flag and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 1 | EP2iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | EP2i Transmit Request Set to 1 if the EP2i FIFO is empty when an IN token is sent from the host to EP2i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 0 | EP2iEMPTY | 1 | R | EP2i FIFO Empty EP2i FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This flag is set if at least one EP2i FIFO is empty. This flag is cleared to 0 if EP2i FIFO is full. This flag is a status flag and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

15.3.29 USB Interrupt Flag Register 2 (UIFR2) (Only in H8S/2215)

UIFR2 is an interrupt flag register indicating the state of EP4i, EP4o, and EP5i. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ interrupt is requested to the CPU. EP4iTR EP5iTS and EP4iTR flags can be cleared by writing 0 to them. Writing 1 to them is invalid and causes no operation. However, EP4iEMPTY and EP4oREADY are status bits indicating the EP4i and EP4o FIFO status, and cannot be cleared.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|-----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | EP5iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | EP5i Transfer Request Set to 1 if there is no valid transmit data in the FIFO when an IN token is sent from the host to EP5i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 4 | EP5iTS | 0 | R/(W)* | EP5i Transfer Complete Set to 1 if the transmit data written in EP5i is transferred to the host normally and the ACK handshake is returned. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 3 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | EP4oREADY | 0 | R | EP4o Data Ready EP4o FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This flag is set if there is a valid data in at least one EP4o FIFO. This flag is cleared to 0 if there is no valid data in EP4o FIFO. This flag is a status flag and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 1 | EP4iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | EP4i Transfer Request Set to 1 if the EP4i FIFO is empty when an IN token is sent from the host to EP4i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 0 | EP4iEMPTY | 1 | R | EP4i FIFO Empty EP4i FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This flag is set if at least one EP4i FIFO is empty. This flag is cleared to 0 if EP4i FIFO is full. This flag is a status flag and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

15.3.30 USB Interrupt Flag Register 2 (UIFR2) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

UIFR2 is an interrupt flag register indicating the state of EP4i, EP4o, and EP5i. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ interrupt is requested to the CPU. EP4iTR EP5iTS and EP4iTR flags can be cleared by writing 0 to them. Writing 1 to them is invalid and causes no operation. Consequently, to clear only a specific flag it is necessary to write 0 to the bit corresponding to the flag to be cleared and 1 to all the other bits. (To clear bit 5 only, write H'DF.) The bit-clear instruction is a read/modify/write instruction. There is a danger that the wrong bits may be cleared if a new flag is set between the read and write. Therefore, the bit-clear instruction should not be used to clear bits in this interrupt flag register. However, EP4iEMPTY and EP4oREADY are status bits indicating the EP4i and EP4o FIFO status, and cannot be cleared.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|------------------|---------------|--------|---|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | EP5iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | EP5i Transfer Request Set to 1 if there is no valid transmit data in the FIFO when an IN token is sent from the host to EP5i. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 4 | EP5iTS | 0 | R/(W)* | EP5i Transfer Complete Set to 1 if the transmit data written in EP5i is transferred to the host normally and the ACK handshake is returned. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 3 | EP4iALL EMPTY | 1 | R | EP4i FIFO All Empty Status EP4i FIFO has a dual FIFO configuration. This flag is set to 1 if both FIFOs are empty. (Corresponds to a UDSR/EP4iIDE negative-polarity signal.) |
| 2 | EP4oREADY | 0 | R | EP4o Data Ready EP4o FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This flag is set if there is a valid data in at least one EP4o FIFO. This flag is cleared to 0 if there is no valid data in EP4o FIFO. This flag is a status flag and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|-----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 1 | EP4iTR | 0 | R/(W)* | EP4i Transfer Request Set to 1 if the EP4i FIFO is empty when an IN token is sent from the host to EPi4. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |
| 0 | EP4iEMPTY | 1 | R | EP4i FIFO Empty EP4i FIFO has a dual-FIFO configuration. This flag is set if at least one EP4i FIFO is empty. This flag is cleared to 0 if EP4i FIFO is full. This flag is a status flag and cannot be cleared. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$. |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

15.3.31 USB Interrupt Flag Register 3 (UIFR3)

UIFR3 is an interrupt flag register indicating the USB status. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$, $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$, or $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ interrupt is requested from the CPU. VBUSi, SPRSi, SETI, SETC, SOF, and CK48READY flags can be cleared by writing 0. Writing 1 to them is invalid and causes no operation. Consequently, to clear only a specific flag it is necessary to write 0 to the bit corresponding to the flag to be cleared and 1 to all the other bits. (To clear bit 5 only, write H'DF.) The bit-clear instruction is a read/modify/write instruction. There is a danger that the wrong bits may be cleared if a new flag is set between the read and write. Therefore, the bit-clear instruction should not be used to clear bits in this interrupt flag register. VBUSs and SPRSs are status flags and cannot be cleared.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|-----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 7 | CK48READY | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>USB Operating Clock (48 MHz) Stabilization Detection</p> <p>Set to 1 when the 48-MHz USB operating clock stabilization time has been automatically counted after USB module rest mode cancellation. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> <p>CK48READY can also operate in USB interface software reset state (the UIFRST bit of UCTLR is set to 1).</p> <p>Note that USB operating clock stabilization time differs according to the clock source, refer to the UCKS3 to UCKS0 bits of the UCTLR.</p> |
| 6 | SOF | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Start of Frame Packet Detection</p> <p>Set to 1 if the SOF packet is detected. This flag can be used to start time stamp check, EP3i transmit data write, or EP3o receive data read timing in EP3 isochronous transfer. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 5 | SETC | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Set_Configuration Command Detection</p> <p>Set to 1 if the Set_Configuration command is detected. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |
| 4 | SETI | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Set_Interface Command Detection</p> <p>Set to 1 if the Set_Interface command is detected. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|--|
| 3 | SPRSs | 0 | R | <p>Suspend/Resume Status</p> <p>Indicates the suspend/resume status and cannot request an interrupt.</p> <p>0: Indicates that the bus is in the normal state.</p> <p>1: Indicates that the bus is in the suspend state.</p> |
| 2 | SPRSi | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>Suspend/Resume Interrupt</p> <p>Set to 1 if a transition from normal state to suspend state or suspend state to normal state has occurred. The corresponding interrupt output is $\overline{IRQ6}$. This bit can be used to cancel software standby state at resume.</p> |
| 1 | VBUSs | 0 | R | <p>VBUS Status</p> <p>Indicates the VBUS state by the USB cable connection and disconnection. An interrupt cannot be requested by the VBUSs.</p> <p>0: Indicates that the VBUS (USB cable) bus is disconnected.</p> <p>1: Indicates that the VBUS (USB cable) bus is connected.</p> |
| 0 | VBUSi | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>VBUS Interrupt</p> <p>Set to 1 if a VBUS state changes by USB cable connection or disconnection. The corresponding interrupt output is EXIRQ0 or EXIRQ1.</p> |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

15.3.32 USB Interrupt Enable Register 0 (UIER0)

UIER0 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 0 (UIFR0). When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER0 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ pin. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 0 (UISR0).

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | BRSTE | 0 | R/W | Enables the BRST interrupt |
| 6 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP1iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP1iTR interrupt |
| 4 | EP1iTSE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP1iTS interrupt |
| 3 | EP0oTSE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP0oTS interrupt |
| 2 | EP0iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP0iTR interrupt |
| 1 | EP0iTSE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP0iTS interrupt |
| 0 | SetupTSE | 0 | R/W | Enables the SetupTS interrupt |

15.3.33 USB Interrupt Enable Register 1 (UIER1) (Only in H8S/2215)

UIER1 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 1 (UIFR1). When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER1 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ pin. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 1 (UISR1).

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP3iTFE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP3iTF interrupt |
| 4 | EP3iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP3iTR interrupt |
| 3 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0. |
| 2 | EP2oREADYE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP2oREADY interrupt |
| 1 | EP2iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP2iTR interrupt |
| 0 | EP2iEMPTYE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP2iEMPTYE interrupt |

15.3.34 USB Interrupt Enable Register 1 (UIER1) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

UIER1 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 1 (UIFR1). When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER1 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ pin. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 1 (UISR1).

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|-------------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP3iTFE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP3iTF interrupt |
| 4 | EP3iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP3iTR interrupt |
| 3 | EP2iALL EMPTYE | 0 | R/W | Enables EP2iALLEMPYIE interrupt |
| 2 | EP2oREADYE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP2oREADY interrupt |
| 1 | EP2iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP2iTR interrupt |
| 0 | EP2iEMPTYE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP2iEMPTYE interrupt |

15.3.35 USB Interrupt Enable Register 2 (UIER2)

UIER2 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 2 (UIFR2). When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER2 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ pin. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 2 (UISR2).

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP5iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP5iTR interrupt |
| 4 | EP5iTSE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP5iTS interrupt |
| 3 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0. |
| 2 | EP4oREADYE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP4oREADY interrupt |
| 1 | EP4iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP4iTR interrupt |
| 0 | EP4iEMPTYE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP4iEMPTY interrupt |

15.3.36 USB Interrupt Enable Register 2 (UIER2) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

UIER2 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 2 (UIFR2). When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER2 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ pin. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 2 (UISR2).

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|-------------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP5iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP5iTR interrupt |
| 4 | EP5iTSE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP5iTS interrupt |
| 3 | EP4iALL EMPTYE | 0 | R/W | Enables EP4iALLEMPYIE interrupt |
| 2 | EP4oREADYE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP4oREADY interrupt |
| 1 | EP4iTRE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP4iTR interrupt |
| 0 | EP4iEMPTYE | 0 | R/W | Enables the EP4iEMPTY interrupt |

15.3.37 USB Interrupt Enable Register 3 (UIER3)

UIER3 enables the interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 3 (UIFR3). This register is readable/writable even though in USB module stop mode. When an interrupt flag is set while the corresponding bit in UIER3 is set to 1, an interrupt is requested by asserting the corresponding $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ pin. Either $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ must be selected by the interrupt select register 3 (UISR3). Note, however, that the SPRSiE bit is an interrupt enable bit specific to the $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ pin and cannot be selected by UISR3.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | CK48READYE | 1 | R/W | Enables the CK48READY interrupt |
| 6 | SOFE | 0 | R/W | Enables the SOF interrupt |
| 5 | SETCE | 0 | R/W | Enables the SETC interrupt |
| 4 | SETIE | 0 | R/W | Enables the SETI interrupt |
| 3 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0. |
| 2 | SPRSiE | 0 | R/W | Enables the SPRSi interrupt (only for $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$) |
| 1 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0. |
| 0 | VBUSiE | 0 | R/W | Enables the VBUSi interrupt |

15.3.38 USB Interrupt Select Register 0 (UISR0)

UISR0 selects the $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ pin to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 0 (UIFR0). When a bit in UIER0 corresponding to the UISR0 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER0 corresponding to the UISR0 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | BRSTS | 0 | R/W | Selects the BRST interrupt |
| 6 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP1iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP1iTR interrupt |
| 4 | EP1iTSS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP1iTS interrupt |
| 3 | EP0oTSS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP0oTS interrupt |
| 2 | EP0iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP0iTR interrupt |
| 1 | EP0iTSS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP0iTS interrupt |
| 0 | SetupTSS | 0 | R/W | Selects the SetupTS interrupt |

15.3.39 USB Interrupt Select Register 1 (UISR1) (Only in H8S/2215)

UISR1 selects the $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ pin to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 1 (UIFR1). When a bit in UIER1 corresponding to the UISR1 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER1 corresponding to the UISR1 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP3iTFS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP3iTF interrupt |
| 4 | EP3iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP3iTR interrupt |
| 3 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0. |
| 2 | EP2oREADYS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP2oREADY interrupt |
| 1 | EP2iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP2iTR interrupt |
| 0 | EP2iEMPTY | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP2iEMPTY interrupt |

15.3.40 USB Interrupt Select Register 1 (UISR1) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

UISR1 selects the $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ pin to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 1 (UIFR1). When a bit in UIER1 corresponding to the UISR1 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER1 corresponding to the UISR1 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|------------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP3iTFS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP3iTF interrupt |
| 4 | EP3iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP3iTR interrupt |
| 3 | EP2iALL EMPTY | 0 | R/W | Selects EP2iALLEEMPTY interrupt |
| 2 | EP2oREADYS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP2oREADY interrupt |
| 1 | EP2iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP2iTR interrupt |
| 0 | EP2iEMPTY | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP2iEMPTY interrupt |

15.3.41 USB Interrupt Select Register 2 (UISR2) (Only in H8S/2215)

UISR2 selects the $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ pin to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 2 (UIFR2). When a bit in UIER2 corresponding to the UISR2 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER2 corresponding to the UISR2 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP5iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP5iTR interrupt |
| 4 | EP5iTSS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP5iTS interrupt |
| 3 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0. |
| 2 | EP4oREADYS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP4oREADY interrupt |
| 1 | EP4iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP4iTR interrupt |
| 0 | EP4iEMPTY | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP4iEMPTY interrupt |

15.3.42 USB Interrupt Select Register 2 (UISR2) (Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C)

UISR2 selects the $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ pin to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 2 (UIFR2). When a bit in UIER2 corresponding to the UISR2 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER2 corresponding to the UISR2 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|------------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 5 | EP5iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP5iTR interrupt |
| 4 | EP5iTSS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP5iTS interrupt |
| 3 | EP4iALL EMPTY | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP4iALLEEMPTY interrupt |
| 2 | EP4oREADYS | 0 | R/W | Selects EP4oREADY interrupt |
| 1 | EP4iTRS | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP4iTR interrupt |
| 0 | EP4iEMPTY | 0 | R/W | Selects the EP4iEMPTY interrupt |

15.3.43 USB Interrupt Select Register 3 (UISR3)

UISR3 selects the $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ pin to output interrupt request indicated in the interrupt flag register 3 (UIFR3). When a bit in UIER3 corresponding to the UISR3 bit is cleared to 0, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$. When a bit in UIER3 corresponding to the UISR3 bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is output to $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | CK48READYS | 1 | R/W | Selects the CK48READY interrupt |
| 6 | SOFS | 0 | R/W | Selects the SOF interrupt |
| 5 | SETCS | 0 | R/W | Selects the SETC interrupt |
| 4 | SETIS | 0 | R/W | Selects the SETI interrupt |
| 3 to 1 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 0 | VBUSiS | 0 | R/W | Selects the VBUSi interrupt |

15.3.44 USB Data Status Register (USDR)

USDR indicates whether the IN FIFO data registers (EP0i, EP1i, EP2i, EP4i, and EP5i) contain valid data or not. A bit in USDR is set when data written to the corresponding IN FIFO becomes valid after the corresponding PKTE bit in UTRG is set to 1. A bit in USDR is cleared when all valid data is sent to the host. For EP2i and EP4i, having a dual-FIFO configuration, the corresponding bit in USDR is cleared to 0 and FIFO becomes empty.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | EP5iDE | 0 | R | EP5i Data Enable 0: Indicates that the EP5i contains no valid data 1: Indicates that the EP5i contains valid data |
| 4 | EP4iDE | 0 | R | EP4i Data Enable 0: Indicates that the EP4i contains no valid data 1: Indicates that the EP4i contains valid data |
| 3 | — | 0 | R | Reserved This bit is always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | EP2iDE | 0 | R | EP2i Data Enable 0: Indicates that the EP2i contains no valid data 1: Indicates that the EP2i contains valid data |
| 1 | EP1iDE | 0 | R | EP1i Data Enable 0: Indicates that the EP1i contains no valid data 1: Indicates that the EP1i contains valid data |
| 0 | EP0iDE | 0 | R | EP0i Data Enable 0: Indicates that the EP0i contains no valid data 1: Indicates that the EP0i contains valid data |

15.3.45 USB Configuration Value Register (UCVR)

UCVR stores the Configuration value, Interface Number value and Alternate Setting value when the Set_Configuration and Set_Interface commands are received from the host.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7, 6 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 5 | CNFV0 | 0 | R | Configuration Value 0 Stores the Configuration value when the Set_Configuration command is received. CNFV0 is modified when the SETC bit in UIFR3 is set to 1. |
| 4 | INTV1 | 0 | R | Interface Number Value 1, 0 |
| 3 | INTV0 | 0 | R | Store the Interface number value when the Set_Interface command is received. INTV1 and INTV0 are modified when the SETI bit in UIFR3 is set to 1. |
| 2 | ATLV2 | 0 | R | Alternate Setting Value 2 to 0 |
| 1 | ATLV1 | 0 | R | Store the Alternate Setting value when the Set_Interface command is received. ATLV2 to |
| 0 | ATLV0 | 0 | R | ATLV0 are modified when the SETI bit in UIFR3 is set to 1. |

15.3.46 USB Time Stamp Registers H, L (UTSRH, UTSRL)

UTSRH and UTSRL store the current time stamp values. The time stamp values in UTSRH and UTSRL are modified when the SOF flag in UIFR3 is set to 1.

UTSRH combined with UTSRL can also be handled as a 16-bit register. The USB module has an 8-bit bus. The upper byte of UTSRH can be read directly, while the lower byte of UTSRL is read through an 8-bit temporary register. Accordingly, UTSRH and UTSRL must be read in this order. If only UTSRL is read, the read data cannot be guaranteed. In addition, note that the time stamp automatic update function is not supported if the SOF packed has been broken even if the SOF marker function is enabled by setting the SFME bit of UCTLR.

- **UTSRH**

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|-----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 3 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0. |
| 2 to 0 | D10 to D8 | All 0 | R | Stores time stamp D10 to D8. |

- **UTSRL**

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|-----------------------------|
| 7 to 0 | D7 to D0 | All 0 | R | Stores time stamp D7 to D0. |

15.3.47 USB Test Register 0 (UTSTR0)

UTSTR0 controls internal or external transceiver output signals. After clearing UCTLR/UIFRST and UDCRST to 0, setting the PTSTE bit to 1 enable user setting of transceiver output. Table 15.3 shows the relationship between UTSTR0 settings and pin outputs.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|-----------------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | PTSTE | 0 | R/W | <p>Pin Test Enable</p> <p>Enables the test control of the internal/external transceiver output signals.</p> <p>When FADSEL in UCTLR is 0, the test control for the internal transceiver output pins (USD+ and USD-) and USPND pin are enabled.</p> <p>When FADSEL in UCTLR is 1, the test control for the external transceiver output pins (P17/\overline{OE}, P15/FSE0, P13/VPO, and PA3/SUSPND) and USPND pin are enabled.</p> |
| 6 to 4 | — | All 0 | R | <p>Reserved</p> <p>These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified.</p> |
| 3 | SUSPEND | 0 | R/W | Internal/External Transceiver Output Signal |
| 2 | \overline{OE} | 1 | R/W | Setting Bits |
| 1 | FSE0 | 0 | R/W | SUSPEND: Specifies USPND and PA3/SUSPND pin. |
| 0 | VPO | 0 | R/W | <p>\overline{OE}: Specifies internal transceiver \overline{OE} signal and P17/\overline{OE} pin.</p> <p>FSE0: Specifies internal transceiver FSE0 signal and P15/FSE0 pin.</p> <p>VPO: Specifies internal transceiver VPO signal and P13/VPO pin.</p> |

Table 15.3 Relationship between the UTSTR0 Setting and Pin Outputs

| Pin Input | Register Setting | | | | | | Pin Outputs | | | | | | |
|-----------|------------------|-------|---------|-----------------|------|-----|-------------|------|-------|----------------|-------------------------|--------------|-------------|
| | UCTLR/ FADSEL | PTSTE | SUSPEND | \overline{OE} | FSE0 | VPO | USD+ | USD- | USPND | PA3/ SUSPND | P17/ \overline{OE} | P15/ FSE0 | P13/ VPO |
| 0 | x | 0 | x | x | x | x | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0/1 | x | x | x | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | 0/1 | — | — | — | — |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0/1 | x | x | x | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | 0/1 | 1 | 1 | — | — |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | x | x | 0/1 | x | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | — | 1 | 1 | 0/1 | — |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | x | x | x | 0/1 | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | — | 1 | 1 | — | 0/1 |
| 1 | x | 0 | x | x | x | x | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | x | 0 | 0 | 0 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | x | x | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | 0 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | x | 0 | 0 | 1 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | x | x | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | 1 | — | — | — | — |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0/1 | x | x | x | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | 0/1 | 0/1 | — | — | — |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | x | 0/1 | x | x | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | — | — | 0/1 | — | — |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | x | x | 0/1 | x | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | — | — | — | 0/1 | — |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | x | x | x | 0/1 | Hi-Z | Hi-Z | — | — | — | — | 0/1 |

Legend:

x: Don't care

0/1: Register setting equals pin output

—: Cannot be controlled. Indicates state in normal operation according to the USB operation and port settings.

15.3.48 USB Test Register 1 (UTSTR1)

UTSTR1 allows internal or external transceiver input signals to be monitored. When the FADSEL bit of UCTLR is set to 0, internal transceiver input signals can be monitored. When the FADSEL bit is FADSEL = 1, external transceiver input signals can be monitored. Table 15.4 shows the relationship between UTSTR1 settings and pin inputs.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|--------------------------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | VBUS | —* | R | Internal/External Transceiver Input Signal Monitor Bits |
| 6 | $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ | —* | R | VBUS: Monitors VBUS pin $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$: Monitors $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ pin |
| 5 to 3 | — | All 0 | R | Reserved These bits are always read as 0 and cannot be modified. |
| 2 | RCV | —* | R | Internal/External Transceiver Input Signal Monitor Bits |
| 1 | VP | —* | R | RCV: Monitors the RCV signal of the internal/external transceiver |
| 0 | VM | —* | R | VP: Monitors the VP signal of the internal/external transceiver VM: Monitors the VM signal of the internal/external transceiver |

Note: * Determined by the status of the VBUS, $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$, USD+, USD-, RCV, VP, and VM pins.

Table 15.4 Relationship between the UTSTR1 Settings and Pin Inputs

| Pin Input | | UTSTR1 Monitor | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| VBUS | $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ | VBUS | $\overline{\text{UBPM}}$ |
| 0/1 | × | 0/1 | × |
| × | 0/1 | × | 0/1 |

| Register Settings | | | Pin Input | | | | | | UTSTR1 Monitor | | |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------|------|------|-------------|------------|------------|----------------|-----|-----|
| UCTLR/ FADSEL | UTSTR0/ PTSTE | UTSTR0/ SUSPEND | VBUS | USD+ | USD- | P12/ RCV | P11/ VP | P10/ VM | RCV | VP | VM |
| 0 | × | × | 0 | × | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | × | × | 0 | × | × | 0/1 | × | × | 0/1 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | × | 1 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | × | 1 | 0 | 1 | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | × | 1 | 1 | 0 | × | × | × | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | × | 1 | 1 | 1 | × | × | × | × | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | × | × | × | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | × | × | × | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | × | × | × | × | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0/1 | × | × | × | × | 0 | 0/1 | × |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | × | 0/1 | × | × | × | 0 | × | 0/1 |
| 1 | × | × | 1 | × | × | 0/1 | × | × | 0/1 | × | × |
| 1 | × | × | 1 | × | × | × | 0/1 | × | × | 0/1 | × |
| 1 | × | × | 1 | × | × | × | × | 0/1 | × | × | 0/1 |

Legend:

×: Don't care

0/1: Register setting equals pin output

15.3.49 USB Test Registers 2 and A to F (UTSTR2, UTSRA to UTSRF)

UTSTR2 and UTSRTA to UTSRTF are test registers and cannot be written to.

15.3.50 Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB)

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | MSTPB7 | 1 | R/W | Module Stop Bits |
| 6 | MSTPB6 | 1 | R/W | For details, refer to section 22.1.2, Module Stop Control Registers A to C (MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC). |
| 5 | MSTPB5 | 1 | R/W | |
| 4 | MSTPB4 | 1 | R/W | |
| 3 | MSTPB3 | 1 | R/W | |
| 2 | MSTPB2 | 1 | R/W | |
| 1 | MSTPB1 | 1 | R/W | |
| 0 | MSTPB0 | 1 | R/W | Module Stop USB 0: Cancels USB module stop mode. A clock is provided for the USB module. After this bit has been cleared, the USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator or internal PLL circuit starts operation. Registers in the USB module must be accessed after the USB operating clock stabilization time (CK48READY bit of UIFR3 is set) has passed. 1: Places the USB module in stop mode. Both the USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator and internal PLL circuit stop operation. In this mode, the USB module register contents are maintained. |

Note: For details on USB module stop mode cancellation procedure, refer to section 15.5, Communication Operation.

15.4 Interrupt Sources

This module has three interrupt signals. Table 15.5 shows the interrupt sources and their corresponding interrupt request signals. $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ interrupt signals are activated at low level. The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ}}$ interrupt requests can only be detected at low level (specified as level sensitive). The suspend/resume interrupt request $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ must be specified to be detected at the falling edge (falling-edge sensitive) by the interrupt controller register.

Table 15.5 SCI Interrupt Sources

| Register | Bit | Transfer Mode | Interrupt Source | Description | Interrupt Request Signal | DMAC Activation by USB Request ^{*9} |
|----------|----------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|--|
| UIFR0 | 0 | Control transfer (EP0) | SetupTS ^{*1} | Setup command receive completion | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 1 | | EP0iTS ^{*1} | EP0i transfer completion | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 2 | | EP0iTR ^{*1} | EP0i transfer request | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 3 | Interrupt_in transfer (EP1i) | EP0oTS ^{*1} | EP0o receive request | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 4 | | EP1iTS | EP1i transfer completion | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 5 | | EP1iTR | EP1i transfer request | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 6 | | — | Reserved | — | — |
| 7 | (Status) | BRST | Bus reset | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × | |
| UIFR1 | 0 | Bulk_in transfer (EP2i) | EP2iEMPTY | EP2i FIFO empty | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ ^{*2} |
| | 1 | | EP2iTR | EP2i transfer request | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 2 | Bulk_out transfer (EP2o) | EP2oREADY | EP2o data ready | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ ^{*3} |
| | 3 | Bulk_in transfer ^{*7} (EP2i) | EP2iALLEMTYS ^{*8} | EP2i all empty states ^{*7} | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ ^{*7} | × ^{*7} |
| | 4 | Isochronous_in Transfer (EP3i) | EP3iTR | EP3i transfer request | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 5 | | EP3iTF | EP3i abnormal transfer | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 6 | Isochronous_out Transfer (EP3o) | EP3oTS | EP3o normal receive | × | × |
| 7 | EP3oTF | | EP3o abnormal receive | × | × | |

| Register | Bit | Transfer Mode | Interrupt Source | Description | Interrupt Request Signal | DMAC Activation by USB Request ^{*9} |
|----------|-----|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| UIFR2 | 0 | Bulk_in transfer (EP4i) | EP4iEMPTY | EP4i FIFO empty | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ ^{*4} |
| | 1 | | EP4iTR | EP4i transfer request | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 2 | Bulk_out transfer (EP4o) | EP4oREADY | EP4o data ready | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | $\overline{\text{DREQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{DREQ1}}$ ^{*5} |
| | 3 | Bulk_in transfer ^{*7} (EP4i) | EP4iALLEMTYS ^{*8} | EP4i all empty states ^{*7} | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ ^{*7} | × |
| | 4 | Interrupt_in transfer (EP5i) | EP5iTS | EP5i transfer completion | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 5 | | EP5iTR | EP5i transfer request | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 6 | — | Reserved | — | — | × |
| 7 | — | Reserved | — | — | × | |
| UIFR3 | 0 | — (Status) | VBUSi | VBUS interrupt | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 1 | | VBUSs | VBUS status | × | × |
| | 2 | | SPRSi | Suspend/resume interrupt | $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ ^{*6} | × |
| | 3 | | SPRSs | Suspend/resume status | × | × |
| | 4 | | SETI | Set_Interface detection | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 5 | | SETC | Set_Configuration detection | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 6 | | SOF | Start of Frame packet detection | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |
| | 7 | | CK48READY | USB bus clock stabilization detection | $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ | × |

- Notes:
- EP0 interrupts must be assigned to the same interrupt request signal.
 - An EP2i DMA transfer by a USB request is specified by the EP2iT1 and EP2iT0 bits of UDMAR.
 - An EP2o DMA transfer by a USB request is specified by the EP2oT1 and EP2oT0 bits of UDMAR.
 - An EP4i DMA transfer by a USB request is specified by the EP4iT1 and EP4iT0 bits of UDMAR.
 - An EP4oDMA transfer by a USB request is specified by the EP4oT1 and EP4oT0 bits of UDMAR.
 - The suspend/resume interrupt request $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ must be specified to be detected at the falling edge ($\overline{\text{IRQ6SCB}}$, A = 01 in ISCRH) by the interrupt controller register.
 - Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C. “—” in H8S/2215.
 - Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C. Reserved in H8S/2215.
 - The $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is not used for auto-request. The CPU can activate the DMAC using any flags and interrupts.

- $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ signal

The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ signal requests interrupt sources for which the corresponding bits in interrupt select registers 0 to 3 (UISR0 to UISR3) are cleared to 0. The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ is driven low if a corresponding bit in the interrupt flag register is set to 1.

- $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ signal

The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ signal requests interrupt sources for which the corresponding bits in interrupt select registers 0 to 3 (UISR0 to UISR3) are cleared to 0. The $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ is driven low if a corresponding bit in the interrupt flag register is set to 1.

- $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ signal

The $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ signal is specific to the suspend/resume interrupt request. The rising edge of the $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ signal is output at the transition from the suspend state or from the resume state.

15.5 Communication Operation

15.5.1 Initialization

The USB must be initialized as described in the flowchart in figure 15.3.

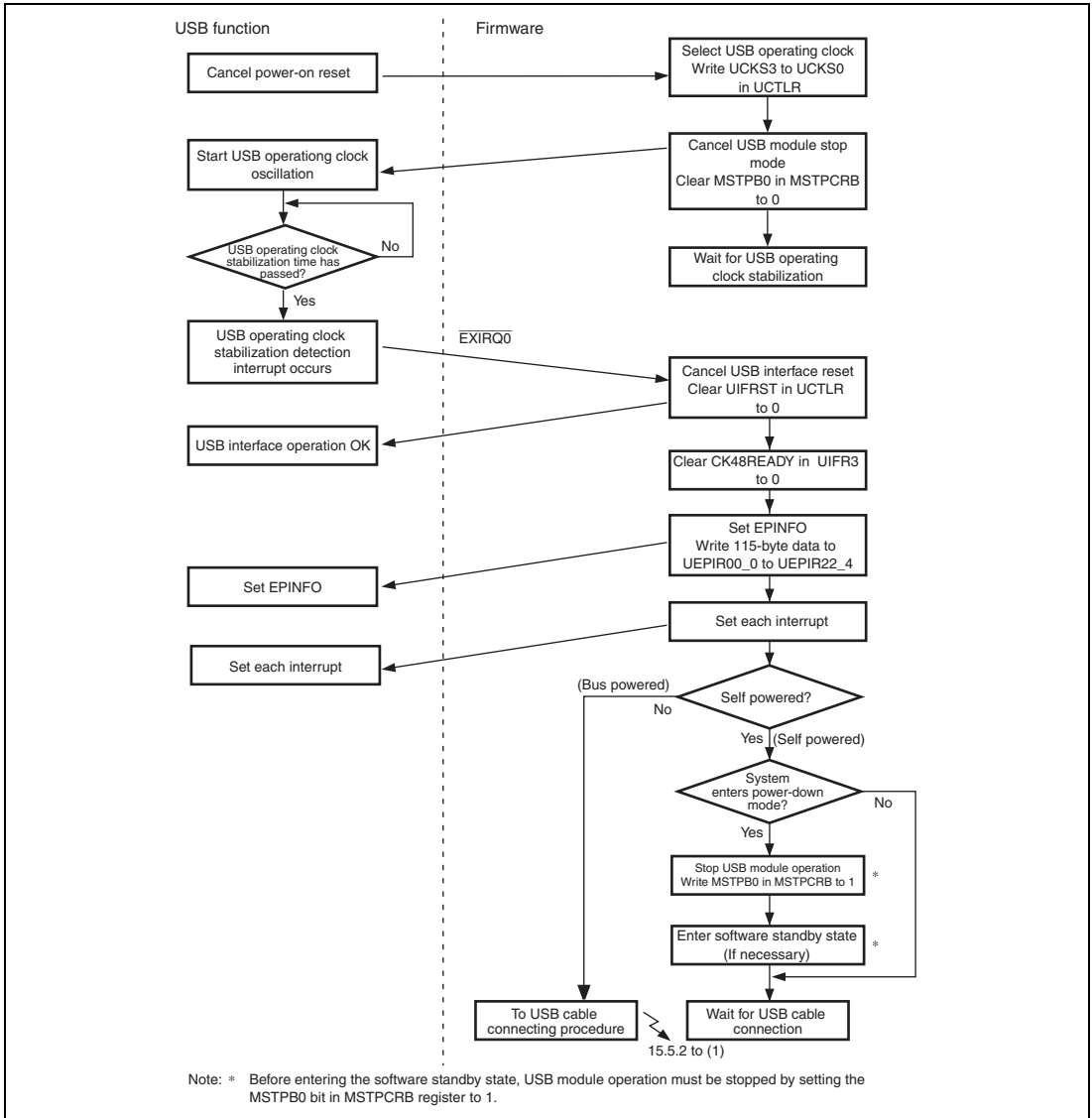
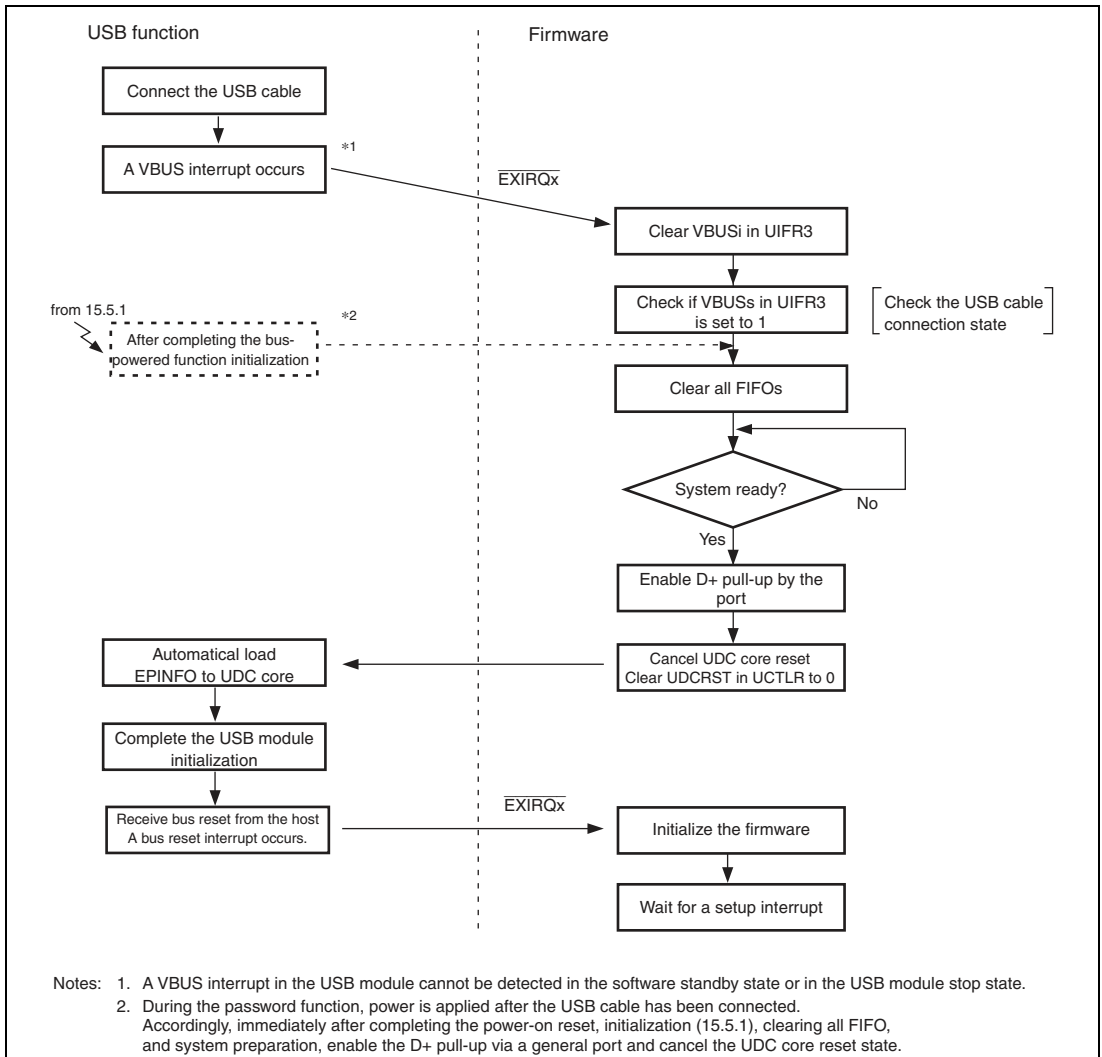


Figure 15.3 USB Initialization

15.5.2 USB Cable Connection/Disconnection

(1) USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Not Used)

If the USB cable enters the connection state from the disconnection state in an application (self powered) where USB module stop or software standby mode is not used, perform the operation shown in figure 15.4. In bus-powered mode, perform the operation described in note 2.



**Figure 15.4 USB Cable Connection
(When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Not Used)**

(2) USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Used)

If the USB cable enters the connection state from disconnection state an application (self powered) where USB module stop or software standby mode is used, perform the operation as shown in figure 15.5.

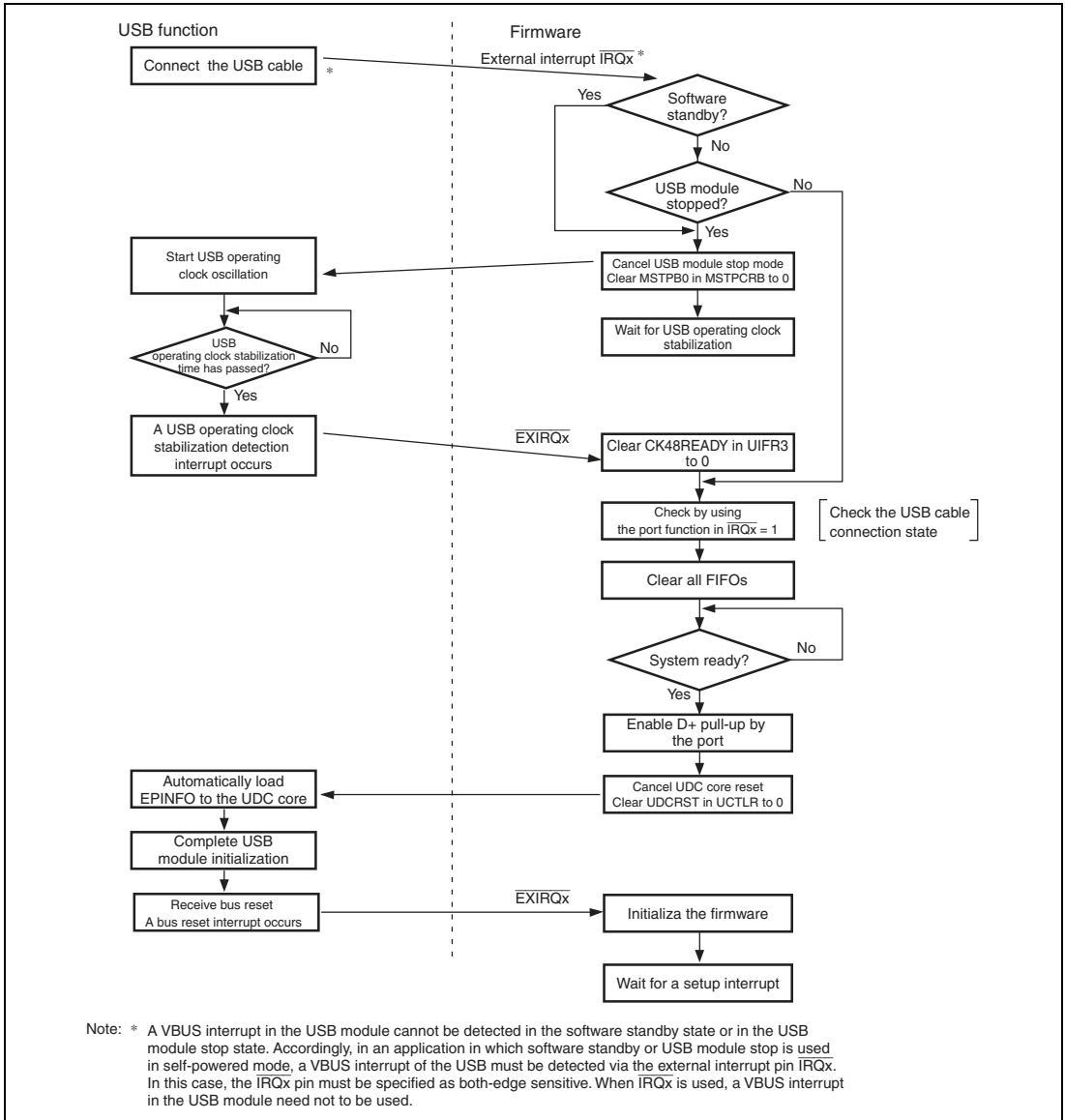
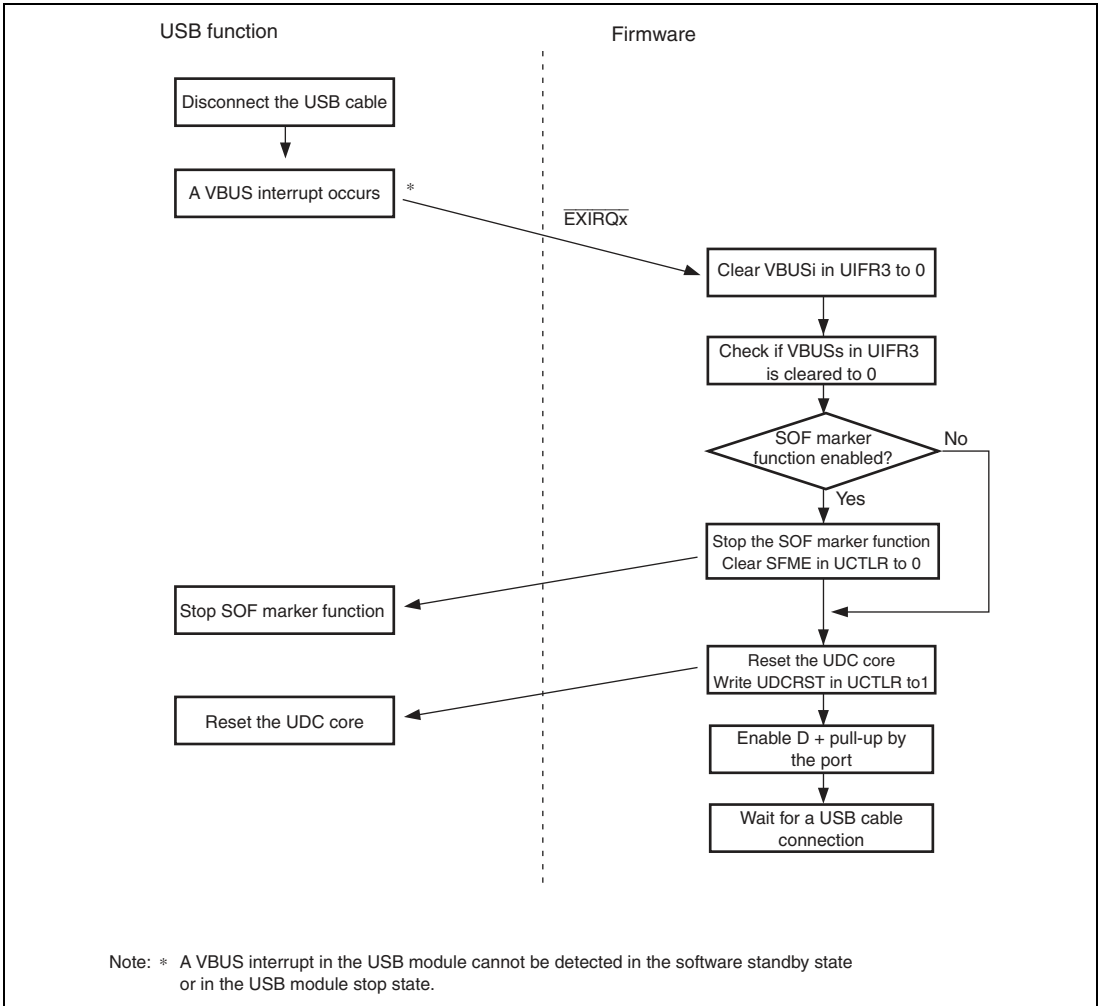


Figure 15.5 USB Cable Connection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Used)

(3) USB Cable Disconnection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Not Used)

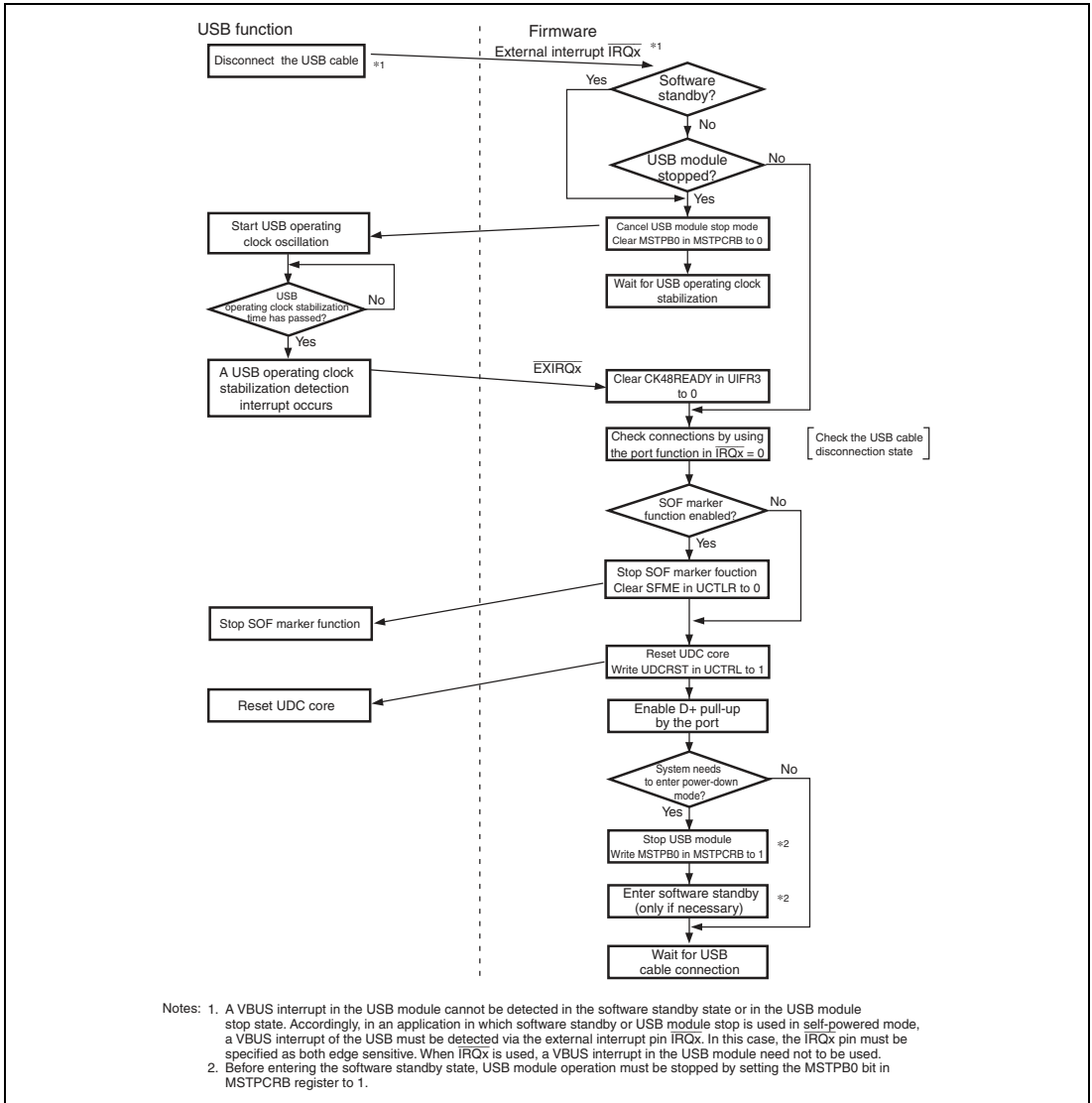
If the USB cable enters the disconnection state from the connection state in an application (self powered) where USB module stop or software standby mode is not used, perform the operation shown in figure 15.6. In bus-powered mode, the power is automatically turned off when the USB cable is disconnected and the following processing is not required.



**Figure 15.6 USB Cable Disconnection
(When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Not Used)**

(4) USB Cable Disconnection (When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Used)

If the USB cable enters the disconnection state from the connection state in an application (self powered) where USB module stop or software standby mode is used, perform the operation shown in figure 15.7.



**Figure 15.7 USB Cable Disconnection
(When USB Module Stop or Software Standby Is Used)**

15.5.3 Suspend and Resume Operations

(1) Suspend and Resume Operations

Figures 15.8 and 15.9 are flowcharts of the suspend and resume operations. If the USB bus enters the suspend state from a non-suspend state, or if it enters a non-suspend state from the suspend state due to a resume signal from up-stream, perform the operations shown below.

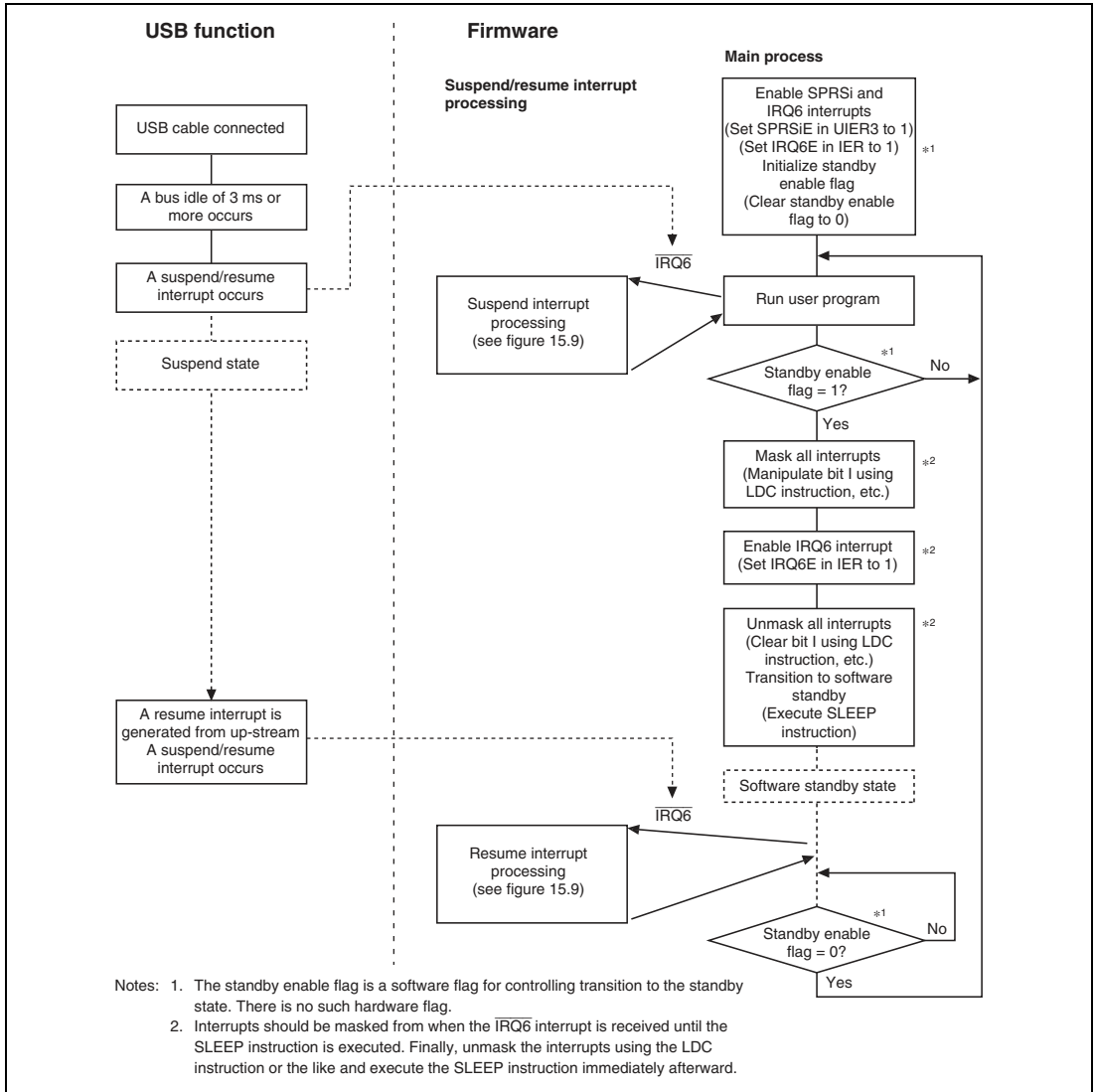


Figure 15.8 Example Flowchart of Suspend and Resume Operations

(2) Suspend and Resume Interrupt Processing

Figure 15.9 is a flowchart of suspend and resume interrupt processing.

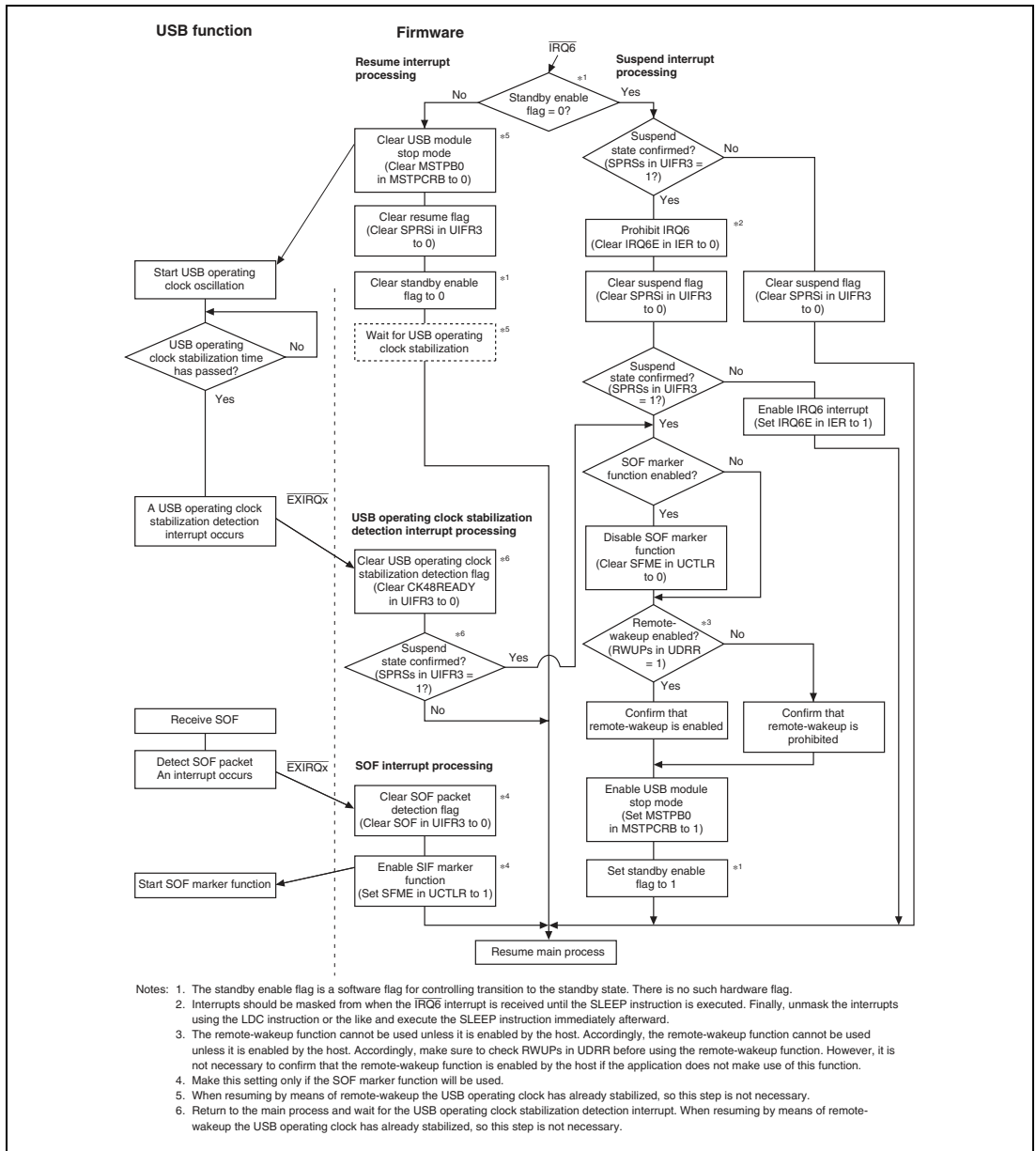


Figure 15.9 Example Flowchart of Suspend and Resume Interrupt Processing

(3) Suspend and Remote-Wakeup Operations

Figures 15.10 and 15.11 are flowcharts of the suspend and remote-wakeup operations. If the USB bus enters a non-suspend state from the suspend state due to a remote-wakeup signal from this function, perform the operations shown below.

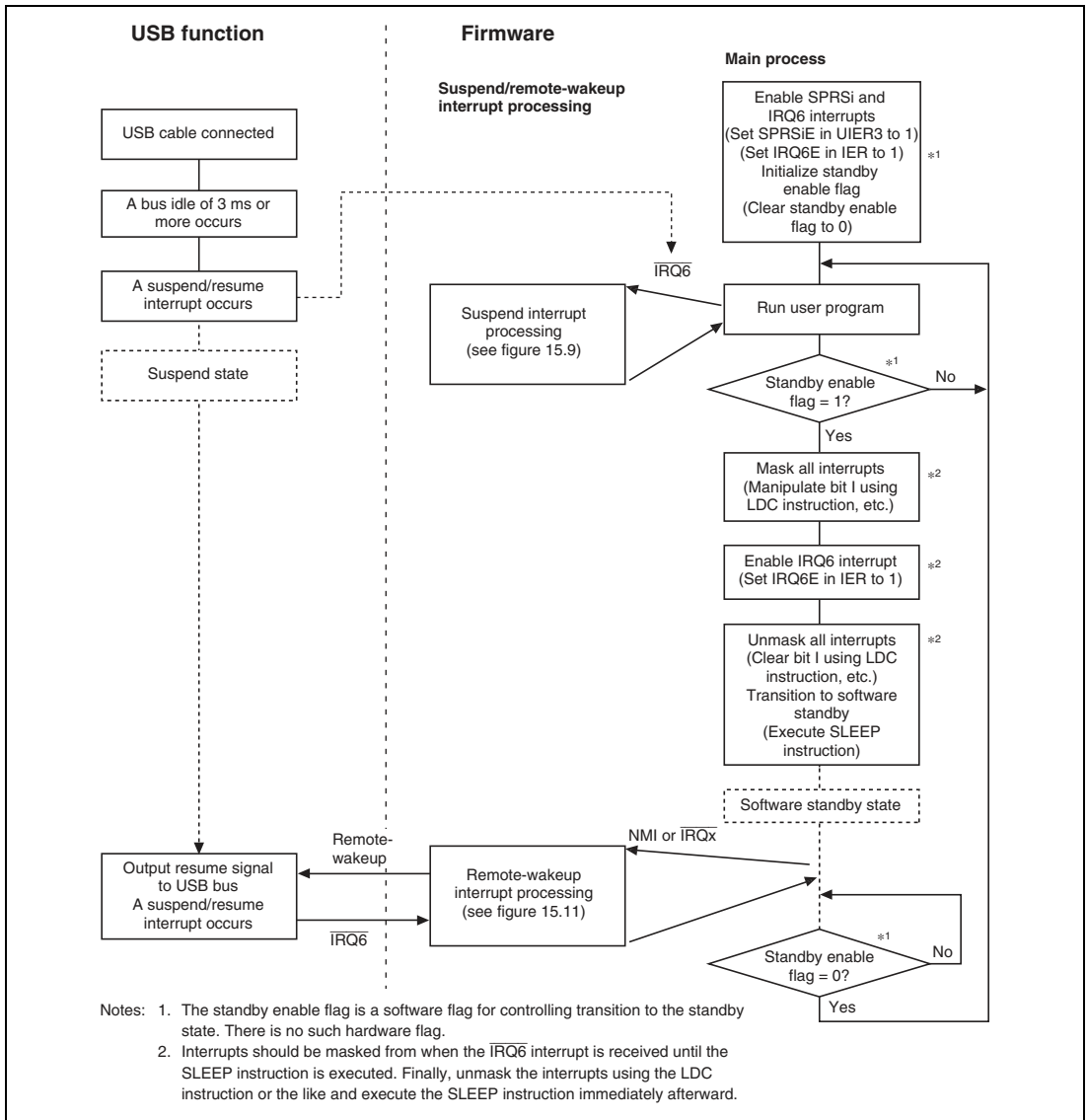


Figure 15.10 Example Flowchart of Suspend and Remote-Wakeup Operations

(4) Remote-Wakeup Interrupt Processing

Figure 15.11 is a flowchart of remote-wakeup interrupt processing.

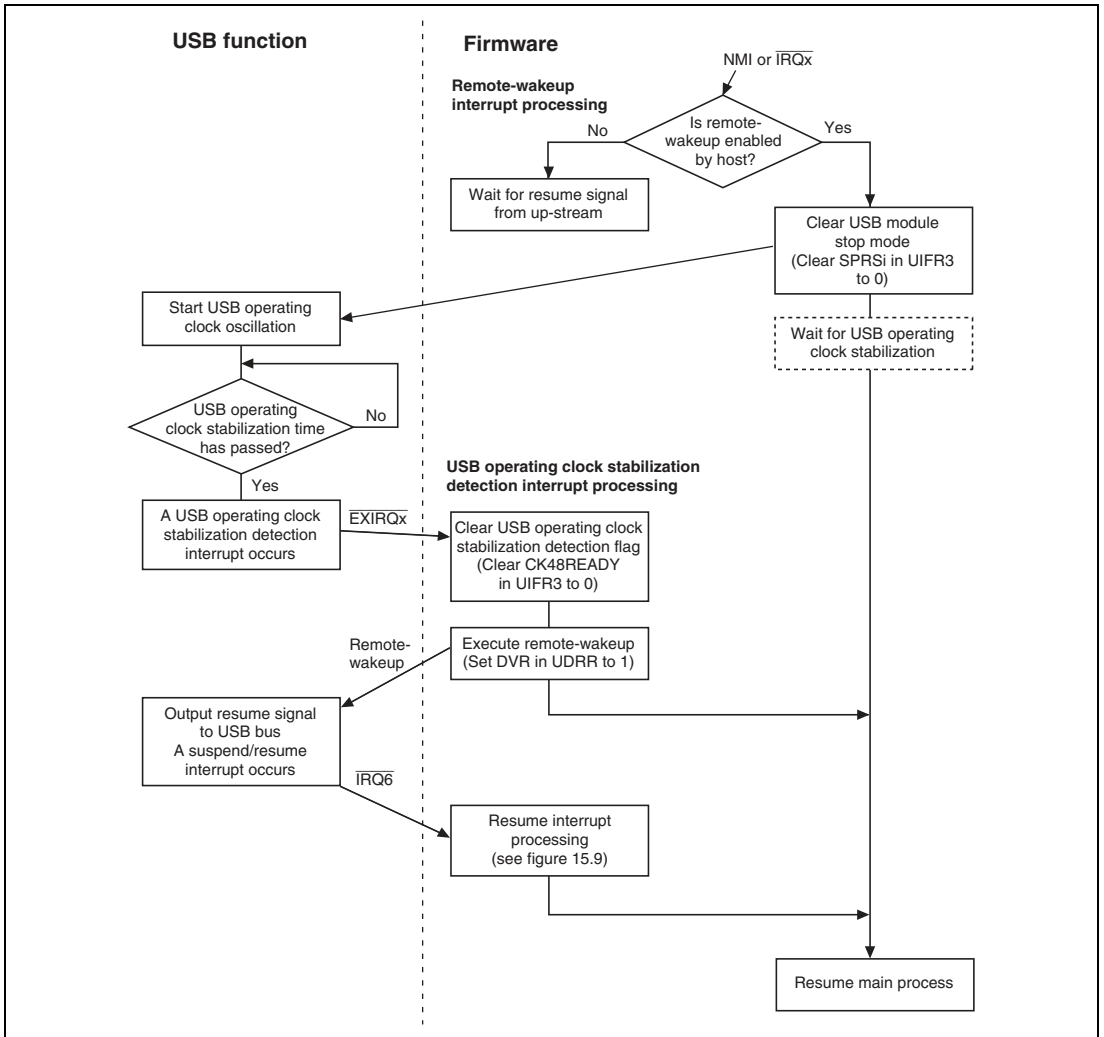


Figure 15.11 Example Flowchart of Remote-Wakeup Interrupt Processing

15.5.4 Control Transfer

The control transfer consists of three stages; setup, data (sometimes omitted), and status, as shown in figure 15.12. The data stage consists of multiple bus transactions. Figures 15.13 to 15.17 show operation flows in each stage.

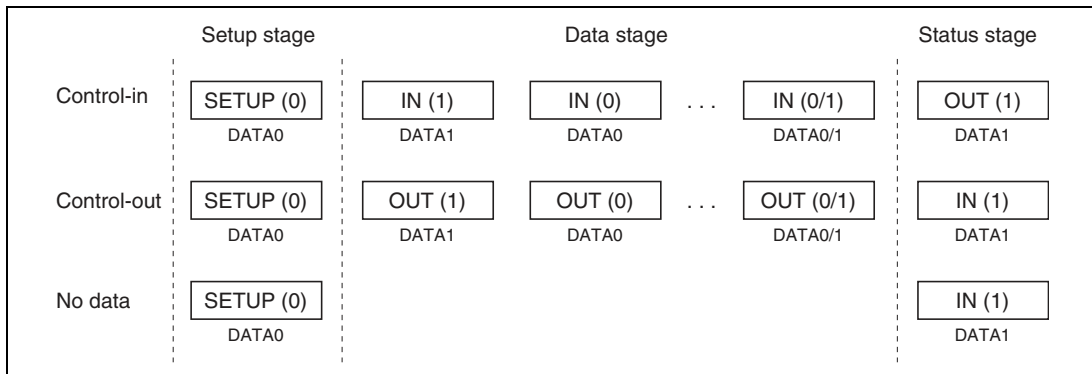
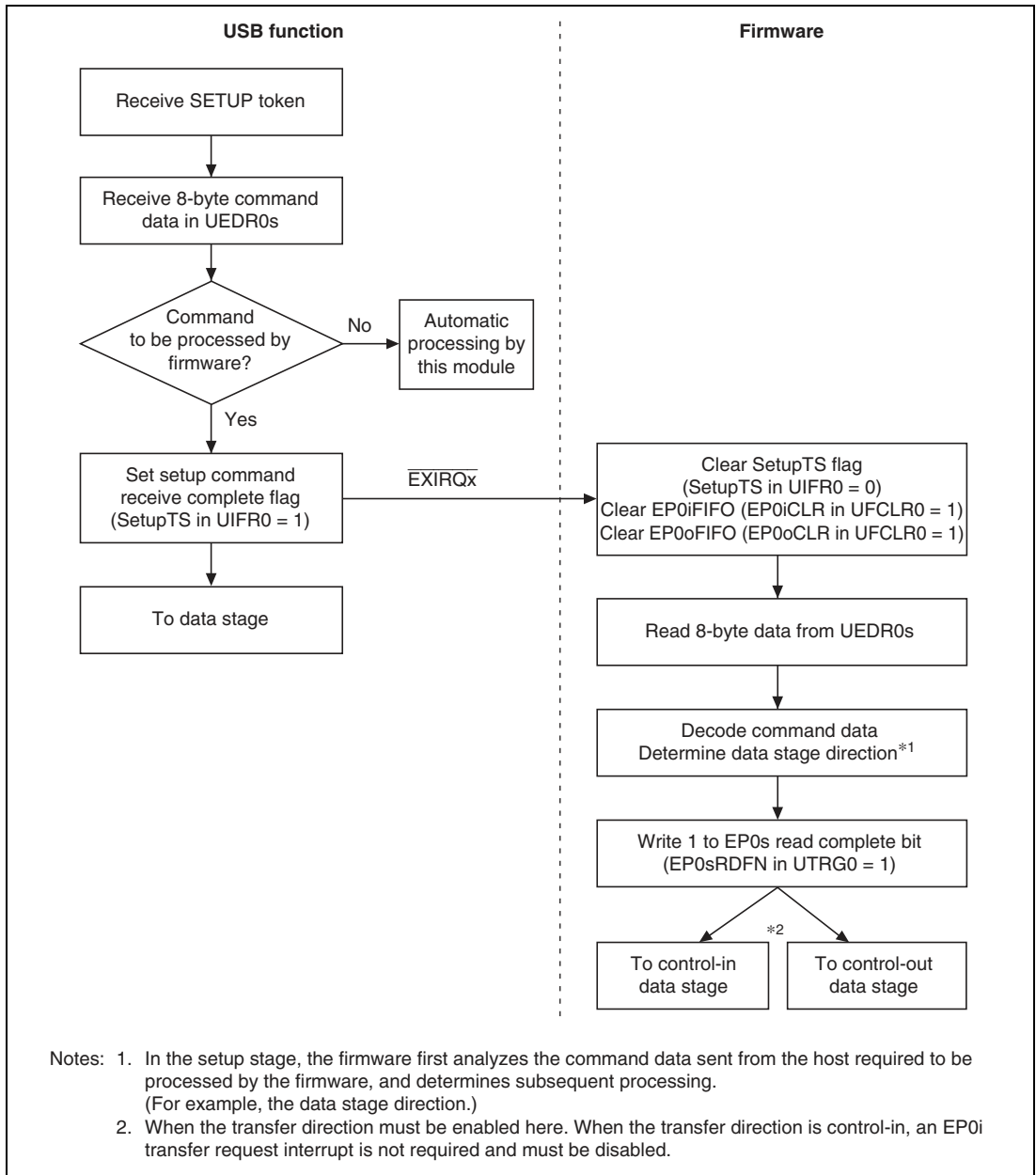


Figure 15.12 Control Transfer Stage Configuration

(1) Setup Stage**Figure 15.13 Setup Stage Operation**

(2) Data Stage (Control-In)

The firmware first analyzes command data from the host in the setup stage, and determines the subsequent data stage direction. If the result of command data analysis is that the data stage is in-transfer, one packet of data to be sent to the host is written to the FIFO. If there is more data to be sent, this data is written to the FIFO after the data written first has been sent to the host (EPOiTS of UIFR0 is set to 1).

The end of the data stage is identified when the host transmits an OUT token and the status stage is entered.

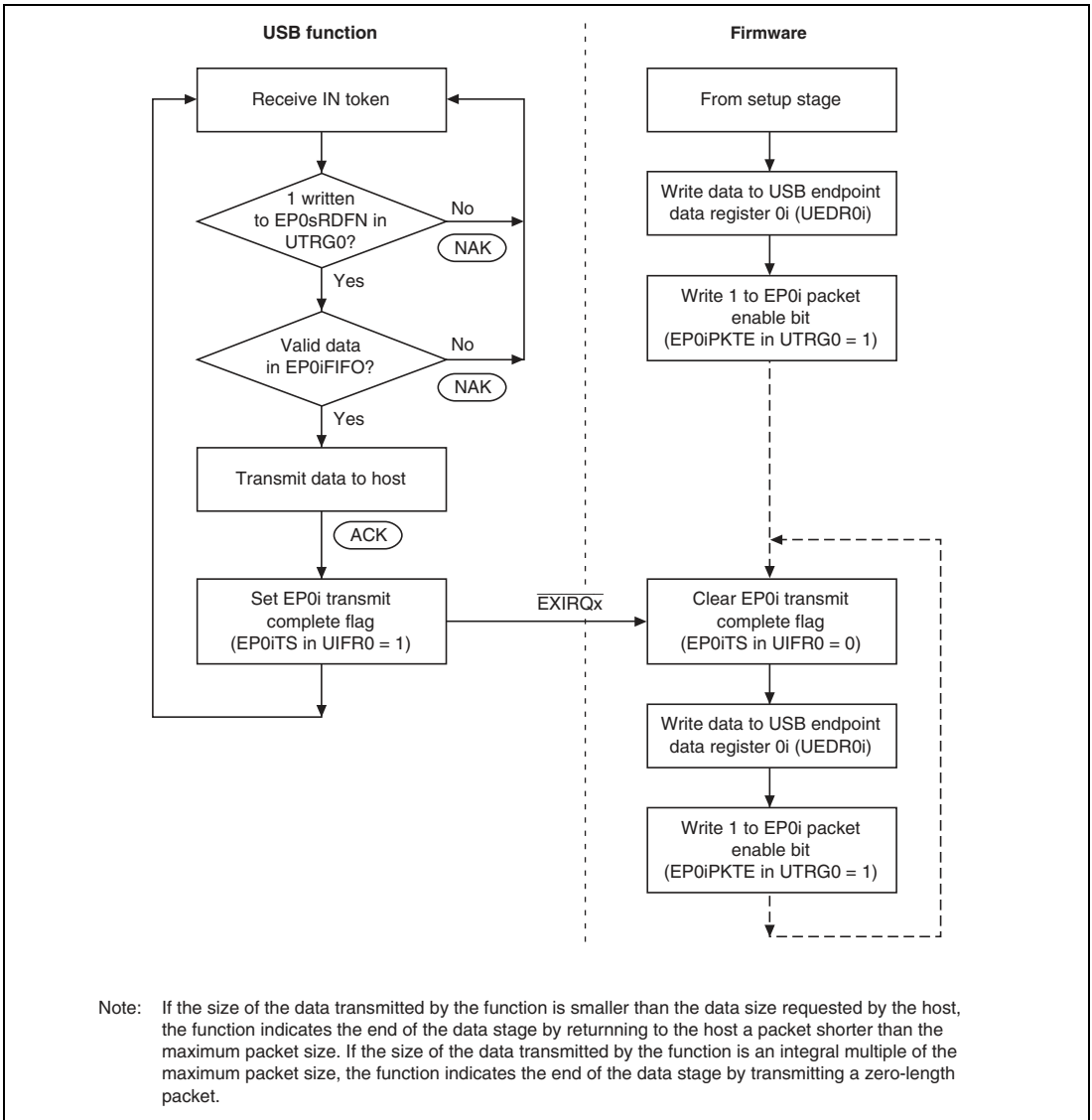


Figure 15.14 Data Stage Operation (Control-In)

(3) Data Stage (Control-Out)

The firmware first analyzes command data from the host in the setup stage, and determines the subsequent data stage direction. If the result of command data analysis is that the data stage is out-transfer, the application waits for data from the host, and after data is received (EP0oTS of UIFR0 is set to 1), reads data from the FIFO. Next, the firmware writes 1 to the EP0o read complete bit, empties the receive FIFO, and waits for reception of the next data.

The end of the data stage is identified when the host transmits an IN token and the status stage is entered.

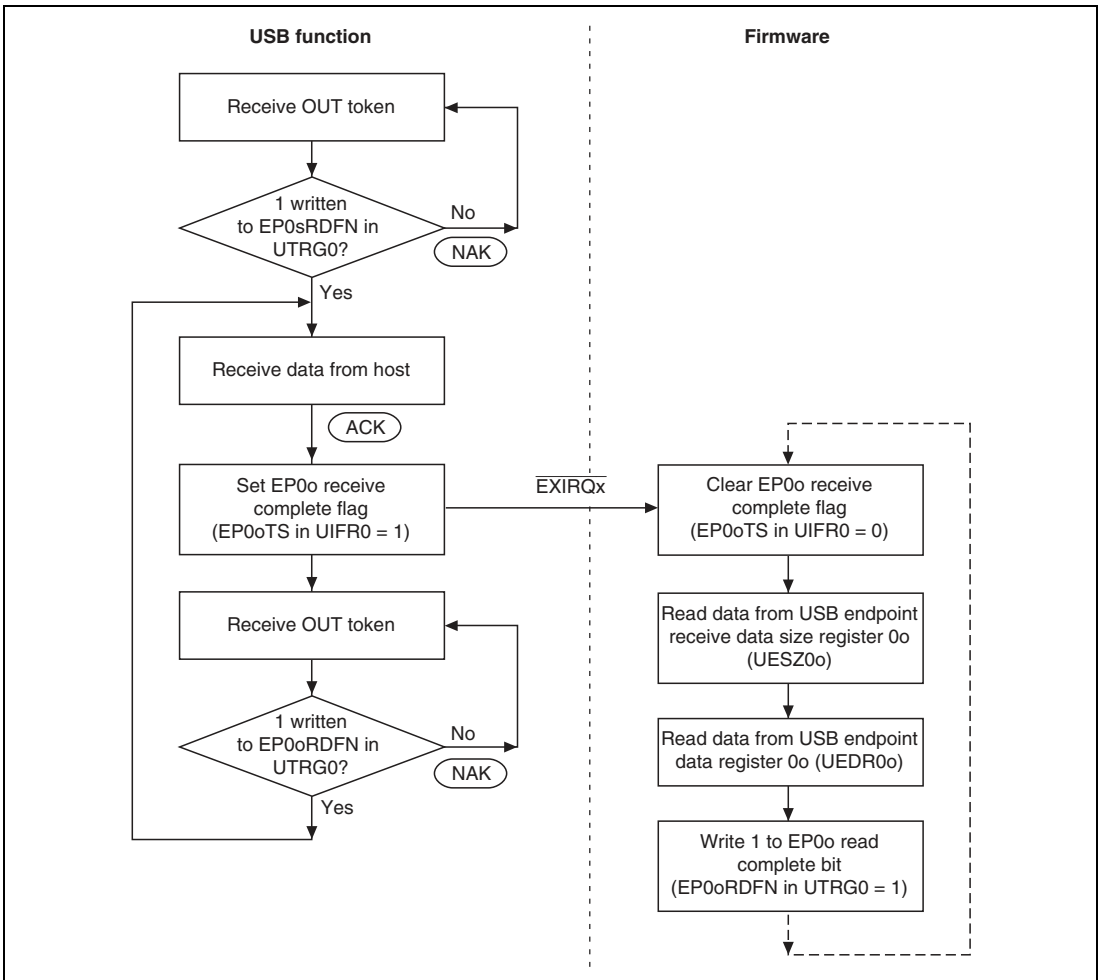


Figure 15.15 Data Stage Operation (Control-Out)

(4) Status Stage (Control-In)

The control-in status stage starts with an OUT token from the host. The firmware receives 0-byte data from the host, and ends control transfer.

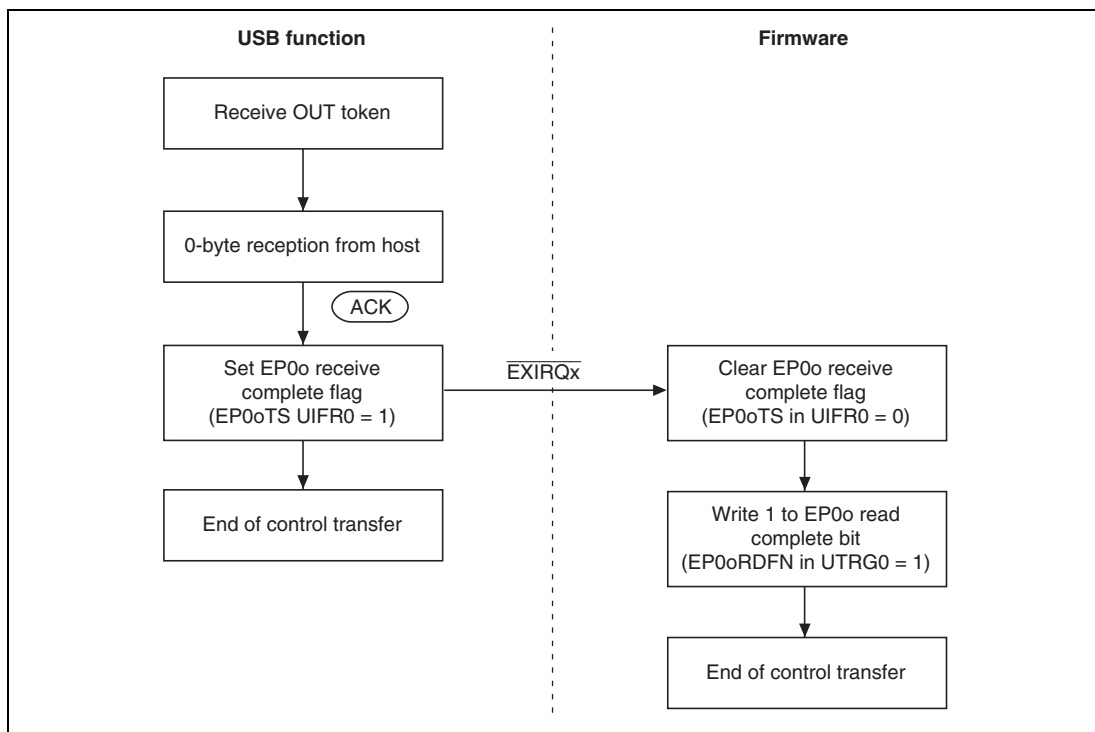


Figure 15.16 Status Stage Operation (Control-In)

(5) Status Stage (Control-Out)

The control-out status stage starts with an IN token from the host. When an IN-token is received at the start of the status stage, there is not yet any data in the EP0iFIFO, and so an EP0i transfer request interrupt is generated. The application recognizes from this interrupt that the status stage has started. Next, in order to transmit 0-byte data to the host, 1 is written to the EP0i packet enable bit but no data is written to the EP0iFIFO. As a result, the next IN token causes 0-byte data to be transmitted to the host, and control transfer ends.

After the application has finished all processing relating to the data stage, 1 should be written to the EP0i packet enable bit.

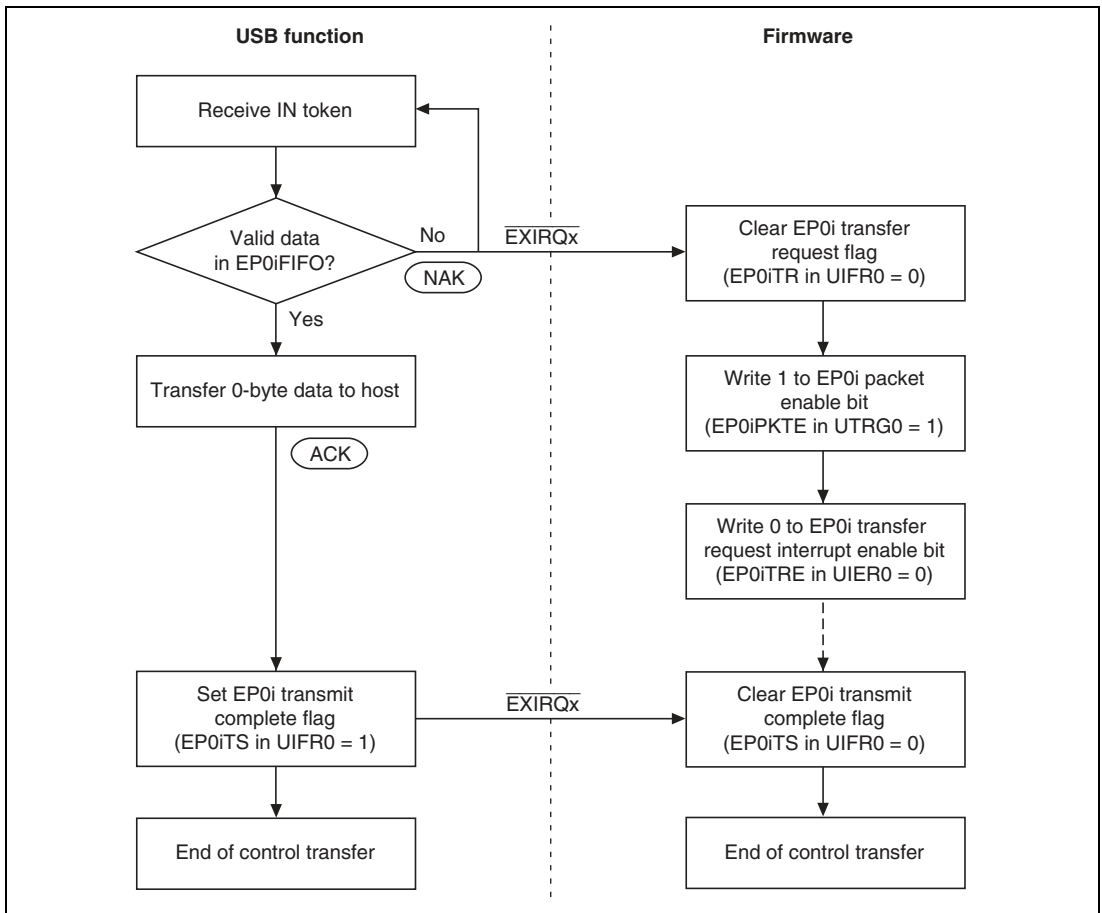
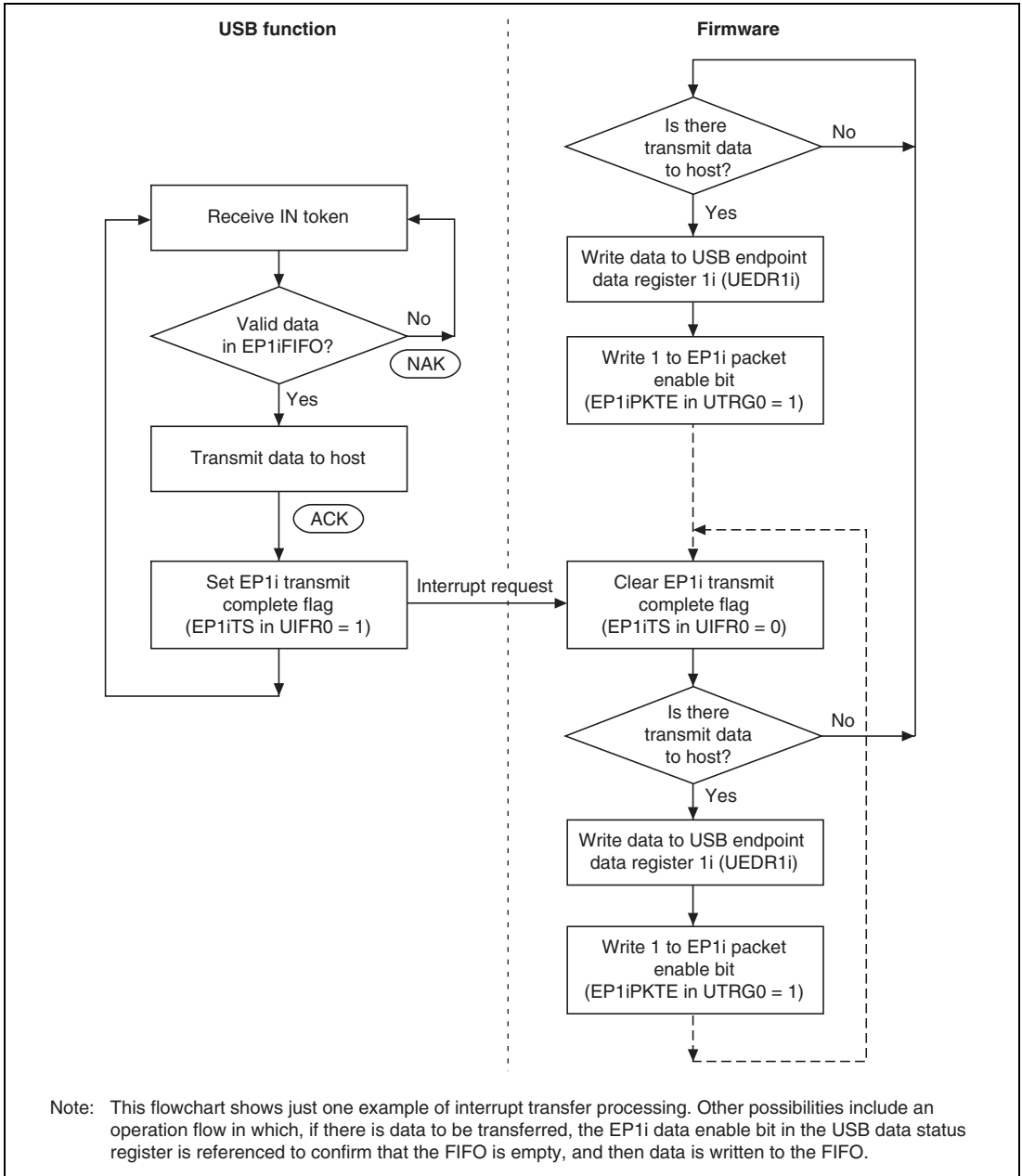


Figure 15.17 Status Stage Operation (Control-Out)

15.5.5 Interrupt-In Transfer (EP1i Is specified as Endpoint)



Note: This flowchart shows just one example of interrupt transfer processing. Other possibilities include an operation flow in which, if there is data to be transferred, the EP1i data enable bit in the USB data status register is referenced to confirm that the FIFO is empty, and then data is written to the FIFO.

Figure 15.18 EP1i Interrupt-In Transfer Operation

15.5.6 Bulk-In Transfer (Dual FIFOs) (EP2i Is specified as Endpoint)

EP2i has two 64-byte FIFOs, but the user can perform data transmission and transmit data writes without being aware of this dual-FIFO configuration. However, one data write is performed for one FIFO. For example, even if both FIFOs are empty, it is not possible to perform EP2iPKTE at one time after consecutively writing 128 bytes of data. EP2iPKTE must be performed for each 64-byte write.

When transmitting data to the host using a bulk-in transfer, the EP2iFIFO empty interrupt must first be enabled. 1 is written to the UIER1/EP2iEMPTYE bit, and the EP2iFIFO empty interrupt is enabled. At first, both EP2iFIFOs are empty, and so an EP2iFIFO empty interrupt is generated immediately.

The data to be transmitted is written to the data register using this interrupt. After the first transmit data write for one FIFO, the other FIFO is empty, and so the next transmit data can be written to the other FIFO immediately. When both FIFOs are full, EP2iEMPTY is cleared to 0. If at least one FIFO is empty, UIFR1/EP2iEMPTY is set to 1. When ACK is returned from the host after data transmission is completed, the FIFO used in the data transmission becomes empty. If the other FIFO contains valid transmit data at this time, transmission can be continued.

When transmission of all data has been completed, write 0 to UIER1/EP2iEMPTYE and disable $\overline{\text{EXIRQ0}}$ or $\overline{\text{EXIRQ1}}$ interrupt requests.

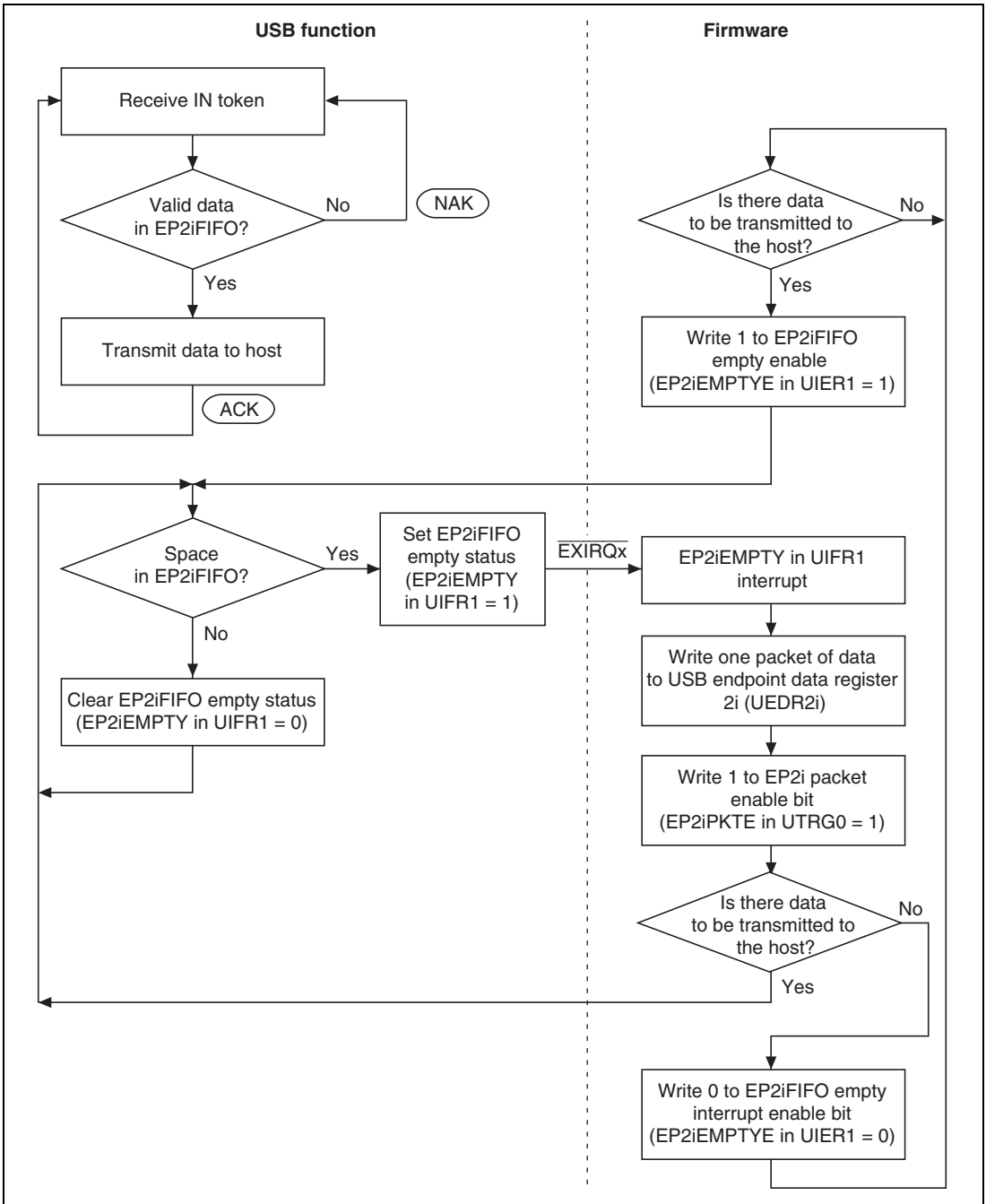


Figure 15.19 EP2i Bulk-In Transfer Operation

15.5.7 Bulk-Out Transfer (Dual FIFOs) (EP2o Is specified as Endpoint)

EP2o has two 64-byte FIFOs, but the user can perform data reception and receive data reads without being aware of this dual-FIFO configuration.

When one FIFO is full after reception is completed, the UIFR1/EP2oREADY bit is set. After the first receive operation into one of the FIFOs when both FIFOs are empty, the other FIFO is empty, and so the next packet can be received immediately. When both FIFOs are full, NAK is returned to the host automatically. When reading of the receive data is completed following data reception, 1 is written to the UTRG0/EP2oRDFN bit. This operation empties the FIFO that has just been read, and makes it ready to receive the next packet.

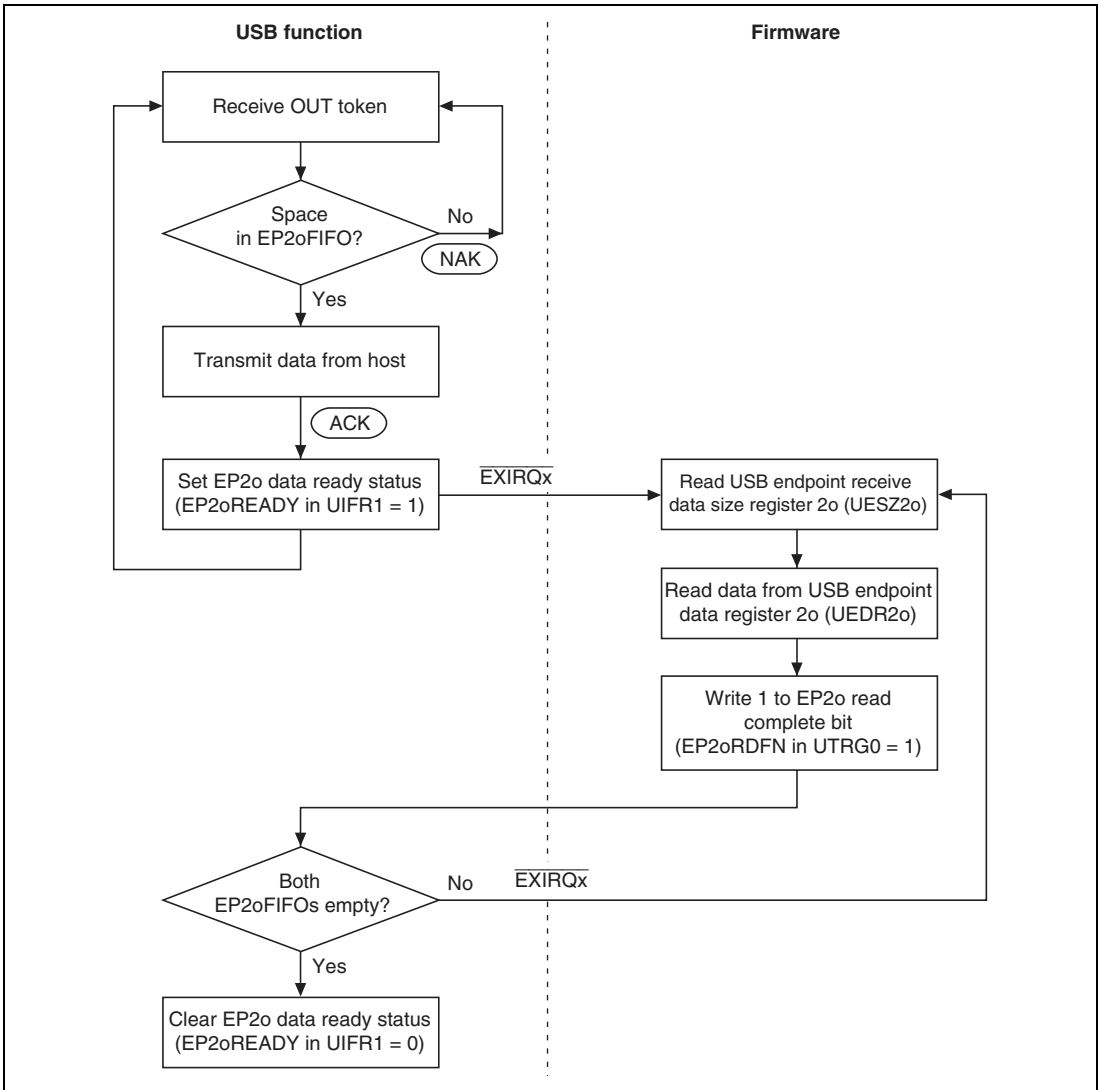


Figure 15.20 EP2o Bulk-Out Transfer Operation

15.5.8 Isochronous-In Transfer (Dual-FIFO) (When EP3i Is Specified as Endpoint)

EP3i has two 128-byte (maximum) FIFOs, however the user can perform data transmission and transmit data writes without being aware of this dual-FIFO configuration.

In isochronous transfer, as a transmission is performed once a frame (1 ms), the hardware automatically switches FIFOs when the hardware receives the SOF. Even when SOF cannot be received by an error, enabling the SOF marker function allows the hardware to automatically switch the FIFOs every 1 ms. In addition, the USB function checks if the valid data of the previous frame was transferred from the FIFO to the host after SOF has been received. As a result, if the valid data in the FIFO is not transferred to the host (if the host does not return an IN token or if an IN token error has occurred), the USB regards it as EP3i IN token not received and sets the EP3iTF bit of UIFR1 to 1.

Two FIFOs are switched when the SOF is received, the FIFO used to transfer data to the host differs from the FIFO to which the firmware writes transmit data. Accordingly, no contention occurs between one FIFO read and the other FIFO write. The data to be written by the firmware is transferred to the host in the next frame. As two FIFOs are automatically switched when the SOF is received, data must be written within a single frame.

The USB function transfers data to the host if the FIFO contains data to be sent to the host after an IN token has been received. If the FIFO contains no data, the USB function sets the TR flag to 1 and sends 0-byte data to the host.

The firmware first calls the isochronous transfer process routine by the SOF interrupt and checks the time stamp. The firmware then writes 1-packet data to the FIFO and this 1-packed data is sent to the host in the next frame.

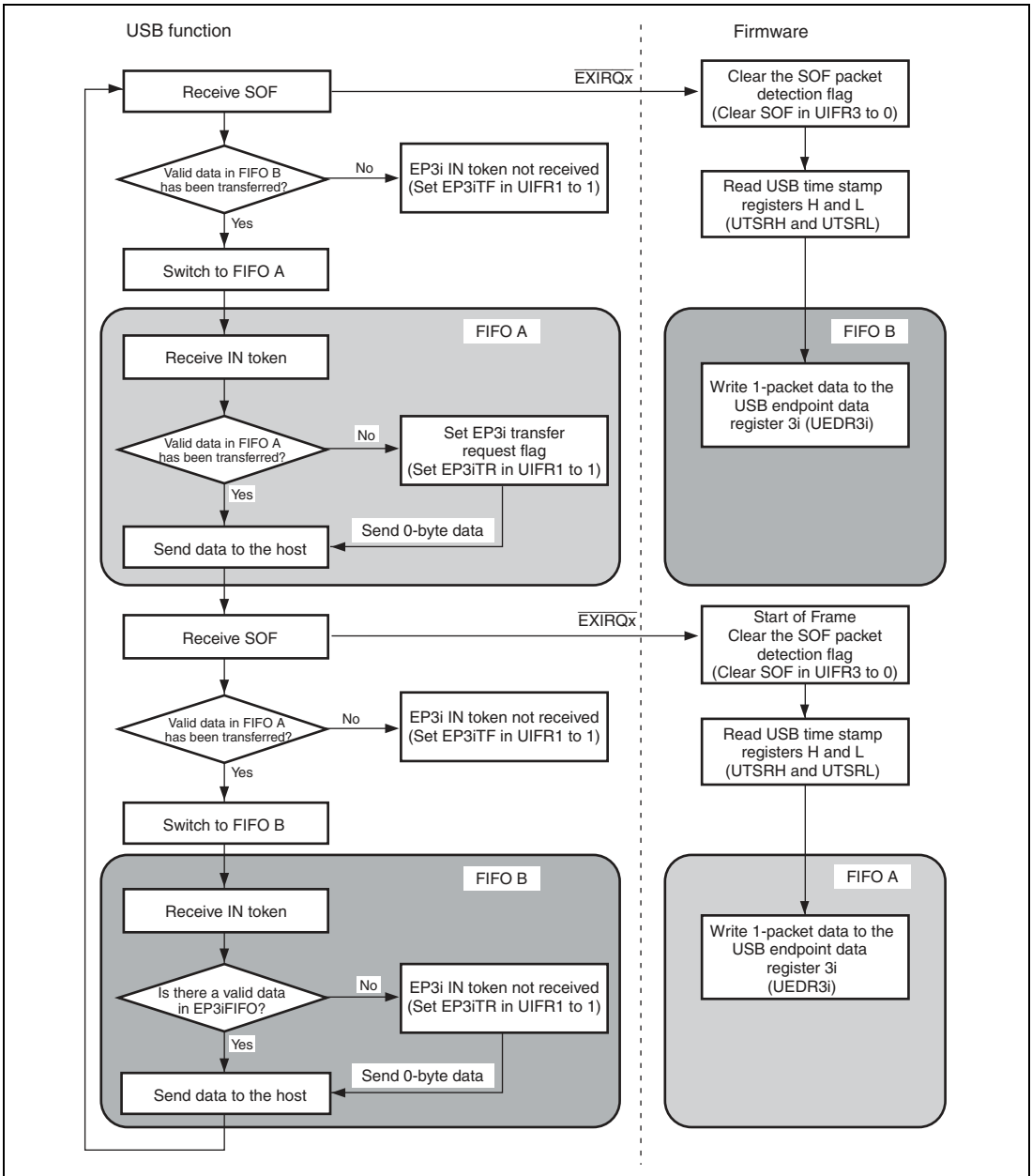


Figure 15.21 EP3i Isochronous-In Transfer Operation

15.5.9 Isochronous-Out Transfer (Dual-FIFO) (When EP3o Is Specified as Endpoint)

EP3o has two 128-byte (maximum) FIFOs, however the user can perform data transmission and transmit data writes without being aware of this dual-FIFO configuration.

In isochronous transfer, as a transmission is performed once a frame (1 ms), the hardware automatically switches FIFOs when the hardware receives the SOF. (Even when SOF cannot be received by an error, enabling the SOF marker function allows the hardware to automatically switch the FIFOs every 1 ms.)

Two FIFOs are switched when the SOF is received, the FIFO used to transfer data from the host to the firmware differs from the FIFO from which the firmware reads transmit data. Accordingly, no contention occurs between one FIFO read and the other FIFO write. The firmware read the data in the previous frame. As two FIFOs are automatically switched when the SOF is received, data must be read within a single frame.

The USB function receives data from the host after an OUT token has been received. If a data error occurs on data reception, the USB function sets the TF flag to 1; if no data error occurs, the USB function sets the TS flag to 1.

The firmware first calls the isochronous transfer process routine via the SOF interrupt, checks the time stamp, and then reads from the FIFO. Accordingly, the firmware checks whether a data error occurs or not via status information indicated by the TF and TS flags. These TF and TS flags indicate the status of the FIFO currently being read.

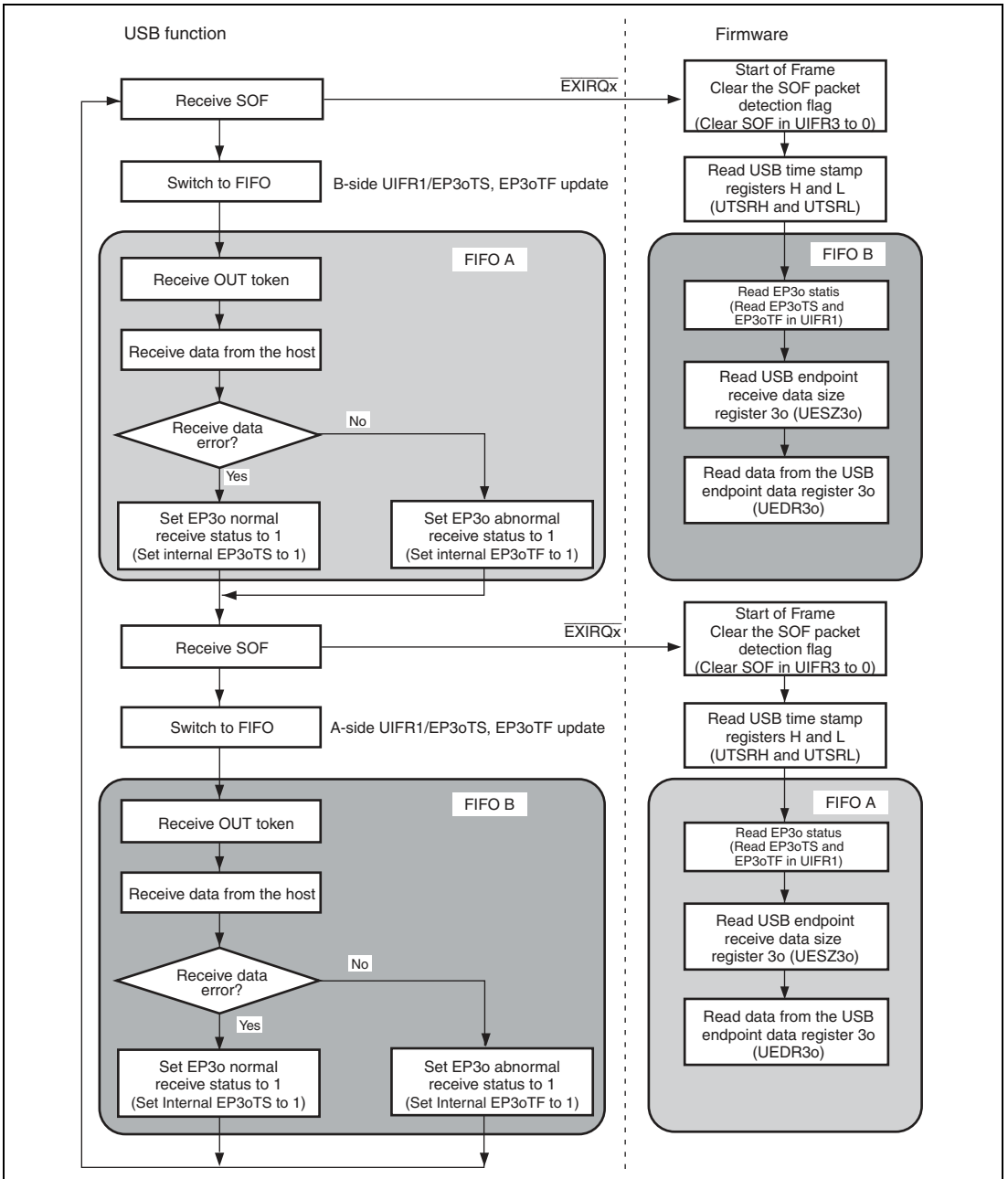


Figure 15.22 EP3o Isochronous-Out Transfer Operation

15.5.10 Processing of USB Standard Commands and Class/Vendor Commands

(1) Processing of Commands Transmitted by Control Transfer

A command transmitted from the host by control transfer may require decoding and execution of command processing by the firmware. Whether or not command decoding is required by the firmware is indicated in table 15.6 below.

Table 15.6 Command Decoding on Firmware

| Decoding not Necessary on Firmware | Decoding Necessary on Firmware |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Clear Feature | Get Descriptor |
| Get Configuration | Synch Frame |
| Get Interface | Set Descriptor |
| Get Status | Class/Vendor command |
| Set Address | |
| Set Configuration | |
| Set Feature | |
| Set Interface | |

If decoding is not necessary on the firmware, command decoding and data stage and status stage processing are performed automatically. No processing is necessary by the user. An interrupt is not generated in this case.

If decoding is necessary on the firmware, the USB function module stores the command in the EP0sFIFO. After normal reception is completed, the SetupTS flag of UIER0 is set and an interrupt request is generated from the $\overline{\text{EXIRQx}}$. In the interrupt routine, eight bytes of data must be read from the EP0s data register (UEDR0s) and decoded by firmware. The necessary data stage and status stage processing should then be carried out according to the result of the decoding operation.

15.5.11 Stall Operations

(1) Overview

This section describes stall operations in the USB function module. There are two cases in which the USB function module stall function is used:

1. When the firmware forcibly stalls an endpoint for some reason
2. When a stall is performed automatically within the USB function module due to a USB specification violation

The USB function module has internal status bits that hold the status (stall or non-stall) of each endpoint. When a transaction is sent from the host, the module references these internal status bits and determines whether to return a stall to the host. These bits cannot be cleared by the application; they must be cleared with a Clear Feature command from the host.

(2) Forcible Stall by Firmware

The firmware uses UESTL to issue a stall request for the USB function module. When the firmware wishes to stall a specific endpoint, it sets the corresponding EPnSTL bit (1-1 in figure 15.23). The internal status bits are not changed.

When a transaction is sent from the host for the endpoint for which the EPnSTL bit was set, the USB function module references the internal status bit, and if this is not set, references the corresponding EPnSTL bit (1-2 in figure 15.23). If the corresponding EPnSTL bit is not set, the internal status bit is not changed and the transaction is accepted. If the corresponding EPnSTL bit is set, the USB function module sets the internal status bit and returns a stall handshake to the host (1-3 in figure 15.23).

Once an internal status bit is set, it remains set until cleared by a Clear Feature command from the host, without regard to EPnSTL. Even after a bit is cleared by the Clear Feature command (3-1 in figure 15.23), the USB function module continues to return a stall handshake while the EPnSTL bit is set, since the internal status bit is set each time a transaction is executed for the corresponding endpoint (1-2 in figure 15.23). To clear a stall, therefore, it is necessary for the corresponding EPnSTL bit to be cleared by the firmware, and also for the internal status bit to be cleared with a Clear Feature command (2-1 to 2-3 in figure 15.23).

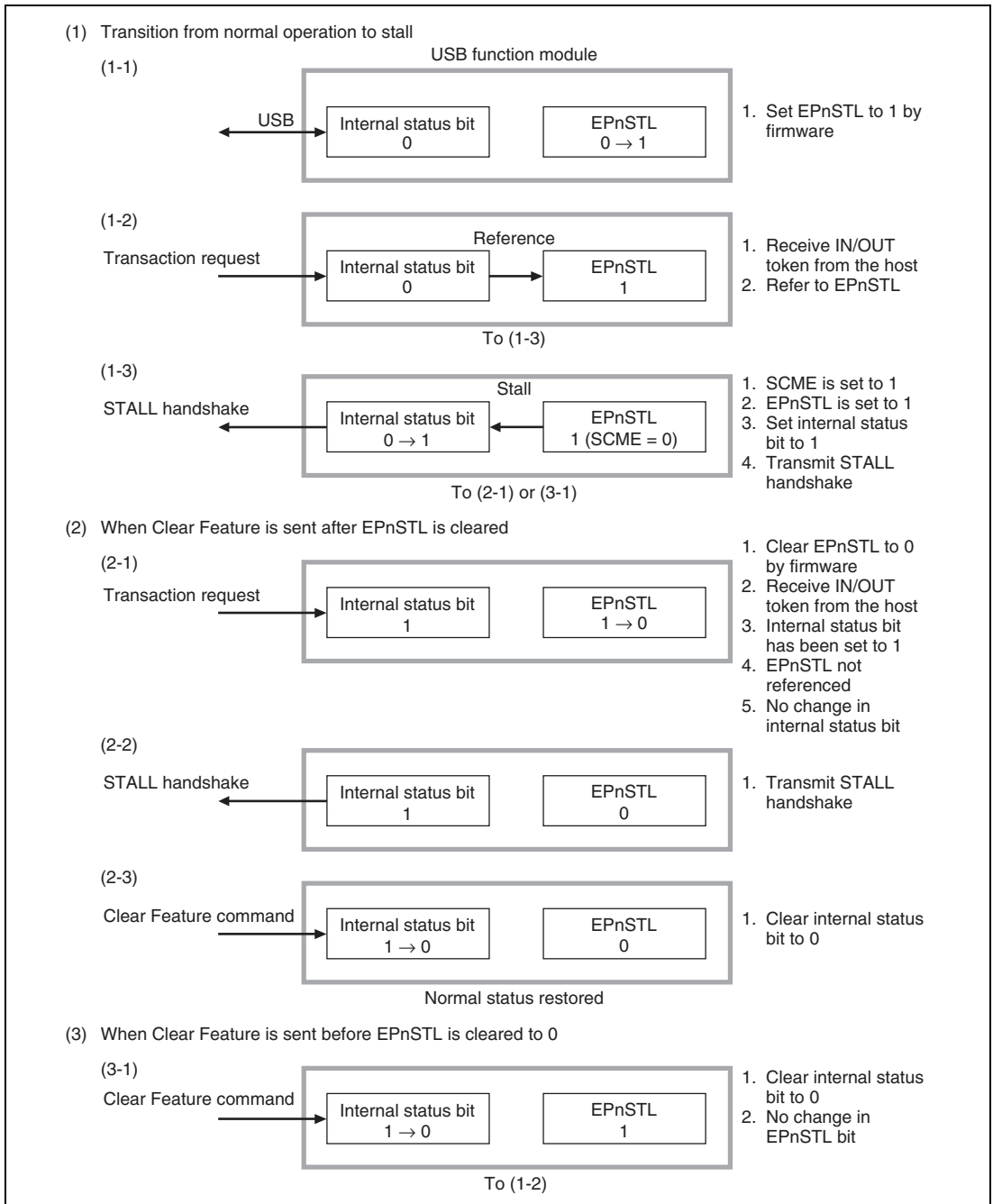


Figure 15.23 Forcible Stall by Firmware

(3) Automatic Stall by USB Function Module

When a stall setting is made with the Set Feature command, when the information of this module differs from that returned to the host by the Get Descriptor, or in the event of a USB specification violation, the USB function module automatically sets the internal status bit for the relevant endpoint without regard to EPnSTL, and returns a stall handshake (1-1 in figure 15.24).

Once an internal status bit is set, it remains set until cleared by a Clear Feature command from the host, without regard to EPnSTL. After a bit is cleared by the Clear Feature command, EPnSTL is referenced (3-1 in figure 15.24). The USB function module continues to return a stall handshake while the internal status bit is set, since the internal status bit is set even if a transaction is executed for the corresponding endpoint (2-1 and 2-2 in figure 15.24). To clear a stall, therefore, the internal status bit must be cleared with a Clear Feature command (3-1 in figure 15.24). If set by the firmware, EPnSTL should also be cleared (2-1 in figure 15.24).

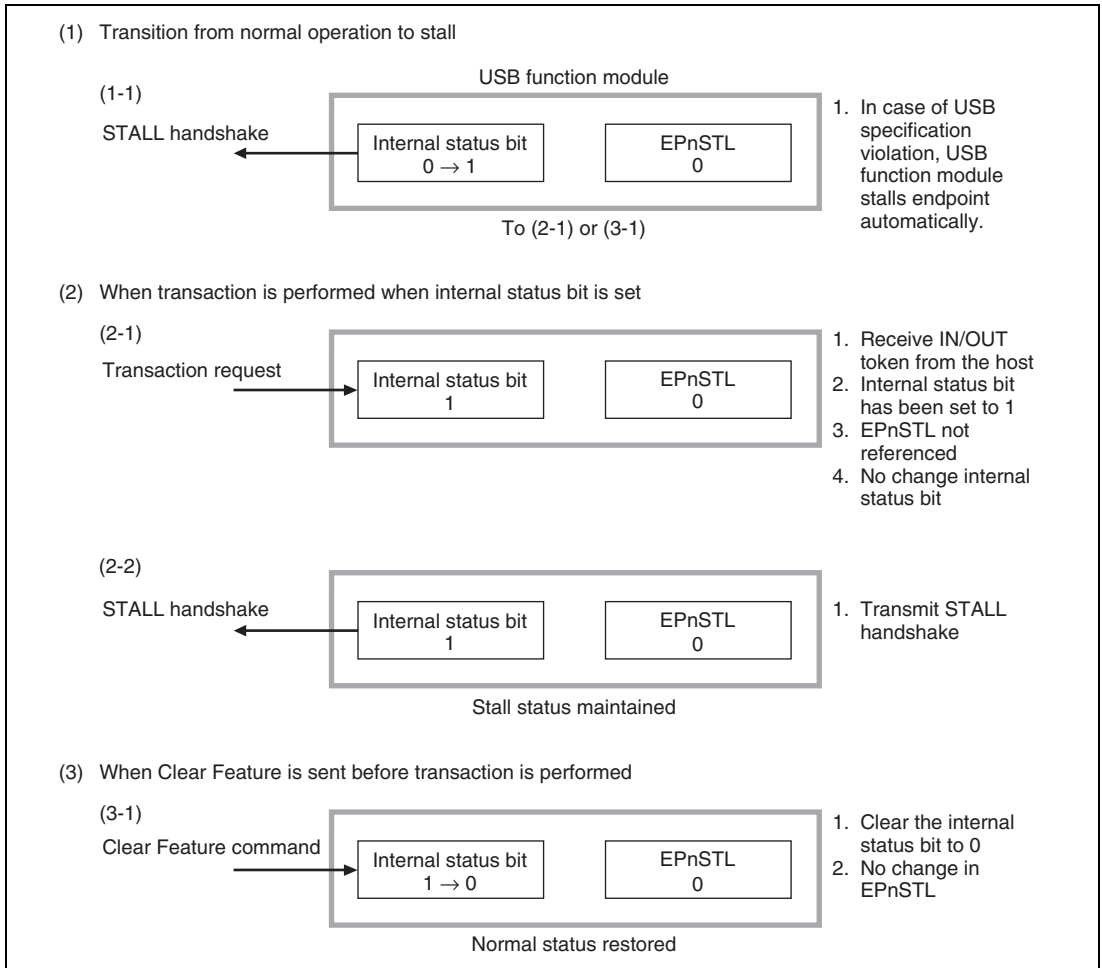


Figure 15.24 Automatic Stall by USB Function Module

15.6 DMA Transfer Specifications

Two methods of USB request and auto request are available for the DMA transfer of USB data.

15.6.1 DMA Transfer by USB Request

(1) Overview

Only normal mode in full address mode (cycle steal mode) supports the transfer by a USB request of the on-chip DMAC. Endpoints that can be transferred by the on-chip DMAC are EP2 and EP4 in Bulk transfer (corresponding registers are UEDR2i, UEDR2o, UEDR4i, and UEDR4o). In DMA transfer, the USB module must be accessed as an external device in area 6. The USB module cannot be accessed as a device with external ACK (single-address transfer cannot be performed). 0-byte data transfer to EP2o or EP4o is ignored even if the DMA transfer is enabled by setting the EP2oT1 or EP4oT1 bit of UDMAR to 1.

(2) On-Chip DMAC Settings

The on-chip DMAC must be specified as follows: A USB request ($\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal), activated by low-level input, byte size, full-address mode transfer, and the DTA bit of DMABCR = 1. After completing the DMA transfers of specified time, the DMAC automatically stops. Note, however, that the USB module keeps the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal low while data to be transferred by the on-chip DMAC remains regardless of the DMAC status.

(3) EP2i and EP4i DMA Transfer

The EP2iT1 and EP4iT1 bits of UDMAR enable DMA transfer. The EP2iT0 and EP4iT0 bits of the UDMAR specify the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal to be used by the DMA transfer. When the EP2iT1 or EP4iT1 is set to 1, the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven low if at least one of EP2i and EP4i data FIFOs are empty; the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven high if both EP2i and EP4i data FIFOs are full.

(a) EP2iPKTE and EP4iPKTE Bits of UTRG

When DMA transfer is performed on EP2i and EP4i transmit data, the USB module automatically performs the same processing as writing 1 to EP2iPKTE and EP4iPKTE if one data FIFO (64 bytes) becomes full. Accordingly, to transfer data of integral multiples of 64 bytes, the user need not write EP2iPKTE and EP4iPKTE to 1. To transfer data of less than 64 bytes, the user must write EP2iPKTE and EP4iPKTE to 1 using the DMA transfer end interrupt of the on-chip DMAC. If the user writes 1 to EP2iPKTE and EP4iPKTE in cases other than the case when data of less than 64 bytes is transferred, excess transfer occurs and correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

Figure 15.25 shows an example for transmitting 150 bytes of data from EP2i to the host. In this case, internal processing the same as writing 1 to EP2iPKTE is automatically performed twice.

This kind of internal processing is performed when the currently selected data FIFO becomes full. Accordingly, this processing is automatically performed only when 64-byte data is sent. This processing is not performed automatically when data less than 64 bytes is sent.

(b) EP2i DMA Transfer Procedure

1. Set bits EP2iT1 and EP2iT0 in UDMAR.
2. DMAC settings (in DMAC specify number of transfers for 150 bytes).
3. Start DMAC.
4. DMA transfer.
5. Write 1 to EP2iPKTE in UTRG0 using DMA transfer end interrupt.

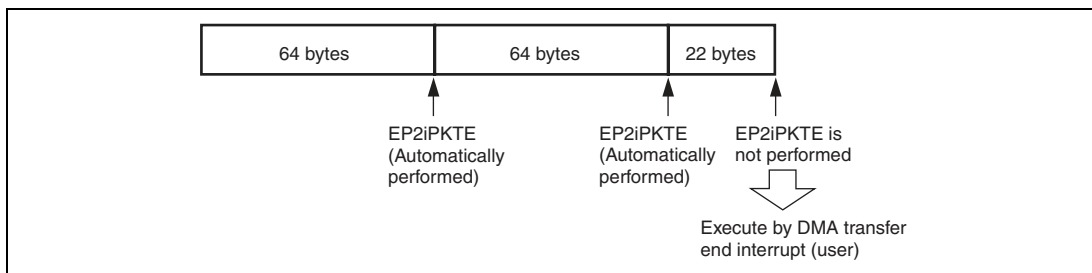


Figure 15.25 EP2iPKTE Operation in UTRG0

(4) EP2o and EP4o DMA Transfer

The EP2oT1 and EP4oT1 bits of UDMAR enable DMA transfer. The EP2oT0 and EP4oT0 bits of the UDMAR specify the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal to be used by the DMA transfer. When the EP2oT1 or EP4oT1 is set to 1, the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven low if at least one of EP2o and EP4o data FIFOs are full (ready state); the $\overline{\text{DREQ}}$ signal is driven high if both EP2o and EP4o data FIFOs are empty when all receive data items are read.

(a) EP2oRDFN and EP4oRDFN Bits of UTRG

When DMA transfer is performed on EP2o and EP4o receive data, do not write 1 to EP2oRDFN or EP4oRDFN after one data FIFO (64 bytes) has been read. In data transfer other than DMA transfer, the next data cannot be read after one data FIFO (64 bytes) has been read unless EP2oRDFN and EP4oRDFN are set to 1. While in DMA transfer, the USB module automatically performs the same processing as writing 1 to EP2oRDFN and EP4oRDFN if the currently selected FIFO becomes empty. Accordingly, in DMA transfer, the user need not write EP2oRDFN and EP4oRDFN to 1. If the user writes EP2oRDFN and EP4oRDFN to 1 in DMA transfer, excess transfer occurs and correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

Figure 15.26 shows an example of EP2o receiving 150 bytes of data from the host. In this case, internal processing the same as writing 1 to EP2oRDFN is automatically performed three times.

This kind of internal processing is performed when the currently selected data FIFO becomes empty. Accordingly, this processing is automatically performed both when 64-byte data is sent and when data less than 64 bytes is sent.

(b) EP2o DMA Transfer Procedure

The DMAC transfer unit should be one packet. Therefore, after the EP2oREADY flag is set, check the size of the data received from the host and make DMAC settings to match the number of transfers required.

1. Set bits EP2oT1 and EP2oT0 in UDMAR.
2. Wait for EP2oREADY flag to be set.
3. DMAC settings.

Read value of UESZ2o and specify number of transfers to match size of received data (64 bytes or less).

4. Start DMAC.
5. DMA transfer (transfer of 64 bytes or less).
6. Wait for end of DMA transfer.
7. Repeat steps 2 to 6 above.

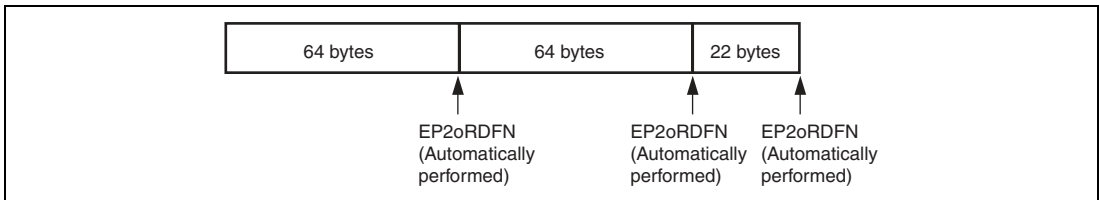


Figure 15.26 EP2oRDFN Operation in UTRG0

15.6.2 DMA Transfer by Auto-Request

(1) Overview

Burst mode transfer or cycle steal transfer can be selected for the on-chip DMAC auto-request transfer. Endpoints that can be transferred by the on-chip DMAC are all registers (UEDR0s, UEDR0i, UEDR0o, UEDR1i, UEDR2i, UEDR2o, UEDR3i, UEDR3o, UEDR4i, UEDR4o, and UEDR5i). Confirm flags and interrupts corresponding to each data register before activating the DMA. As UDMAR is not used in auto-request mode, set UDMAR to H'00.

(2) On-Chip DMAC Settings

The on-chip DMAC must be specified as follows: Auto-request, byte size, full-address mode transfer, and number of transfers equal to or less than the maximum packet size of the data register. After completing the DMAC transfers of specified time, the DMAC automatically stops.

(3) EP_ni DMA Transfer (n = 0 to 5)

(a) EP_niPKTE Bits of UTRG (n = 0 to 5)

Note that 1 is not automatically written to EP_niPKTE in case of auto-request transfer. Always write 1 to EP_niPKTE by the CPU. The following example shows when 150-byte data is transmitted from EP₂i to the host. In this case, 1 should be written to EP₂iPKTE three times as shown in figure 15.27.

(b) EP₂i DMA Transfer Procedure

The DMAC transfer unit should be one packet. Therefore, set the number of transfers so that it is equal to or less than the maximum packet size of each endpoint.

1. Confirm that UIFR1/EP₂iEMPTY flag is 1.
2. DMAC settings for EP₂i data transfer (such as auto-request and address setting).
3. Set the number of transfers for 64 bytes (the maximum packet size or less) in the DMAC.
4. Activate the DMAC (write 1 to DTE after reading DTE as 0).
5. DMA transfer.
6. Write 1 to the UTRG0/EP₂iPKTE bit after the DMA transfer is completed.
7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 above.
8. Confirm that UIFR1/EP₂iEMPTY flag is 1.
9. Set the number of transfer for 22 bytes in the DMAC.
10. Activate the DMAC (write 1 to DTE after reading DTE as 0).
11. DMA transfer.
12. Write 1 to the UTRG0/EP₂iPKTE bit after the DMA transfer is completed.

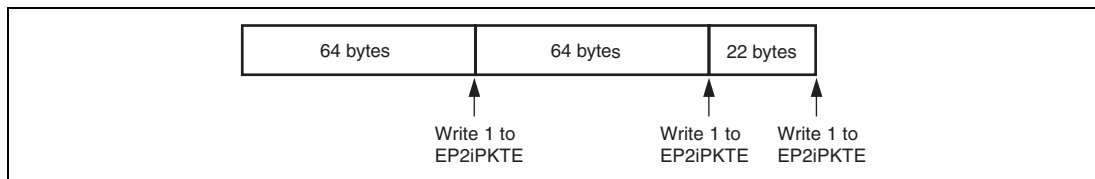


Figure 15.27 EP2iPKTE Operation in UTRG0 (Auto-Request)

(4) EPno DMA Transfer (n = 0, 2, 4)

(a) EPnoRDFN Bits of UTRG (n = 0, 2, 4)

Note that 1 is not automatically written to EPnoRDFN in case of auto-request transfer. Always write 1 to EPnoRDFN by the CPU. The following example shows when EP2o receives 150-byte data from the host. In this case, 1 should be written to EP2oRDFN three times as shown in figure 15.28.

(b) EP2o DMA Transfer Procedure

The DMAC transfer unit should be one packet. Therefore, set the number of transfers so that it is equal to or less than the maximum packet size of each endpoint.

1. Wait for the UIFR1/EP2oREADY flag to be set.
2. DMAC settings for EP2o data transfer (such as auto-request and address setting). Read value of UESZ2o and specify number of transfers to match size of received data (64 bytes or less).
3. Activate the DMAC (write 1 to DTE after reading DTE as 0).
4. DMA transfer (transfer of 64 bytes or less).
5. Write 1 to the UTRG0/EP2oRDFN bit after the DMA transfer is completed.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 above.

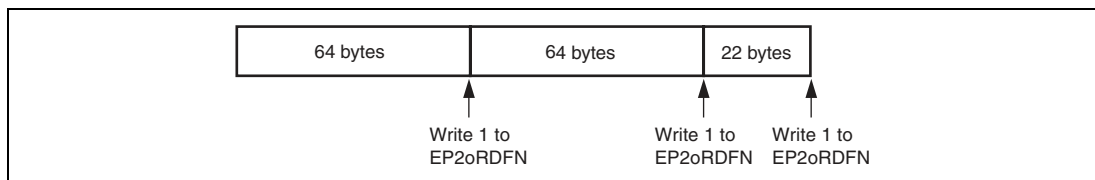


Figure 15.28 EP2oRDFN Operation in UTRG0 (Auto-Request)

15.7 Endpoint Configuration Example

Figure 15.29 shows an example of endpoint configuration. EPINFO data for the endpoint configuration shown in figure 15.29 is shown in table 15.9. In this example, two endpoints are not used. However, note that to load all EPINFO data from UEP1R00_0 to UEP1R22_4, dummy data must be written to the unused endpoints. An example of dummy data is also shown in table 15.9.

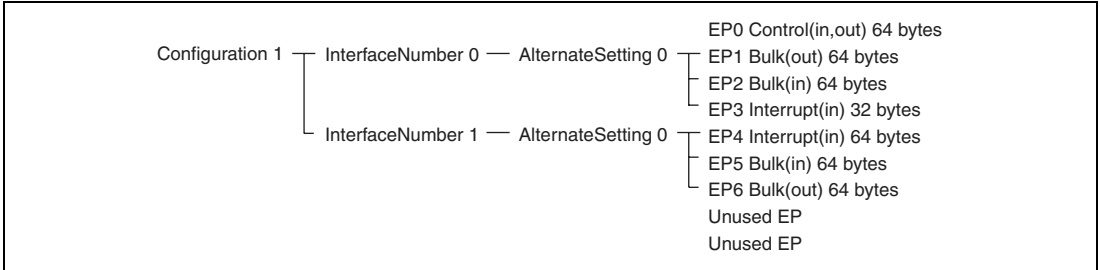


Figure 15.29 Endpoint Configuration Example

If endpoints are configured as shown in figure 15.27, some register names change as shown in table 15.7. In addition, some register bit names also change as shown in table 15.8. In the example shown in figure 15.27, register or bit names are modified for those determined based on the Bluetooth standard as follows: EP1_i→EP3, EP2_i→EP2, EP2_o→EP1, EP4_i→EP5, EP4_o→EP6, and EP5_i→EP4.

Table 15.7 Register Name Modification List

| Register Name Based on Bluetooth Standard | Modified Register Name | Abbreviation | R/W | Initial Value | Address | Access Width |
|---|---|--------------|-----|---------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| UEDR1i | USB endpoint data register 3 (For Interrupt_in data transfer) | UEDR3 | W | H'00 | H'C0009C to 8 H'C0009F | 8 |
| UEDR2i | USB endpoint data register 2 (For Bulk_in data transfer) | UEDR2 | W | H'00 | H'C000A0 to 8 H'C000A3 | 8 |
| UEDR2o | USB endpoint data register 1 (For Bulk_out data transfer) | UEDR1 | R | Undefined | H'C000A4 to 8 H'C000A7 | 8 |
| UEDR3i | Reserved register (For Isochronous_in data transfer)* | (UEDRn)* | W | H'00 | H'C000A8 to 8 H'C000AB | 8 |
| UEDR3o | Reserved register (For Isochronous_out data transfer)* | (UEDRn)* | R | Undefined | H'C000AC to 8 H'C000AF | 8 |
| UEDR4i | USB endpoint data register 5 (For Bulk_in data transfer) | UEDR5 | W | H'00 | H'C000B0 to 8 H'C000B3 | 8 |
| UEDR4o | USB endpoint data register 6 (For Bulk_out data transfer) | UEDR6 | R | Undefined | H'C000B4 to 8 H'C000B7 | 8 |
| UEDR5i | USB endpoint data register 4 (For Interrupt_in data transfer) | UEDR4 | W | H'00 | H'C000B8 to 8 H'C000BB | 8 |
| USEZ2o | USB endpoint receive data size register 1 (For Bulk_out data transfer) | UESZ1 | R | Undefined | H'C000BD | 8 |
| USEZ3o | Reserved register (For Isochronous_out data transfer)* | (UESZn)* | R | Undefined | H'C000BE | 8 |
| USEZ4o | USB endpoint receive data size register 6 (For Bulk_out data transfer) | UESZ6 | R | Undefined | H'C000BF | 8 |

Note: * Registers related to unused endpoints are handled as reserved registers.

Table 15.8 Bit Name Modification List

| Abbreviation | R/W | Initial Value | Address | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|--------------|-----|----------------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------------------------------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| UDMAR | R/W | H'00 | H'C00082 | EP6T1 | EP6T0 | EP5T1 | EP5T0 | EP1T1 | EP1T0 | EP2T1 | EP2T0 |
| UTRG0 | W | H'00 | H'C00084 | — | — | EP1RDFN | EP2PKTE | EP3PKTE | EP0oRDFN | EP0iPKTE | EP0sRDFN |
| UTRG1 | W | H'00 | H'C00085 | — | — | — | — | — | EP4PKTE | EP6RDFN | EP5PKTE |
| UFCLR0 | W | H'00 | H'C00086 | (EPnCLR) | (EPnCLR) | EP1CLR | EP2CLR | EP3CLR | EP0oCLR | EP0iCLR | — |
| UFCLR1 | W | H'00 | H'C00087 | — | — | — | — | — | EP4CLR | EP6CLR | EP5CLR |
| UESTL0 | R/W | H'00 | H'C00088 | (EPnSTL) | (EPnSTL) | EP1STL | EP2STL | EP3STL | — | — | EP0STL |
| UESTL1 | R/W | H'00 | H'C00089 | SCME | — | — | — | — | EP4STL | EP6STL | EP5STL |
| UIFR0 | R/W | H'00 | H'C000C0 | BRST | — | EP3TR | EP3TS | EP0oTS | EP0iTR | EP0iTS | SetupTS |
| UIFR1 | R/W | H'01* ¹ or H'09 | H'C000C1 | (EPnTF) | (EPnTS) | (EPnTF) | (EPnTR) | * ² EP2ALL EMPTY | EP1 READY | EP2TR | EP2 EMPTY |
| UIFR2 | R/W | H'01* ¹ or H'09 | H'C000C2 | — | — | EP4TR | EP4TS | * ² EP5ALL EMPTY | EP6 READY | EP5TR | EP5 EMPTY |
| UIER0 | R/W | H'00 | H'C000C4 | BRSTE | — | EP3TRE | EP3TSE | EP0oTSE | EP0iTRE | EP0iTSE | SetupTSE |
| UIER1 | R/W | H'00 | H'C000C5 | (EPnTFE) | (EPnTSE) | (EPnTFE) | (EPnTRE) | * ² EP2ALL EMPTY | EP1 READYE | EP2TRE | EP2 EMPTYE |
| UIER2 | R/W | H'00 | H'C000C6 | — | — | EP4TRE | EP4TSE | * ² EP5ALL EMPTY | EP6 READYE | EP5TRE | EP5 EMPTYE |
| UISR0 | R/W | H'00 | H'C000C8 | BRSTS | — | EP3TRS | EP3TSS | EP0oTSS | EP0iTRS | EP0iTSS | SetupTSS |
| UISR1 | R/W | H'00 | H'C000C9 | (EPnTFS) | (EPnTSS) | (EPnTFS) | (EPnTRS) | * ² EP2ALL EMPTY | EP1 READYS | EP2TRS | EP2 EMPTY |
| UISR2 | R/W | H'00 | H'C000CA | — | — | EP4TRS | EP4TSS | * ² EP5ALL EMPTY | EP6 READYS | EP5TRS | EP5 EMPTY |
| UDSR | R | H'00 | H'C000CC | — | — | EP4DE | EP5DE | — | EP2DE | EP3DE | EP0IDE |

Notes: 1. H'01 in H8S/2215. H'09 in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

2. Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C. “—” in H8S/2215.

Table 15.9 shows the EPINFO data for the endpoint configuration shown in figure 15.27.

This USB module is optimized by the hardware specific to the transfer type. Accordingly, endpoints cannot be configured completely freely. Endpoint configuration can be modified within the restriction as shown in table 15.9 (data indicated within parentheses []), data other than that within parentheses [] must be specified the value shown in table 15.9. For unused endpoints, dummy data (0) must be written.

Table 15.9 EPINFO Data Settings

| EPINFO Data Settings Based on Bluetooth Standard ³ | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------|----------------------|---|---|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Register No. | Register Name | Address | Corresponding Transfer Mode ^{*1} | UEPIRn_0 to UEPIRn_4 Settings ^{*2} | UEPI Rn_0 | UEPI Rn_1 | UEPI Rn_2 | UEPI Rn_3 | UEPI Rn_4 |
| 1 | UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR00_4 | H'C00000 to H'C00004 | Specific to Control transfer | B'0000_00_00_000_00_0_0001000000_0000000000000000 | H'00 | H'00 | H'40 | H'00 | H'00 |
| 2 | UEPIR01_0 to UEPIR01_4 | H'C00005 to H'C00009 | Specific to Interrupt in transfer | B'[0011]_01_[00]_[000]_11_1_[0000100000]_0000000000000001 ^{*3} | H'34 | H'1C | H'20 | H'00 | H'01 |
| 3 | UEPIR02_0 to UEPIR02_4 | H'C0000A to H'C0000E | Specific to Bulk in transfer | B'[0010]_01_[00]_[000]_10_1_[0001000000]_0000000000000010 ^{*4} | H'24 | H'14 | H'40 | H'00 | H'02 |
| 4 | UEPIR03_0 to UEPIR03_4 | H'C0000F to H'C00013 | Specific to Bulk out transfer | B'[0001]_01_[00]_[000]_10_0_[0001000000]_0000000000000011 ^{*4} | H'14 | H'10 | H'40 | H'00 | H'03 |
| 5 | UEPIR04_0 to UEPIR04_4 | H'C00014 to H'C00018 | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_1_[0000000000]_0000000000000100 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'04 |
| 6 | UEPIR05_0 to UEPIR05_4 | H'C00019 to H'C0001D | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_0_[0000000000]_0000000000000101 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'05 |
| 7 | UEPIR06_0 to UEPIR06_4 | H'C0001E to H'C00022 | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_1_[0000000000]_0000000000000110 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'06 |
| 8 | UEPIR07_0 to UEPIR07_4 | H'C00023 to H'C00027 | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_0_[0000000000]_0000000000000111 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'07 |
| 9 | UEPIR08_0 to UEPIR08_4 | H'C00028 to H'C0002C | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_1_[0000000000]_000000000001000 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'08 |
| 10 | UEPIR09_0 to UEPIR09_4 | H'C0002D to H'C00031 | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_0_[0000000000]_0000000000001001 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'09 |
| 11 | UEPIR10_0 to UEPIR10_4 | H'C00032 to H'C00036 | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_1_[0000000000]_0000000000001010 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'0A |
| 12 | UEPIR11_0 to UEPIR11_4 | H'C00037 to H'C0003B | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_0_[0000000000]_0000000000001011 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'0B |
| 13 | UEPIR12_0 to UEPIR12_4 | H'C0003C to H'C00040 | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_1_[0000000000]_0000000000001100 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'0C |
| 14 | UEPIR13_0 to UEPIR13_4 | H'C00041 to H'C00045 | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_0_[0000000000]_0000000000001101 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'0D |
| 15 | UEPIR14_0 to UEPIR14_4 | H'C00046 to H'C0004A | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_1_[0000000000]_0000000000001110 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'0E |
| 16 | UEPIR15_0 to UEPIR15_4 | H'C0004B to H'C0004F | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_0_[0000000000]_0000000000001111 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'0F |
| 17 | UEPIR16_0 to UEPIR16_4 | H'C00050 to H'C00054 | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_1_[0000000000]_000000000010000 ^{*5*6} | H'04 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'10 |

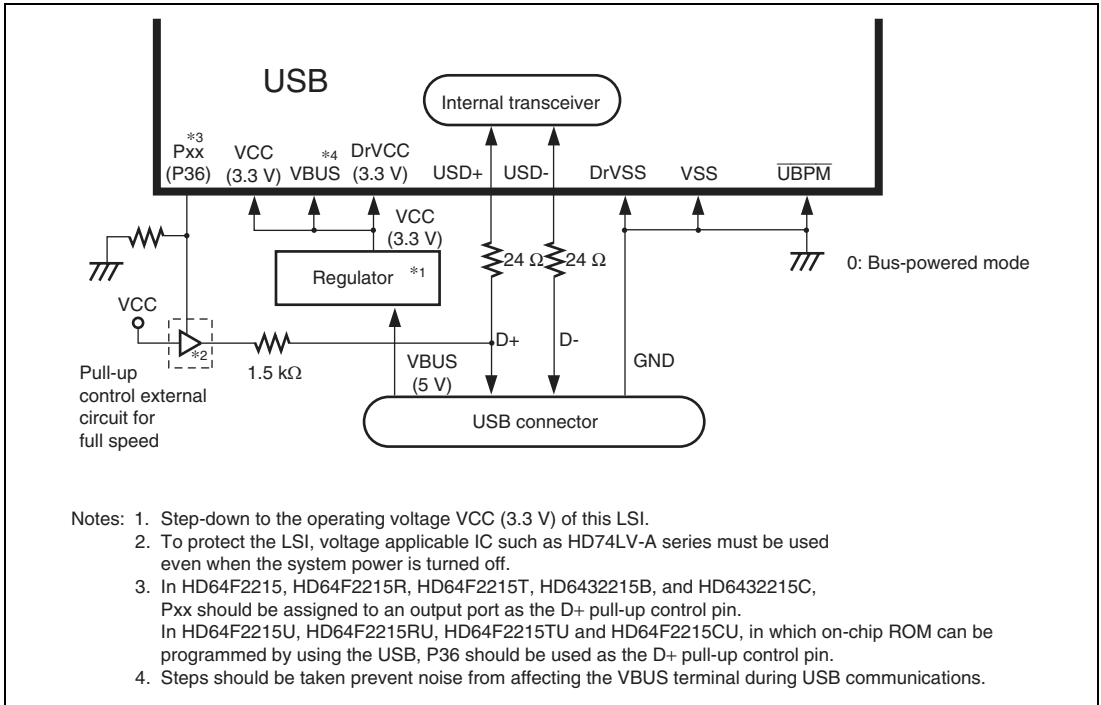
EPINFO Data Settings Based on Bluetooth Standard

| Register No. | Name | Address | Corresponding Transfer Mode ^{*1} | UEPIRn_0 to UEPIRn_4 Settings ^{*2} | | UEPI Rn_0 | UEPI Rn_1 | UEPI Rn_2 | UEPI Rn_3 | UEPI Rn_4 |
|--------------|---------------------------|------------------------|---|---|--|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| 18 | UEPIR17_0 to UEPIR17_4 | H'C00055 to H'C0059 | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_0_ [0000000000]_0000000000010001 ^{*5*6} | | H'04 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'11 |
| 19 | UEPIR18_0 to UEPIR18_4 | H'C0005A to H'C005E | Specific to Isoch in transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_1_ [0000000000]_0000000000010010 ^{*5*6} | | H'04 | H'0C | H'00 | H'00 | H'12 |
| 20 | UEPIR19_0 to UEPIR19_4 | H'C0005F to H'C0063 | Specific to Isoch out transfer | B'[0000]_01_[00]_[000]_01_0_ [0000000000]_0000000000010011 ^{*5*6} | | H'04 | H'08 | H'00 | H'00 | H'13 |
| 21 | UEPIR20_0 to UEPIR20_4 | H'C00064 to H'C0068 | Specific to Bulk in transfer | B'[0101]_01_[01]_[000]_10_1_ [0001000000]_0000000000010100 ^{*4} | | H'55 | H'14 | H'40 | H'00 | H'14 |
| 22 | UEPIR21_0 to UEPIR21_4 | H'C00069 to H'C006D | Specific to Bulk out transfer | B'[0110]_01_[01]_[000]_10_0_ [0001000000]_0000000000010101 ^{*4} | | H'65 | H'10 | H'40 | H'00 | H'15 |
| 23 | UEPIR22_0 to UEPIR22_4 | H'C0006E to H'C0072 | Specific to Interrupt in transfer | B'[0100]_01_[01]_[000]_11_1_ [0001000000]_0000000000010110 ^{*3} | | H'45 | H'1C | H'40 | H'00 | H'16 |

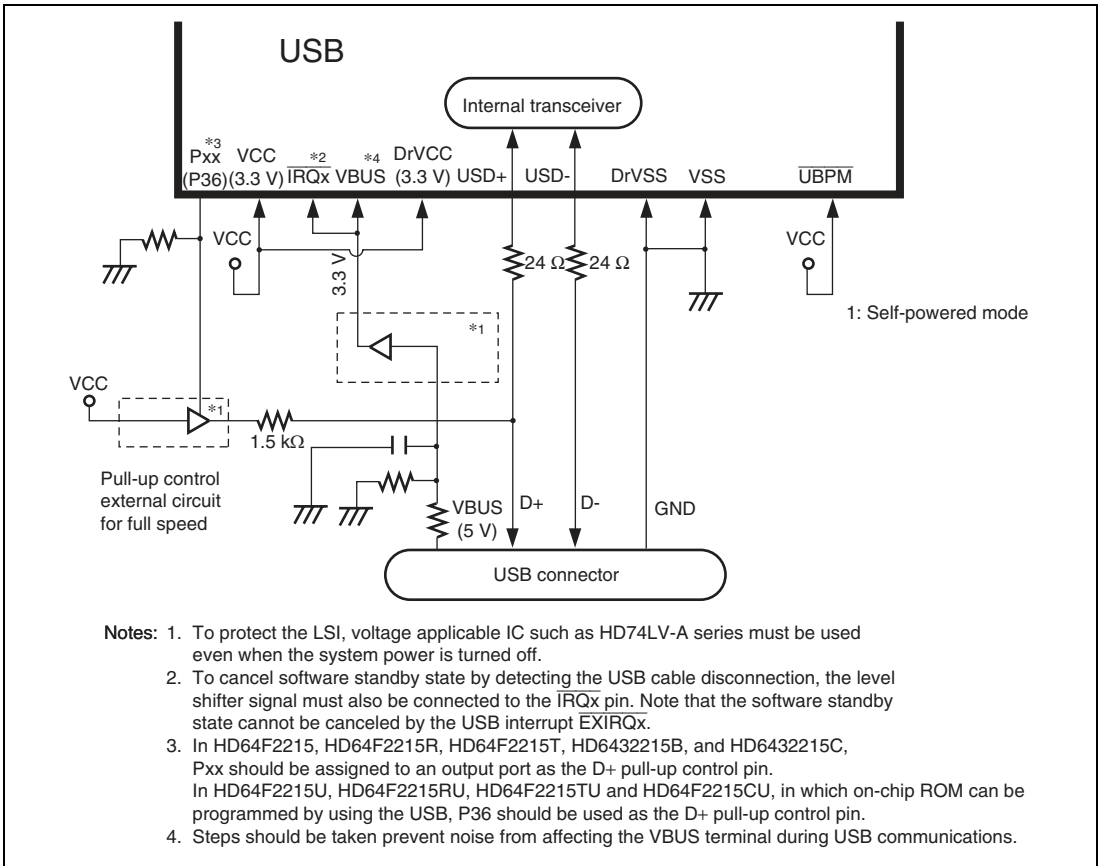
- Notes:
1. Each endpoint is optimized by the hardware specific for the transfer mode. The transfer mode shown in table 15.8 must be specified. (D28 and D27 for all EPINFO data items must e specified as shown in table 15.8.)
 2. Data indicated within parentheses [] can be modified. Data other than that within parentheses [] must be specified as shown in table 15.8.
 3. Maximum packet size of Interrupt transfer must be from 0 to 64.
 4. Maximum packet size of Bulk transfer must be 64 when used or 0 when unused.
 5. Maximum packet size of Isochronous transfer must be from 0 to 128. Endpoint number of Isochronous_in can differ from that of Isochronous_out. However, note that endpoint numbers of all Isochronous_in must be the same. Endpoint numbers of all Isochronous_out must also be the same.
 6. Maximum packet size of the unused endpoint must be 0.

15.8 USB External Circuit Example

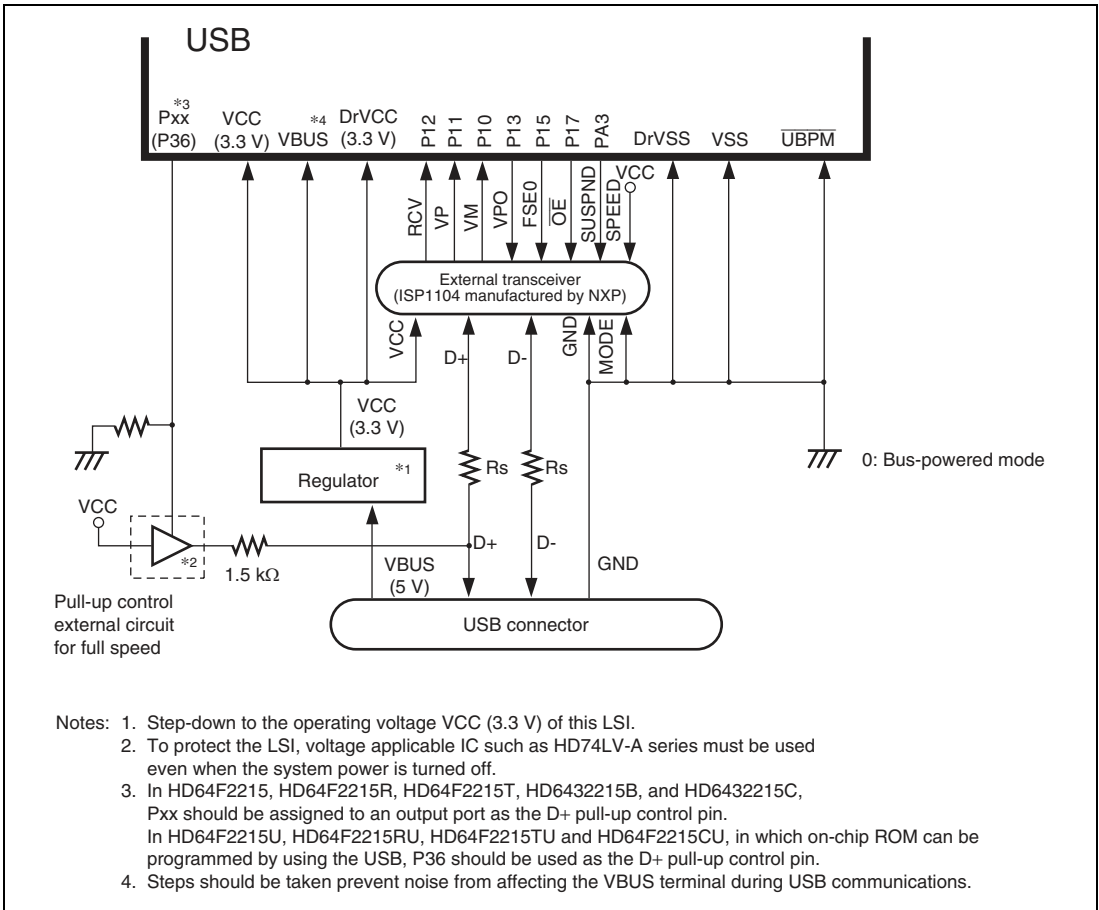
Figures 15.30 and 15.31 show the USB external circuit examples when the on-chip transceiver is used. Figures 15.32 and 15.33 show the USB external circuit examples when an external transceiver is used.



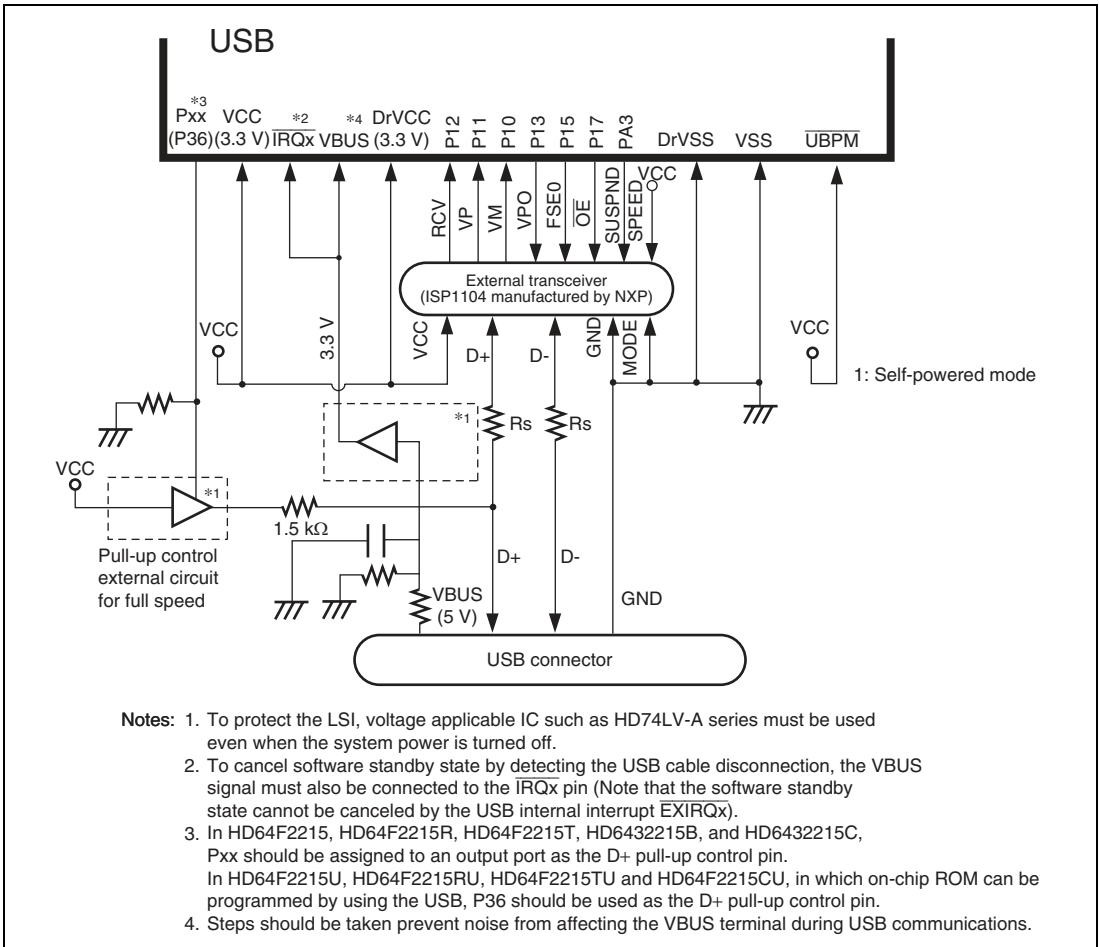
**Figure 15.30 USB External Circuit in Bus-Powered Mode
(When On-Chip Transceiver Is Used)**



**Figure 15.31 USB External Circuit in Self-Powered Mode
(When On-Chip Transceiver Is Used)**



**Figure 15.32 USB External Circuit in Bus-Powered Mode
(When External Transceiver Is Used)**



**Figure 15.33 USB External Circuit in Self-Powered Mode
(When External Transceiver Is Used)**

15.9 Usage Notes

15.9.1 Operating Frequency

- In H8S/2215
When the on-chip PLL circuit is used, the system clock of this LSI must be 16 MHz. This 16-MHz system clock, used as base clock, is tripled in the on-chip PLL circuit to generate the 48-MHz USB operating clock. When the USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator or 48-MHz external clock is used, the system clock of the LSI must be 13-MHz to 16-MHz. Medium-speed mode is not supported; use full-speed mode.
- In H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C
When the on-chip PLL circuit is used, the system clock of this LSI must be 16 MHz or 24 MHz. If the system clock frequency is 16 MHz, it is tripled by the on-chip PLL circuit, and if the system clock frequency is 25 MHz, it is doubled, to generate the 48-MHz USB operating clock. When the USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator or 48-MHz external clock is used, the system clock of the LSI must be 13 MHz to 24 MHz*. Medium-speed mode is not supported; use full-speed mode.

Note: * On the H8S/2215T, use a 16-MHz or 24-MHz system clock for the MCU, even if a 48-MHz oscillator or 48-MHz external clock is used as the USB operation clock. For the H8S/2215C, use a MCU system clock in the range of 16 MHz to 24 MHz.

15.9.2 Bus Interface

This module's interface is based on the bus specifications of external area 6. Before accessing the USB, area 6 must be specified as having an 8-bit bus width and 3-state access using the bus controller register. In mode 7 (single-chip mode), the USB module cannot be accessed. In mode 6 (internal ROM enabled mode), $\overline{CS6}$ and A7 to A0 pins are used as inputs at initialization and USB cannot be accessed. Before access to this module, set P72DDR to 1 and PC7DDR to PC0DDR to H'FF, respectively, to use $\overline{CS6}$ and A7 to A0 pins as outputs. In mode 4 or 5 (on-chip ROM disabled mode), set P72DDR to 1 to use the $\overline{CS6}$ pin as an output.

15.9.3 Setup Data Reception

The following must be noted for the EP0s FIFO used to receive 8-byte setup data. The USB is designed to always receive setup commands. Accordingly, write from the UDC has higher priority than read from the LSI. If the reception of the next setup command starts while the is LSI reading data after completing reception, this data read from the LSI is forcibly cancelled and the next setup command write starts. After the next setup command write, data read from the LSI is thus undefined. Read operation is forcibly disabled because data cannot be guaranteed if DP-RAM used as FIFO accesses the same address for write and read.

15.9.4 FIFO Clear

If the USB cable is disconnected during communication, old data may be contained in the FIFO. Accordingly, FIFO must be cleared immediately after USB cable connection. In addition, after bus reset, all FIFO must also be cleared. Note, however, that FIFOs that are currently used for data transfer to or from the host must not be cleared.

15.9.5 $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ Interrupt

A suspend/resume interrupt requested by $\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ must be specified as falling-edge sensitive.

15.9.6 Data Register Overread or Overwrite

When the CPU reads or writes to data registers, the following must be noted:

- Transmit data registers (UEDR0i, UEDR1i, UEDR2i, UEDR3i, UEDR4i, UEDR5i)
Data to be written to the transmit data registers must be within the maximum packet size. For the transmit data registers of EP2i, EP3i, and EP4i having a dual-FIFO configuration, data to be written at any time must be within the maximum packet size. In this case, after a data write, the FIFO is switched to the other FIFO, enabling a further data write when the PKTE bit of UTRG is set to 1 (in EP3i, the same operation is automatically performed when the SOF packet is received). Accordingly, data of size corresponding to two FIFO must not be written to the transmit data registers of EP2i, EP3i, and EP4i at a time.
- Receive data registers (UEDR0o, UEDR2o, UEDR3o, UEDR4o)
Receive data registers must not read a data size that is greater than the effective size of the read data item. In other words, receive data registers must not read data with data size larger than that specified by the receive data size register. For the receive data registers of EP2o, EP3o, and EP4o having a dual-FIFO configuration, data to be read at any time must be within the maximum packet size. In this case, after reading the currently selected FIFO, set the RDFN bit of UTRG to 1 (in EP3o, the same operation is automatically performed when the SOF packet is received). This switches the FIFO to the other FIFO and updates the receive data size, enabling the next data read. In addition, if there is no receive data in a FIFO, data must not be read. Otherwise, the pointer that controls the internal module FIFO is updated and correct operation cannot be guaranteed.

15.9.7 EP3o Isochronous Transfer

- Reception of EP3o data larger than the maximum packet size

The EP3o data FIFO cannot receive data with size larger than the maximum packet size; the excessive data is lost. In this case, the receive size register 3o (UESZ3o) can count up to the maximum packet size and the EP3o abnormal transfer flag (EP3oTF) is set to 1.

Figure 15.34 shows the 10-byte data reception when the maximum packet size is specified as 9 bytes.

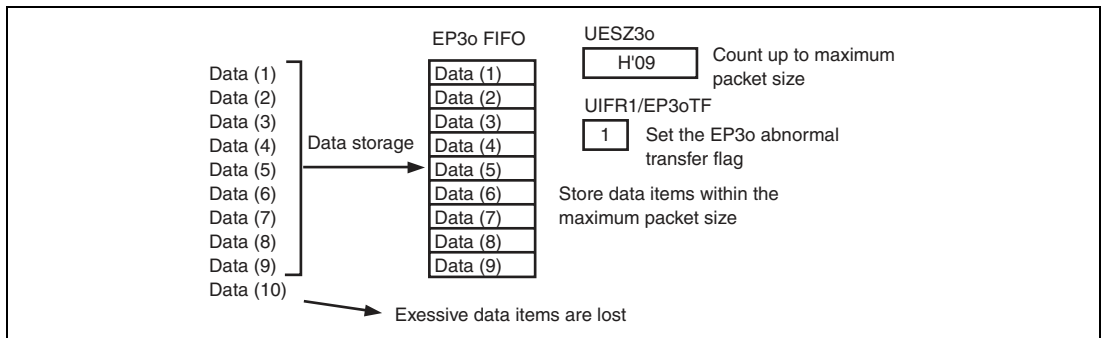


Figure 15.34 10-Byte Data Reception

- EP3o receive data and status bit reading

As shown in figure 15.35, FIFO are switched on SOF packet reception. FIFOs thus store the latest data. Accordingly, receive data sent from the host in frame [N] can only be read in frame [N+1]. In addition, the EP3oTF and EP3oTS status bits of UIFR1 are automatically switched on with each SOF packet reception; the EP3oTF and EP3oTS status in frame [N] can only be read in frame [N + 1].

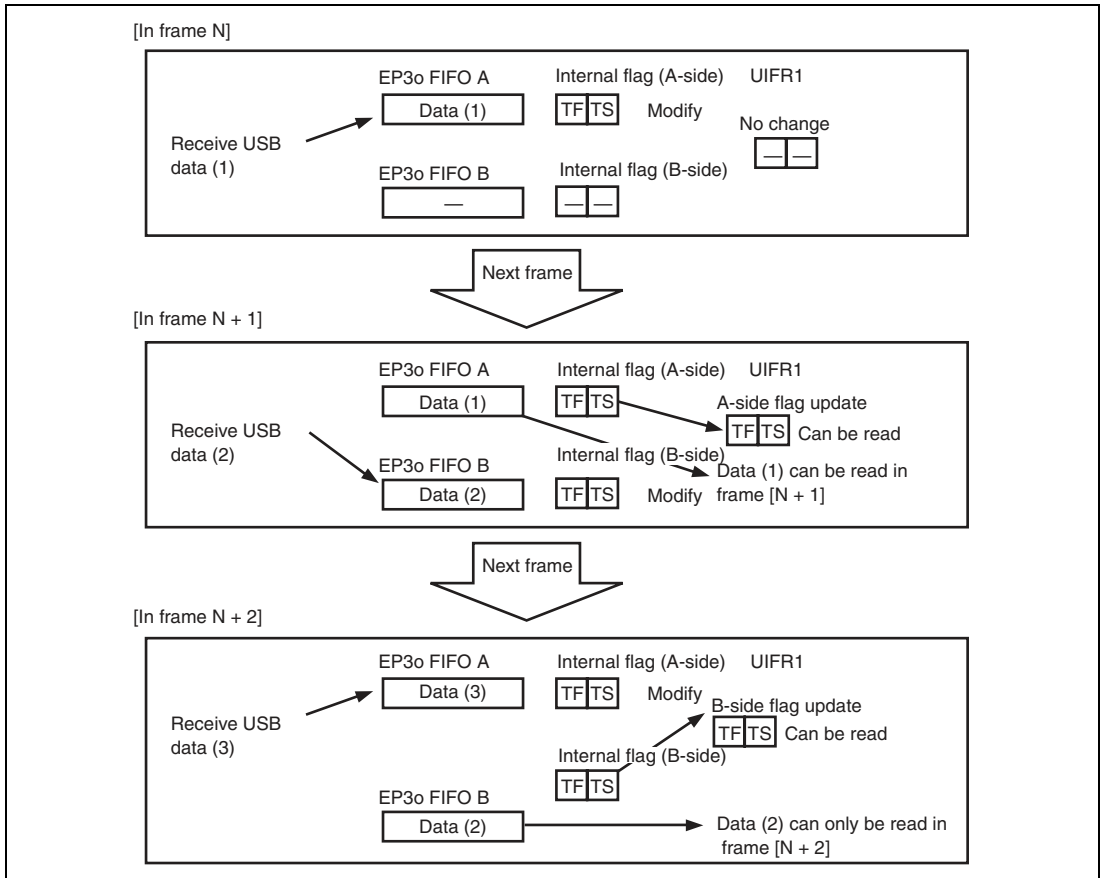


Figure 15.35 EP3o Data Reception

15.9.8 Reset

- A manual reset should not be performed during USB communication as the LSI will stop with the USD+, USD- pin state maintained. This USB module uses synchronous reset for some registers. The reset state of these registers must be cancelled after the clock oscillation stabilization time has passed. At initialization, reset must be cancelled using the following procedure:
 1. Select the USB operating clock: Specify the UCKS3 to UCKS0 bits in UCTLR.
 2. Cancel the USB module stop mode: Clear the MSTPB0 bit in MSTPCRB to 0.
 3. Wait for the USB clock stabilization time: Wait until the CK48READY bit in UIFR3 is set to 1.
 4. Cancel the USB interface reset state: Clear the UIFRST bit in UCTLR to 0.
 5. Cancel the UDC core reset state: Clear the UDCRST bit in UCTLR to 0.

For detail, see the flowcharts in section 15.5.1, Initialization, and section 15.5.2, USB Cable Connection/Disconnection.

- The USB registers are not initialized when the watchdog timer (WDT) triggers a power-on reset. Therefore, the USB may not operate properly after a power-on reset is triggered by the WDT due to CPU runaway or a similar cause. (If a power-on reset is triggered by input of a power-on reset signal from the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin, the USB registers are initialized and there is no problem.) Consequently, an initialization routine should be used to write the initial values listed below to the following three registers, thereby ensuring that all the USB registers are properly initialized, immediately following a reset.

$$\text{UCTLR} = \text{H}'03, \text{UIER3} = \text{H}'80, \text{UIFR3} = \text{H}'00$$

15.9.9 EP0 Interrupt Assignment

EP0 interrupt sources assigned to bits 3 to 0 in UIFR0 must be assigned to the same interrupt sign ($\overline{\text{EXIRQx}}$) by setting UISR0. There are no other restrictions on EP0 interrupt sources.

15.9.10 Level Shifter for VBUS and $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ Pins

The VBUS and $\overline{\text{IRQx}}$ pins of this USB module must be connected to the USB connector's VBUS pin via a level shifter. This is because the USB module has a circuit that operates by detecting USB cable connection or disconnection.

Even if the power of the device incorporating this USB module is turned off, 5-V power is applied to the USB connector's VBUS pin while the USB cable is connected to the device set. To protect the LSI from destruction, use a level shifter such as the HD74LV-A series, which allows voltage application to the pin even when the power is off.

15.9.11 Read and Write to USB Endpoint Data Register

To write data to an USB endpoint data register (UEDR_{ni}) on the transmit side using a CPU word or longword transfer instruction, the correct size of data must be written to the USB endpoint data register. Otherwise, an error may occur.

For example, when 7-byte data is transferred to the host, 8-byte data is sent to the host if data is written twice by the longword transfer instructions or if data is written four times by the word transfer instructions. To write 7-byte data correctly, data must be written once by a longword transfer instruction, once by a word transfer instruction, and once by a byte transfer instruction, or data must be written three times by a word transfer instruction and once by a byte transfer instruction.

To read data from the USB endpoint data register (UEDR_{no}) on the receive side, the correct size of data must be read. In this case, the data size is specified by the USB endpoint receive size data register (UESZ_{no}).

To execute DMA transfer on data in the USB endpoint data register using the on-chip DMAC, byte transfer must be used. In word transfer, odd-byte data cannot be transferred. Word transfer is thus disabled.

15.9.12 Restrictions for Software Standby Mode Transition

Before entering the software standby mode, disabled the SOF marker function and set the USB module stop state as shown in figure 15.34. The UDC core must not be reset.

To access the USB module after software standby mode, cancel the USB module stop state and wait for the USB operating clock (48 MHz) stabilization time as shown in figure 15.34.

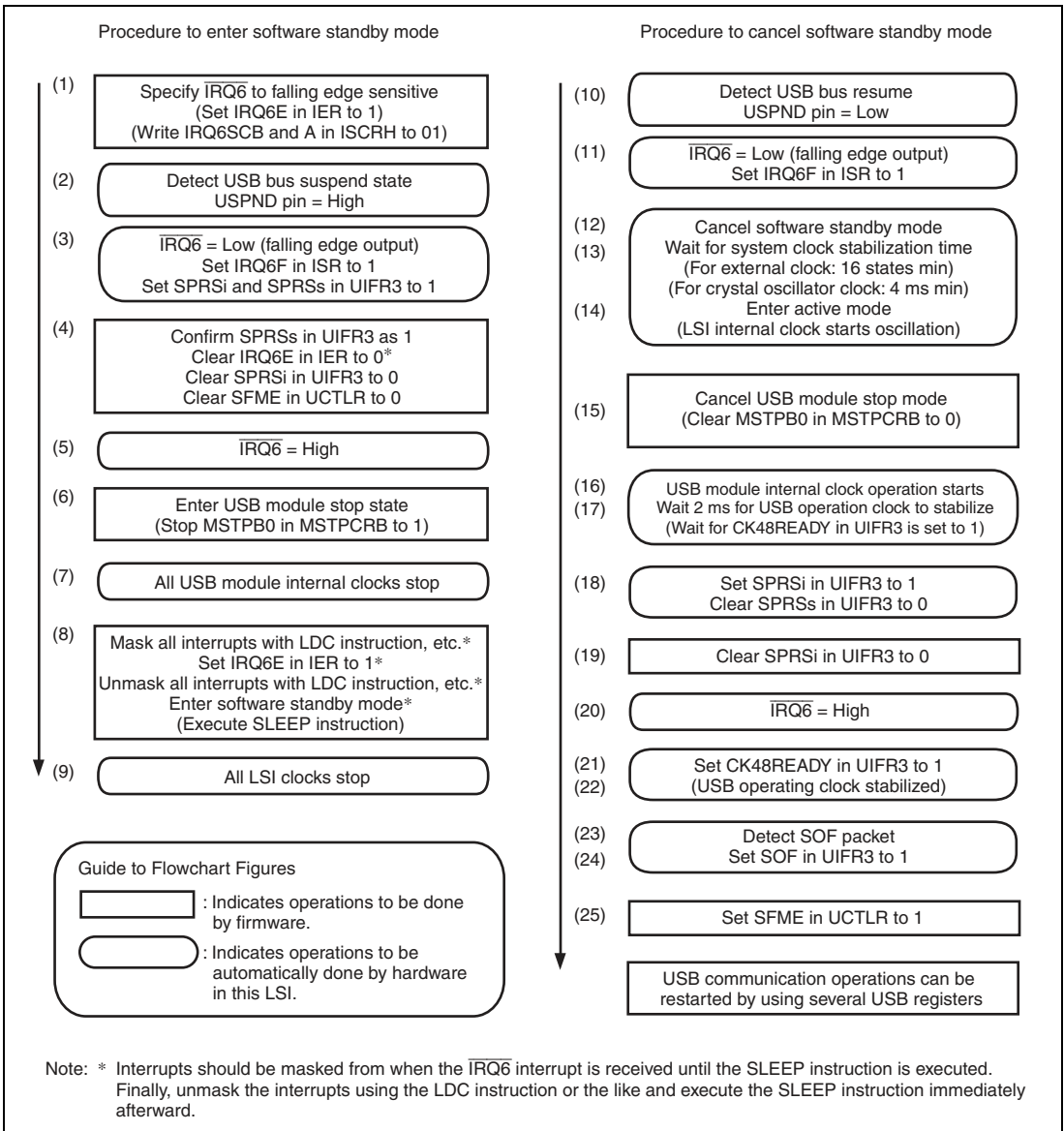


Figure 15.36 Transition to and from Software Standby Mode

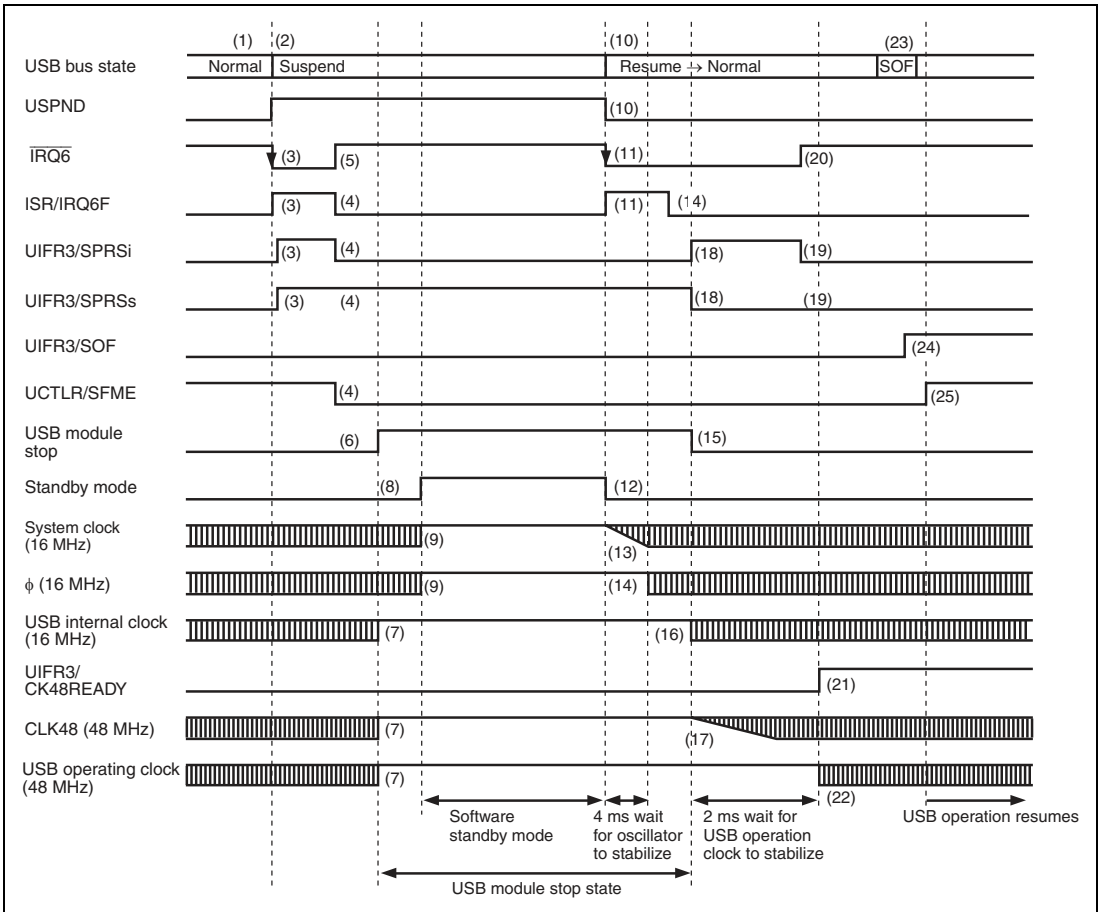


Figure 15.37 USB Software Standby Mode Transition Timing

15.9.13 USB External Circuit Example

The USB external circuit examples are used for reference only. In actual board design, carefully check the system operation. In addition, the USB external circuits examples cannot guarantee correct system operation. The user must individually take measures against external surges or ESD noise by incorporating protective diodes or other components if necessary.

15.9.14 Pin Processing when USB Not Used

Pin processing should be performed as follows.

$DrVCC = V_{cc}$, $DrVSS = 0\text{ V}$, $USD+ = USD- = USPND = \text{open state}$, $VBUS = \overline{UBPM} = 0\text{ V}$

15.9.15 Notes on Emulator Usage

Using the I/O register window function, or the like, to display UEDR0o, UEDR2o, UEDR3o, and UEDR4o can cause the EP0oFIFO, EP2oFIFO, EP3oFIFO, and EP4oFIFO read pointers to malfunction, preventing UEDR0o to UEDR4o and UESZ0o to UESZ4o from being read correctly. Therefore, UEDR0o to UEDR4o should not be displayed.

15.9.16 Notes on TR Interrupt

Note the following when using the transfer request interrupt (TR interrupt) for IN transfer to EP0i, EP2i, EP3i, EP4i, or EP5i.

The TR interrupt flag is set if the FIFO for the target EP has no data when the IN token is sent from the USB host. However, at the timing shown in figure 15.38, multiple TR interrupts occur successively. Take appropriate measures against malfunction in such a case.

Note: This module determines whether to return NAK if the FIFO of the target EP has no data when receiving the IN token, but the TR interrupt flag is set only after a NAK handshake is sent. If the next IN token is sent before PKTE of UTRGx is written to, the TR interrupt flag is set again.

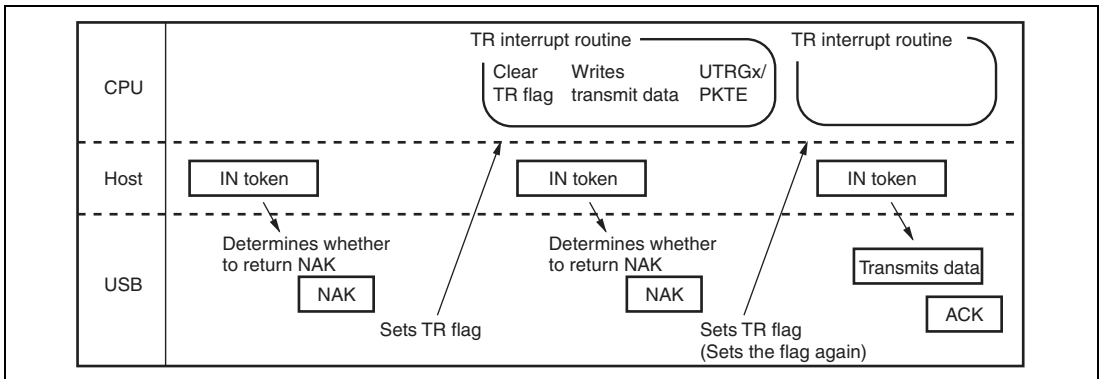


Figure 15.38 TR Interrupt Flag Set Timing

15.9.17 Notes on UIFRO

The bit-clear instruction cannot be used to clear a flag in some USB interrupt flag registers to 0. These registers have flags which are cleared to 0 by writing 0 and to which writing 1 is ignored. The concerning registers are USB interrupt flag registers 0 to 3 (UIFR0 to UIFR3) in the H8S/2215 Group.

A single bit-clear instruction actually executes reading the value of a register, modifying the read value, and writing the modified value. When clearing a flag with the bit-clear instruction, if a source which will set another flag is activated between reading and writing, the flag is unintentionally cleared to 0. Therefore, the bit-clear instruction cannot be used.

To clear these flags, write 0 to a flag which should be cleared and write 1 to other flags with the MOVE instruction. For example, to clear only bit 7, write H'7F and to clear bits 6 and 7, write H'3F.

15.9.18 Clearing the FIFOs in DMA Transfer Mode

When DMA transfers are enabled at endpoints 2 and 4, it is not possible to clear the EP2o OUTFIFO and EP4o OUTFIFO. To clear the FIFOs, first disable DMA transfers.

Section 16 A/D Converter

This LSI includes a successive approximation type 10-bit A/D converter that allows up to six analog input channels to be selected. The block diagram of the A/D converter is shown in figure 16.1.

16.1 Features

- 10-bit resolution
- Six input channels
- Conversion time: 8.1 μ s per channel (at 16-MHz operation), 10.7 μ s per channel (at 24-MHz operation)*

Note: * Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

- Two operating modes
 - Single mode: Single-channel A/D conversion
 - Scan mode: Continuous A/D conversion on 1 to 4 channels
- Four data registers
 - Conversion results are held in a 16-bit data register for each channel
- Sample and hold function
- Three methods conversion start
 - Software
 - Timer (TPU or TMR) conversion start trigger
 - External trigger signal ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$)
- Interrupt request
 - An A/D conversion end interrupt request (ADI) can be generated
- Module stop mode can be set
- Settable analog conversion voltage range

Analog conversion voltage range settable using the reference voltage pin (Vref) as the reference voltage

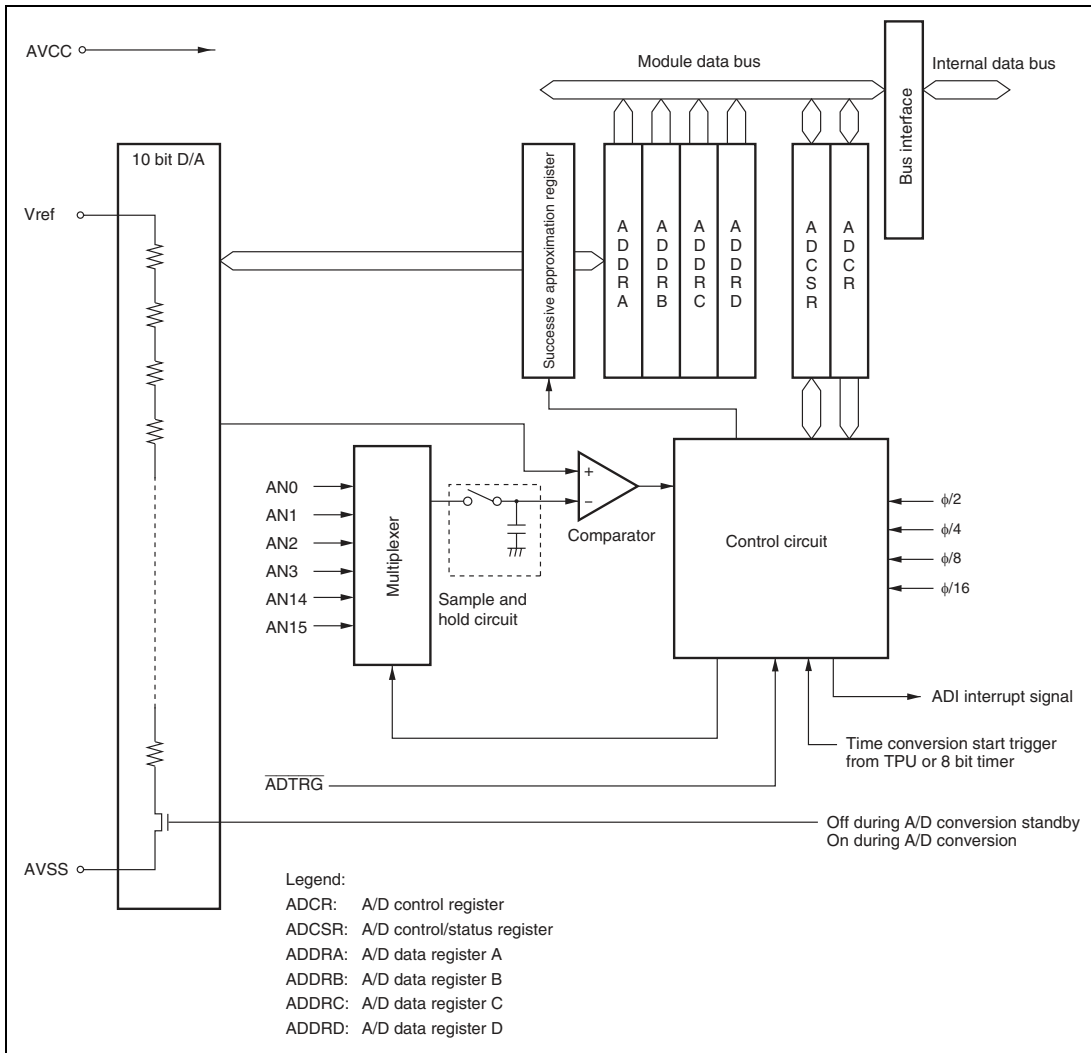


Figure 16.1 Block Diagram of A/D Converter

16.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 16.1 summarizes the input pins used by the A/D converter. The AN0 to AN3 and AN14 to AN15 pins are analog input pins. The AVCC and AVSS pins are the power supply pins for the analog block in the A/D converter. The Vref pin is the reference voltage pin for the A/D conversion.

Table 16.1 Pin Configuration

| Pin Name | Symbol | I/O | Function |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|-------|--|
| Analog power supply pin | AVCC | Input | Analog block power supply and reference voltage |
| Analog ground pin | AVSS | Input | Analog block ground and reference voltage |
| Analog reference voltage pin | Vref | Input | Reference voltage pin for the A/D |
| Analog input pin 0 | AN0* | Input | Analog input pins |
| Analog input pin 1 | AN1* | Input | |
| Analog input pin 2 | AN2 | Input | |
| Analog input pin 3 | AN3 | Input | |
| Analog input pin 14 | AN14 | Input | |
| Analog input pin 15 | AN15 | Input | |
| A/D external trigger input pin | $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ | Input | External trigger input pin for starting A/D conversion |

Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{cc} = AV_{cc}$.

16.3 Register Descriptions

The A/D converter has the following registers.

- A/D data register A (ADDRA)
- A/D data register B (ADDRB)
- A/D data register C (ADDRC)
- A/D data register D (ADDRD)
- A/D control/status register (ADCSR)
- A/D control register (ADCR)

16.3.1 A/D Data Registers A to D (ADDRA to ADDR D)

There are four 16-bit read-only ADDR registers; ADDRA to ADDR D, used to store the results of A/D conversion. The ADDR registers, which store a conversion result for each channel, are shown in table 16.2.

The converted 10-bit data is stored in bits 6 to 15. The lower 6 bits are always read as 0.

The data bus between the CPU and the A/D converter is 8 bits wide. The upper byte can be read directly from the CPU, however the lower byte should be read via a temporary register. The temporary register contents are transferred from the ADDR when the upper byte data is read. When reading the ADDR, read the upper byte before the lower byte, or read in word unit.

The initial value of ADDR is H'0000.

Table 16.2 Analog Input Channels and Corresponding ADDR Registers

| Analog Input Channel | A/D Data Register to Be Stored the Results of A/D Conversion |
|----------------------|--|
| AN0 | ADDRA |
| AN1 | ADDRB |
| AN2, AN14 | ADDRC |
| AN3, AN15 | ADDRD |

16.3.2 A/D Control/Status Register (ADCSR)

ADCSR controls A/D conversion operations.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|--------|---|
| 7 | ADF | 0 | R/(W)* | <p>A/D End Flag</p> <p>A status flag that indicates the end of A/D conversion.</p> <p>[Setting conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When A/D conversion ends When A/D conversion ends on all channels specified in scan mode <p>[Clearing conditions]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When 0 is written after reading ADF = 1 When the DMAC or DTC is activated by an ADI interrupt and ADDR is read when DISEL = 0 and the transfer counter ≠ 0 |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 6 | ADIE | 0 | R/W | A/D Interrupt Enable A/D conversion end interrupt (ADI) request enabled when 1 is set. |
| 5 | ADST | 0 | R/W | A/D Start Clearing this bit to 0 stops A/D conversion, and the A/D converter enters the unit state. Setting this bit to 1 starts A/D conversion. It can be set to 1 by software, the timer conversion start trigger, and the A/D external trigger ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$). In single mode, this bit is cleared to 0 automatically when conversion on the specified channel is complete. In scan mode, conversion continues sequentially on the specified channels until this bit is cleared to 0 by software, a reset, a transition to standby mode, or module stop mode. |
| 4 | SCAN | 0 | R/W | Scan Mode Selects single mode or scan mode as the A/D conversion operating mode. 0: Single mode 1: Scan mode |
| 3 | CH3 | 0 | R/W | Channel Select 3 to 0 |
| 2 | CH2 | 0 | R/W | Select analog input channels. |
| 1 | CH1 | 0 | R/W | When SCAN = 0 |
| 0 | CH0 | 0 | R/W | When SCAN = 1 |
| | | | | 0000: AN0 |
| | | | | 0001: AN1 |
| | | | | 0010: AN2 |
| | | | | 0011: AN3 |
| | | | | 01xx: Setting prohibited |
| | | | | 10xx: Setting prohibited |
| | | | | 110x: Setting prohibited |
| | | | | 1110: AN14 |
| | | | | 1111: AN15 |
| | | | | Legend: |
| | | | | x: Don't care |

Note: * The write value should always be 0 to clear this flag.

16.3.3 A/D Control Register (ADCR)

The ADCR enables A/D conversion started by an external trigger signal.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | TRGS1 | 0 | R/W | Timer Trigger Select 1 and 0 |
| 6 | TRGS0 | 0 | R/W | Enables the start of A/D conversion by a trigger signal. Only set bits TRGS1 and TRGS0 while conversion is stopped (ADST = 0). 00: A/D conversion start by software 01: A/D conversion start by TPU 10: A/D conversion start by TMR 11: A/D conversion start by external trigger pin (ADTRG) |
| 5, 4 | — | All 1 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 1 cannot be modified. |
| 3 | CKS1 | 0 | R/W | Clock Select 1 and 0 |
| 2 | CKS0 | 0 | R/W | These bits specify the A/D conversion time. The conversion time should be changed only when ADST = 0. 00: Conversion time = 530 states (max.) 01: Conversion time = 266 states (max.) 10: Conversion time = 134 states (max.) 11: Conversion time = 68 states (max.) The conversion time setting should exceed the conversion time shown in section 24.6, A/D Converter Characteristics. |
| 1, 0 | — | All 1 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 1 cannot be modified. |

16.4 Interface to Bus Master

ADDRA to ADDR_D are 16-bit registers. As the data bus to the bus master is 8 bits wide, the bus master accesses to the upper byte of the registers directly while to the lower byte of the registers via the temporary register (TEMP).

Data in ADDR is read in the following way: When the upper-byte data is read, the upper-byte data will be transferred to the CPU and the lower-byte data will be transferred to TEMP. Then, when the lower-byte data is read, the lower-byte data will be transferred to the CPU.

When data in ADDR is read, the data should be read from the upper byte and lower byte in the order. When only the upper-byte data is read, the data is guaranteed. However, when only the lower-byte data is read, the data is not guaranteed.

Figure 16.2 shows data flow when accessing to ADDR.

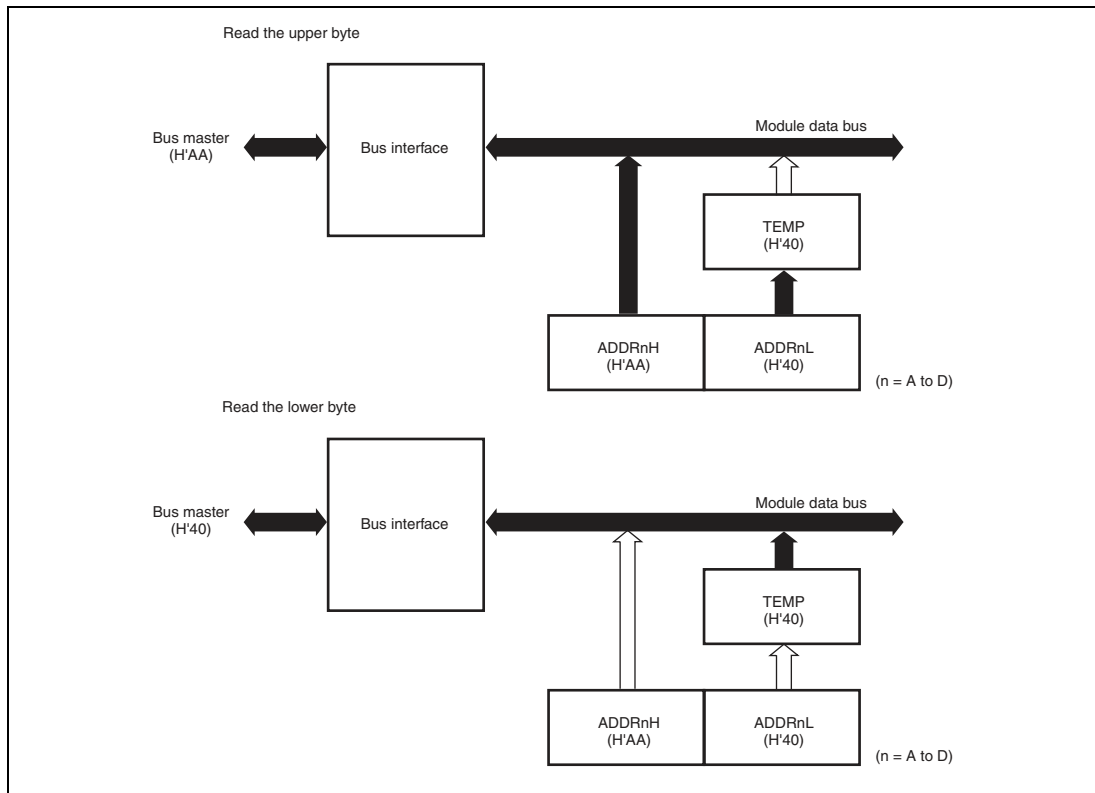


Figure 16.2 Access to ADDR (When Reading H'AA40)

16.5 Operation

The A/D converter operates by successive approximation with 10-bit resolution. It has two operating modes; single mode and scan mode. When changing the operating mode or analog input channel, in order to prevent incorrect operation, first clear the bit ADST to 0 in ADCSR. The ADST bit can be set at the same time as the operating mode or analog input channel is changed.

16.5.1 Single Mode

In single mode, A/D conversion is to be performed only once on the specified single channel. The operations are as follows.

1. A/D conversion is started when the ADST bit is set to 1, according to software, TPU, or external trigger input.
2. When A/D conversion is completed, the result is transferred to the corresponding A/D data register to the channel.
3. On completion of conversion, the ADF bit in ADCSR is set to 1. If the ADIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an ADI interrupt request is generated.
4. The ADST bit remains set to 1 during A/D conversion. When A/D conversion ends, the ADST bit is automatically cleared to 0 and the A/D converter enters the wait state.

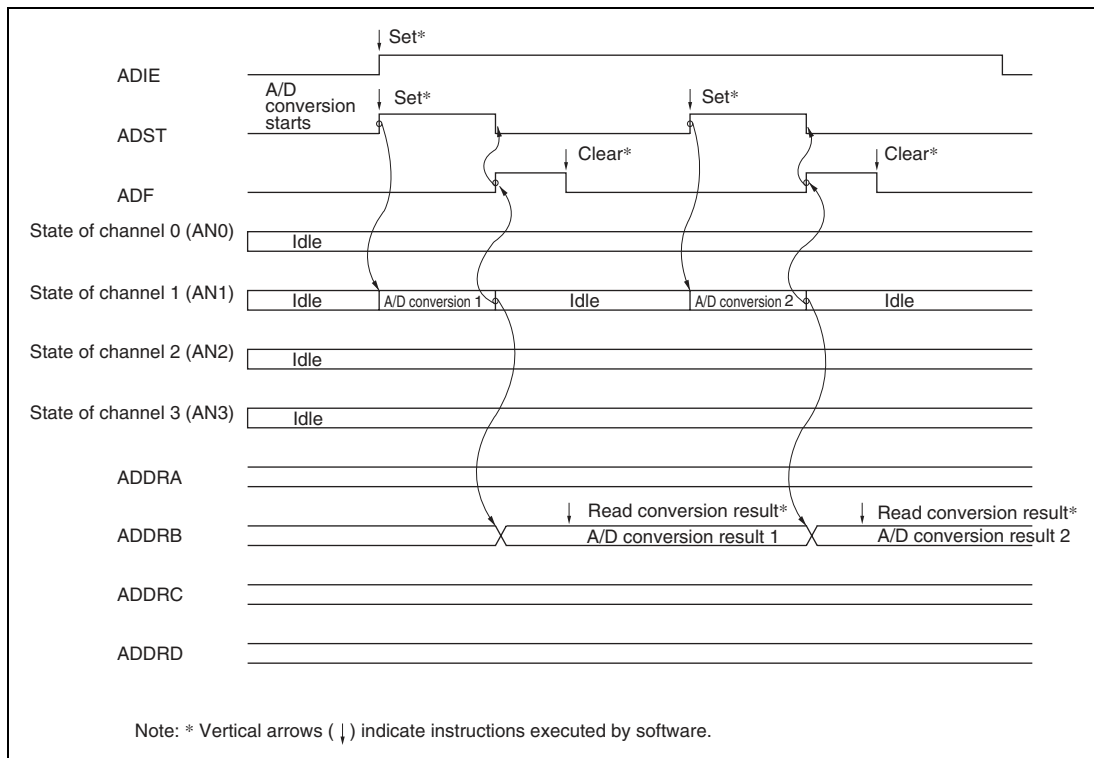


Figure 16.3 A/D Conversion Timing (Single-Chip Mode, Channel 1 Selected)

16.5.2 Scan Mode

In scan mode, A/D conversion is to be performed sequentially on the specified channels (four channels maximum). The operations are as follows.

1. When the ADST bit is set to 1 by software, TPU, or external trigger input, A/D conversion starts on the first channel in the group (AN0 when CH3 and CH2 = 00, AN4 when CH3 and CH2 = 01, or AN8 when CH3 and CH2 = 10).
2. When A/D conversion for each channel is completed, the result is sequentially transferred to the A/D data register corresponding to each channel.
3. When conversion of all the selected channels is completed, the ADF flag is set to 1. If the ADIE bit is set to 1 at this time, an ADI interrupt is requested after A/D conversion ends. Conversion of the first channel in the group starts again.
4. Steps 2 to 3 are repeated as long as the ADST bit remains set to 1. When the ADST bit is cleared to 0, A/D conversion stops.

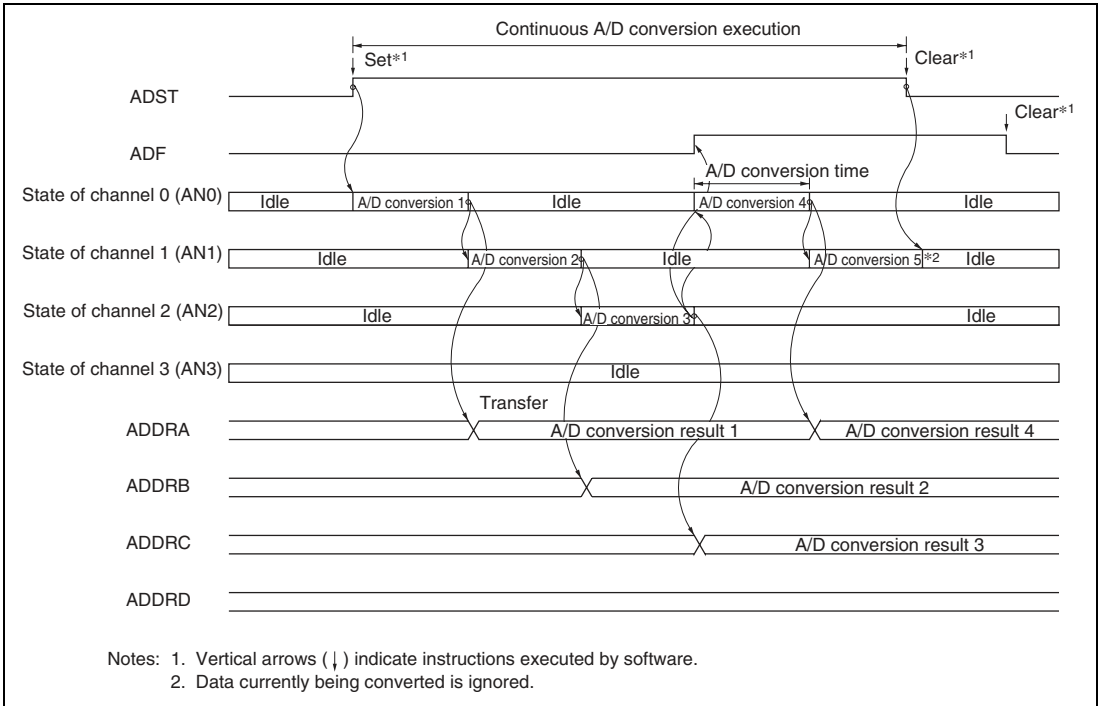


Figure 16.4 A/D Conversion Timing (Scan Mode, Channels AN0 to AN3 Selected)

16.5.3 Input Sampling and A/D Conversion Time

The A/D converter has a built-in sample-and-hold circuit. The A/D converter samples the analog input when the A/D conversion start delay time (t_D) has passed after the ADST bit is set to 1, then starts conversion. Figure 16.5 shows the A/D conversion timing. Tables 16.3 and 16.4 show the A/D conversion time.

As indicated in figure 16.5, the A/D conversion time (t_{CONV}) includes t_D and the input sampling time (t_{SPL}). The length of t_D varies depending on the timing of the write access to ADCSR. The total conversion time therefore varies within the ranges indicated in table 16.4.

In scan mode, the values given in table 16.4 apply to the first conversion time. The values given in table 16.5 apply to the second and subsequent conversions.

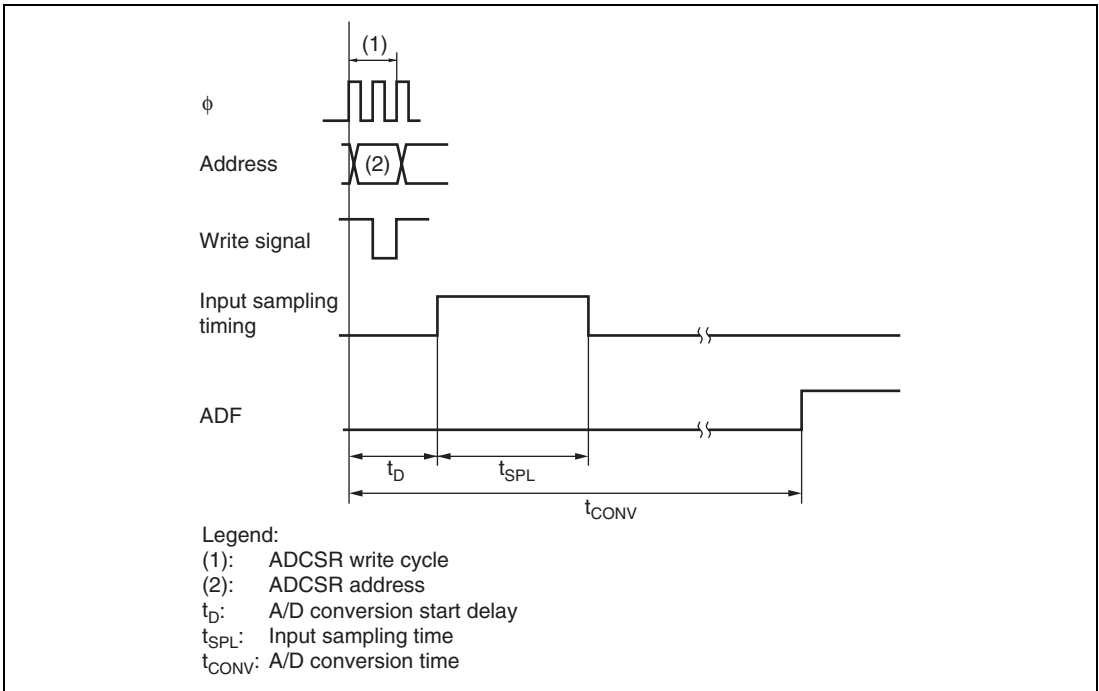


Figure 16.5 A/D Conversion Timing

Table 16.3 A/D Conversion Time (Single Mode)

| Item | Symbol | CKS1 = 0 | | | | | | CKS1 = 1 | | | | | |
|----------------------------|------------|----------|-----|-----|----------|-----|-----|----------|-----|-----|----------|-----|-----|
| | | CKS0 = 0 | | | CKS0 = 1 | | | CKS0 = 0 | | | CKS0 = 1 | | |
| | | Min | Typ | Max | Min | Typ | Max | Min | Typ | Max | Min | Typ | Max |
| A/D conversion start delay | t_D | 18 | — | 33 | 10 | — | 17 | 6 | — | 9 | 4 | — | 5 |
| Input sampling time | t_{SPL} | — | 127 | — | — | 63 | — | — | 31 | — | — | 15 | — |
| A/D conversion time | t_{CONV} | 515 | — | 530 | 259 | — | 266 | 131 | — | 134 | 67 | — | 68 |

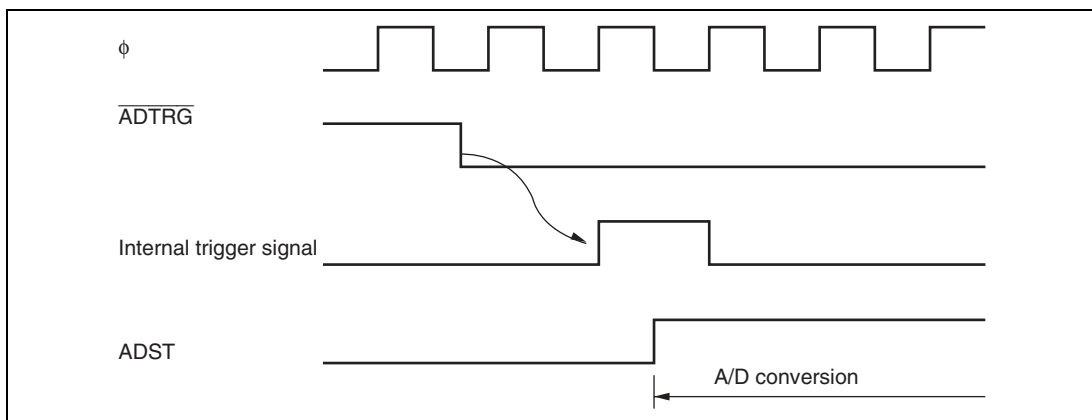
Note: All values represent the number of states.

Table 16.4 A/D Conversion Time (Scan Mode)

| CKS1 | CKS0 | Conversion Time (State) |
|------|------|-------------------------|
| 0 | 0 | 512 (Fixed) |
| | 1 | 256 (Fixed) |
| 1 | 0 | 128 (Fixed) |
| | 1 | 64 (Fixed) |

16.5.4 External Trigger Input Timing

A/D conversion can be externally triggered. When the TRGS0 and TRGS1 bits are set to 11 in ADCR, external trigger input is enabled at the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin. A falling edge at the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin sets the ADST bit to 1 in ADCSR, starting A/D conversion. Other operations, in both single and scan modes, are the same as when the bit ADST has been set to 1 by software. Figure 16.6 shows the timing.

**Figure 16.6 External Trigger Input Timing**

16.6 Interrupts

The A/D converter generates an A/D conversion end interrupt (ADI) at the end of A/D conversion. Setting the ADIE bit to 1 enables ADI interrupt requests while the bit ADF in ADCSR is set to 1 after A/D conversion is completed. The DMAC or DTC can be activated by an ADI interrupt.

Table 16.5 A/D Converter Interrupt Source

| Name | Interrupt Source | Interrupt Source Flag | DMAC or DTC Activation |
|------|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| ADI | A/D conversion completed | ADF | Possible |

16.7 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions

This LSI's A/D conversion precision definitions are given below.

- Resolution
The number of A/D converter digital output codes
- Quantization error
The deviation inherent in the A/D converter, given by 1/2 LSB (see figure 16.7).
- Offset error
The deviation of the analog input voltage value from the ideal A/D conversion characteristic when the digital output changes from the minimum voltage value B'000000000 (H'000) to B'000000001 (H'001) (see figure 16.8).
- Full-scale error
The deviation of the analog input voltage value from the ideal A/D conversion characteristic when the digital output changes from B'111111110 (H'3FE) to B'111111111 (H'3FF) (see figure 16.8).
- Nonlinearity error
The error with respect to the ideal A/D conversion characteristic between zero voltage and full-scale voltage. Does not include offset error, full-scale error, or quantization error (see figure 16.8).
- Absolute precision
The deviation between the digital value and the analog input value. Includes offset error, full-scale error, quantization error, and nonlinearity error.

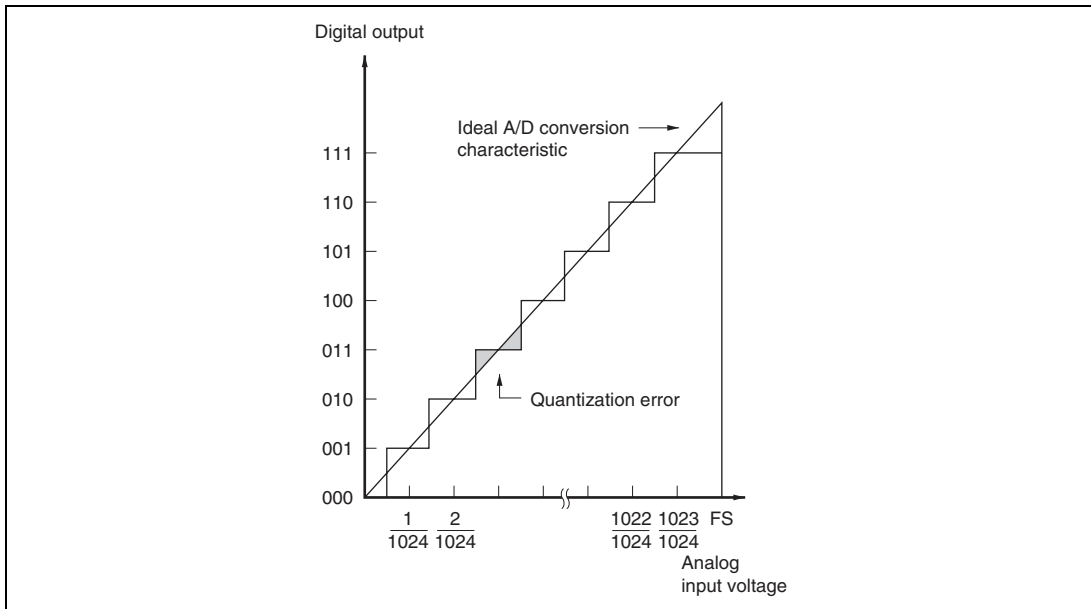


Figure 16.7 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions (1)

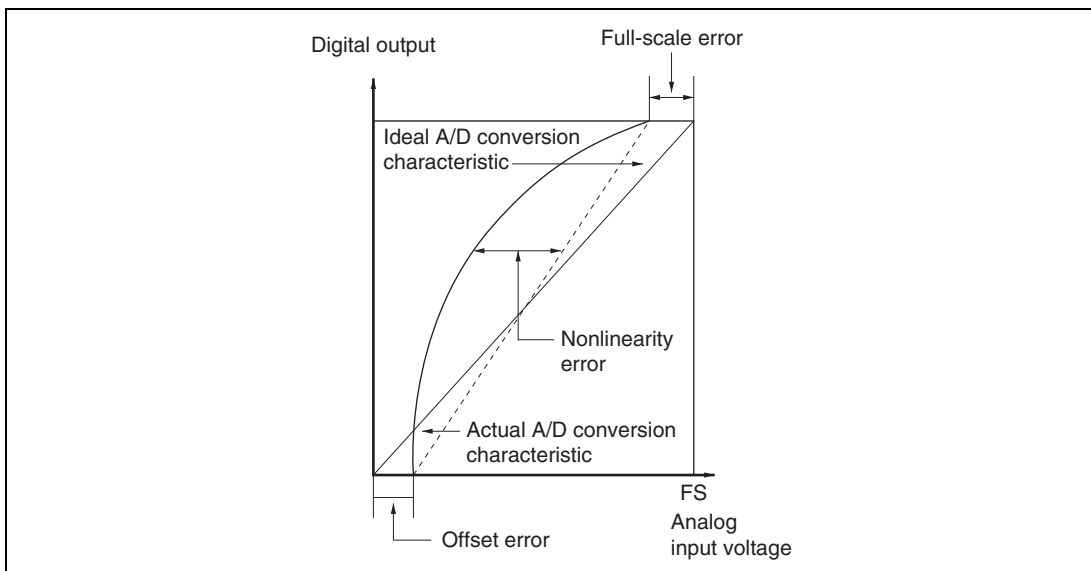


Figure 16.8 A/D Conversion Precision Definitions (2)

16.8 Usage Notes

16.8.1 Permissible Signal Source Impedance

This LSI's analog input is designed such that conversion precision is guaranteed for an input signal for which the signal source impedance is $5\text{ k}\Omega$ or less. This specification is provided to enable the A/D converter's sample-and-hold circuit input capacitance to be charged within the sampling time; if the sensor output impedance exceeds $5\text{ k}\Omega$, charging may be insufficient and it may not be possible to guarantee A/D conversion precision. However, for A/D conversion in single mode with a large capacitance provided externally, the input load will essentially comprise only the internal input resistance of $10\text{ k}\Omega$, and the signal source impedance is ignored. However, as a low-pass filter effect is obtained in this case, it may not be possible to follow an analog signal with a large differential coefficient (e.g., $5\text{ mV}/\Omega\text{s}$ or greater) (see figure 16.9). When converting a high-speed analog signal, a low-impedance buffer should be inserted.

16.8.2 Influences on Absolute Precision

Adding capacitance results in coupling with GND, and therefore noise in GND may adversely affect absolute precision. Be sure to make the connection to an electrically stable GND such as AVSS.

Care is also required to insure that filter circuits do not communicate with digital signals on the mounting board (i.e., acting as antennas).

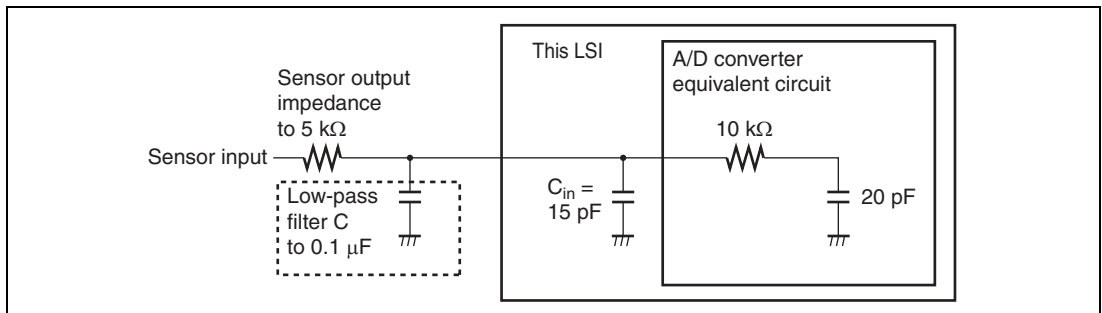


Figure 16.9 Example of Analog Input Circuit

16.8.3 Range of Analog Power Supply and Other Pin Settings

If the conditions below are not met, the reliability of the device may be adversely affected.

- Analog input voltage range
The voltage applied to analog input pin ANn during A/D conversion should be in the range $AVSS \leq ANn \leq Vref$.
- Relationship between AVcc, AVss and Vcc, Vss
Set $AVss = Vss$ as the relationship between AVcc, AVss and Vcc, Vss. If the A/D converter is not used, the AVcc and AVss pins must not be left open. In addition, AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $Vcc = AVcc$.
- Vref input range
The analog reference voltage input at the Vref pin set is the range $Vref \leq AVcc$.

16.8.4 Notes on Board Design

In board design, digital circuitry and analog circuitry should be as mutually isolated as possible, and layout in which digital circuit signal lines and analog circuit signal lines cross or are in close proximity should be avoided as far as possible. Failure to do so may result in incorrect operation of the analog circuitry due to inductance, adversely affecting A/D conversion values.

Also, digital circuitry must be isolated from the analog input signals (AN0 to AN3 or AN14 to AN15), analog reference voltage pin (Vref), and analog power supply (AVcc) by the analog ground (AVss). Also, the analog ground (AVss) should be connected at one point to a stable digital ground (Vss) on the board.

16.8.5 Notes on Noise Countermeasures

A protection circuit should be connected in order to prevent damage due to abnormal voltage, such as an excessive surge at the analog input pins (AN0 to AN3 or AN14 to AN15) and analog reference voltage pin (Vref), between AVcc and AVss, as shown in figure 16.10. Also, the bypass capacitors connected to AVcc and the filter capacitor connected to analog input pins (AN0 to AN3 or AN14 to AN15) must be connected to AVss.

If a filter capacitor is connected, the input currents at the analog input pins (AN0 to AN3 or AN14 to AN15) are averaged, and so an error may arise. Also, when A/D conversion is performed frequently, as in scan mode, if the current charged and discharged by the capacitance of the sample-and-hold circuit in the A/D converter exceeds the current input via the input impedance (Rin), an error will arise in the analog input pin voltage. Careful consideration is therefore required when deciding circuit constants.

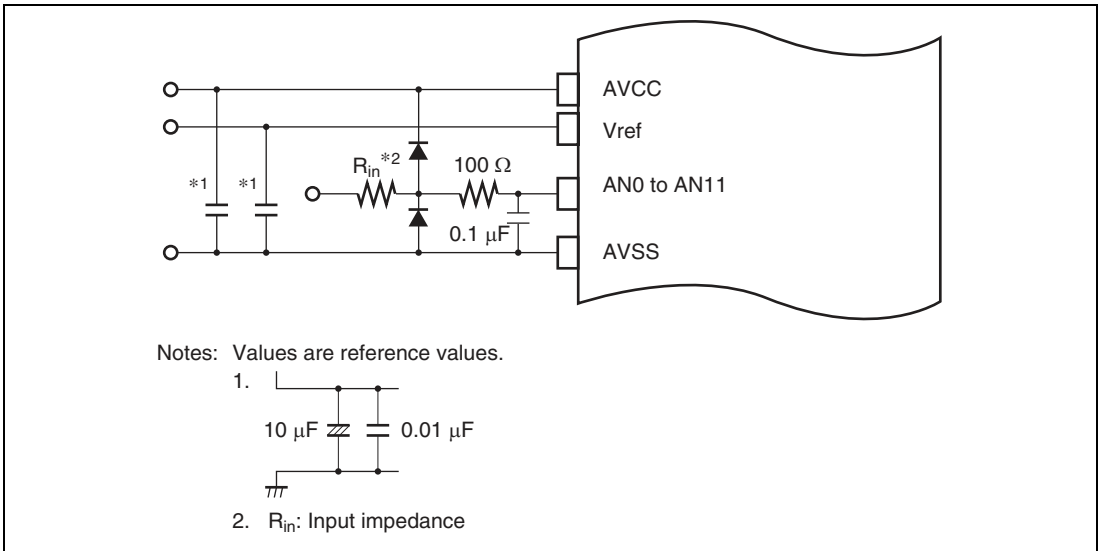


Figure 16.10 Example of Analog Input Protection Circuit

Table 16.6 Analog Pin Specifications

| Item | Min | Max | Unit |
|-------------------------------------|-----|-----|------|
| Analog input capacitance | — | 20 | pF |
| Permissible signal source impedance | — | 5* | kΩ |

Note: * $V_{cc} = 2.7$ to 3.6 V

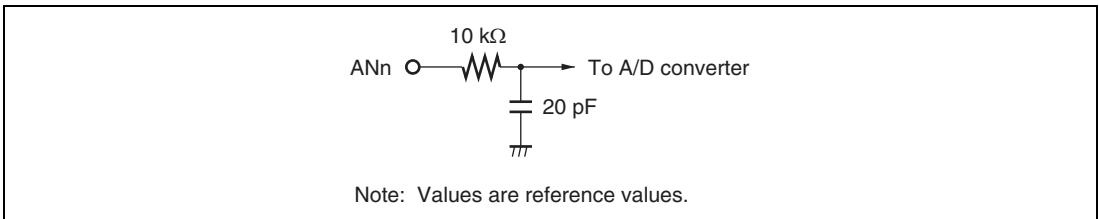


Figure 16.11 Analog Input Pin Equivalent Circuit

16.8.6 Module Stop Mode Setting

Operation of the A/D converter can be disabled or enabled using the module stop control register. The initial setting is for operation of the A/D converter to be halted. Register access is enabled by clearing module stop mode. For details, refer to section 22, Power-Down Modes.

Section 17 D/A Converter

This LSI includes a D/A converter with 2 channels.

17.1 Features

D/A converter features are listed below.

- 8-bit resolution
- Two output channels
- Maximum conversion time of 10 μ s (with 20 pF load)
- Output voltage of 0 V to Vref
- D/A output hold function in software standby mode
- Module stop mode can be set

Figure 17.1 shows a block diagram of the D/A converter.

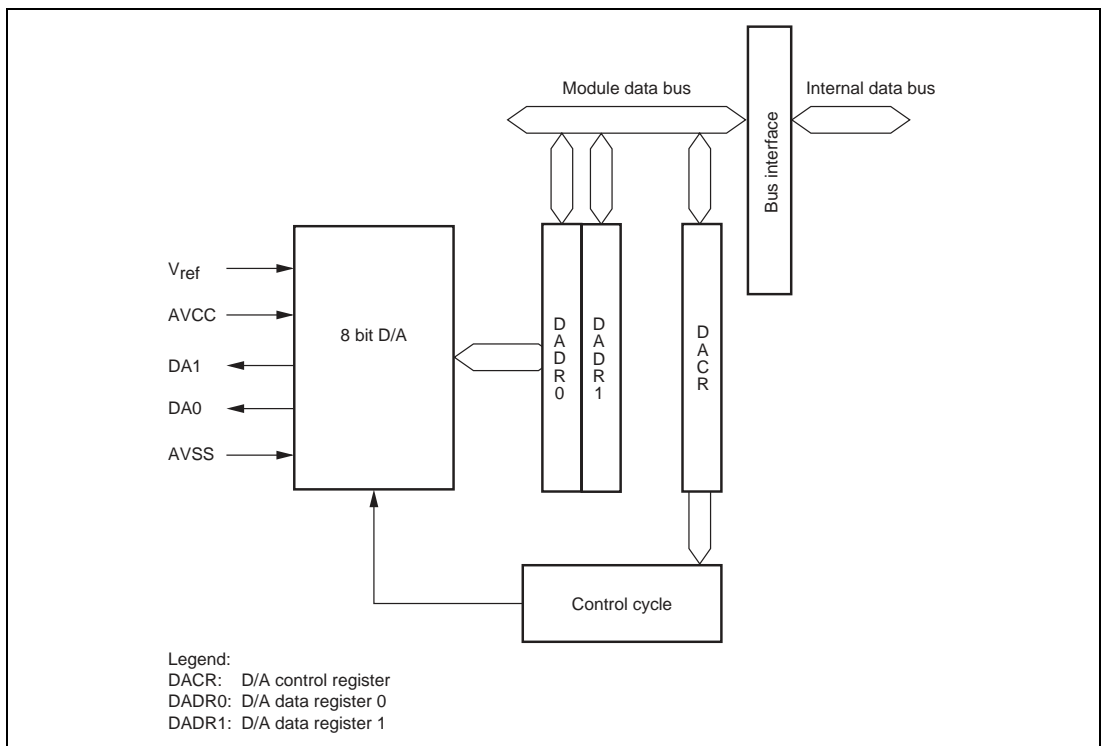


Figure 17.1 Block Diagram of D/A Converter

17.2 Input/Output Pins

Table 17.1 summarizes the input and output pins of the D/A converter.

Table 17.1 Pin Configuration

| Pin Name | Symbol | I/O | Function |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| Analog power pin | AVCC | Input | Analog power |
| Analog ground pin | AVSS | Input | Analog ground and reference voltage |
| Analog output pin 0 | DA0 | Output | Channel 0 analog output |
| Analog output pin 1 | DA1 | Output | Channel 1 analog output |
| Reference voltage pin | Vref | Input | Analog reference voltage |

17.3 Register Description

The D/A converter has the following registers.

- D/A data register (DADR)
- D/A control register (DACR)

17.3.1 D/A Data Register (DADR)

DADR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that store data for conversion. Whenever output is enabled, the values in DADR are converted and output from the analog output pins. This register is initialized to H'00 on reset or in hardware standby mode.

17.3.2 D/A Control Register (DACR)

DACR controls the operation of the D/A converter.

DACR01

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|---|----------|---------------|-----|---------------------|
| 7 | DAOE1 | 0 | R/W | D/A Output Enable 1 |
| 6 | DAOE0 | 0 | R/W | D/A Output Enable 0 |
| 5 | DAE | 0 | R/W | D/A Enable |
| Control the D/A conversion and analog output. | | | | |
| 00x: Channel 0 and 1 D/A conversions disabled | | | | |
| 010: Channel 0 D/A conversion enabled Channel 1 D/A conversion disabled | | | | |
| 011: Channel 0 and 1 D/A conversions enabled | | | | |
| 100: Channel 0 D/A conversion disabled Channel 1 D/A conversion enabled | | | | |
| 101: Channel 0 and 1 D/A conversions enabled | | | | |
| 11x: Channel 0 and 1 D/A conversions enabled | | | | |
| Legend: x: Don't care | | | | |
| If this LSI enters software standby mode when D/A conversion is enabled, the D/A output is held and the analog power current is the same as during D/A conversion. When it is necessary to reduce the analog power current in software standby mode, clear the DAOE0, DAOE1, and DAE bits to 0 to disable D/A output. | | | | |
| 4 to 0 | — | All 1 | — | Reserved |
| These bits are always read as 1 and cannot be modified. | | | | |

17.4 Operation

D/A conversion takes place constantly as long as the D/A converter is enabled by the DACR. When DADR_0 and DADR_1 are overwritten, the new data is converted immediately. The conversion result is output by setting the DAOE0 and DAOE1 bits to 1.

The operation example concerns D/A conversion on channel 0. Figure 17.2 shows the timing of this operation.

- [1] Write the conversion data to DADR_0.
- [2] Set the DAOE0 bit in DACR01 to 1. D/A conversion is started. The conversion result is output after the conversion time t_{DCONV} has elapsed. The output value is expressed by the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{DADR contents}}{256} \times V_{\text{ref}}$$

The conversion results are output continuously until DADR_0 is written to again or the DAOE0 bit is cleared to 0.

- [3] If DADR_0 is written to again, the conversion is immediately started. The conversion result is output after the conversion time t_{DCONV} has elapsed.
- [4] If the DAOE0 bit is cleared to 0, analog output is disabled.

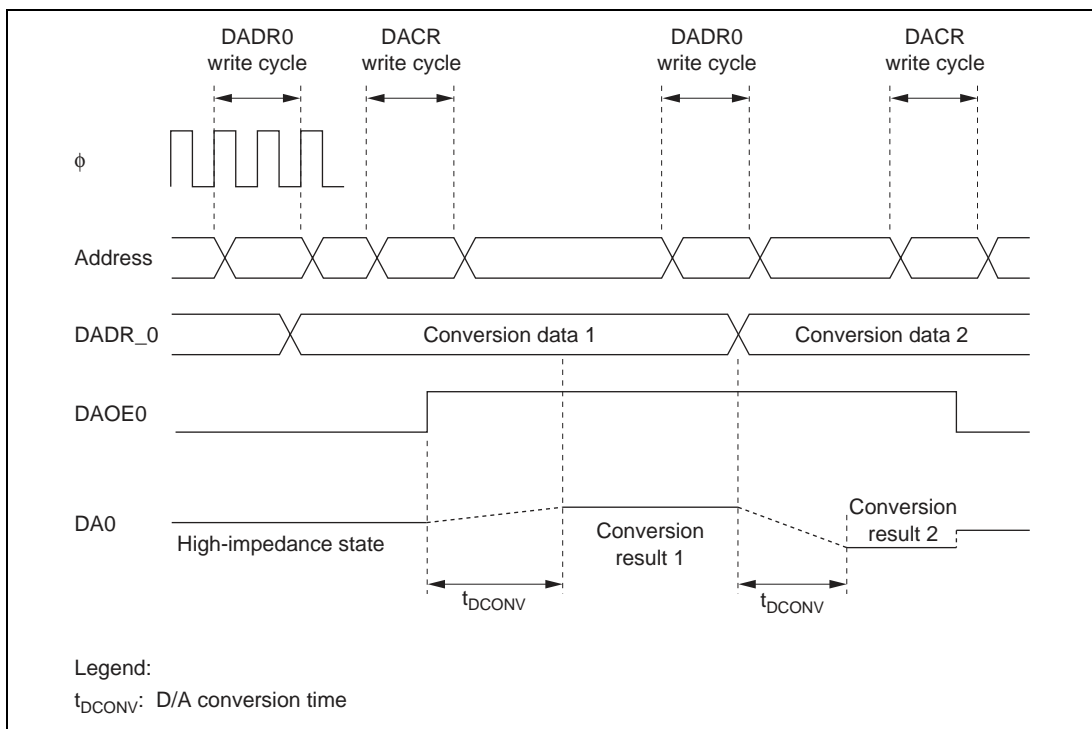


Figure 17.2 Example of D/A Converter Operation

17.5 Usage Note

17.5.1 Module Stop Mode Setting

Operation of the D/A converter can be disabled or enabled using the module stop control register. The initial setting is for operation of the D/A converter to be halted. Register access is enabled by clearing module stop mode. For details, refer to section 22, Power-Down Modes.

Section 18 RAM

This LSI has on-chip high-speed static RAM. The RAM is connected to the CPU by a 16-bit data bus, enabling one-state access by the CPU to both byte data and word data. This makes it possible to perform fast word data transfer.

The on-chip RAM can be enabled or disabled by means of the RAM enable bit (RAME) in the system control register (SYSCR). For details on SYSCR, refer to section 3.2.2, System Control Register (SYSCR).

| Product Class | ROM Type | RAM Size | RAM Address | |
|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--|--|
| H8S/2215 Group | HD64F2215R | Flash memory Version | 20 kbytes | H'FFA000 to H'FFEFBF H'FFFFC0 to H'FFFFFF |
| | HD64F2215RU | | | |
| | HD64F2215T | | | |
| | HD64F2215TU | | | |
| | HD64F2215CU | | | |
| | HD64F2215 | 16 kbytes | H'FFB000 to H'FFEFBF H'FFFFC0 to H'FFFFFF | |
| | HD64F2215U | | | |
| HD6432215B | Masked ROM Version | 8 kbytes | H'FFD000 to H'FFEFBF H'FFFFC0 to H'FFFFFF | |
| HD6432215C | | | | |

Section 19 Flash Memory (F-ZTAT Version)

The features of the on-chip flash memory are summarized below. The block diagram of the flash memory is shown in figure 19.1.

19.1 Features

- Size

| Product Category | | ROM Size | ROM Addresses |
|------------------|---|------------|---|
| H8S/2215 Group | HD64F2215, HD64F2215U, HD64F2215R, HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215T, HD64F2215TU, HD64F2215CU | 256 kbytes | H'000000 to H'03FFFF (Modes 6 and 7) |

- Programming/erase methods

— The flash memory is programmed 128 bytes at a time. Erase is performed in single-block units. The flash memory is configured as follows: four kbytes × eight blocks, 32 kbytes × 1 block, 64 kbytes × 3 and blocks. To erase the entire flash memory, each block must be erased in turn.

- Reprogramming capability

— Flash memory can be reprogrammed a minimum of 100 times.

- Two flash memory operating modes

— Boot mode (SCI boot mode: HD64F2215, HD64F2215R, HD64F2215T. USB boot mode: HD64F2215U, HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215TU, HD64F2215CU)

— User program mode

On-board programming/erasing can be done in boot mode in which the boot program built into the chip is started for erase or programming of the entire flash memory. In normal user program mode, individual blocks can be erased or programmed.

- Automatic bit rate adjustment (SCI boot mode)

— With data transfer in SCI boot mode, this LSI's bit rate can be automatically adjusted to match the transfer bit rate of the host.

- Programming/erasing protection

— Sets hardware protection, software protection, and error protection against flash memory programming/erasing.

- Programmer mode

— Flash memory can be programmed/erased in programmer mode, using a PROM programmer, as well as in on-board programming mode.

- Flash memory emulation in RAM
 - Flash memory programming can be emulated in real time by overlapping a part of RAM onto flash memory.

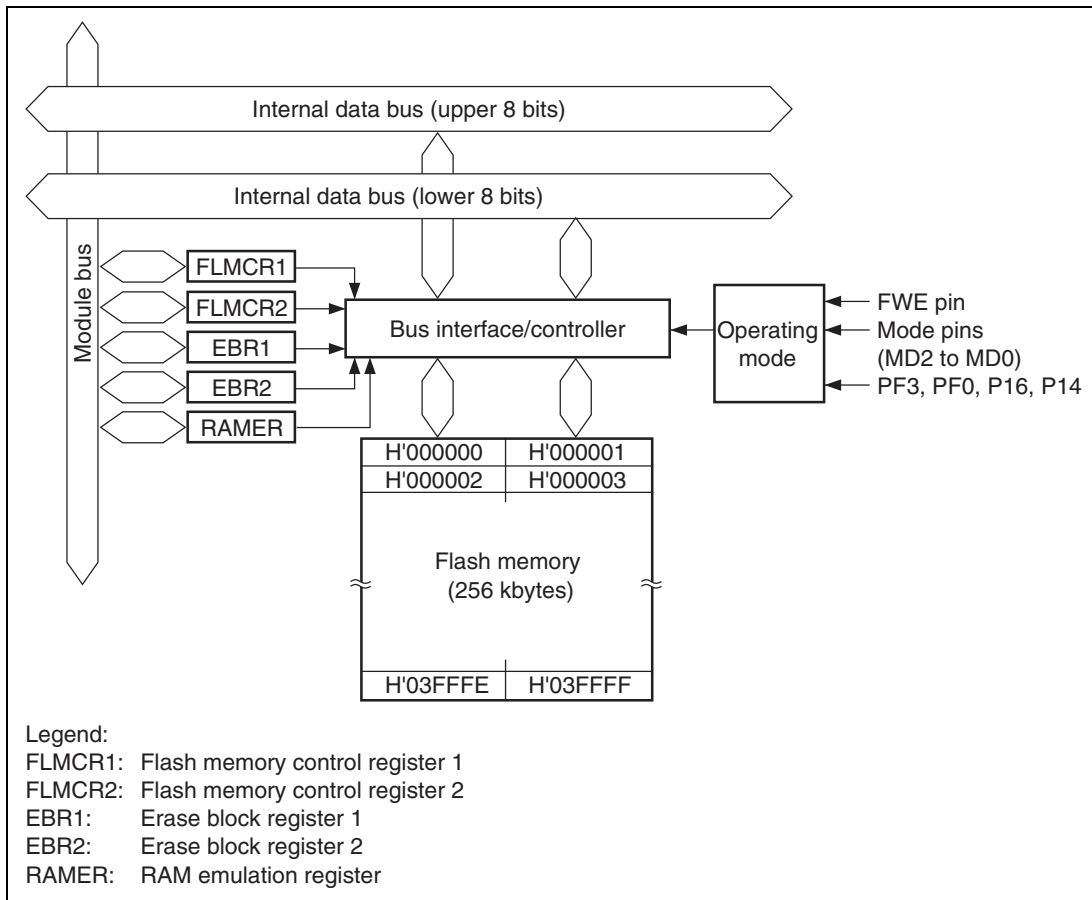


Figure 19.1 Block Diagram of Flash Memory

19.2 Mode Transitions

When the mode pins and the FWE pin are set in the reset state and a reset-start is executed, this LSI enters an operating mode as shown in figure 19.2. In user mode, flash memory can be read but not programmed or erased. The boot and user program modes are provided as modes to write and erase the flash memory.

The differences between boot mode and user program mode are shown in table 19.1. Boot mode and user program mode operations are shown in figures 19.3 and 19.4, respectively.

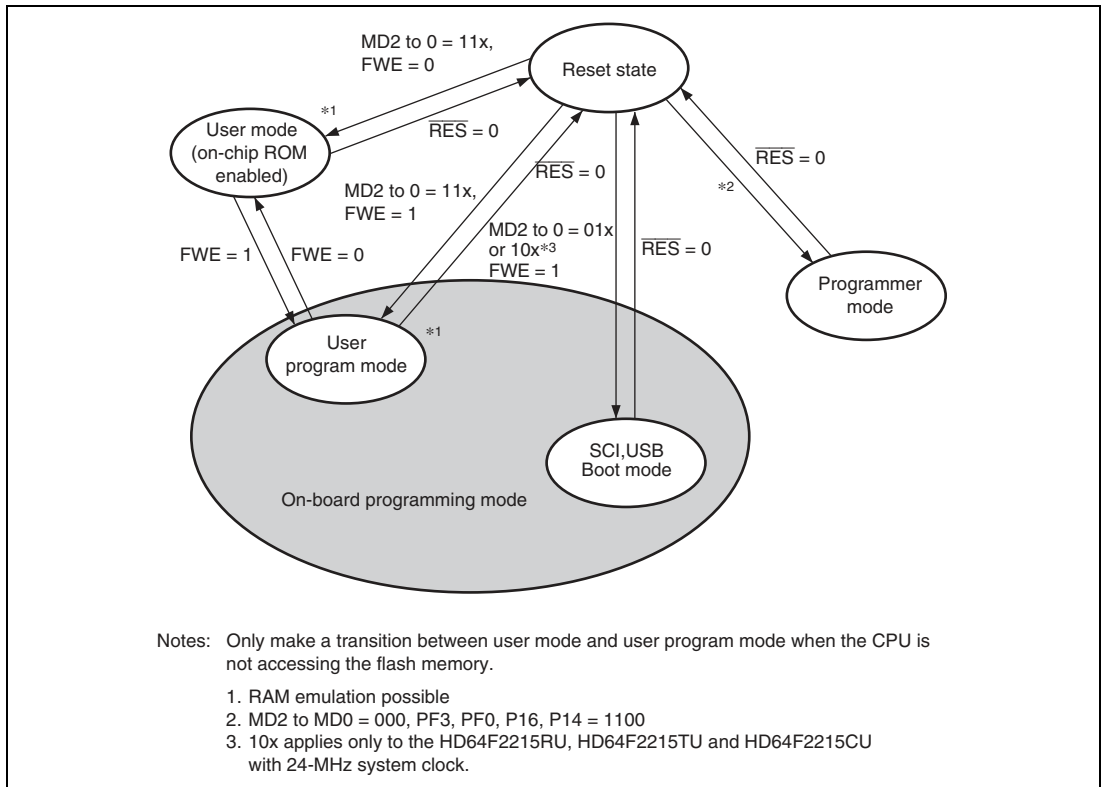


Figure 19.2 Flash Memory State Transitions

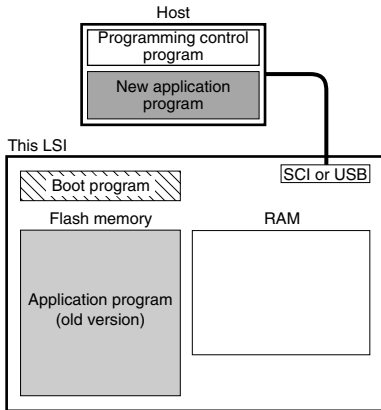
Table 19.1 Differences between Boot Mode and User Program Mode

| | SCI,USB Boot Mode | User Program Mode | User Mode |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|---|------------------|
| Total erase | Yes | Yes | No |
| Block erase | No | Yes | No |
| Programming control program* | Program/program-verify | Erase/erase-verify Program/program-verify Emulation | — |

Note: * To be provided by the user, in accordance with the recommended algorithm.

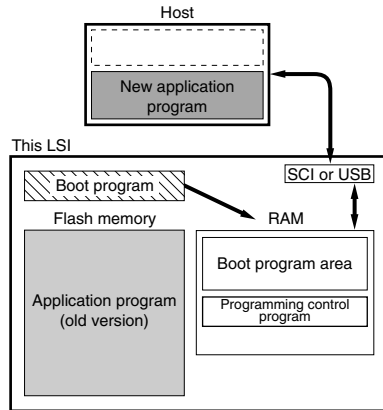
1. Initial state

The old program version or data remains written in the flash memory. The user should prepare the programming control program and new application program beforehand in the host.



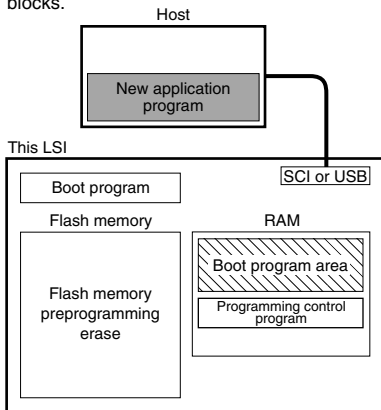
2. Programming control program transfer

When boot mode is entered, the boot program in this LSI (originally incorporated in the chip) is started and the programming control program in the host is transferred to RAM via SCI or USB communication. The boot program required for flash memory erasing is automatically transferred to the RAM boot program area.



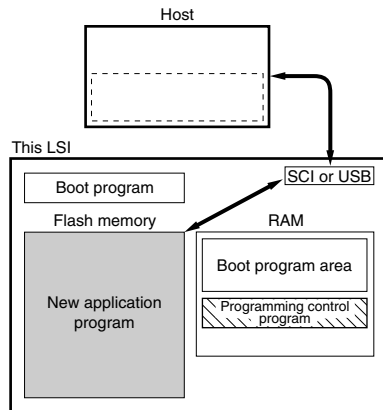
3. Flash memory initialization

The erase program in the boot program area (in RAM) is executed, and the flash memory is initialized (to H'FF). In boot mode, total flash memory erasure is performed, without regard to blocks.



4. Writing new application program

The programming control program transferred from the host to RAM is executed, and the new application program in the host is written into the flash memory.

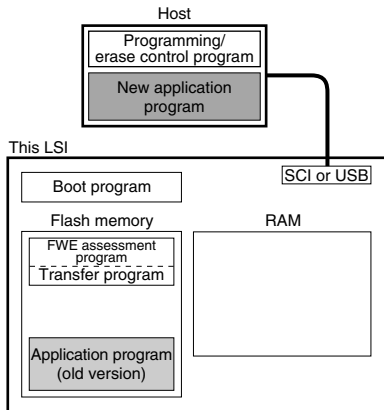


Program execution state

Figure 19.3 Boot Mode (Sample)

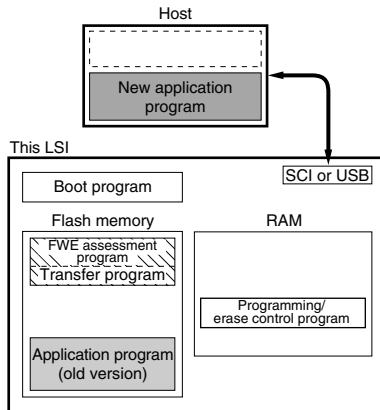
1. Initial state

The FWE assessment program that confirms that user program mode has been entered, and the program that will transfer the programming/erase control program from flash memory to on-chip RAM should be written into the flash memory by the user beforehand. The programming/erase control program should be prepared in the host or in the flash memory.



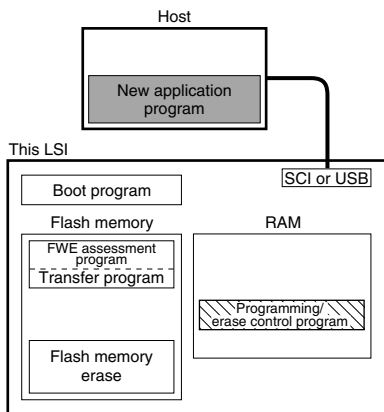
2. Programming/erase control program transfer

When user program mode is entered, user software confirms this fact, executes transfer program in the flash memory, and transfers the programming/erase control program to RAM.



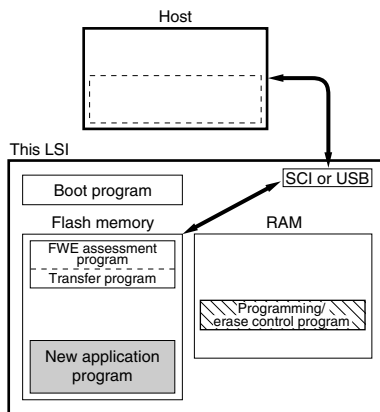
3. Flash memory initialization

The programming/erase program in RAM is executed, and the flash memory is initialized (to H'FF). Erasing can be performed in block units, but not in byte units.



4. Writing new application program

Next, the new application program in the host is written into the erased flash memory blocks. Do not write to unerased blocks.




 Program execution state

Figure 19.4 User Program Mode (Sample)

19.3 Block Configuration

Figure 19.5 shows the block configuration of 256-kbyte flash memory. The thick lines indicate erasing units, the narrow lines indicate programming units, and the values are addresses. The flash memory is divided into 4 kbytes (eight blocks), 32 kbytes (one block), and 64 kbytes (three blocks). Erasing is performed in these divided units. Programming is performed in 128-byte units starting from an address whose lower eight bits are H'00 or H'80.

| | | | | | |
|--|----------|----------|----------|---------------------------------|----------|
| EB0 ↑ Erase unit 4 kbyte ↓ | H'000000 | H'000001 | H'000002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00007F |
| | H'000080 | | | | H'000FFF |
| EB1 ↑ Erase unit 4 kbyte ↓ | H'001000 | H'001001 | H'001002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00107F |
| | H'001080 | | | | H'001FFF |
| EB2 ↑ Erase unit 4 kbyte ↓ | H'002000 | H'002001 | H'002002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00207F |
| | H'002080 | | | | H'002FFF |
| EB3 ↑ Erase unit 4 kbyte ↓ | H'003000 | H'003001 | H'003002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00307F |
| | H'003080 | | | | H'003FFF |
| EB4 ↑ Erase unit 4 kbyte ↓ | H'004000 | H'004001 | H'004002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00407F |
| | H'004080 | | | | H'004FFF |
| EB5 ↑ Erase unit 4 kbyte ↓ | H'005000 | H'005001 | H'005002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00507F |
| | H'005080 | | | | H'005FFF |
| EB6 ↑ Erase unit 4 kbyte ↓ | H'006000 | H'006001 | H'006002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00607F |
| | H'006080 | | | | H'006FFF |
| EB7 ↑ Erase unit 4 kbyte ↓ | H'007000 | H'007001 | H'007002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00707F |
| | H'007080 | | | | H'007FFF |
| EB8 ↑ Erase unit 32 kbyte ↓ | H'008000 | H'008001 | H'008002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'00807F |
| | H'008080 | | | | H'00FFFF |
| EB9 ↑ Erase unit 64 kbyte ↓ | H'010000 | H'010001 | H'010002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'01007F |
| | H'010080 | | | | H'01FFFF |
| EB10 ↑ Erase unit 64 kbyte ↓ | H'020000 | H'020001 | H'020002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'02007F |
| | H'020080 | | | | H'02FFFF |
| EB11 ↑ Erase unit 64 kbyte ↓ | H'030000 | H'030001 | H'030002 | ← Programming unit: 128 bytes → | H'03007F |
| | H'030080 | | | | H'03FFFF |

Figure 19.5 Flash Memory Block Configuration

19.4 Input/Output Pins

The flash memory is controlled by means of the pins shown in table 19.2.

Table 19.2 Pin Configuration

| Pin Name | I/O | Function | |
|-------------------------|--------------|---|-------------------|
| $\overline{\text{RES}}$ | Input | Reset | HD64F2215 |
| FWE | Input | Flash program/erase protection by hardware | and HD64F2215U |
| MD2,MD1,MD0 | Input | Sets this LSI's operating mode | |
| PF3,PF0,P16, P14 | Input | Sets this LSI's operating mode in programmer mode | |
| TxD2 | Output | Serial transmit data output | HD64F2215 |
| RxD2 | Input | Serial receive data input | |
| USB+,USB- | Input/Output | USB data output | HD64F2215U |
| VBUS | Input | USB cable connection/disconnection detection | |
| UBPM | Input | USB bus power mode/self power mode setting | |
| USPND | Output | USB suspend output | |
| P36 (PUPD+) | Output | D+ pull-up control | |

19.5 Register Descriptions

The flash memory has the following registers. For details on register addresses and register states during each processing, refer to section 23, List of Registers.

- Flash memory control register 1 (FLMCR1)
- Flash memory control register 2 (FLMCR2)
- Erase block register 1 (EBR1)
- Erase block register 2 (EBR2)
- RAM emulation register (RAMER)
- Serial control register X (SCRX)

The above registers are not implemented in the mask ROM version, so attempting to read from them will return undefined values. It is not possible to write to them.

19.5.1 Flash Memory Control Register 1 (FLMCR1)

FLMCR1 is a register that makes the flash memory transit to program mode, program-verify mode, erase mode, or erase-verify mode. For details on register setting, refer to section 19.8, Flash Memory Programming/Erasing.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | FWE | —* | R | Flash Write Enable Reflects the input level at the FWE pin. It is set to 1 when a low level is input to the FWE pin, and cleared to 0 when a high level is input. |
| 6 | SWE1 | 0 | R/W | Software Write Enable When this bit is set to 1, flash memory programming/erasing is enabled. When this bit is cleared to 0, other FLMCR1 register bits and all EBR1, EBR2 bits cannot be set. [Setting condition] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When FWE = 1 |
| 5 | ESU1 | 0 | R/W | Erase Setup When this bit is set to 1, the flash memory transits to the erase setup state. When it is cleared to 0, the erase setup state is cancelled. Set this bit to 1 before setting the E1 bit in FLMCR1. [Setting condition] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When FWE = 1 and SWE1 = 1 |
| 4 | PSU1 | 0 | R/W | Program Setup When this bit is set to 1, the flash memory transits to the program setup state. When it is cleared to 0, the program setup state is cancelled. Set this bit to 1 before setting the P1 bit in FLMCR1. [Setting condition] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When FWE = 1 and SWE1 = 1 |
| 3 | EV1 | 0 | R/W | Erase-Verify When this bit is set to 1, the flash memory transits to erase-verify mode. When it is cleared to 0, erase-verify mode is cancelled. [Setting condition] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When FWE = 1 and SWE1 = 1 |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 2 | PV1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Program-Verify</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, the flash memory transits to program-verify mode. When it is cleared to 0, program-verify mode is cancelled.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When FWE = 1 and SWE1 = 1 |
| 1 | E1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Erase</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1 while the SWE1 and ESU1 bits are 1, the flash memory transits to erase mode. When it is cleared to 0, erase mode is cancelled.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When FWE = 1, SWE1 = 1, and ESU1 = 1 |
| 0 | P1 | 0 | R/W | <p>Program</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1 while the SWE1 and PSU1 bits are 1, the flash memory transits to program mode. When it is cleared to 0, program mode is cancelled.</p> <p>[Setting condition]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When FWE = 1, SWE1 = 1, and PSU1 = 1 |

Note: * Set according to the FWE pin state.

19.5.2 Flash Memory Control Register 2 (FLMCR2)

FLMCR2 is a register that displays the state of flash memory programming/erasing. FLMCR2 is a read-only register, and should not be written to.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | FLER | 0 | R | <p>Indicates that an error has occurred during an operation on flash memory (programming or erasing). When FLER is set to 1, flash memory goes to the error-protection state.</p> <p>See section 19.9.3 Error Protection, for details.</p> |
| 6 to 0 | — | All 0 | — | <p>Reserved</p> <p>These bits always read as 0.</p> |

19.5.3 Erase Block Register 1 (EBR1)

EBR1 specifies the flash memory erase area block. EBR1 is initialized to H'00 when the SWE bit in FLMCR is 0. Do not set more than one bit at a time, as this will cause all the bits in EBR1 and EBR2 to be automatically cleared to 0.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | EB7 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 4 kbytes of EB7 (H'007000 to H'007FFF) are to be erased. |
| 6 | EB6 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 4 kbytes of EB6 (H'006000 to H'006FFF) are to be erased. |
| 5 | EB5 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 4 kbytes of EB5 (H'005000 to H'005FFF) are to be erased. |
| 4 | EB4 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 4 kbytes of EB4 (H'004000 to H'004FFF) are to be erased. |
| 3 | EB3 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 4 kbytes of EB3 (H'003000 to H'003FFF) is to be erased. |
| 2 | EB2 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 4 kbytes of EB2 (H'002000 to H'002FFF) is to be erased. |
| 1 | EB1 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 4 kbytes of EB1 (H'001000 to H'001FFF) is to be erased. |
| 0 | EB0 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 4 kbytes of EB0 (H'000000 to H'000FFF) is to be erased. |

19.5.4 Erase Block Register 2 (EBR2)

EBR2 specifies the flash memory erase area block. EBR2 is initialized to H'00 when the SWE bit in FLMCR1 is 0. Do not set more than one bit at a time, as this will cause all the bits in EBR1 and EBR2 to be automatically cleared to 0.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 4 | — | All 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 3 | EB11 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 64 kbytes of EB11 (H'030000 to H'03FFFF) are to be erased. |
| 2 | EB10 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 64 kbytes of EB10 (H'020000 to H'02FFFF) are to be erased. |
| 1 | EB9 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 64 kbytes of EB9 (H'010000 to H'01FFFF) are to be erased. |
| 0 | EB8 | 0 | R/W | When this bit is set to 1, 32 kbytes of EB8 (H'008000 to H'00FFFF) are to be erased. |

19.5.5 RAM Emulation Register (RAMER)

RAMER specifies the area of flash memory to be overlapped with part of RAM when emulating real-time flash memory programming. RAMER settings should be made in user mode or user program mode. To ensure correct operation of the emulation function, the ROM for which RAM emulation is performed should not be accessed immediately after this register has been modified. Normal execution of an access immediately after register modification is not guaranteed. For details, refer to section 19.7, Flash Memory Emulation in RAM.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description | |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|---------------------------------|
| 7 to 5 | — | All 0 | — | Reserved These bits always read as 0. | |
| 4 | — | 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. | |
| 3 | RAMS | 0 | R/W | RAM Select Specifies selection or non-selection of flash memory emulation in RAM. When RAMS = 1, the flash memory is overlapped with part of RAM, and all flash memory block are program/erase-protected. | |
| 2 | RAM2 | 0 | R/W | Flash Memory Area Selection | |
| 1 | RAM1 | 0 | R/W | When the RAMS bit is set to 1, selects one of the following flash memory areas to overlap the RAM area. The areas correspond with 4-kbyte erase blocks. | |
| 0 | RAM0 | 0 | R/W | | |
| | | | | | 000: H'000000 to H'000FFF (EB0) |
| | | | | | 001: H'001000 to H'001FFF (EB1) |
| | | | | | 010: H'002000 to H'002FFF (EB2) |
| | | | | | 011: H'003000 to H'003FFF (EB3) |
| | | | | | 100: H'004000 to H'004FFF (EB4) |
| | | | | | 101: H'005000 to H'005FFF (EB5) |
| | | | | 110: H'006000 to H'006FFF (EB6) | |
| | | | | 111: H'007000 to H'007FFF (EB7) | |

19.5.6 Serial Control Register X (SCRX)

SCRX performs register access control.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 to 4 | — | All 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |
| 3 | FLSHE | 0 | R/W | Flash Memory Control Register Enable Controls CPU access to the flash memory control registers (FLMCR1, FLMCR2, EBR1, and EBR2). Setting the FLSHE bit to 1 enables read/write access to the flash memory control registers. If FLSHE is cleared to 0, the flash memory control registers are deselected. In this case, the flash memory control register contents are retained. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Flash control registers deselected in area H'FFFFFFA8 to H'FFFFFFAC 1: Flash control registers selected in area H'FFFFFFA8 to H'FFFFFFAC |
| 2 to 0 | — | All 0 | R/W | Reserved The write value should always be 0. |

19.6 On-Board Programming Modes

When pins are set to on-board programming mode and a reset-start is executed, a transition is made to the on-board programming state in which program/erase/verify operations can be performed on the on-chip flash memory. There are two on-board programming modes: boot mode and user program mode. The pin settings for transition to each of these modes are shown in table 19.3. For a diagram of the transitions to the various flash memory modes, see figure 19.2.

Table 19.3 Setting On-Board Programming Modes

| Mode | | FWE | MD2 | MD1 | MD0 |
|---|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| SCI boot mode (HD64F2215, HD64F2215R, HD64F2215T) | Advanced: On-chip ROM extended mode | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | Advanced: Single-chip mode | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| USB boot mode (HD64F2215U, HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215TU, HD64F2215CU)* ¹ | Advanced: On-chip ROM extended mode | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | Advanced: Single-chip mode | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| USB boot mode (HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215TU, HD64F2215CU)* ² | Advanced: On-chip ROM extended mode | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| | Advanced: Single-chip mode | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| User program mode | Advanced: On-chip ROM extended mode (MCU operating mode 6) | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| | Advanced: Single-chip mode (MCU operating mode 7) | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

Notes: 1. When the system clock is 16 MHz.
2. When the system clock is 24 MHz.

19.6.1 SCI Boot Mode (HD64F2215, HD64F2215R, and HD64F2215T)

When a reset-start is executed after the LSI's pins have been set to boot mode, the boot program built into the LSI is started and the programming control program prepared in the host is serially transmitted to the LSI via the SCI. In the LSI, the programming control program received via the SCI is written into the programming control program area in on-chip RAM. After the transfer is completed, control branches to the start address of the programming control program area and the programming control program execution state is entered (flash memory programming is performed). The system configuration in SCI boot mode is shown in figure 19.6.

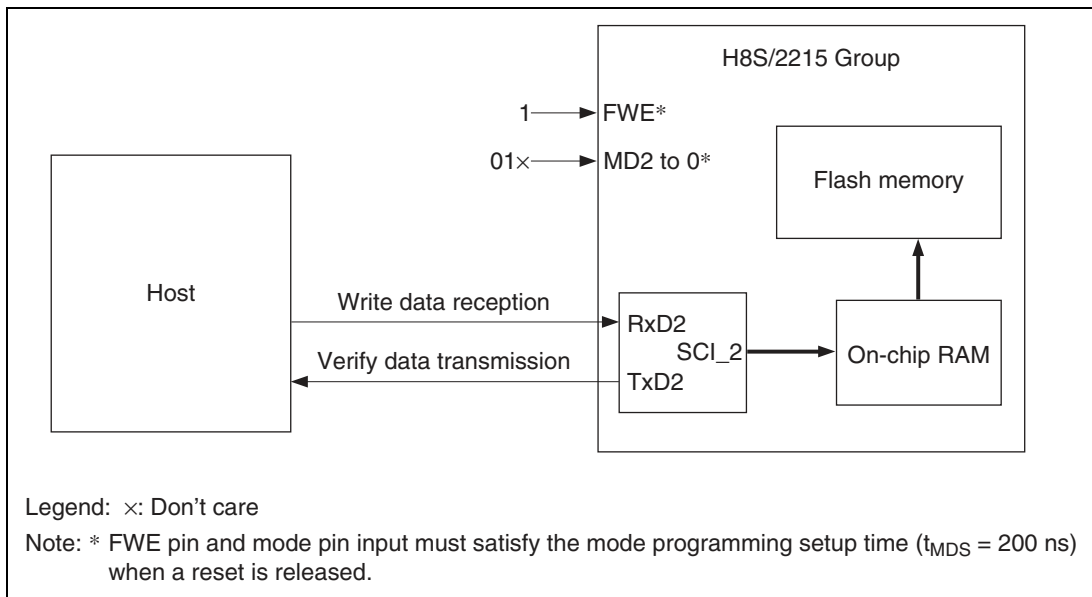


Figure 19.6 System Configuration in SCI Boot Mode

Table 19.4 shows the boot mode operations between reset end and branching to the programming control program.

1. When boot mode is used, the flash memory programming control program must be prepared in the host beforehand. Prepare a programming control program in accordance with the description in section 19.8, Flash Memory Programming/Erasing. In boot mode, if any data has been programmed into the flash memory (if all data is not 1), all flash memory blocks are erased. Boot mode is for use in enforced exit when user program mode is unavailable, such as the first time on-board programming is performed, or if the program activated in user program mode is accidentally erased.
2. The SCI_2 should be set to asynchronous mode, and the transfer format as follows: 8-bit data, 1 stop bit, and no parity.
3. When the boot program is initiated, the chip measures the low-level period of asynchronous SCI communication data (H'00) transmitted continuously from the host. The chip then calculates the bit rate of transmission from the host, and adjusts the SCI_2 bit rate to match that of the host. The reset should end with the RxD pin high. The RxD and TxD pins should be pulled up on the board if necessary. After the reset ends, it takes approximately 100 states before the chip is ready to measure the low-level period.
4. After matching the bit rates, the chip transmits one H'00 byte to the host to indicate the end of bit rate adjustment. The host should confirm that this adjustment end indication (H'00) has been received normally, and transmit one H'55 byte to the chip. If reception could not be

performed normally, initiate boot mode again by a reset. Depending on the host's transfer bit rate and system clock frequency of this LSI, there will be a discrepancy between the bit rates of the host and the chip. To operate the SCI properly, set the host's transfer bit rate and system clock frequency of this LSI within the ranges listed in table 19.5.

5. In boot mode, a part of the on-chip RAM area (4 kbytes) is used by the boot program. Addresses H'FFE000 to H'FFEFBF is the area to which the programming control program is transferred from the host. The boot program area cannot be used until the execution state in boot mode switches to the programming control program.
6. Before branching to the programming control program, the chip terminates transfer operations by the SCI_2 (by clearing the RE and TE bits in SCR to 0), but the adjusted bit rate value remains set in BRR. Therefore, the programming control program can still use it for transfer of write data or verify data with the host. The TxD pin is high. The contents of the CPU general registers are undefined immediately after branching to the programming control program. These registers must be initialized at the beginning of the programming control program, since the stack pointer (SP), in particular, is used implicitly in subroutine calls, etc.
7. Boot mode can be cleared by a reset. End the reset* after driving the reset pin low, waiting at least 20 states, and then setting the FWE pin and the mode (MD) pins. Boot mode is also cleared when a WDT overflow occurs.
8. Do not change the MD pin input levels in boot mode. If the mode pin input levels are changed (for example, from low to high) during a reset, the state of ports with multiplexed address functions and bus control output pins (\overline{AS} , \overline{RD} , \overline{WR}) will change according to the change in the microcomputer's operating mode. Therefore, care must be taken to make pin settings to prevent these pins from becoming output signal pins during a reset, or to prevent collision with signals outside the microcomputer.
9. All interrupts are disabled during programming or erasing of the flash memory.

Note: * Mode pin and FWE pin input must satisfy the mode programming setup time ($t_{MDS} = 200$ ns) with respect to the reset release timing.

Table 19.4 SCI Boot Mode Operation

| Item | Host Operation | LSI Operation |
|--|--|---|
| | | Branches to boot program at reset-start. |
| Bit rate adjustment | Continuously transmits data H'00 at specified bit rate. | Measures low-level period of receive data H'00. Calculates bit rate and sets it in BRR of SCI_2. |
| | Transmits data H'55 when data H'00 is received error-free. | Transmits data H'00 to host as adjustment end indication. Transmits data H'AA to host when data H'55 is received. |
| Transmits number of bytes (N) of programming control program | Transmits number of bytes (N) of programming control program to be transferred as 2-byte data (low-order byte following high-order byte) | Echobacks the 2-byte data received as verification data. |
| Transmits 1-byte of programming control program (repeated for N times) | Transmits 1-byte of programming control program | Echobacks received data to host and also transfers it to RAM |
| Flash memory erase | | Checks flash memory data, erases all flash memory blocks in case of written data existing, and transmits data H'AA to host. (If erase could not be done, transmits data H'FF to host and aborts operation.) |
| Programming control program execution | | Branches to programming control program transferred to on-chip RAM and starts execution. |

Table 19.5 System Clock Frequencies for Which Automatic Adjustment of LSI Bit Rate Is Possible

| Host Bit Rate | System Clock Frequency Range of LSI |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| 19,200 bps | HD64F2215: 13 to 16 MHz |
| 9,600 bps | HD64F2215R: 13 to 24 MHz |
| 4,800 bps | HD64F2215T: 16 MHz and 24 MHz |

19.6.2 USB Boot Mode (HD64F2215U, HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215TU and HD64F2215CU)

- Features
 - Selection of bus-powered mode or self-powered mode
 - HD64F2215U: Supports only 16-MHz system clock, with USB operating clock generation by means of PLL3 multiplication
HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215TU and HD64F2215CU: Supports either 16-MHz or 24-MHz system clock, with USB operating clock generation by means of PLL2 or PLL3 multiplication, respectively.
 - D+ pull-up control connection supported for P36 pin only
 - See table 19.6 for enumeration information

Table 19.6 Enumeration Information

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--|--------|
| USB standard | Ver.1.1 | |
| Transfer modes | Control (in, out), Bulk (in, out) | |
| Maximum power | Self power mode (\overline{UBPM} pin = 1) | 100 mA |
| | Bus power mode (\overline{UBPM} pin = 0) | 500 mA |
| Endpoint configuration | EP0 Control (in, out) 64 bytes | |
| | Configuration 1 | |
| | └ Interface Number 0 | |
| | └└ Alternate Setting 0 | |
| | └└└ EP1 Bulk (out) 64 bytes | |
| | └└└ EP2 Bulk (in) 64 bytes | |

- Notes on USB Boot Mode Execution
 - With the HD64F2215, use a 16-MHz system clock and an external circuit configuration that allows use of a PLL. With the HD64F2215RU, HD64F2215TU or HD64F2215CU use a 16-MHz or 24-MHz system clock and an external circuit configuration that allows use of a PLL. USB boot mode execution is not possible with other combinations.
 - Use the P36 pin for D+ pull-up control connection.
 - To ensure stable power supply during flash memory programming/erasing, do not use cable connection via a bus powered HUB.
 - Note in particular that, in the worst case, the LSI may be permanently damaged if the USB cable is detached during flash memory programming/erasing.
 - A transition is not made to software standby mode (a power-down mode) even if the USB bus enters suspend mode when in bus power mode.

2. When the boot program is activated, enumeration with respect to the host is carried out. Enumeration information is shown in table 19.6. When enumeration is completed, transmit a single H'55 byte from the host. If reception has not been performed normally, restart boot mode by means of a reset.
3. Set the frequency for transmission from the host as a numeric value in units of MHz \times 100 (ex: 16.00 MHz \rightarrow H'0640).
4. In boot mode, the 4-kbyte on-chip RAM area H'FFE000 to H'FFEFBF is used by the boot program. The programming control program transmitted from the host can be stored in the 8-kbyte area H'FFC000 to H'FFDFFF. The boot program area cannot be used until program execution switches to the programming control program. Also note that the boot program remains in RAM even after control passes to the programming control program.
5. When a branch is made to the programming control program, the USB remains connected and can be used immediately for transmission/reception of write data or verify data between the programming control program and the host. The contents of CPU general registers are undefined after a branch to the programming control program. Note, in particular, that since the stack pointer is used implicitly in subroutine calls and the like, it should be initialized at the start of the programming control program.
6. Boot mode is exited by means of a reset. Drive the reset pin low, wait for the elapse of at least 20 states, then set the FWE pin and mode pins to release* the reset. Boot mode is also exited in the event of a WDT overflow reset.
7. Do not change the input level of the mode pins while in boot mode. If the input level of a mode pin is changed (from low to high) during a reset, the states of ports with a dual function as address outputs, and bus control output signals (\overline{AS} , \overline{RD} , \overline{WR}), will change due to switching of the operating mode. Either make pin settings so that these pins do not become output signal pins during a reset, or take precautions to prevent collisions with external signals.
8. Interrupts cannot be used during flash memory programming or erasing.

Note: * FWE pin and mode pin input must satisfy the mode programming setup time ($t_{MDS} = 200$ ns) when a reset is released.

Table 19.7 USB Boot Mode Operation

| Item | Host Operation | Operation of this LSI |
|---|--|--|
| Start of USB boot mode | Transmits one H'55 byte on completion of USB enumeration | Branches to boot program after reset start Transmits one H'AA byte to host on reception of H'55 |
| Transfer clock information | Transmits frequency (2 bytes), number of multiplication classifications (1 byte), multiplication ratio (1 byte) With this LSI, H'0640, H'01, H'01 are transmitted | If received data are within respective ranges, transmits H'AA to host If any received data is out-of-range, transmits H'FF to host and halts operation |
| Transfer number of bytes (N) of programming control program | Performs 2-byte transfer of number of bytes (N) of programming control program | If received number of bytes is within range, transmits H'AA to host If received number of bytes is out-of-range, transmits H'FF to host and halts operation |
| Transfer of programming control program and sum value | Transmits programming control program in N-byte divisions. Transmits sum value (two's complement of sum total of programming control program (1 byte)) | Transfers received data to on-chip RAM Calculates sum total of received sum value and 1-byte units of programming control program transferred to on-chip RAM If sum is 0, transmits H'AA to host If sum is not 0, transmits H'FF to host and halts operation |
| Memory erase | Transmits total erase status command (H'3A) | Starts total erase of flash memory Transmits H'11 to host if total erase processing is being executed when total erase status command is received Transmits H'06 to host if total erase of all blocks has been completed when total erase status command is received |
| | Retransmits total erase status command (H'3A) when H'11 is received | If erase cannot be performed when total erase status command is received, transmits H'EE to host and halts operation |
| Execution of programming control program | | Branches to programming control program transferred to on-chip RAM and starts execution |

19.6.3 Programming/Erasing in User Program Mode

On-board programming/erasing of an individual flash memory block can also be performed in user program mode by branching to a user program/erase control program. The user must set branching conditions and provide on-board FWE control and supply of programming data, and storing a program/erase control program in part of the program area as necessary. The flash memory must contain the user program/erase control program or a program which provides the user program/erase control program from external memory. Because the flash memory itself cannot be read during programming/erasing, transfer the user program/erase control program to on-chip RAM, as like in boot mode. Figure 19.8 shows a sample procedure for programming/erasing in user program mode. Prepare a user program/erase control program in accordance with the description in section 19.8, Flash Memory Programming/Erasing.

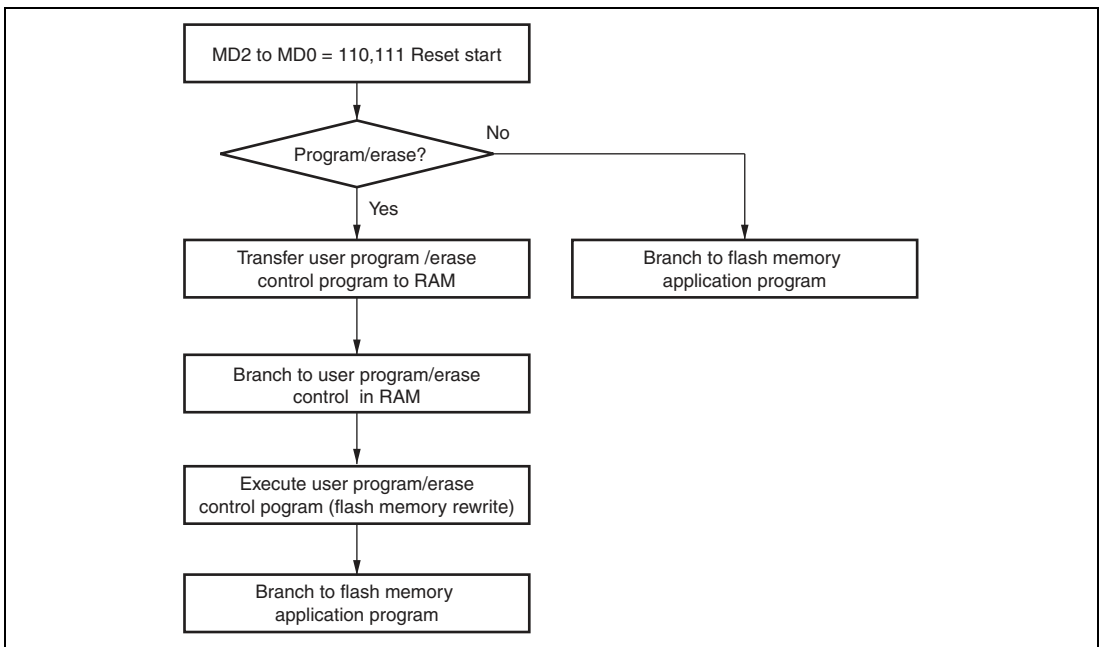


Figure 19.8 Programming/Erasing Flowchart Example in User Program Mode

19.7 Flash Memory Emulation in RAM

Making a setting in the RAM emulation register (RAMER) enables part of RAM to be overlapped onto the flash memory area so that data to be written to flash memory can be emulated in RAM in real time. Emulation can be performed in user mode or user program mode. Figure 19.9 shows an example of emulation of real-time flash memory programming.

1. Set RAMER to overlap part of RAM onto the area for which real-time programming is required.
2. Emulation is performed using the overlapping RAM.
3. After the program data has been confirmed, the RAMS bit is cleared, thus releasing RAM overlap.
4. The data written in the overlapping RAM is written into the flash memory space (EB0).

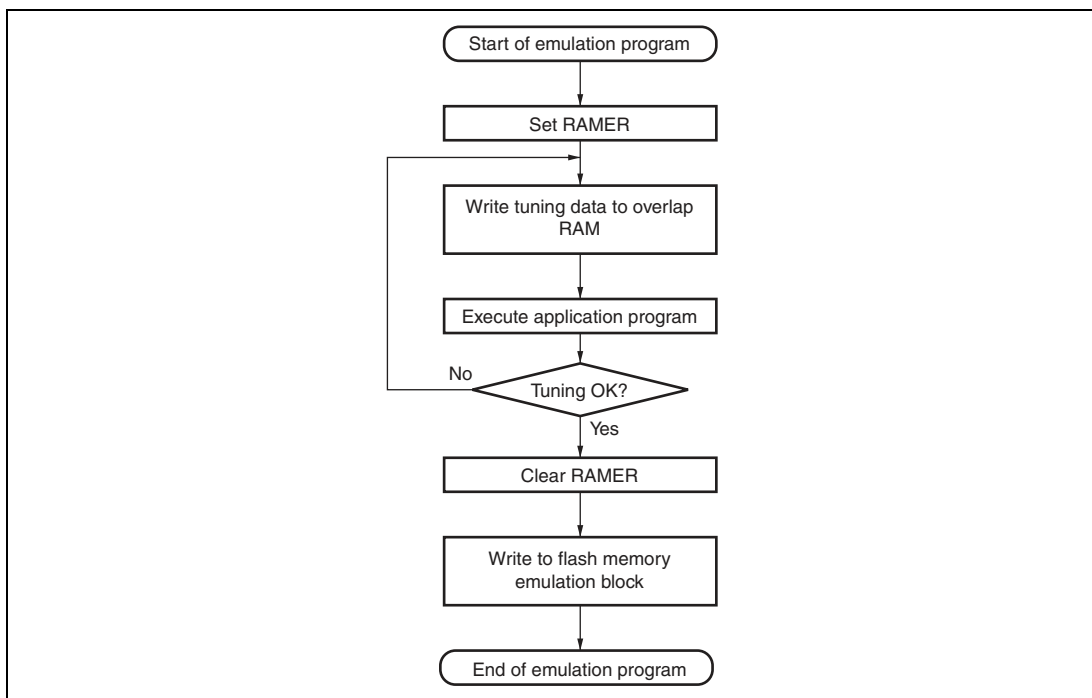


Figure 19.9 Flowchart for Flash Memory Emulation in RAM

Example in which flash memory block area EB0 is overlapped is shown in figure 19.10.

1. The RAM area to be overlapped is fixed at a 4-kbyte area in the range of H'FFD000 to H'FFDFFF.
2. The flash memory area to overlap is selected by RAMER from a 4-kbyte area among one of the EB0 to EB7 blocks.
3. The overlapped RAM area can be accessed from both the flash memory addresses and RAM addresses.
4. When the RAMS bit in RAMER is set to 1, program/erase protection is enabled for all flash memory blocks (emulation protection). In this state, setting the P1 or E1 bit in FLMCR1 to 1 does not cause a transition to program mode or erase mode.
5. A RAM area cannot be erased by execution of software in accordance with the erase algorithm.
6. Block area EB0 contains the vector table. When performing RAM emulation, the vector table is needed in the overlap RAM.

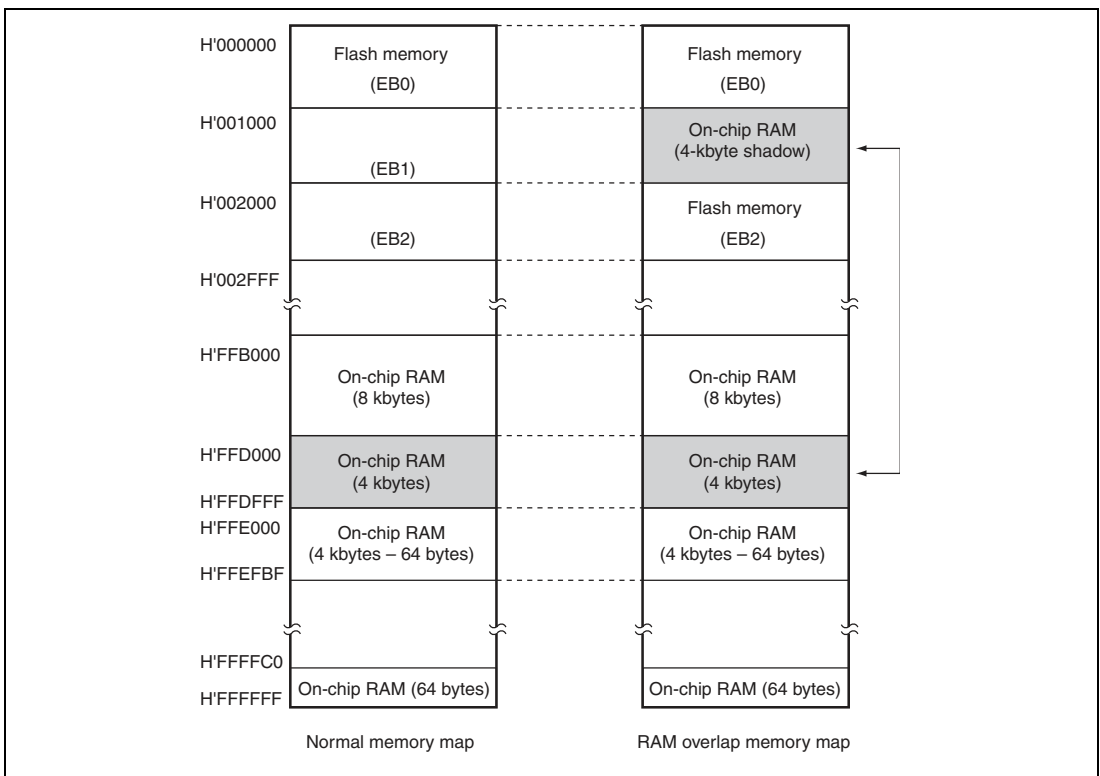


Figure 19.10 Example of RAM Overlap Operation

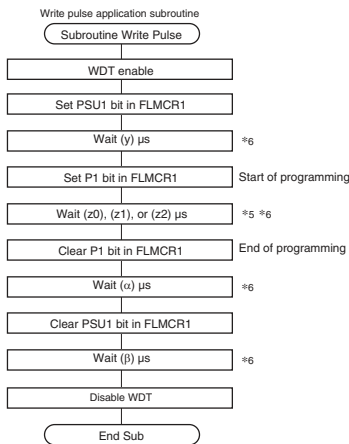
19.8 Flash Memory Programming/Erasing

A software method, using the CPU, is employed to program and erase flash memory in the on-board programming modes. Depending on the FLMCR1 setting, the flash memory operates in one of the following four modes: program mode, erase mode, program-verify mode, and erase-verify mode. The programming control program in boot mode and the user program/erase control program in user program mode use these operating modes in combination to perform programming/erasing. Flash memory programming and erasing should be performed in accordance with the descriptions in section 19.8.1, Program/Program-Verify and section 19.8.2, Erase/Erase-Verify, respectively.

19.8.1 Program/Program-Verify

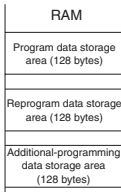
When writing data or programs to the flash memory, the program/program-verify flowchart shown in figure 19.11 should be followed. Performing programming operations according to this flowchart will enable data or programs to be written to the flash memory without subjecting the chip to voltage stress or sacrificing program data reliability.

1. Programming must be done to an empty address. Do not reprogram an address to which programming has already been performed.
2. Programming should be carried out 128 bytes at a time. A 128-byte data transfer must be performed even if writing fewer than 128 bytes. In this case, H'FF data must be written to the extra addresses.
3. Prepare the following data storage areas in RAM: a 128-byte programming data area, a 128-byte reprogramming data area, and a 128-byte additional-programming data area. Perform reprogramming data computation and additional programming data computation according to figure 19.11.
4. Consecutively transfer 128 bytes of data in byte units from the reprogramming data area or additional-programming data area to the flash memory. The program address and 128-byte data are latched in the flash memory. The lower 8 bits of the start address in the flash memory destination area must be H'00 or H'80.
5. The time during which the P1 bit is set to 1 is the programming time. Figure 19.11 shows the allowable programming times.
6. The watchdog timer (WDT) is set to prevent overprogramming due to program runaway, etc. An overflow cycle of approximately $(y + z1 + \alpha + \beta)$ μ s is allowed.
7. For a dummy write to a verify address, write 1-byte data H'FF to an address whose lower 1 bit is B'0. Verify data can be read in words from the address to which a dummy write was performed.
8. The maximum number of repetitions of the program/program-verify sequence to the same bit is $(N1 + N2)$.



Note: 7. Write Pulse Width

| Number of Writes n | P1 bit set time (μs)*6 | |
|--------------------|------------------------|------------|
| | Program | Re-program |
| 1 | z0 | z2 |
| 2 | z0 | z2 |
| ⋮ | ⋮ | ⋮ |
| N1-1 | z0 | z2 |
| N1 | z0 | z2 |
| N1+1 | z1 | — |
| N1+2 | z1 | — |
| N1+3 | z1 | — |
| ⋮ | ⋮ | ⋮ |
| N1+N2-2 | z1 | — |
| N1+N2-1 | z1 | — |
| N1+N2 | z1 | — |



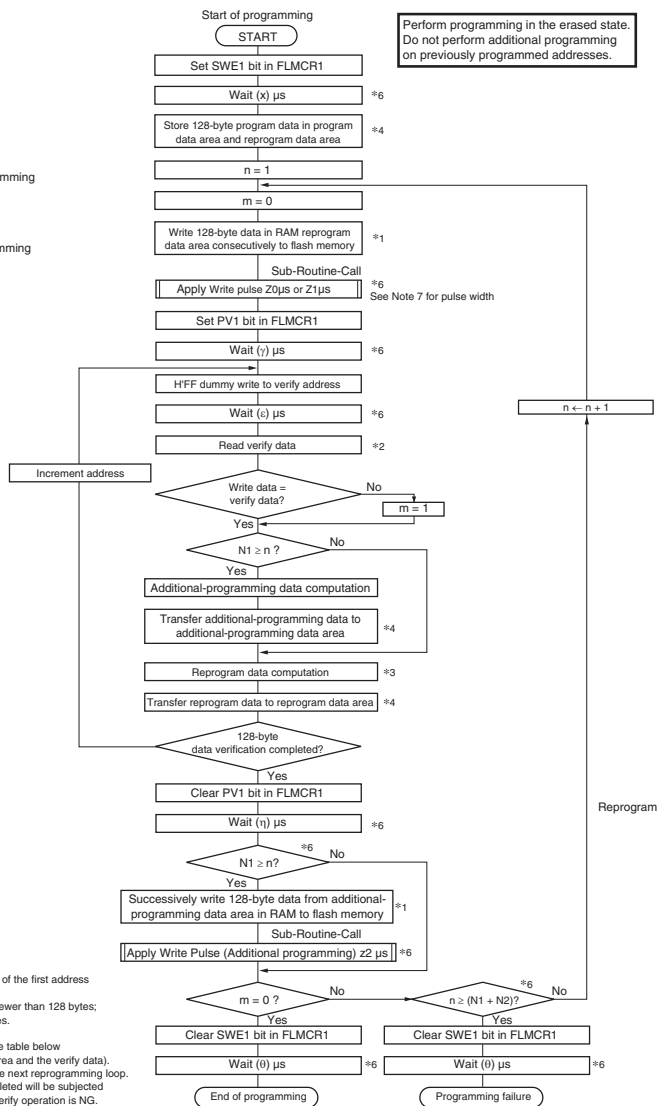
- Notes:
- Data transfer is performed by byte transfer. The lower 8 bits of the first address written to must be H'00 or H'80. A 128-byte data transfer must be performed even if writing fewer than 128 bytes; in this case, HFF data must be written to the extra addresses.
 - Verify data is read in 16-bit (word) units.
 - Reprogram data is determined by the operation shown in the table below (comparison between the data stored in the program data area and the verify data). Bits for which the reprogram data is 0 are programmed in the next reprogramming loop. Therefore, even bits for which programming has been completed will be subjected to programming once again if the result of the subsequent verify operation is NG.
 - A 128-byte area for storing program data, a 128-byte area for storing reprogram data, and a 128-byte area for storing additional data must be provided in RAM. The contents of the reprogram data area and additional data area are modified as programming proceeds.
 - A write pulse of z0 or z1 is applied according to the progress of the programming operation. See note 7 for details of the pulse widths.
 - When writing of additional-programming data is executed, a z2 write pulse should be applied. Reprogram data X means reprogram data when the write pulse is applied.

Reprogram Data Computation Table

| Original Data (D) | Verify Data (V) | Reprogram Data (X) | Comments |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | Programming completed |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Programming incomplete; reprogram |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | Still in erased state; no action |

Additional-Programming Data Computation Table

| Reprogram Data (X') | Verify Data (V) | Additional-Programming Data (Y) | Comments |
|---------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Additional programming to be executed |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | Additional programming not to be executed |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | Additional programming not to be executed |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | Additional programming not to be executed |



Perform programming in the erased state. Do not perform additional programming on previously programmed addresses.

Figure 19.11 Program/Program-Verify Flowchart

19.8.2 Erase/Erase-Verify

When erasing flash memory, the erase/erase-verify flowchart shown in figure 19.12 should be followed.

1. Prewriting (setting erase block data to all 0s) is not necessary.
2. Erasing is performed in block units. Make only a single-bit specification in the erase block register 1 (EBR1), and erase block register 2 (EBR2). To erase multiple blocks, each block must be erased in turn.
3. The time during which the E1 bit is set to 1 is the flash memory erase time.
4. The watchdog timer (WDT) is set to prevent overprogramming due to program runaway, etc. An overflow cycle of approximately $(y+z+\alpha+\beta)$ ms is allowed.
5. For a dummy write to a verify address, write 1-byte data H'FF to an address whose lower 1 bit is B'0. Verify data can be read in words from the address to which a dummy write was performed.
6. If the read data is unerased, set erase mode again, and repeat the erase/erase-verify sequence as before. The maximum number of repetitions of the erase/erase-verify sequence is N.

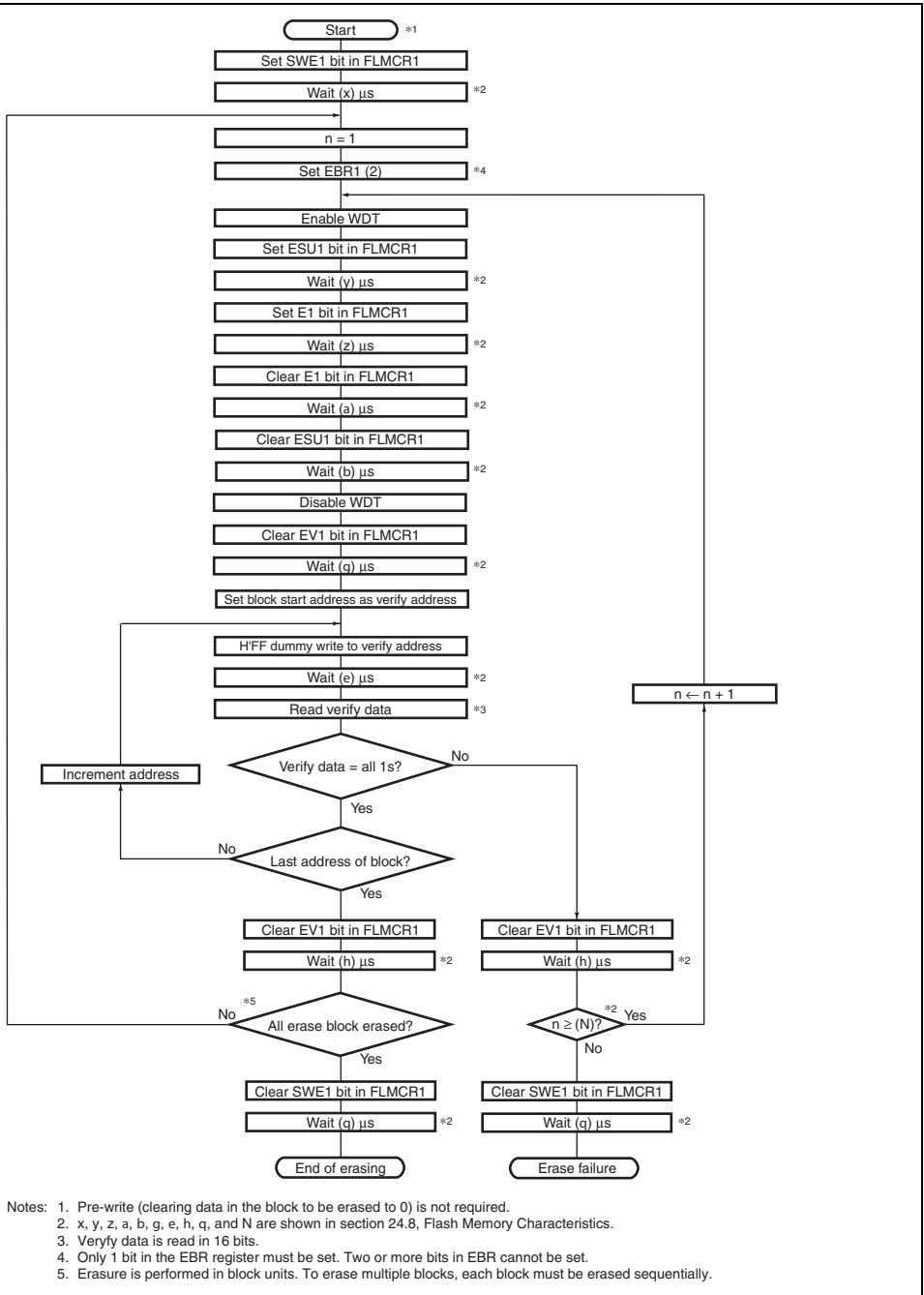


Figure 19.12 Erase/Erase-Verify Flowchart

19.9 Program/Erase Protection

There are three kinds of flash memory program/erase protection: hardware protection, software protection, and error protection.

19.9.1 Hardware Protection

Hardware protection refers to a state in which programming/erasing of flash memory is forcibly disabled or aborted because of a transition to reset or standby mode. Flash memory control register 1 (FLMCR1), flash memory control register 2 (FLMCR2), and erase block register 1 (EBR1), and erase block register 2 (EBR2) are initialized. In a reset via the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin, the reset state is not entered unless the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is held low until oscillation stabilizes after powering on. In the case of a reset during operation, hold the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin low for the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pulse width specified in the AC Characteristics section.

19.9.2 Software Protection

Software protection can be implemented against programming/erasing of all flash memory blocks by clearing the SWE1 bit in FLMCR1. When software protection is in effect, setting the P1 or E1 bit in FLMCR1 does not cause a transition to program mode or erase mode. By setting the erase block register 1 (EBR1), and erase block register 2 (EBR2), erase protection can be set for individual blocks. When EBR1 and EBR2 are set to H'00, erase protection is set for all blocks.

19.9.3 Error Protection

In error protection, an error is detected when the CPU's runaway occurs during flash memory programming/erasing, or operation is not performed in accordance with the program/erase algorithm, and the program/erase operation is aborted. Aborting the program/erase operation prevents damage to the flash memory due to overprogramming or overerasing.

When the following errors are detected during programming/erasing of flash memory, the FLER bit in FLMCR2 is set to 1, and the error protection state is entered.

Setting Conditions of FLER Bit (Error Protection)

- When the flash memory of the relevant address area is read during programming/erasing (including vector read and instruction fetch)
- Immediately after exception handling (excluding a reset) during programming/erasing
- When a SLEEP instruction is executed during programming/erasing
- When the CPU releases the bus mastership to the DMAC or DTC during programming/erasing

The FLMCR1, FLMCR2, EBR1 and EBR2 settings are retained, but program mode or erase mode is aborted at the point at which the error occurred. Program mode or erase mode cannot be re-entered by re-setting the P1 or E1 bit. However, PV1 and EV1 bit setting is enabled, and a transition can be made to verify mode.

19.10 Interrupt Handling when Programming/Erasing Flash Memory

All interrupts, including NMI interrupt is disabled when flash memory is being programmed or erased (when the P1 or E1 bit is set in FLMCR1), and while the boot program is executing in boot mode^{*1}, to give priority to the program or erase operation. There are three reasons for this:

1. Interrupt during programming or erasing might cause a violation of the programming or erasing algorithm, with the result that normal operation could not be assured.
2. In the interrupt exception handling sequence during programming or erasing, the vector would not be read correctly^{*2}, possibly resulting in CPU runaway.
3. If interrupt occurred during boot program execution, it would not be possible to execute the normal boot mode sequence.

- Notes:
1. Interrupt requests must be disabled inside and outside the CPU until the programming control program has completed programming.
 2. The vector may not be read correctly in this case for the following two reasons:
 - If flash memory is read while being programmed or erased (while the P1 or E1 bit is set in FLMCR1), correct read data will not be obtained (undetermined values will be returned).
 - If the interrupt entry in the vector table has not been programmed yet, interrupt exception handling will not be executed correctly.

19.11 Programmer Mode

In programmer mode, a PROM programmer can perform programming/erasing via a socket adapter, just like for a discrete flash memory. Use a PROM programmer which supports the Renesas Electronics 256-kbyte flash memory on-chip MCU device type. Memory map in programmer mode is shown in figure 19.13.

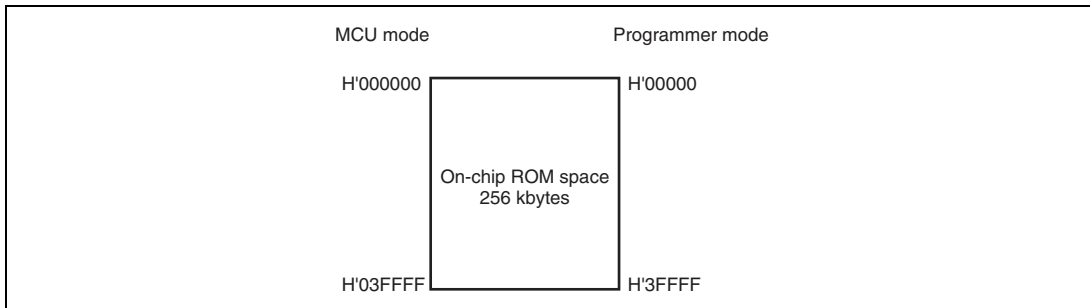


Figure 19.13 Memory Map in Programmer Mode

19.12 Power-Down States for Flash Memory

In user mode, the flash memory will operate in either of the following states:

- Normal operating mode
The flash memory can be read and written to.
- Standby mode
All flash memory circuits are halted.

Table 19.8 shows the correspondence between the operating modes of this LSI and the flash memory. When the flash memory returns to normal operation from a power-down state, a power supply circuit stabilization period is needed. When the flash memory returns to its normal operating state, bits STS2 to STS0 in SBYCR must be set to provide a wait time of at least 100 μ s, even when the external clock is being used and an oscillation stabilization time is not necessary.

Table 19.8 Flash Memory Operating States

| LSI Operating State | Flash Memory Operating State |
|---------------------|---|
| Active mode | Normal operating mode |
| Sleep mode | Normal operating mode |
| Standby mode | Standby mode (Before entering to the normal operation mode, wait time of at least 100 μ s is required) |

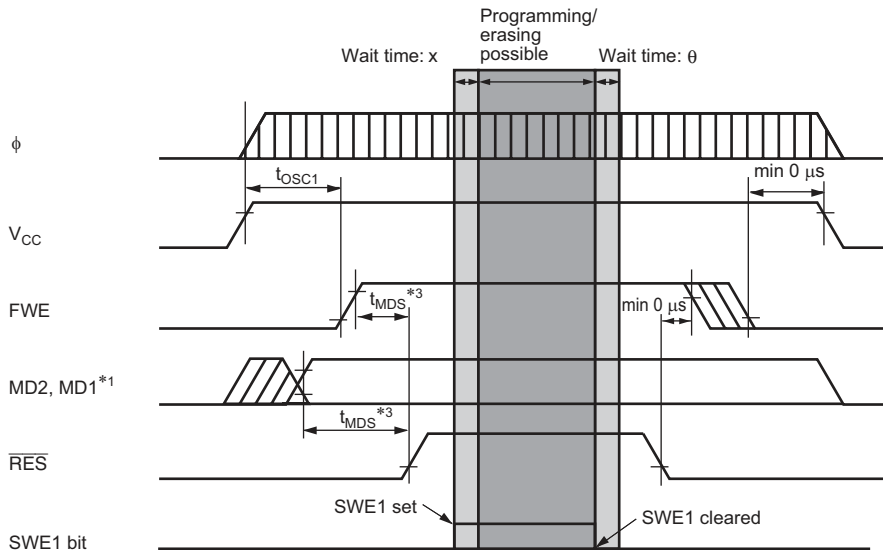
19.13 Flash Memory Programming and Erasing Precautions

Precautions concerning the use of on-board programming mode, the RAM emulation function, and PROM mode are summarized below.

- Use the specified voltages and timing for programming and erasing.
Applied voltages in excess of the rating can permanently damage the device. Use a PROM programmer that supports the Renesas Electronics microcomputer device type with 256-kbyte on-chip flash memory (FZTAT256V3A).
Do not select the HN27C4096 setting for the PROM programmer, and only use the specified socket adapter. Failure to observe these points may result in damage to the device.
- Powering on and off
Do not apply a high level to the FWE pin until VCC has stabilized. Also, drive the FWE pin low before turning off VCC. When applying or disconnecting VCC power, fix the FWE pin low and place the flash memory in the hardware protection state. The power-on and power-off timing requirements should also be satisfied in the event of a power failure and subsequent recovery.
- FWE application/disconnection
FWE application should be carried out when MCU operation is in a stable condition. If MCU operation is not stable, fix the FWE pin low and set the protection state. The following points must be observed concerning FWE application and disconnection to prevent unintentional programming or erasing of flash memory:
 - Apply FWE when the VCC voltage has stabilized within its rated voltage range.
 - In boot mode, apply and disconnect FWE during a reset.
 - In user program mode, FWE can be switched between high and low level regardless of the reset state. FWE input can also be switched during execution of a program in flash memory.
 - Do not apply FWE if program runaway has occurred.
 - Disconnect FWE only when the SWE1, ESU1, PSU1, EV1, PV1, P1, and E1 bits in FLMCR1 are cleared. Make sure that the SWE1, ESU1, PSU1, EV1, PV1, P1, and E1 bits are not set by mistake when applying or disconnecting FWE.
- Do not apply a constant high level to the FWE pin.
Apply a high level to the FWE pin only when programming or erasing flash memory. A system configuration in which a high level is constantly applied to the FWE pin should be avoided. Also, while a high level is applied to the FWE pin, the watchdog timer should be activated to prevent overprogramming or overerasing due to program runaway, etc.

- Use the recommended algorithm when programming and erasing flash memory.
The recommended algorithm enables programming and erasing to be carried out without subjecting the device to voltage stress or sacrificing program data reliability. When setting the P1 or E1 bit in FLMCR1, the watchdog timer should be set beforehand as a precaution against program runaway, etc.
- Do not set or clear the SWE1 bit during execution of a program in flash memory.
Wait for at least $0 \mu\text{s}^*$ after clearing the SWE1 bit before executing a program or reading data in flash memory. When the SWE1 bit is set, data in flash memory can be rewritten, but access flash memory only for verify operations (verification during programming/erasing). Also, do not clear the SWE1 bit during programming, erasing, or verifying. Similarly, when using emulation by RAM with a high level applied to the FWE pin, the SWE1 bit should be cleared before executing a program or reading data in flash memory. However, read/write accesses can be performed in the RAM area overlapping the flash memory space regardless of whether the SWE1 bit is set or cleared.
- Do not use interrupts while flash memory is being programmed or erased.
All interrupt requests, including NMI, should be disabled during FWE application to give priority to program/erase operations.
- Do not perform additional programming. Erase the memory before reprogramming.
In on-board programming, perform only one programming operation on a 128-byte programming unit block. In programmer mode, too, perform only one programming operation on a 128-byte programming unit block. Programming should be carried out with the entire programming unit block erased.
- Before programming, check that the chip is correctly mounted in the PROM programmer.
Overcurrent damage to the device can result if the index marks on the PROM programmer socket, socket adapter, and chip are not correctly aligned.
- Do not touch the socket adapter or chip during programming.
Touching either of these can cause contact faults and write errors.
- The reset state must be entered after powering on
Apply the reset signal for at least $100 \mu\text{s}$ during the oscillation setting period.
- When a reset is applied during operation, this should be done while the SWE1 pin is low.
Wait at least $0 \mu\text{s}^*$ after clearing the SWE1 bit before applying the reset.

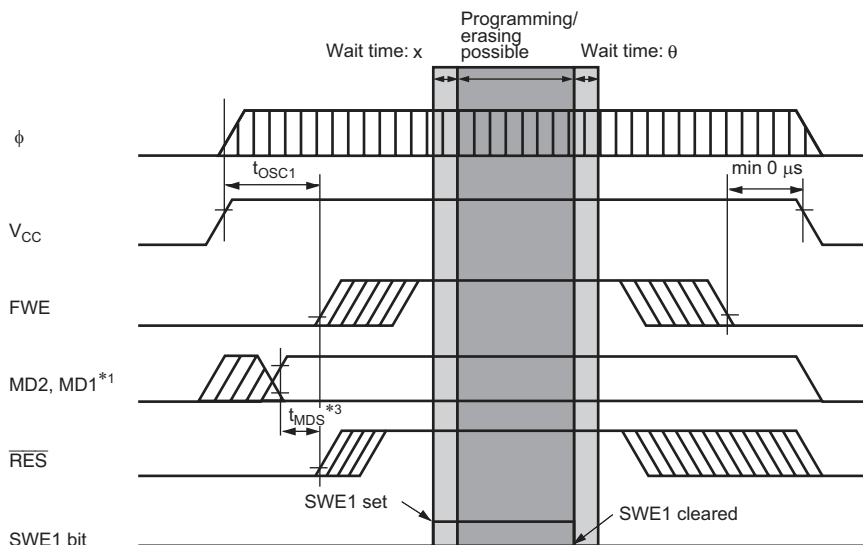
Note: * Refer to section 24.8, Flash Memory Characteristics.





- Period during which flash memory access is prohibited
x: Wait time after setting SWE1 bit)^{*2}
- Period during which flash memory can be programmed
(Execution of program in flash memory prohibited, and data reads other than verify operations prohibited)

- Notes: 1. Except when switching modes, the level of the mode pins (MD2 and MD1) must be fixed until power-off by pulling the pins up or down.
 2. See section 24.8, Flash Memory Characteristics.
 3. Mode programming setup time t_{MDS} (min) = 200 ns.

Figure 19.14 Power-On/Off Timing (Boot Mode)



 Period during which flash memory access is prohibited (x: Wait time after setting SWE1 bit)^{*2}

 Period during which flash memory can be programmed (Execution of program in flash memory prohibited, and data reads other than verify operations prohibited)

- Notes: 1. Except when switching modes, the level of the mode pins (MD2 and MD1) must be fixed until power-off by pulling the pins up or down.
 2. See section 24.8, Flash Memory Characteristics.
 3. Mode programming setup time t_{MDS} (min) = 200 ns.

Figure 19.15 Power-On/Off Timing (User Program Mode)

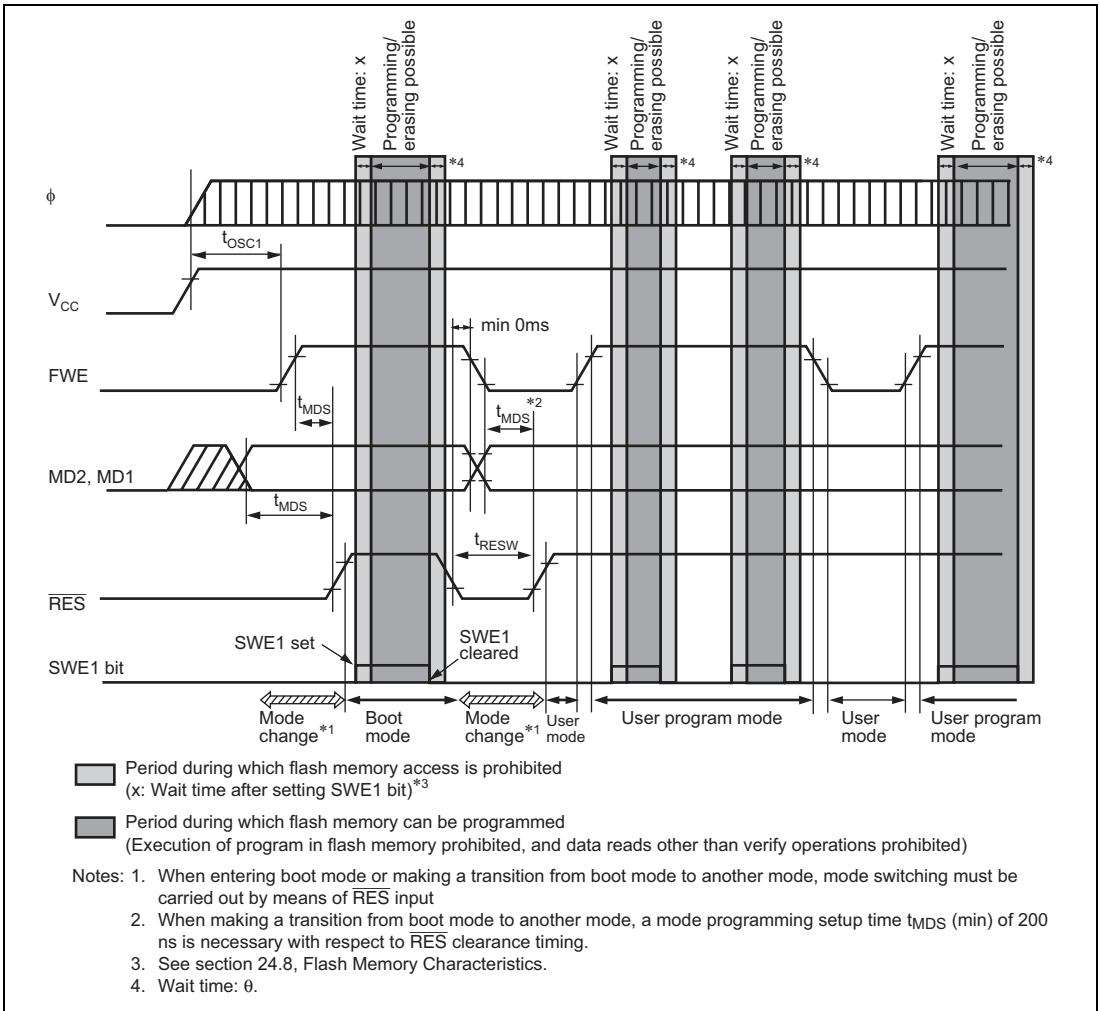


Figure 19.16 Mode Transition Timing
(Example: Boot Mode → User Mode ↔ User Program Mode)

19.14 Note on Switching from F-ZTAT Version to Masked ROM Version

The masked ROM version does not have the internal registers for flash memory control that are provided in the F-ZTAT version. Table 19.7 lists the registers that are present in the F-ZTAT version but not in the masked ROM version. If a register listed in table 19.7 is read in the masked ROM version, an undefined value will be returned. Therefore, if application software developed on the F-ZTAT version is switched to a masked ROM version product, it must be modified to ensure that the registers in table 19.9 have no effect.

Table 19.9 Registers Present in F-ZTAT Version but Absent in Masked ROM Version

| Register | Abbreviation | Address |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Flash memory control register 1 | FLMCR1 | H'FFA8 |
| Flash memory control register 2 | FLMCR2 | H'FFA9 |
| Erase block register 1 | EBR1 | H'FFAA |
| Erase block register 2 | EBR2 | H'FFAB |
| RAM emulation register | RAMER | H'FEDB |
| Serial control register x | SCRX | H'FDB4 |

Section 20 Masked ROM

This LSI incorporates a masked ROM which has the following features.

20.1 Features

- Size:

| Product Class | | ROM Size | ROM Address (Modes 6 and 7) |
|----------------|------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| H8S/2215 Group | HD6432215B | 128 kbytes | H'000000 to H'01FFFF |
| | HD6432215C | 64 kbytes | H'000000 to H'00FFFF |

- Connected to the bus master through 16-bit data bus, enabling one-state access to both byte data and word data.

Figure 20.1 shows a block diagram of the on-chip masked ROM.

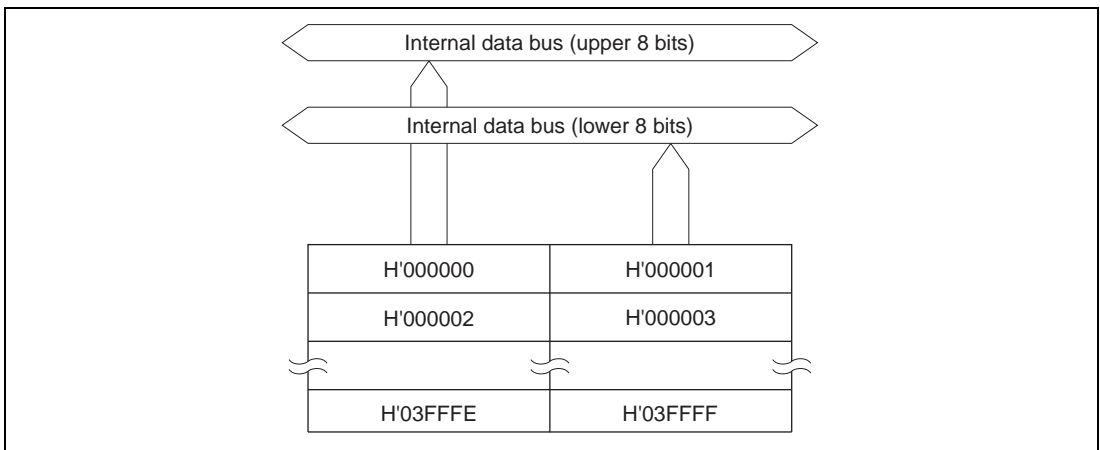


Figure 20.1 Block Diagram of On-Chip Masked ROM (256 kbytes)

Section 21 Clock Pulse Generator

This LSI has an on-chip clock pulse generator that generates the system clock (ϕ), the bus master clock, and internal clocks. The clock pulse generator consists of a system clock oscillator, duty adjustment circuit, medium-speed clock divider, bus master clock selection circuit, USB operating clock oscillator, PLL (Phase Locked Loop) circuit, and USB operating clock selection circuit. A block diagram of clock pulse generator is shown in figure 21.1.

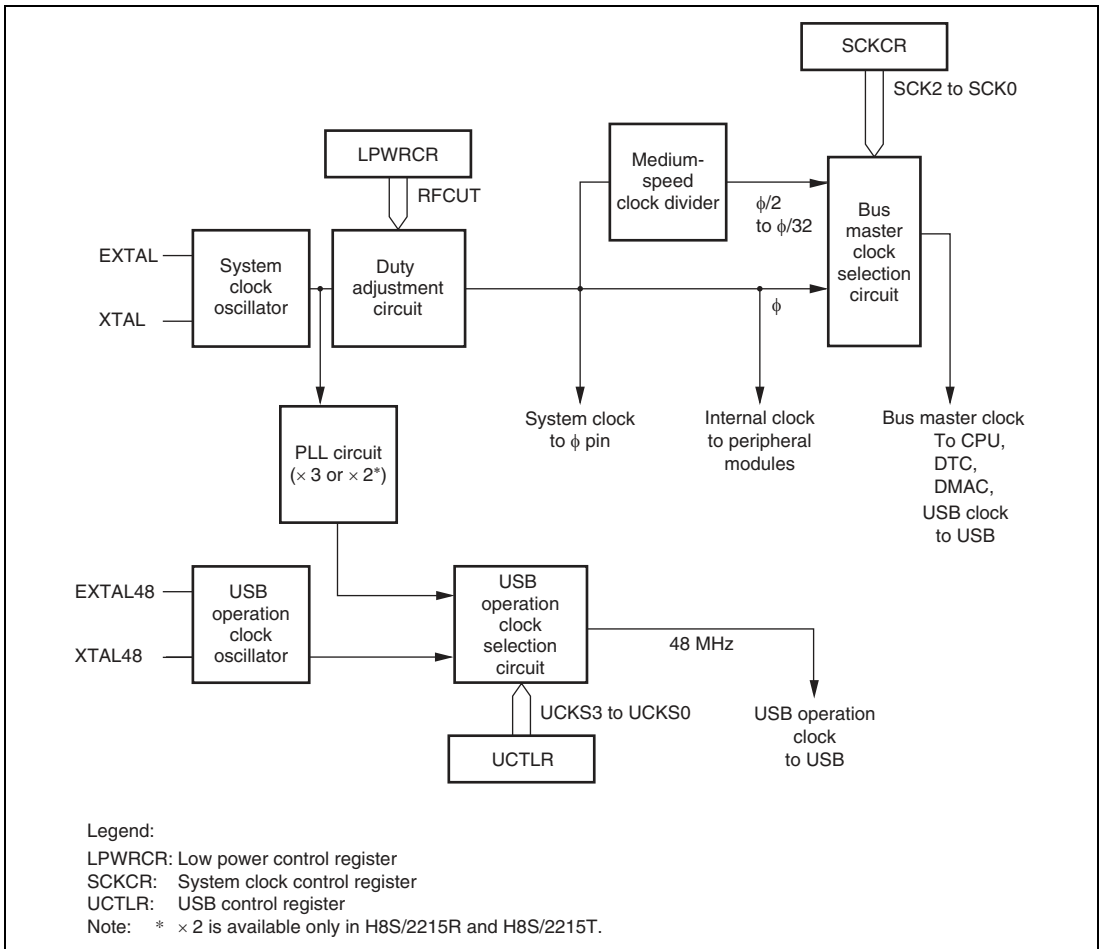


Figure 21.1 Block Diagram of Clock Pulse Generator

The frequency of the system clock oscillator can be changed by software by means of settings in the low-power control register (LPWRCR) and system clock control register (SCKCR). Either USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator or PLL 48-MHz clock can be selected by software by means of setting the USB control register (UCTLR). For details, refer to section 15, Universal Serial Bus Interface (USB).

21.1 Register Descriptions

The on-chip clock pulse generator has the following registers.

- System clock control register (SCKCR)
- Low-power control register (LPWRCR)

21.1.1 System Clock Control Register (SCKCR)

SCKCR controls ϕ clock output and medium-speed mode.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | PSTOP | 0 | R/W | <p>ϕ Clock Output Disable</p> <p>Controls ϕ output.</p> <p>Operation differs depending on the mode. For details, see section 22.7, ϕ Clock Output Disabling Function.</p> <p>0: ϕ output, fixed high, or high impedance</p> <p>1: Fixed high or high impedance</p> |
| 6 | — | 0 | R/W | <p>Reserved</p> <p>This bit can be read from or written to, but the write value should always 0.</p> |
| 5, 4 | — | All 0 | — | <p>Reserved</p> <p>These bits are always read as 0.</p> |
| 3 | — | 0 | R/W | <p>Reserved</p> <p>This bit can be read from or written to, but the write value should always be 0.</p> |
| 2 | SCK2 | 0 | R/W | System Clock Select 2 to 0 |
| 1 | SCK1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the bus master clock. |
| 0 | SCK0 | 0 | R/W | <p>000: High-speed mode</p> <p>001: Medium-speed clock is $\phi/2$</p> <p>010: Medium-speed clock is $\phi/4$</p> <p>011: Medium-speed clock is $\phi/8$</p> <p>100: Medium-speed clock is $\phi/16$</p> <p>101: Medium-speed clock is $\phi/32$</p> <p>11x: Setting prohibited</p> |

Legend:

x: Don't care

21.1.2 Low-Power Control Register (LPWRCR)

LPWRCR selects whether the oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit are used with external clock input.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 to 4 | — | All 0 | R/W | Reserved These bits can be read from or written to, but the write value should always be 0. |
| 3 | RFCUT | 0 | R/W | Built-in Feedback Resistor Control Selects whether the oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit are used with external clock input. This bit should not be accessed when a crystal oscillator is used. After this bit is set when using external clock input, a transition should initially be made to software standby mode. Switching between use and non-use of the oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit is performed when the transition is made to software standby mode. 0: System clock oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit are used 1: System clock oscillator's built-in feedback resistor and duty adjustment circuit are not used |
| 2 | — | 0 | R/W | Reserved This bit can be read from or written to, but the write value should always be 0. |
| 1 | STC1 | 0 | R/W | Frequency Multiplication Factor |
| 0 | STC0 | 0 | R/W | Specify the frequency multiplication factor of the PLL circuit incorporated into the evaluation chip. The specified frequency multiplication factor is valid after a transition to software standby mode, watch mode, or subactive mode. With this LSI, STC1 and STC0 must both be set to 1. After a reset, STC1 and STC0 are both cleared to 0, and so must be set to 1. 00: × 1 01: × 2 (Setting prohibited) 10: × 4 (Setting prohibited) 11: PLL is bypassed |

21.2 System Clock Oscillator

The system clock can be supplied by connecting a crystal or ceramic resonator, or by input of an external clock. Suitable resonators differ depending on the product. For details, see table 21.1.

Table 21.1 List of Suitable Resonators

| | Crystal Resonator | Ceramic Resonator | External Clock |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| H8S/2215 | 13 to 16 MHz | — | 13 to 16 MHz |
| H8S/2215R | 13 to 24 MHz | — | 13 to 24 MHz |
| H8S/2215T | — | 16, 24 MHz | 16, 24 MHz |
| H8S/2215C | 16 to 24 MHz | — | 16 to 24 MHz |

Legend:

—: Not available

21.2.1 Connecting a Crystal Resonator

A crystal resonator can be connected as shown in the example in figure 21.2. Select the damping resistance R_d according to table 21.2. An AT-cut parallel-resonance crystal should be used.

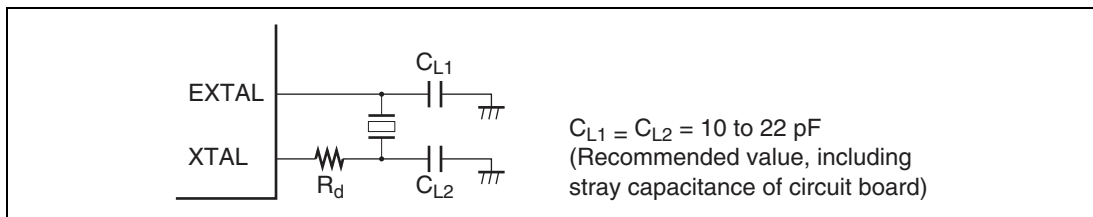


Figure 21.2 Connection of Crystal Resonator (Example)

Table 21.2 Damping Resistance Value

| Frequency (MHz) | 13 | 16 | 24* |
|--------------------|----|----|-----|
| R_d (Ω) | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Note: * Available only in H8S/2215R and H8S/2215C.

Figure 21.3 shows the equivalent circuit of the crystal resonator. Use a crystal resonator that has the characteristics shown in table 21.3.

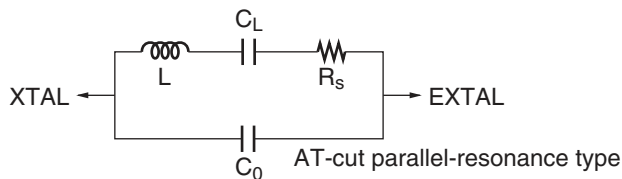


Figure 21.3 Crystal Resonator Equivalent Circuit

Table 21.3 Crystal Resonator Characteristics

| Frequency (MHz) | 13 | 16 | 24* |
|------------------------|----|----|-----|
| R_s max (Ω) | 60 | 50 | 40 |
| C_0 max (pF) | 7 | 7 | |

Note: * Available only in H8S/2215R and H8S/2215C.

21.2.2 Connecting a Ceramic Resonator (H8S/2215T)

Figure 21.6 shows an example wiring diagram for connecting a ceramic resonator.

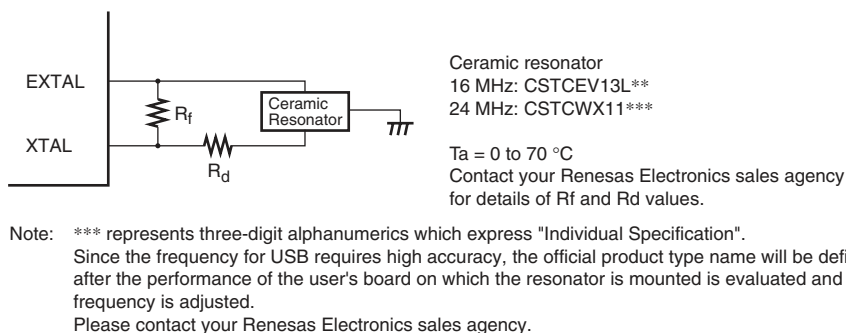


Figure 21.4 Example Wiring Diagram for Connecting a Ceramic Resonator

21.2.3 Inputting an External Clock

An external clock signal can be input as shown in an example in figure 21.5. If the XTAL pin is left open, make sure that stray capacitance is no more than 10 pF. When complementary clock input to XTAL pin, the external clock input should be fixed high in standby mode.

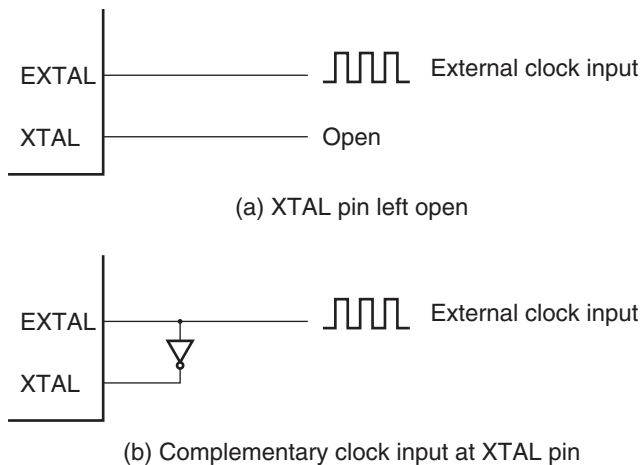


Figure 21.5 External Clock Input (Examples)

Table 21.4 shows the input conditions for the external clock.

Table 21.4 External Clock Input Conditions

| Item | Symbol | VCC = 2.7 V to 3.6 V | | VCC = 3.0 V to 3.6 V* | | Unit | Test Conditions |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|------|--------------------------|------|-----------|--------------------|
| | | Min | Max | Min | Max | | |
| External clock input low pulse width | t_{EXL} | 25 | — | 15.5 | — | ns | Figure 21.6 |
| External clock input high pulse width | t_{EXH} | 25 | — | 15.5 | — | ns | |
| External clock rise time | t_{EXr} | — | 6.25 | — | 5.25 | ns | |
| External clock fall time | t_{EXf} | — | 6.25 | — | 5.25 | ns | |
| Clock low pulse width level | t_{CL} | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{cyc} | Figure 24.3 |
| Clock high pulse width level | t_{CH} | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{cyc} | |

Note: * Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

The external clock input conditions when the duty adjustment circuit is not used are shown in table 21.5. When the duty adjustment circuit is not used, note that the maximum operating frequency depends on the external clock input waveform. For example, if $t_{EXL} = T_{EXH} = 31.25$ ns

and $t_{EXr} = t_{EXf} = 6.25$ ns, the maximum operating frequency becomes 13.3 MHz depending on the clock cycle time of 75 ns.

Table 21.5 External Clock Input Conditions when Duty Adjustment Circuit Is Not Used

| Item | Symbol | VCC = 2.7 V to 3.6 V | | VCC = 3.0 V to 3.6 V* | | Unit | Test Conditions |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|------|--------------------------|------|------|--------------------|
| | | Min | Max | Min | Max | | |
| External clock input low pulse width | t_{EXL} | 31.25 | — | 20.8 | — | ns | Figure 21.5 |
| External clock input high pulse width | t_{EXH} | 31.25 | — | 20.8 | — | ns | |
| External clock rise time | t_{EXr} | — | 6.25 | — | 5.25 | ns | |
| External clock fall time | t_{EXf} | — | 6.25 | — | 5.25 | ns | |

Note: * Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

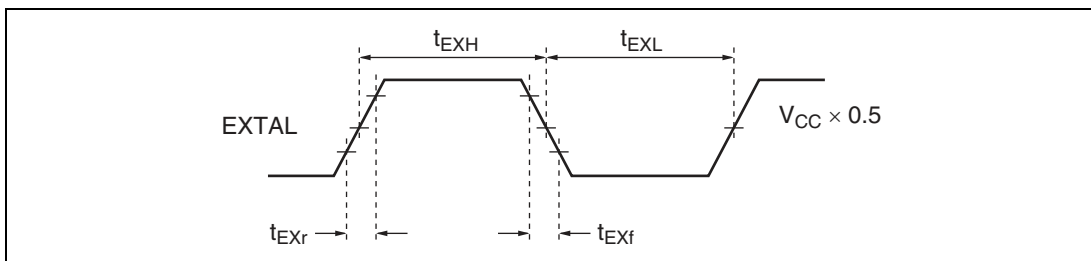


Figure 21.6 External Clock Input Timing

21.3 Duty Adjustment Circuit

When the oscillator frequency is 5 MHz or higher, the duty adjustment circuit adjusts the duty cycle of the clock signal from the oscillator to generate the system clock (ϕ).

21.4 Medium-Speed Clock Divider

The medium-speed clock divider divides the system clock to generate $\phi/2$, $\phi/4$, $\phi/8$, $\phi/16$, and $\phi/32$.

21.5 Bus Master Clock Selection Circuit

The bus master clock selection circuit selects the clock supplied to the bus master by setting the bits SCK2 to SCK0 in SCKCR. The bus master clock can be selected from high-speed mode, or medium-speed clocks ($\phi/2$, $\phi/4$, $\phi/8$, $\phi/16$, $\phi/32$).

21.6 USB Operating Clock (48 MHz)

USB operating clock can be supplied by connecting a ceramic resonator, or by input of an external clock.

21.6.1 Connecting a Ceramic Resonator

Circuit Configuration: A crystal resonator can be connected as shown in the example in figure 21.7.

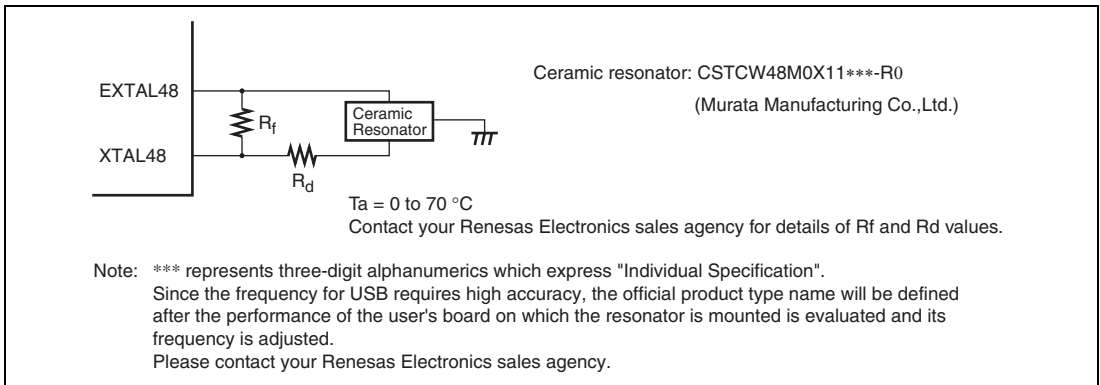


Figure 21.7 Connection of Ceramic Resonator

21.6.2 Inputting an 48-MHz External Clock

An external clock signal can be input as shown in an example in figure 21.8. The XTAL48 pin must be left open.

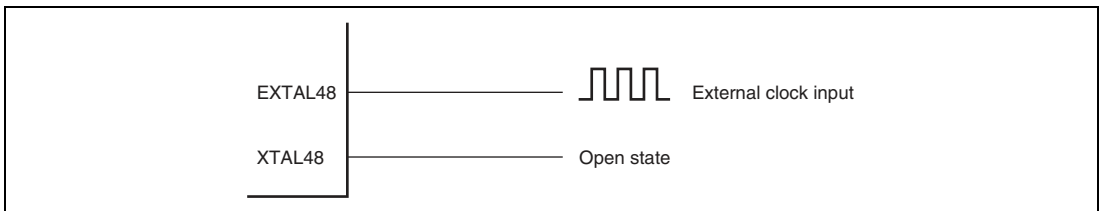


Figure 21.8 Connection of Ceramic Resonator

Table 21.6 shows the input conditions for the 48-MHz external clock.

Table 21.6 External Clock Input Conditions when Duty Adjustment Circuit Is Not Used

| Item | Symbol | Min | Max | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-----------------------------------|------------|-------|-------|------|-----------------|
| External clock frequency (48 MHz) | t_{FREQ} | 47.88 | 48.12 | MHz | Figure 21.10 |
| Clock rise time | t_{R48} | — | 5 | ns | |
| Clock fall time | t_{F48} | — | 5 | ns | |
| Duty (t_{HIGH}/t_{FREQ}) | t_{DUTY} | 40 | 60 | % | |

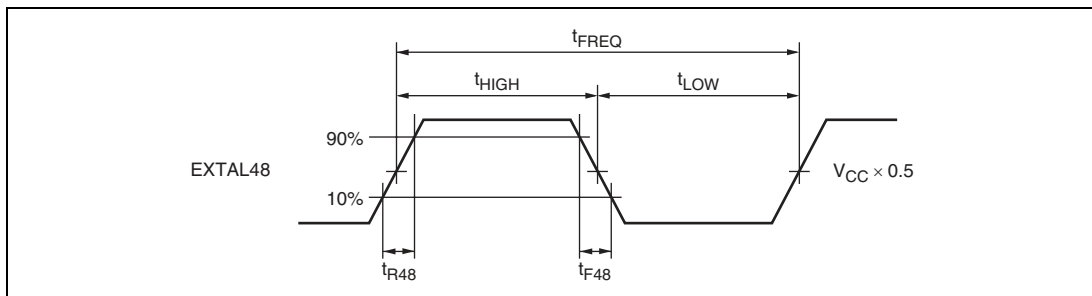


Figure 21.9 48-MHz External Clock Input Timing

21.6.3 Pin Handling when 48-MHz External Clock Is Not Needed (On-chip PLL Circuit Is Used)

When the 48-MHz external clock is not needed, connect the EXTAL48 pin to GND (V_{SS}) and leave the XTAL48 pin open as shown in figure 21.9.

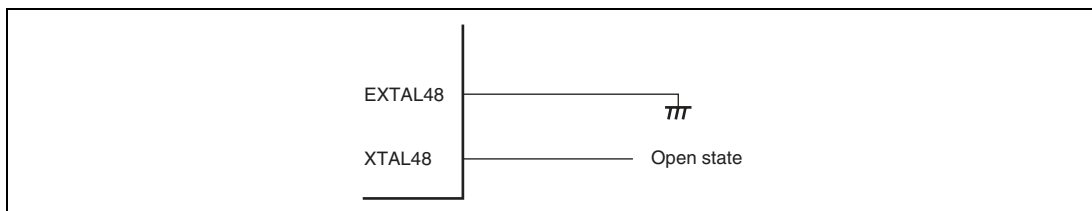


Figure 21.10 Pin Handling when 48-MHz External Clock Is Not Used

21.7 PLL Circuit for USB

The PLL circuit has the function of tripling or doubling* the 16- or 24-MHz* clock from the system oscillator to generate the 48-MHz USB operating clock. When the PLL circuit is used, set the UCKS3 to UCKS0 bits of UCTLR. For details, refer to section 15, Universal Serial Bus Interface (USB). When the PLL circuit is not used, connect the PLLVCC pin to VCC, and leave the PLLCAP pin open as shown in figure 21.11.

Note: * Available only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

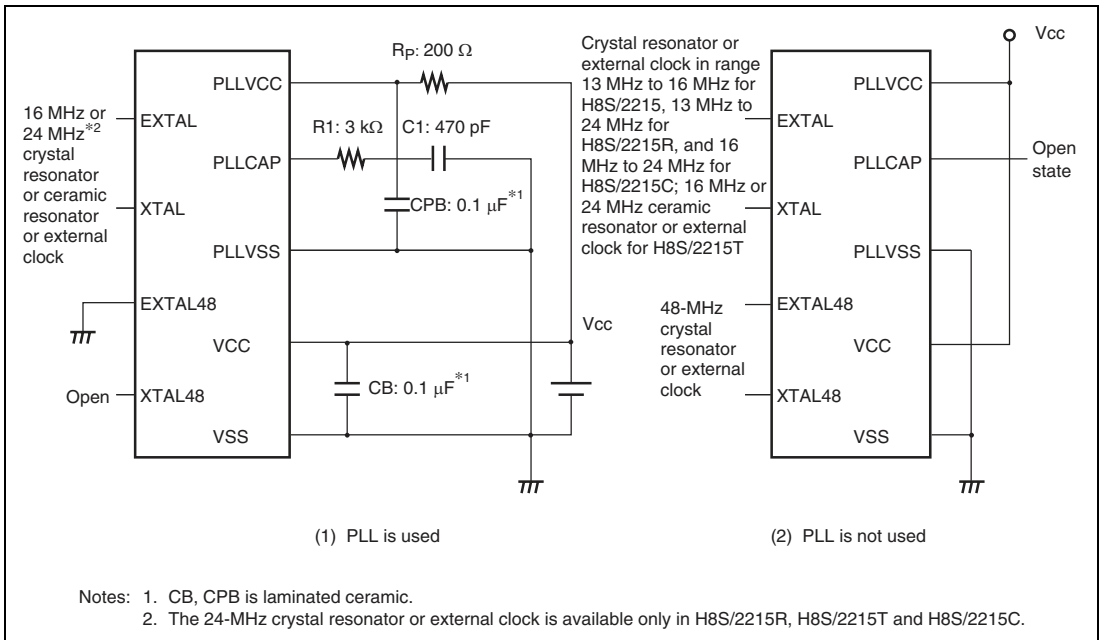


Figure 21.11 Example of PLL Circuit

When designing the board, place the capacitor C1 and resistor R1 as close as possible to the PLLCAP pin. Other signal lines should be routed away from the oscillator circuit to prevent induction from interfering with correct oscillation. C1 must be grounded to PLLVSS. In addition, PLLVCC and PLLVSS must be separated from the VCC and VSS pins. Bypass capacitors CPB and CB must be connected between VCC and VSS and between PLVCC and PLVSS, respectively.

21.8 Usage Notes

21.8.1 Note on Crystal Resonator

Since various characteristics related to the crystal resonator are closely linked to the user's board design, thorough evaluation is necessary on the user's part, using the resonator connection examples shown in this section as a guide. As the resonator circuit ratings will depend on the floating capacitance of the resonator and the mounting circuit, the ratings should be determined in consultation with the resonator manufacturer. The design must ensure that a voltage exceeding the maximum rating is not applied to the oscillator pin.

21.8.2 Note on Board Design

When designing the board, place the crystal resonator and its load capacitors as close as possible to the XTAL or XTAL48 and EXTAL or EXTAL48 pins. Other signal lines should be routed away from the oscillator circuit to prevent induction from interfering with correct oscillation. See figure 21.12.

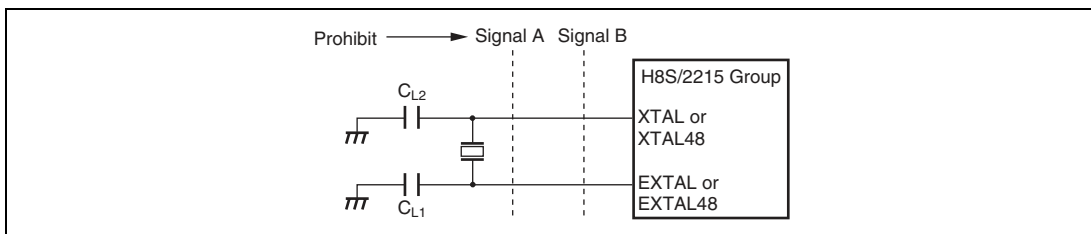


Figure 21.12 Note on Board Design of Oscillator Circuit

21.8.3 Note on Switchover of External Clock

When two or more external clocks (e.g. 16 MHz and 13 MHz) are used as the system clock, switchover of the input clock should be carried out in software standby mode.

An example of an external clock switching circuit is shown in figure 21.13, and an example of the external clock switchover timing in figure 21.14.

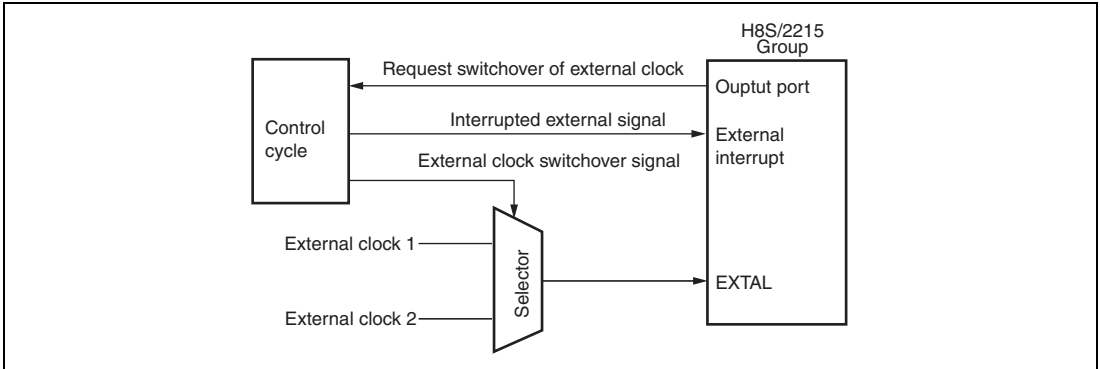


Figure 21.13 Example of External Clock Switching Circuit

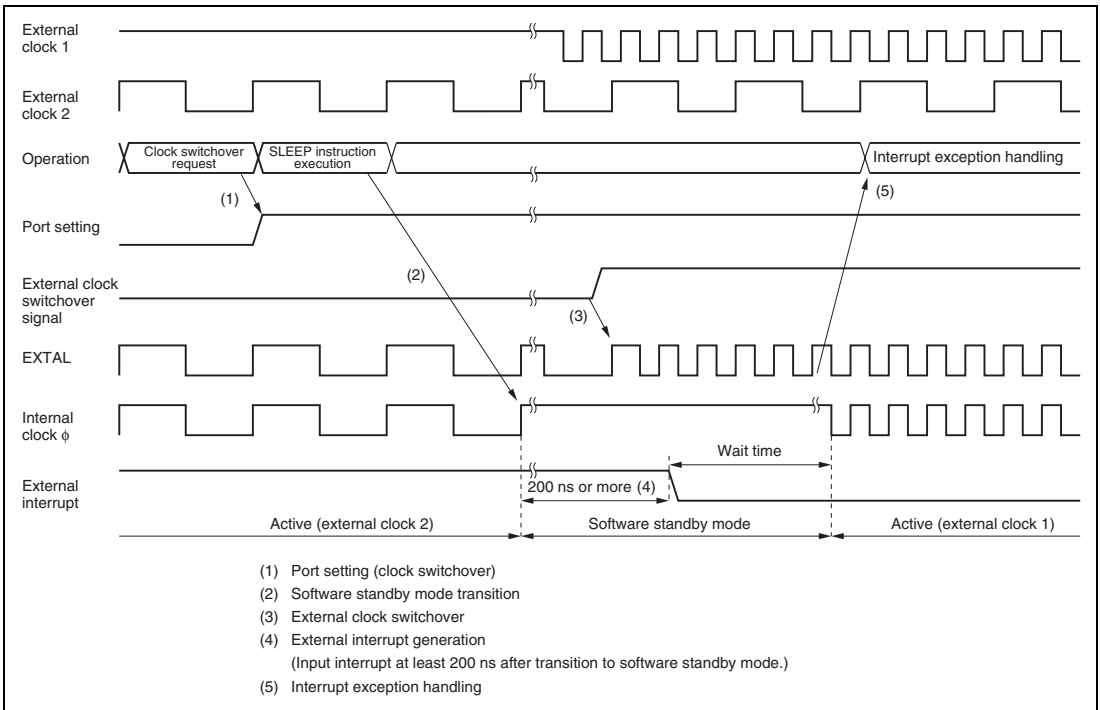


Figure 21.14 Example of External Clock Switchover Timing

Section 22 Power-Down Modes

In addition to the normal program execution state, this LSI has five power-down modes in which operation of the CPU and oscillator is halted and power dissipation is reduced. Low-power operation can be achieved by individually controlling the CPU, on-chip supporting modules, and so on.

This LSI's operating modes are high-speed mode and five power down modes:

- (1) Medium-speed mode
- (2) Sleep mode
- (3) Module stop mode
- (4) Software standby mode
- (5) Hardware standby mode

(1) to (5) are power-down modes. Sleep mode is CPU states, medium-speed mode is a CPU and bus master state, and module stop mode is an internal peripheral function (including bus masters other than the CPU) state. Some of these states can be combined.

After a reset, the LSI is in high-speed mode and module stop mode (other than DMAC and DTC).

Table 22.1 shows transition between modes conditions, CPU and on-chip supporting modules states, or mode clearing methods.

Table 22.1 LSI Internal States in Each Mode

| Function | | High-Speed | Medium-Speed | Sleep | Module Stop | Software Standby | Hardware Standby |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| System clock pulse generator | | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Halted | Halted |
| CPU | Instructions | Functioning | Medium-speed operation | Halted | High/medium-speed operation | Halted (retained) | Halted (undefined) |
| | Registers | | | (retained) | | | |
| External interrupts | NMI | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Halted |
| | IRQ0 to 5, 7 | | | | | | |
| Peripheral functions | DMAC | Functioning | Medium-speed operation | Functioning | Halted (retained) | Halted (retained) | Halted (reset) |
| | DTC | | | | | | |
| | I/O | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Retained | High impedance |
| | TPU | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Halted (retained) | Halted (retained) | Halted (reset) |
| | TMR | | | | | | |
| | WDT | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Halted (retained) | Halted (reset) |
| | D/A | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Halted (retained) | Halted (retained) | Halted (reset) |
| | A/D | Functioning | Functioning | Functioning | Halted (reset) | Halted (reset) | Halted (reset) |
| | SCI | | | | | | |
| | USB | Functioning | Function not guaranteed | Functioning | Halted (retained) | Halted (retained) | Halted (reset) |
| | USB operating clock oscillator | | | | Halted | | |
| | PLL circuit | | | | | | |
| | RAM | | | | Functioning | | |

Notes: "Halted (retained)" means that internal register values are retained. The internal state is "operation suspended."

"Halted (reset)" means that internal register values and internal states are initialized.

In module stop mode, only modules for which a stop setting has been made are halted (reset or retained).

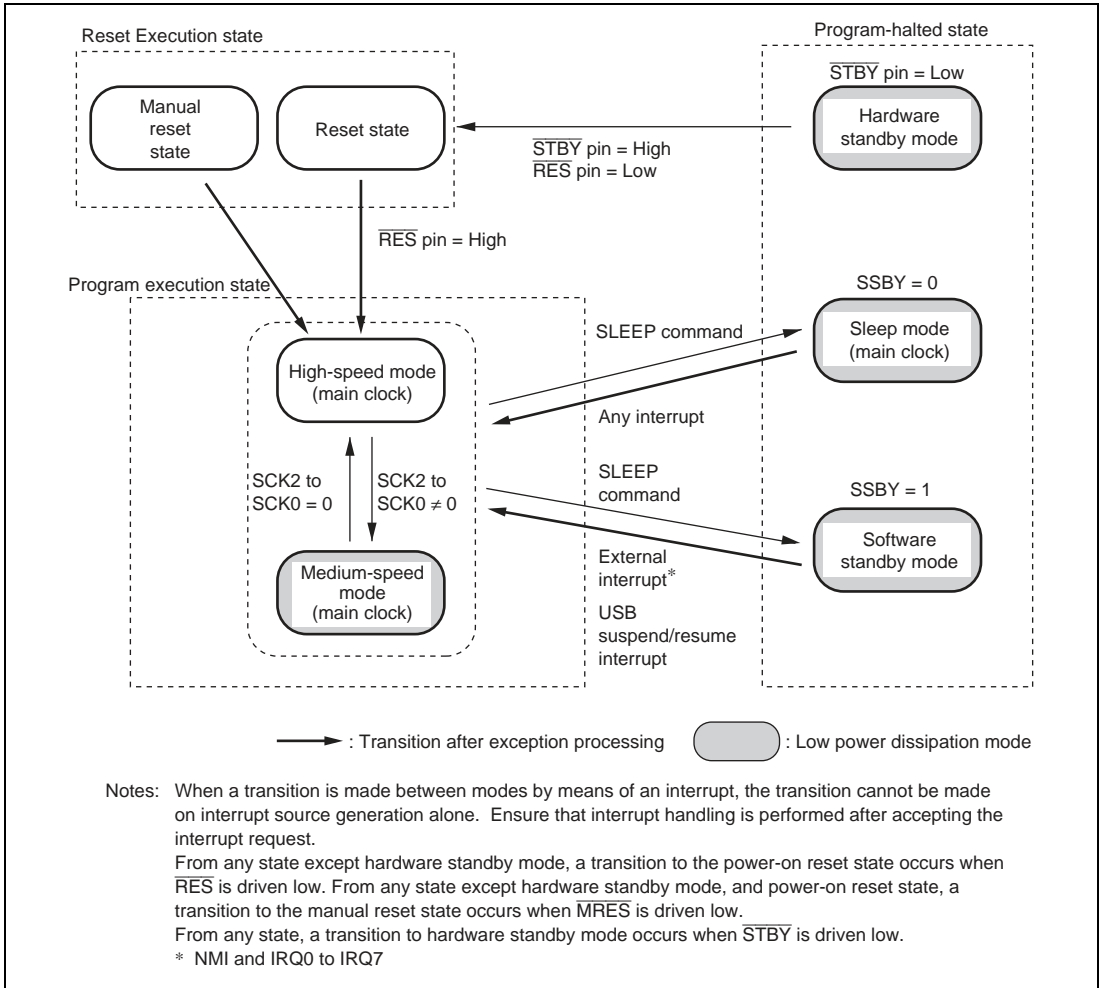


Figure 22.1 Mode Transition Diagram

Table 22.2 Low Power Dissipation Mode Transition Conditions

| Pre-Transition State | Status of Control Bit at Transition SSBY | State after Transition Invoked by SLEEP Command | State after Transition Back from Low Power Mode Invoked by Interrupt |
|-----------------------------|---|---|--|
| High-speed/ Medium-speed | 0 | Sleep | High-speed/Medium-speed |
| | 1 | Software standby | High-speed/Medium-speed |

22.1 Register Descriptions

The registers relating to the power down mode are shown below.

For details on the system clock control register (SCKCR), refer to section 21.1.1, System Clock Control Register (SCKCR).

- Standby control register (SBYCR)
- System clock control register (SCKCR)
- Module stop control register A (MSTPCRA)
- Module stop control register B (MSTPCRB)
- Module stop control register C (MSTPCRC)

22.1.1 Standby Control Register (SBYCR)

SBYCR performs software standby mode control.

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|---|
| 7 | SSBY | 0 | R/W | <p>Software Standby</p> <p>This bit specifies the transition mode after executing the SLEEP instruction</p> <p>0: Shifts to sleep mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed</p> <p>1: Shifts to software standby mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed</p> <p>This bit does not change when clearing software standby mode by using external interrupts and shifting to normal operation. 0 should be written to this bit for clearing.</p> |

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Description |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 6 | STS2 | 0 | R/W | Standby Timer Select 2 to 0 |
| 5 | STS1 | 0 | R/W | These bits select the MCU wait time for clock stabilization when cancel software standby mode by an external interrupt. With a crystal oscillator (tables 22.3 and 22.4), select a wait time of t_{osc2} ms (oscillation stabilization time) or more, depending on the operating frequency. With an external clock, there are no specific wait requirements. However, in the F-ZTAT version a wait time of 16 states cannot be used with an external clock. In this case it is necessary to ensure a wait time of 100 μ s or more. 000: Standby time = 8192 states 001: Standby time = 16384 states 010: Standby time = 32768 states 011: Standby time = 65536 states 100: Standby time = 131072 states 101: Standby time = 262144 states 110: Standby time = 2048 states 111: Standby time = 16 states |
| 4 | STS0 | 0 | R/W | |
| 3 | OPE | 1 | R/W | Output Port Enable This bit selects whether address bus and bus control signals ($\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS7}$, \overline{AS} , \overline{RD} , \overline{HWR} , and \overline{LWR}) are brought to high impedance state or retained in software standby mode. 0: High impedance state 1: Retained |
| 2 to 0 | — | All 0 | — | Reserved These bits are always read as 0, and cannot be modified. |

22.1.2 Module Stop Control Registers A to C (MSTPCRA to MSTPCRC)

MSTPCR, comprising three 8-bit readable/writable registers, performs module stop mode control. Setting a bit to 1, causes the corresponding module to enter module stop mode, while clearing the bit to 0 clears the module stop mode.

MSTPCRA

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Module |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| 7 | MSTPA7 | 0 | R/W | DMA controller (DMAC) |
| 6 | MSTPA6 | 0 | R/W | Data transfer controller (DTC) |
| 5 | MSTPA5 | 1 | R/W | 16-bit timer pulse unit (TPU) |
| 4 | MSTPA4 | 1 | R/W | 8-bit timer (TMR_0, TMR_1) |
| 3 | MSTPA3* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 2 | MSTPA2* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 1 | MSTPA1 | 1 | R/W | A/D converter |
| 0 | MSTPA0* | 1 | R/W | — |

MSTPCRB

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Module |
|-----|----------|---------------|-----|--|
| 7 | MSTPB7 | 1 | R/W | Serial communication interface 0 (SCI_0) |
| 6 | MSTPB6 | 1 | R/W | Serial communication interface 1 (SCI_1) |
| 5 | MSTPB5 | 1 | R/W | Serial communication interface 2 (SCI_2) |
| 4 | MSTPB4* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 3 | MSTPB3* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 2 | MSTPB2* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 1 | MSTPB1* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 0 | MSTPB0 | 1 | R/W | USB |

MSTPCRC

| Bit | Bit Name | Initial Value | R/W | Module |
|------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------|---------------|
| 7 | MSTPC7* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 6 | MSTPC6* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 5 | MSTPC5 | 1 | R/W | D/A converter |
| 4 | MSTPC4* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 3 | MSTPC3* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 2 | MSTPC2* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 1 | MSTPC1* | 1 | R/W | — |
| 0 | MSTPC0* | 1 | R/W | — |

Note: * MSTPA3, MSTPA2, MSTPA0, MSTPB4 to MSTPB1, MSTPC7, MSTPC6, MSTPC4 to MSTPC0 are readable/writable bits with an initial value of 1 and should always be written with 1.

22.2 Medium-Speed Mode

When the SCK2 to SCK0 bits in SCKCR are set to 1, the operating mode changes to medium-speed mode as soon as the current bus cycle ends. In medium-speed mode, the CPU operates on the operating clock ($\phi/2$, $\phi/4$, $\phi/8$, $\phi/16$, or $\phi/32$) specified by the SCK2 to SCK0 bits. The bus masters other than the CPU (DTC or DMAC) also operate in medium-speed mode. On-chip supporting modules other than the bus masters always operate on the high-speed clock (ϕ).

In medium-speed mode, a bus access is executed in the specified number of states with respect to the bus master operating clock. For example, if $\phi/4$ is selected as the operating clock, on-chip memory is accessed in 4 states, and internal I/O registers in 8 states.

Medium-speed mode is cleared by clearing all of bits SCK2 to SCK0 to 0. A transition is made to high-speed mode and medium-speed mode is cleared at the end of the current bus cycle.

If a SLEEP instruction is executed when the SSBY bit in SBYCR is cleared to 0, a transition is made to sleep mode. When sleep mode is cleared by an interrupt, medium-speed mode is restored.

When the SLEEP instruction is executed with the SSBY bit = 1, operation shifts to the software standby mode. When software standby mode is cleared by an external interrupt, medium-speed mode is restored.

When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin is set low and medium-speed mode is cancelled, operation shifts to the reset state. The same applies in the case of a reset caused by overflow of the watchdog timer.

When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

Figure 22.2 shows the timing for transition to and clearance of medium-speed mode.

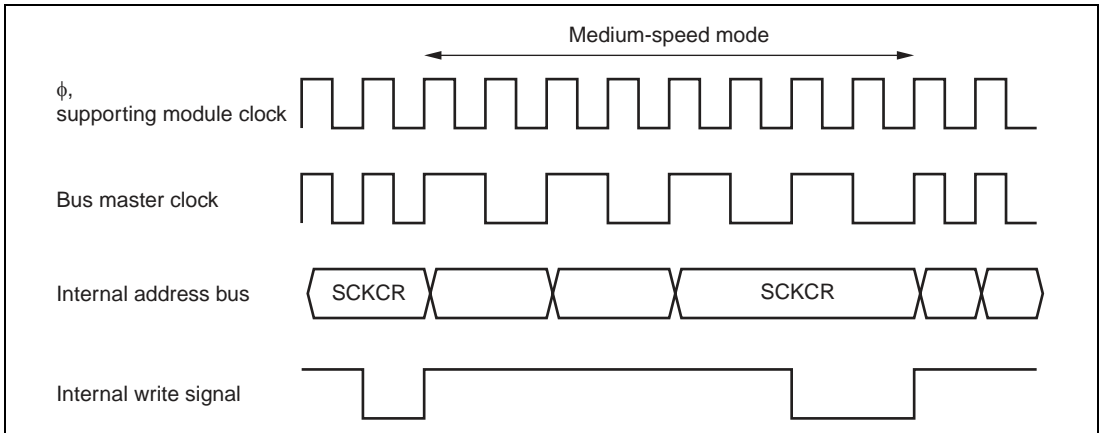


Figure 22.2 Medium-Speed Mode Transition and Clearance Timing

22.3 Sleep Mode

22.3.1 Transition to Sleep Mode

When the SLEEP instruction is executed when the SSBY bit in SBYCR is 0, the CPU enters the sleep mode. In sleep mode, CPU operation stops but the contents of the CPU's internal registers are retained. Other supporting modules do not stop.

22.3.2 Exiting Sleep Mode

Sleep mode is exited by any interrupt, or signals at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ and $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pins.

- **Exiting Sleep Mode by Interrupts**
When an interrupt occurs, sleep mode is exited and interrupt exception processing starts. Sleep mode is not exited if the interrupt is disabled, or interrupts other than NMI are masked by the CPU.
- **Exiting Sleep Mode by $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ Pin**
Setting the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin level Low selects the reset state. After the stipulated reset input duration, driving the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin High starts the CPU performing reset exception processing.
- **Exiting Sleep Mode by $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ Pin**
When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin level is driven Low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

22.4 Software Standby Mode

22.4.1 Transition to Software Standby Mode

A transition is made to software standby mode when the SLEEP instruction is executed when the SSBY bit in SBYCR is 1. In this mode, the CPU, on-chip supporting modules, and oscillator all stop. However, the contents of the CPU's internal registers, RAM data, and the states of on-chip supporting modules other than the A/D converter, and the states of I/O ports, are retained. In this mode the oscillator stops, and therefore power dissipation is significantly reduced.

22.4.2 Clearing Software Standby Mode

Software standby mode is cleared by an external interrupt (NMI pin, $\overline{\text{IRQ7}}$ pin, or $\overline{\text{IRQ0}}$ to $\overline{\text{IRQ5}}$ pins), USB suspend/resume interrupt ($\overline{\text{IRQ6}}$ signal), or by means of the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin, $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin, or $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin.

- Clearing with an interrupt
When an NMI or IRQ0 to IRQ7 interrupt request signal is input, clock oscillation starts, and after the elapse of the time set in bits STS2 to STS0 in SBYCR, stable clocks are supplied to the entire chip, software standby mode is cleared, and interrupt exception handling is started. When clearing software standby mode with an IRQ0 to IRQ7 interrupt, set the corresponding enable bit to 1 and ensure that no interrupt with a higher priority than interrupts IRQ0 to IRQ5 is generated. Software standby mode cannot be cleared if the interrupt has been masked on the CPU side or has been designated as a DTC activation source.
- Clearing with the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin
When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin is driven low, clock oscillation is started. At the same time as clock oscillation starts, clocks are supplied to the entire chip. Note that the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin must be held low until clock oscillation stabilizes. When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pin goes high, the CPU begins reset exception handling.
- Clearing with the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin
When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode.

22.4.3 Setting Oscillation Stabilization Time after Clearing Software Standby Mode

Bits STS2 to STS0 in SBYCR should be set as described below.

- Using a Crystal Oscillator
Set bits STS2 to STS0 so that the standby time is at least t_{osc2} ms (the oscillation stabilization time).
Table 22.3 shows the standby times for different operating frequencies and settings of bits STS2 to STS0.
- Using an External Clock
Set bits STS2 to STS0 as any value. Usually, minimum value is recommended. A 16-state standby time cannot be used in the F-ZTAT version; a standby time of 2,048 states or longer should be used.

Table 22.3 Oscillation Stabilization Time Settings

| STS2 | STS1 | STS0 | Standby Time | 24 MHz ^{*2} | 20 MHz ^{*1} | 16 MHz | 13 MHz | 10 MHz | 8 MHz | 6 MHz | 4 MHz | 2 MHz | Unit |
|------|------|------|---------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 8192 states | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.51 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.0 | 1.3 | 2.0 | 4.1 | ms |
| | | 1 | 16384 states | 0.7 | 0.8 | 1.0 | 1.3 | 1.6 | 2.0 | 2.7 | 4.1 | 8.2 | |
| | 1 | 0 | 32768 states | 1.4 | 1.6 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.3 | 4.1 | 5.5 | 8.2 | 16.4 | |
| | | 1 | 65536 states | 2.7 | 3.3 | 4.1 | 5.0 | 6.6 | 8.2 | 10.9 | 16.4 | 32.8 | |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 131072 states | 5.5 | 6.6 | 8.2 | 10.1 | 13.1 | 16.4 | 21.8 | 32.8 | 65.5 | |
| | | 1 | 262144 states | 10.9 | 13.1 | 16.4 | 20.2 | 26.2 | 32.8 | 43.6 | 65.6 | 131.2 | |
| | 1 | 0 | 2048 states | 0.09 | 0.1 | 0.13 | 0.16 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.3 | 0.5 | 1.0 | |
| | | 1 | 16 states | 0.7 | 0.8 | 1.0 | 1.2 | 1.6 | 2.0 | 1.7 | 4.0 | 8.0 | |

Notes: 1. Only in H8S/2215R and H8S/2215C.

2. Only in H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C.

 : Recommended time setting (See the t_{osc2} item in table 24.4 or table 25.4, for conditions)

22.4.4 Software Standby Mode Application Example

Figure 22.3 shows an example in which a transition is made to software standby mode at the falling edge on the NMI pin, and software standby mode is cleared at the rising edge on the NMI pin.

In this example, an NMI interrupt is accepted with the NMIEG bit in SYSCR cleared to 0 (falling edge specification), then the NMIEG bit is set to 1 (rising edge specification), the SSBY bit is set to 1, and a SLEEP instruction is executed, causing a transition to software standby mode.

Software standby mode is then cleared at the rising edge on the NMI pin.

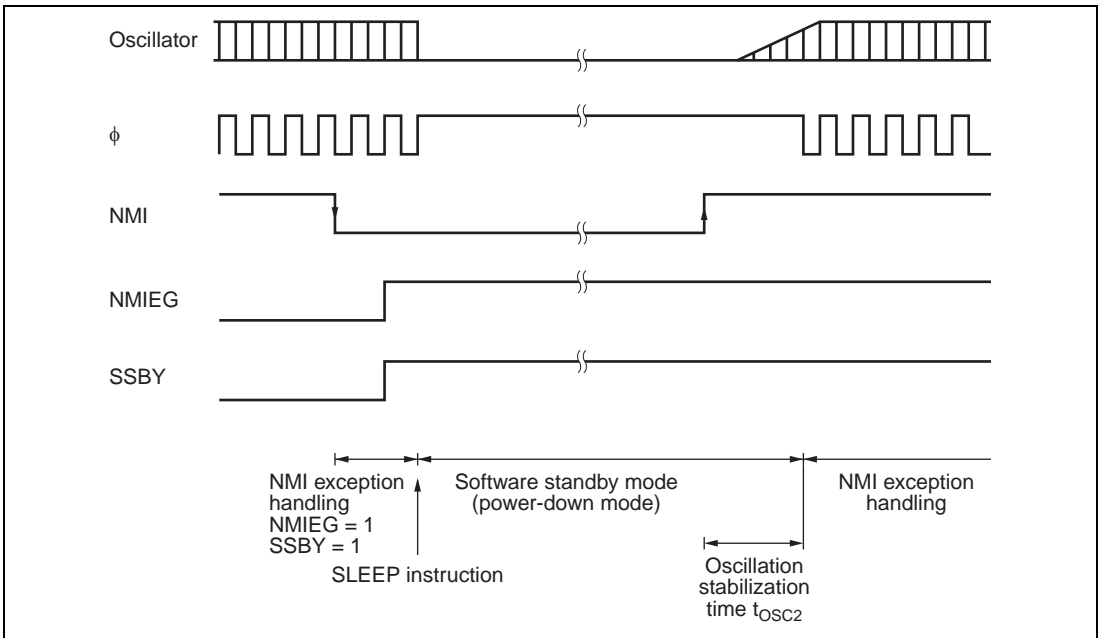


Figure 22.3 Software Standby Mode Application Example

22.5 Hardware Standby Mode

22.5.1 Transition to Hardware Standby Mode

When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode from any mode.

In hardware standby mode, all functions enter the reset state and stop operation, resulting in a significant reduction in power dissipation. As long as the prescribed voltage is supplied, on-chip RAM data is retained. I/O ports are set to the high-impedance state.

In order to retain on-chip RAM data, the RAME bit in SYSCR should be cleared to 0 before driving the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin low.

Do not change the state of the mode pins (MD2 to MD0) while the this LSI is in hardware standby mode.

22.5.2 Clearing Hardware Standby Mode

Hardware standby mode is cleared by means of the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin and the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin. When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven high while the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is low, the reset state is set and clock oscillation is started. Ensure that the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is held low until the clock oscillator stabilizes (at least t_{osc1} —the oscillation stabilization time—when using a crystal oscillator). When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin is subsequently driven high, a transition is made to the program execution state via the reset exception handling state.

22.5.3 Hardware Standby Mode Timing

Figure 22.4 shows an example of hardware standby mode timing.

When the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin is driven low after the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin has been driven low, a transition is made to hardware standby mode. Hardware standby mode is cleared by driving the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin high, waiting for the oscillation stabilization time, then changing the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin from low to high.

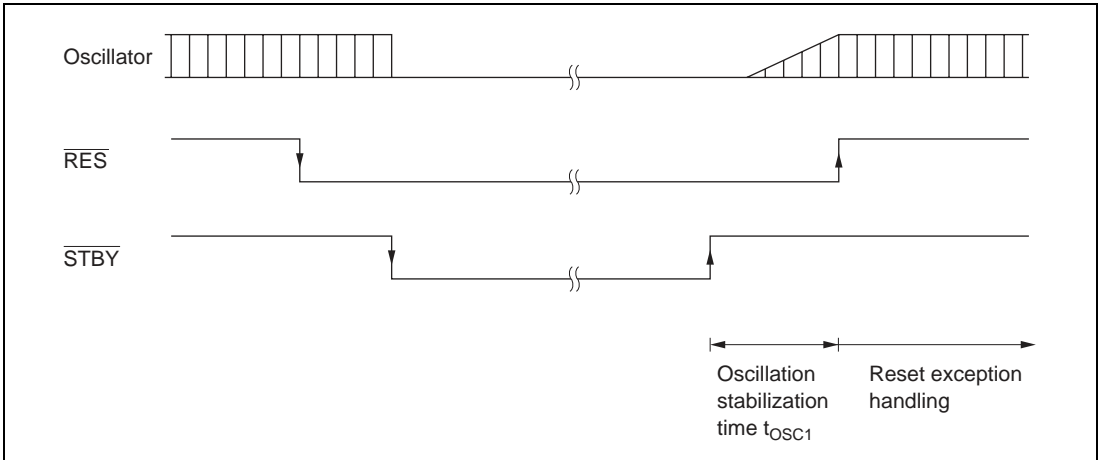


Figure 22.4 Hardware Standby Mode Timing (Example)

22.5.4 Hardware Standby Mode Timings

Timing of Transition to Hardware Standby Mode

- To retain RAM contents with the RAME bit set to 1 in SYSCR

Drive the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ signal low at least 10 states before the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ signal goes low, as shown in figure 22.5. After $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ has gone low, $\overline{\text{RES}}$ has to wait for at least 0 ns before becoming high.

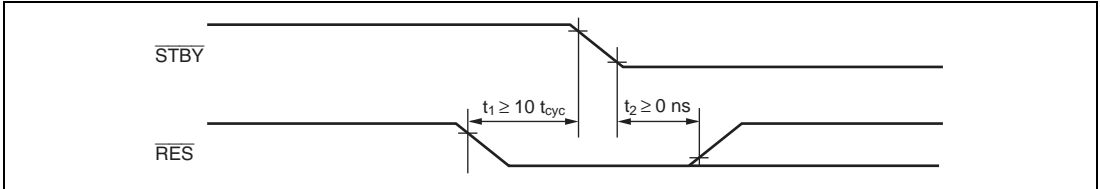


Figure 22.5 Timing of Transition to Hardware Standby Mode

- To retain RAM contents with the RAME bit cleared to 0 in SYSCR, or when RAM contents do not need to be retained

$\overline{\text{RES}}$ does not have to be driven low as in the above case.

Timing of Recovery from Hardware Standby Mode

Drive the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ signal low and NMI signal high approximately 100 ns or more before $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ goes high to execute a power-on reset.

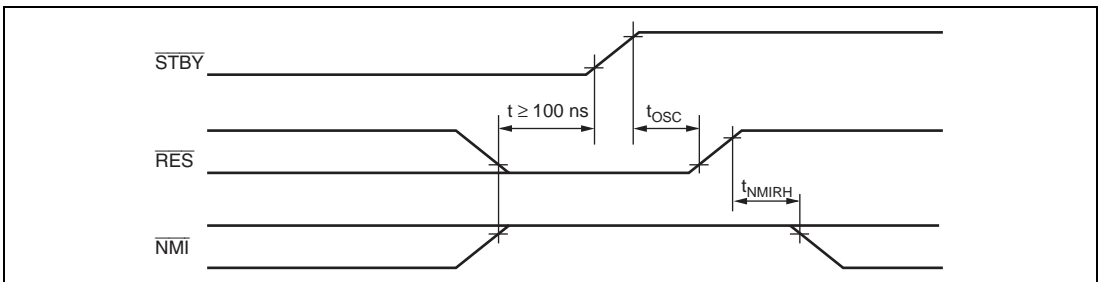


Figure 22.6 Timing of Recovery from Hardware Standby Mode

22.6 Module Stop Mode

Module stop mode can be set for individual on-chip supporting modules.

When the corresponding MSTP bit in MSTPCR is set to 1, module operation stops at the end of the bus cycle and a transition is made to module stop mode. The CPU continues operating independently.

When the corresponding MSTP bit is cleared to 0, module stop mode is cleared and the module starts operating at the end of the bus cycle. In module stop mode, the internal states of modules other than the A/D converter are retained.

After reset clearance, all modules other than DTC and DMAC are in module stop mode.

When an on-chip supporting module is in module stop mode, read/write access to its registers is disabled.

When a transition is made to sleep mode with all modules stopped, the bus controller and I/O ports also stop operating, enabling current dissipation to be further reduced.

22.7 ϕ Clock Output Disabling Function

Output of the ϕ clock can be controlled by means of the PSTOP bit in SCKCR, and DDR for the corresponding port. When the PSTOP bit is set to 1, the ϕ clock stops at the end of the bus cycle, and ϕ output goes high. ϕ clock output is enabled when the PSTOP bit is cleared to 0. When DDR for the corresponding port is cleared to 0, ϕ clock output is disabled and input port mode is set.

Table 22.4 shows the state of the ϕ pin in each processing state.

Table 22.4 ϕ Pin State in Each Processing State

| Register Settings | | Normal Mode | Sleep Mode | Software Standby Mode | Hardware Standby Mode |
|-------------------|-------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| DDR | PSTOP | | | | |
| 0 | × | High impedance | High impedance | High impedance | High impedance |
| 1 | 0 | ϕ output | ϕ output | Fixed high | High impedance |
| 1 | 1 | Fixed high | Fixed high | Fixed high | High impedance |

Legend:

×: Don't care

22.8 Usage Notes

22.8.1 I/O Port Status

In software standby mode, I/O port states are retained. In addition, if the OPE bit is set to 1, the address bus and bus control signal output are retained. Therefore, there is no reduction in current dissipation for the output current when a high-level signal is output.

22.8.2 Current Dissipation during Oscillation Stabilization Wait Period

Current dissipation increases during the oscillation stabilization wait period.

22.8.3 DMAC and DTC Module Stop

Depending on the operating status of the DMAC and DTC, the MSTPA7 and MSTPA6 bits may not be set to 1. Setting of the DTC module stop mode should be carried out only when the DTC is not activated.

For details, section 7, DMA Controller (DMAC) and section 8, Data Transfer Controller (DTC).

22.8.4 On-Chip Peripheral Module Interrupts

Module interrupts do not function when in module stop mode. Consequently, it is not possible to clear CPU interrupt sources or DMAC or DTC activation sources if interrupt requests occur while in module stop mode.

For this reason, module interrupts should be disabled before entering module stop mode.

22.8.5 Writing to MSTPCR

MSTPCR should only be written to by the CPU.

Section 23 List of Registers

The register list gives information on the on-chip I/O register addresses, how the register bits are configured, and the register states in each operating mode. The information is given as shown below.

1. Register Addresses (address order)

- Registers are listed from the lower allocation addresses.
- Registers are classified by functional modules.
- The access size is indicated.

2. Register Bits

- Bit configurations of the registers are described in the same order as the Register Addresses (address order) above.
- Reserved bits are indicated by “—” in the bit name column.
- The bit number in the bit-name column indicates that the whole register is allocated as a counter or for holding data.
- 16-bit or 24-bit registers are indicated from the bit on the MSB side.

3. Register States in Each Operating Mode

- Register states are described in the same order as the Register Addresses (address order) above.
- The register states described here are for the basic operating modes. If there is a specific reset for an on-chip peripheral module, refer to the section on that on-chip peripheral module.

23.1 Register Addresses (Address Order)

The data bus width indicates the numbers of bits by which the register is accessed.

The number of access states indicates the number of states based on the specified reference clock.

| Register Name | Abbreviation | Number of Bits | Address | Data Bus Width | Number of Access States | Module |
|---|------------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|-------------------------|--------|
| USB end point information register 00_0 to 22_4 | UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR22_4 | 8 | H'C00000 to H'C00072 | 8 | 3 | USB |
| USB control register | UCTLR | 8 | H'C00080 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register A | UTSTRA | 8 | H'C00081 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB DMAC transfer request register | UDMAR | 8 | H'C00082 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB device resume register | UDRR | 8 | H'C00083 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB trigger register 0 | UTRG0 | 8 | H'C00084 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB trigger register 1 | UTRG1 | 8 | H'C00085 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB FIFO clear register 0 | UFCLR0 | 8 | H'C00086 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB FIFO clear register 1 | UFCLR1 | 8 | H'C00087 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint stall register 0 | UESTL0 | 8 | H'C00088 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint stall register 1 | UESTL1 | 8 | H'C00089 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 0s | UEDR0s | 8 | H'C00090 to H'C00093 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 0i | UEDR0i | 8 | H'C00094 to H'C00097 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 0o | UEDR0o | 8 | H'C00098 to H'C0009B | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 1i | UEDR1i | 8 | H'C0009C to H'C0009F | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 2i | UEDR2i | 8 | H'C000A0 to H'C000A3 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 2o | UEDR2o | 8 | H'C000A4 to H'C000A7 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 3i | UEDR3i | 8 | H'C000A8 to H'C000AB | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 3o | UEDR3o | 8 | H'C000AC to H'C000AF | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 4i | UEDR4i | 8 | H'C000B0 to H'C000B3 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 4o | UEDR4o | 8 | H'C000B4 to H'C000B7 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint data register 5i | UEDR5i | 8 | H'C000B8 to H'C000BB | 8 | 3 | |

| Register Name | Abbreviation | Number of Bits | Address | Data Bus Width | Number of Access States | Module |
|--|--------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|-------------------------|--------|
| USB endpoint receive data size register 0o | UESZ0o | 8 | H'C000BC | 8 | 3 | USB |
| USB endpoint receive data size register 2o | UESZ2o | 8 | H'C000BD | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint receive data size register 3o | UESZ3o | 8 | H'C000BE | 8 | 3 | |
| USB endpoint receive data size register 4o | UESZ4o | 8 | H'C000BF | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt flag register 0 | UIFR0 | 8 | H'C000C0 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt flag register 1 | UIFR1 | 8 | H'C000C1 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt flag register 2 | UIFR2 | 8 | H'C000C2 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt flag register 3 | UIFR3 | 8 | H'C000C3 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt enable register 0 | UIER0 | 8 | H'C000C4 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt enable register 1 | UIER1 | 8 | H'C000C5 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt enable register 2 | UIER2 | 8 | H'C000C6 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt enable register 3 | UIER3 | 8 | H'C000C7 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt selection register 0 | UISR0 | 8 | H'C000C8 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt selection register 1 | UISR1 | 8 | H'C000C9 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt selection register 2 | UISR2 | 8 | H'C000CA | 8 | 3 | |
| USB interrupt selection register 3 | UISR3 | 8 | H'C000CB | 8 | 3 | |
| USB data status register | UDSR | 8 | H'C000CC | 8 | 3 | |
| USB configuration value register | UCVR | 8 | H'C000CF | 8 | 3 | |
| USB time stamp register H | UTSRH | 8 | H'C000D0 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB time stamp register L | UTSRL | 8 | H'C000D1 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register 0 | UTSTR0 | 8 | H'C000F0 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register 1 | UTSTR1 | 8 | H'C000F1 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register 2 | UTSTR2 | 8 | H'C000F2 | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register B | UTSTRB | 8 | H'C000FB | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register C | UTSTRC | 8 | H'C000FC | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register D | UTSTRD | 8 | H'C000FD | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register E | UTSTRE | 8 | H'C000FE | 8 | 3 | |
| USB test register F | UTSTRF | 8 | H'C000FF | 8 | 3 | |
| USB reserved area | — | — | H'C00100 to H'DFFFFF | — | — | |
| DTC mode register A | MRA | 8 | H'EBC0 to H'EFBF | 16/32 | 1 | DTC |
| DTC source address register | SAR | 24 | | 16/32 | 1 | |
| DTC mode register B | MRB | 8 | | 16/32 | 1 | |
| DTC destination address register | DAR | 24 | | 16/32 | 1 | |

| Register Name | Abbreviation | Number of Bits | Address | Data Bus Width | Number of Access States | Module |
|--|--------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------------|--------|
| DTC transfer count register A | CRA | 16 | H'EBC0 to H'EFBF | 16/32 | 1 | DTC |
| DTC transfer count register B | CRB | 16 | | 16/32 | 1 | |
| D/A data register_0 | DADR_0 | 8 | H'FDAC | 8 | 2 | D/A |
| D/A data register _1 | DADR_1 | 8 | H'FDAD | 8 | 2 | |
| D/A control register | DACR | 8 | H'FDAE | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial control register X | SCRX | 8 | H'FDB4 | 8 | 2 | FLASH |
| Standby control register | SBYCR | 8 | H'FDE4 | 8 | 2 | SYSTEM |
| System control register | SYSCR | 8 | H'FDE5 | 8 | 2 | |
| System clock control register | SCKCR | 8 | H'FDE6 | 8 | 2 | |
| Mode control register | MDCR | 8 | H'FDE7 | 8 | 2 | |
| Module stop control register A | MSTPCRA | 8 | H'FDE8 | 8 | 2 | |
| Module stop control register B | MSTPCRB | 8 | H'FDE9 | 8 | 2 | |
| Module stop control register C | MSTPCRC | 8 | H'FDEA | 8 | 2 | |
| Pin function control register | PFCR | 8 | H'FDEB | 8 | 2 | BSC |
| Low power control register | LPWRCR | 8 | H'FDEC | 8 | 2 | SYSTEM |
| Serial extended mode register_0 (In H8S/2215) | SEMR_0 | 8 | H'FDF8 | 8 | 2 | SCI_0 |
| Serial extended mode register A_0 (In H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C) | SEMRA_0 | 8 | H'FDF8 | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial extended mode register B_0 (In H8S/2215R, H8S/2215T and H8S/2215C) | SEMRB_0 | 8 | H'FDF9 | 8 | 2 | |
| IRQ sense control register H | ISCRH | 8 | H'FE12 | 8 | 2 | INT |
| IRQ sense control register L | ISURL | 8 | H'FE13 | 8 | 2 | |
| IRQ enable register | IER | 8 | H'FE14 | 8 | 2 | |
| IRQ status register | ISR | 8 | H'FE15 | 8 | 2 | |
| DTC enable register A | DTCERA | 8 | H'FE16 | 8 | 2 | DTC |
| DTC enable register B | DTCERB | 8 | H'FE17 | 8 | 2 | |
| DTC enable register C | DTCERC | 8 | H'FE18 | 8 | 2 | |
| DTC enable register D | DTCERD | 8 | H'FE19 | 8 | 2 | |
| DTC enable register E | DTCERE | 8 | H'FE1A | 8 | 2 | |
| DTC enable register F | DTCERF | 8 | H'FE1B | 8 | 2 | |
| DTC vector register | DTVECR | 8 | H'FE1F | 8 | 2 | |
| Port 1 data direction register | P1DDR | 8 | H'FE30 | 8 | 2 | PORT |
| Port 3 data direction register | P3DDR | 8 | H'FE32 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port 7 data direction register | P7DDR | 8 | H'FE36 | 8 | 2 | |

| Register Name | Abbreviation | Number of Bits | Address | Data Bus Width | Number of Access States | Module |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|----------------|---------|----------------|-------------------------|--------|
| Port A data direction register | PADDR | 8 | H'FE39 | 8 | 2 | PORT |
| Port B data direction register | PBDDR | 8 | H'FE3A | 8 | 2 | |
| Port C data direction register | PCDDR | 8 | H'FE3B | 8 | 2 | |
| Port D data direction register | PDDDR | 8 | H'FE3C | 8 | 2 | |
| Port E data direction register | PEDDR | 8 | H'FE3D | 8 | 2 | |
| Port F data direction register | PFDDR | 8 | H'FE3E | 8 | 2 | |
| Port G data direction register | PGDDR | 8 | H'FE3F | 8 | 2 | |
| Port A pull-up MOS control register | PAPCR | 8 | H'FE40 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port B pull-up MOS control register | PBPCR | 8 | H'FE41 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port C pull-up MOS control register | PCPCR | 8 | H'FE42 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port D pull-up MOS control register | PDPCR | 8 | H'FE43 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port E pull-up MOS control register | PEPCR | 8 | H'FE44 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port 3 open drain control register | P3ODR | 8 | H'FE46 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port A open drain control register | PAODR | 8 | H'FE47 | 8 | 2 | |
| Timer start register | TSTR | 8 | H'FEB0 | 16 | 2 | TPU |
| Timer synchro register | TSYR | 8 | H'FEB1 | 16 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register A | IPRA | 8 | H'FEC0 | 8 | 2 | INT |
| Interrupt priority register B | IPRB | 8 | H'FEC1 | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register C | IPRC | 8 | H'FEC2 | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register D | IPRD | 8 | H'FEC3 | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register E | IPRE | 8 | H'FEC4 | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register F | IPRF | 8 | H'FEC5 | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register G | IPRG | 8 | H'FEC6 | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register I | IPRI | 8 | H'FEC8 | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register J | IPRJ | 8 | H'FEC9 | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register K | IPRK | 8 | H'FECA | 8 | 2 | |
| Interrupt priority register M | IPRM | 8 | H'FECC | 8 | 2 | |
| Bus width control register | ABWCR | 8 | H'FED0 | 8 | 2 | BSC |
| Access state control register | ASTCR | 8 | H'FED1 | 8 | 2 | |
| Wait control register H | WCRH | 8 | H'FED2 | 8 | 2 | |
| Wait control register L | WCRL | 8 | H'FED3 | 8 | 2 | |
| Bus control register H | BCRH | 8 | H'FED4 | 8 | 2 | |
| Bus control register L | BCRL | 8 | H'FED5 | 8 | 2 | |
| RAM emulation register | RAMER | 8 | H'FEDB | 8 | 2 | FLASH |

| Register Name | Abbreviation | Number of Bits | Address | Data Bus Width | Number of Access States | Module |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|----------------|---------|----------------|-------------------------|--------|
| Memory address register 0A H | MAR0AH | 16 | H'FEE0 | 16 | 2 | DMAC |
| Memory address register 0A L | MAR0AL | 16 | H'FEE2 | 16 | 2 | |
| I/O address register 0A | IOAR0A | 16 | H'FEE4 | 16 | 2 | |
| Transfer count register 0A | ETCR0A | 16 | H'FEE6 | 16 | 2 | |
| Memory address register 0B H | MAR0BH | 16 | H'FEE8 | 16 | 2 | |
| Memory address register 0B L | MAR0BL | 16 | H'FEEA | 16 | 2 | |
| I/O address register 0B | IOAR0B | 16 | H'FEEC | 16 | 2 | |
| Transfer count register 0B | ETCR0B | 16 | H'FEEE | 16 | 2 | |
| Memory address register 1A H | MAR1AH | 16 | H'FEF0 | 16 | 2 | |
| Memory address register 1A L | MAR1AL | 16 | H'FEF2 | 16 | 2 | |
| I/O address register 1A | IOAR1A | 16 | H'FEF4 | 16 | 2 | |
| Transfer count register 1A | ETCR1A | 16 | H'FEF6 | 16 | 2 | |
| Memory address register 1BH | MAR1BH | 16 | H'FEF8 | 16 | 2 | |
| Memory address register 1BL | MAR1BL | 16 | H'FEFA | 16 | 2 | |
| I/O address register 1B | IOAR1B | 16 | H'FEFC | 16 | 2 | |
| Transfer count register 1B | ETCR1B | 16 | H'FEFE | 16 | 2 | |
| Port 1 data register | P1DR | 8 | H'FF00 | 8 | 2 | PORT |
| Port 3 data register | P3DR | 8 | H'FF02 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port 7 data register | P7DR | 8 | H'FF06 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port A data register | PADR | 8 | H'FF09 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port B data register | PBDR | 8 | H'FF0A | 8 | 2 | |
| Port C data register | PCDR | 8 | H'FF0B | 8 | 2 | |
| Port D data register | PDDR | 8 | H'FF0C | 8 | 2 | |
| Port E data register | PEDR | 8 | H'FF0D | 8 | 2 | |
| Port F data register | PFDR | 8 | H'FF0E | 8 | 2 | |
| Port G data register | PGDR | 8 | H'FF0F | 8 | 2 | |
| Timer control register_0 | TCR_0 | 8 | H'FF10 | 16 | 2 | TPU_0 |
| Timer mode register_0 | TMDR_0 | 8 | H'FF11 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer I/O control register H_0 | TIORH_0 | 8 | H'FF12 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer I/O control register L_0 | TIORL_0 | 8 | H'FF13 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer interrupt enable register_0 | TIER_0 | 8 | H'FF14 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer status register_0 | TSR_0 | 8 | H'FF15 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer counter_0 | TCNT_0 | 16 | H'FF16 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer general register A_0 | TGRA_0 | 16 | H'FF18 | 16 | 2 | |

| Register Name | Abbreviation | Number of Bits | Address | Data Bus Width | Number of Access States | Module |
|------------------------------------|--------------|----------------|---------|----------------|-------------------------|--------|
| Timer general register B_0 | TGRB_0 | 16 | H'FF1A | 16 | 2 | TPU_0 |
| Timer general register C_0 | TGRC_0 | 16 | H'FF1C | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer general register D_0 | TGRD_0 | 16 | H'FF1E | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer control register_1 | TCR_1 | 8 | H'FF20 | 16 | 2 | TPU_1 |
| Timer mode register_1 | TMDR_1 | 8 | H'FF21 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer I/O control register _1 | TIOR_1 | 8 | H'FF22 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer interrupt enable register _1 | TIER_1 | 8 | H'FF24 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer status register_1 | TSR_1 | 8 | H'FF25 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer counter_1 | TCNT_1 | 16 | H'FF26 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer general register A_1 | TGRA_1 | 16 | H'FF28 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer general register B_1 | TGRB_1 | 16 | H'FF2A | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer control register_2 | TCR_2 | 8 | H'FF30 | 16 | 2 | TPU_2 |
| Timer mode register_2 | TMDR_2 | 8 | H'FF31 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer I/O control register 2 | TIOR_2 | 8 | H'FF32 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer interrupt enable register 2 | TIER_2 | 8 | H'FF34 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer status register_2 | TSR_2 | 8 | H'FF35 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer counter_2 | TCNT_2 | 16 | H'FF36 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer general register A_2 | TGRA_2 | 16 | H'FF38 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer general register B_2 | TGRB_2 | 16 | H'FF3A | 16 | 2 | |
| DMA write enable register | DMAWER | 8 | H'FF60 | 8 | 2 | DMAC |
| DMA control register 0A | DMACR0A | 8 | H'FF62 | 16 | 2 | |
| DMA control register 0B | DMACR0B | 8 | H'FF63 | 16 | 2 | |
| DMA control register 1A | DMACR1A | 8 | H'FF64 | 16 | 2 | |
| DMA control register 1B | DMACR1B | 8 | H'FF65 | 16 | 2 | |
| DMA band control register | DMABCR | 16 | H'FF66 | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer control register_0 | TCR_0 | 8 | H'FF68 | 8 | 2 | TMR_0 |
| Timer control register_1 | TCR_1 | 8 | H'FF69 | 8 | 2 | TMR_1 |
| Timer control/status register_0 | TCSR_0 | 8 | H'FF6A | 8 | 2 | TMR_0 |
| Timer control/status register_1 | TCSR_1 | 8 | H'FF6B | 8 | 2 | TMR_1 |
| Time constant register A0 | TCORA_0 | 8 | H'FF6C | 8 | 2 | TMR_0 |
| Time constant register A1 | TCORA_1 | 8 | H'FF6D | 8 | 2 | TMR_1 |
| Time constant register B0 | TCORB_0 | 8 | H'FF6E | 8 | 2 | TMR_0 |

| Register Name | Abbreviation | Number of Bits | Address | Data Bus Width | Number of Access States | Module |
|-------------------------------|--------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------------|--------|
| Time constant register B1 | TCORB_1 | 8 | H'FF6F | 8 | 2 | TMR_1 |
| Timer counter_0 | TCNT_0 | 8 | H'FF70 | 8 | 2 | TMR_0 |
| Timer counter_1 | TCNT_1 | 8 | H'FF71 | 8 | 2 | TMR_1 |
| Timer control/status register | TCSR | 8 | H'FF74 | 16 | 2 | WDT |
| Timer counter | TCNT | 8 | H'FF74 (write) | 16 | 2 | |
| Timer counter | TCNT | 8 | H'FF75 (read) | 16 | 2 | |
| Reset control/status register | RSTCSR | 8 | H'FF76 (write) | 16 | 2 | |
| Reset control/status register | RSTCSR | 8 | H'FF77 (read) | 16 | 2 | |
| Serial mode register_0 | SMR_0 | 8 | H'FF78 | 8 | 2 | SCI_0 |
| Bit rate register_0 | BRR_0 | 8 | H'FF79 | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial control register_0 | SCR_0 | 8 | H'FF7A | 8 | 2 | |
| Transmit data register_0 | TDR_0 | 8 | H'FF7B | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial status register_0 | SSR_0 | 8 | H'FF7C | 8 | 2 | |
| Receive data register_0 | RDR_0 | 8 | H'FF7D | 8 | 2 | |
| Smart card mode register_0 | SCMR_0 | 8 | H'FF7E | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial mode register_1 | SMR_1 | 8 | H'FF80 | 8 | 2 | SCI_1 |
| Bit rate register_1 | BRR_1 | 8 | H'FF81 | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial control register_1 | SCR_1 | 8 | H'FF82 | 8 | 2 | |
| Transmit data register_1 | TDR_1 | 8 | H'FF83 | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial status register_1 | SSR_1 | 8 | H'FF84 | 8 | 2 | |
| Receive data register_1 | RDR_1 | 8 | H'FF85 | 8 | 2 | |
| Smart card mode register_1 | SCMR_1 | 8 | H'FF86 | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial mode register_2 | SMR_2 | 8 | H'FF88 | 8 | 2 | SCI_2 |
| Bit rate register_2 | BRR_2 | 8 | H'FF89 | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial control register_2 | SCR_2 | 8 | H'FF8A | 8 | 2 | |
| Transmit data register_2 | TDR_2 | 8 | H'FF8B | 8 | 2 | |
| Serial status register_2 | SSR_2 | 8 | H'FF8C | 8 | 2 | |
| Receive data register_2 | RDR_2 | 8 | H'FF8D | 8 | 2 | |
| Smart card mode register_2 | SCMR_2 | 8 | H'FF8E | 8 | 2 | |
| A/D data register AH | ADDRAH | 8 | H'FF90 | 8 | 2 | A/D |

| Register Name | Abbreviation | Number of Bits | Address | Data Bus Width | Number of Access States | Module |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------------|---------|----------------|-------------------------|--------|
| A/D data register AL | ADDRAL | 8 | H'FF91 | 8 | 2 | A/D |
| A/D data register BH | ADDRBH | 8 | H'FF92 | 8 | 2 | |
| A/D data register BL | ADDRBL | 8 | H'FF93 | 8 | 2 | |
| A/D data register CH | ADDRCH | 8 | H'FF94 | 8 | 2 | |
| A/D data register CL | ADDRCL | 8 | H'FF95 | 8 | 2 | |
| A/D data register DH | ADDRDH | 8 | H'FF96 | 8 | 2 | |
| A/D data register DL | ADDRDL | 8 | H'FF97 | 8 | 2 | |
| A/D control/status register | ADCSR | 8 | H'FF98 | 8 | 2 | |
| A/D control register | ADCR | 8 | H'FF99 | 8 | 2 | |
| Flash memory control register 1 | FLMCR1 | 8 | H'FFA8 | 8 | 2 | FLASH |
| Flash memory control register 2 | FLMCR2 | 8 | H'FFA9 | 8 | 2 | |
| Erase block register 1 | EBR1 | 8 | H'FFAA | 8 | 2 | |
| Erase block register 2 | EBR2 | 8 | H'FFAB | 8 | 2 | |
| Port 1 register | PORT1 | 8 | H'FFB0 | 8 | 2 | PORT |
| Port 3 register | PORT3 | 8 | H'FFB2 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port 4 register | PORT4 | 8 | H'FFB3 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port 7 register | PORT7 | 8 | H'FFB6 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port 9 register | PORT9 | 8 | H'FFB8 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port A register | PORTA | 8 | H'FFB9 | 8 | 2 | |
| Port B register | PORTB | 8 | H'FFBA | 8 | 2 | |
| Port C register | PORTC | 8 | H'FFBB | 8 | 2 | |
| Port D register | PORTD | 8 | H'FFBC | 8 | 2 | |
| Port E register | PORTE | 8 | H'FFBD | 8 | 2 | |
| Port F register | PORTF | 8 | H'FFBE | 8 | 2 | |
| Port G register | PORTG | 8 | H'FFBF | 8 | 2 | |

23.2 Register Bits

Register addresses and bit names of the on-chip peripheral modules are described below.

Each line covers eight bits, so 16-bit registers are shown as two lines and 32-bit registers as four lines.

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------|
| UEPIRnn_0 ^{*1} | D39 | D38 | D37 | D36 | D35 | D34 | D33 | D32 | USB |
| UEPIRnn_1 ^{*1} | D31 | D30 | D29 | D28 | D27 | D26 | D25 | D24 | |
| UEPIRnn_2 ^{*1} | D23 | D22 | D21 | D20 | D19 | D18 | D17 | D16 | |
| UEPIRnn_3 ^{*1} | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9 | D8 | |
| UEPIRnn_4 ^{*1} | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UCTLR | FADSEL | SFME | UCKS3 | UCKS2 | UCKS1 | UCKS0 | UIFRST | UDCRST | |
| UTSTRA | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UDMAR | EP4oT1 | EP4oT0 | EP4iT1 | EP4iT0 | EP2oT1 | EP2oT0 | EP2iT1 | EP2iT0 | |
| UDRR | — | — | — | — | — | — | RWUPs | DVR | |
| UTRG0 | — | — | EP2oRDFN | EP2iPKTE | EP1iPKTE | EP0oRDFN | EP0iPKTE | EP0sRDFN | |
| UTRG1 | — | — | — | — | — | EP5iPKTE | EP4oRDFN | EP4iPKTE | |
| UFCLR0 | EP3oCLR | EP3iCLR | EP2oCLR | EP2iCLR | EP1iCLR | EP0oCLR | EP0iCLR | — | |
| UFCLR1 | — | — | — | — | — | EP5iCLR | EP4oCLR | EP4iCLR | |
| UESTL0 | EP3oSTL | EP3iSTL | EP2oSTL | EP2iSTL | EP1iSTL | — | — | EPOSTL | |
| UESTL1 | SCME | — | — | — | — | EP5iSTL | EP4oSTL | EP4iSTL | |
| UEDR0s | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR0i | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR0o | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR1i | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR2i | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR2o | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR3i | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR3o | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR4i | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR4o | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UEDR5i | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UESZ0o | — | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UESZ2o | — | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UESZ3o | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UESZ4o | — | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UIFR0 | BRST | — | EP1iTR | EP1iTS | EP0oTS | EP0iTR | EP0iTS | SetupTS | |
| UIFR1 | EP3oTF | EP3oTS | EP3iTF | EP3iTR | — | EP2oREADY | EP2iTR | EP2iEMPTY | |
| UIFR2 | — | — | EP5iTR | EP5iTS | — | EP4oREADY | EP4iTR | EP4iEMPTY | |
| UIFR3 | CK48 READY | SOF | SETC | SETI | SPRSs | SPRSi | VBUSs | VBUSi | |

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|---------------|----------------|-------|---------|---------|---------|----------------|---------|----------------|--------|
| UIER0 | BRSTE | — | EP1iTRE | EP1iTSE | EP0oTSE | EP0iTRE | EP0iTSE | SetupTSE | USB |
| UIER1 | — | — | EP3iTFE | EP3iTRE | — | EP2o READYE | EP2iTRE | EP2i EMPTYE | |
| UIER2 | — | — | EP5iTRE | EP5iTSE | — | EP4o READYE | EP4iTRE | EP4i EMPTYE | |
| UIER3 | CK48 READYE | SOFE | SETCE | SETIE | — | SPRSIE | — | VBUSIE | |
| UISR0 | BRSTS | — | EP1iTRS | EP1iTSS | EP0oTSS | EP0iTRS | EP0iTSS | SetupTSS | |
| UISR1 | — | — | EP3iTFS | EP3iTRS | — | EP2o READYD | EP2iTRS | EP2i EMPTYD | |
| UISR2 | — | — | EP5iTRS | EP5iTSS | — | EP4o READYD | EP4iTRS | EP4i EMPTYD | |
| UISR3 | CK48 READYD | SOFS | SETCS | SETIS | — | — | — | VBUSIS | |
| UDSR | — | — | EP5iDE | EP4iDE | — | EP2iDE | EP1iDE | EP0iDE | |
| UCVR | — | — | CNFV0 | INTV1 | INTV0 | ALTV2 | ALTV1 | ALTV0 | |
| UTSRH | — | — | — | — | — | D10 | D9 | D8 | |
| UTSRL | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 | |
| UTSTR0 | PTSTE | — | — | — | SUSPEND | OE | FSE0 | VPO | |
| UTSTR1 | VBUS | UBPM | — | — | — | RCV | VP | VM | |
| UTSTR2 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UTSTRB | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UTSTRC | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UTSTRD | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UTSTRE | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UTSTRF | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| MRA | SM1 | SM0 | DM1 | DM0 | MD1 | MD0 | DTS | Sz | DTC |
| SAR | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| MRB | CHNE | DISEL | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| DAR | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| CRA | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| CRB | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|---------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|
| DADR_0 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | D/A |
| DADR_1 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| DACR | DAOE1 | DAOE0 | DAE | — | — | — | — | — | |
| SCRX | — | — | — | — | FLSHE | — | — | — | FLASH |
| SBYCR | SSBY | STS2 | STS1 | STS0 | OPE | — | — | — | SYSTEM |
| SYSCR | — | — | INTM1 | INTM0 | NMIEG | MRESE | — | RAME | |
| SCKCR | PSTOP | — | — | — | — | SCK2 | SCK1 | SCK0 | |
| MDCR | — | — | — | — | — | MDS2 | MDS1 | MDS0 | |
| MSTPCRA | MSTPA7 | MSTPA6 | MSTPA5 | MSTPA4 | MSTPA3 | MSTPA2 | MSTPA1 | MSTPA0 | |
| MSTPCRB | MSTPB7 | MSTPB6 | MSTPB5 | MSTPB4 | MSTPB3 | MSTPB2 | MSTPB1 | MSTPB0 | |
| MSTPCRC | MSTPC7 | MSTPC6 | MSTPC5 | MSTPC4 | MSTPC3 | MSTPC2 | MSTPC1 | MSTPC0 | |
| PFGR | — | — | — | — | AE3 | AE2 | AE1 | AE0 | BSC |
| LPWRCCR | — | — | — | — | RFCUT | — | STC1 | STC0 | SYSTEM |
| SEMR_0 | SSE | — | — | — | ABCS | ACS2 | ACS1 | ACS0 | SCI_0 |
| ISCRH | IRQ7SCB | IRQ7SCA | IRQ6SCB | IRQ6SCA | IRQ5SCB | IRQ5SCA | IRQ4SCB | IRQ4SCA | INT |
| ISURL | IRQ3SCB | IRQ3SCA | IRQ2SCB | IRQ2SCA | IRQ1SCB | IRQ1SCA | IRQ0SCB | IRQ0SCA | |
| IER | IRQ7E | IRQ6E | IRQ5E | IRQ4E | IRQ3E | IRQ2E | IRQ1E | IRQ0E | |
| ISR | IRQ7F | IRQ6F | IRQ5F | IRQ4F | IRQ3F | IRQ2F | IRQ1F | IRQ0F | |
| DTCERA | DTCEA7 | DTCEA6 | DTCEA5 | DTCEA4 | DTCEA3 | DTCEA2 | — | DTCEA0 | DTC |
| DTCERB | — | DTCEB6 | DTCEB5 | DTCEB4 | DTCEB3 | DTCEB2 | DTCEB1 | DTCEB0 | |
| DTCERC | DTCEC7 | DTCEC6 | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| DTCERD | — | — | — | — | DTCED3 | DTCED2 | DTCED1 | DTCED0 | |
| DTCERE | DTCEE7 | DTCEE6 | DTCEE5 | DTCEE4 | DTCEE3 | DTCEE2 | DTCEE1 | DTCEE0 | |
| DTCERF | DTCEF7 | DTCEF6 | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| DTVECR | SWDTE | DTVEC6 | DTVEC5 | DTVEC4 | DTVEC3 | DTVEC2 | DTVEC1 | DTVEC0 | |
| P1DDR | P17DDR | P16DDR | P15DDR | P14DDR | P13DDR | P12DDR | P11DDR | P10DDR | PORT |
| P3DDR | — | P36DDR | P35DDR | P34DDR | P33DDR | P32DDR | P31DDR | P30DDR | |
| P7DDR | — | — | — | P74DDR | P73DDR | P72DDR | P71DDR | P70DDR | |
| PADDR | — | — | — | — | PA3DDR | PA2DDR | PA1DDR | PA0DDR | |
| PBDDR | PB7DDR | PB6DDR | PB5DDR | PB4DDR | PB3DDR | PB2DDR | PB1DDR | PB0DDR | |
| PCDDR | PC7DDR | PC6DDR | PC5DDR | PC4DDR | PC3DDR | PC2DDR | PC1DDR | PC0DDR | |
| PDDDR | PD7DDR | PD6DDR | PD5DDR | PD4DDR | PD3DDR | PD2DDR | PD1DDR | PD0DDR | |
| PEDDR | PE7DDR | PE6DDR | PE5DDR | PE4DDR | PE3DDR | PE2DDR | PE1DDR | PE0DDR | |
| PFDDR | PF7DDR | PF6DDR | PF5DDR | PF4DDR | PF3DDR | PF2DDR | PF1DDR | PF0DDR | |
| PGDDR | — | — | — | PG4DDR | PG3DDR | PG2DDR | PG1DDR | PG0DDR | |
| PAPCR | — | — | — | — | PA3PCR | PA2PCR | PA1PCR | PA0PCR | |

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|---------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| PBPCR | PB7PCR | PB6PCR | PB5PCR | PB4PCR | PB3PCR | PB2PCR | PB1PCR | PB0PCR | PORT |
| PCPCR | PC7PCR | PC6PCR | PC5PCR | PC4PCR | PC3PCR | PC2PCR | PC1PCR | PC0PCR | |
| PDPCR | PD7PCR | PD6PCR | PD5PCR | PD4PCR | PD3PCR | PD2PCR | PD1PCR | PD0PCR | |
| PEPCR | PE7PCR | PE6PCR | PE5PCR | PE4PCR | PE3PCR | PE2PCR | PE1PCR | PE0PCR | |
| P3ODR | — | P36ODR | P35ODR | P34ODR | P33ODR | P32ODR | P31ODR | P30ODR | |
| PAODR | — | — | — | — | PA3ODR | PA2ODR | PA1ODR | PA0ODR | |
| TSTR | — | — | — | — | — | CST2 | CST1 | CST0 | TPU |
| TSYR | — | — | — | — | — | SYNC2 | SYNC1 | SYNC0 | |
| IPRA | — | IPRA6 | IPRA5 | IPRA4 | — | IPRA2 | IPRA1 | IPRA0 | INT |
| IPRB | — | IPRB6 | IPRB5 | IPRB4 | — | IPRB2 | IPRB1 | IPRB0 | |
| IPRC | — | IPRC6 | IPRC5 | IPRC4 | — | IPRC2 | IPRC1 | IPRC0 | |
| IPRD | — | IPRD6 | IPRD5 | IPRD4 | — | — | — | — | |
| IPRE | — | — | — | — | — | IPRE2 | IPRE1 | IPRE0 | |
| IPRF | — | IPRF6 | IPRF5 | IPRF4 | — | IPRF2 | IPRF1 | IPRF0 | |
| IPRG | — | IPRG6 | IPRG5 | IPRG4 | — | — | — | — | |
| IPRI | — | IPRI6 | IPRI5 | IPRI4 | — | IPRI2 | IPRI1 | IPRI0 | |
| IPRJ | — | IPRJ6 | IPRJ5 | IPRJ4 | — | IPRJ2 | IPRJ1 | IPRJ0 | |
| IPRK | — | IPRK6 | IPRK5 | IPRK4 | — | IPRK2 | IPRK1 | IPRK0 | |
| IPRM | — | IPRM6 | IPRM5 | IPRM4 | — | — | — | — | |
| ABWCR | ABW7 | ABW6 | ABW5 | ABW4 | ABW3 | ABW2 | ABW1 | ABW0 | BSC |
| ASTCR | AST7 | AST6 | AST5 | AST4 | AST3 | AST2 | AST1 | AST0 | |
| WCRH | W71 | W70 | W61 | W60 | W51 | W50 | W41 | W40 | |
| WCRL | W31 | W30 | W21 | W20 | W11 | W10 | W01 | W00 | |
| BCRH | ICIS1 | ICIS0 | BRSTRM | BRSTS1 | BRSTS0 | — | — | — | |
| BCRL | BRLE | — | — | — | — | — | — | WAITE | |
| RAMER | — | — | — | — | RAMS | RAM2 | RAM1 | RAM0 | FLASH |
| MAR0A | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | DMAC |
| | Bit 23 | Bit 22 | Bit 21 | Bit 20 | Bit 19 | Bit 18 | Bit 17 | Bit 16 | |
| | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| IOAR0A | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| ETCR0A | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|---------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| MAR0BH | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | DMAC |
| | Bit 23 | Bit 22 | Bit 21 | Bit 20 | Bit 19 | Bit 18 | Bit 17 | Bit 16 | |
| | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| IOAR0B | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| ETCR0B | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| MAR1AH | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| | Bit 23 | Bit 22 | Bit 21 | Bit 20 | Bit 19 | Bit 18 | Bit 17 | Bit 16 | |
| | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| IOAR1A | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| ETCR1A | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| MAR1BH | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| | Bit 23 | Bit 22 | Bit 21 | Bit 20 | Bit 19 | Bit 18 | Bit 17 | Bit 16 | |
| | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| MAR1BL | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| IOAR1B | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| ETCR1B | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| P1DR | P17DR | P16DR | P15DR | P14DR | P13DR | P12DR | P11DR | P10DR | PORT |
| P3DR | — | P36DR | P35DR | P34DR | P33DR | P32DR | P31DR | P30DR | |
| P7DR | — | — | — | P74DR | P73DR | P72DR | P71DR | P70DR | |
| PADR | — | — | — | — | PA3DR | PA2DR | PA1DR | PA0DR | |
| PBDR | PB7DR | PB6DR | PB5DR | PB4DR | PB3DR | PB2DR | PB1DR | PB0DR | |
| PCDR | PC7DR | PC6DR | PC5DR | PC4DR | PC3DR | PC2DR | PC1DR | PC0DR | |
| PDDR | PD7DR | PD6DR | PD5DR | PD4DR | PD3DR | PD2DR | PD1DR | PD0DR | |
| PEDR | PE7DR | PE6DR | PE5DR | PE4DR | PE3DR | PE2DR | PE1DR | PE0DR | |
| PFDR | PF7DR | PF6DR | PF5DR | PF4DR | PF3DR | PF2DR | PF1DR | PF0DR | |
| PGDR | — | — | — | PG4DR | PG3DR | PG2DR | PG1DR | PG0DR | |

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|---------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|--------|
| TCR_0 | CCLR2 | CCLR1 | CCLR0 | CKEG1 | CKEG0 | TPSC2 | TPSC1 | TPSC0 | TPU_0 |
| TMDR_0 | — | — | BFB | BFA | MD3 | MD2 | MD1 | MD0 | |
| TIORH_0 | IOB3 | IOB2 | IOB1 | IOB0 | IOA3 | IOA2 | IOA1 | IOA0 | |
| TIORL_0 | IOD3 | IOD2 | IOD1 | IOD0 | IOC3 | IOC2 | IOC1 | IOC0 | |
| TIER_0 | TTGE | — | — | TCIEV | TGIED | TGIEC | TGIEB | TGIEA | |
| TSR_0 | — | — | — | TCFV | TGFD | TGFC | TGFB | TGFA | |
| TCNT_0 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TGRA_0 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TGRB_0 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TGRC_0 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TGRD_0 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TCR_1 | — | CCLR1 | CCLR0 | CKEG1 | CKEG0 | TPSC2 | TPSC1 | TPSC0 | TPU_1 |
| TMDR_1 | — | — | — | — | MD3 | MD2 | MD1 | MD0 | |
| TIOR_1 | IOB3 | IOB2 | IOB1 | IOB0 | IOA3 | IOA2 | IOA1 | IOA0 | |
| TIER_1 | TTGE | — | TCIEU | TCIEV | — | — | TGIEB | TGIEA | |
| TSR_1 | TCFD | — | TCFU | TCFV | — | — | TGFB | TGFA | |
| TCNT_1 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TGRA_1 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TGRB_1 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| TCR_2 | — | CCLR1 | CCLR0 | CKEG1 | CKEG0 | TPSC2 | TPSC1 | TPSC0 | TPU_2 |
| TMDR_2 | — | — | — | — | MD3 | MD2 | MD1 | MD0 | |
| TIOR_2 | IOB3 | IOB2 | IOB1 | IOB0 | IOA3 | IOA2 | IOA1 | IOA0 | |
| TIER_2 | TTGE | — | TCIEU | TCIEV | — | — | TGIEB | TGIEA | |
| TSR_2 | TCFD | — | TCFU | TCFV | — | — | TGFB | TGFA | |
| TCNT_2 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TGRA_2 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| TGRB_2 | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 | |
| | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| DMAWER | — | — | — | — | WE1B | WE1A | WE0B | WE0A | DMAC |
| DMACR0A ^{*2} | DTSZ | DTID | RPE | DTDIR | DTF3 | DTF2 | DTF1 | DTF0 | |
| DMACR0A ^{*3} | DTSZ | SAID | SAIDE | BLKDIR | BLKE | — | — | — | |
| DMACR0B ^{*2} | DTSZ | DTID | RPE | DTDIR | DTF3 | DTF2 | DTF1 | DTF0 | |
| DMACR0B ^{*3} | — | DAID | DAIDE | — | DTF3 | DTF2 | DTF1 | DTF0 | |
| DMACR1A ^{*2} | DTSZ | DTID | RPE | DTDIR | DTF3 | DTF2 | DTF1 | DTF0 | |
| DMACR1A ^{*3} | DTSZ | SAID | SAIDE | BLKDIR | BLKE | — | — | — | |
| DMACR1B ^{*2} | DTSZ | DTID | RPE | DTDIR | DTF3 | DTF2 | DTF1 | DTF0 | |
| DMACR1B ^{*3} | — | DAID | DAIDE | — | DTF3 | DTF2 | DTF1 | DTF0 | |
| DMABCR ^{*2} | FAE1 | FAE0 | — | — | DTA1B | DTA1A | DTA0B | DTA0A | |
| | DTE1B | DTE1A | DTE0B | DTE0A | DTIE1B | DTIE1A | DTIE0B | DTIE0A | |
| DMABCR ^{*3} | FAE1 | FAE0 | — | — | DTA1 | — | DTA0 | — | |
| | DTME1 | DTE1 | DTME0 | DTE0 | DTIE1B | DTIE1A | DTIE0B | DTIE0A | |

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|---------------|-------------|-------|-------|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| TCR_0 | CMIEB | CMIEA | OVIE | CCLR1 | CCLR0 | CKS2 | CKS1 | CKS0 | TMR_0 |
| TCR_1 | CMIEB | CMIEA | OVIE | CCLR1 | CCLR0 | CKS2 | CKS1 | CKS0 | TMR_1 |
| TCSR_0 | CMFB | CMFA | OVF | ADTE | OS3 | OS2 | OS1 | OS0 | TMR_0 |
| TCSR_1 | CMFB | CMFA | OVF | — | OS3 | OS2 | OS1 | OS0 | TMR_1 |
| TCORA_0 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TMR_0 |
| TCORA_1 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TMR_1 |
| TCORB_0 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TMR_0 |
| TCORB_1 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TMR_1 |
| TCNT_0 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TMR_0 |
| TCNT_1 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | TMR_1 |
| TCSR | OVF | WT/IT | TME | — | — | CKS2 | CKS1 | CKS0 | WDT |
| TCNT | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| RSTCSR | WOVF | RSTE | RSTS | — | — | — | — | — | |
| SMR_0 | C \bar{A} | CHR | PE | O \bar{E} | STOP | MP | CKS1 | CKS0 | SCI_0 |
| BRR_0 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SCR_0 | TIE | RIE | TE | RE | MPIE | TEIE | CKE1 | CKE0 | |
| TDR_0 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SSR_0 | TDRE | RDRF | ORER | FER | PER | TEND | MPB | MPBT | |
| RDR_0 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SCMR_0 | — | — | — | — | DIR | INV | — | — | |
| SMR_1 | C \bar{A} | CHR | PE | O \bar{E} | STOP | MP | CKS1 | CKS0 | SCI_1 |
| BRR_1 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SCR_1 | TIE | RIE | TE | RE | MPIE | TEIE | CKE1 | CKE0 | |
| TDR_1 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SSR_1 | TDRE | RDRF | ORER | FER | PER | TEND | MPB | MPBT | |
| RDR_1 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SCMR_1 | — | — | — | — | DIR | INV | — | — | |
| SMR_2 | C \bar{A} | CHR | PE | O \bar{E} | STOP | MP | CKS1 | CKS0 | SCI_2 |
| BRR_2 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SCR_2 | TIE | RIE | TE | RE | MPIE | TEIE | CKE1 | CKE0 | |
| TDR_2 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SSR_2 | TDRE | RDRF | ORER | FER | PER | TEND | MPB | MPBT | |
| RDR_2 | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
| SCMR_2 | — | — | — | — | DIR | INV | — | — | |

| Register Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Module |
|---------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| ADDRAH | AD9 | AD8 | AD7 | AD6 | AD5 | AD4 | AD3 | AD2 | A/D |
| ADDRAL | AD1 | AD0 | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| ADDRBH | AD9 | AD8 | AD7 | AD6 | AD5 | AD4 | AD3 | AD2 | |
| ADDRBL | AD1 | AD0 | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| ADDRCH | AD9 | AD8 | AD7 | AD6 | AD5 | AD4 | AD3 | AD2 | |
| ADDRCL | AD1 | AD0 | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| ADDRDH | AD9 | AD8 | AD7 | AD6 | AD5 | AD4 | AD3 | AD2 | |
| ADDRDL | AD1 | AD0 | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| ADCSR | ADF | ADIE | ADST | SCAN | CH3 | CH2 | CH1 | CH0 | |
| ADCR | TRGS1 | TRGS0 | — | — | CKS1 | CKS0 | — | — | |
| FLMCR1 | FWE | SWE1 | ESU1 | PSU1 | EV1 | PV1 | E1 | P1 | FLASH |
| FLMCR2 | FLER | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| EBR1 | EB7 | EB6 | EB5 | EB4 | EB3 | EB2 | EB1 | EB0 | |
| EBR2 | — | — | — | — | EB11 | EB10 | EB9 | EB8 | |
| PORT1 | P17 | P16 | P15 | P14 | P13 | P12 | P11 | P10 | PORT |
| PORT3 | — | P36 | P35 | P34 | P33 | P32 | P31 | P30 | |
| PORT4 | — | — | — | — | P43 | P42 | P41 | P40 | |
| PORT7 | — | — | — | P74 | P73 | P72 | P71 | P70 | |
| PORT9 | P97 | P96 | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORTA | — | — | — | — | PA3 | PA2 | PA1 | PA0 | |
| PORTB | PB7 | PB6 | PB5 | PB4 | PB3 | PB2 | PB1 | PB0 | |
| PORTC | PC7 | PC6 | PC5 | PC4 | PC3 | PC2 | PC1 | PC0 | |
| PORTD | PD7 | PD6 | PD5 | PD4 | PD3 | PD2 | PD1 | PD0 | |
| PORTE | PE7 | PE6 | PE5 | PE4 | PE3 | PE2 | PE1 | PE0 | |
| PORTF | PF7 | PF6 | PF5 | PF4 | PF3 | PF2 | PF1 | PF0 | |
| PORTG | — | — | — | PG4 | PG3 | PG2 | PG1 | PG0 | |

- Notes: 1. nn = 00 to 22
 2. Short address mode
 3. Full address mode

23.3 Register States in Each Operating Mode

| Register Name | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | High-Speed | Medium-Speed | Sleep | Module Stop | Software Standby | Hardware Standby | Module |
|------------------------|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------|
| UEPIR00_0 to UEPIR22_4 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | USB |
| UCTLR | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTRA | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UDMAR | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UDRR | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTRG0 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTRG1 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UFCLR0 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UFCLR1 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UESTL0 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UESTL1 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UEDR0s | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UEDR0i | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UEDR0o | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UEDR1i | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UEDR2i | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UEDR2o | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UEDR3i | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UEDR3o | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UEDR4i | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UEDR4o | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UEDR5i | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UESZ0o | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UESZ2o | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UESZ3o | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UESZ4o | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| UIFR0 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UIFR1 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UIFR2 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UIFR3 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UIER0 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |

Note: * The USB registers are no initialized by a power-on reset triggered by the WDT.

| Register Name | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | High-Speed | Medium-Speed | Sleep | Module Stop | Software Standby | Hardware Standby | Module |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------|
| UIER1 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | USB |
| UIER2 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UIER3 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UISR0 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UISR1 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UISR2 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UISR3 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UDSR | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UCVR | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSRH | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSRL | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTR0 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTR1 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTR2 | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTRB | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTRC | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTRD | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTRE | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| UTSTRF | Initialized* | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| MRA | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | DTC |
| SAR | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| MRB | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| DAR | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| CRA | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| CRB | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| DADR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | D/A |
| DADR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DACR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| SCRX | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | FLASH |
| SBYCR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | SYSTEM |
| SYSCR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| SCKCR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| MDCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| MSTPCRA | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| MSTPCRB | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | SYSTEM |
| MSTPCRC | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |

Note: * The USB registers are no initialized by a power-on reset triggered by the WDT.

| Register Name | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | High-Speed | Medium-Speed | Sleep | Module Stop | Software Standby | Hardware Standby | Module |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------|
| PFCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | BSC |
| LPWRCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | SYSTEM |
| SEMR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | SCI_0 |
| ISCRH | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | INT |
| ISCLR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IER | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| ISR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DTCERA | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | DTC |
| DTCERB | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DTCERC | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DTCERD | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DTCERE | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DTCERF | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DTVECR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| P1DDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | PORT |
| P3DDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| P7DDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PADDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PBDDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PCDDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PDDDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PEDDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PFDDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PGDDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PAPCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PBPCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PCPCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PDPCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PEPCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| P3ODR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PAODR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |

| Register Name | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | High-Speed | Medium-Speed | Sleep | Module Stop | Software Standby | Hardware Standby | Module |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------|
| TSTR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TPU |
| TSYR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRA | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | INT |
| IPRB | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRC | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRD | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRE | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRF | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRG | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRI | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRJ | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRK | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| IPRM | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| ABWCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | BSC |
| ASTCR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| WCRH | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| WCRL | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| BCRH | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| BCRL | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| RAMER | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | FLASH |
| MAR0A | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | DMAC |
| IOAR0A | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| ETCR0A | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| MAR0B | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| IOAR0B | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| ETCR0B | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| MAR1A | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| IOAR1A | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| ETCR1A | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| MAR1B | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| IOAR1B | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| ETCR1B | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |

| Register Name | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | High-Speed | Medium-Speed | Sleep | Module Stop | Software Standby | Hardware Standby | Module |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------|
| P1DR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | PORT |
| P3DR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| P7DR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PADR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PBDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PCDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PDDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PEDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PFDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| PGDR | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TCR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TPU_0 |
| TMDR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TIORH_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TIORL_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TIER_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TSR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TCNT_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TGRA_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TGRB_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TGRC_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TGRD_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TCR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TPU_1 |
| TMDR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TIOR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TIER_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TSR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TCNT_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TGRA_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TGRB_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TCR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TPU_2 |
| TMDR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TIOR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TIER_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TSR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TCNT_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TGRA_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TGRB_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |

| Register Name | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | High-Speed | Medium-Speed | Sleep | Module Stop | Software Standby | Hardware Standby | Module |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------|
| DMAWER | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | DMAC |
| DMACR0A | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DMACR0B | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DMACR1A | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DMACR1B | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| DMABCR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TCR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_0 |
| TCR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_1 |
| TCSR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_0 |
| TCSR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_1 |
| TCORA_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_0 |
| TCORA_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_1 |
| TCORB_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_0 |
| TCORB_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_1 |
| TCNT_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_0 |
| TCNT_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | TMR_1 |
| TCSR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | WDT |
| TCNT | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| RSTCSR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| SMR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | SCI_0 |
| BRR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| SCR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TDR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| SSR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| RDR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| SCMR_0 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| SMR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | SCI_1 |
| BRR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| SCR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TDR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| SSR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| RDR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| SCMR_1 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |

| Register Name | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | High-Speed | Medium-Speed | Sleep | Module Stop | Software Standby | Hardware Standby | Module |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------|
| SMR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | SCI_2 |
| BRR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| SCR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| TDR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| SSR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| RDR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| SCMR_2 | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | |
| ADDRAH | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | A/D |
| ADDRAL | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| ADDRBH | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| ADDRBL | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| ADDRCH | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| ADDRCL | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| ADDRDH | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| ADDRDL | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| ADCSR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| ADCR | Initialized | Initialized | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | Initialized | |
| FLMCR1 | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | FLASH |
| FLMCR2 | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | |
| EBR1 | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | |
| EBR2 | Initialized | — | — | — | — | — | Initialized | Initialized | |
| PORT1 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | PORT |
| PORT3 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORT4 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORT7 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORT9 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORTA | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORTB | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORTC | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORTD | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORTE | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORTF | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |
| PORTG | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | |

Note: — is not initialized.

Section 24 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215)

24.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Table 24.1 lists the absolute maximum ratings.

Table 24.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

| Item | Symbol | Value | Unit |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|------|
| Power supply voltage | V_{CC1} , $PLL V_{CC1}$ DrV_{CC} | -0.3 to +4.3 | V |
| Input voltage (except ports 4 and 9) | V_{in} | -0.3 to $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Input voltage (ports 4 and 9) | V_{in} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Reference voltage | V_{ref} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Analog power supply voltage | AV_{CC} | -0.3 to +4.3 | V |
| Analog input voltage | V_{AN} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Operating temperature | T_{opr} | Regular specifications: -20 to +75 | °C |
| | | Wide-range specifications: -40 to +85* | °C |
| Storage temperature | T_{stg} | -55 to +125 | °C |

Caution: Permanent damage to the chip may result if absolute maximum ratings are exceeded.

Note: * The operating temperature ranges for flash memory programming/erasing are $T_a = -20^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+75^{\circ}\text{C}$.

24.2 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range

Power supply voltage and operating frequency ranges (shaded areas) are shown in figure 24.1.

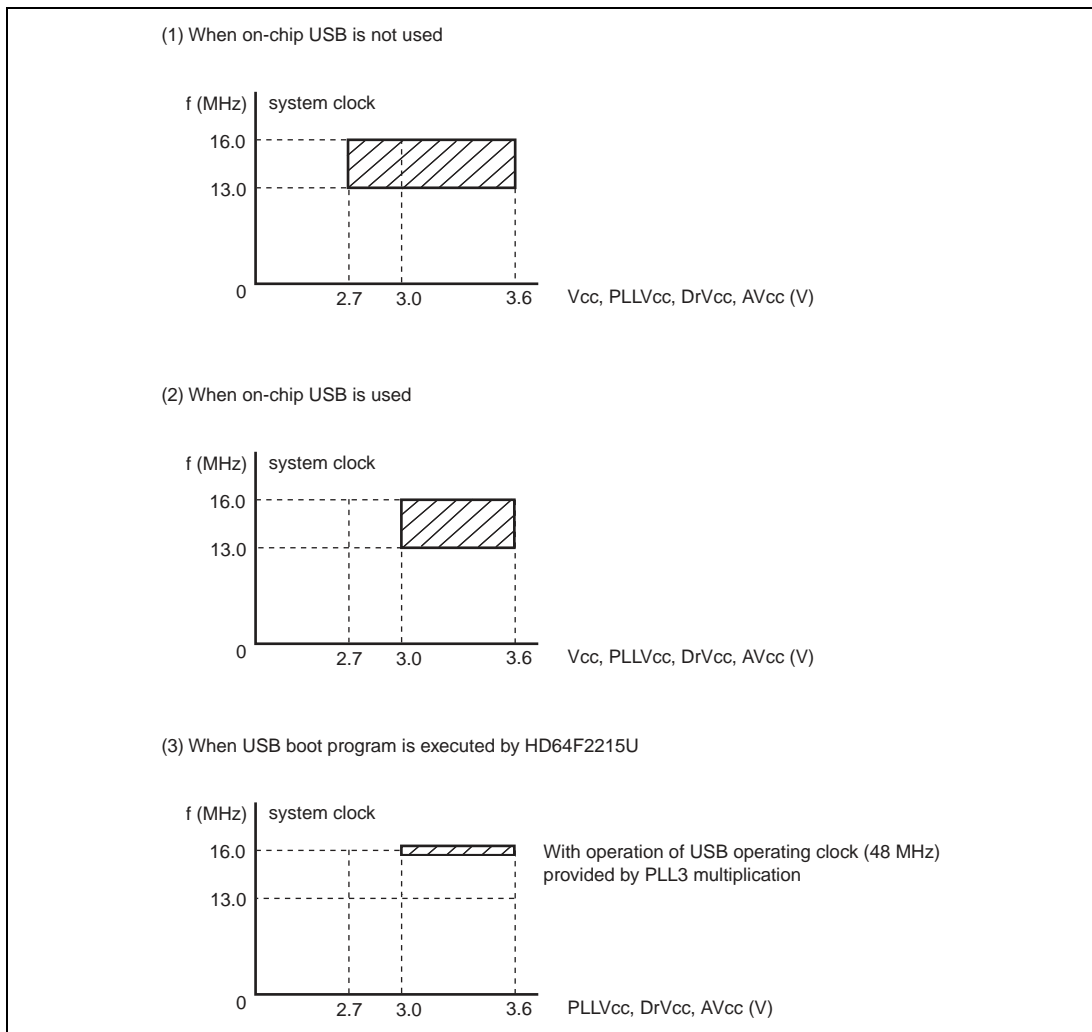


Figure 24.1 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges

24.3 DC Characteristics

Table 24.2 lists the DC characteristics. Table 24.3 lists the permissible output currents.

Table 24.2 DC Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications),
 $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)*¹

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------|----------------------|------|--------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Schmitt trigger input voltage | $\overline{IRQ0}$ to $\overline{IRQ5}$ | V_T^- | $V_{CC} \times 0.2$ | — | — | V | |
| | $\overline{IRQ7}$ | V_T^+ | — | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | V | |
| | | $V_T^+ - V_T^-$ | $V_{CC} \times 0.05$ | — | — | V | |
| Input high voltage | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , NMI, MD2 to MD0, \overline{TRST} , TCK, TMS, TDI, VBUS, \overline{UBPM} , FWE* ⁵ | V_{IH} | $V_{CC} \times 0.9$ | — | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V | |
| | EXTAL, EXTAL48, Ports 1, 3, 7, and A to G | | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V | |
| | Ports 4* ⁶ and 9 | | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ * ⁶ | V | |
| Input low voltage | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , MD2 to MD0, \overline{TRST} , TCK, TMS, TDI, VBUS, \overline{UBPM} , FWE* ⁵ | V_{IL} | -0.3 | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.1$ | V | |
| | EXTAL, EXTAL48, NMI, Ports 1, 3, 4, 7, 9, and A to G | | -0.3 | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.2$ | V | |
| Output high voltage | All output pins | V_{OH} | $V_{CC} - 0.5$ | — | — | V | $I_{OH} = -200\ \mu\text{A}$ |
| | | | $V_{CC} - 1.0$ | — | — | V | $I_{OH} = -1\ \text{mA}$ |

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-----------------------------------|---|---------------|------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| Output low voltage | All output pins V_{OL} | — | — | 0.4 | V | $I_{OH} = 0.4 \text{ mA}$ |
| | | — | — | 0.4 | V | $I_{OL} = 0.8 \text{ mA}$ |
| Input leakage current | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , NMI, MD2 to MD0, FWE ^{*5} , VBUS, \overline{UBPM} | $ I_{in} $ | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } V_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| | Ports 4, 9 | $ I_{in} $ | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } AV_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| 3-state leak current (off status) | Ports 1, 3, 7, A to G | $ I_{TSI} $ | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } V_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| Input pull-up MOS current | Ports A to E | $-I_p$ | 10 | — | 300 | μA $V_{in} = 0 \text{ V}$ |
| Input capacity | \overline{RES} , NMI | C_{in} | — | — | 30 | pF $V_{in} = 0 \text{ V}$ |
| | All input pins other than RES and NMI | | — | — | 15 | pF $f = 1 \text{ MHz}$ $T_a = 25^\circ\text{C}$ |
| Current dissipation ^{*2} | Normal operation (USB halts) | I_{CC}^{*3} | — | 27 $V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$ | 40 $V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$ | mA $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ |
| | Normal operation (USB operates) | | — | 36 $V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$ | 50 $V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$ | mA $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ When PLL is used |
| | Sleep mode | | — | 22 $V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$ | 35 $V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$ | mA $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ When USB and PLL are halted |
| | All modules stopped | | — | 16 $V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$ | — | mA $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ (reference value) |
| | Standby mode ^{*4} | | — | 1.0 | 10 | μA $T_a \leq 50^\circ\text{C}$ |
| Analog power supply current | During A/D conversion | AI_{CC} | — | 0.5 | 1.5 | mA $AV_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$ |
| | Idle | | — | 0.01 | 5.0 | μA |

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|------|------|------|---------------|--------------------------|
| Reference power supply current | During A/D conversion | I_{CC} | — | 1.3 | 2.5 | mA | $V_{ref} = 3.3\text{ V}$ |
| | Idle | | — | 0.01 | 5.0 | μA | |
| RAM standby voltage | | V_{RAM} | 2.0 | — | — | V | |

- Notes: 1. If the A/D or D/A converter is not used, the AVCC, V_{ref} , and AVSS pins should not be open. Even if the A/D or D/A converter is not used, connect the AVCC and V_{ref} pins to V_{CC} and the AVSS pin to V_{SS} , respectively. In this case, the V_{ref} level should be the AVCC level or less.
2. Current dissipation values are for $V_{IH}(\text{min.}) = V_{CC} - 0.2\text{ V}$ and $V_{IL}(\text{max.}) = 0.2\text{ V}$, with all output pins unloaded and the on-chip MOS pull-up transistors in the off state.
3. I_{CC} depends on V_{CC} and f as follows:
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.67\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB halted)
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.85\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operated)
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.59\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (sleep mode)
4. The values are for $V_{RAM} \leq V_{CC} < 2.7\text{ V}$, $V_{IH}(\text{min.}) = V_{CC} \times 0.9$, and $V_{IL}(\text{max.}) = 0.3\text{ V}$.
5. The FWE pin is effective only in the F-ZTAT version.
6. When $V_{CC} < AV_{CC}$, the maximum value for P40 and P41 is $V_{CC} + 0.3\text{ V}$.

Table 24.3 Permissible Output Currents

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications),
 $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)*

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|---|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------|------|------|--------|
| Permissible output low current (per pin) | All output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | I_{OL} | — | — | 1.0 mA |
| Permissible output low current (total) | Total of all output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $\sum I_{OL}$ | — | — | 60 mA |
| Permissible output high current (per pin) | All output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $-I_{OH}$ | — | — | 1.0 mA |
| Permissible output high current (total) | Total of all output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $\sum -I_{OH}$ | — | — | 30 mA |

Note: * To protect chip reliability, do not exceed the output current values in table 24.3.

24.4 AC Characteristics

Figure 24.2 shows, the test conditions for the AC characteristics.

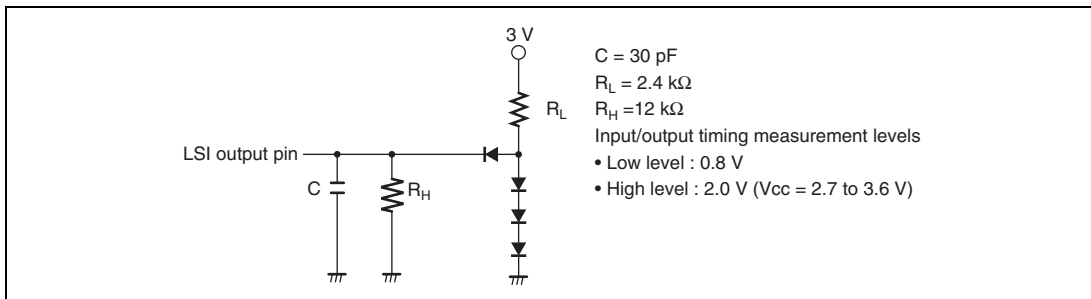


Figure 24.2 Output Load Circuit

24.4.1 Clock Timing

Table 24.4 lists the clock timing

Table 24.4 Clock Timing

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--|------------|------|------|---------------|---|
| Clock cycle time | t_{cyc} | 62.5 | 76.9 | ns | Figure 24.3 |
| Clock high pulse width | t_{CH} | 20 | — | ns | |
| Clock low pulse width | t_{CL} | 20 | — | ns | |
| Clock rise time | t_{Cr} | — | 10 | ns | |
| Clock fall time | t_{Cf} | — | 10 | ns | |
| Oscillation stabilization time at reset (crystal) | t_{OSC1} | 20 | — | ms | Figure 24.4 |
| Oscillation stabilization time in software standby (crystal) | t_{OSC2} | 8 | — | ms | $C_{L1} = C_{L2} = 10\text{ pF}$ to 22 pF in figure 21.2 $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$ in figure 22.3 |
| | | 4 | — | ms | $C_{L1} = C_{L2} = 10\text{ pF}$ to 15 pF in figure 21.2 $V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$ in figure 22.3 |
| External clock output stabilization delay time | t_{DEXT} | 500 | — | μs | Figure 24.4 |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) stabilization time | t_{OSC3} | 8 | — | ms | $V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$ |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator frequency | f_{48} | 48 | | MHz | |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) cycle time | f_{48} | 20.8 | | ns | |

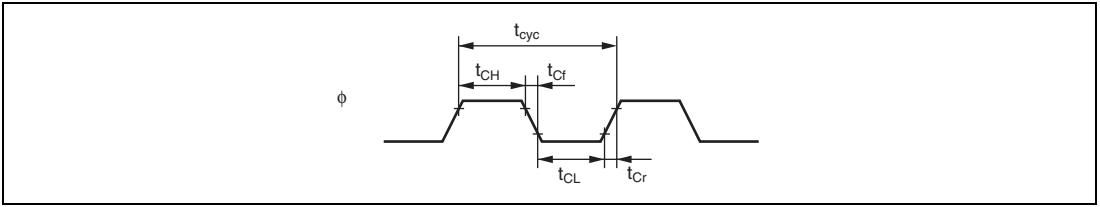


Figure 24.3 System Clock Timing

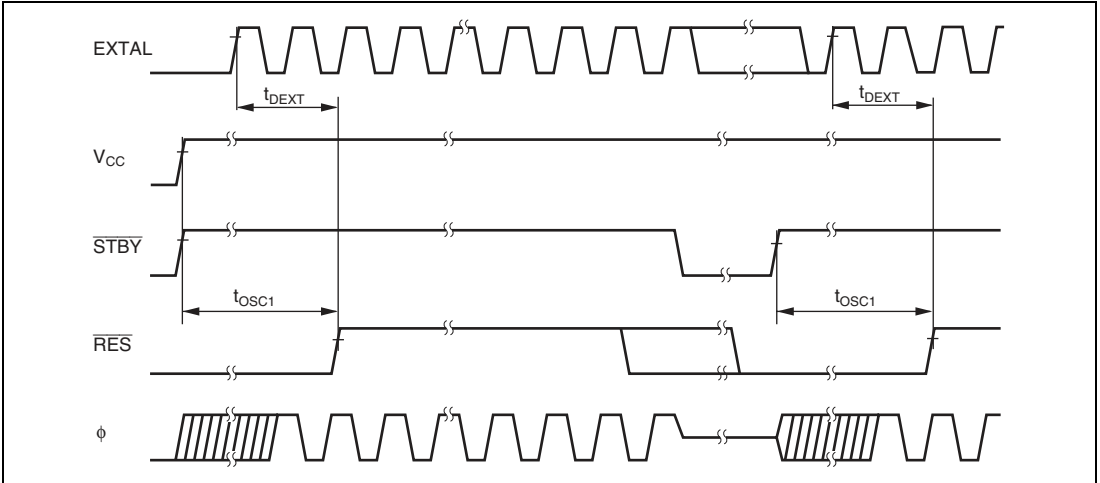


Figure 24.4 Oscillation Stabilization Timing

24.4.2 Control Signal Timing

Table 24.5 lists the control signal timing.

Table 24.5 Control Signal Timing

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|---|--------------------|------|------|------------------|-----------------|
| $\overline{\text{RES}}$ setup time | t_{RESS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 24.5 |
| $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pulse width | t_{RESW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ setup time | t_{MRESS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| $\overline{\text{MRES}}$ pulse width | t_{MRESW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| NMI setup time | t_{NMIS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 24.6 |
| NMI hold time | t_{NMIH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| NMI pulse width (exiting software standby mode) | t_{NMIW} | 200 | — | ns | |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ}}$ setup time | t_{IRQS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ}}$ hold time | t_{IRQH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| $\overline{\text{IRQ}}$ pulse width (exiting software standby mode) | t_{IRQW} | 200 | — | ns | |

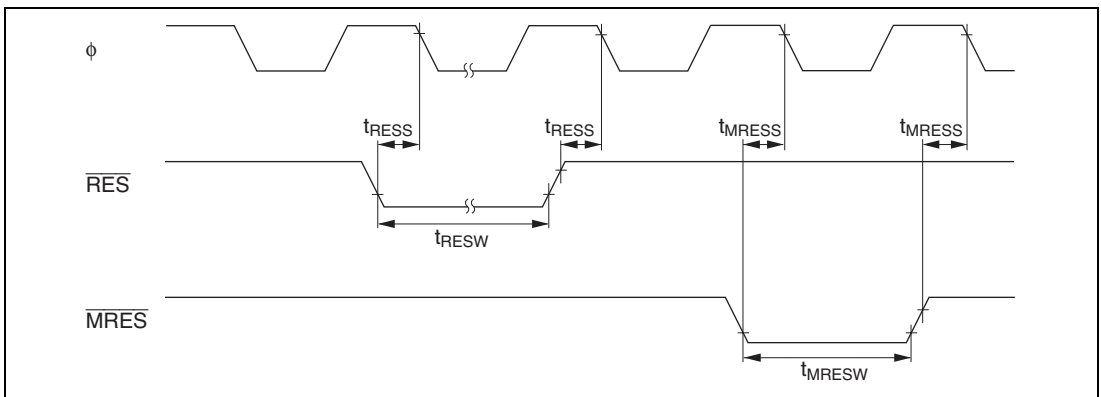


Figure 24.5 Reset Input Timing

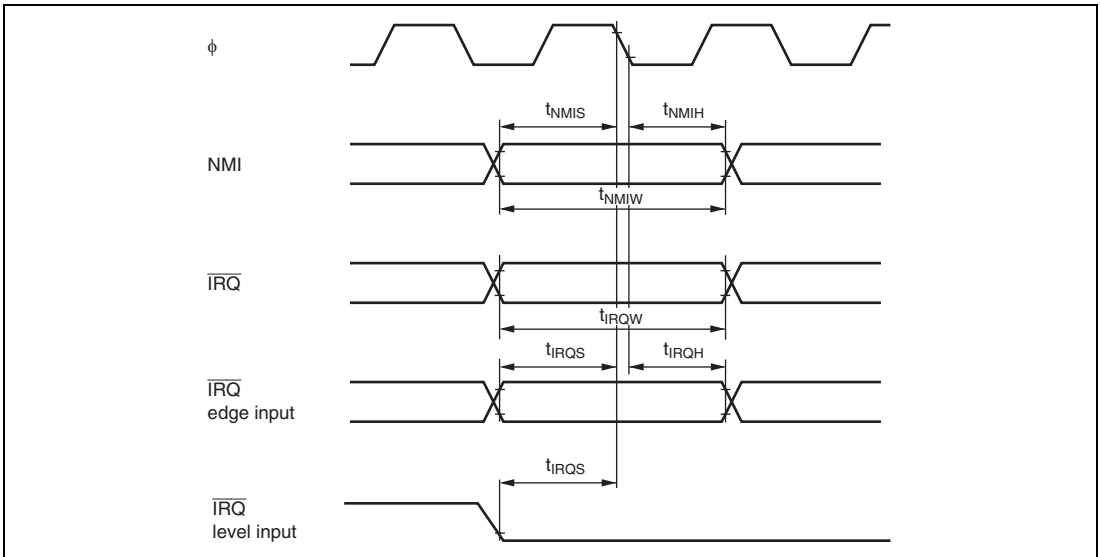


Figure 24.6 Interrupt Input Timing

24.4.3 Bus Timing

Table 24.6 shows, Bus Timing.

Table 24.6 Bus Timing

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-------------------------------|------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|------|---------------------------|
| Address delay time | t_{AD} | — | 50 | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.8, 24.10 |
| Address setup time | t_{AS} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 30$ | — | ns | |
| Address hold time | t_{AH} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 15$ | — | ns | |
| \overline{CS} delay time | t_{CSD} | — | 50 | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.8 |
| \overline{AS} delay time | t_{ASD} | — | 50 | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.8, 24.10 |
| \overline{RD} delay time 1 | t_{RSD1} | — | 50 | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.8 |
| \overline{RD} delay time 2 | t_{RSD2} | — | 50 | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.8, 24.10 |
| Read data setup time | t_{RDS} | 30 | — | ns | |
| Read data hold time | t_{RDH} | 0 | — | ns | |
| Read data access time 2 | t_{ACC2} | — | $1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 65$ | ns | Figure 24.7 |
| Read data access time 3 | t_{ACC3} | — | $2.0 \times t_{cyc} - 65$ | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.10 |
| Read data access time 4 | t_{ACC4} | — | $2.5 \times t_{cyc} - 65$ | ns | Figure 24.8 |
| Read data access time 5 | t_{ACC5} | — | $3.0 \times t_{cyc} - 65$ | ns | |
| \overline{WR} delay time 1 | t_{WRD1} | — | 50 | ns | |
| \overline{WR} delay time 2 | t_{WRD2} | — | 50 | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.8 |
| \overline{WR} pulse width 1 | t_{WSW1} | $1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 30$ | — | ns | Figure 24.7 |
| \overline{WR} pulse width 2 | t_{WSW2} | $1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 30$ | — | ns | Figure 24.8 |
| Write data delay time | t_{WDD} | — | 50 | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.8 |
| Write data setup time | t_{WDS} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 30$ | — | ns | Figure 24.8 |
| Write data hold time | t_{WDH} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 15$ | — | ns | Figures 24.7, 24.8 |
| \overline{WAIT} setup time | t_{WTS} | 50 | — | ns | Figure 24.9 |
| \overline{WAIT} hold time | t_{WTH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| \overline{BREQ} setup time | t_{BRQS} | 50 | — | ns | Figure 24.11 |
| \overline{BACK} delay time | t_{BACD} | — | 50 | ns | |
| Bus-floating time | t_{BZD} | — | 80 | ns | |

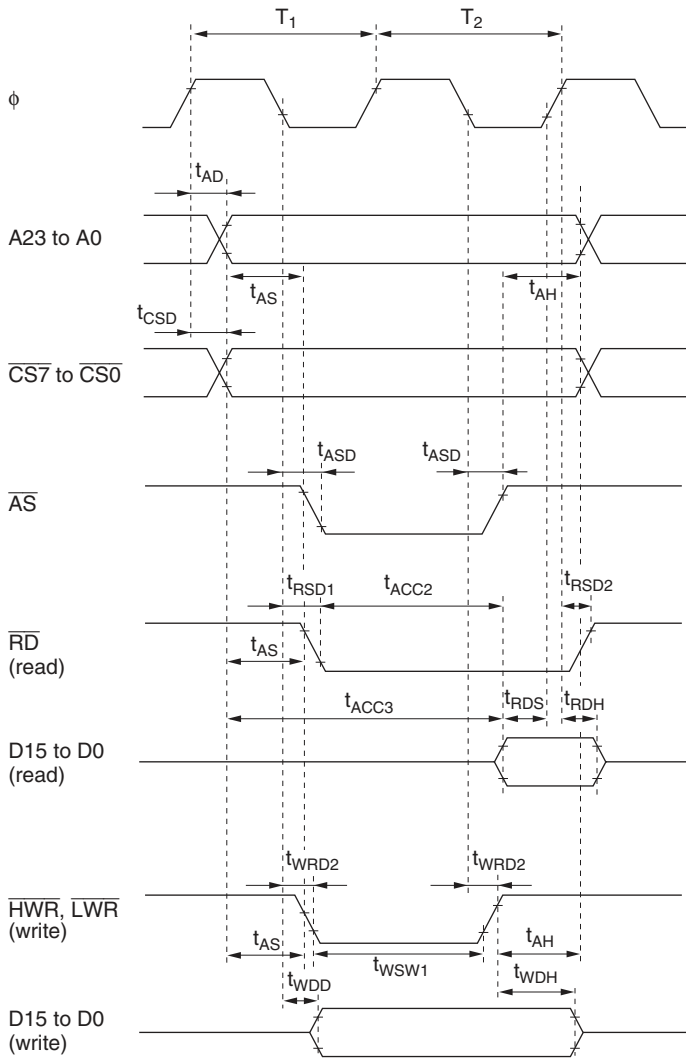


Figure 24.7 Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)

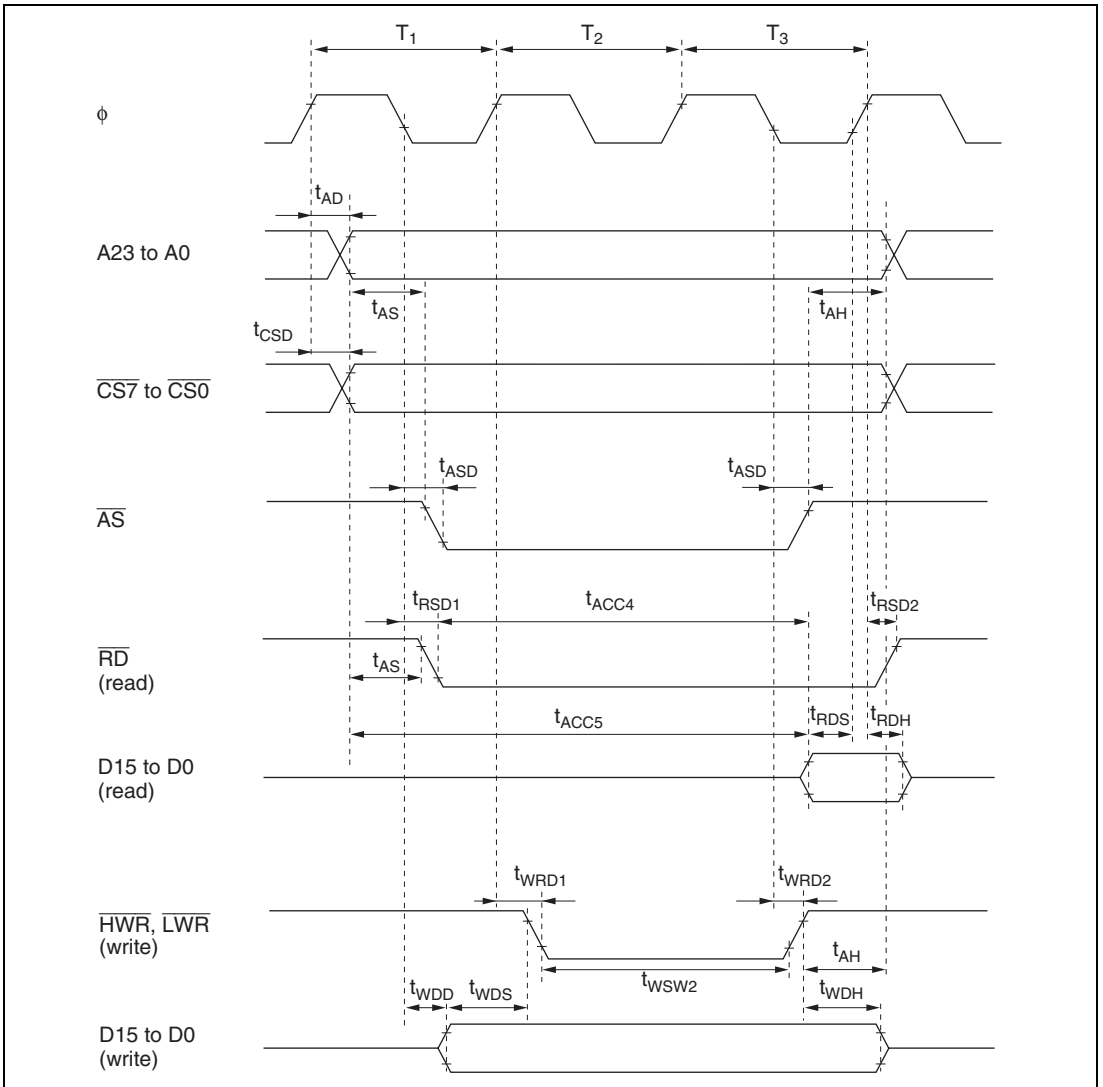


Figure 24.8 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)

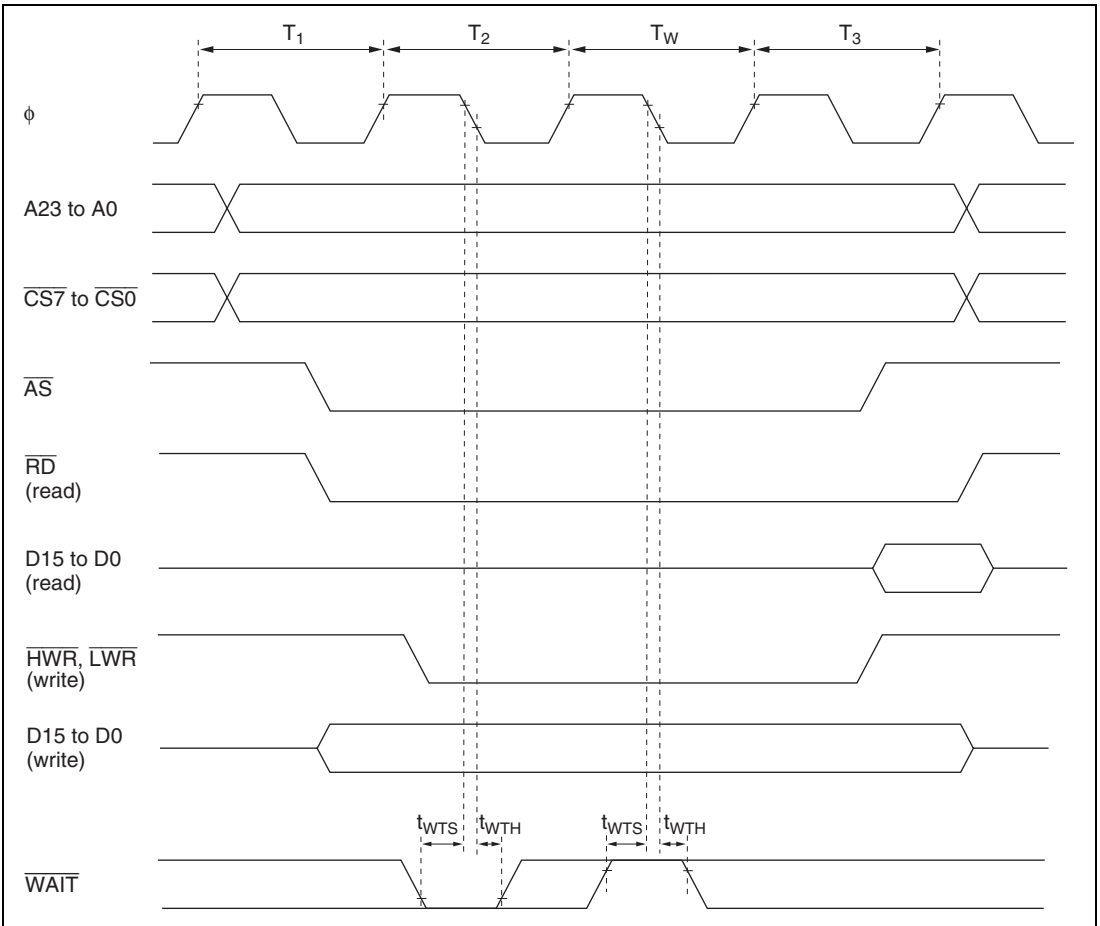


Figure 24.9 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State)

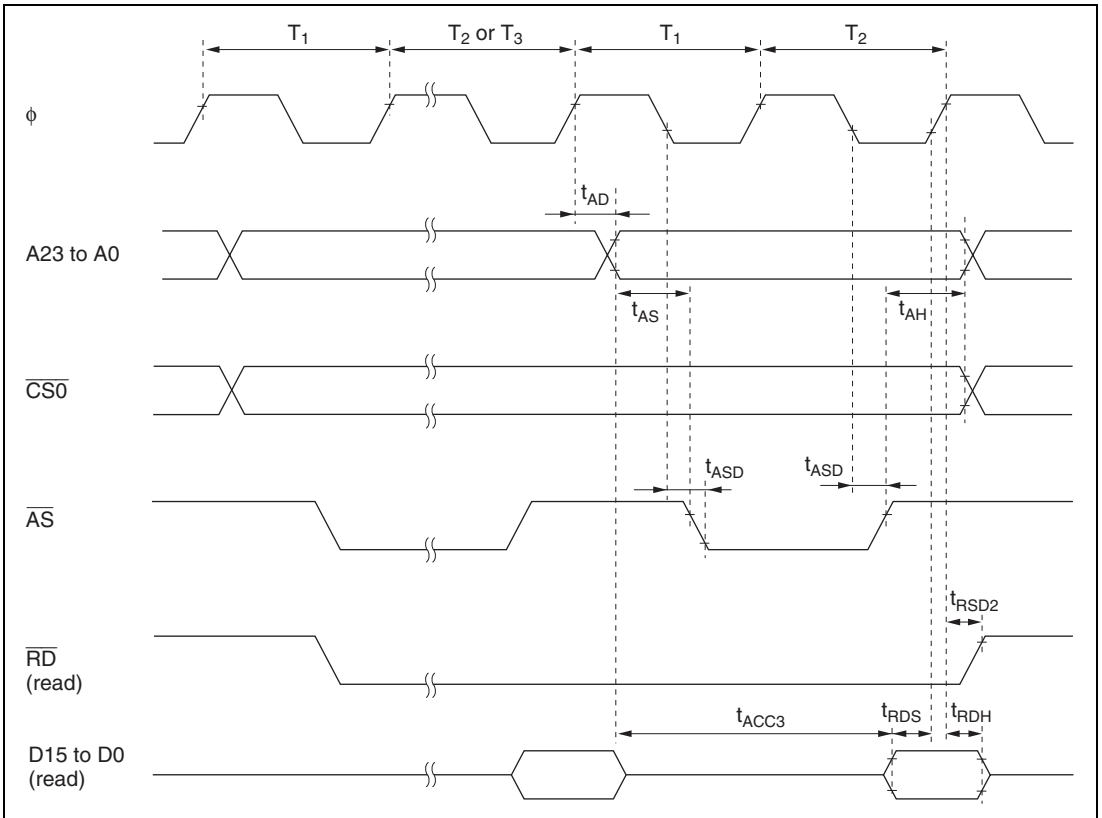


Figure 24.10 Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)

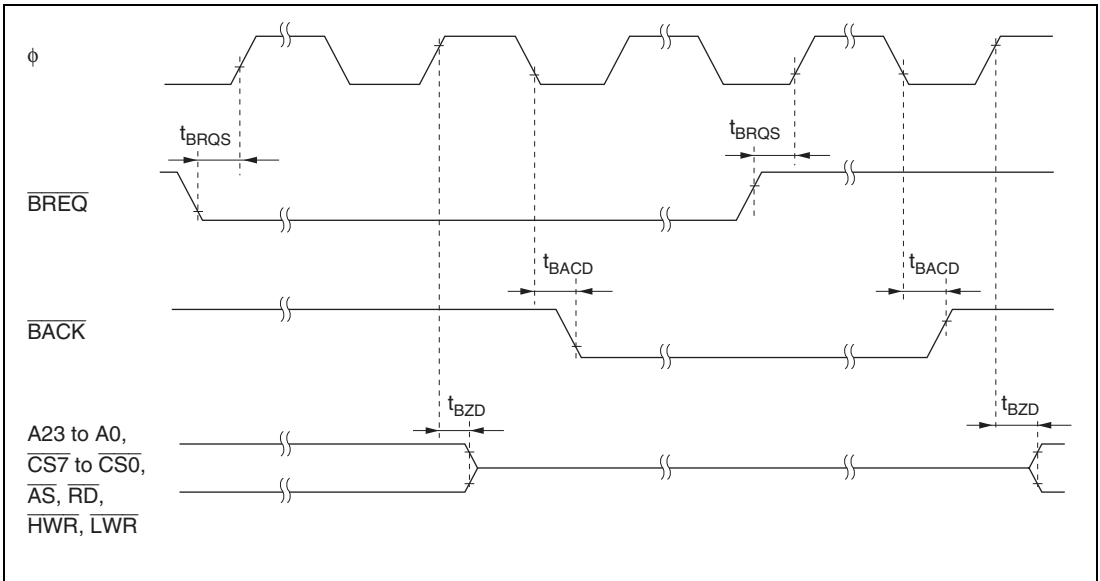


Figure 24.11 External Bus Release Timing

24.4.4 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Table 24.7 lists the timing of on-chip supporting modules.

Table 24.7 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|----------|------------------------------|-------------|-------------|------|------|-----------------|--|
| I/O port | Output data delay time | t_{PWD} | — | 60 | ns | Figure 24.12 | |
| | Input data setup time | t_{PRS} | 50 | — | | | |
| | Input data hold time | t_{PRH} | 50 | — | | | |
| TPU | Timer output delay time | t_{TOCD} | — | 60 | ns | Figure 24.13 | |
| | Timer input setup time | t_{TICS} | 40 | — | | | |
| | Timer clock input setup time | t_{TCKS} | 40 | — | ns | Figure 24.14 | |
| | Timer clock pulse width | Single edge | t_{TCKWH} | 1.5 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| | | Both edges | t_{TCKWL} | 2.5 | — | | |
| TMR | Timer output delay time | t_{TMOD} | — | 60 | ns | Figure 24.15 | |
| | Timer reset input setup time | t_{TMRS} | 50 | — | ns | Figure 24.17 | |
| | Timer clock input setup time | t_{TMCS} | 50 | — | ns | Figure 24.16 | |
| | Timer clock pulse width | Single edge | t_{TMCWH} | 1.5 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| | | Both edges | t_{TMCWL} | 2.5 | — | | |

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| SCI | Input clock cycle | Asynchronous | $t_{S_{CYC}}$ | 4 | — | t_{CYC} | Figure 24.18 |
| | | Synchronous | | 6 | — | | |
| | Input clock pulse width | $t_{S_{CKW}}$ | 0.4 | 0.6 | $t_{S_{CYC}}$ | | |
| | Input clock rise time | $t_{S_{CKr}}$ | — | 1.5 | t_{CYC} | | |
| | Input clock fall time | $t_{S_{CKf}}$ | — | 1.5 | | | |
| | Transmit data delay time | t_{TXD} | — | 60 | ns | Figure 24.19 | |
| | Receive data setup time (synchronous) | t_{RXS} | 60 | — | | | |
| Receive data hold time (synchronous) | t_{RXH} | 60 | — | | | | |
| A/D converter | Trigger input setup time | t_{TRGS} | 40 | — | ns | Figure 24.20 | |
| Boundary scan | TCK cycle time | t_{CYC} | 62.5 | — | ns | Figure 24.21 | |
| | TCK high level pulse width | t_{TCKH} | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{CYC} | | |
| | TCK low level pulse width | t_{TCKL} | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{CYC} | | |
| | \overline{TRST} pulse width | t_{TRSW} | 20 | — | t_{CYC} | Figure 24.22 | |
| | \overline{TRST} setup time | t_{TRSS} | 250 | — | ns | | |
| | TDI setup time | t_{TDIS} | 30 | — | ns | Figure 24.23 | |
| | TDI hold time | t_{TDIH} | 10 | — | | | |
| | TMS setup time | t_{TMSS} | 30 | — | | | |
| | TMS hold time | t_{TMSh} | 10 | — | | | |
| TDO delay time | t_{TDOD} | — | 40 | | | | |

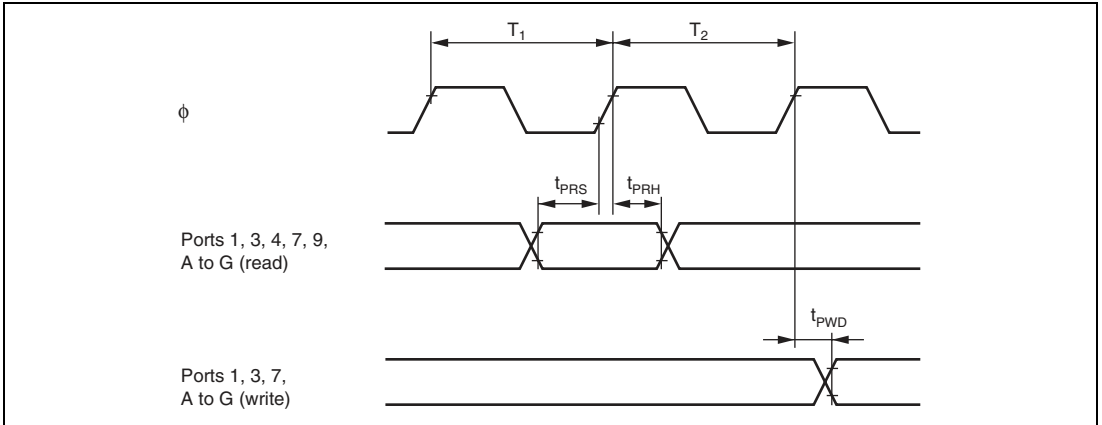
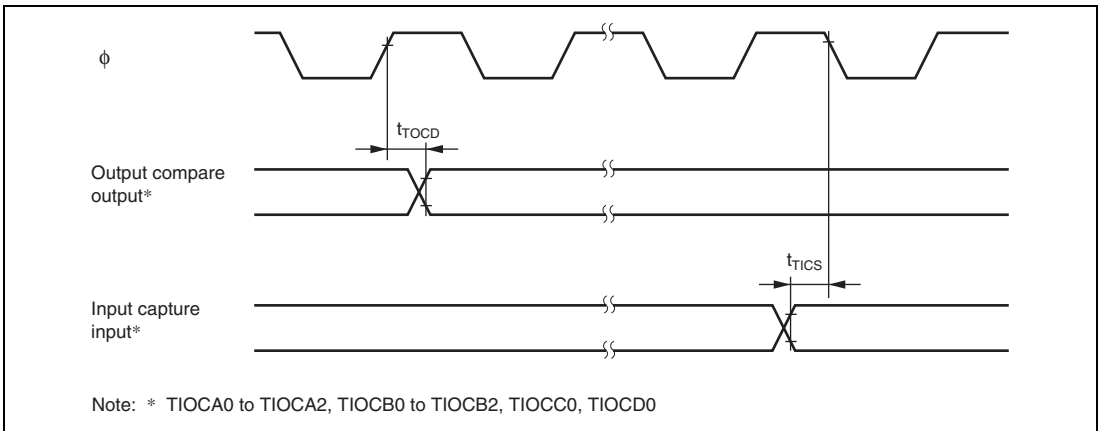


Figure 24.12 I/O Port Input/Output Timing



Note: * TIOCA0 to TIOCA2, TIOCB0 to TIOCB2, TIOCC0, TIOCD0

Figure 24.13 TPU Input/Output Timing

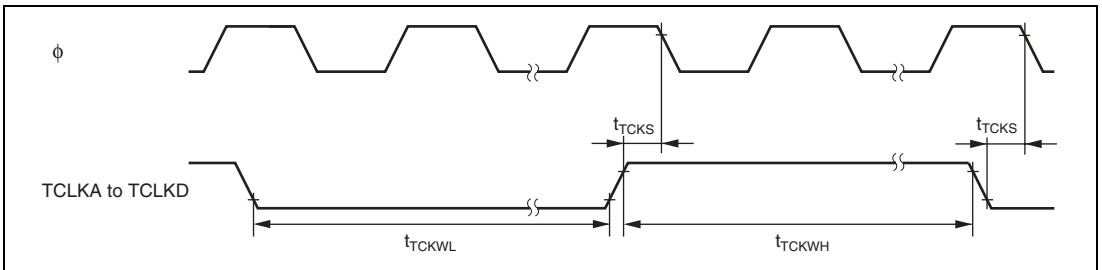


Figure 24.14 TPU Clock Input Timing

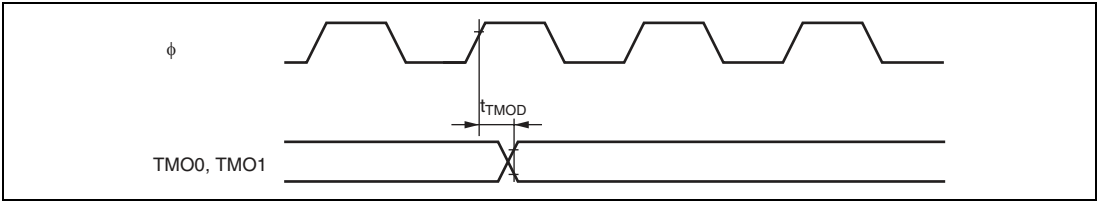


Figure 24.15 8-bit Timer Output Timing

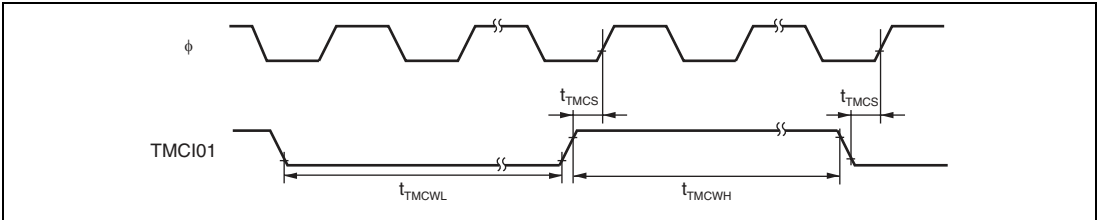


Figure 24.16 8-bit Timer Clock Input Timing

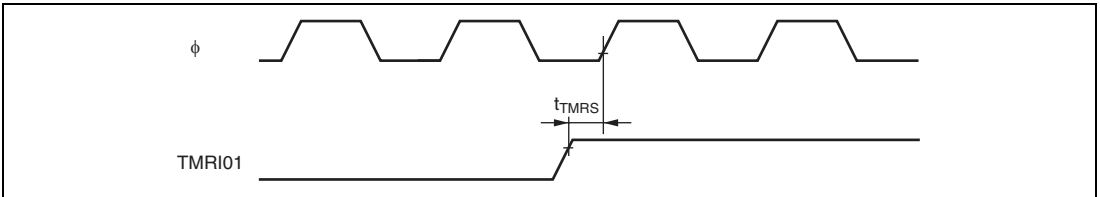


Figure 24.17 8-bit Timer Reset Input Timing

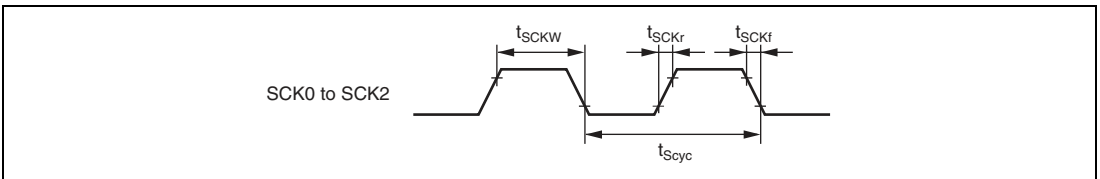


Figure 24.18 SCK Clock Input Timing

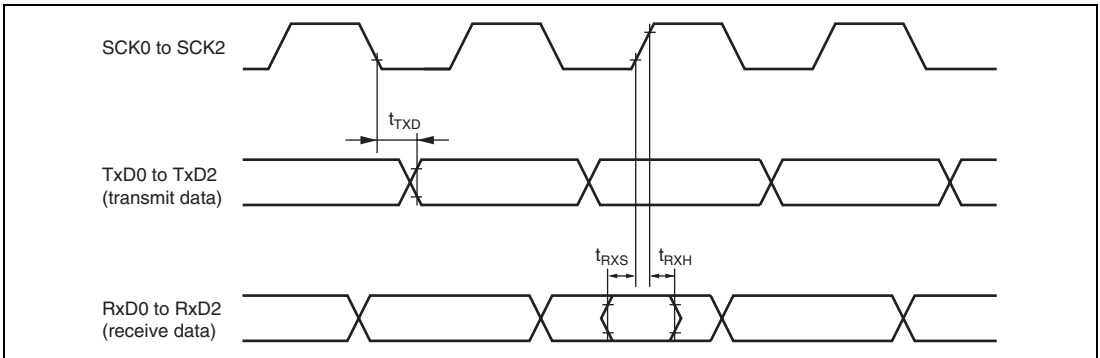


Figure 24.19 SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode)

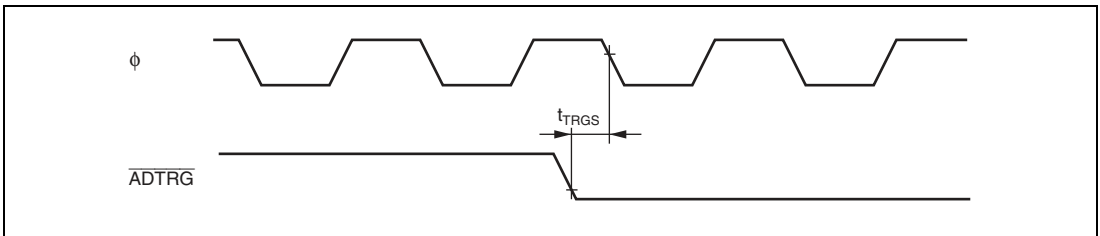


Figure 24.20 A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing

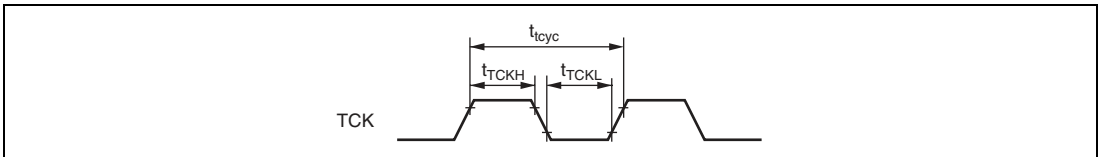


Figure 24.21 Boundary Scan TCK Input Timing

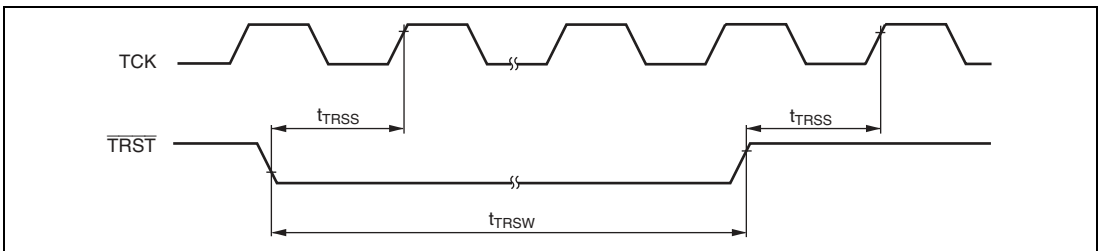


Figure 24.22 Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold)

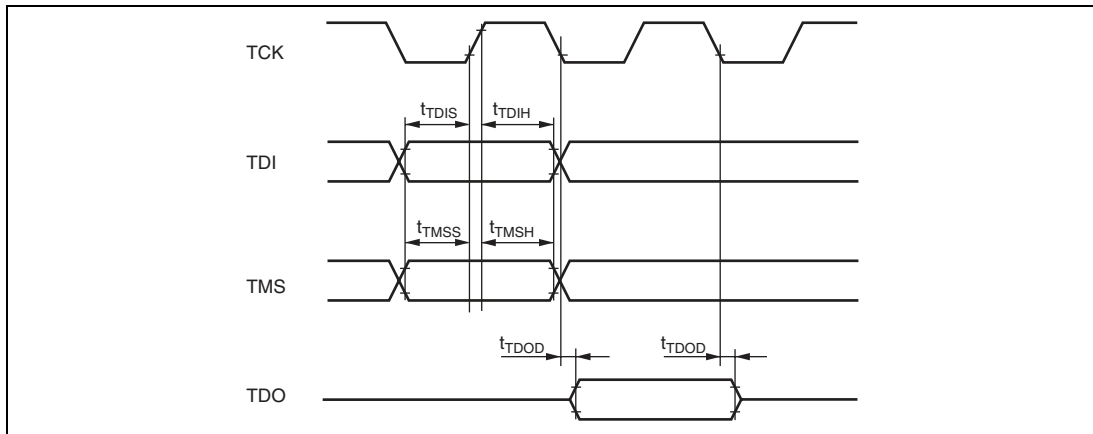


Figure 24.23 Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing

24.5 USB Characteristics

Table 24.8 lists the USB characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when the on-chip USB transceiver is used.

Table 24.8 USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Condition |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------|----------|----------|-------------------------------------|
| Input characteristics | Input high level voltage | V_{IH} | 2.0 | — | V | Figures 24.24, 24.25 |
| | Input low level voltage | V_{IL} | — | 0.8 | V | |
| | Differential input sense | V_{DI} | 0.2 | — | V | (D+)-(D-) DrVcc = 3.3 to 3.6 V |
| | Differential common mode range | V_{CM} | 0.8 | 2.5 | V | |
| Output characteristics | Output high level voltage | V_{OH} | 2.8 | — | V | $I_{OH} = -200\ \mu\text{A}$ |
| | Output low level voltage | V_{OL} | — | 0.3 | V | $I_{OL} = 2\ \text{mA}$ |
| | Crossover voltage | V_{CRS} | 1.3 | 2.0 | V | |
| | Rise time | t_R | 4 | 20 | ns | |
| | Fall time | t_F | 4 | 20 | ns | |
| | Rise time/fall time matching | t_{RFM} | 90 | 111.11 % | | (T_R/T_F) |
| | Output resistance | Z_{DRV} | 28 | 44 | Ω | Including $R_s = 24\ \Omega$ |

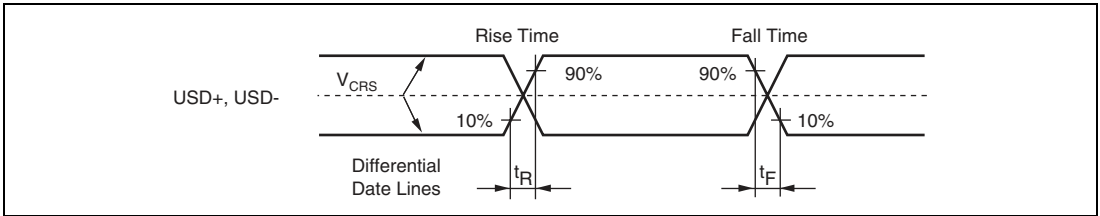


Figure 24.24 Data Signal Timing

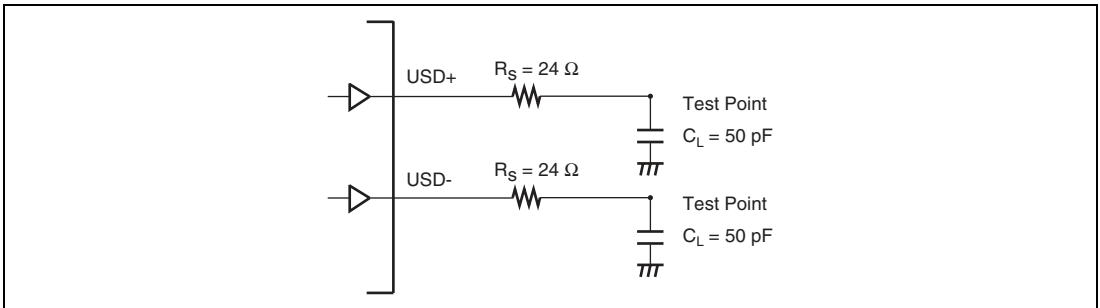


Figure 24.25 Test Load Circuit

24.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Table 24.9 lists the A/D conversion characteristics.

Table 24.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|-------------------------------------|------|------|-----------|---------------|
| Resolution | 10 | 10 | 10 | bits |
| Conversion time | 8.1 | — | — | μs |
| Analog input capacitance | — | — | 20 | pF |
| Permissible signal-source impedance | — | — | 5 | k Ω |
| Nonlinearity error | — | — | ± 6.0 | LSB |
| Offset error | — | — | ± 4.0 | LSB |
| Full-scale error | — | — | ± 4.0 | LSB |
| Quantization | — | — | ± 0.5 | LSB |
| Absolute accuracy | — | — | ± 8.0 | LSB |

Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{CC} = AV_{CC}$.

24.7 D/A Conversion Characteristics

Table 24.10 lists the D/A conversion characteristics.

Table 24.10 D/A Conversion Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Condition |
|-------------------|------|-----------|-----------|---------------|---------------------------------|
| Resolution | 8 | 8 | 8 | bits | |
| Conversion time | — | — | 10 | μs | Load capacitance = 20 pF |
| Absolute accuracy | — | ± 2.0 | ± 3.0 | LSB | Load capacitance = 2 M Ω |
| | — | — | ± 2.0 | LSB | Load capacitance = 4 M Ω |

24.8 Flash Memory Characteristics

Table 24.11 Flash Memory Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20\text{ to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (Programming/erasing operating temperature range)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | |
|--------------------------------------|---|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| Programming time ^{*1 *2 *4} | t_p | — | 10 | 200 | ms/128 bytes | |
| Erase time ^{*1 *3 *5} | t_E | — | 50 | 1000 | ms/block | |
| Reprogramming count | N_{WEC} | 100 ^{*6} | 10,000 ^{*7} | — | Times | |
| Data retention time ^{*8} | t_{DRP} | 10 | — | — | Years | |
| Programming | Wait time after PSU1 bit setting ^{*1} | y | 50 | 50 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after P1 bit setting ^{*1 *4} | $z0$ | 28 | 30 | 32 | μs |
| | | $z1$ | 198 | 200 | 202 | μs |
| | | $z2$ | 8 | 10 | 12 | μs |
| | Wait time after P1 bit clear ^{*1} | α | 5 | 5 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PSU1 bit clear ^{*1} | β | 5 | 5 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PV1 bit setting ^{*1} | γ | 4 | 4 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after H'FF dummy write ^{*1} | ε | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PV1 bit clear ^{*1} | η | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Maximum programming count ^{*1 *4} | $N1$ | — | — | 6 ^{*4} | Times |
| $N2$ | | — | — | 994 ^{*4} | Times | |
| Common | Wait time after SWE1 bit setting ^{*1} | x | 1 | 1 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after SWE1 bit clear ^{*1} | θ | 100 | 100 | — | μs |
| Erase | Wait time after ESU1 bit setting ^{*1} | y | 100 | 100 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after E1 bit setting ^{*1 *5} | z | 10 | 10 | 100 | ms |
| | Wait time after E1 bit clear ^{*1} | α | 10 | 10 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after ESU1 bit clear ^{*1} | β | 10 | 10 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after EV1 bit setting ^{*1} | γ | 20 | 20 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after H'FF dummy write ^{*1} | ε | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after EV1 bit clear ^{*1} | η | 4 | 4 | — | μs |
| | Maximum erase count ^{*1 *5} | N | — | — | 100 | Times |

- Notes: 1. Make each time setting in accordance with the program/program-verify flowchart or erase/erase-verify flowchart.
2. Programming time per 128 bytes (Shows the total period for which the P-bit in the flash memory control register (FLMCR1) is set. It does not include the programming verification time).
3. Block erase time (Shows the total period for which the E1-bit FLMCR1 is set. It does not include the erase verification time).

4. Maximum programming time value

$$t_p (\text{max.}) = \text{Wait time after P1 bit set (z)} \times \text{maximum programming count (N1 + N2)} \\ = (Z0 + Z2) \times 6 + Z1 \times 994$$

5. Maximum erasure time value

$$t_e (\text{max.}) = \text{Wait time after E1 bit set (z)} \times \text{maximum erasure count (N)}$$

6. Minimum number of times for which all characteristics are guaranteed after rewriting (Guarantee range is 1 to minimum value).
7. Reference value for 25°C (as a guideline, rewriting should normally function up to this value).
8. Data retention characteristic when rewriting is performed within the specification range, including the minimum value.

24.9 Usage Note

General Notice during Design for Printed Circuit Board: Measures for radiation noise caused by the transient current in this LSI should be taken into consideration. The examples of the measures are shown below.

- To use a multilayer printed circuit board which includes layers for Vcc and GND.
- To mount by-pass capacitors (approximately 0.1 μF) between the Vcc and GND (Vss) pins, and the PLLV_{cc} and PLLGND pins, of this LSI.

Section 25 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215R)

25.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Table 25.1 lists the absolute maximum ratings.

Table 25.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

| Item | Symbol | Value | Unit |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|------|
| Power supply voltage | V_{CC1} , $PLL V_{CC1}$ DrV_{CC} | -0.3 to +4.3 | V |
| Input voltage (except ports 4 and 9) | V_{in} | -0.3 to $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Input voltage (ports 4 and 9) | V_{in} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Reference voltage | V_{ref} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Analog power supply voltage | AV_{CC} | -0.3 to +4.3 | V |
| Analog input voltage | V_{AN} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Operating temperature | T_{opr} | Regular specifications: -20 to +75 | °C |
| | | Wide-range specifications: -40 to +85* | °C |
| Storage temperature | T_{stg} | -55 to +125 | °C |

Caution: Permanent damage to the chip may result if absolute maximum ratings are exceeded.

Note: * The operating temperature ranges for flash memory programming/erasing are $T_a = -20^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+75^{\circ}\text{C}$.

25.2 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range

Power supply voltage and operating frequency ranges (shaded areas) are shown in figure 25.1.

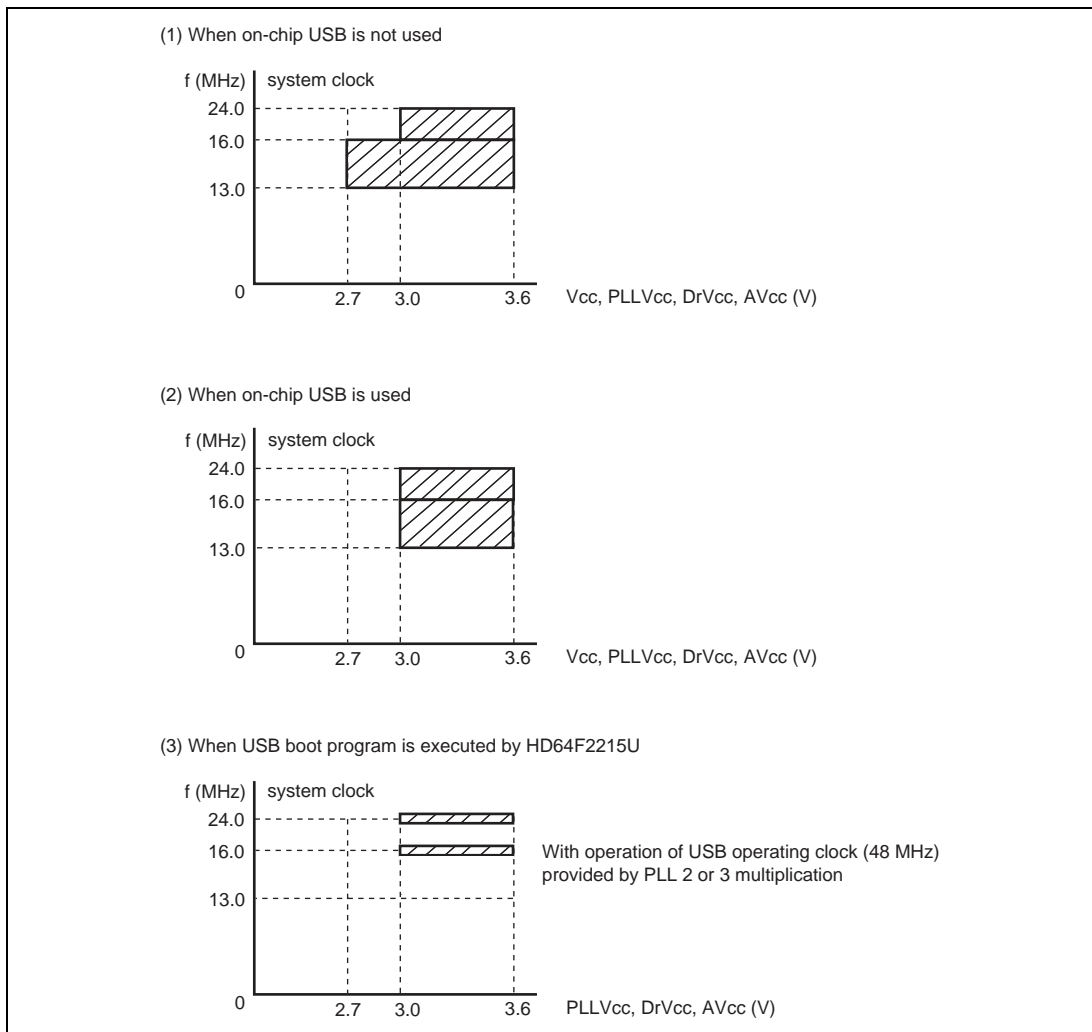


Figure 25.1 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges

25.3 DC Characteristics

Table 25.2 lists the DC characteristics. Table 25.3 lists the permissible output currents.

Table 25.2 DC Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications),
 $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)*¹

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-------------------------------|---|-----------------|----------------------|------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Schmitt trigger input voltage | $\overline{IRQ0}$ to $\overline{IRQ5}$ | V_T^- | $V_{CC} \times 0.2$ | — | — | V |
| | $\overline{IRQ7}$ | V_T^+ | — | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | V |
| | | $V_T^+ - V_T^-$ | $V_{CC} \times 0.05$ | — | — | V |
| Input high voltage | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , NMI, MD2 to MD0, \overline{TRST} , TCK, TMS, TDI, EMLN, \overline{VBUS} , \overline{UBPM} , FWE | V_{IH} | $V_{CC} \times 0.9$ | — | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| | EXTAL, EXTAL48, Ports 1, 3, 7, and A to G | | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| | Ports* ⁶ 4 and 9 | | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ * ⁶ | V |
| | | | | | | |
| Input low voltage | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , MD2 to MD0, \overline{TRST} , TCK, TMS, TDI, EMLN, \overline{VBUS} , \overline{UBPM} , FWE | V_{IL} | -0.3 | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.1$ | V |
| | EXTAL, EXTAL48, NMI, Ports 1, 3, 4, 7, 9, and A to G | | -0.3 | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.2$ | V |
| | | | | | | |
| Output high voltage | All output pins | V_{OH} | $V_{CC} - 0.5$ | — | — | V $I_{OH} = -200\ \mu\text{A}$ |
| | | | $V_{CC} - 1.0$ | — | — | V $I_{OH} = -1\ \text{mA}$ |

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|-----------------------------------|--|-------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|---|--|
| Output low voltage | All output pins | V_{OL} | — | — | 0.4 | V | $I_{OH} = 0.4 \text{ mA}$ |
| | | | — | — | 0.4 | V | $I_{OL} = 0.8 \text{ mA}$ |
| Input leakage current | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , NMI, MD2 to MD0, FWE*5, \overline{VBUS} , \overline{UBPM} | $ I_{in} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } V_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| | Ports 4, 9 | $ I_{in} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } AV_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| 3-state leak current (off status) | Ports 1, 3, 7, A to G | $ I_{TSI} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } V_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| Input pull-up MOS current | Ports A to E | $-I_p$ | 10 | — | 300 | μA | $V_{in} = 0 \text{ V}$ |
| Input capacity | \overline{RES} , NMI | C_{in} | — | — | 30 | pF | $V_{in} = 0 \text{ V}$ |
| | All input pins other than \overline{RES} and NMI | | — | — | 15 | pF | $f = 1 \text{ MHz}$ $T_a = 25^\circ\text{C}$ |
| Current dissipation*2 | Normal operation (USB halts) | I_{CC} *3 | — | 23 | 40 | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ |
| | | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | |
| | Normal operation (USB operates) | | — | 34 | 55 | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ |
| | | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | |
| | Sleep mode | | — | 28 | 50 | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ (PLL 3 multiplication) |
| | | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | |
| | | — | 40 | 60 | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ (PLL 2 multiplication) | |
| | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | | |
| | | — | 18 | 35 | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ (when USB and PLL are halted) | |
| | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | | |
| | | — | 26 | 45 | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ (when USB and PLL are halted) | |
| | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | | |

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|------|---------------------------|------|---------|-----------------------------------|
| Current dissipation* ² | All modules stopped | I_{CC} * ³ | — | 15 ($V_{CC} = 3.3$ V) | — | mA | $f = 16$ MHz (reference value) |
| | | | — | 21 ($V_{CC} = 3.3$ V) | — | mA | $f = 24$ MHz (reference value) |
| | Standby mode* ⁴ | | — | 1.0 | 10 | μ A | $T_a \leq 50^\circ\text{C}$ |
| | | | — | — | 50 | μ A | $50^\circ\text{C} < T_a$ |
| Analog power supply current | During A/D conversion | AI_{CC} | — | 0.3 | 1.5 | mA | $AV_{CC} = 3.3$ V |
| | Idle | | — | 0.01 | 5.0 | μ A | |
| Reference power supply current | During A/D conversion | AI_{CC} | — | 1.2 | 2.5 | mA | $V_{ref} = 3.3$ V |
| | Idle | | — | 0.01 | 5.0 | μ A | |
| RAM standby voltage | | V_{RAM} | 2.0 | — | — | V | |

- Notes: 1. If the A/D or D/A converter is not used, the AVCC, V_{ref} , and AVSS pins should not be open. Even if the A/D or D/A converter is not used, connect the AVCC and V_{ref} pins to V_{CC} and the AVSS pin to V_{SS} , respectively. In this case, the V_{ref} level should be the AVCC level or less.
2. Current dissipation values are for V_{IH} (min.) = $V_{CC} - 0.2$ V and V_{IL} (max.) = 0.2 V, with all output pins unloaded and the on-chip MOS pull-up transistors in the off state.
3. I_{CC} depends on V_{CC} and f as follows:
 I_{CC} (max.) = 1.0 (mA) + 0.67 (mA/(MHz x V)) \times $V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB halted)
 I_{CC} (max.) = 1.0 (mA) + 0.85 (mA/(MHz x V)) \times $V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, $f = 16$ MHz : PLL 3 \times multiplication)
 I_{CC} (max.) = 1.0 (mA) + 0.72 (mA/(MHz x V)) \times $V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, $f = 24$ MHz : PLL 2 \times multiplication)
 I_{CC} (max.) = 1.0 (mA) + 0.55 (mA/(MHz x V)) \times $V_{CC} \times f$ (sleep mode)
4. The values are for $V_{RAM} \leq V_{CC} < 2.7$ V, V_{IH} (min.) = $V_{CC} \times 0.9$, and V_{IL} (max.) = 0.3 V.
5. The FWE pin is effective only in the F-ZTAT version.
6. When $V_{CC} < AV_{CC}$, the maximum value for P40 and P41 is $V_{CC} + 0.3$ V.

Table 25.3 Permissible Output Currents

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications),
 $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)*

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|---|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------|------|------|--------|
| Permissible output low current (per pin) | All output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | I_{OL} | — | — | 1.0 mA |
| Permissible output low current (total) | Total of all output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $\sum I_{OL}$ | — | — | 60 mA |
| Permissible output high current (per pin) | All output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $-I_{OH}$ | — | — | 1.0 mA |
| Permissible output high current (total) | Total of all output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $\sum -I_{OH}$ | — | — | 30 mA |

Note: * To protect chip reliability, do not exceed the output current values in table 25.3.

25.4 AC Characteristics

Figure 25.2 shows, the test conditions for the AC characteristics.

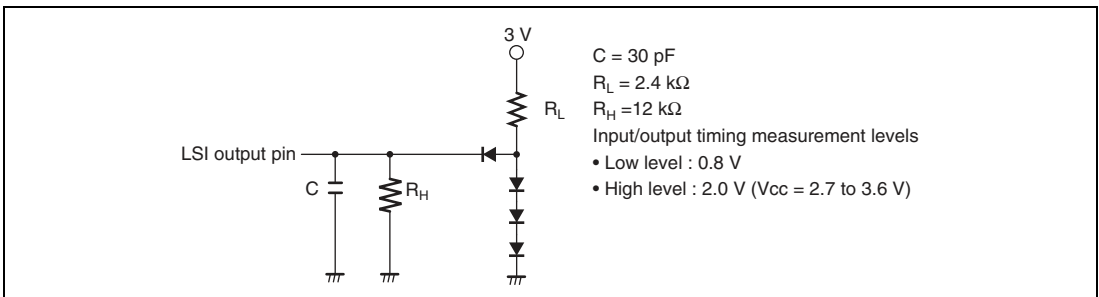


Figure 25.2 Output Load Circuit

25.4.1 Clock Timing

Table 25.4 lists the clock timing

Table 25.4 Clock Timing

Condition A: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7 \text{ V to } AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 \text{ V}$, $\phi = 13 \text{ MHz to } 16 \text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to } +75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to } +85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0 \text{ V to } AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 \text{ V}$, $\phi = 13 \text{ MHz to } 24 \text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to } +75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to } +85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Condition A | | Condition B | | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--|------------|-------------|------|-------------|------|------|---|
| | | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. | | |
| Clock cycle time | t_{cyc} | 62.5 | 76.9 | 41.6 | 76.9 | ns | Figure 25.3 |
| Clock high pulse width | t_{CH} | 20 | — | 13 | — | ns | |
| Clock low pulse width | t_{CL} | 20 | — | 13 | — | ns | |
| Clock rise time | t_{Cr} | — | 10 | — | 7 | ns | |
| Clock fall time | t_{Cf} | — | 10 | — | 7 | ns | |
| Oscillation stabilization time at reset (crystal) | t_{OSC1} | 20 | — | 20 | — | ms | Figure 25.4 |
| Oscillation stabilization time in software standby (crystal) | t_{OSC2} | 8 | — | 8 | — | ms | $C_{L1} = C_{L2} = 10 \text{ pF}$ to 22 pF in figure 21.2 Figure 22.3 |
| | | 4 | — | 4 | — | ms | $C_{L1} = C_{L2} = 10 \text{ pF}$ to 15 pF in figure 21.2 $V_{CC} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$ in figure 22.3 |

| Item | Symbol | Condition A | | Condition B | | Unit | Test Conditions |
|---|-------------------|-------------|------|-------------|------|---------------|---|
| | | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. | | |
| External clock output stabilization delay time | t_{DEXT} | 500 | — | 500 | — | μs | Figure 25.4 |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) stabilization time | t_{OSC3} | 8 | — | 8 | — | ms | $V_{\text{CC}} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$ |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator frequency | f_{48} | 48 | — | 4.8 | — | MHz | |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) cycle time | f_{48} | 20.8 | — | 20.8 | — | ns | |

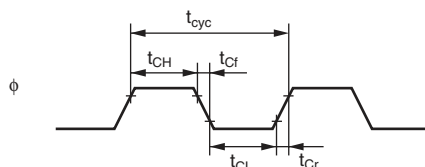


Figure 25.3 System Clock Timing

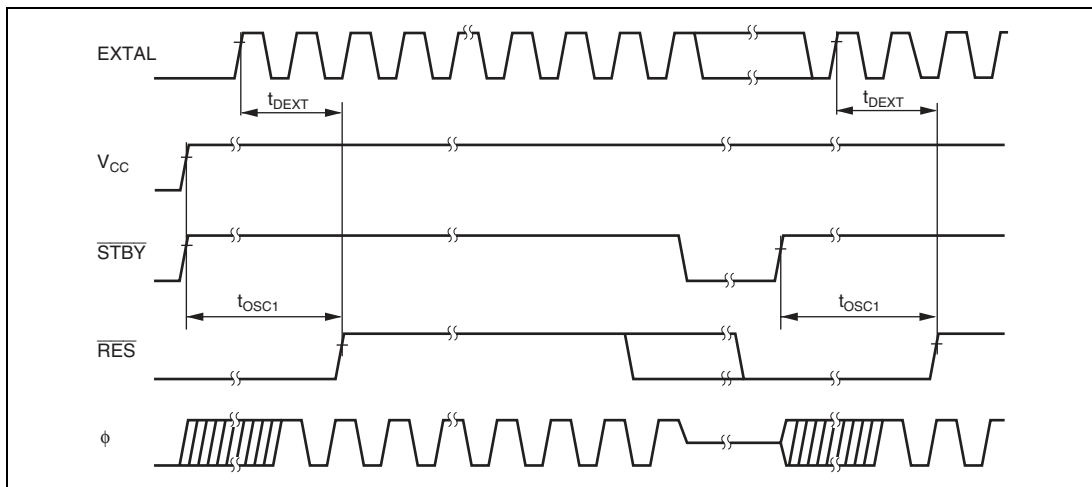


Figure 25.4 Oscillation Stabilization Timing

25.4.2 Control Signal Timing

Table 25.5 lists the control signal timing.

Table 25.5 Control Signal Timing

Condition A: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Condition A and B | | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--|-------------|-------------------|------|-----------|-----------------|
| | | Min. | Max. | | |
| \overline{RES} setup time | t_{RESS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 25.5 |
| \overline{RES} pulse width | t_{RESW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| \overline{MRES} setup time | t_{MRESS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 25.6 |
| \overline{MRES} pulse width | t_{MRESW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| NMI setup time | t_{NMIS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 25.6 |
| NMI hold time | t_{NMIH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| NMI pulse width (exiting software standby mode) | t_{NMIW} | 200 | — | ns | |
| \overline{IRQ} setup time | t_{IRQS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| \overline{IRQ} hold time | t_{IRQH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| \overline{IRQ} pulse width (exiting software standby mode) | t_{IRQW} | 200 | — | ns | |

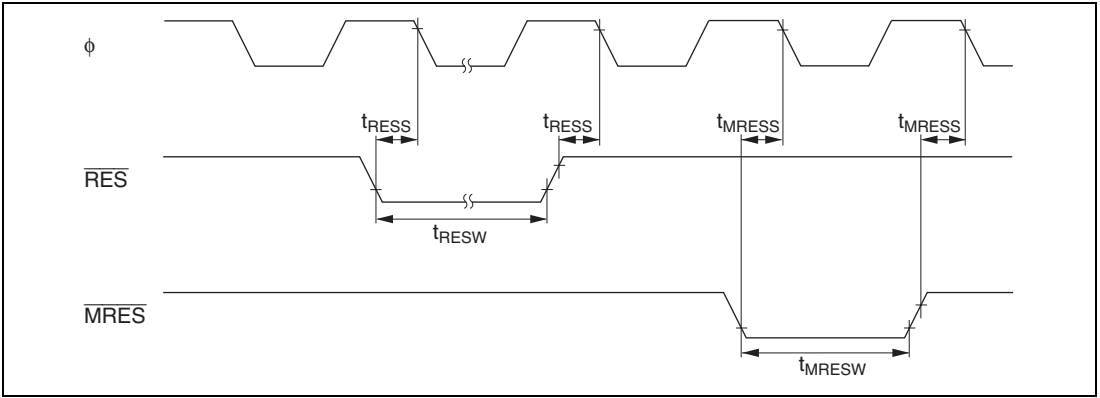


Figure 25.5 Reset Input Timing

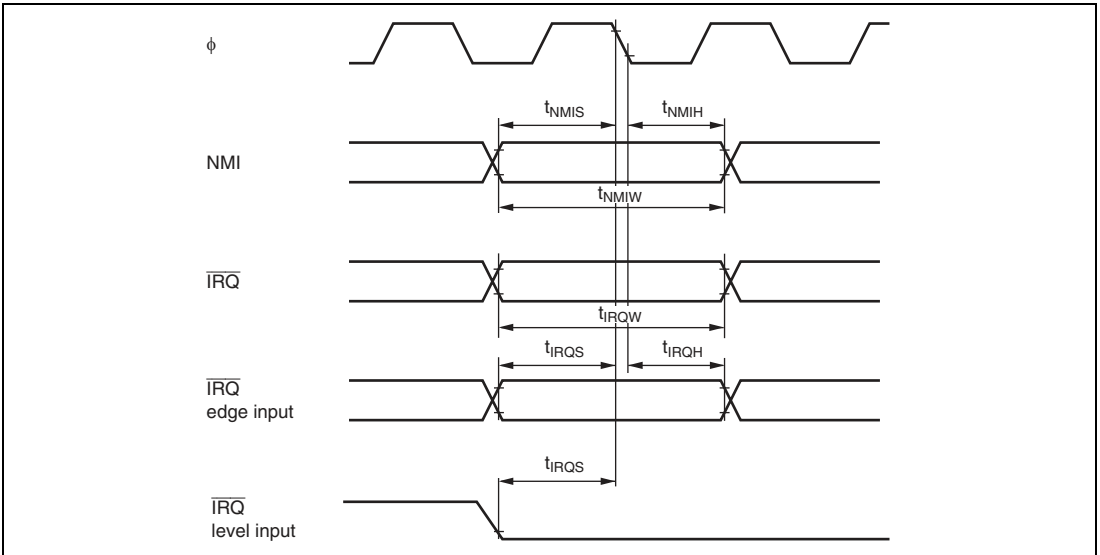


Figure 25.6 Interrupt Input Timing

25.4.3 Bus Timing

Table 25.6 shows, Bus Timing.

Table 25.6 Bus Timing

Condition A: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7 \text{ V to } AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 \text{ V}$, $\phi = 13 \text{ MHz to } 16 \text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to } +75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to } +85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0 \text{ V to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0 \text{ V to } AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 \text{ V}$, $\phi = 13 \text{ MHz to } 24 \text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to } +75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to } +85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Condition A | | Condition B | | Unit | Test Conditions |
|------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| | | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. | | |
| Address delay time | t_{AD} | — | 50 | — | 30 | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.8, 25.10 |
| Address setup time | t_{AS} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 30 | — | $0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 20 | — | ns | |
| Address hold time | t_{AH} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 15 | — | $0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 8 | — | ns | |
| \overline{CS} delay time | t_{CSD} | — | 50 | — | 30 | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.8 |
| \overline{AS} delay time | t_{ASD} | — | 50 | — | 25 | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.8, 25.10 |
| \overline{RD} delay time 1 | t_{RSD1} | — | 50 | — | 25 | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.8 |
| \overline{RD} delay time 2 | t_{RSD2} | — | 50 | — | 25 | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.8, 25.10 |
| Read data setup time | t_{RDS} | 30 | — | 20 | — | ns | |
| Read data hold time | t_{RDH} | 0 | — | 0 | — | ns | |
| Read data access time 2 | t_{ACC2} | — | $1.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 65 | — | $1.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 35 | ns | Figure 25.7 |
| Read data access time 3 | t_{ACC3} | — | $2.0 \times t_{cyc}$ - 65 | — | $2.0 \times t_{cyc}$ - 40 | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.10 |
| Read data access time 4 | t_{ACC4} | — | $2.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 65 | — | $2.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 35 | ns | Figure 25.8 |
| Read data access time 5 | t_{ACC5} | — | $3.0 \times t_{cyc}$ - 65 | — | $3.0 \times t_{cyc}$ - 40 | ns | |
| \overline{WR} delay time 1 | t_{WRD1} | — | 50 | — | 20 | ns | |
| \overline{WR} delay time 2 | t_{WRD2} | — | 50 | — | 25 | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.8 |

| Item | Symbol | Condition A | | Condition B | | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|------|------------------------------|------|------|--------------------|
| | | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. | | |
| \overline{WR} pulse width 1 | t_{WSW1} | $1.0 \times t_{cyc}$ - 30 | — | $1.0 \times t_{cyc}$ - 20 | — | ns | Figure 25.7 |
| \overline{WR} pulse width 2 | t_{WSW2} | $1.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 30 | — | $1.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 20 | — | ns | Figure 25.8 |
| Write data delay time | t_{WDD} | — | 50 | — | 30 | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.8 |
| Write data setup time | t_{WDS} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 30 | — | $0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 20 | — | ns | Figure 25.8 |
| Write data hold time | t_{WDH} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 15 | — | $0.5 \times t_{cyc}$ - 10 | — | ns | Figures 25.7, 25.8 |
| \overline{WAIT} setup time | t_{WTS} | 50 | — | 25 | — | ns | Figure 25.9 |
| \overline{WAIT} hold time | t_{WTH} | 10 | — | 5 | — | ns | |
| \overline{BREQ} setup time | t_{BRQS} | 50 | — | 25 | — | ns | Figure 25.11 |
| \overline{BACK} delay time | t_{BACD} | — | 50 | — | 40 | ns | |
| Bus-floating time | t_{BZD} | — | 80 | — | 50 | ns | |

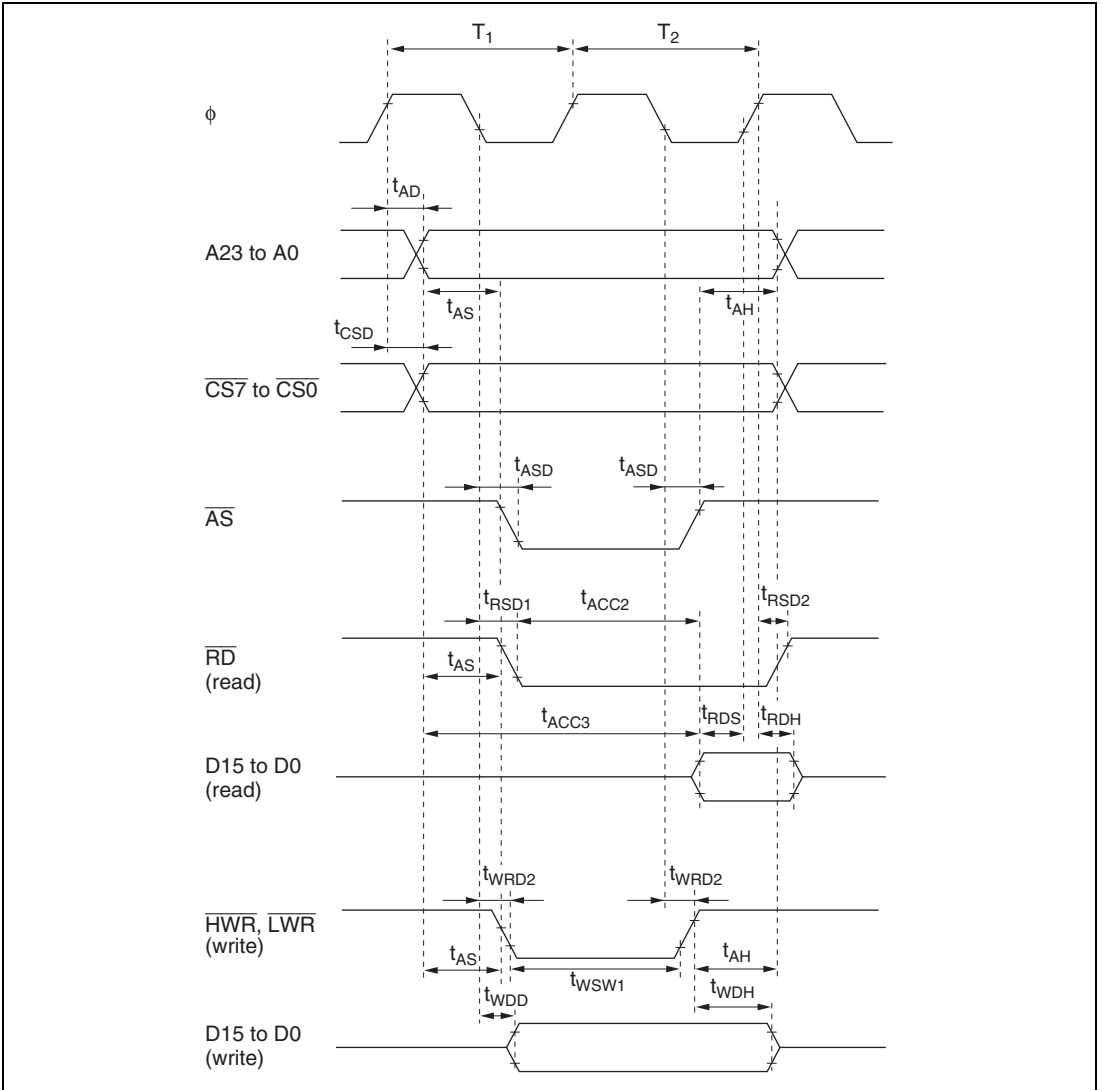


Figure 25.7 Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)

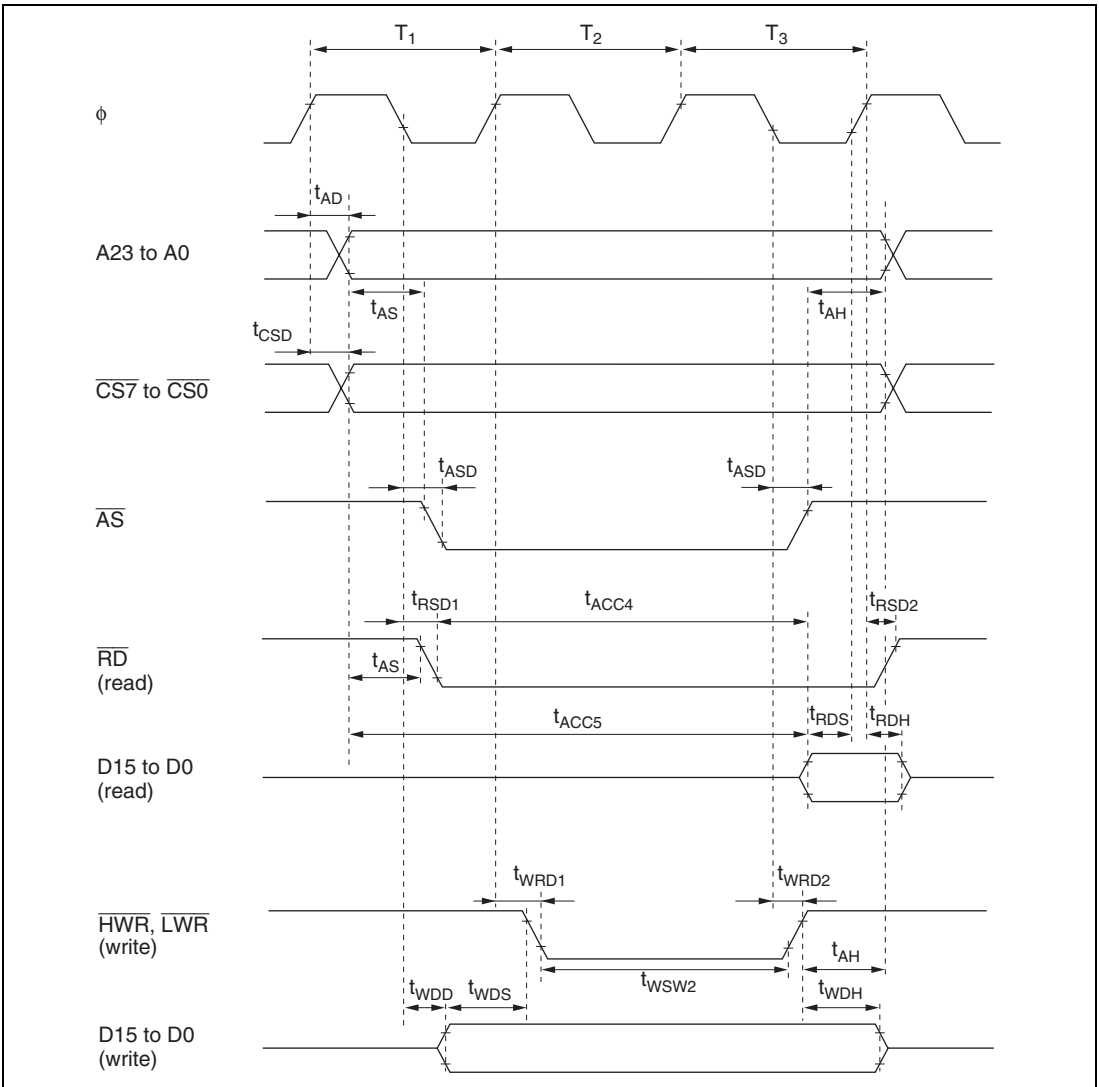


Figure 25.8 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)

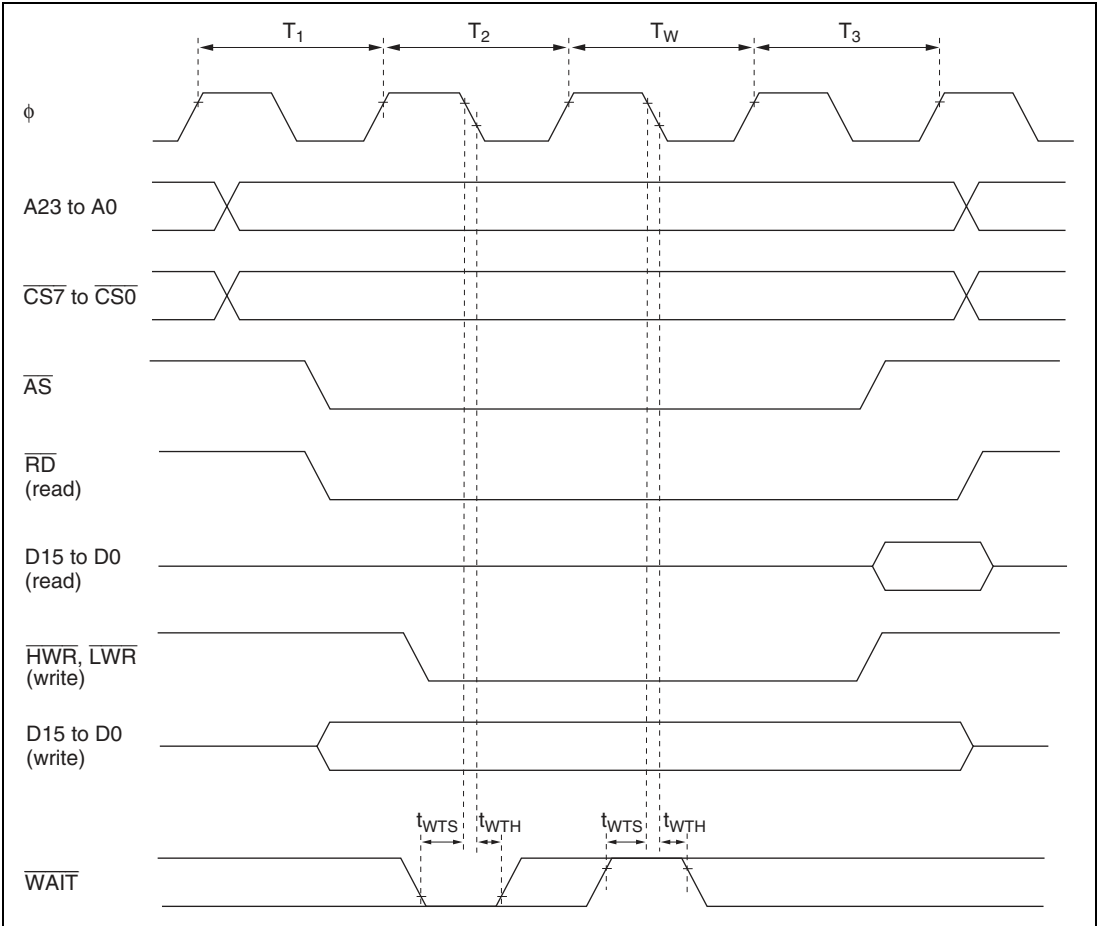


Figure 25.9 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State)

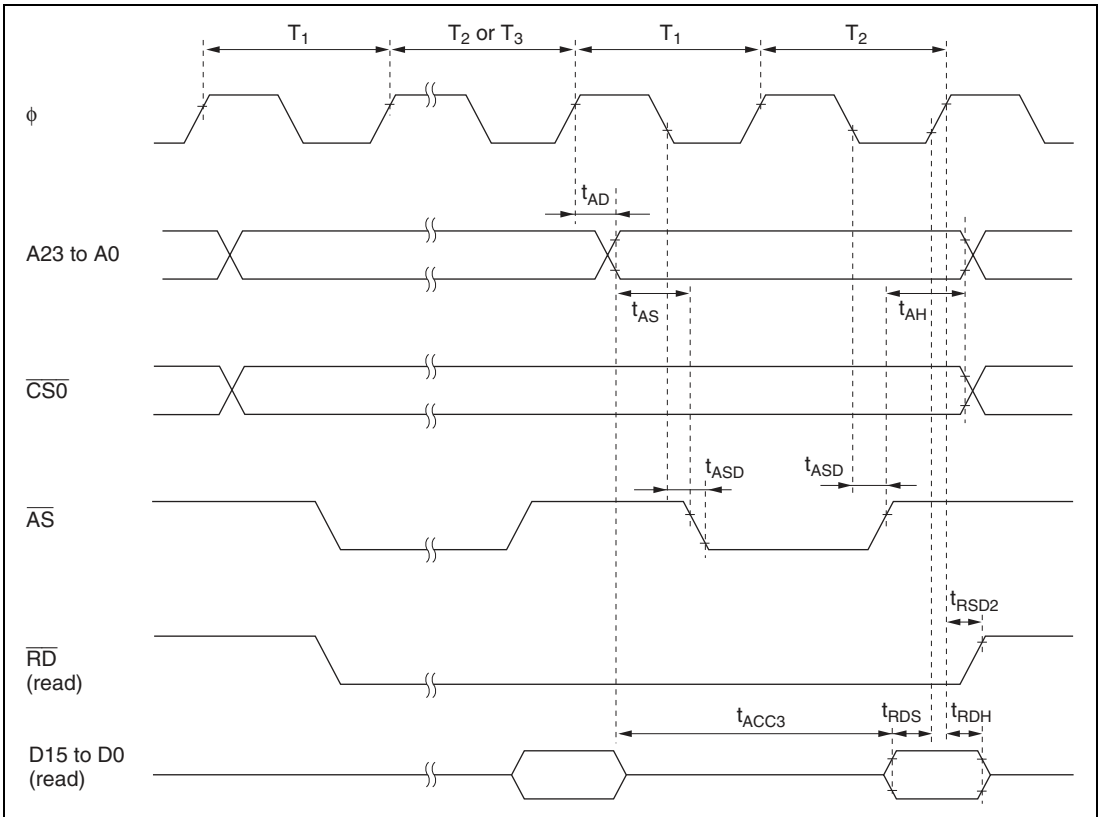


Figure 25.10 Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)

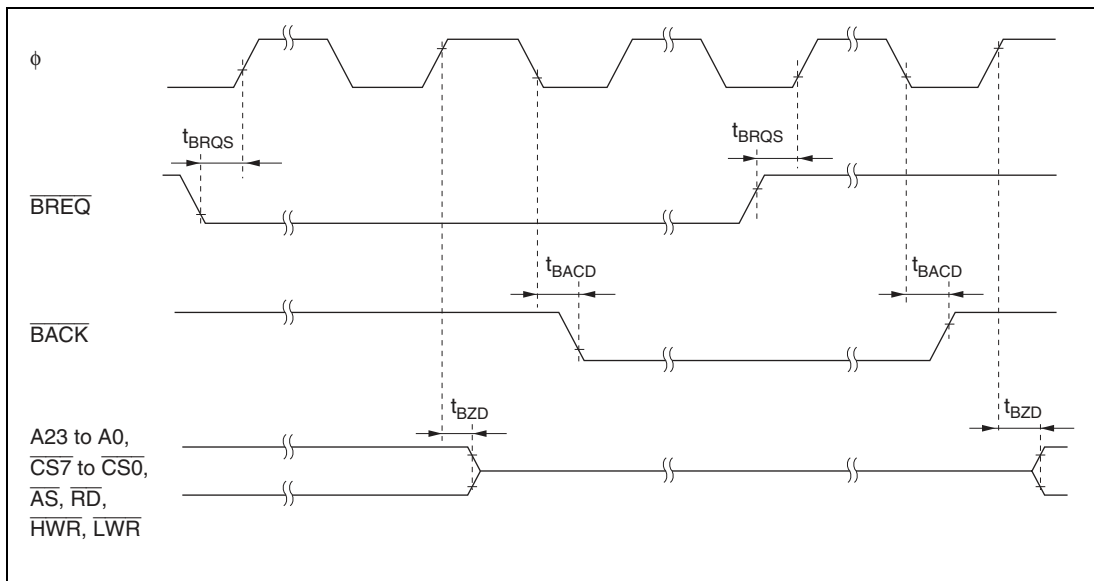


Figure 25.11 External Bus Release Timing

25.4.4 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Table 25.7 lists the timing of on-chip supporting modules.

Table 25.7 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Condition A: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Condition A | | Condition B | | Unit | Test Conditions | | |
|----------|------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------|------|-----------------|--------------|--|
| | | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. | | | | |
| I/O port | Output data delay time | t_{PWD} | — | 60 | — | 40 | ns | Figure 25.12 | |
| | Input data setup time | t_{PRS} | 50 | — | 30 | — | | | |
| | Input data hold time | t_{PRH} | 50 | — | 30 | — | | | |
| TPU | Timer output delay time | t_{TOCD} | — | 60 | — | 40 | ns | Figure 25.13 | |
| | Timer input setup time | t_{TICS} | 40 | — | 30 | — | | | |
| | Timer clock input setup time | t_{TCKS} | 40 | — | 30 | — | ns | Figure 25.14 | |
| | Timer clock pulse width | Single edge | t_{TCKWH} | 1.5 | — | 1.5 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| | | Both edges | t_{TCKWL} | 2.5 | — | 2.5 | — | | |
| TMR | Timer output delay time | t_{TMOD} | — | 60 | — | 41 | ns | Figure 25.15 | |
| | Timer reset input setup time | t_{TMRS} | 50 | — | 29 | — | ns | Figure 25.17 | |
| | Timer clock input setup time | t_{TMCS} | 50 | — | 29 | — | ns | Figure 25.16 | |

| Item | | Symbol | Condition A | | Condition B | | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|------|-------------|------|------|-----------------|--------------|
| | | | Min. | Max. | Min. | Max. | | | |
| TMR | Timer clock pulse width | Single edge | t_{TMCWH} | 1.5 | — | 1.5 | — | t_{cyc} | Figure 25.16 |
| | | Both edges | t_{TMCWL} | 2.5 | — | 2.5 | — | | |
| SCI | Input clock cycle | Asynchronous | t_{Syc} | 4 | — | 4 | — | t_{cyc} | Figure 25.18 |
| | | Synchronous | | 6 | — | 6 | — | | |
| | Input clock pulse width | | t_{SCKW} | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{Syc} | |
| | Input clock rise time | | t_{SCKr} | — | 1.5 | — | 1.5 | t_{cyc} | |
| | Input clock fall time | | t_{SCKf} | — | 1.5 | — | 1.5 | | |
| | Transmit data delay time | | t_{TXD} | — | 60 | — | 40 | ns | Figure 25.19 |
| | Receive data setup time (synchronous) | | t_{RXS} | 60 | — | 40 | — | | |
| | Receive data hold time (synchronous) | | t_{RXH} | 60 | — | 40 | — | | |
| A/D converter | Trigger input setup time | | t_{TRGS} | 40 | — | 30 | — | ns | Figure 25.20 |
| Boundary scan | TCK cycle time | | t_{cyc} | 62.5 | — | 41.6 | — | ns | Figure 25.21 |
| | TCK high level pulse width | | t_{TCKH} | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{cyc} | |
| | TCK low level pulse width | | t_{TCKL} | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{cyc} | |
| | \overline{TRST} pulse width | | t_{TRSW} | 20 | — | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | Figure 25.22 |
| | \overline{TRST} setup time | | t_{TRSS} | 250 | — | 250 | — | ns | |
| | TDI setup time | | t_{TDIS} | 30 | — | 20 | — | ns | Figure 25.23 |
| | TDI hold time | | t_{TDIH} | 10 | — | 10 | — | | |
| | TMS setup time | | t_{TMSS} | 30 | — | 20 | — | | |
| | TMS hold time | | t_{TMSH} | 10 | — | 10 | — | | |
| | TDO delay time | | t_{TDOD} | — | 40 | — | 35 | | |

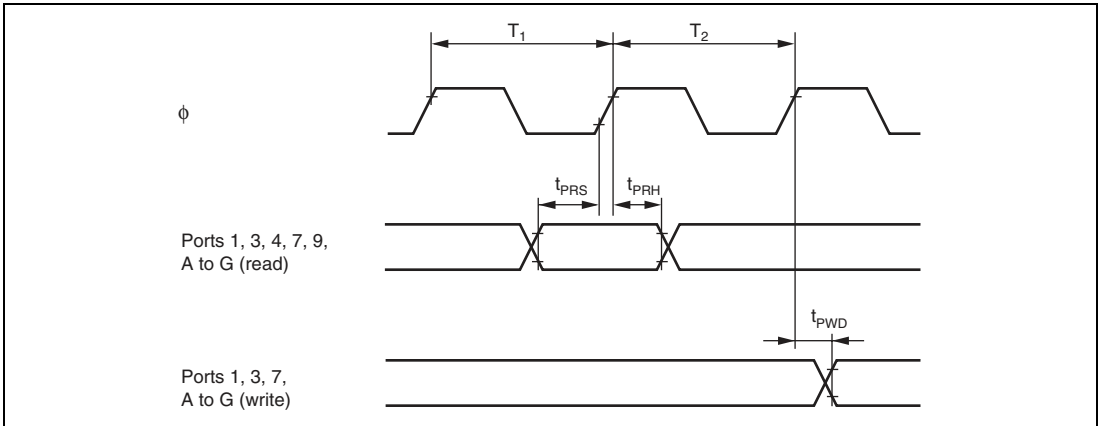


Figure 25.12 I/O Port Input/Output Timing

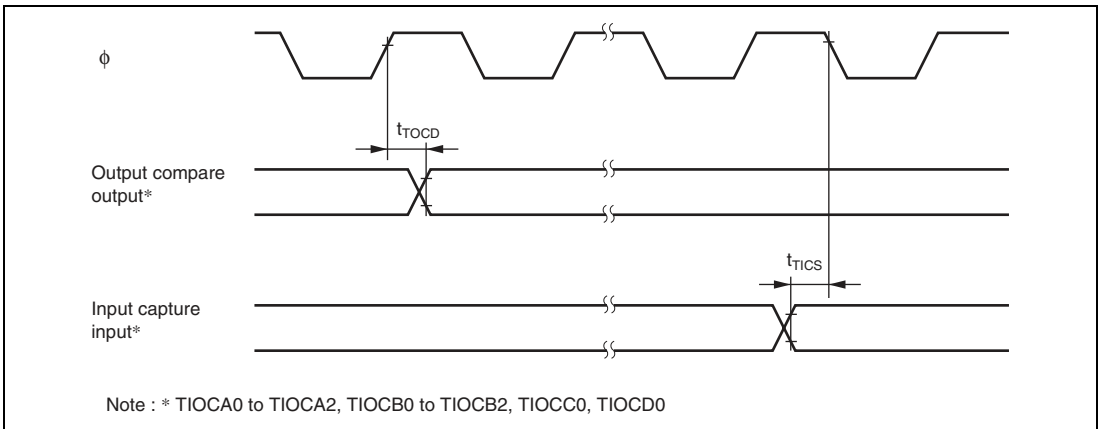


Figure 25.13 TPU Input/Output Timing

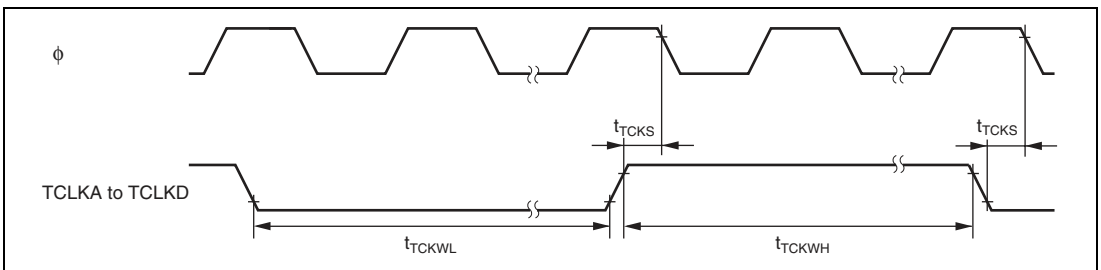


Figure 25.14 TPU Clock Input Timing

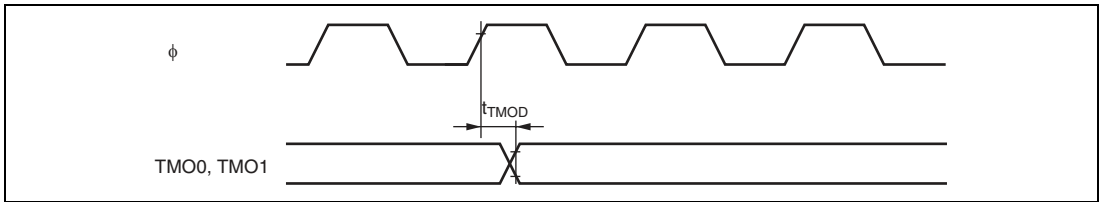


Figure 25.15 8-bit Timer Output Timing

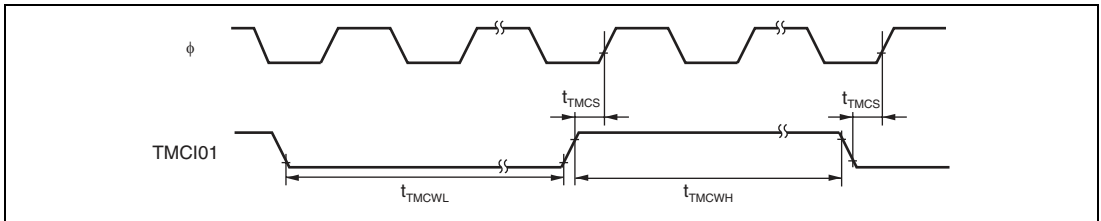


Figure 25.16 8-bit Timer Clock Input Timing

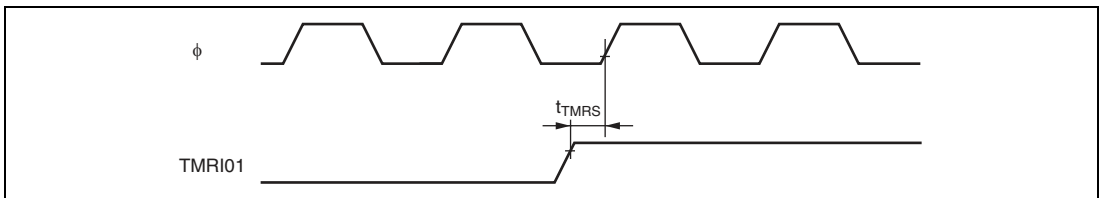


Figure 25.17 8-bit Timer Reset Input Timing

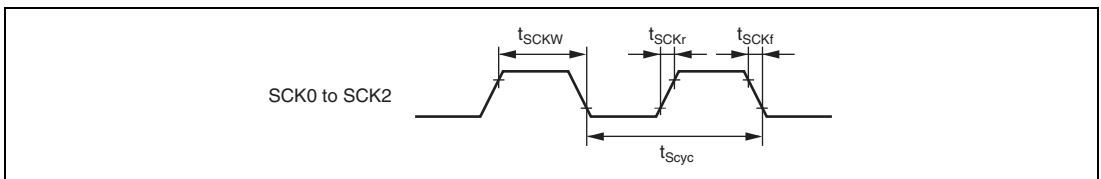


Figure 25.18 SCK Clock Input Timing

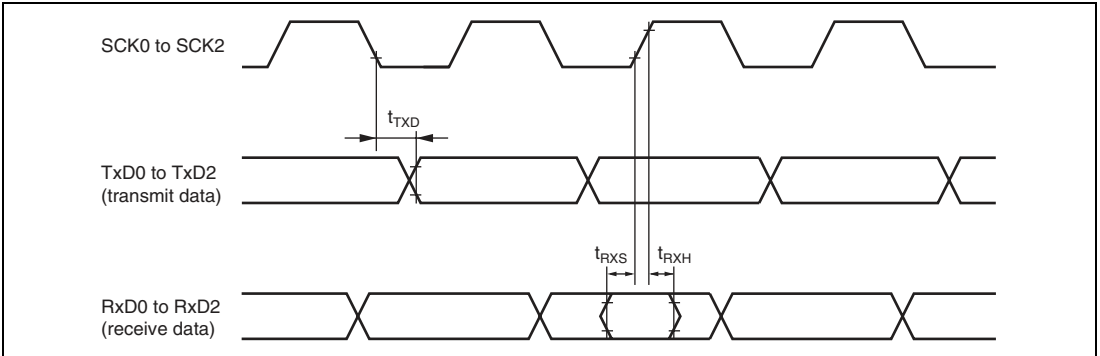


Figure 25.19 SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode)

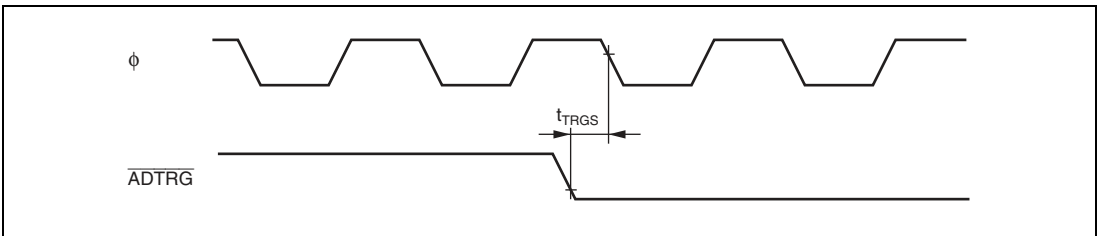


Figure 25.20 A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing

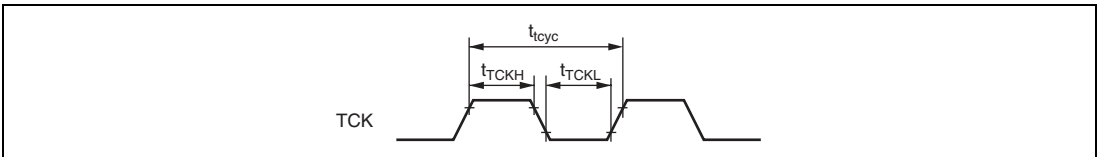


Figure 25.21 Boundary Scan TCK Input Timing

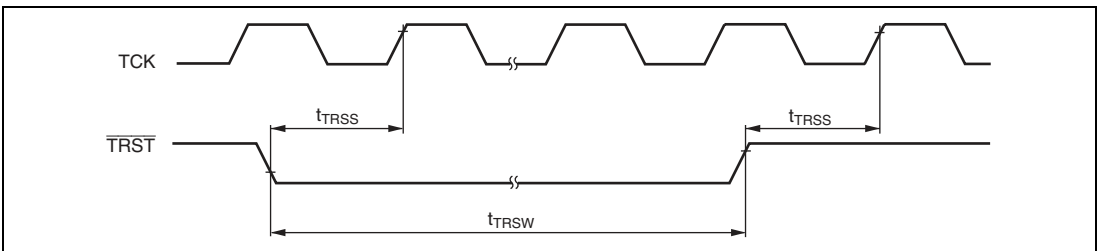


Figure 25.22 Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold)

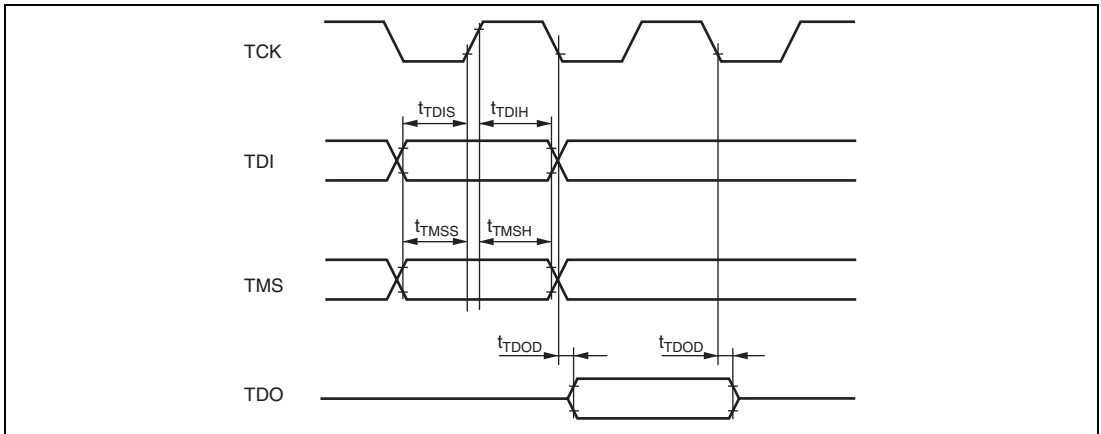


Figure 25.23 Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing

25.5 USB Characteristics

Table 25.8 lists the USB characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when the on-chip USB transceiver is used.

Table 25.8 USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Condition |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------|----------|------------------------------|--|
| Input characteristics | Input high level voltage | V_{IH} | 2.0 | — | V | Figures 25.24, 25.25 |
| | Input low level voltage | V_{IL} | — | 0.8 | V | |
| | Differential input sense | V_{DI} | 0.2 | — | V | $ (D+)-(D-) $ $DrV_{CC} = 3.3\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ |
| | Differential common mode range | V_{CM} | 0.8 | 2.5 | V | |
| Output characteristics | Output high level voltage | V_{OH} | 2.8 | — | V | $I_{OH} = -200\ \mu\text{A}$ |
| | Output low level voltage | V_{OL} | — | 0.3 | V | $I_{OL} = 2\ \text{mA}$ |
| | Crossover voltage | V_{CRS} | 1.3 | 2.0 | V | |
| | Rise time | t_R | 4 | 20 | ns | |
| | Fall time | t_F | 4 | 20 | ns | |
| | Rise time/fall time matching | t_{RFM} | 90 | 111.11 | % | (T_R/T_F) |
| Output resistance | Z_{DRV} | 28 | 44 | Ω | Including $R_s = 24\ \Omega$ | |

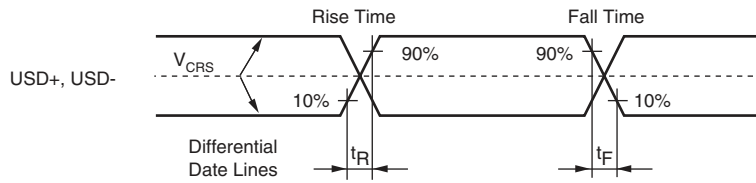


Figure 25.24 Data Signal Timing

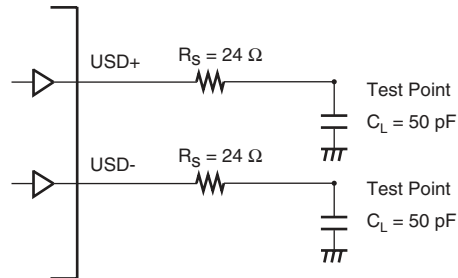


Figure 25.25 Test Load Circuit

25.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Table 25.9 lists the A/D conversion characteristics.

Table 25.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Condition A: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

Condition A and B

| Item | Condition A and B | | | Unit |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|------|-----------|---------------|
| | Min. | Typ. | Max. | |
| Resolution | 10 | 10 | 10 | bits |
| Conversion time | 8.1 | — | — | μs |
| Analog input capacitance | — | — | 20 | pF |
| Permissible signal-source impedance | — | — | 5 | k Ω |
| Nonlinearity error | — | — | ± 6.0 | LSB |
| Offset error | — | — | ± 4.0 | LSB |
| Full-scale error | — | — | ± 4.0 | LSB |
| Quantization | — | — | ± 0.5 | LSB |
| Absolute accuracy | — | — | ± 8.0 | LSB |

Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{CC} = AV_{CC}$.

25.7 D/A Conversion Characteristics

Table 25.10 lists the D/A conversion characteristics.

Table 25.10 D/A Conversion Characteristics

Condition A: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Condition A and B | | | Unit | Test Condition |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|---------------------------------|
| | Min. | Typ. | Max. | | |
| Resolution | 8 | 8 | 8 | bits | |
| Conversion time | — | — | 10 | μs | Load capacitance = 20 pF |
| Absolute accuracy | — | ± 2.0 | ± 3.0 | LSB | Load capacitance = 2 M Ω |
| | — | — | ± 2.0 | LSB | Load capacitance = 4 M Ω |

25.8 Flash Memory Characteristics

Table 25.11 Flash Memory Characteristics

Condition A: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 2.7\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }16\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (Programming/erasing operating temperature range)

Condition B: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 13\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (Programming/erasing operating temperature range)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------|----------------------|------|--------------|
| Programming time ^{*1 *2 *4} | t_p | — | 10 | 200 | ms/128 bytes |
| Erase time ^{*1 *3 *5} | t_E | — | 50 | 1000 | ms/block |
| Reprogramming count | N_{WEC} | 100 ^{*6} | 10,000 ^{*7} | — | Times |
| Data retention time ^{*8} | t_{DRP} | 10 | — | — | Years |

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|-------------|--|--------|------|-------------------|-----------------|-------|
| Programming | Wait time after PSU1 bit setting ^{*1} | y | 50 | 50 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after P1 bit setting ^{*1*4} | z0 | 28 | 30 | 32 | μs |
| | | z1 | 198 | 200 | 202 | μs |
| | | z2 | 8 | 10 | 12 | μs |
| | Wait time after P1 bit clear ^{*1} | α | 5 | 5 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PSU1 bit clear ^{*1} | β | 5 | 5 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PV1 bit setting ^{*1} | γ | 4 | 4 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after H'FF dummy write ^{*1} | ε | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PV1 bit clear ^{*1} | η | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Maximum programming count ^{*1*4} | N1 | — | — | 6 ^{*4} | Times |
| N2 | | — | — | 994 ^{*4} | Times | |
| Common | Wait time after SWE1 bit setting ^{*1} | x | 1 | 1 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after SWE1 bit clear ^{*1} | θ | 100 | 100 | — | μs |
| Erase | Wait time after ESU1 bit setting ^{*1} | y | 100 | 100 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after E1 bit setting ^{*1*5} | z | 10 | 10 | 100 | ms |
| | Wait time after E1 bit clear ^{*1} | α | 10 | 10 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after ESU1 bit clear ^{*1} | β | 10 | 10 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after EV1 bit setting ^{*1} | γ | 20 | 20 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after H'FF dummy write ^{*1} | ε | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after EV1 bit clear ^{*1} | η | 4 | 4 | — | μs |
| | Maximum erase count ^{*1*5} | N | — | — | 100 | Times |

- Notes: 1. Make each time setting in accordance with the program/program-verify flowchart or erase/erase-verify flowchart.
2. Programming time per 128 bytes (Shows the total period for which the P-bit in the flash memory control register (FLMCR1) is set. It does not include the programming verification time).
3. Block erase time (Shows the total period for which the E1-bit FLMCR1 is set. It does not include the erase verification time).
4. Maximum programming time value
- $$t_p(\text{max.}) = \text{Wait time after P1 bit set (z)} \times \text{maximum programming count (N1 + N2)}$$
- $$= (Z0 + Z2) \times 6 + Z1 \times 994$$
5. Maximum erasure time value
- $$t_e(\text{max.}) = \text{Wait time after E1 bit set (z)} \times \text{maximum erasure count (N)2}$$
6. Minimum number of times for which all characteristics are guaranteed after rewriting (Guarantee range is 1 to minimum value).
7. Reference value for 25°C (as a guideline, rewriting should normally function up to this value).
8. Data retention characteristic when rewriting is performed within the specification range, including the minimum value.

25.9 Usage Note

General Notice during Design for Printed Circuit Board: Measures for radiation noise caused by the transient current in this LSI should be taken into consideration. The examples of the measures are shown below.

- To use a multilayer printed circuit board which includes layers for Vcc and GND.
- To mount by-pass capacitors (approximately 0.1 μ F) between the Vcc and GND (Vss) pins, and the PLLV_{cc} and PLLGND pins, of this LSI.

Section 26 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215T)

26.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Table 26.1 lists the absolute maximum ratings.

Table 26.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

| Item | Symbol | Value | Unit |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|------|
| Power supply voltage | V_{CC1} , $PLL V_{CC1}$, DrV_{CC} | -0.3 to +4.3 | V |
| Input voltage (except ports 4 and 9) | V_{in} | -0.3 to $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Input voltage (ports 4 and 9) | V_{in} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Reference voltage | V_{ref} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Analog power supply voltage | AV_{CC} | -0.3 to +4.3 | V |
| Analog input voltage | V_{AN} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Operating temperature | T_{opr} | Regular specifications: -20 to +75 | °C |
| | | Wide-range specifications: -40 to +85* | °C |
| Storage temperature | T_{stg} | -55 to +125 | °C |

Caution: Permanent damage to the chip may result if absolute maximum ratings are exceeded.

Note: * The operating temperature ranges for flash memory programming/erasing are $T_a = -20^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+75^{\circ}\text{C}$.

26.2 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range

Power supply voltage and operating frequency ranges (shaded areas) are shown in figure 26.1.

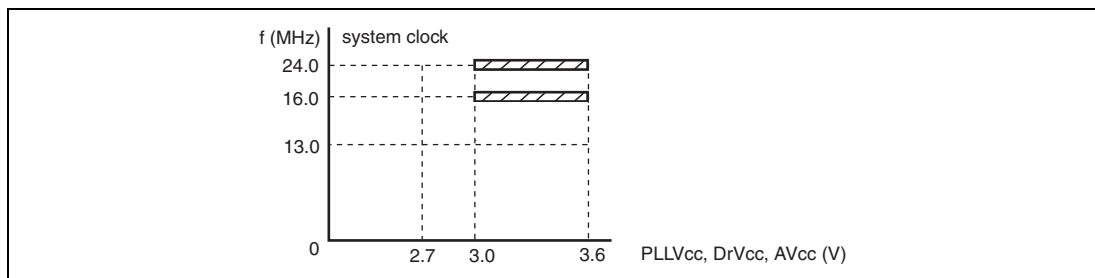


Figure 26.1 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges

26.3 DC Characteristics

Table 26.2 lists the DC characteristics. Table 26.3 lists the permissible output currents.

Table 26.2 DC Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 2.7\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications),
 $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)*¹

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------|----------------------|------|--------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Schmitt trigger input voltage | $\overline{IRQ0}$ to $\overline{IRQ5}$ | V_T^- | $V_{CC} \times 0.2$ | — | — | V | |
| | $\overline{IRQ7}$ | V_T^+ | — | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | V | |
| | | $V_T^+ - V_T^-$ | $V_{CC} \times 0.05$ | — | — | V | |
| Input high voltage | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , NMI, MD2 to MD0, \overline{TRST} , TCK, TMS, TDI, \overline{EMLE} , VBUS, \overline{UBPM} , FWE* ⁵ | V_{IH} | $V_{CC} \times 0.9$ | — | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V | |
| | EXTAL, EXTAL48, Ports 1, 3, 7, and A to G | | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V | |
| | Ports* ⁶ 4 and 9 | | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ * ⁶ | V | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Input low voltage | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , MD2 to MD0, \overline{TRST} , TCK, TMS, TDI, \overline{EMLE} , VBUS, \overline{UBPM} , FWE* ⁵ | V_{IL} | -0.3 | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.1$ | V | |
| | EXTAL, EXTAL48, NMI, Ports 1, 3, 4, 7, 9, and A to G | | -0.3 | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.2$ | V | |
| Output high voltage | All output pins | V_{OH} | $V_{CC} - 0.5$ | — | — | V | $I_{OH} = -200\ \mu\text{A}$ |
| | | | $V_{CC} - 1.0$ | — | — | V | $I_{OH} = -1\ \text{mA}$ |

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------|------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|---|
| Output low voltage | All output pins V_{OL} | — | — | 0.4 | V | $I_{OH} = 0.4 \text{ mA}$ | |
| | | — | — | 0.4 | V | $I_{OL} = 0.8 \text{ mA}$ | |
| Input leakage current | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , NMI, MD2 to MD0, FWE ^{*5} , \overline{VBUS} , \overline{UBPM} | $ I_{in} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V}$ to $V_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ | |
| | Ports 4, 9 | $ I_{in} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V}$ to $AV_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ | |
| 3-state leak current (off status) | Ports 1, 3, 7, A to G | $ I_{TSI} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V}$ to $V_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ | |
| Input pull-up MOS current | Ports A to E | $-I_p$ | 10 | — | 300 | μA $V_{in} = 0 \text{ V}$ | |
| Input capacity | \overline{RES} , NMI | C_{in} | — | — | 30 | pF $V_{in} = 0 \text{ V}$ | |
| | All input pins other than \overline{RES} and NMI | | — | — | 15 | pF $f = 1 \text{ MHz}$ $T_a = 25^\circ\text{C}$ | |
| Current dissipation ^{*2} | Normal operation (USB halts) | I_{CC} ^{*3} | — | 23 ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | 40 ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ |
| | | | — | 34 ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | 55 ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ |
| | Normal operation (USB operates) | I_{CC} ^{*3} | — | 28 ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | 50 ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ (PLL 3 multiplication) |
| | | | — | 40 ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | 60 ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ (PLL 2 multiplication) |
| | Sleep mode | I_{CC} ^{*3} | — | 18 ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | 35 ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ (when USB and PLL are halted) |
| | | | — | 26 ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | 45 ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ (when USB and PLL are halted) |

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------|------|-----------------------------------|------|------|---------------------------------|
| Current dissipation* ² | All modules stopped | I_{CC}^{*3} | — | 15 ($V_{CC} = 3.3\text{ V}$) | — | mA | f = 16 MHz (reference value) |
| | | | — | 21 ($V_{CC} = 3.3\text{ V}$) | — | mA | f = 24 MHz (reference value) |
| | Standby mode* ⁴ | | — | 1.0 | 10 | μA | $T_a \leq 50^\circ\text{C}$ |
| | | | — | — | 50 | μA | $50^\circ\text{C} < T_a$ |
| Analog power supply current | During A/D conversion | AI_{CC} | — | 0.3 | 1.5 | mA | $AV_{CC} = 3.3\text{ V}$ |
| | Idle | | — | 0.01 | 5.0 | μA | |
| Reference power supply current | During A/D conversion | AI_{CC} | — | 1.2 | 2.5 | mA | $V_{ref} = 3.3\text{ V}$ |
| | Idle | | — | 0.01 | 5.0 | μA | |
| RAM standby voltage | | V_{RAM} | 2.0 | — | — | V | |

- Notes: 1. If the A/D or D/A converter is not used, the AVCC, V_{ref} , and AVSS pins should not be open. Even if the A/D or D/A converter is not used, connect the AVCC and V_{ref} pins to V_{CC} and the AVSS pin to V_{SS} , respectively. In this case, the V_{ref} level should be the AVCC level or less.
2. Current dissipation values are for $V_{IH}(\text{min.}) = V_{CC} - 0.2\text{ V}$ and $V_{IL}(\text{max.}) = 0.2\text{ V}$, with all output pins unloaded and the on-chip MOS pull-up transistors in the off state.
3. I_{CC} depends on V_{CC} and f as follows:
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.67\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB halted)
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.85\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, f = 16 MHz : PLL 3 × multiplication)
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.72\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, f = 24 MHz : PLL 2 × multiplication)
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.55\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (sleep mode)
4. The values are for $V_{RAM} \leq V_{CC} < 3.0\text{ V}$, $V_{IH}(\text{min.}) = V_{CC} \times 0.9$, and $V_{IL}(\text{max.}) = 0.3\text{ V}$.
5. The FWE pin is supported on the F-ZTAT version only.
6. When $V_{CC} < AV_{CC}$, the maximum value for P40 and P41 is $V_{CC} + 0.3\text{ V}$.

Table 26.3 Permissible Output Currents

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications),
 $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)*

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|---|--------------------------|---|------|------|------|------|
| Permissible output low current (per pin) | All output pins | $V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ I_{OL} | — | — | 1.0 | mA |
| Permissible output low current (total) | Total of all output pins | $V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ $\sum I_{OL}$ | — | — | 60 | mA |
| Permissible output high current (per pin) | All output pins | $V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ $-I_{OH}$ | — | — | 1.0 | mA |
| Permissible output high current (total) | Total of all output pins | $V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ $\sum -I_{OH}$ | — | — | 30 | mA |

Note: * To protect chip reliability, do not exceed the output current values in table 26.3.

26.4 AC Characteristics

Figure 26.2 shows, the test conditions for the AC characteristics.

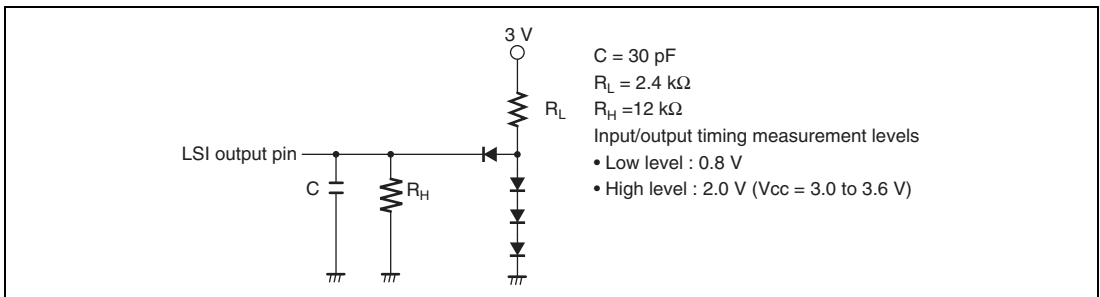


Figure 26.2 Output Load Circuit

26.4.1 Clock Timing

Table 26.4 lists the clock timing

Table 26.4 Clock Timing

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz, }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--|-------------------|------|------|---------------|--|
| Clock cycle time | t_{cyc} | 41.6 | 62.5 | ns | Figure 26.3 |
| Clock high pulse width | t_{CH} | 13 | — | ns | |
| Clock low pulse width | t_{CL} | 13 | — | ns | |
| Clock rise time | t_{Cr} | — | 7 | ns | |
| Clock fall time | t_{Cf} | — | 7 | ns | |
| Oscillation stabilization time at reset (crystal) | t_{OSC1} | 20 | — | ms | Figure 26.4 |
| Oscillation stabilization time in software standby (crystal) | t_{OSC2} | 8 | — | ms | $C_{L1} = C_{L2} = 10\text{ pF}$ to 22 pF in figure 21.2 Figure 22.3 |
| | | 4 | — | ms | $C_{L1} = C_{L2} = 10\text{ pF}$ to 15 pF in figure 21.2 $V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$ in figure 22.3 |
| External clock output stabilization delay time | t_{DEXT} | 500 | — | μs | Figure 26.4 |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) stabilization time | t_{OSC3} | 8 | — | ms | $V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$ |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator frequency | f_{48} | 4.8 | | MHz | |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) cycle time | f_{48} | 20.8 | | ns | |

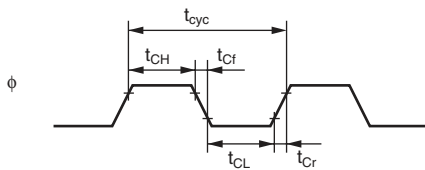


Figure 26.3 System Clock Timing

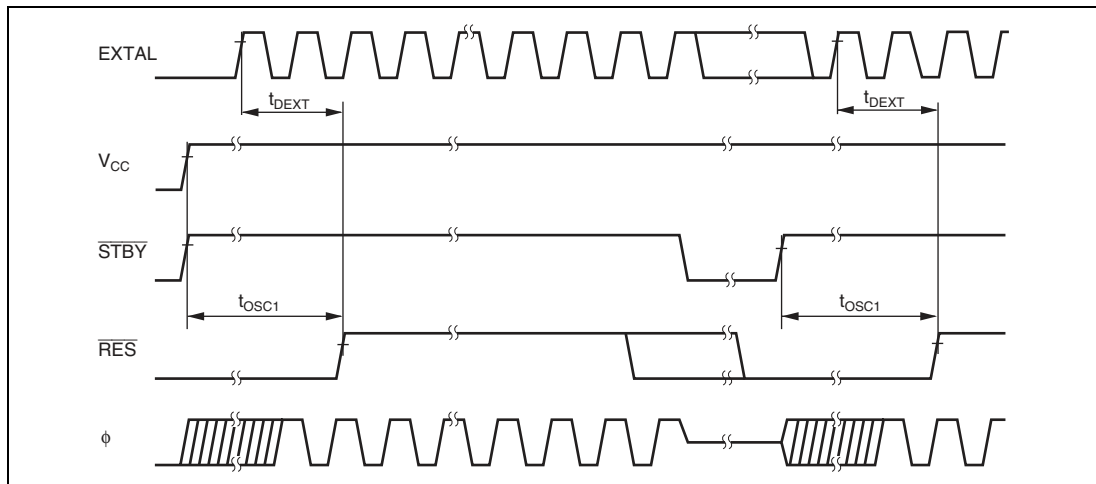


Figure 26.4 Oscillation Stabilization Timing

26.4.2 Control Signal Timing

Table 26.5 lists the control signal timing.

Table 26.5 Control Signal Timing

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz, }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|---|-------------|------|------|-----------|-----------------|
| RES setup time | t_{RESS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 26.5 |
| RES pulse width | t_{RESW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| MRES setup time | t_{MRESS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| MRES pulse width | t_{MRESW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| NMI setup time | t_{NMIS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 26.6 |
| NMI hold time | t_{NMIH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| NMI pulse width (exiting software standby mode) | t_{NMW} | 200 | — | ns | |
| IRQ setup time | t_{IRQS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| IRQ hold time | t_{IRQH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| IRQ pulse width (exiting software standby mode) | t_{IRQW} | 200 | — | ns | |

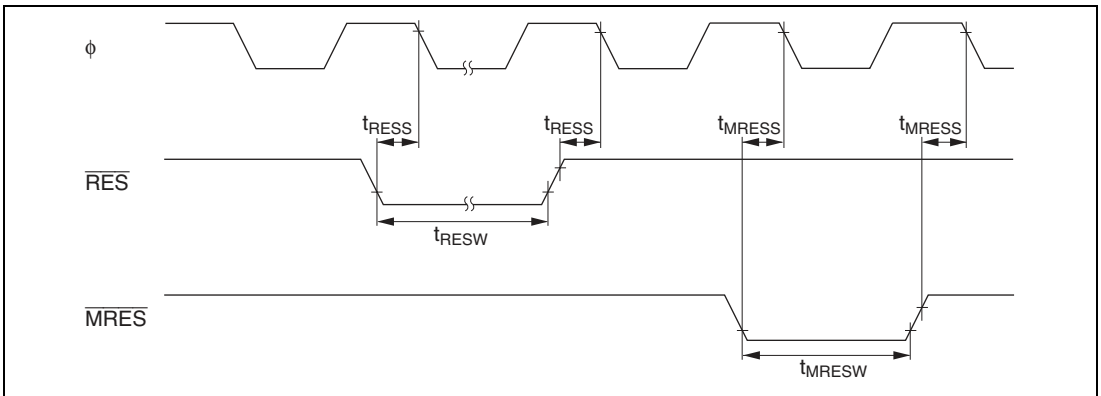


Figure 26.5 Reset Input Timing

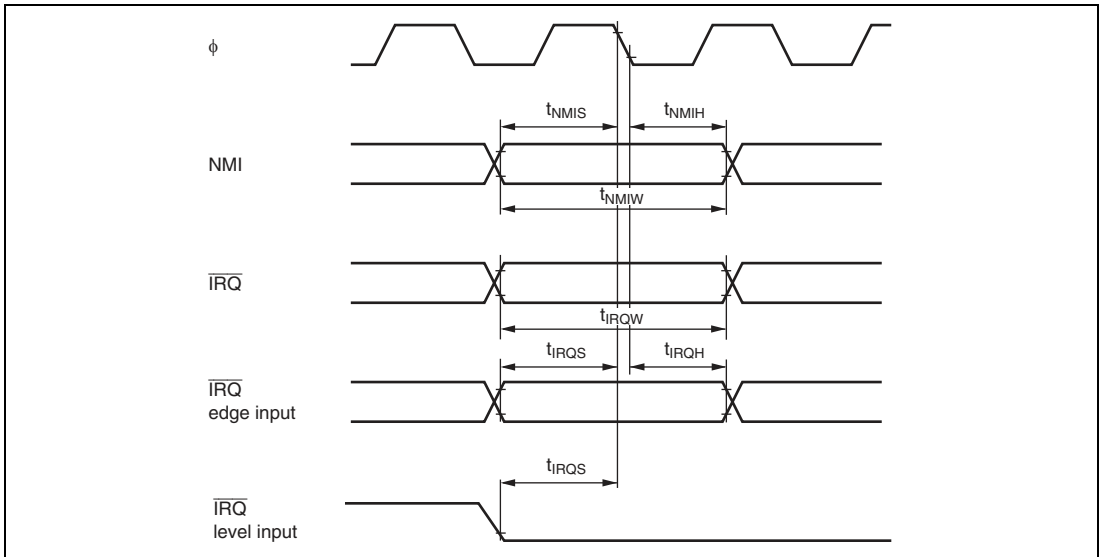


Figure 26.6 Interrupt Input Timing

26.4.3 Bus Timing

Table 26.6 shows, Bus Timing.

Table 26.6 Bus Timing

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz, }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-------------------------------|------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| Address delay time | t_{AD} | — | 30 | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.8, 26.10 |
| Address setup time | t_{AS} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 20$ | — | ns | |
| Address hold time | t_{AH} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 8$ | — | ns | |
| \overline{CS} delay time | t_{CSD} | — | 30 | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.8 |
| \overline{AS} delay time | t_{ASD} | — | 25 | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.8, 26.10 |
| \overline{RD} delay time 1 | t_{RSD1} | — | 25 | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.8 |
| \overline{RD} delay time 2 | t_{RSD2} | — | 25 | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.8, 26.10 |
| Read data setup time | t_{RDS} | 20 | — | ns | |
| Read data hold time | t_{RDH} | 0 | — | ns | |
| Read data access time 2 | t_{ACC2} | — | $1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 35$ | ns | Figure 26.7 |
| Read data access time 3 | t_{ACC3} | — | $2.0 \times t_{cyc} - 40$ | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.10 |
| Read data access time 4 | t_{ACC4} | — | $2.5 \times t_{cyc} - 35$ | ns | Figure 26.8 |
| Read data access time 5 | t_{ACC5} | — | $3.0 \times t_{cyc} - 40$ | ns | |
| \overline{WR} delay time 1 | t_{WRD1} | — | 20 | ns | |
| \overline{WR} delay time 2 | t_{WRD2} | — | 25 | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.8 |
| \overline{WR} pulse width 1 | t_{WSW1} | $1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 20$ | — | ns | Figure 26.7 |
| \overline{WR} pulse width 2 | t_{WSW2} | $1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 20$ | — | ns | Figure 26.8 |
| Write data delay time | t_{WDD} | — | 30 | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.8 |
| Write data setup time | t_{WDS} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 20$ | — | ns | Figure 26.8 |
| Write data hold time | t_{WDH} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 10$ | — | ns | Figures 26.7, 26.8 |
| \overline{WAIT} setup time | t_{WTS} | 25 | — | ns | Figure 26.9 |

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|------------------------------|------------|------|------|------|-----------------|
| WAIT hold time | t_{WTH} | 5 | — | ns | |
| \overline{BREQ} setup time | t_{BRQS} | 25 | — | ns | Figure 26.11 |
| \overline{BACK} delay time | t_{BACD} | — | 40 | ns | |
| Bus-floating time | t_{BZD} | — | 50 | ns | |

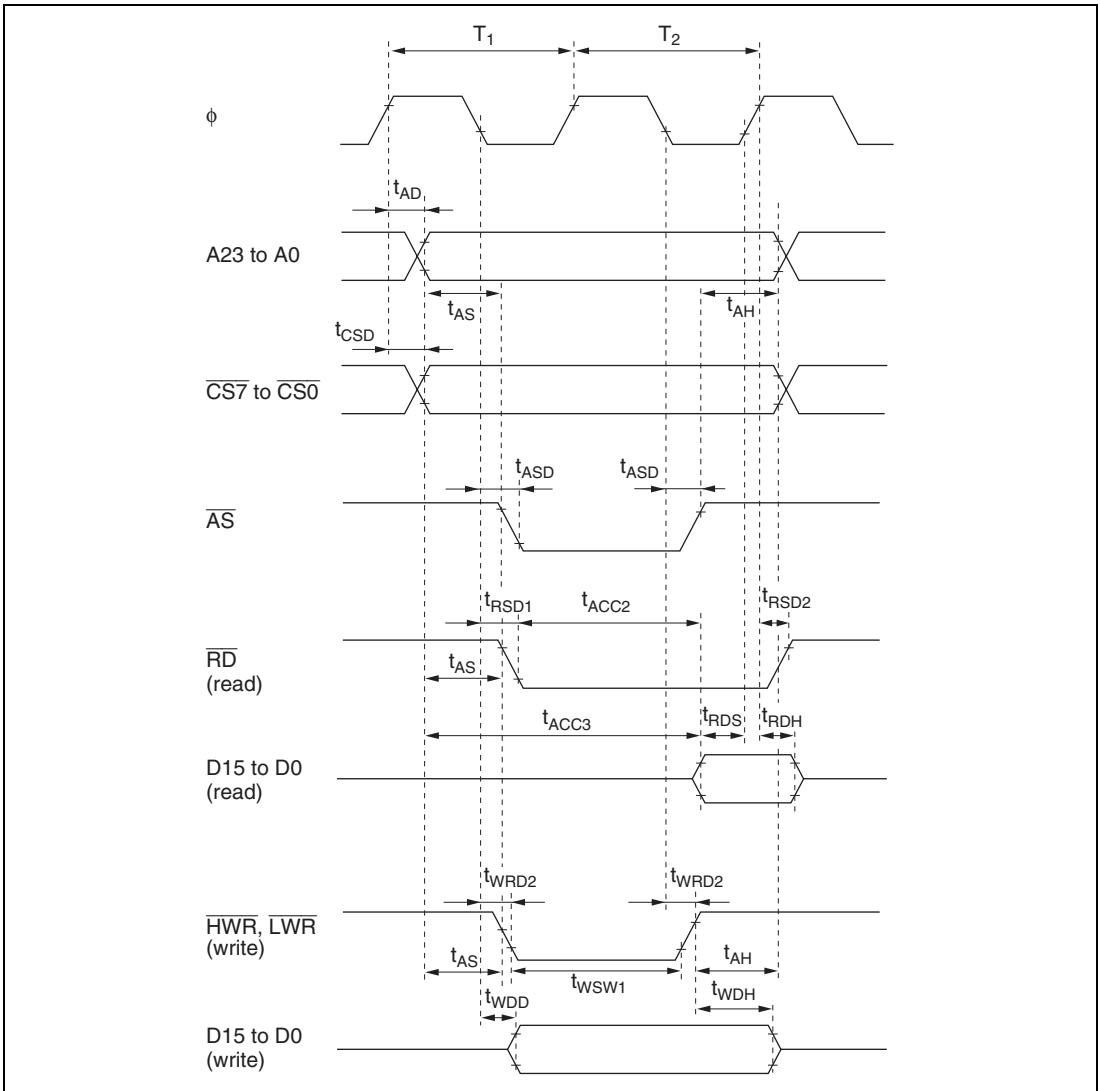


Figure 26.7 Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)

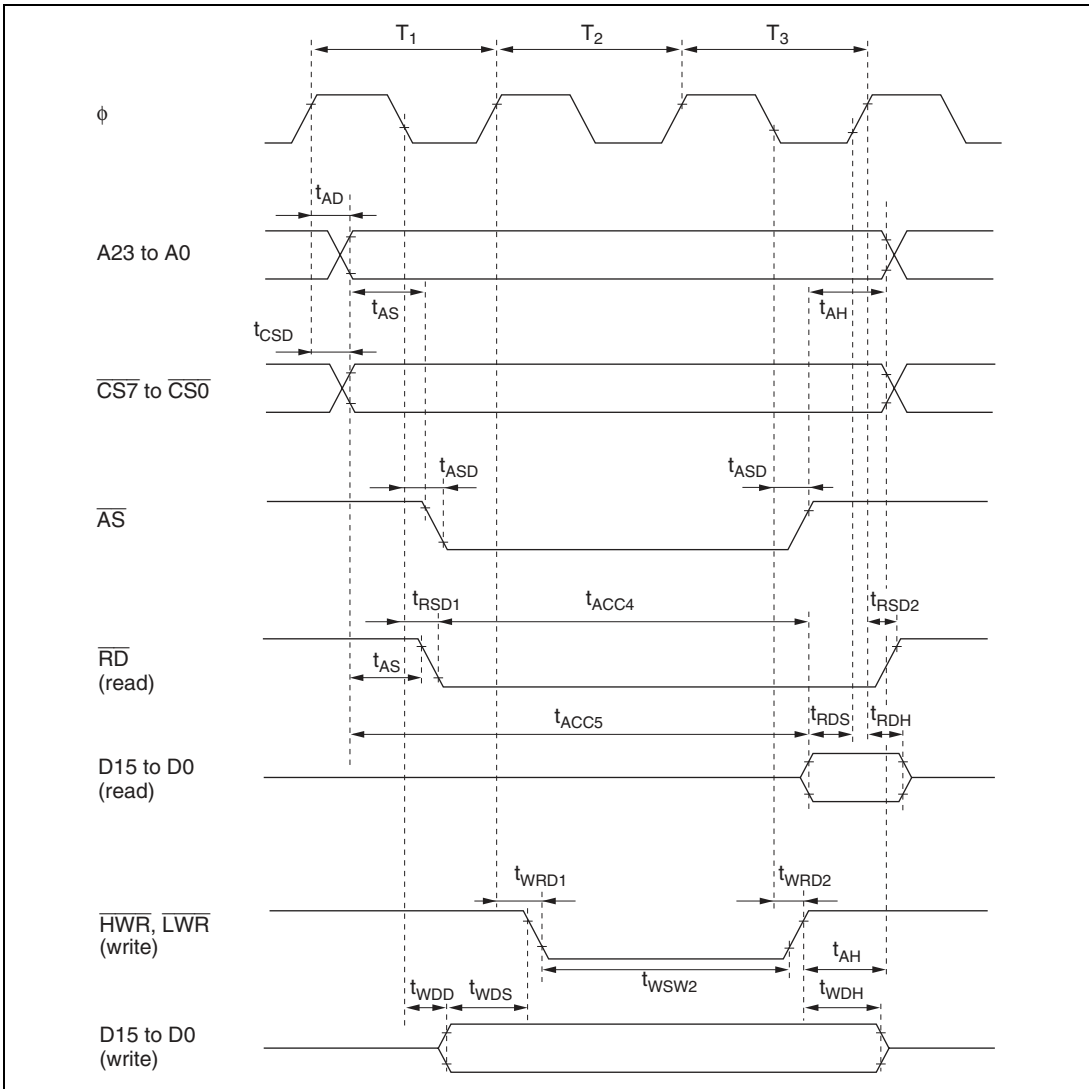


Figure 26.8 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)

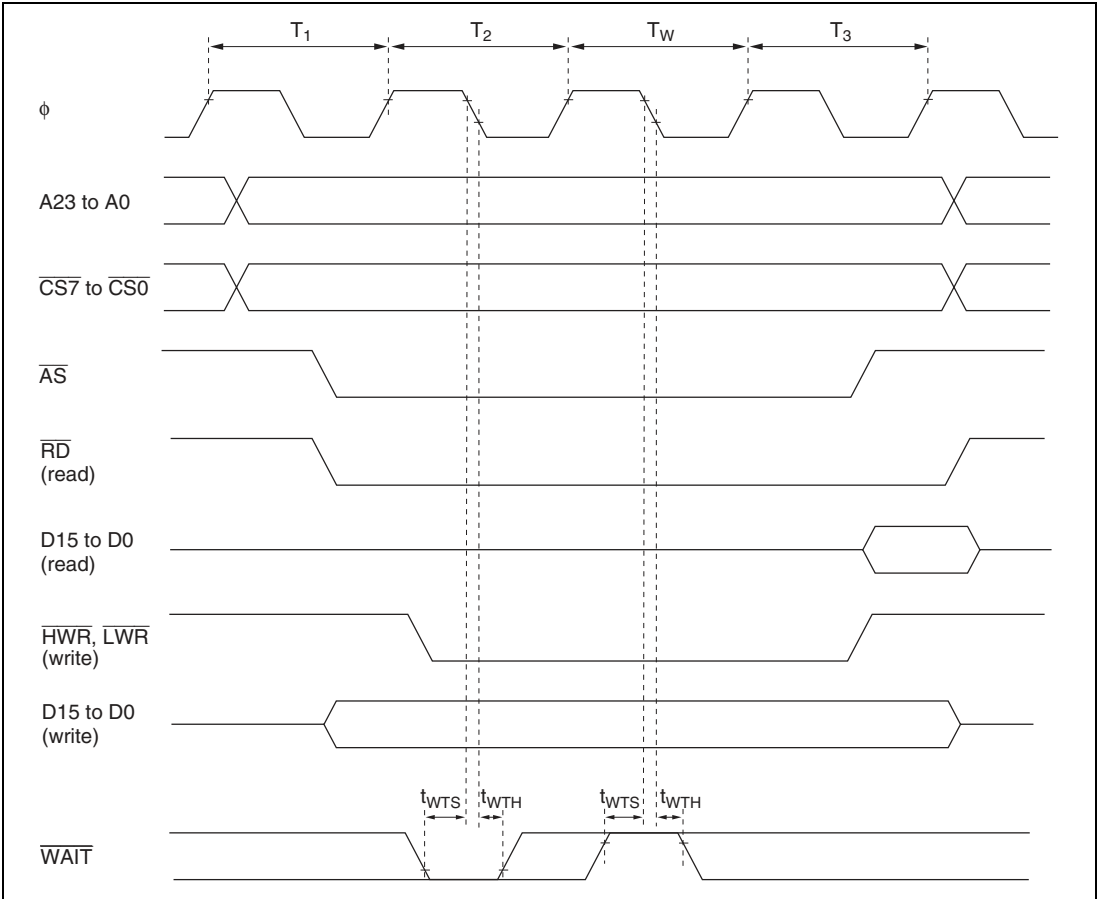


Figure 26.9 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State)

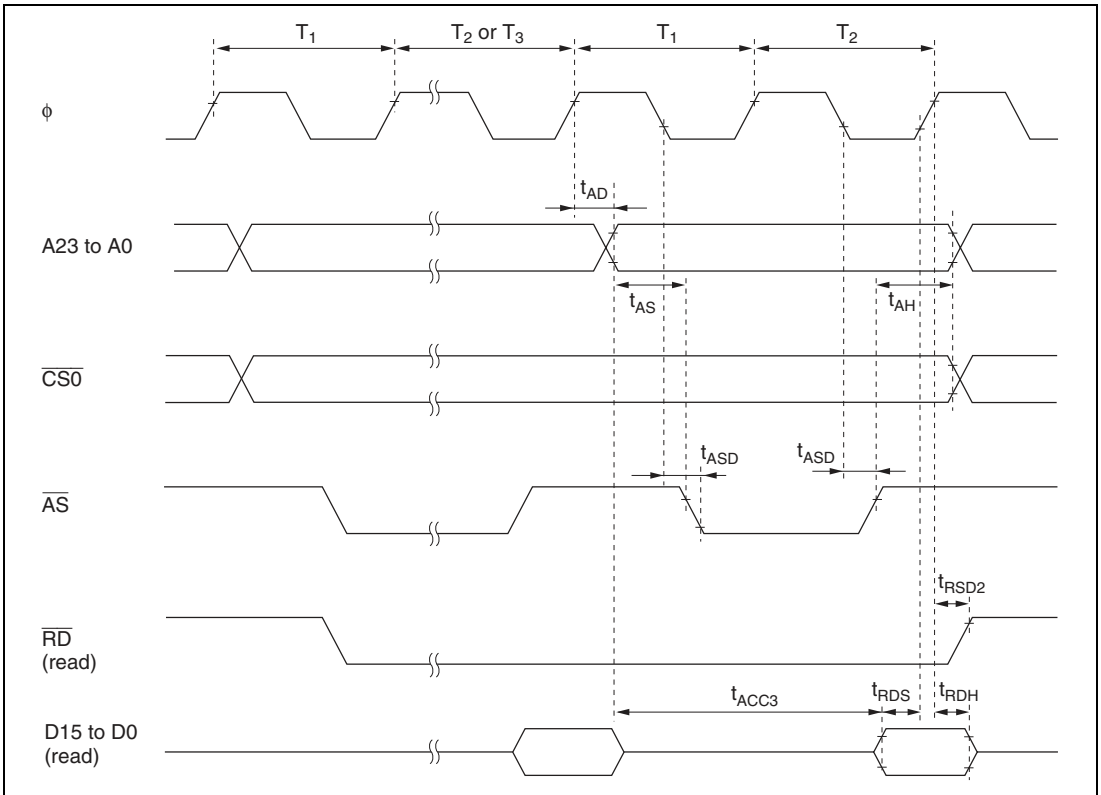


Figure 26.10 Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)

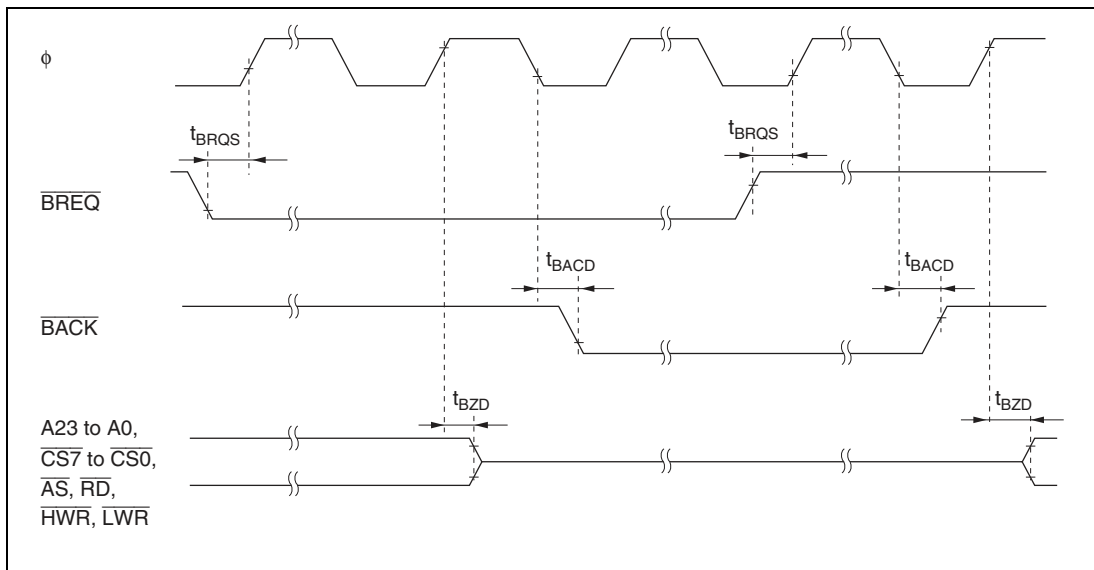


Figure 26.11 External Bus Release Timing

26.4.4 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Table 26.7 lists the timing of on-chip supporting modules.

Table 26.7 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz, }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|--------|-----------------|--------------|
| I/O port | Output data delay time | t_{PVD} | — | 40 | ns | Figure 26.12 | |
| | Input data setup time | t_{PRS} | 30 | — | | | |
| | Input data hold time | t_{PRH} | 30 | — | | | |
| TPU | Timer output delay time | t_{TOCD} | — | 40 | ns | Figure 26.13 | |
| | Timer input setup time | t_{TICS} | 30 | — | | | |
| | Timer clock input setup time | t_{TCKS} | 30 | — | ns | Figure 26.14 | |
| | Timer clock pulse width | Single edge Both edges | t_{TCKWH} t_{TCKWL} | 1.5 2.5 | — — | | t_{cyc} |
| TMR | Timer output delay time | t_{TMOD} | — | 41 | ns | Figure 26.15 | |
| | Timer reset input setup time | t_{TMRS} | 29 | — | ns | Figure 26.17 | |
| | Timer clock input setup time | t_{TMCS} | 29 | — | ns | Figure 26.16 | |
| TMR | Timer clock pulse width | Single edge Both edges | t_{TMCWH} t_{TMCWL} | 1.5 2.5 | — — | t_{cyc} | Figure 26.16 |
| | SCI | Input clock cycle | Asynchronous Synchronous | t_{Scyc} | 4 6 | — — | |
| Input clock pulse width | | | t_{SCKW} | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{Scyc} | |
| | Input clock rise time | | t_{SCKr} | — | 1.5 | t_{cyc} | |
| | Input clock fall time | | t_{SCKf} | — | 1.5 | | |
| | Transmit data delay time | | t_{TXD} | — | 40 | ns | Figure 26.19 |
| | Receive data setup time (synchronous) | | t_{RXS} | 40 | — | | |
| | Receive data hold time (synchronous) | | t_{RXH} | 40 | — | | |
| A/D converter | Trigger input setup time | | t_{TRGS} | 30 | — | ns | Figure 26.20 |

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|------------|------|------|-----------------|--------------|
| Boundary scan | TCK cycle time | t_{cyc} | 41.6 | — | ns | Figure 26.21 |
| | TCK high level pulse width | t_{TCKH} | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{cyc} | |
| | TCK low level pulse width | t_{TCKL} | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{cyc} | |
| | \overline{TRST} pulse width | t_{TRSW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | Figure 25.22 |
| | \overline{TRST} setup time | t_{TRSS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| | TDI setup time | t_{TDIS} | 20 | — | ns | Figure 26.23 |
| | TDI hold time | t_{TDIH} | 10 | — | | |
| | TMS setup time | t_{TMSS} | 20 | — | | |
| | TMS hold time | t_{TMSH} | 10 | — | | |
| | TDO delay time | t_{TDOD} | — | 35 | | |

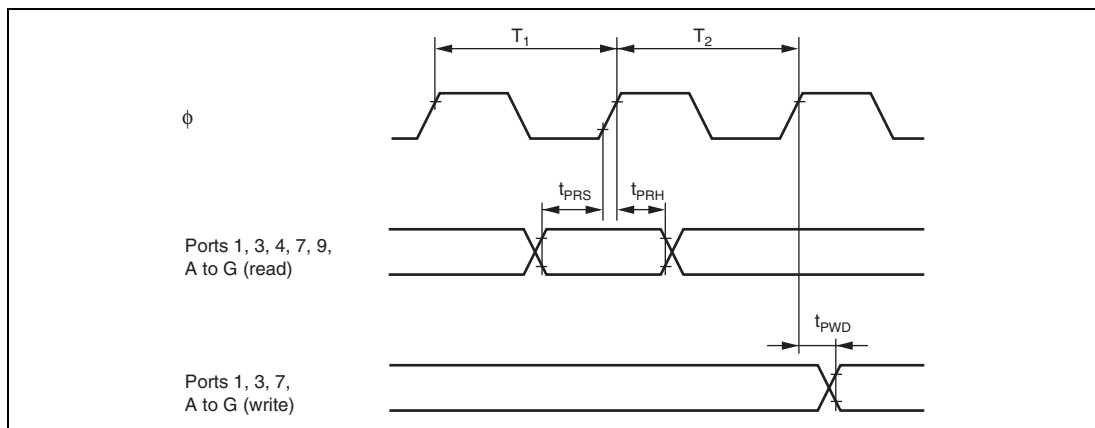


Figure 26.12 I/O Port Input/Output Timing

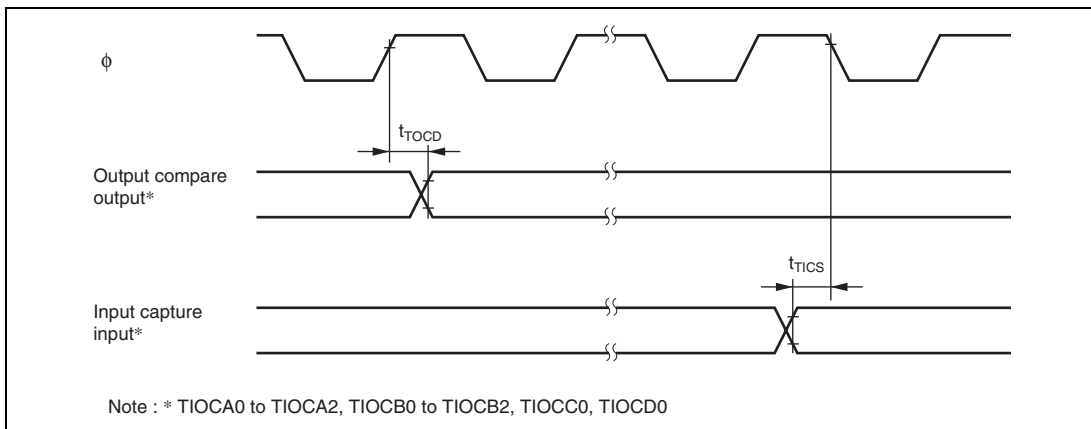


Figure 26.13 TPU Input/Output Timing

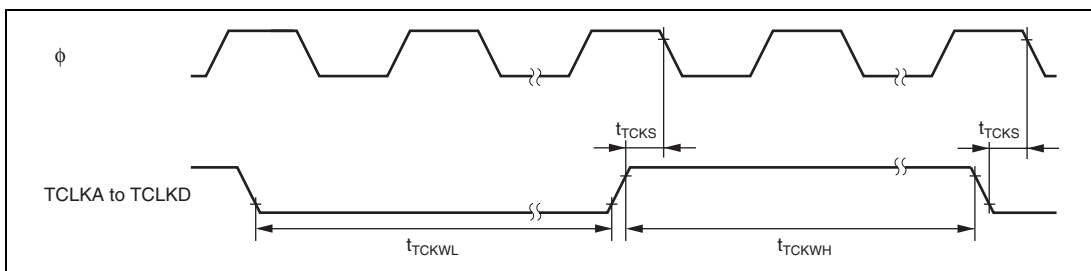


Figure 26.14 TPU Clock Input Timing

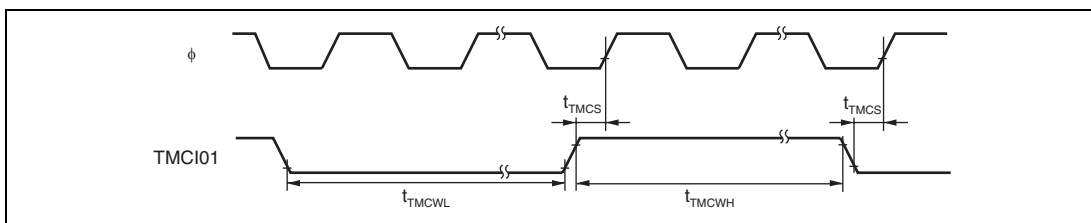


Figure 26.15 8-bit Timer Output Timing

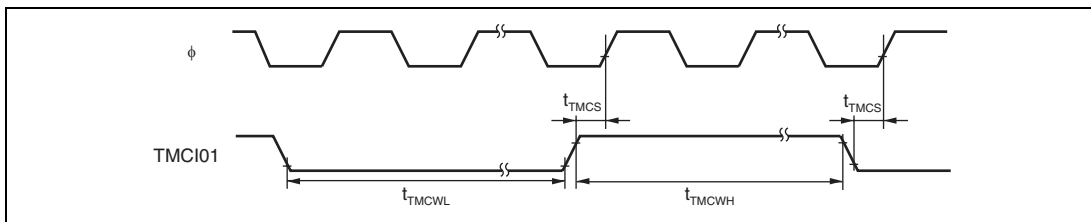


Figure 26.16 8-bit Timer Clock Input Timing

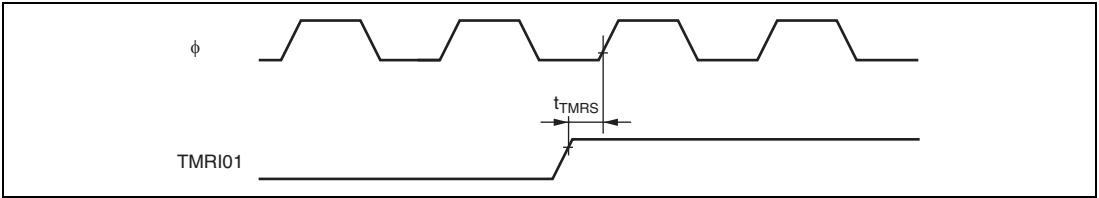


Figure 26.17 8-bit Timer Reset Input Timing

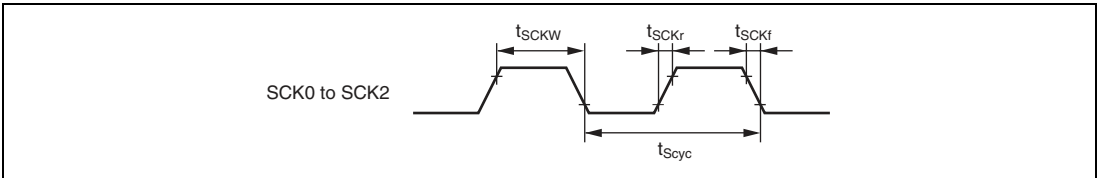


Figure 26.18 SCK Clock Input Timing

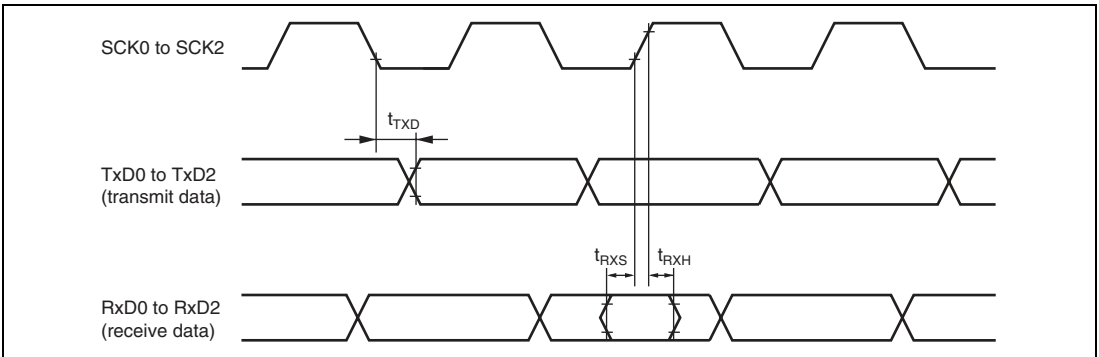


Figure 26.19 SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode)

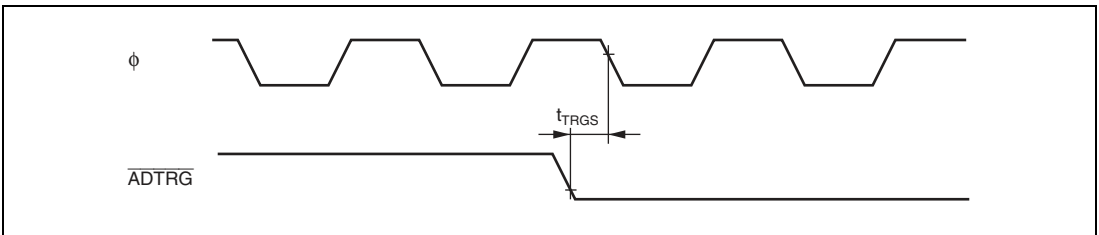


Figure 26.20 A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing

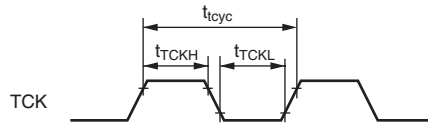


Figure 26.21 Boundary Scan TCK Input Timing

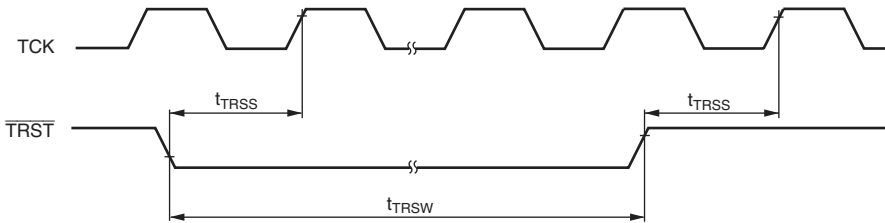


Figure 26.22 Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold)

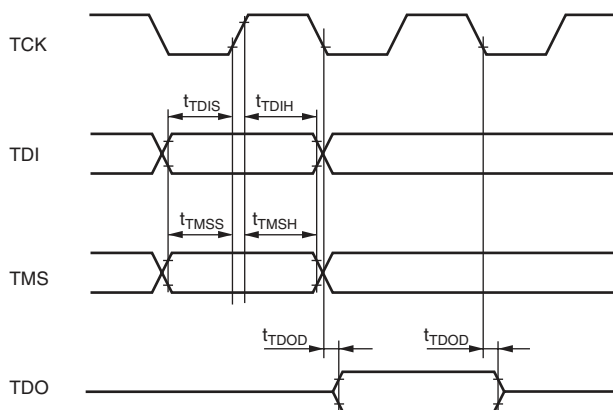


Figure 26.23 Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing

26.5 USB Characteristics

Table 26.8 lists the USB characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when the on-chip USB transceiver is used.

Table 26.8 USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz, }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Condition |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------|----------|----------|-------------------------------------|
| Input characteristics | Input high level voltage | V_{IH} | 2.0 | — | V | Figures 26.24, 26.25 |
| | Input low level voltage | V_{IL} | — | 0.8 | V | |
| | Differential input sense | V_{DI} | 0.2 | — | V | (D+)-(D-) DrVcc = 3.3 to 3.6 V |
| | Differential common mode range | V_{CM} | 0.8 | 2.5 | V | |
| Output characteristics | Output high level voltage | V_{OH} | 2.8 | — | V | $I_{OH} = -200\ \mu\text{A}$ |
| | Output low level voltage | V_{OL} | — | 0.3 | V | $I_{OL} = 2\ \text{mA}$ |
| | Crossover voltage | V_{CRS} | 1.3 | 2.0 | V | |
| | Rise time | t_R | 4 | 20 | ns | |
| | Fall time | t_F | 4 | 20 | ns | |
| | Rise time/fall time matching | t_{RFM} | 90 | 111.11 % | | (T_R/T_F) |
| | Output resistance | Z_{DRV} | 28 | 44 | Ω | Including $R_S = 24\ \Omega$ |

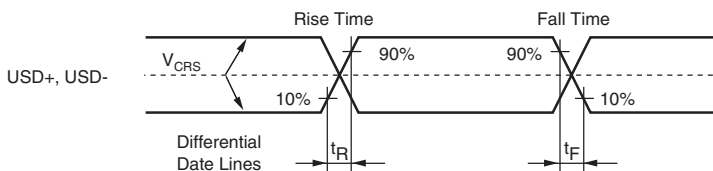


Figure 26.24 Data Signal Timing

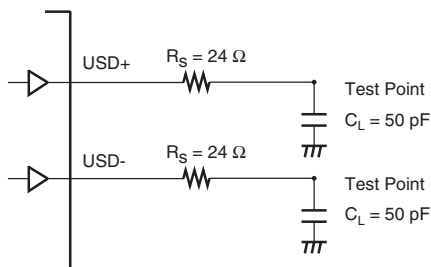


Figure 26.25 Test Load Circuit

26.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Table 26.9 lists the A/D conversion characteristics.

Table 26.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|-------------------------------------|------|------|-----------|---------------|
| Resolution | 10 | 10 | 10 | bits |
| Conversion time | 8.1 | — | — | μs |
| Analog input capacitance | — | — | 20 | pF |
| Permissible signal-source impedance | — | — | 5 | k Ω |
| Nonlinearity error | — | — | ± 6.0 | LSB |
| Offset error | — | — | ± 4.0 | LSB |
| Full-scale error | — | — | ± 4.0 | LSB |
| Quantization | — | — | ± 0.5 | LSB |
| Absolute accuracy | — | — | ± 8.0 | LSB |

Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{CC} = AV_{CC}$.

26.7 D/A Conversion Characteristics

Table 26.10 lists the D/A conversion characteristics.

Table 26.10 D/A Conversion Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz, }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Condition |
|-------------------|------|-----------|-----------|---------------|---------------------------------|
| Resolution | 8 | 8 | 8 | | |
| Conversion time | — | — | 10 | μs | Load capacitance = 20 pF |
| Absolute accuracy | — | ± 2.0 | ± 3.0 | LSB | Load capacitance = 2 M Ω |
| | — | — | ± 2.0 | LSB | Load capacitance = 4 M Ω |

26.8 Flash Memory Characteristics

Table 26.11 Flash Memory Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz, }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (Programming/erasing operating temperature range)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | |
|--------------------------------------|---|-------------------|----------------------|------|-------------------|---------------|
| Programming time ^{*1 *2 *4} | t_p | — | 10 | 200 | ms/128 bytes | |
| Erase time ^{*1 *3 *5} | t_E | — | 50 | 1000 | ms/block | |
| Reprogramming count | N_{WEC} | 100 ^{*6} | 10,000 ^{*7} | — | Times | |
| Data retention time ^{*8} | t_{DRP} | 10 | — | — | Years | |
| Programming | Wait time after PSU1 bit setting ^{*1} | y | 50 | 50 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after P1 bit setting ^{*1 *4} | z0 | 28 | 30 | 32 | μs |
| | | z1 | 198 | 200 | 202 | μs |
| | | z2 | 8 | 10 | 12 | μs |
| | Wait time after P1 bit clear ^{*1} | α | 5 | 5 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PSU1 bit clear ^{*1} | β | 5 | 5 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PV1 bit setting ^{*1} | γ | 4 | 4 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after H'FF dummy write ^{*1} | ε | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after PV1 bit clear ^{*1} | η | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Maximum programming count ^{*1 *4} | N1 | — | — | 6 ^{*4} | Times |
| | | N2 | — | — | 994 ^{*4} | Times |

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|--------|--|--------|------|------|------|-------|
| Common | Wait time after SWE1 bit setting ^{*1} | x | 1 | 1 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after SWE1 bit clear ^{*1} | θ | 100 | 100 | — | μs |
| Erase | Wait time after ESU1 bit setting ^{*1} | y | 100 | 100 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after E1 bit setting ^{*1*5} | z | 10 | 10 | 100 | ms |
| | Wait time after E1 bit clear ^{*1} | α | 10 | 10 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after ESU1 bit clear ^{*1} | β | 10 | 10 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after EV1 bit setting ^{*1} | γ | 20 | 20 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after H'FF dummy write ^{*1} | ε | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after EV1 bit clear ^{*1} | η | 4 | 4 | — | μs |
| | Maximum erase count ^{*1*5} | N | — | — | 100 | Times |

- Notes:
1. Make each time setting in accordance with the program/program-verify flowchart or erase/erase-verify flowchart.
 2. Programming time per 128 bytes (Shows the total period for which the P-bit in the flash memory control register (FLMCR1) is set. It does not include the programming verification time).
 3. Block erase time (Shows the total period for which the E1-bit FLMCR1 is set. It does not include the erase verification time).
 4. Maximum programming time value

$$t_p (\text{max.}) = \text{Wait time after P1 bit set (z)} \times \text{maximum programming count (N1 + N2)}$$

$$= (Z0 + Z2) \times 6 + Z1 \times 994$$
 5. Maximum erasure time value

$$t_E (\text{max.}) = \text{Wait time after E1 bit set (z)} \times \text{maximum erasure count (N)2}$$
 6. Minimum number of times for which all characteristics are guaranteed after rewriting (Guarantee range is 1 to minimum value).
 7. Reference value for 25°C (as a guideline, rewriting should normally function up to this value).
 8. Data retention characteristic when rewriting is performed within the specification range, including the minimum value.

26.9 Usage Note

General Notice during Design for Printed Circuit Board: Measures for radiation noise caused by the transient current in this LSI should be taken into consideration. The examples of the measures are shown below.

- To use a multilayer printed circuit board which includes layers for Vcc and GND.
- To mount by-pass capacitors (approximately 0.1 μF) between the Vcc and GND (Vss) pins, and the PLLV_{CC} and PLLGND pins, of this LSI.

Section 27 Electrical Characteristics (H8S/2215C)

27.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Table 27.1 lists the absolute maximum ratings.

Table 27.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

| Item | Symbol | Value | Unit |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|------|
| Power supply voltage | V_{CC1} , $PLL V_{CC1}$ DrV_{CC} | -0.3 to +4.3 | V |
| Input voltage (except ports 4 and 9) | V_{in} | -0.3 to $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Input voltage (ports 4 and 9) | V_{in} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Reference voltage | V_{ref} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Analog power supply voltage | AV_{CC} | -0.3 to +4.3 | V |
| Analog input voltage | V_{AN} | -0.3 to $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ | V |
| Operating temperature | T_{opr} | Regular specifications: -20 to +75 | °C |
| | | Wide-range specifications: -40 to +85* | °C |
| Storage temperature | T_{stg} | -55 to +125 | °C |

Caution: Permanent damage to the chip may result if absolute maximum ratings are exceeded.

Note: * The operating temperature ranges for flash memory programming/erasing are $T_a = -20^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+75^{\circ}\text{C}$.

27.2 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Frequency Range

Power supply voltage and operating frequency ranges (shaded areas) are shown in figure 27.1.

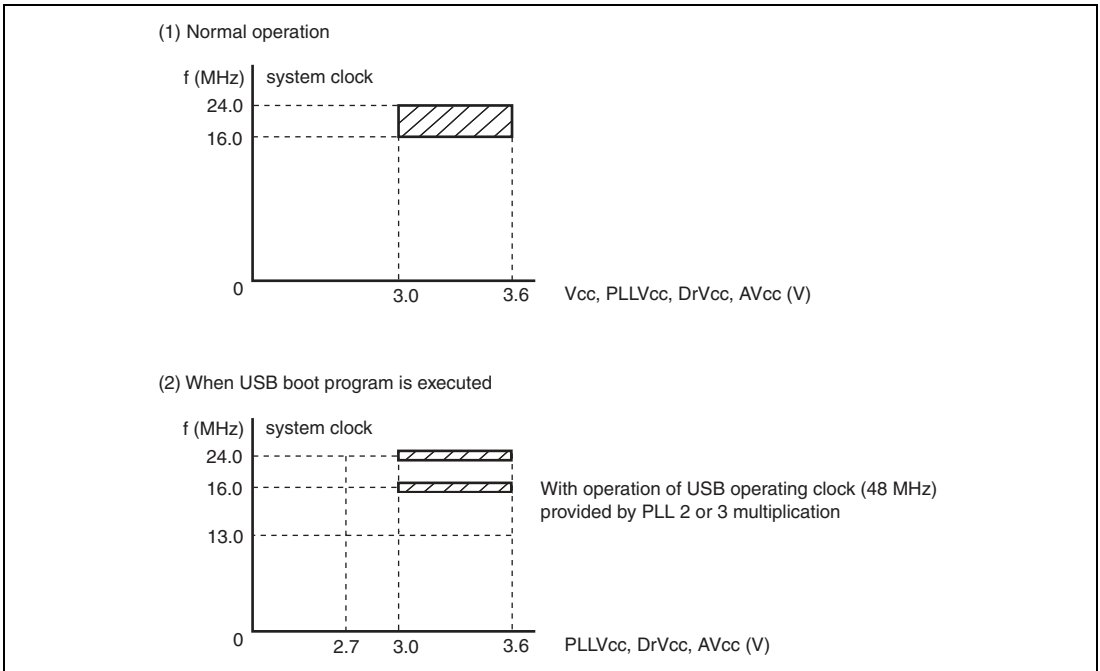


Figure 27.1 Power Supply Voltage and Operating Ranges

27.3 DC Characteristics

Table 27.2 lists the DC characteristics. Table 27.3 lists the permissible output currents.

Table 27.2 DC Characteristics

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications),
 $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)*¹

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|-------------------------------|--|-----------------|----------------------|------|--------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Schmitt trigger input voltage | $\overline{IRQ0}$ to $\overline{IRQ5}$ | V_T^- | $V_{CC} \times 0.2$ | — | — | V | |
| | $\overline{IRQ7}$ | V_T^+ | — | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | V | |
| | | $V_T^+ - V_T^-$ | $V_{CC} \times 0.05$ | — | — | V | |
| Input high voltage | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , NMI, MD2 to MD0, \overline{TRST} , TCK, TMS, TDI, EMLEN, \overline{VBUS} , \overline{UBPM} , FWE | V_{IH} | $V_{CC} \times 0.9$ | — | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V | |
| | EXTAL, EXTAL48, Ports 1, 3, 7, and A to G | | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $V_{CC} + 0.3$ | V | |
| | Ports 4* ⁶ and 9 | | $V_{CC} \times 0.8$ | — | $AV_{CC} + 0.3$ * ⁶ | V | |
| Input low voltage | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , MD2 to MD0, \overline{TRST} , TCK, TMS, TDI, EMLEN, \overline{VBUS} , \overline{UBPM} , FWE | V_{IL} | -0.3 | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.1$ | V | |
| | EXTAL, EXTAL48, NMI, Ports 1, 3, 4, 7, 9, and A to G | | -0.3 | — | $V_{CC} \times 0.2$ | V | |
| Output high voltage | All output pins | V_{OH} | $V_{CC} - 0.5$ | — | — | V | $I_{OH} = -200\ \mu\text{A}$ |
| | | | $V_{CC} - 1.0$ | — | — | V | $I_{OH} = -1\ \text{mA}$ |

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|---|--|
| Output low voltage | All output pins | V_{OL} | — | — | 0.4 | V | $I_{OH} = 0.4 \text{ mA}$ |
| | | | — | — | 0.4 | V | $I_{OL} = 0.8 \text{ mA}$ |
| Input leakage current | \overline{RES} , \overline{STBY} , NMI, MD2 to MD0, FWE*5, \overline{VBUS} , \overline{UBPM} | $ I_{in} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } V_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| | Ports 4, 9 | $ I_{in} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } AV_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| 3-state leak current (off status) | Ports 1, 3, 7, A to G | $ I_{TSI} $ | — | — | 1.0 | μA | $V_{in} = 0.5 \text{ V to } V_{CC} - 0.5 \text{ V}$ |
| Input pull-up MOS current | Ports A to E | $-I_p$ | 10 | — | 300 | μA | $V_{in} = 0 \text{ V}$ |
| Input capacity | \overline{RES} , NMI | C_{in} | — | — | 30 | pF | $V_{in} = 0 \text{ V}$ |
| | All input pins other than \overline{RES} and NMI | | — | — | 15 | pF | $f = 1 \text{ MHz}$ $T_a = 25^\circ\text{C}$ |
| Current dissipation*2 | Normal operation (USB halts) | I_{CC}^{*3} | — | 23 | 40 | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ |
| | | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | |
| | Normal operation (USB operates) | | — | 34 | 55 | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ |
| | | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | |
| | Sleep mode | | — | 28 | 50 | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ (PLL 3 multiplication) |
| | | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | |
| Sleep mode | | — | 40 | 60 | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ (PLL 2 multiplication) | |
| | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | | |
| Sleep mode | | — | 18 | 35 | mA | $f = 16 \text{ MHz}$ (when USB and PLL are halted) | |
| | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | | |
| Sleep mode | | — | 26 | 45 | mA | $f = 24 \text{ MHz}$ (when USB and PLL are halted) | |
| | | | ($V_{CC} = 3.3 \text{ V}$) | ($V_{CC} = 3.6 \text{ V}$) | | | |

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|------|-----------------------------------|------|---------------|--|
| Current dissipation*2 | All modules stopped | I_{CC}^{*3} | — | 15 ($V_{CC} = 3.3\text{ V}$) | — | mA | $f = 16\text{ MHz}$ (reference value) |
| | | | — | 21 ($V_{CC} = 3.3\text{ V}$) | — | mA | $f = 24\text{ MHz}$ (reference value) |
| | Standby mode*4 | | — | 1.0 | 10 | μA | $T_a \leq 50^\circ\text{C}$ |
| | | | — | — | 50 | μA | $50^\circ\text{C} < T_a$ |
| Analog power supply current | During A/D conversion | AI_{CC} | — | 0.3 | 1.5 | mA | $AV_{CC} = 3.3\text{ V}$ |
| | Idle | | — | 0.01 | 5.0 | μA | |
| Reference power supply current | During A/D conversion | AI_{CC} | — | 1.2 | 2.5 | mA | $V_{ref} = 3.3\text{ V}$ |
| | Idle | | — | 0.01 | 5.0 | μA | |
| RAM standby voltage | | V_{RAM} | 2.0 | — | — | V | |

- Notes: 1. If the A/D or D/A converter is not used, the AVCC, V_{ref} , and AVSS pins should not be open. Even if the A/D or D/A converter is not used, connect the AVCC and V_{ref} pins to V_{CC} and the AVSS pin to V_{SS} , respectively. In this case, the V_{ref} level should be the AVCC level or less.
2. Current dissipation values are for $V_{IH}(\text{min.}) = V_{CC} - 0.2\text{ V}$ and $V_{IL}(\text{max.}) = 0.2\text{ V}$, with all output pins unloaded and the on-chip MOS pull-up transistors in the off state.
3. I_{CC} depends on V_{CC} and f as follows:
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.67\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB halted)
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.85\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, $f = 16\text{ MHz}$: PLL 3 \times multiplication)
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.72\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (normal operation, USB operating, $f = 24\text{ MHz}$: PLL 2 \times multiplication)
 $I_{CC}(\text{max.}) = 1.0\text{ (mA)} + 0.55\text{ (mA/(MHz} \times \text{V))} \times V_{CC} \times f$ (sleep mode)
4. The values are for $V_{RAM} \leq V_{CC} < 3.0\text{ V}$, $V_{IH}(\text{min.}) = V_{CC} \times 0.9$, and $V_{IL}(\text{max.}) = 0.3\text{ V}$.
5. The FWE pin is supported on the F-ZTAT version only.
6. When $V_{CC} < AV_{CC}$, the maximum value for P40 and P41 is $V_{CC} + 0.3\text{ V}$.

Table 27.3 Permissible Output Currents

Conditions: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications),
 $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)*

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|---|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------|------|------|--------|
| Permissible output low current (per pin) | All output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | I_{OL} | — | — | 1.0 mA |
| Permissible output low current (total) | Total of all output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $\sum I_{OL}$ | — | — | 60 mA |
| Permissible output high current (per pin) | All output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $-I_{OH}$ | — | — | 1.0 mA |
| Permissible output high current (total) | Total of all output pins | $V_{CC} = 2.7\text{ to }3.6\text{ V}$ | $\sum -I_{OH}$ | — | — | 30 mA |

Note: * To protect chip reliability, do not exceed the output current values in table 27.3.

27.4 AC Characteristics

Figure 27.2 shows, the test conditions for the AC characteristics.

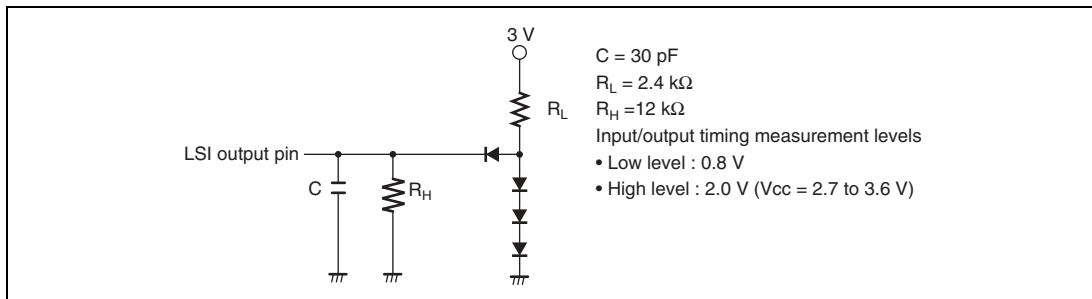


Figure 27.2 Output Load Circuit

27.4.1 Clock Timing

Table 27.4 lists the clock timing

Table 27.4 Clock Timing

Condition: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--|------------|------|------|---------------|--|
| Clock cycle time | t_{cyc} | 41.6 | 62.5 | ns | Figure 27.3 |
| Clock high pulse width | t_{CH} | 13 | — | ns | |
| Clock low pulse width | t_{CL} | 13 | — | ns | |
| Clock rise time | t_{Cr} | — | 7 | ns | |
| Clock fall time | t_{Cf} | — | 7 | ns | |
| Oscillation stabilization time at reset (crystal) | t_{OSC1} | 20 | — | ms | Figure 27.4 |
| Oscillation stabilization time in software standby (crystal) | t_{OSC2} | 8 | — | ms | $C_{L1} = C_{L2} = 10\text{ pF to }22\text{ pF}$ in figure 21.2 Figure 22.3 |
| | | 4 | — | ms | $C_{L1} = C_{L2} = 10\text{ pF to }15\text{ pF}$ in figure 21.2 Figure 22.3 |
| External clock output stabilization delay time | t_{DEXT} | 500 | — | μs | Figure 27.4 |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) stabilization time | t_{OSC3} | 8 | — | ms | |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) oscillator frequency | f_{48} | 4.8 | | MHz | |
| USB operating clock (48 MHz) cycle time | f_{48} | 20.8 | | ns | |

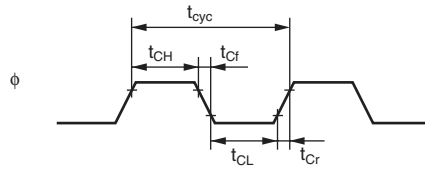


Figure 27.3 System Clock Timing

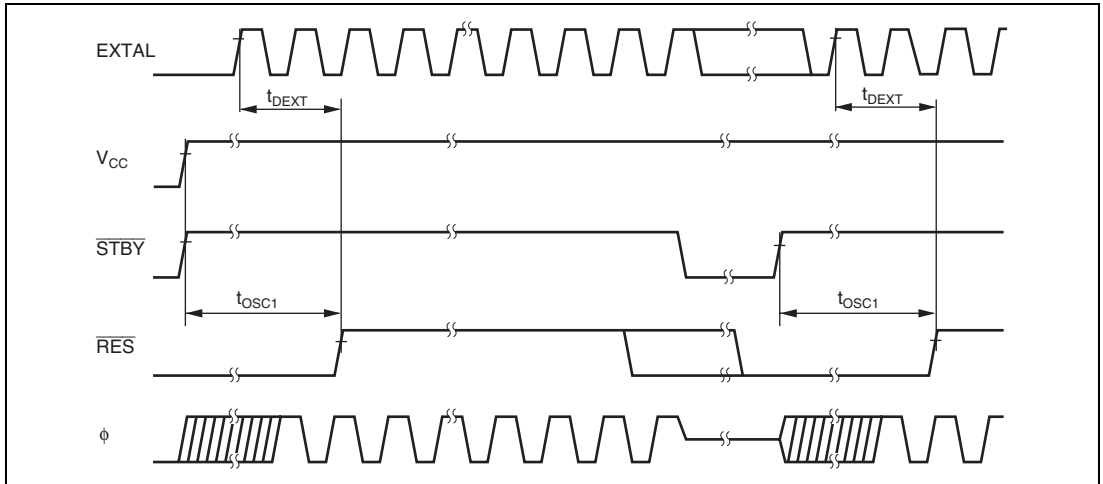


Figure 27.4 Oscillation Stabilization Timing

27.4.2 Control Signal Timing

Table 27.5 lists the control signal timing.

Table 27.5 Control Signal Timing

Condition: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|--|-------------|------|------|-----------|-----------------|
| \overline{RES} setup time | t_{RESS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 27.5 |
| \overline{RES} pulse width | t_{RESW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| \overline{MRES} setup time | t_{MRESS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| \overline{MRES} pulse width | t_{MRESW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| NMI setup time | t_{NMIS} | 250 | — | ns | Figure 27.6 |
| NMI hold time | t_{NMIH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| NMI pulse width (exiting software standby mode) | t_{NMIW} | 200 | — | ns | |
| \overline{IRQ} setup time | t_{IRQS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| \overline{IRQ} hold time | t_{IRQH} | 10 | — | ns | |
| \overline{IRQ} pulse width (exiting software standby mode) | t_{IRQW} | 200 | — | ns | |

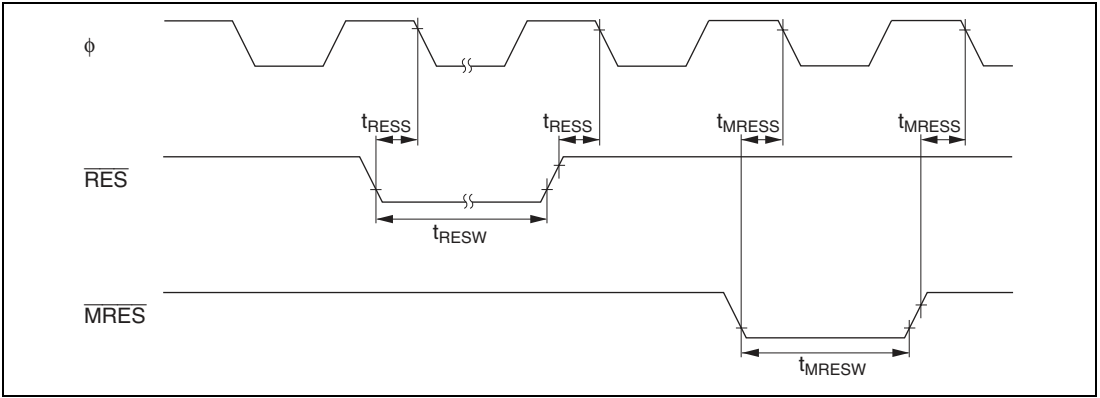


Figure 27.5 Reset Input Timing

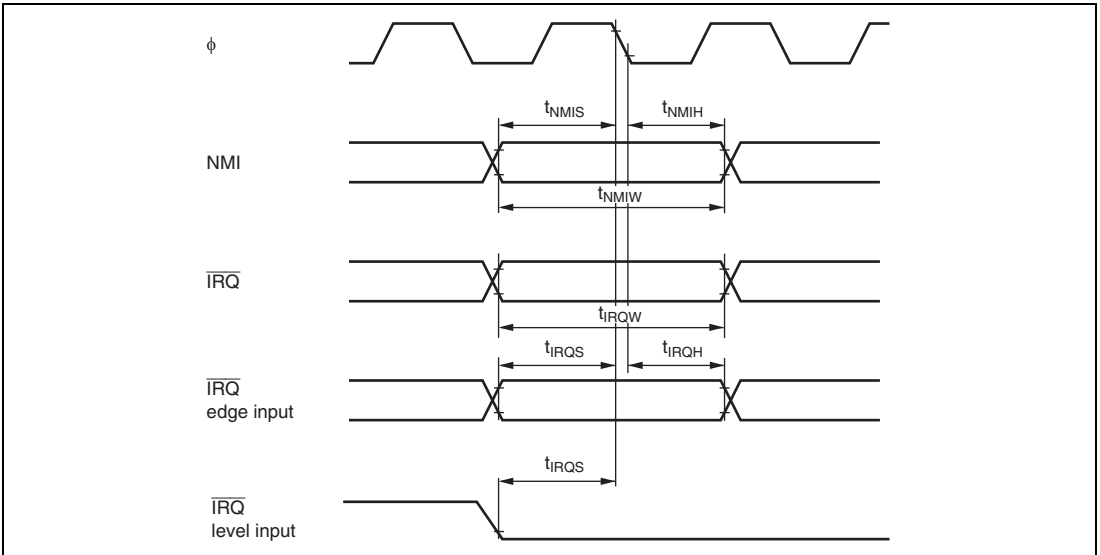


Figure 27.6 Interrupt Input Timing

27.4.3 Bus Timing

Table 27.6 shows, Bus Timing.

Table 27.6 Bus Timing

Condition: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|-------------------------------|------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|------|---------------------------|
| Address delay time | t_{AD} | — | 30 | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.8, 27.10 |
| Address setup time | t_{AS} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 20$ | — | ns | |
| Address hold time | t_{AH} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 8$ | — | ns | |
| \overline{CS} delay time | t_{CSD} | — | 30 | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.8 |
| \overline{AS} delay time | t_{ASD} | — | 25 | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.8, 27.10 |
| \overline{RD} delay time 1 | t_{RSD1} | — | 25 | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.8 |
| \overline{RD} delay time 2 | t_{RSD2} | — | 25 | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.8, 27.10 |
| Read data setup time | t_{RDS} | 20 | — | ns | |
| Read data hold time | t_{RDH} | 0 | — | ns | |
| Read data access time 2 | t_{ACC2} | — | $1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 35$ | ns | Figure 27.7 |
| Read data access time 3 | t_{ACC3} | — | $2.0 \times t_{cyc} - 40$ | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.10 |
| Read data access time 4 | t_{ACC4} | — | $2.5 \times t_{cyc} - 35$ | ns | Figure 27.8 |
| Read data access time 5 | t_{ACC5} | — | $3.0 \times t_{cyc} - 40$ | ns | |
| \overline{WR} delay time 1 | t_{WRD1} | — | 20 | ns | |
| \overline{WR} delay time 2 | t_{WRD2} | — | 25 | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.8 |
| \overline{WR} pulse width 1 | t_{WSW1} | $1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 20$ | — | ns | Figure 27.7 |
| \overline{WR} pulse width 2 | t_{WSW2} | $1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 20$ | — | ns | Figure 27.8 |
| Write data delay time | t_{WDD} | — | 30 | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.8 |
| Write data setup time | t_{WDS} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 20$ | — | ns | Figure 27.8 |
| Write data hold time | t_{WDH} | $0.5 \times t_{cyc} - 10$ | — | ns | Figures 27.7, 27.8 |
| \overline{WAIT} setup time | t_{WTS} | 25 | — | ns | Figure 27.9 |
| \overline{WAIT} hold time | t_{WTH} | 5 | — | ns | |
| \overline{BREQ} setup time | t_{BRQS} | 25 | — | ns | Figure 27.11 |
| \overline{BACK} delay time | t_{BACD} | — | 40 | ns | |
| Bus-floating time | t_{BZD} | — | 50 | ns | |

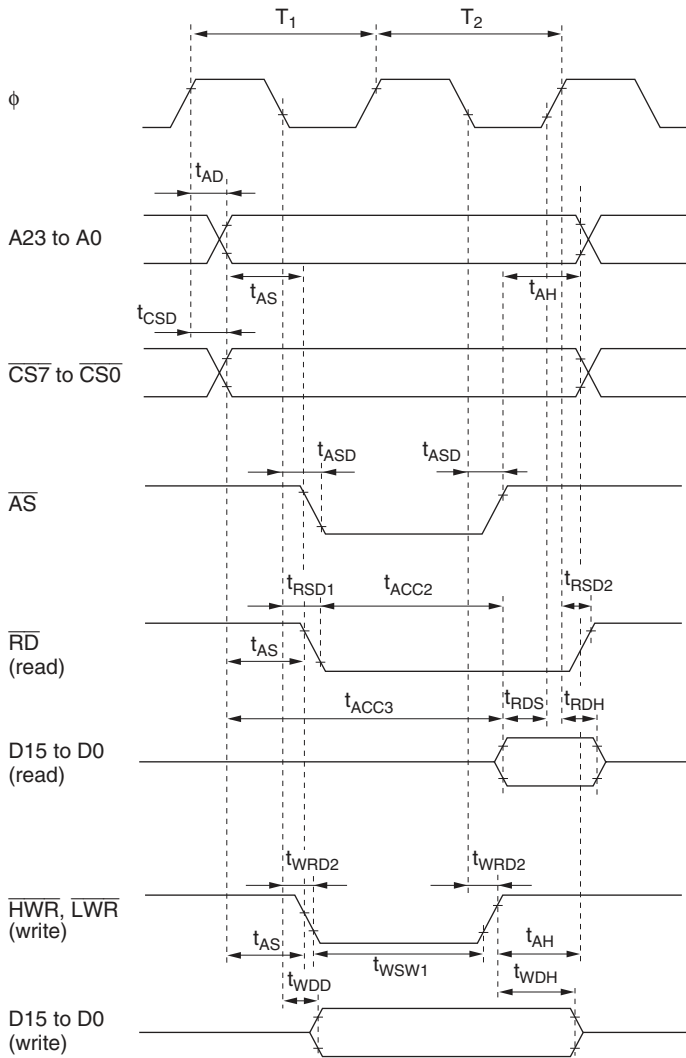


Figure 27.7 Basic Bus Timing (Two-State Access)

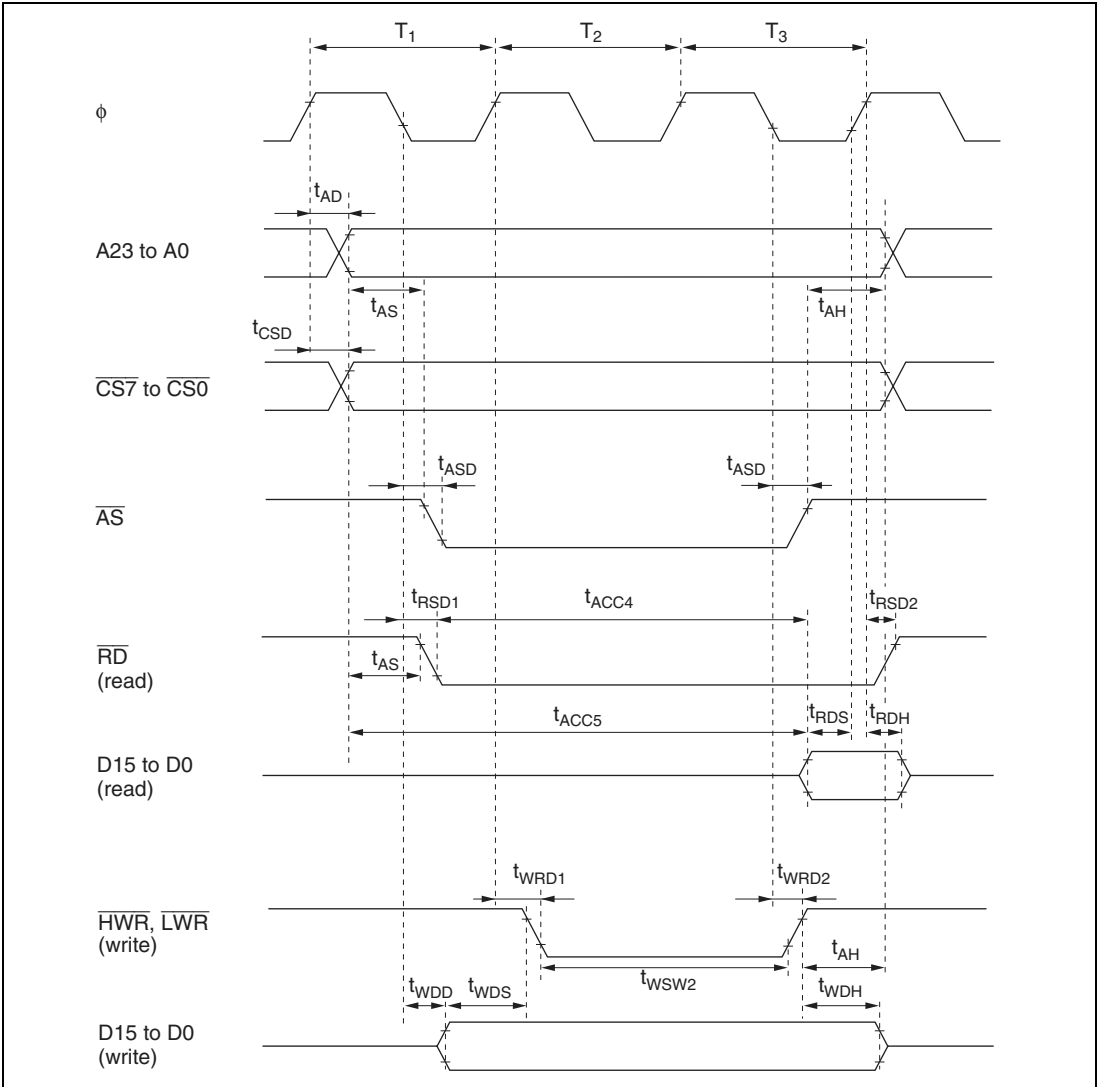


Figure 27.8 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access)

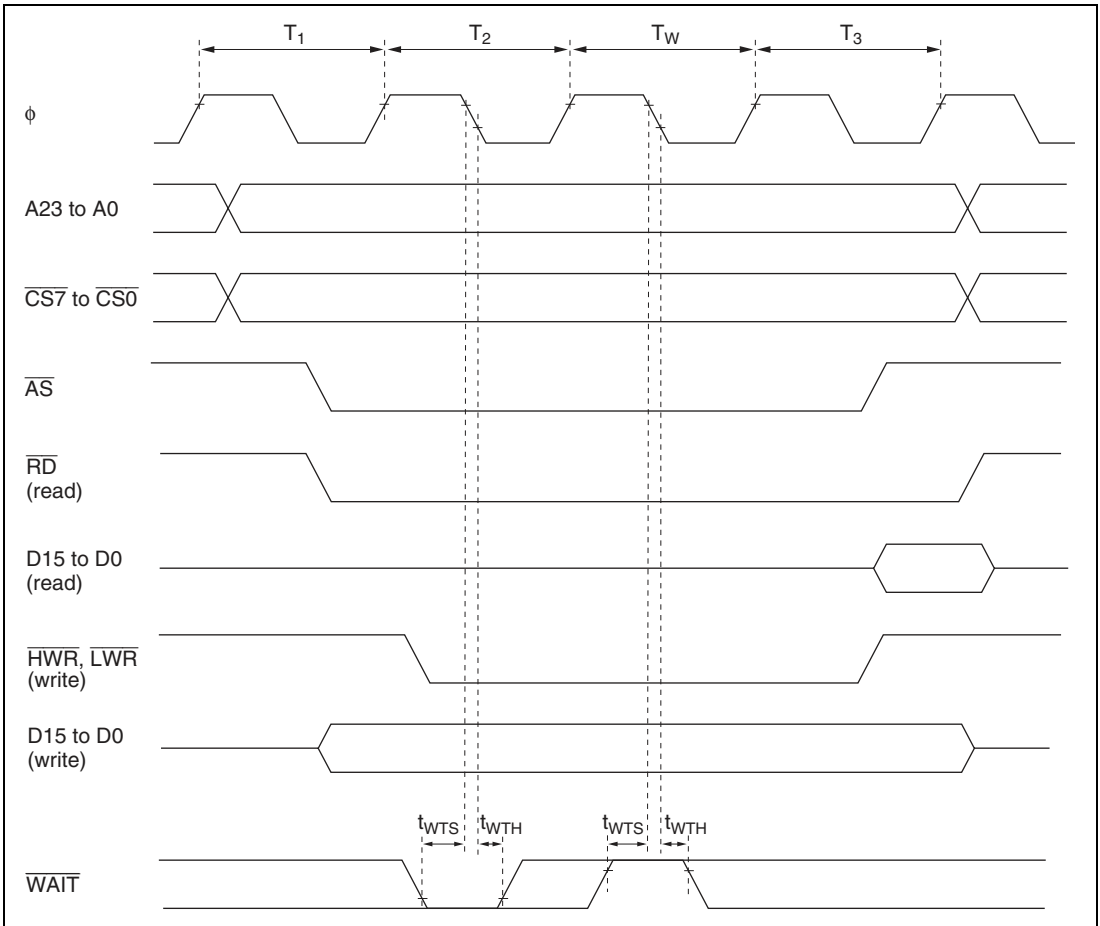


Figure 27.9 Basic Bus Timing (Three-State Access with One Wait State)

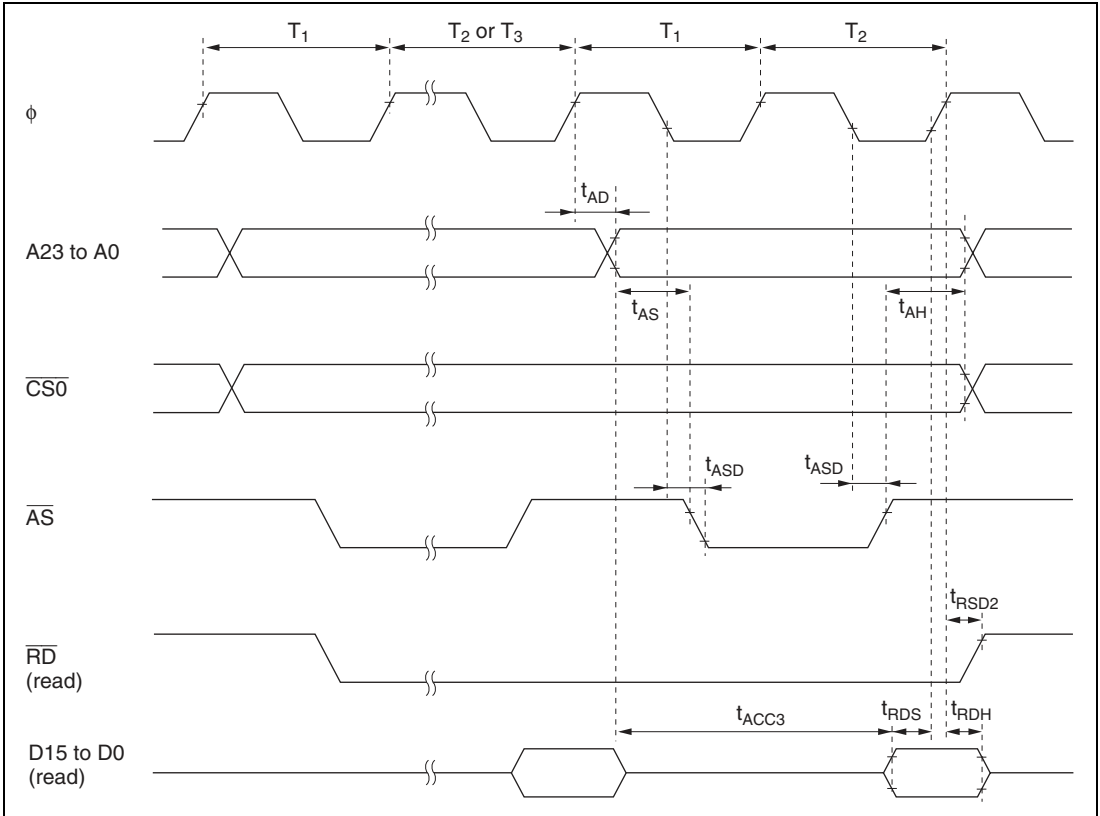


Figure 27.10 Burst ROM Access Timing (Two-State Access)

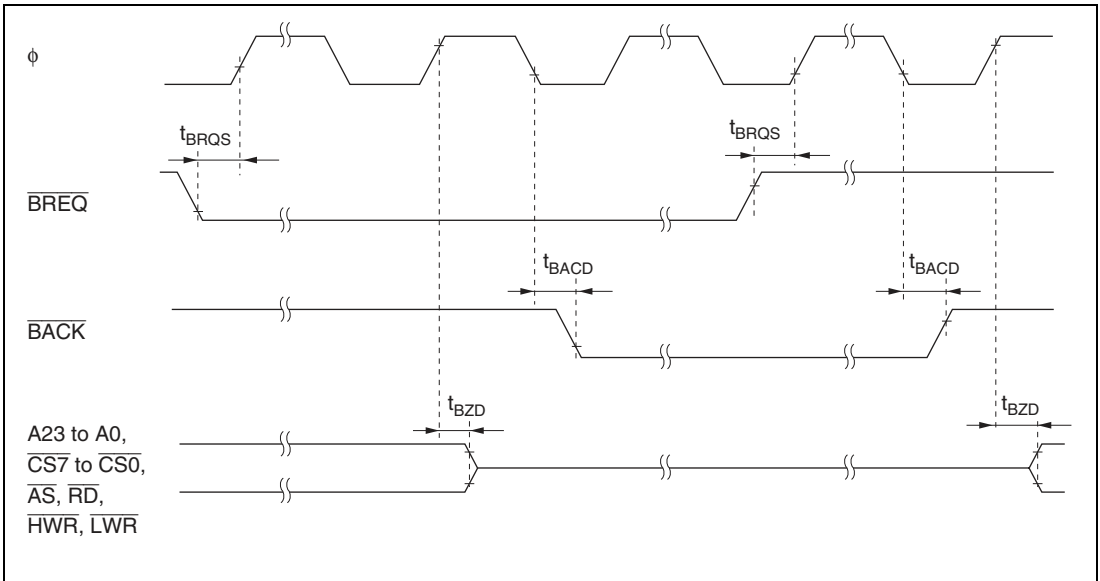


Figure 27.11 External Bus Release Timing

27.4.4 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Table 27.7 lists the timing of on-chip supporting modules.

Table 27.7 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Condition: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|---|------------|------|------------|-----------------|
| I/O port | Output data delay time | t_{PWD} | — | 40 | ns | Figure 27.12 |
| | Input data setup time | t_{PRS} | 30 | — | | |
| | Input data hold time | t_{PRH} | 30 | — | | |
| TPU | Timer output delay time | t_{TOCD} | — | 40 | ns | Figure 27.13 |
| | Timer input setup time | t_{TICS} | 30 | — | | |
| | Timer clock input setup time | t_{TCKS} | 30 | — | ns | Figure 27.14 |
| | Timer clock pulse width | Single edge t_{TCKWH} Both edges t_{TCKWL} | 1.5 2.5 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| TMR | Timer output delay time | t_{TMOD} | — | 41 | ns | Figure 27.15 |
| | Timer reset input setup time | t_{TMRS} | 29 | — | ns | Figure 27.17 |
| | Timer clock input setup time | t_{TMCS} | 29 | — | ns | Figure 27.16 |
| | Timer clock pulse width | Single edge t_{TMCWH} Both edges t_{TMCWL} | 1.5 2.5 | — | t_{cyc} | |
| | Input clock cycle | Asynchronous t_{Scyc} Synchronous | 4 6 | — | t_{cyc} | Figure 27.18 |
| SCI | Input clock pulse width | t_{SCKW} | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{Scyc} | |
| | Input clock rise time | t_{SCKr} | — | 1.5 | t_{cyc} | |
| | Input clock fall time | t_{SCKf} | — | 1.5 | | |
| | Transmit data delay time | t_{TXD} | — | 40 | ns | Figure 27.19 |
| | Receive data setup time (synchronous) | t_{RXS} | 40 | — | | |
| | Receive data hold time (synchronous) | t_{RXH} | 40 | — | | |
| A/D converter | Trigger input setup time | t_{TRGS} | 30 | — | ns | Figure 27.20 |

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Conditions | |
|----------|-------------------------------|------------|------|------|-----------------|--------------|
| Boundary | TCK cycle time | t_{cyc} | 41.6 | — | ns | Figure 27.21 |
| scan | TCK high level pulse width | t_{TCKH} | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{cyc} | |
| | TCK low level pulse width | t_{TCKL} | 0.4 | 0.6 | t_{cyc} | |
| | \overline{TRST} pulse width | t_{TRSW} | 20 | — | t_{cyc} | Figure 27.22 |
| | \overline{TRST} setup time | t_{TRSS} | 250 | — | ns | |
| | TDI setup time | t_{TDIS} | 20 | — | ns | Figure 27.23 |
| | TDI hold time | t_{TDIH} | 10 | — | | |
| | TMS setup time | t_{TMSS} | 20 | — | | |
| | TMS hold time | t_{TMSH} | 10 | — | | |
| | TDO delay time | t_{TDOD} | — | 35 | | |

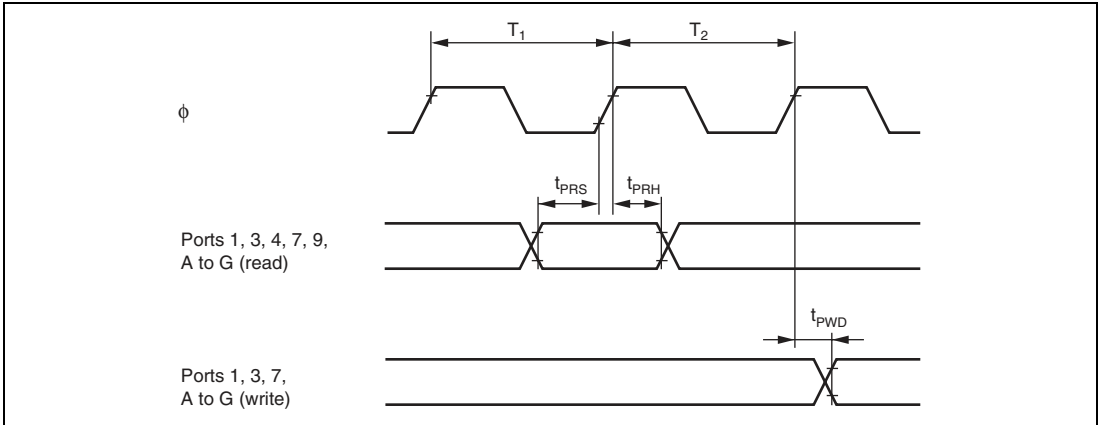
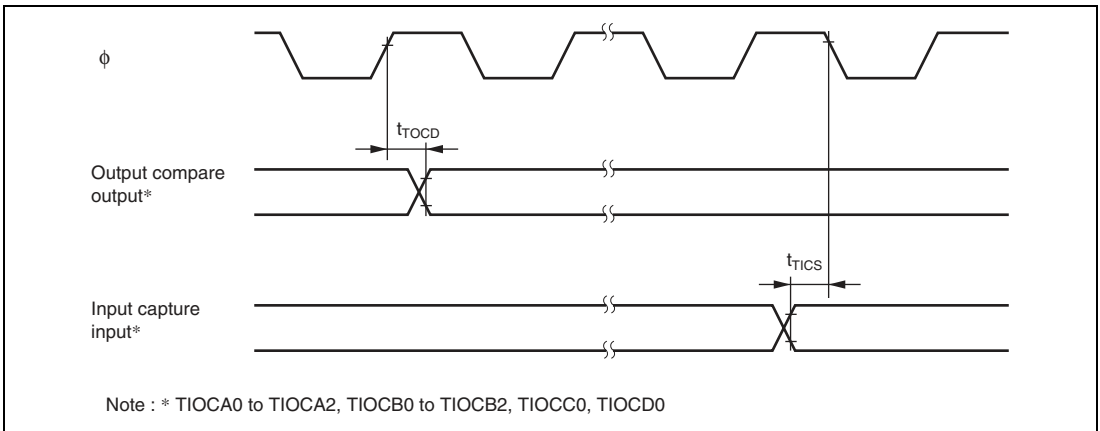


Figure 27.12 I/O Port Input/Output Timing



Note : * TIOCA0 to TIOCA2, TIOCB0 to TIOCB2, TIOCC0, TIOCD0

Figure 27.13 TPU Input/Output Timing

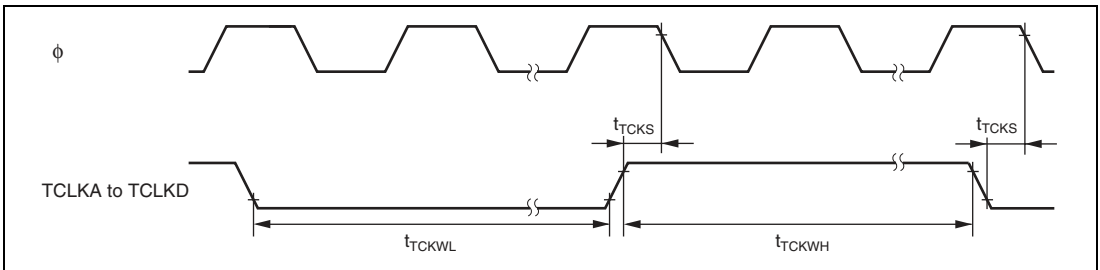


Figure 27.14 TPU Clock Input Timing

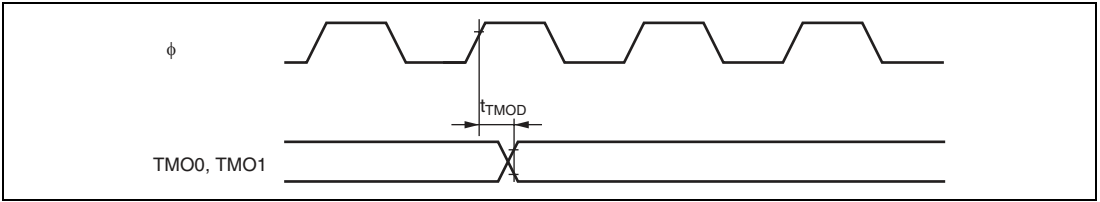


Figure 27.15 8-bit Timer Output Timing

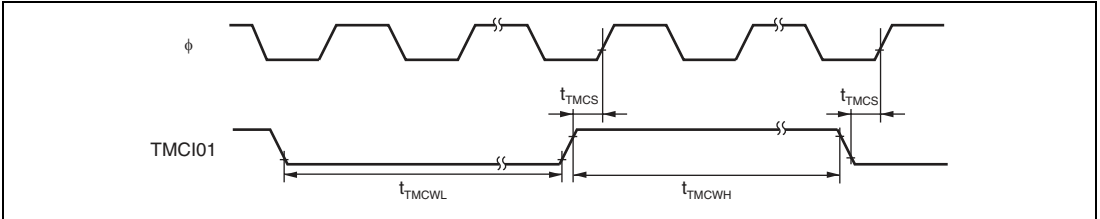


Figure 27.16 8-bit Timer Clock Input Timing

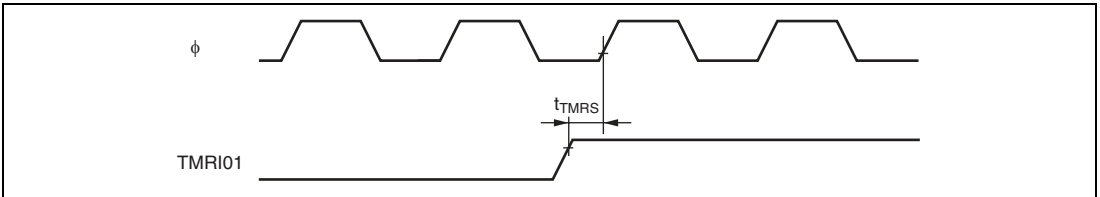


Figure 27.17 8-bit Timer Reset Input Timing

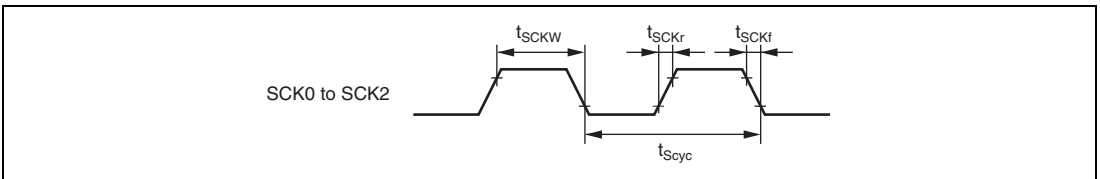


Figure 27.18 SCK Clock Input Timing

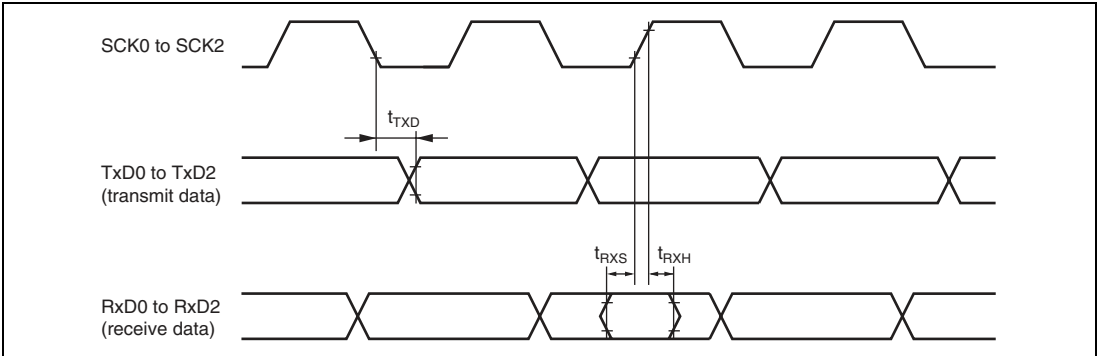


Figure 27.19 SCI Input/Output Timing (Clock Synchronous Mode)

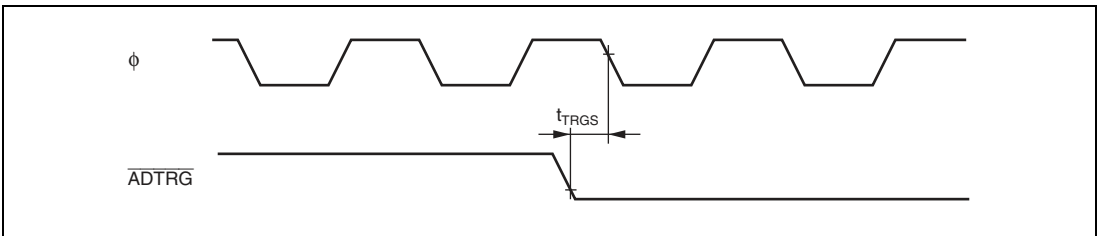


Figure 27.20 A/D Converter External Trigger Input Timing

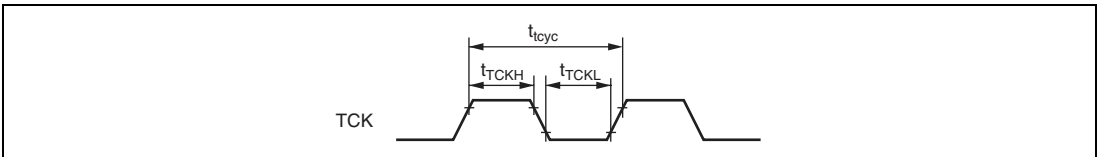


Figure 27.21 Boundary Scan TCK Input Timing

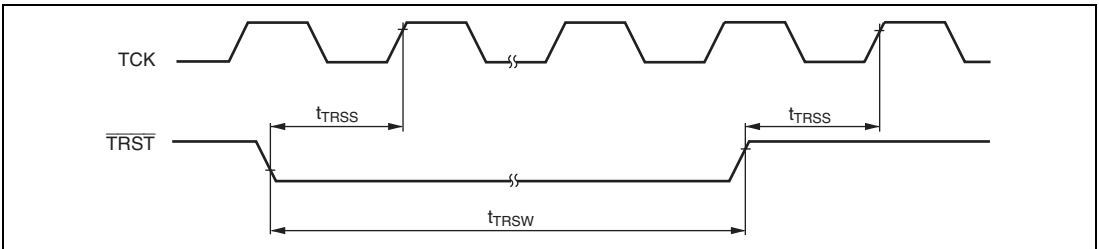


Figure 27.22 Boundary Scan $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ Input Timing (At Reset Hold)

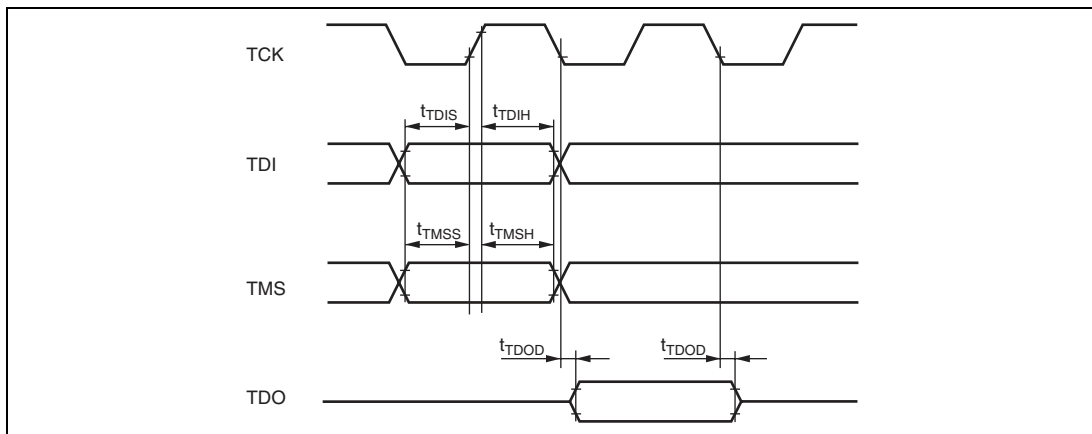


Figure 27.23 Boundary Scan Data Transmission Timing

27.5 USB Characteristics

Table 27.8 lists the USB characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when the on-chip USB transceiver is used.

Table 27.8 USB Characteristics (USD+ and USD- pins) when On-Chip USB Transceiver Is Used

Condition: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | | Symbol | Min. | Max. | Unit | Test Condition |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------|------|--------|----------|---|
| Input characteristics | Input high level voltage | V_{IH} | 2.0 | — | V | Figures 27.24, 27.25 |
| | Input low level voltage | V_{IL} | — | 0.8 | V | |
| | Differential input sense | V_{DI} | 0.2 | — | V | (D+)-(D-) DrV _{CC} = 3.3 to 3.6 V |
| | Differential common mode range | V_{CM} | 0.8 | 2.5 | V | |
| Output characteristics | Output high level voltage | V_{OH} | 2.8 | — | V | $I_{OH} = -200\ \mu\text{A}$ |
| | Output low level voltage | V_{OL} | — | 0.3 | V | $I_{OL} = 2\ \text{mA}$ |
| | Crossover voltage | V_{CRS} | 1.3 | 2.0 | V | |
| | Rise time | t_R | 4 | 20 | ns | |
| | Fall time | t_F | 4 | 20 | ns | |
| | Rise time/fall time matching | t_{RFM} | 90 | 111.11 | % | (T_R/T_F) |
| | Output resistance | Z_{DRV} | 28 | 44 | Ω | Including $R_S = 24\ \Omega$ |

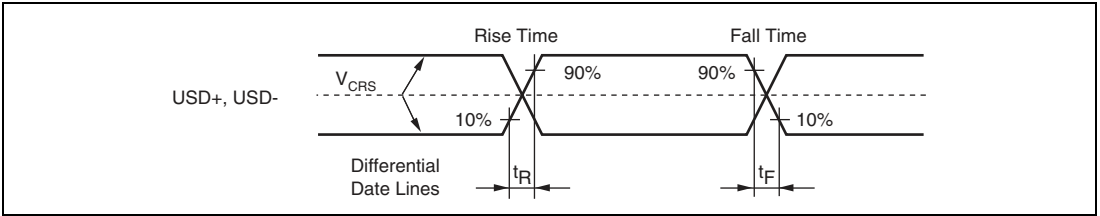


Figure 27.24 Data Signal Timing

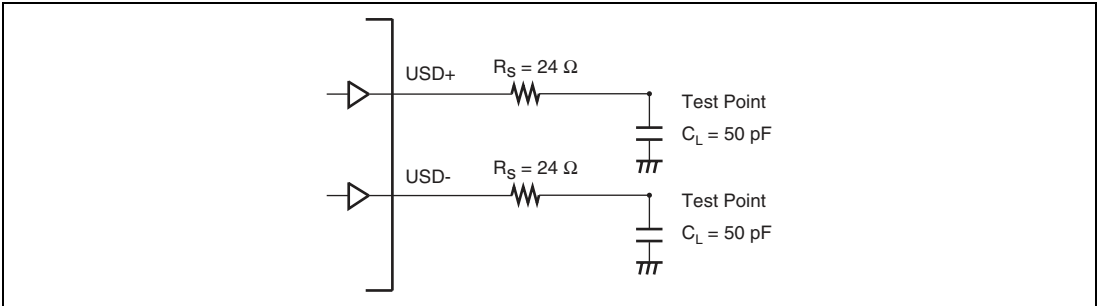


Figure 27.25 Test Load Circuit

27.6 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Table 27.9 lists the A/D conversion characteristics.

Table 27.9 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Condition: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}^*$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit |
|-------------------------------------|------|------|-----------|---------------|
| Resolution | 10 | 10 | 10 | bits |
| Conversion time | 8.1 | — | — | μs |
| Analog input capacitance | — | — | 20 | pF |
| Permissible signal-source impedance | — | — | 5 | k Ω |
| Nonlinearity error | — | — | ± 6.0 | LSB |
| Offset error | — | — | ± 4.0 | LSB |
| Full-scale error | — | — | ± 4.0 | LSB |
| Quantization | — | — | ± 0.5 | LSB |
| Absolute accuracy | — | — | ± 8.0 | LSB |

Note: * AN0 and AN1 can be used only when $V_{CC} = AV_{CC}$.

27.7 D/A Conversion Characteristics

Table 27.10 lists the D/A conversion characteristics.

Table 27.10 D/A Conversion Characteristics

Condition: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$, $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$ (regular specifications), $T_a = -40^\circ\text{C to }+85^\circ\text{C}$ (wide-range specifications)

| Item | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | Test Condition |
|-------------------|------|-----------|-----------|---------------|---------------------------------|
| Resolution | 8 | 8 | 8 | bits | |
| Conversion time | — | — | 10 | μs | Load capacitance = 20 pF |
| Absolute accuracy | — | ± 2.0 | ± 3.0 | LSB | Load capacitance = 2 M Ω |
| | — | — | ± 2.0 | LSB | Load capacitance = 4 M Ω |

27.8 Flash Memory Characteristics

Table 27.11 Flash Memory Characteristics

Condition: $V_{CC} = PLLV_{CC} = DrV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $AV_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V to }3.6\text{ V}$, $V_{ref} = 3.0\text{ V to }AV_{CC}$,
 $V_{SS} = PLLV_{SS} = DrV_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$, $\phi = 16\text{ MHz to }24\text{ MHz}$, $T_a = -20^\circ\text{C to }+75^\circ\text{C}$
 (Programming/erasing operating temperature range)

| Item | Symbol | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Unit | |
|--|---|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Programming time* ¹ * ² * ⁴ | t_P | — | 10 | 200 | ms/128 bytes | |
| Erase time* ¹ * ³ * ⁵ | t_E | — | 50 | 1000 | ms/block | |
| Reprogramming count | N_{WEC} | 100* ⁶ | 10,000* ⁷ | — | Times | |
| Data retention time* ⁸ | t_{DRP} | 10 | — | — | Years | |
| Programming Wait time after PSU1 bit setting* ¹ | y | 50 | 50 | — | μs | |
| Wait time after P1 bit setting* ¹ * ⁴ | $z0$ | 28 | 30 | 32 | μs | |
| | $z1$ | 198 | 200 | 202 | μs | |
| | $z2$ | 8 | 10 | 12 | μs | |
| Wait time after P1 bit clear* ¹ | α | 5 | 5 | — | μs | |
| Wait time after PSU1 bit clear* ¹ | β | 5 | 5 | — | μs | |
| Wait time after PV1 bit setting* ¹ | γ | 4 | 4 | — | μs | |
| Wait time after H'FF dummy write* ¹ | ε | 2 | 2 | — | μs | |
| Wait time after PV1 bit clear* ¹ | η | 2 | 2 | — | μs | |
| Maximum programming count* ¹ * ⁴ | $N1$ | — | — | 6* ⁴ | Times | |
| | $N2$ | — | — | 994* ⁴ | Times | |
| Common | Wait time after SWE1 bit setting* ¹ | x | 1 | 1 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after SWE1 bit clear* ¹ | θ | 100 | 100 | — | μs |
| Erase | Wait time after ESU1 bit setting* ¹ | y | 100 | 100 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after E1 bit setting* ¹ * ⁵ | z | 10 | 10 | 100 | ms |
| | Wait time after E1 bit clear* ¹ | α | 10 | 10 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after ESU1 bit clear* ¹ | β | 10 | 10 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after EV1 bit setting* ¹ | γ | 20 | 20 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after H'FF dummy write* ¹ | ε | 2 | 2 | — | μs |
| | Wait time after EV1 bit clear* ¹ | η | 4 | 4 | — | μs |
| Maximum erase count* ¹ * ⁵ | N | — | — | 100 | Times | |

Notes: 1. Make each time setting in accordance with the program/program-verify flowchart or erase/erase-verify flowchart.

2. Programming time per 128 bytes (Shows the total period for which the P-bit in the flash memory control register (FLMCR1) is set. It does not include the programming verification time).
3. Block erase time (Shows the total period for which the E1-bit FLMCR1 is set. It does not include the erase verification time).
4. Maximum programming time value
$$t_p (\text{max.}) = \text{Wait time after P1 bit set (z)} \times \text{maximum programming count (N1 + N2)}$$
$$= (Z0 + Z2) \times 6 + Z1 \times 994$$
5. Maximum erasure time value
$$t_E (\text{max.}) = \text{Wait time after E1 bit set (z)} \times \text{maximum erasure count (N)2}$$
6. Minimum number of times for which all characteristics are guaranteed after rewriting (Guarantee range is 1 to minimum value).
7. Reference value for 25°C (as a guideline, rewriting should normally function up to this value).
8. Data retention characteristic when rewriting is performed within the specification range, including the minimum value.

27.9 Usage Note

General Notice during Design for Printed Circuit Board: Measures for radiation noise caused by the transient current in this LSI should be taken into consideration. The examples of the measures are shown below.

- To use a multilayer printed circuit board which includes layers for Vcc and GND.
- To mount by-pass capacitors (approximately 0.1 μ F) between the Vcc and GND (Vss) pins, and the PLLV_{cc} and PLLGND pins, of this LSI.

Appendix

A. I/O Port States in Each Processing State

| Port Name Pin Name | MCU Operating Mode | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | Hardware Standby Mode | Software Standby Mode | Bus Right Release State | Program Execution State or Sleep Mode |
|--|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| P17 to P14 | 4 to 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| P13/A23 | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| P12/A22 | | | | | | | |
| P11/A21 | | | | | | | |
| Address output selected by AEn bit | 4 to 6 | T | keep | T | [OPE=0] T [OPE=1] keep | T | Address output |
| Port selection | 4 to 6 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| P10/A20 | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| Address output selected by AEn bit | 4 and 5 6 | L T | keep | T | [OPE=0] T [OPE=1] keep | T | Address output |
| Port selection | 4 to 6 | T* | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| Port 3 | 4 to 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| Port 4 | 4 to 7 | T | T | T | T | T | Input port |
| P74 | 4 to 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| P73/ $\overline{CS7}$ | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| P72/ $\overline{CS6}$ | 4 to 6 | T | keep | T | [DDR•OPE=0] T | T | [DDR=0] Input port |
| P71/ $\overline{CS5}$ | | | | | [DDR•OPE=1] H | | [DDR=1] $\overline{CS7}$ to $\overline{CS4}$ |
| P70/ $\overline{CS4}$ | | | | | | | |
| Port 9 | 4 to 7 | T | T | T | [DAOEn=1] keep [DAOEn=0] T | keep | Input port |
| Port A | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| Address output selected by AEn bit | 4 and 5 6 | L T | keep | T | [OPE=0] T [OPE=1] keep | T | Address output |
| Port selection | 4 to 6 | T* | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |

| Port Name Pin Name | MCU Operating Mode | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | Hardware Standby Mode | Software Standby Mode | Bus Right Release State | Program Execution State or Sleep Mode | |
|--|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| Port B | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port | |
| Address output selected by AEn bit | 4 and 5 | L | keep | T | [OPE=0] T | T | Address output | |
| | 6 | T | | | [OPE=1] keep | | | |
| Port selection | 4 to 6 | T* | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port | |
| Port C | 4 and 5 | L | keep | T | [OPE=0] T | T | Address output | |
| | | | | | [OPE=1] keep | | | |
| | 6 | T | keep | T | [DDR•OPE=0] T | T | | [DDR=0] Input port |
| | | | | | [DDR•OPE=1] keep | | [DDR=1] Address output | |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port | |
| Port D | 4 to 6 | T | T | T | T | T | Data bus | |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port | |
| Port E | 8-bit bus | 4 to 6 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| | 16-bit bus | 4 to 6 | T | T | T | T | T | Data bus |
| | | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| PF7/ ϕ | 4 to 6 | Clock output | [DDR=0] | T | [DDR=0] | [DDR=0] | [DDR=0] | |
| | | | Input port | | Input port | Input port | Input port | |
| | | | Clock output | [DDR=1] | | [DDR=1] | [DDR=1] | [DDR=1] |
| | | | Clock output | | H | Clock output | Clock output | |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | [DDR=0] Input port | [DDR=0] Input port | [DDR=0] Input port | |
| | | | | | [DDR=1] H | [DDR=1] Clock output | [DDR=1] Clock output | |
| PF6/AS | 4 to 6 | H | H | T | [OPE=0] | T | AS, RD, HWR | |
| PF5/RD | | | | | T | | | |
| PF4/HWR | | | | | [OPE=1] H | | | |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port | |

| Port Name Pin Name | MCU Operating Mode | Power-on Reset | Manual Reset | Hardware Standby Mode | Software Standby Mode | Bus Right Release State | Program Execution State or Sleep Mode |
|--|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| PF3/ $\overline{\text{LWR}}$ | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| 8-bit bus | 4 to 6 | (Mode 4) | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| 16-bit bus | 4 to 6 | H (Modes 5 ,6) T | H | T | [OPE=0] T [OPE=1] H | T | $\overline{\text{LWR}}$ |
| PF2/ $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ | 4 to 6 | T | keep | T | [WAITE=0] keep [WAITE=1] T | [WAITE=0] keep [WAITE=1] T | [WAITE=0] I/O port [WAITE=1] WAIT |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| PF1/ $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ | 4 to 6 | T | keep | T | [BRLE=0] keep [BRLE=1] H | L | [BRLE=0] I/O port [BRLE=1] BACK |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| PF0/ $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ | 4 to 6 | T | keep | T | [BRLE=0] keep [BRLE=1] T | T | [BRLE=0] I/O port [BRLE=1] BREQ |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| PG4/ $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ | 4 and 5 | H | keep | T | [DDR•OPE=0] T [DDR•OPE=1] H | T | [DDR=0] I/O port [DDR=1] $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ (When sleep mode)H |
| | 6 | T | | | | | |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| PG3/ $\overline{\text{CS1}}$ PG2/ $\overline{\text{CS2}}$ PG1/ $\overline{\text{CS3}}$ | 4 to 6 | T | keep | T | [DDR•OPE=0] T [DDR•OPE=1] H | T | [DDR=0] I/O port [DDR=1] $\overline{\text{CS1}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$ |
| | 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |
| PG0 | 4 to 7 | T | keep | T | keep | keep | I/O port |

Legend:

H: High level

L: Low level

T: High impedance

keep: Input port level is high impedance, and output port level is retained.

DDR: Data direction register

OPE: Output port enable

WAITE: Wait port enable

BRLE: Bus release enable

Note: * L (address input) in mode 4 or 5

B. Product Model Lineup

| Product Class | Part No. | Marking | Package (code) | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| H8S/2215 Flash memory Version | HD64F2215 | HD64F2215TE | 120 pin TQFP (TFP-120, TFP-120V) | |
| | | HD64F2215BR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112, BP-112V) | |
| | HD64F2215U | HD64F2215UTE | 120 pin TQFP (TEP-120, TFP-120V) | |
| | | HD64F2215UBR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112, BP-112V) | |
| | Masked ROM Version | HD6432215B | HD6432215B(***)TE | 120 pin TQFP (TFP-120, TFP-120V) |
| | | | HD6432215B(***)BR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112, BP-112V) |
| | | HD6432215C | HD6432215C(***)TE | 120 pin TQFP (TFP-120, TFP-120V) |
| | | | HD6432215C(***)BR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112, BP-112V) |
| H8S/2215R Flash memory Version | HD64F2215R | HD64F2215RTE | 120 pin TQFP (TFP-120, TFP-120V) | |
| | | HD64F2215RBR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112, BP-112V) | |
| | HD64F2215RU | HD64F2215RUTE | 120 pin TQFP (TEP-120, TFP-120V) | |
| | | HD64F2215RUBR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112, BP-112V) | |
| H8S/2215T Flash memory Version | HD64F2215T | HD64F2215TTE | 120 pin TQFP (TFP-120, TFP-120V) | |
| | | HD64F2215TBR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112, BP-112V) | |
| | HD64F2215TU | HD64F2215TUTE | 120 pin TQFP (TEP-120, TFP-120V) | |
| | | HD64F2215TUBR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112, BP-112V) | |
| H8S/2215C Flash memory Version | HD64F2215CU | HD64F2215CUTE | 120 pin TQFP (TFP-120V) | |
| | | HD64F2215CUBR | 112 pin P-LFBGA (BP-112V) | |

Legend: ***: ROM code

C. Package Dimensions

The package dimension that is shown in the Renesas Semiconductor Package Data Book has Priority.

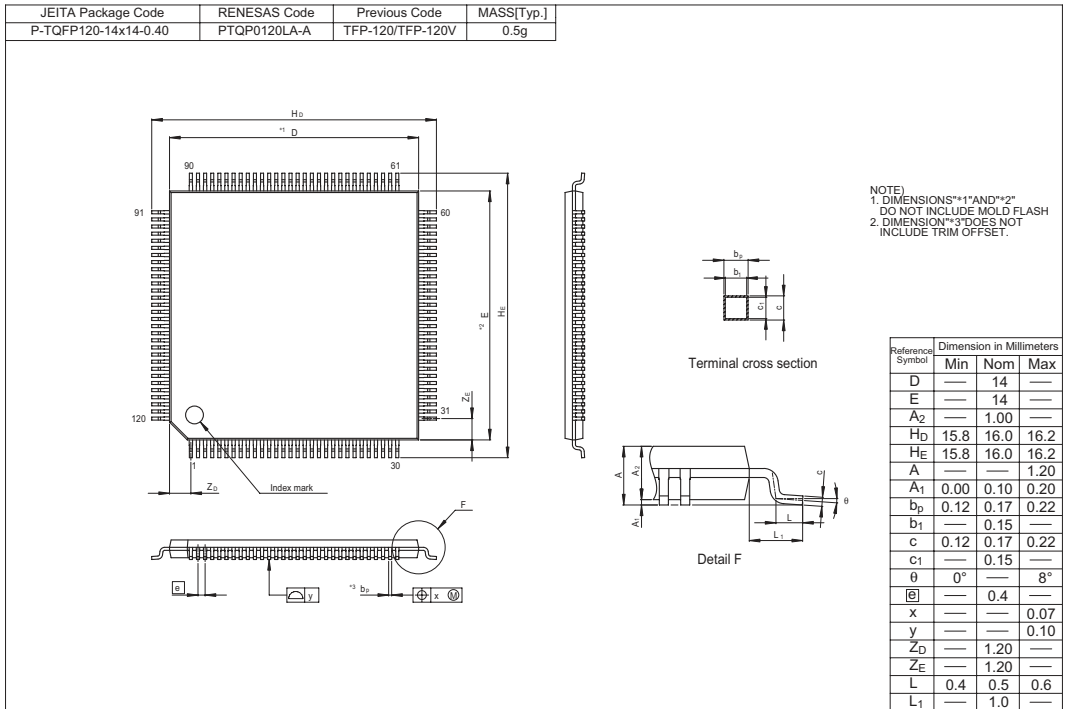


Figure C.1 TFP-120, TFP-120V Package Dimension

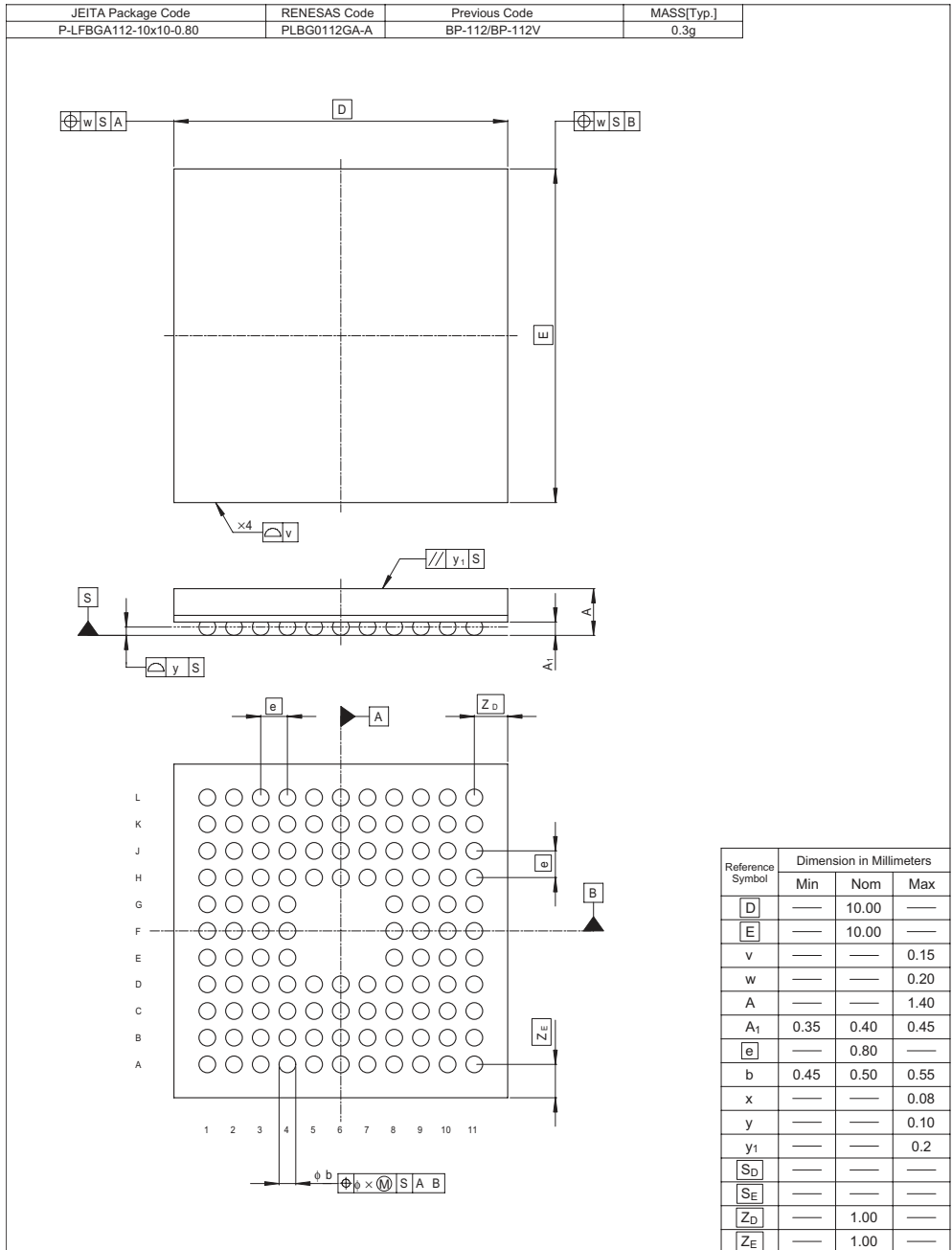


Figure C.2 BP-112, BP-112V Package Dimension

Index

- 16-Bit Timer Pulse Unit..... 283
 - Buffer Operation..... 320
 - Free-running count operation..... 314
 - Input Capture Function..... 317
 - periodic count operation..... 314
 - Phase Counting Mode..... 328
 - PWM Modes..... 324
 - Synchronous Operation..... 319
 - toggle output..... 316
 - Waveform Output by Compare
 - Match..... 315
- 8-Bit Timers..... 349
 - 16-Bit Counter Mode..... 361
 - Cascaded Connection..... 361
 - Compare Match Count Mode..... 361
 - Pulse Output..... 356
 - TCNT Incrementation Timing..... 357
 - Toggle output..... 366
- A/D Converter..... 601
 - A/D Conversion Time..... 610
 - A/D Converter Activation..... 334
 - External Trigger..... 612
 - Scan Mode..... 609
 - Single Mode..... 608
- Address Space..... 30
- Addressing Mode..... 50
 - Absolute Address..... 51
 - Immediate..... 52
 - Memory Indirect..... 53
 - Program-Counter Relative..... 52
 - Register Direct..... 51
 - Register Indirect..... 51
 - Register Indirect with Displacement..... 51
 - Register Indirect with Post-Increment.. 51
 - Register indirect with pre-decrement.... 51
- Asynchronous Mode..... 423
- Bcc..... 39, 47
- Bit rate..... 415
- Boundary Scan..... 75, 471
- Break..... 464
- Bus Arbitration..... 147
- bus cycle..... 127
- Clock Pulse Generator..... 667
- Condition Field..... 49
- Condition-Code Register..... 34
- CPU Operating Modes..... 26
 - Advanced Mode..... 28
 - Normal Mode..... 26
- Data Direction Register..... 254
- Data Register..... 254
- Data Transfer Controller..... 205
 - Activation by Software..... 225
 - Block Transfer Mode..... 220
 - Chain Transfer..... 221
 - DTC Vector Table..... 213
 - Normal Mode..... 218, 226
 - Register Information..... 213
 - Repeat Mode..... 219
 - Software Activation..... 226
 - vector number for DTC software
 - activation..... 211
- Effective Address..... 50, 54
- Effective Address Extension..... 49
- Exception Handling
 - Interrupts..... 79
 - Reset Exception Handling..... 76
 - Stack Status..... 81
 - Traces..... 79
 - Trap Instruction..... 80
- Extended Control Register..... 33
- Flash Memory..... 627
 - Boot Mode..... 641
 - Emulation..... 650
 - Erase/Erase-Verify..... 654
 - erasing units..... 633
 - Error Protection..... 656

| | | | |
|--|--------|--|---------------|
| Hardware Protection | 656 | Operation Field | 49 |
| Program/Program-Verify | 652 | Overrun error | 430 |
| Programmer Mode | 657 | Parity error | 430 |
| programming units | 633 | PLL Circuit | 677 |
| Programming/Erasing in User Program Mode | 649 | Port A Open Drain Control Register | 250 |
| Software Protection | 656 | port register | 229 |
| Framing error | 430 | Program Counter | 33 |
| General Registers | 32 | Register | |
| Instruction Set | 39 | ABWCR | 112, 712, 721 |
| Arithmetic Operations Instructions | 42, 43 | ADCR | 606, 717, 724 |
| Bit Manipulation Instructions | 45, 46 | ADCSR | 604, 717, 724 |
| Block Data Transfer Instruction | 49 | ADDR | 604, 717, 724 |
| Branch Instructions | 47 | ASTCR | 113, 712, 721 |
| Data Transfer Instructions | 41 | BCRH | 118, 712, 721 |
| Logic Operations Instructions | 44 | BCRL | 119, 712, 721 |
| Shift Instructions | 44 | BRR | 415, 716, 723 |
| System Control Instruction | 48 | BSCANR | 477 |
| internal bus masters | 109 | BYPASS | 476 |
| Interrupt | | CRA | 210, 710, 719 |
| ADI | 613 | CRB | 210, 710, 719 |
| CMIA | 362 | DACR | 621, 711, 719 |
| CMIB | 362 | DADR | 620, 711, 719 |
| NMI Interrupt | 92 | DAR | 209, 710, 719 |
| OVI | 362 | DMABCR | 162 |
| SWDTEND | 222 | DMACR | 155, 715, 723 |
| TCI2U | 333 | DMAWER | 170, 715, 723 |
| TCI2V | 333 | DTCER | 210, 711, 720 |
| WOVI | 376 | DTVECR | 211, 720 |
| Interrupt Control Mode | 96 | EBR1 | 637, 717, 724 |
| Interrupt Exception Handling Vector Table | 93 | EBR2 | 638, 717, 724 |
| Interrupt Mask Bit | 34 | ETCR | 154, 712, 721 |
| interrupt mask level | 33 | FLMCR1 | 635, 717, 724 |
| interrupt priority register | 83 | FLMCR2 | 636, 717, 724 |
| Mark State | 464 | IDCODE | 476 |
| Mask ROM | 665 | IER | 88, 711, 720 |
| memory cycle | 124 | INSTR | 474 |
| On-Board Programming | 641 | IOAR | 153, 712, 721 |
| Operating Mode Selection | 63 | IPR | 87, 712, 721 |
| | | ISCR | 89, 711, 720 |
| | | ISR | 91, 711, 720 |

| | | | |
|--------------|---------------|---|------------------------------|
| LPWRCR..... | 670, 711, 720 | PORTA | 249, 717, 724 |
| MAR | 153, 712, 721 | PORTB..... | 255, 717, 724 |
| MDCR | 64, 711, 719 | PORTC..... | 260, 717, 724 |
| MRA | 208, 710, 719 | PORTD | 265, 717, 724 |
| MRB | 209, 710, 719 | PORTE..... | 269, 717, 724 |
| MSTPCR | 686, 711, 719 | PORTF | 275, 717, 724 |
| MSTPCRB..... | 543 | PORTG | 279, 717, 724 |
| P1DDR..... | 233, 711, 720 | RAMER | 639, 712, 721 |
| P1DR | 234, 713, 722 | RDR | 387, 716, 723 |
| P3DDR..... | 238, 711, 720 | RSTCSR..... | 372, 716, 723 |
| P3DR | 239, 713, 722 | SAR..... | 209, 710, 719 |
| P3ODR..... | 240, 712, 720 | SBYCR | 684, 711, 719 |
| P7DDR..... | 244, 711, 720 | SCKCR | 668, 711, 719 |
| P7DR | 245, 713, 722 | SCMR | 402, 716, 723 |
| PADDR..... | 248, 711, 720 | SCR..... | 392, 716, 723 |
| PADR..... | 249, 713, 722 | SCRX..... | 640, 711, 719 |
| PAODR..... | 250, 712, 720 | SEMRA_0..... | 403, 411 |
| PAPCR..... | 250, 711, 720 | SEMRB_0..... | 413 |
| PBDDR..... | 254, 711, 720 | SMR | 388, 716, 723 |
| PBDR | 254, 713, 722 | SSR | 396, 716, 723 |
| PBPCR..... | 255, 712, 720 | SYSCR..... | 64, 711, 719 |
| PCDDR..... | 259, 711, 720 | TCNT .. 309, 351, 370, 714, 716, 722, 723 | |
| PCDR | 259, 713, 722 | TCORA..... | 352, 716, 723 |
| PCPCR..... | 260, 712, 720 | TCORB | 352, 716, 723 |
| PDDDR..... | 264, 711, 720 | TCR..... | 289, 353, 714, 716, 722, 723 |
| PDDR..... | 264, 713, 722 | TCSR | 354, 370, 716, 723 |
| PDPCR..... | 265, 712, 720 | TDR | 387, 716, 723 |
| PEDDR | 268, 711, 720 | TGR | 309, 714, 722 |
| PEDR | 269, 713, 722 | TIER..... | 304, 714, 722 |
| PEPCR..... | 270, 712, 720 | TIOR | 295, 714, 722 |
| PFCR | 120, 711, 720 | TMDR..... | 293, 714, 722 |
| PFDDR | 274, 711, 720 | TSR | 306, 714, 722 |
| PFDR | 275, 713, 722 | TSTR..... | 309, 712, 721 |
| PGDDR..... | 278, 711, 720 | TSYR | 310, 712, 721 |
| PGDR..... | 279, 713, 722 | UCTLR | 502, 709, 718 |
| PORT1 | 234, 717, 724 | UCVR | 537, 710, 719 |
| PORT3 | 239, 717, 724 | UDMAR..... | 506, 709, 718 |
| PORT4 | 243, 717, 724 | UDRR | 507, 709, 718 |
| PORT7..... | 245, 717, 724 | UDSR..... | 536, 710, 719 |
| PORT9..... | 247, 717, 724 | UEDR0i | 514, 709, 718 |

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|--|--------------------|
| UEDR0o | 514, 709, 718 | UTRG0 | 508, 700, 709, 718 |
| UEDR0s | 513, 709, 718 | UTRG1 | 509, 709, 718 |
| UEDR1i | 514, 709, 718 | UTSRH | 538, 710, 719 |
| UEDR2i | 515, 709, 718 | UTSRL | 538, 710, 719 |
| UEDR2o | 515, 709, 718 | UTSTRO | 539, 710, 719 |
| UEDR3i | 515, 709, 718 | UTSTR1 | 541, 710, 719 |
| UEDR3o | 516, 709, 718 | WCRH | 114, 712, 721 |
| UEDR4i | 516, 709, 718 | WCRL | 114, 712, 721 |
| UEDR4o | 516, 709, 718 | Register Field | 49 |
| UEDR5i | 517, 709, 718 | Reset | 75 |
| UEPIR | 495, 709, 718 | Serial Communication Interface | 381 |
| UESTL0 | 512, 709, 718 | stack pointer (SP) | 32 |
| UESTL1 | 513, 709, 718 | Trace Bit | 33 |
| UESZ0o | 517, 709, 718 | TRAPA | 52, 80 |
| UESZ2o | 517, 709, 718 | Universal Serial Bus | 489 |
| UESZ3o | 518, 709, 718 | Bulk-In Transfer | 564 |
| UESZ4o | 518, 709, 718 | Bulk-Out Transfer | 566 |
| UFCLR0 | 510, 709, 718 | Control Transfer | 556 |
| UFCLR1 | 511, 709, 718 | DMA Transfer Specifications | 577 |
| UIER0 | 529, 710, 718 | Endpoint Configuration | 582 |
| UIER1 | 529, 530, 710, 719 | Interrupt-In Transfer | 563 |
| UIER2 | 530, 531, 710, 719 | Isochronous-In Transfer | 568 |
| UIER3 | 531, 710, 719 | Processing of USB Standard Commands and Class/Vendor Commands | 572 |
| UIFR0 | 518, 709, 718 | Stall Operations | 573 |
| UIFR1 | 520, 522, 709, 718 | USB Cable Connection/ Disconnection | 548 |
| UIFR2 | 524, 525, 709, 718 | watchdog timer | |
| UIFR3 | 527, 709, 718 | Interval Timer Mode | 375 |
| UISR0 | 532, 710, 719 | Overflow | 375 |
| UISR1 | 533, 710, 719 | Watchdog Timer | 369 |
| UISR2 | 534, 710, 719 | | |
| UISR3 | 535, 710, 719 | | |

**Renesas 16-Bit Single-Chip Microcomputer
H8S/2215 Group
User's Manual: Hardware**

Publication Date: Rev.1.00, April, 2001
Rev.9.00, September 16, 2010
Published by: Renesas Electronics Corporation

**SALES OFFICES****Renesas Electronics Corporation**<http://www.renesas.com>

Refer to "http://www.renesas.com/" for the latest and detailed information.

Renesas Electronics America Inc.
2890 Scott Boulevard Santa Clara, CA 95050-2554, U.S.A.
Tel: +1-408-588-6000, Fax: +1-408-588-6130**Renesas Electronics Canada Limited**
1101 Nicholson Road, Newmarket, Ontario L3Y 9C3, Canada
Tel: +1-905-898-5441, Fax: +1-905-898-3220**Renesas Electronics Europe Limited**
Dukes Meadow, Millboard Road, Bourne End, Buckinghamshire, SL8 5FH, U.K
Tel: +44-1628-585-100, Fax: +44-1628-585-900**Renesas Electronics Europe GmbH**
Arcadiastrasse 10, 40472 Düsseldorf, Germany
Tel: +49-211-65030, Fax: +49-211-6503-1327**Renesas Electronics (China) Co., Ltd.**
7th Floor, Quantum Plaza, No.27 ZhichunLu Haidian District, Beijing 100083, P.R.China
Tel: +86-10-8235-1155, Fax: +86-10-8235-7679**Renesas Electronics (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.**
Unit 204, 205, AZIA Center, No.1233 Lujiazui Ring Rd., Pudong District, Shanghai 200120, China
Tel: +86-21-5877-1818, Fax: +86-21-5887-7858 / -7898**Renesas Electronics Hong Kong Limited**
Unit 1601-1613, 16/F., Tower 2, Grand Century Place, 193 Prince Edward Road West, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong
Tel: +852-2886-9318, Fax: +852-2886-9022/9044**Renesas Electronics Taiwan Co., Ltd.**
7F, No. 363 Fu Shing North Road Taipei, Taiwan
Tel: +886-2-8113-9630, Fax: +886-2-81175-9570**Renesas Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.**
1 HarbourFront Avenue, #06-10, Keppel Bay Tower, Singapore 098632
Tel: +65-6213-0200, Fax: +65-6278-8001**Renesas Electronics Malaysia Sdn.Bhd.**
Unit 905, Block B, Menara Amcorp, Amcorp Trade Centre, No. 18, Jln Persiaran Barat, 46050 Petaling Jaya, Selangor Darul Ehsan, Malaysia
Tel: +60-3-7955-9390, Fax: +60-3-7955-9510**Renesas Electronics Korea Co., Ltd.**
11F., Samik Laviel' or Bldg. 720-2 Yeoksam-Dong, Kangnam-Ku, Seoul 135-080, Korea
Tel: +82-2-558-3737, Fax: +82-2-558-5141

H8S/2215 Group
User's Manual: Hardware